KYOCERA

TASKalfa 250ci/300ci/ 400ci/500ci

SERVICE MANUAL

Published in July 2010
842H7116
2H7SM066
Rev. 6

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACEE PAR UN MODELE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISEES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNEES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	November 26, 2008	CONTENTS, 1-1-2, 1-1-3, 1-2-2, 1-2-4, 1-2-5, 1-2-12 to 1-2-14, 1-2-16 to 22, 1-3-2 to 1-3-20, 1-3-25, 1-3-26, 1-3-30 to 1-3-34, 1-3-36, 1-3-37, 1-3-39 to 1-3-42, 1-3-45, 1-3-48 to 1-3-58, 1-3-60, 1-3-62 to 1-3-64, 1-3-66 to 1-3-76, 1-3-78 to 1-3-81, 1-3-83 to 1-3-88, 1-3-97, 1-3-100, 1-3-102, 1-3-103, 1-3-108, 1-3-109, 1-3-112 to 1-3-115, 1-3-119 to 1-3-131, 1-3-133, 1-3-136, 1-3-138, 1-3-139, 1-3-141 to 1-3-155, 1-4-25, 1-4-27, 1-4-28, 1-4-30 to 1-4-32, 1-4-37 to 1-4-43, 1-4-45, 1-4-47 to 1-4-53, 1-4-62, 1-4-63, 1-4-69, 1-4-70, 1-4-72, 1-4-75, 1-5-3, 1-5-5 to 1-5-7, 1-5-11 to 1-5-14, 1-5-19 to 1-5-27, 1-5-29, 1-5-30, 1-5-32 to 1-5-35, 1-5-37 to 1-5-43, 1-5-45 to 1-5-51, 1-6-3, 2-1-7, 2-1-15, 2-1-16, 2-2-1, 2-2-3, 2-2-7, 2-3-1 to 2-3-3, 2-3-5, 2-3-7, 2-3-8, 2-3-12, 2-3-16, 2-3-24, 2-3-25, 2-3-27 to 2-3-39, 2-3-42, 2-3-46 to 2-3-53, 2-4-1, 2-4-2, 2-4-5, 2-4-6, 2-4-8, 2-4-10, 2-4-11, 2-4-15, 2-4-16	-
2	January 30, 2009	1-1-7, 1-2-12, 1-2-13, 1-3-2 to 1-3-7, 1-3-11, 1-3-31, 1-3-51, 1-3-52, 1-3-65, 1-3-68 to 1-3-74, 1-3-102 to 1-3-106, 1-3-114 to 1-3-116, 1-3-118, 1-3-120 to 1-3-124, 1-3-130, 1-3-135, 1-3-136, 1-4-59, 1-5-34, 1-5-38, 1-5-40, 1-6-1	-
3	April 15, 2009	1-2-14, 1-2-22	-
4	June 15, 2009	1-3-86, 2-3-22	-
5	November 6, 2009	CONTENTS, 1-1-2, 1-1-3, 1-2-2, 1-2-11 to 1-2-13, 1-2-23, 1-2-24, 1-3-2 to 1-3-172, 1-4-3, 1-4-4, 1-4-48 to 1-4-50, 1-4-74, 1-5-1, 1-5-2, 1-5-41, 1-5-47, 1-6-1, 2-1-1, 2-1-22, 2-2-4, 2-2-6, 2-3-45, 2-4-1 to 2-4-17, 2-4-14, 2-4-15	-
6	July 21, 2010	1-1-1, 1-1-3, 1-3-6, 1-3-13, 1-3-30, 1-3-56, 1-3-57, 1-3-111, 1-3-130, 1-3-144, 1-4-58 to 1-4-60, 2-4-1, 2-4-9, 2-4-10	

This page is intentionally left blank.

Safety precautions

This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

⚠**DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

⚠**WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

⚠**CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle (△) symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.

 General warning.

 Warning of risk of electric shock.

 Warning of high temperature.

⃠ indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.

 General prohibited action.

 Disassembly prohibited.

● indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.

 General action required.

 Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.

 Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .....



- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .....



⚠ CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .....



- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .....



- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material. This may cause fire. .....



- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .....



- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .....



- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .....



- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .....



- Advice customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .....



2. Precautions for Maintenance

⚠WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. 

⚠CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. 

- Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. .....



- Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. .....



- Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. .....



- Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. .....



- Remove toner completely from electronic components. .....



- Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. .....



- After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. .....



- Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. .....



- Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: .....
  · Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
  · Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
  · Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
  · Always wash hands afterwards.



- Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. .....

- Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. .....



3. Miscellaneous

⚠WARNING

- Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. .....



This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-1 Specifications

1-1-1 Specifications 1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names 1-1-4
(1) Body 1-1-4
(2) Operation panel 1-1-7
1-1-3 Machine cross section 1-1-8

1-2 Installation

1-2-1 Installation environment 1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation 1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure 1-2-2
(2) Setting initial copy modes 1-2-13
1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option) 1-2-14
1-2-4 Installing the cassette heater (option) (inch specifications only) 1-2-23

1-3 Maintenance Mode

1-3-1 Maintenance mode 1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item 1-3-1
(2) Maintenance mode item list 1-3-2
(3) Contents of maintenance mode items 1-3-9
1-3-2 Management mode 1-3-158
(1) Using the management mode 1-3-158
(2) Common Settings 1-3-159
(3) Copy Settings 1-3-162
(4) Sending Settings 1-3-162
(5) Document Box/Removable Memory Settings 1-3-162
(6) Printer Settings 1-3-163
(7) Printing Reports/Sending Notice 1-3-163
(8) Adjustment/Maintenance 1-3-164
(9) Date/Timer 1-3-166
(10) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One Touch Keys) 1-3-167
(11) Internet Browser Setup 1-3-168
(12) Applications 1-3-168
(13) System Settings 1-3-169
(14) User Login Administration 1-3-171
(15) Job accounting 1-3-171

1-4 Troubleshooting

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection 1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication 1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions 1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds 1-4-12
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis 1-4-24
(1) Self-diagnostic function 1-4-24
(2) Self diagnostic codes 1-4-27
1-4-3 Image formation problems 1-4-61
(1) No image appears (entirely white). 1-4-62
(2) No image appears (entirely black). 1-4-62
(3) Dirty on the back side. 1-4-63
(4) Image is too light. 1-4-63
(5) The background is colored. 1-4-64
(6) A white line appears longitudinally. 1-4-64
(7) A line appears longitudinally. 1-4-64
(8) A line appears laterally. 1-4-65
(9) One side of the copy image is darker than the other. 1-4-65
(10) Dots appear on the image. 1-4-65
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original. 1-4-65
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original. 1-4-66
(13) Paper creases. 1-4-66
(14) Offset occurs. 1-4-66

(15) Image is partly missing. 1-4-67
(16) Fusing is poor. 1-4-67
(17) Image is out of focus. 1-4-67
(18) Colors are printed offset to each other. 1-4-68
(19) Image center does not align with the original center. 1-4-68
1-4-4 Electric problems 1-4-69
1-4-5 Mechanical problems 1-4-76

1-5 Assembly and Disassembly
1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly 1-5-1
(1) Precautions 1-5-1
(2) Drum 1-5-1
(3) Toner 1-5-1
(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container 1-5-2
1-5-2 Paper feed section 1-5-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys 1-5-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the MP unit 1-5-6
(3) Detaching and refitting the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys 1-5-8
1-5-3 Optical section 1-5-11
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp 1-5-11
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires 1-5-15
(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference) 1-5-19
(4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit 1-5-21
(5) Manual color registration adjustment 1-5-28
1-5-4 Image formation section 1-5-30
(1) Detaching and refitting the image formation holder 1-5-30
(2) Detaching and refitting the developing unit 1-5-34
(3) Detaching and refitting the drum unit 1-5-35
(4) Detaching and refitting the charger roller unit 1-5-36
1-5-5 Transfer section 1-5-37
(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer belt unit 1-5-37
(2) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller 1-5-39
1-5-6 Fuser section 1-5-41
(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit 1-5-41
1-5-7 Other 1-5-42
(1) Detaching and refitting the left filter, rear upper filter 1/2, right filter, rear lower filter, front filter and duct filter 1-5-42
(2) Detaching and refitting the hard disk unit 1-5-44
(3) Detaching and refitting the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit) 1-5-47

1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement
1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware 1-6-1
1-6-2 Remarks on main PWB replacement 1-6-2
1-6-3 Remarks on engine PWB replacement 1-6-5

2-1 Mechanical Construction
2-1-1 Paper feed section 2-1-1
(1) Cassette paper feed section 2-1-1
(2) MP tray paper feed section 2-1-4
2-1-2 Drum section 2-1-7
(1) Drum section 2-1-7
2-1-3 Developing section 2-1-9
(1) Developing section 2-1-9
2-1-4 Optical section 2-1-11
(1) Image scanner section 2-1-11
(2) Laser scanner section 2-1-13
2-1-5 Transfer/separation section 2-1-15
(1) Primary transfer section 2-1-15
(2) Secondary transfer/separation section 2-1-17
2-1-6 Fuser section 2-1-18
(1) Fuser section 2-1-18
2-1-7 Eject/feedshift section 2-1-20
(1) Eject/feedshift section 2-1-20

2-1-8 Duplex section 2-1-22
(1) Duplex section 2-1-22

2-2 Electrical Parts Layout

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout 2-2-1
(1) PWBs 2-2-1
(2) Switches and sensors 2-2-4
(3) Motors 2-2-6
(4) Others 2-2-8

2-3 Operation of the PWBs

2-3-1 Power source PWB 2-3-1
2-3-2 Engine PWB 2-3-6
2-3-3 Main PWB 2-3-23
2-3-4 Main front PWB 2-3-33
2-3-5 Sub front PWB 2-3-37
2-3-6 Feed PWB 2-3-41
2-3-7 ISM PWB 2-3-48
2-3-8 Main operation PWB 2-3-51

2-4 Appendixes

Maintenance parts list 2-4-1
Maintenance kits (25/25, 30/30 ppm models) 2-4-3
Maintenance kits (40/40, 50/40 ppm models) 2-4-4
Periodic maintenance procedures 2-4-5
Chart of image adjustment procedures 2-4-9
Wiring diagram No.1 2-4-11
Wiring diagram No.2 2-4-12
Wiring diagram No.3 (40/40, 50/40 ppm model) 2-4-13
Wiring diagram No.3 (25/25, 30/30 ppm model) 2-4-14
Wiring diagram No.4 2-4-15
Wiring diagram No.5 (40/40, 50/40 ppm model) 2-4-16
Wiring diagram No.5 (25/25, 30/30 ppm model) 2-4-17
Wiring diagram No.6 2-4-18
Wiring diagram No.7 2-4-19
Wiring diagram No.8 2-4-20
Wiring diagram No.9 2-4-21

INSTALLATION GUIDE

DOCUMENT PROCESSOR
PAPER FEEDER
3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER
DOCUMENT FINISHER
3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER
CENTER-FOLDING UNIT
MAILBOX
HOLE PUNCH UNIT
JOB SEPARATOR
FAX System
DT-710
DUCT UNIT

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-1-1 Specifications

Type ..... Desktop
Printing system ..... Electrophotography by semiconductor laser, tandem drum system
Supported original types ..... Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects
Maximum size: A3/Ledger
Original feed system ..... Fixed
Paper weight ..... Cassette: 60 - 163 g/m^2 (Duplex: 60 - 163 g/m^2)
MP tray: 60 - 220 g/m^2
Paper type ..... Cassette: Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 - 8 (Duplex: Same as Simplex)
MP tray: Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, Envelope, High Quality, Custom 1 - 8
Paper size ..... Cassette: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, Statement, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR
MP tray: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, ExecutiveR, Statement, Oficio II, 8.5 x 13.5", Folio, 8K, 16K, 16KR, Postcards (100 x 148 mm), Return postcard (148 x 200 mm), Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Envelope #10 (Commercial #10), Envelope #9 (Commercial #9), Envelope #6 (Commercial #6 3/4), Monarch, ISO B5, Youkei 2, Youkei 4
Zoom level ..... Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments
Auto mode: Preset zoom
Printing speed ..... 25/25 ppm model

	Black and white copying	Full color copying
A4/Letter:	25 sheets/min.	25 sheets/min.
A4R/LetterR:	17 sheets/min.	17 sheets/min.
A3/Ledger:	13 sheets/min.	13 sheets/min.
B4/Legal:	13 sheets/min.	13 sheets/min.
B5:	25 sheets/min.	25 sheets/min.

30/30 ppm model

	Black and white copying	Full color copying
A4/Letter:	30 sheets/min.	30 sheets/min.
A4R/LetterR:	20 sheets/min.	20 sheets/min.
A3/Ledger:	15 sheets/min.	15 sheets/min.
B4/Legal:	15 sheets/min.	15 sheets/min.
B5:	30 sheets/min.	30 sheets/min.

40/40 ppm model

	Black and white copying	Full color copying
A4/Letter:	40 sheets/min.	40 sheets/min.
A4R/LetterR:	27 sheets/min.	27 sheets/min.
A3/Ledger:	19 sheets/min.	19 sheets/min.
B4/Legal:	19 sheets/min.	19 sheets/min.
B5:	40 sheets/min.	40 sheets/min.

50/40 ppm model

	Black and white copying	Full color copying
A4/Letter:	50 sheets/min.	40 sheets/min.
A4R/LetterR:	33 sheets/min.	27 sheets/min.
A3/Ledger:	25 sheets/min.	19 sheets/min.
B4/Legal:	25 sheets/min.	19 sheets/min.
B5:	50 sheets/min.	40 sheets/min.

First print time ..... 25/25, 30/30 ppm models
6.2 s or less (black and white)/8.1 s or less (full color)
40/40 ppm models
5.3 s or less (black and white)/6.9 s or less (full color)
50/40 ppm models
4.9 s or less (black and white)/6.9 s or less (full color)

Warm-up time	Room temperature 22 °C/71.6 °F, 60% RH 25/25, 30/30 ppm models Power on: 30 s or less Low power mode: 30 s or less Sleep mode: 30 s or less 40/40, 50/40 ppm models Power on: 45 s or less Low power mode: 30 s or less Sleep mode: 45 s or less
Paper capacity	Cassette 1: 500 sheets (80 g/m^2, A4/Letter or less), 250 sheets (80 g/m^2, B4/Legal or more) Cassette 2: 500 sheets (80 g/m^2) MP tray: 100 sheets (80 g/m^2, A4/Letter or less), 50 sheets (80 g/m^2, more then A4/Letter)
Output tray capacity	Top tray: 250 sheets (80 g/m^2) When optional job separator installed: 150 sheets (80 g/m^2)
Continuous copying	1 - 999 sheets
Light source	Inert gas lamp
Scanning system	Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor
Photoconductor	a-Si (drum diameter 30 mm)
Image write system	Semiconductor laser and electrophotography
Charging system	Charging roller
Developing system	Hybrid developing Developer: 2-component Toner replenishing: Automatic from a toner container
Transfer system	Primary: Transfer belt Secondary: Transfer roller
Separation system	Separation electrode
Cleaning system	Blade and cleaning roller
Charge erasing system	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Fusing system	Belt fusing Heat source: Halogen heaters Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats
Main memory	Standard: 2048 MB Maximum: 2048 MB
Hard disk	25/25, 30/30 ppm models: 80 GB or more (standard) 40/40, 50/40 ppm models: 160 GB or more (standard)
Interface	USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed) USB memory slot: 2 (Full-Speed USB) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX) KUIO/W slot: 2 (option)
Resolution	600 x 600 dpi
Operating environment	Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F Humidity: 15 to 80% RH Altitude: 2500 m/8,202 ft maximum Brightness: 1500 lux maximum
Dimensions	605 (W) x 680 (D) x 745 (H) mm (main body only) 23 13/16" (W) x 26 3/4" (D) x 29 5/16" (H) (main body only)
Weight	106 kg/233.7 lb (without toner container and waste toner box)
Space required	889 mm (W) x 680 (D) mm (using MP tray) 35" (W) x 26 3/4" (D) (using MP tray)
Power source	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 12.0 A 220 to 240 V AC, 50 Hz, 7.2 A
Options	Document processor, paper feeder, 3000-sheet paper feeder, document finisher, 3000-sheet document finisher, center-folding unit, mailbox, punch unit, job separator, key counter, FAX kit, expansion memory, data security kit, printed document guard kit, document table and duct unit

Printer functions

Printing speed	Same as copying speed
First print time	25/25, 30/30 ppm models 9.4 s or less (black and white)/10.9 s or less (full color) 40/40 ppm models 7.1 s or less (black and white)/8.1 s or less (full color) 50/40 ppm models 5.8 s or less (black and white)/8.1 s or less (full color)
Resolution	600 dpi
Operating system	Windows 2000 (Service Pack 2 or later), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, Apple Macintosh OS 10.x
Interface	USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX)
Page description language	PRESCRIBE

Scanner functions

System requirements	CPU 600 MHz or higher RAM 128 MB or more		
Resolution	600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 200 x 100 dpi, 200 x 400 dpi		
File format	TIFF (MMR/JPEG compression), JPEG, XPS, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression), PDF (high compression)		
Scanning speed	A4 landscape, 300 dpi, Image quality: Text/Photo original 25/25, 30/30 ppm models Single scanning: 50 images/min (black and white), 50 images/min (full color) Dual scanning: 60 images/min (black and white), 60 images/min (full color) 40/40, 50/40 ppm models Single scanning: 75 images/min (black and white), 75 images/min (full color) Dual scanning: 100 images/min (black and white), 100 images/min (full color)		
Interface	Ethernet (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX)		
Network protocol	TCP/IP		
Transmission system	PC transmission	SMB	Scan to SMB
		FTP	Scan to FTP, FTP over SSL
	E-mail transmission	SMTP	Scan to E-mail
	Twain scan*1		
	WIA scan*2		

*1 Available operating system: Windows 2000 (Service Pack 2 or later), Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7

*2 Available operating system: Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows 7

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

1-1-2 Parts names

(1) Body

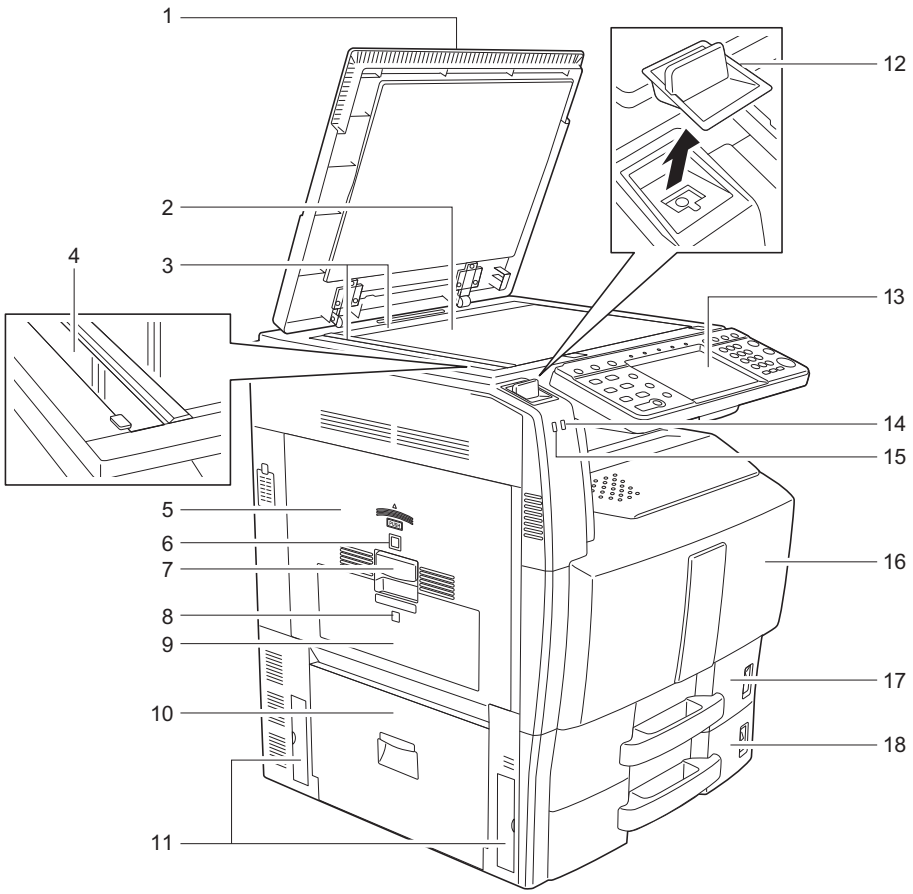


Figure 1-1-1

1. Original cover (option)
2. Contact glass
3. Original size indicator plates
4. Slit glass
5. Left cover 1
6. Left cover 1 indicator
7. Left cover 1 lever
8. Left cover 2 indicator
9. Left cover 2
10. Left cover 3
11. Handles
12. Clip holder
13. Operation panel
14. Error indicator
15. Receive indicator
16. Front cover
17. Cassette 1
18. Cassette 2

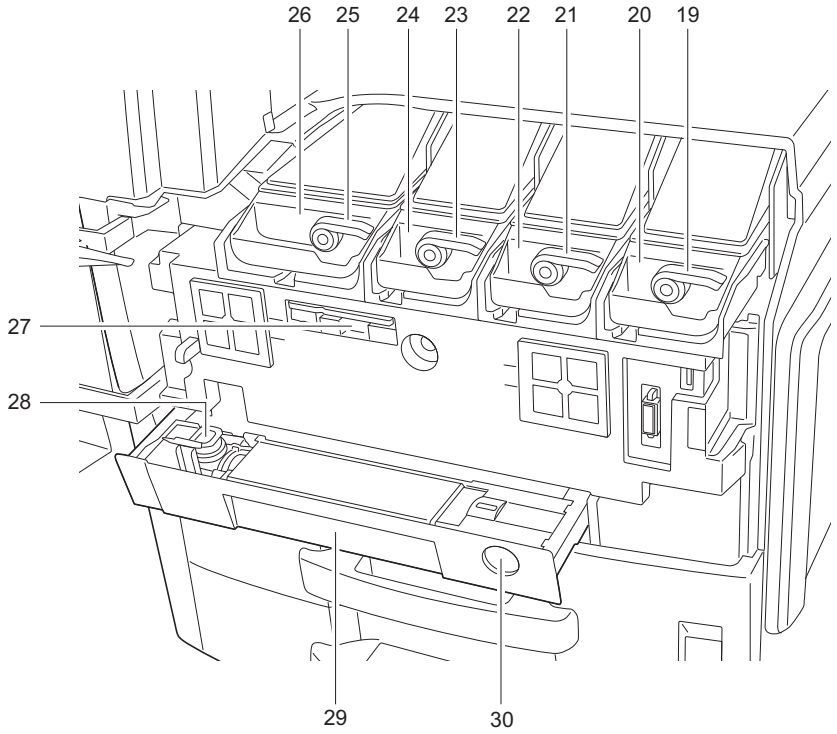


Figure 1-1-2

19. Toner container release lever (Magenta)
20. Toner container (Magenta)
21. Toner container release lever (Cyan)
22. Toner container (Cyan)
23. Toner container release lever (Yellow)
24. Toner container (Yellow)
25. Toner container release lever (Black)
26. Toner container (Black)
27. Cleaning brush
28. Waste toner box
29. Waste toner tray
30. Release button

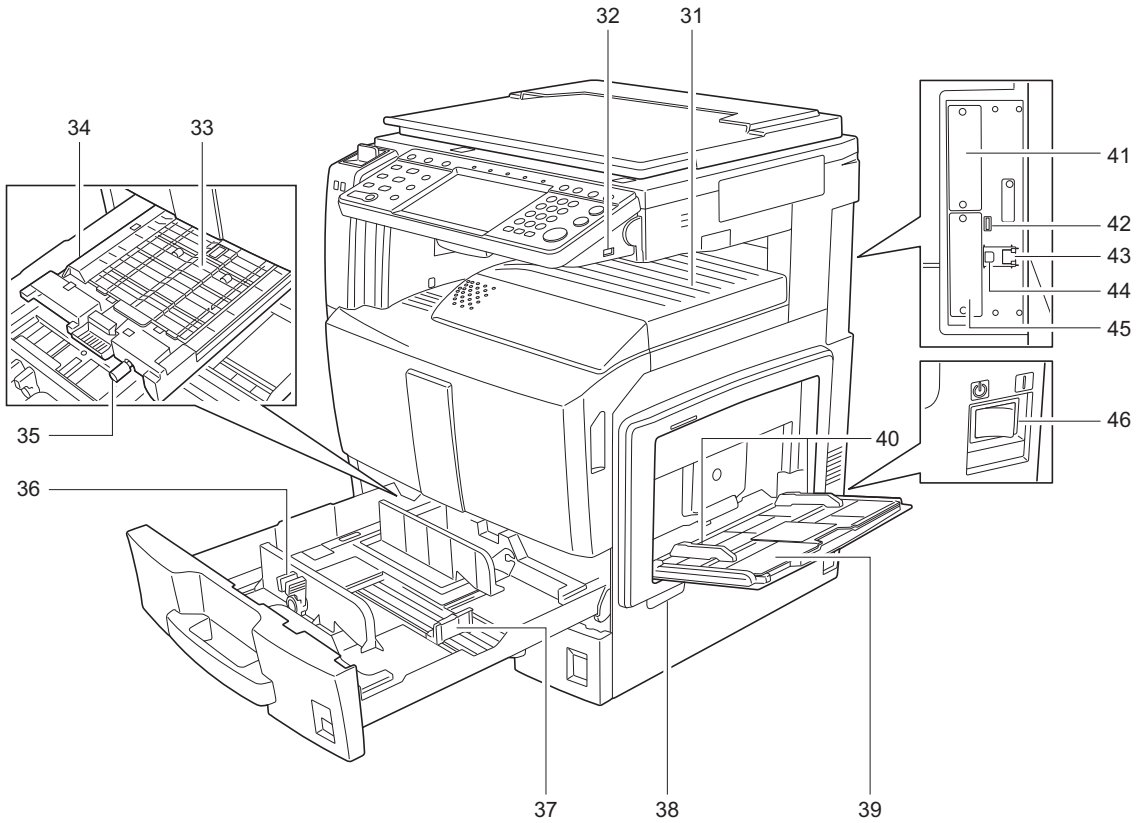


Figure 1-1-3

31. Top tray
32. USB memory slot
33. Paper feed unit cover
34. Paper feed unit
35. Knob
36. Paper width adjusting tab
37. Paper length guide
38. Handles
39. MP tray (multi-purpose tray)
40. Paper width guide
41. Optional interface slot (OPT2)
42. USB port
43. Network interface connector
44. USB interface connector
45. Optional interface slot (OPT1)
46. Main power switch

(2) Operation panel

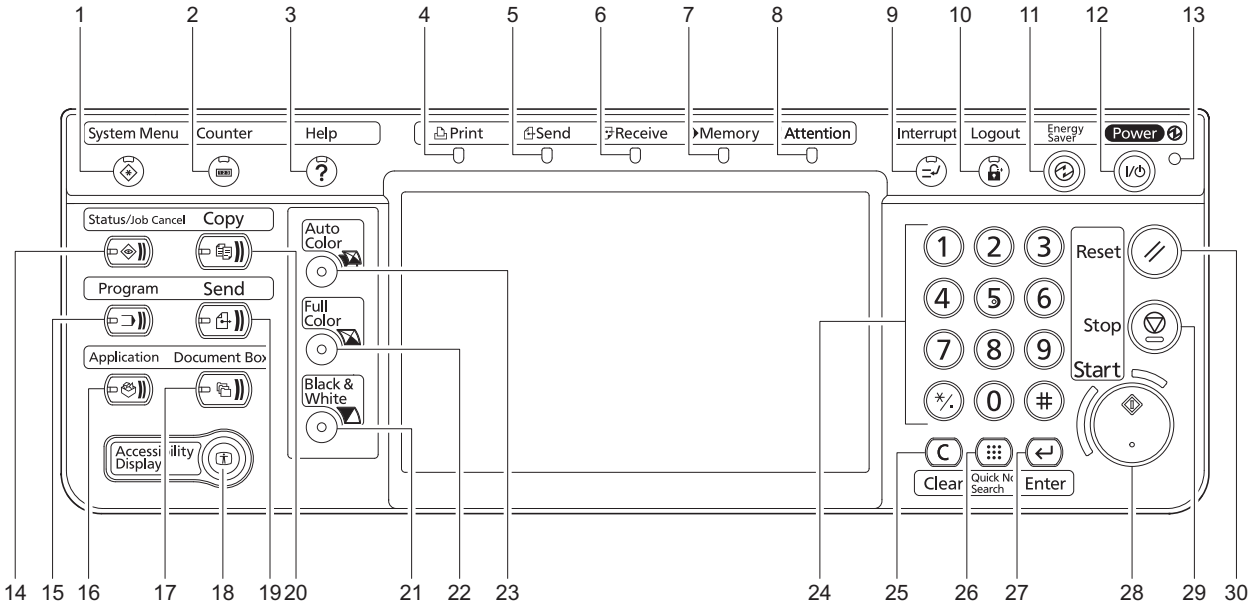


Figure 1-1-4

1. System menu key/indicator
2. Counter key/indicator
3. Help key/indicator
4. Print indicator
5. Send indicator
6. Receive indicator
7. Memory indicator
8. Attention indicator
9. Interrupt key/indicator
10. Logout key/indicator
11. Energy saver key/indicator
12. Power key/indicator
13. Main power indicator
14. Status/Job cancel key/indicator
15. Program key/indicator
16. Application key/indicator
17. Document box key/indicator
18. Accessibility key/indicator
19. Send key/indicator
20. Copy key/indicator
21. Black&White key
22. Full-color key
23. Auto color key
24. Numeric keys
25. Clear key
26. Quick No. search key
27. Enter key
28. Start key/indicator
29. Stop key
30. Reset key

1-1-3 Machine cross section

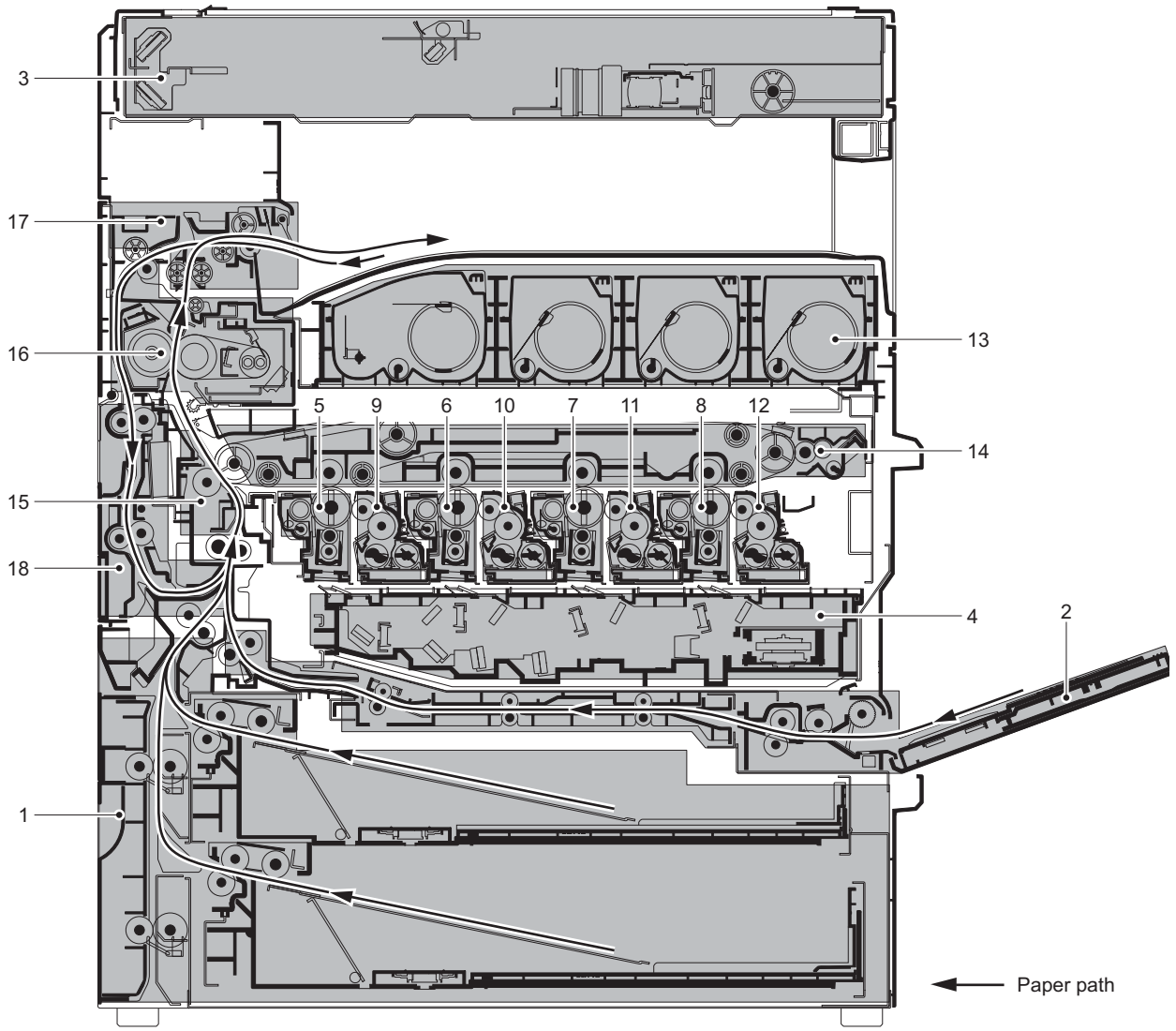


Figure 1-1-5 Machine cross section

1. Cassette paper feed section
2. MP tray paper feed section
3. Image scanner section
4. Laser scanner section
5. Drum section (Black)
6. Drum section (Yellow)
7. Drum section (Cyan)
8. Drum section (Magenta)
9. Developing section (Black)
10. Developing section (Yellow)
11. Developing section (Cyan)
12. Developing section (Magenta)
13. Toner container section
14. Primary transfer section
15. Secondary transfer/separation section
16. Fuser section
17. Eject/feedshift section
18. Duplex section

1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80%
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 12.0 A/220 to 240 V AC, 6.5 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz ±2%/60 Hz ±2%
5. Installation location
   Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.
   Avoid locations subject to high temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity; an abrupt change in the environmental temperature; and cool or hot, direct air.
   Avoid places subject to dust and vibrations.
   Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.
   Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).
   Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic of alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.
   Select a well-ventilated location.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
   Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8" Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"
   Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16" Machine left: 300 mm/11 13/16"

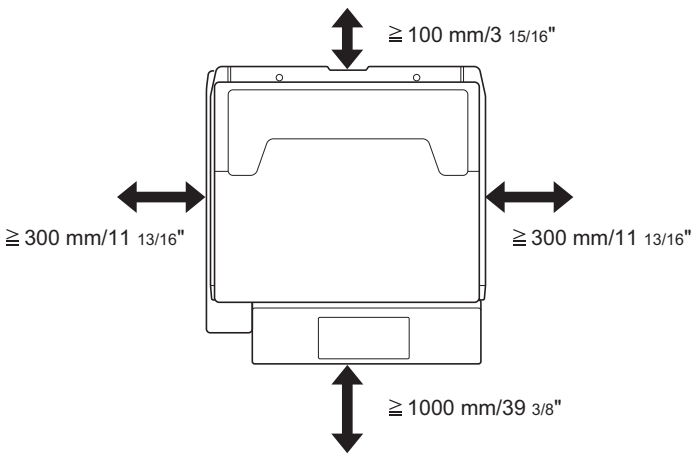
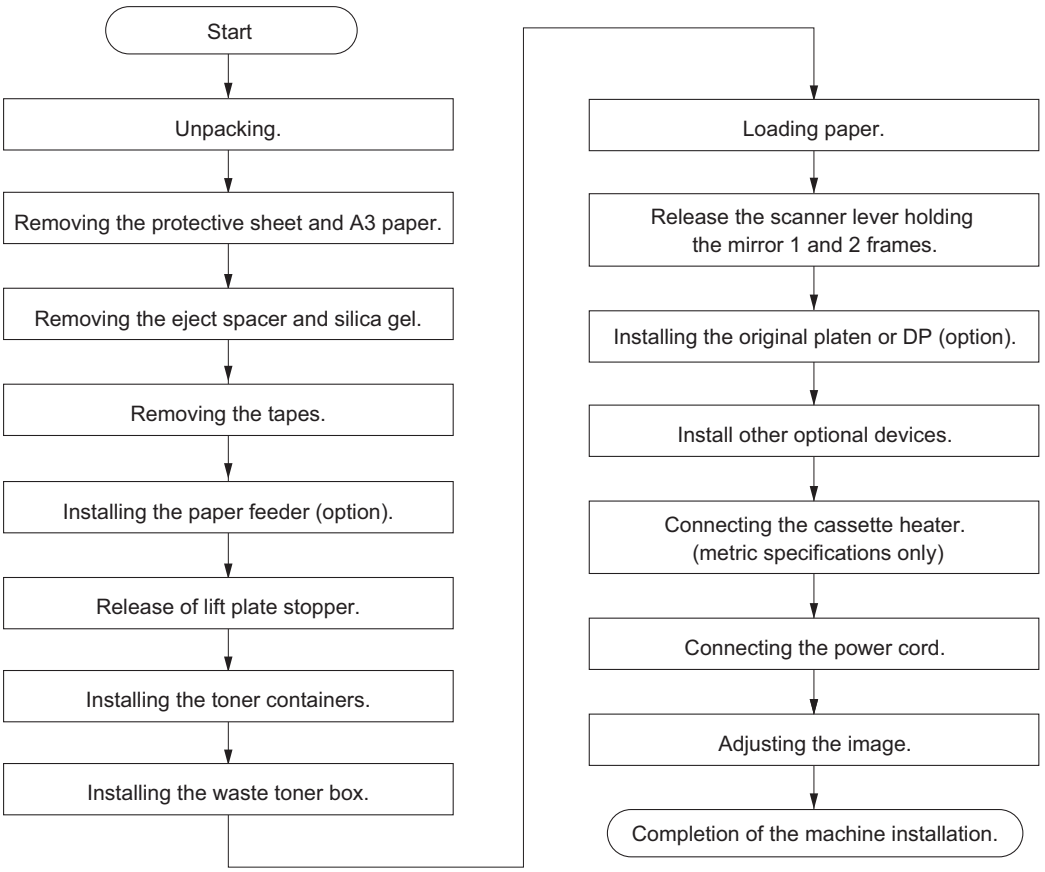


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



Moving the machine

When moving the machine, pull out two carrying handles on the left side, and move with carrying handles and the hand-hold two place of the right side.

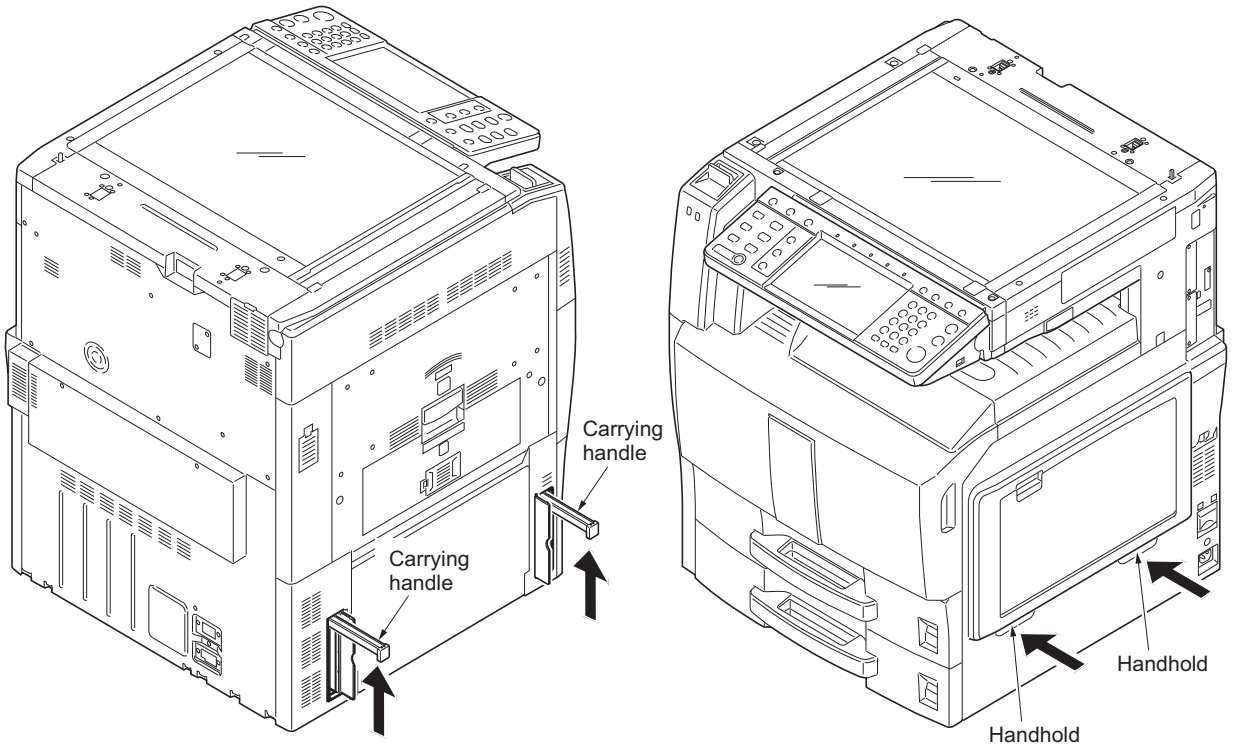


Figure 1-2-2

Unpacking.

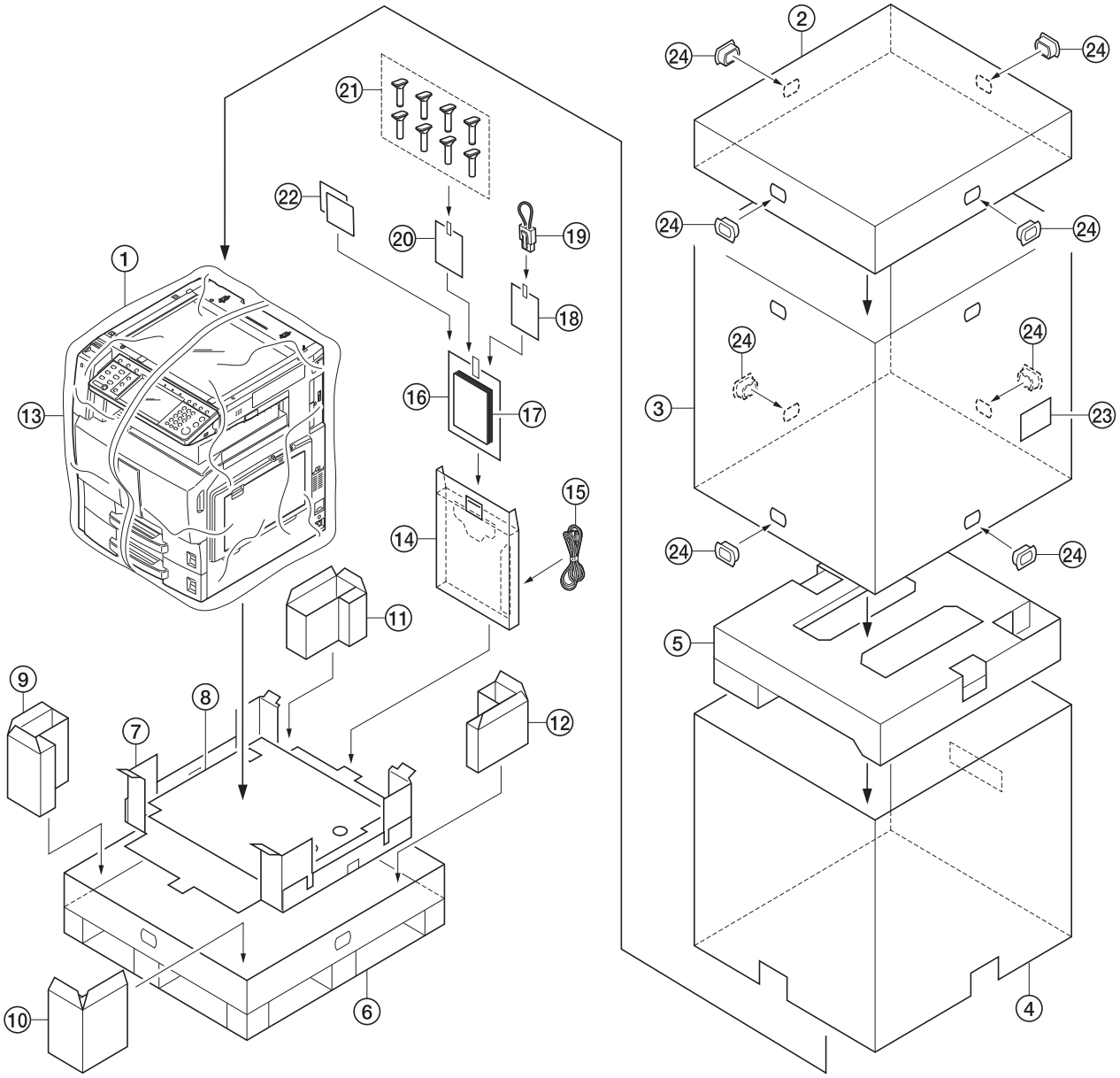


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

1. Machine
2. Upper lid
3. Outer case
4. Inner frame
5. Upper pad
6. Skid
7. Bottom sheet
8. Bottom pad
9. Bottom front left pad
10. Bottom front right pad
11. Bottom rear left pad
12. Bottom rear right pad
13. Machine cover
14. Document tray
15. Power code
16. Plastic bag
17. Operation guide
18. Plastic bag
19. Jumper connector
20. Plastic bag
21. Cursor pins
22. Size plates
23. Barcode label
24. Hinge joints

Place the machine on a level surface.

Removing the protective sheet and A3 paper.

1. Remove five tapes and then remove the protective sheet.

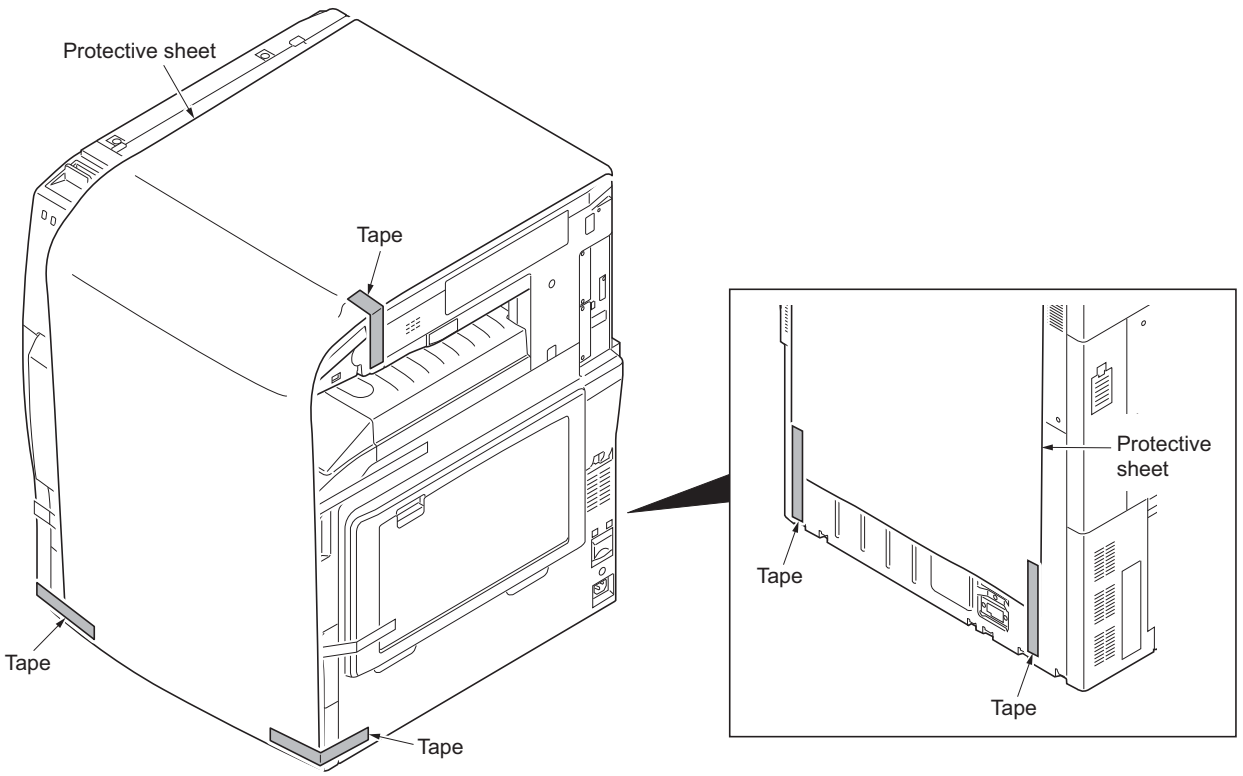


Figure 1-2-4

2. Remove three tapes and then remove the A3 paper.

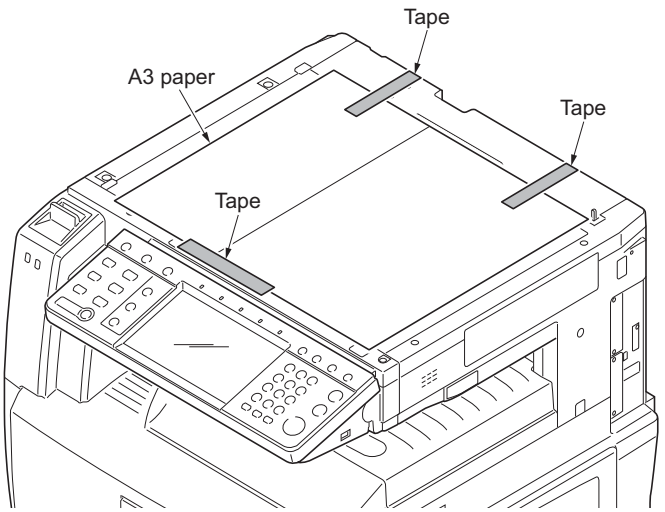


Figure 1-2-5

Removing the eject spacer and silica gel.

1. Remove the eject spacer and silica gel from the eject section.

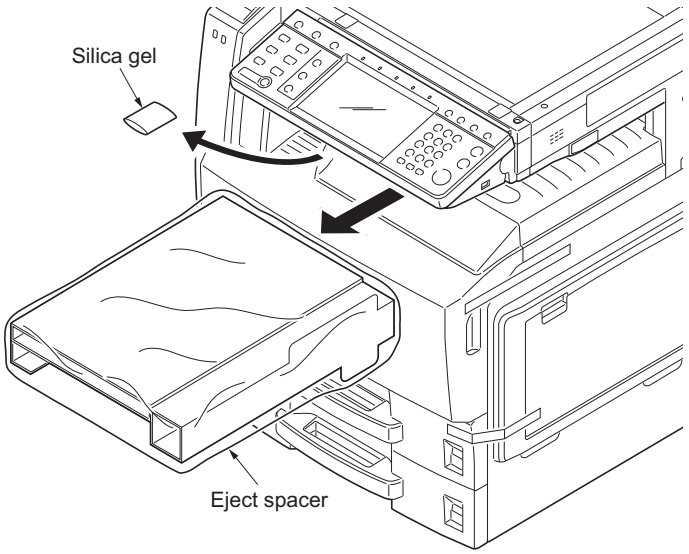


Figure 1-2-6

Removing the tapes.

1. Remove three tapes.

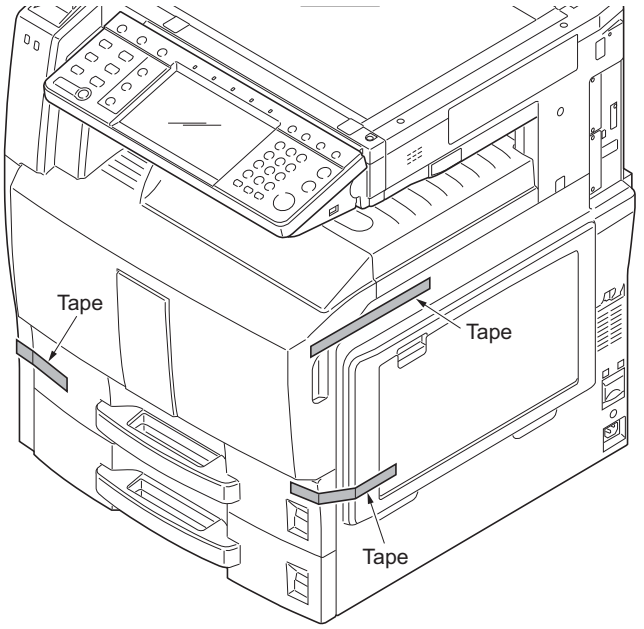


Figure 1-2-7

Installing the paper feeder (option).

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.
2. Verify levelness at the four corners of the contact glass using a level gauge, and adjust the level bolts at the bottom of the machine to optimize levelness.

Release of lift plate stopper.

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out.
   Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.
   When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.
2. Gently push cassette 1 and 2 back in.

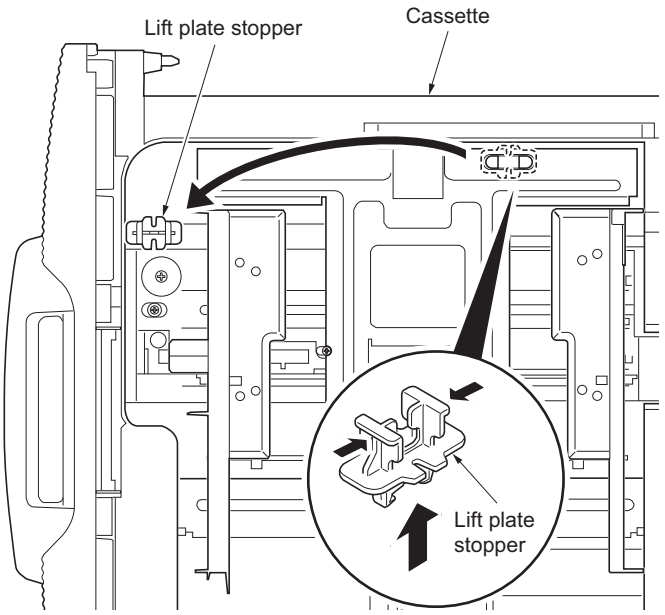


Figure 1-2-8

Installing the toner containers.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Hold the toner container with the toner container release lever positioned on the top, and shake the toner container in the horizontal direction.

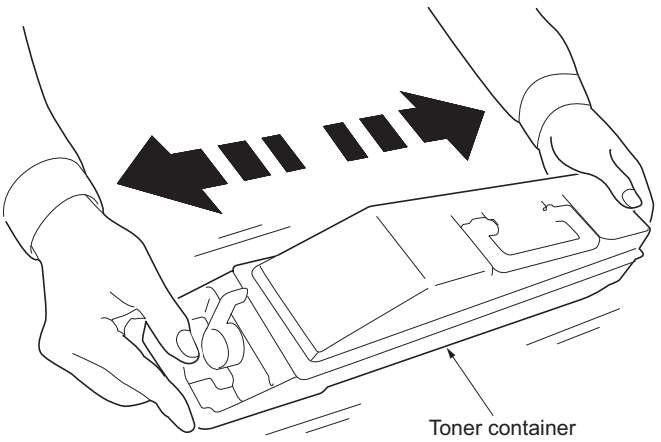


Figure 1-2-9

3. Install four color toner containers.
4. Turn down the toner container release levers to lock the four color toner containers.

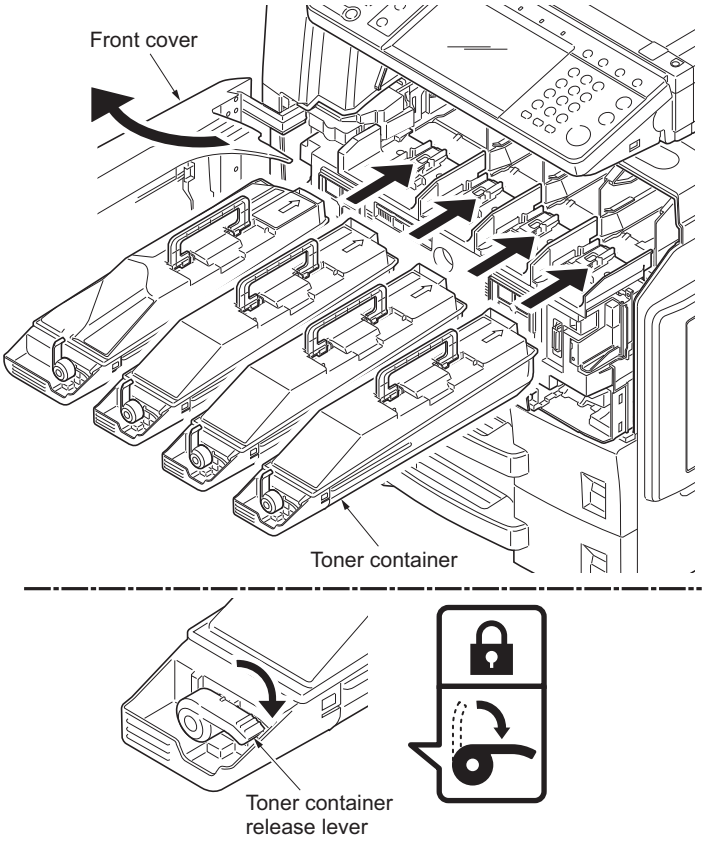


Figure 1-2-10

Installing the waste toner box.

1. Push the release button and pull out the waste toner tray.
2. Open the lid and install the waste toner box.
3. Push the waste toner tray back in.
4. Close the front cover.

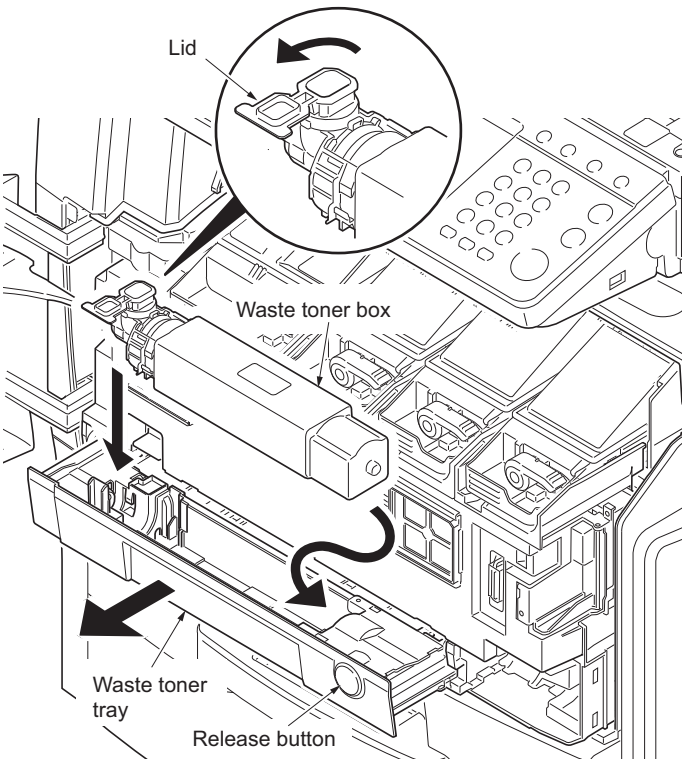


Figure 1-2-11

Loading paper.

1. Pull the cassette out.
2. Adjust the paper length guide to fit the paper size.
3. Holding the paper width adjusting tab both ends, move the paper width guide to fit the paper.
4. When loading paper smaller than A4 or Letter into cassette 1, raise the support lever as shown in the figure.

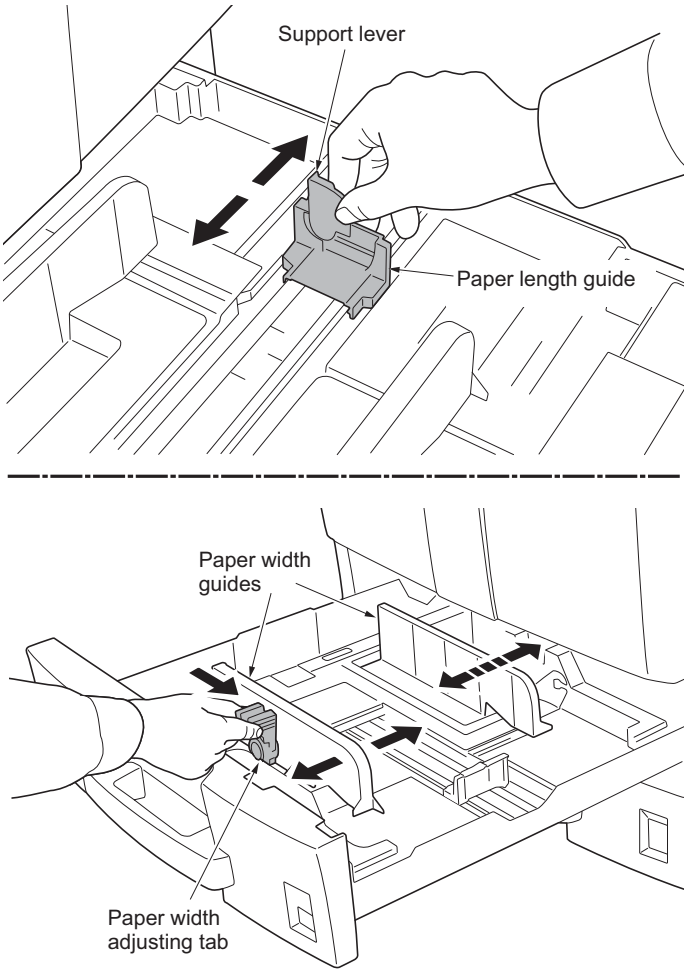


Figure 1-2-12

5. Align the paper flush against the left side of the cassette.
   IMPORTANT: Verify that the paper is pressed snugly against the vertical and horizontal size guides. If a gap is present, reset the width guides or length guide.
   Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded.
   Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicated.

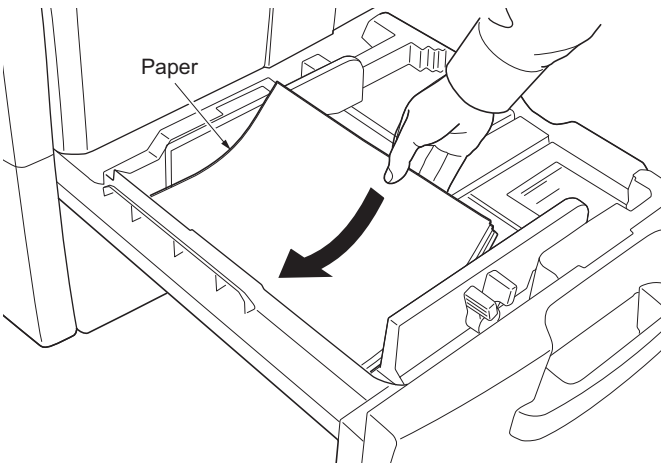


Figure 1-2-13

6. Insert the appropriate paper size card in the slot to indicate the size of the loaded paper.
7. Gently push the cassette back in.

Release the scanner lever holding the mirror 1 and 2 frames.

1. Turn the scanner lever of the machine rear side with the tool to release the lever holding the mirror 1 and 2 frames.

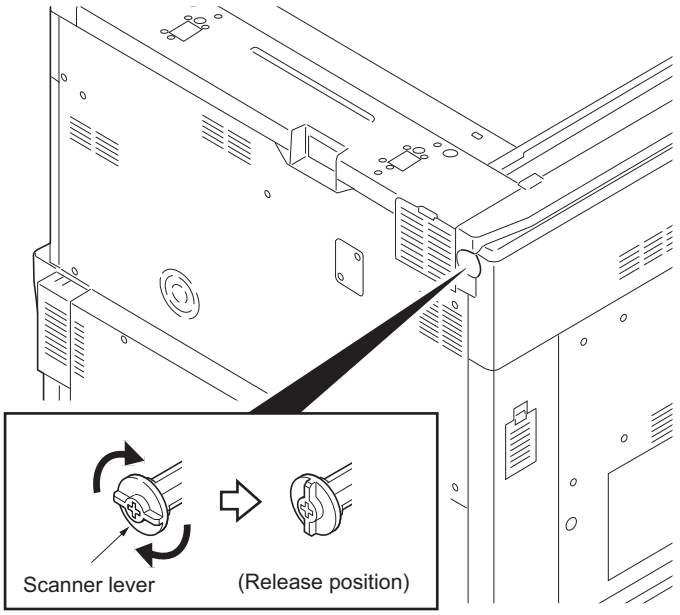


Figure 1-2-14

Installing the original platen or DP (option).

1. Install optional original platen or DP.

Install other optional devices.

1. Install the optional devices (job separator, document finisher and/or fax kit etc.) as necessary.

Connecting the cassette heater. (metric specifications only)

1. Remove two screws and then remove the lid.
2. Pull the connector of the cassette heater wire out from the aperture.
3. Connect the jumper connector to the connector of the cassette heater wire.
4. Seat the cassette heater wire into the machine inside.
5. Refit the lid.
6. Run maintenance item U327 and select “MODE Setting” and set “MODE2”.

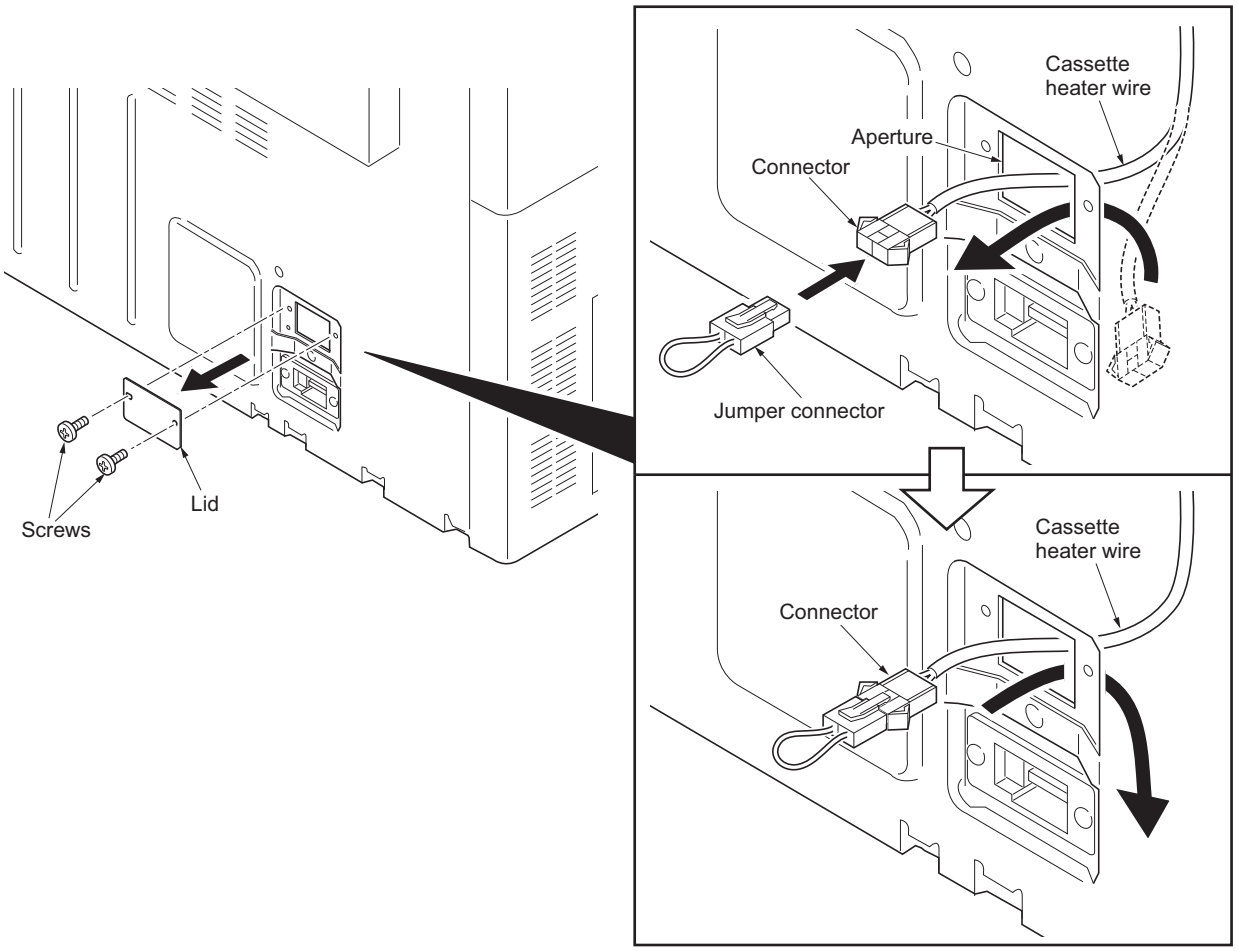


Figure 1-2-15

Connecting the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the power cord connector on lower left of the machine.
2. Connect the power plug to the wall outlet.

Adjusting the image.

1. Open the main power switch cover and turn the main power switch on.

2. **Check the messages on the operation panel**
   After completion of warming up, in case to display "Warning for high temperature. Adjust the room temperature." on the operation panel, follow the step 3. (Performing Drum Refresh)
   In case to have no display, follow the step 4. (Performing Color Registration)

3. **Performing drum refreshing**
   Press the System menu key and arrow down key and select [Adjustment/Maintenance].
   Select [Drum Refresh] and press [Execute] to begin drum refreshing.

4. **Performing color registration (see page 1-3-164)**
   Press the System menu key and arrow down key and select [Adjustment/Maintenance].
   Press the arrow down key and select Color Registration and press [Print].
   Select [Next] and enter the values for magenta/cyan/yellow, then press [Execute]. When completed, press [OK].
   Check the output of color registration chart and if the adjustments are incorrect, proceed to color registration and adjust again.
   Press close and continues to the step 5. (Performing Color adjustment)

5. **Performing Color adjustment**
   Select Color Calibration and press [Next].
   Press [Execute] to perform Color Calibration.
   The message "Performing Color Calibration. Remaining: XXsec." is displayed.
   Once "Completed" is displayed, press [OK] and press System menu to exit.

6. **Adjusting the halftone automatically (maintenance item U410)**
   Load the cassette with multiple sheets of A4 or Letter paper.
   Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
   Enter 410 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
   Select [Continuous Adjustment] to print a test pattern 1.
   Use the test pattern 1 printed as the original and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern and then press the start key to adjust automatically.
   Test pattern 2 is printed.
   Use the test pattern 2 printed as the original and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern and then press the start key to adjust automatically.
   Test pattern 3 is printed.
   Use the test pattern 3 printed as the original and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern and then press the start key to adjust automatically.
   When function is completed, [ALL COMP.] is displayed. Press the stop key twice to exit.
   If image quality is unsatisfactory after test copying, execute Color Calibration under Adjustment/Maintenance in the System menu (see page 1-3-166), then retry U410-Adjusting the halftone automatically.

7. **Setting the delivery date**
   Enter 278 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
   Select [TODAY].
   Press the start key. The delivery date is set.
   Press the stop key to exit.

8. **Output status report**
   Before exiting the maintenance mode, use the numeric keys to enter 000 and press the start key.
   Select [MAINTENANCE].
   Press the start key. A status report is output.
   Press the stop key to exit.

9. Enter 001 using the numeric keys, then press the start key to exit the maintenance mode.

Completion of the machine installation.

(2) Setting initial copy modes

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	EJECT
U276	Setting the copy count mode	MODE0
U284	Setting 2 color copy mode	OFF
U285	Setting service status page	ON
U325	Setting the paper interval	ON/1
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON/8
U327	Setting the cassette heater control	OFF/NONE
U328	Side ejection setting	OFF
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF

1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Key counter installation requires the following parts:
Key counter (P/N 3025418011)
Key counter set (P/N 302A369708)
Key counter wire set (P/N 302H794560)
Key counter mount (P/N 302FZ03010)
One (1) M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1A54080)

Supplied parts of key counter set:
Key counter socket assembly (P/N 3029236241)
Key counter cover (P/N 3066060011)
Key counter mount (P/N 3066060041)
Key counter retainer (P/N 302GR03020)
Key counter cover retainer (P/N 302GR03010)
One (1) M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (P/N 5MBTPB3008PW++R)
Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight P screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010PW++R)
Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight S screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010TW++R)
Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N 7BB003306H)
One (1) M4 × 20 tap-tight S screw (P/N 7BB100420H)
One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N 7BC1003055++H01)
One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1B03080)
One (1) M4 × 30 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1B54300)
Five (5) M4 × 6 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04060)
Two (2) M4 × 10 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04100)

Supplied parts of key counter wire set:
Key counter wire (P/N 302H746930)
Wire film R (P/N 302H739960)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.

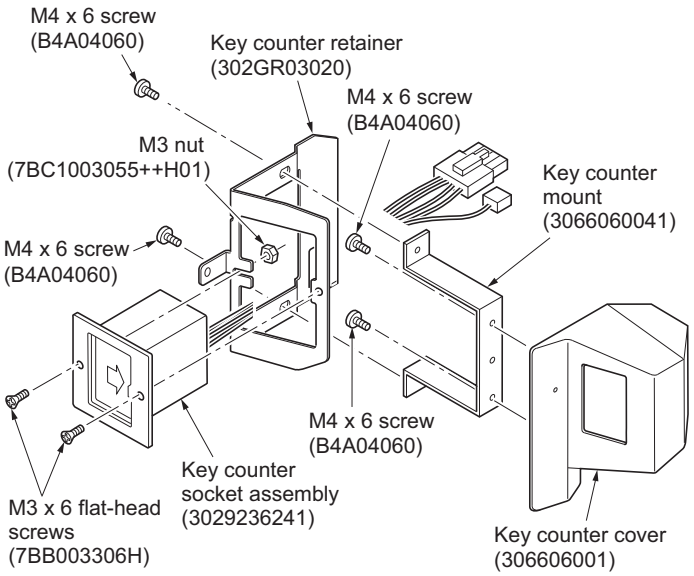


Figure 1-2-16

5. Remove two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.

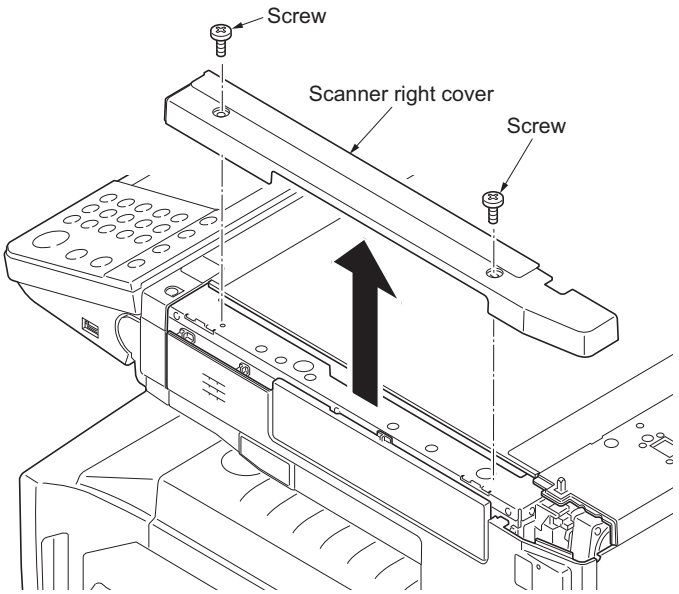


Figure 1-2-17

6. Remove the screw and then remove the upper right cover.

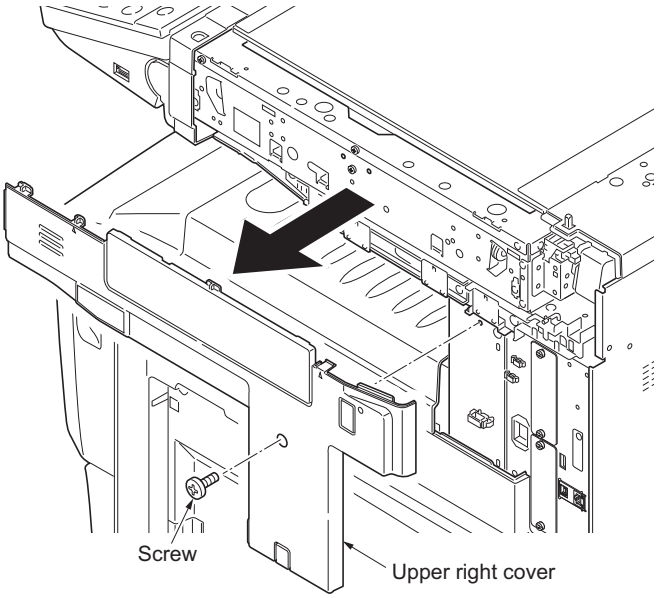


Figure 1-2-18

7. Cut out the aperture plate on the upper right cover using nippers.

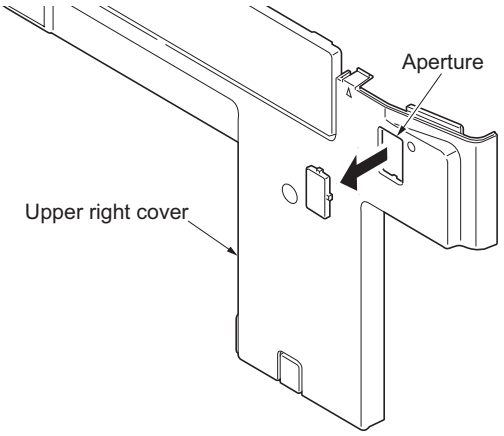


Figure 1-2-19

8. Remove the rear upper filter cover.
9. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.

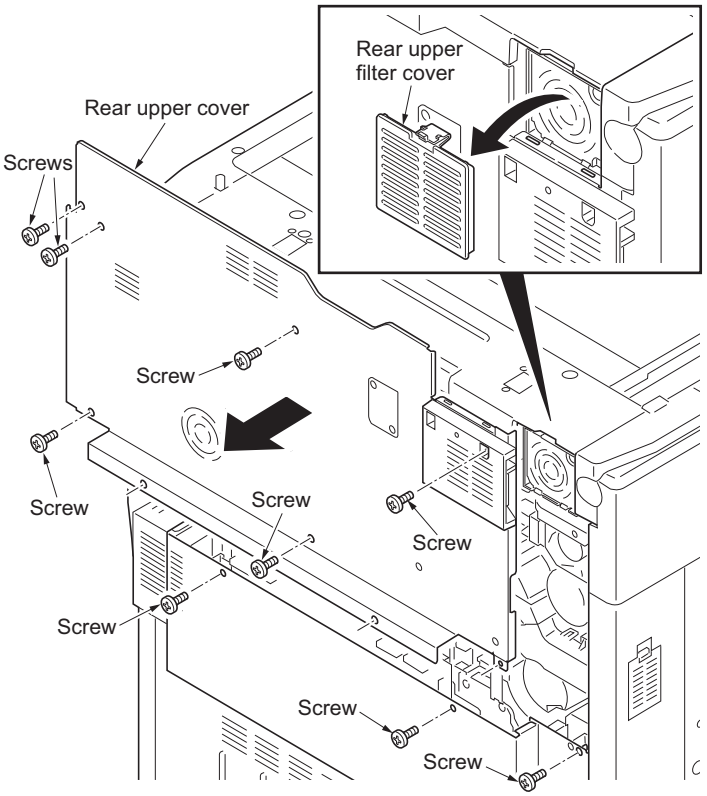


Figure 1-2-20

10. Remove the connector.
11. Remove the relay connector.
12. Release wire saddle 1 and 2, and then remove the wire.

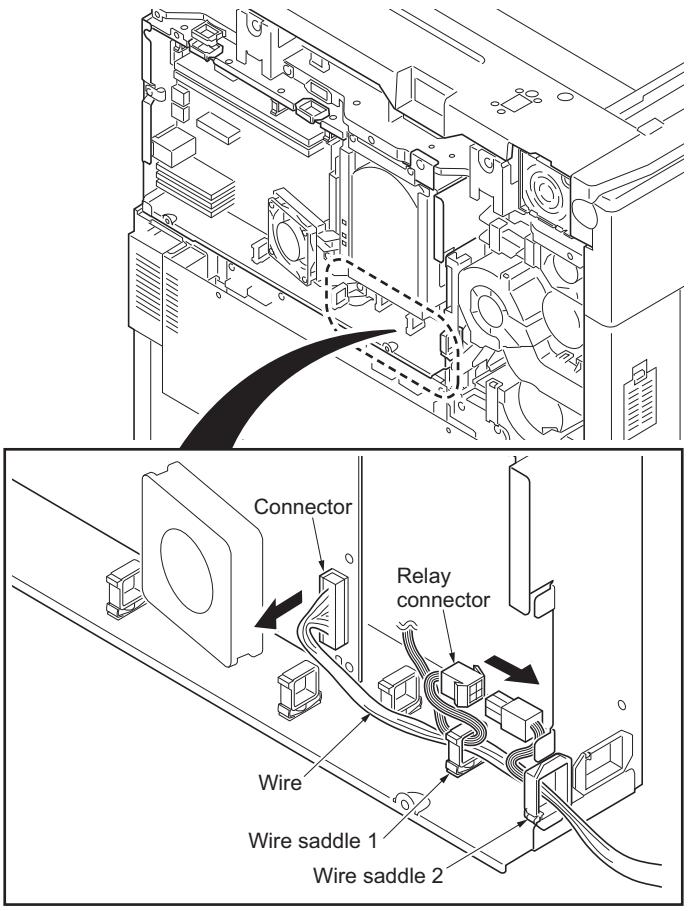


Figure 1-2-21

13. Remove two connectors (YC17 and YC21).
14. Remove the screw and then remove the clamp.
15. Remove the connector (YC12).
16. Release wire saddle 1 and 2, and then remove the wires.

17. While pressing and holding the lock levers, remove the three connectors (YC3, YC4 and YC11).
18. Release wire saddles 3 to 6, and then remove the wires.

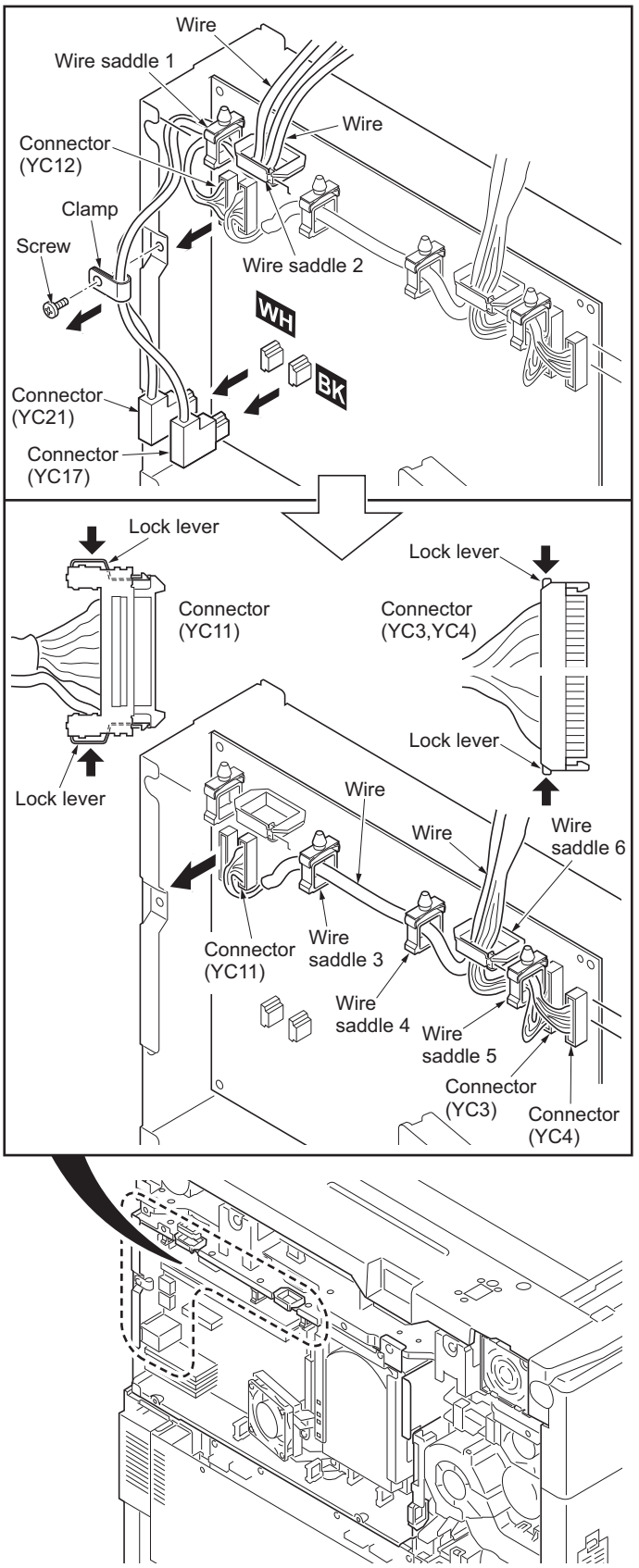


Figure 1-2-22

19. Remove three screws
20. Open the controller box.

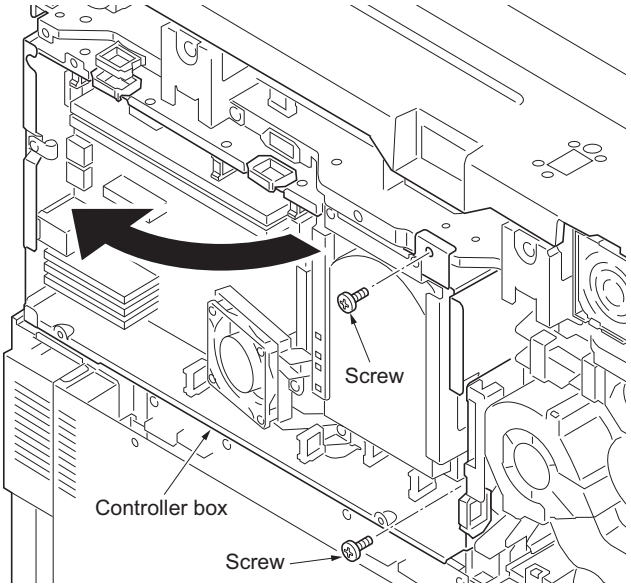


Figure 1-2-23

21. While holding the controller box, remove the pin.
    Take care not to drop the controller box.
22. Remove the controller box.

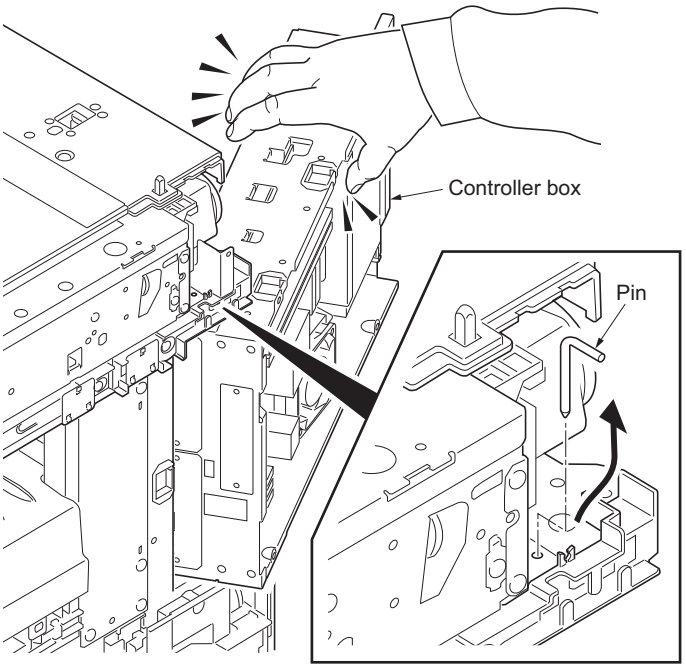


Figure 1-2-24

23. Connect the connector of the key counter wire to the connector YC36 on the engine PWB.
24. Release five wire saddles and then fasten the key counter wire.
25. Refit all the parts removed in steps 22 to 8.

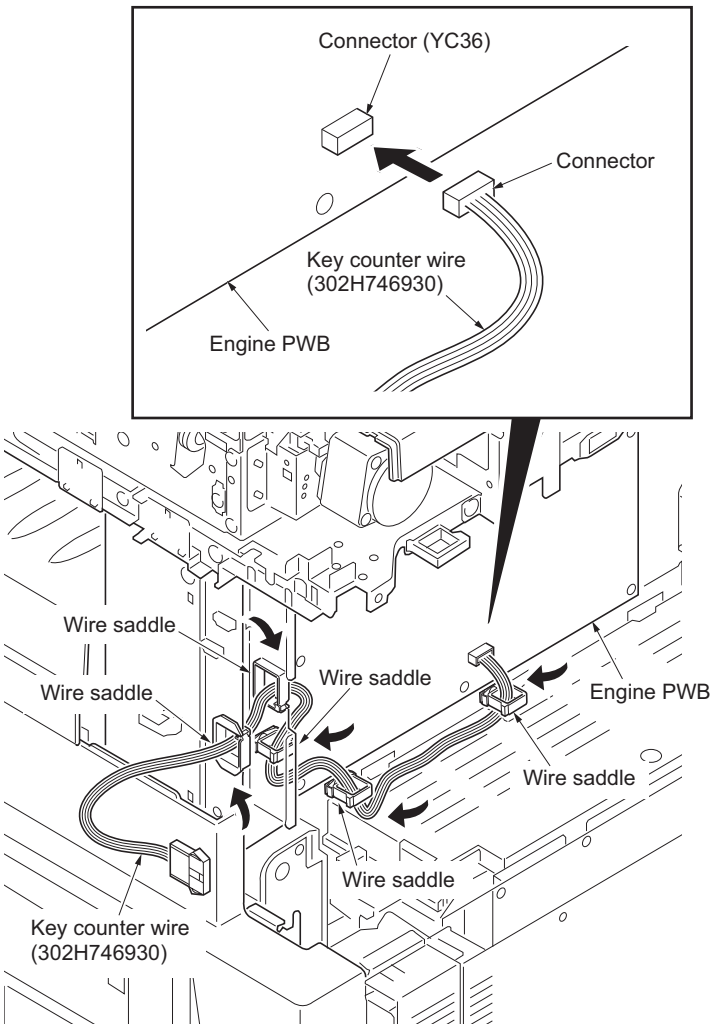


Figure 1-2-25

26. Release two wire saddles and then fasten the key counter wire.
27. Carry out wiring of key counter wire on the wire guide.

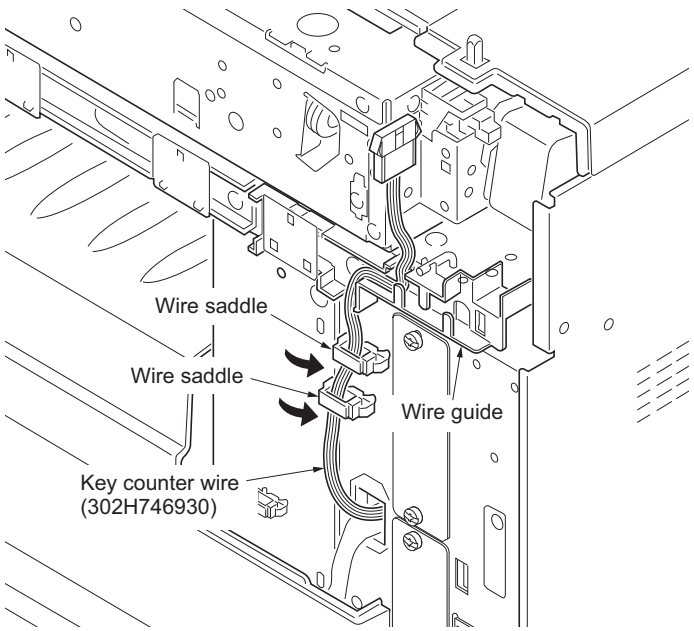


Figure 1-2-26

28. Remove the wire film.
29. Fit the wire film R to wire guide.

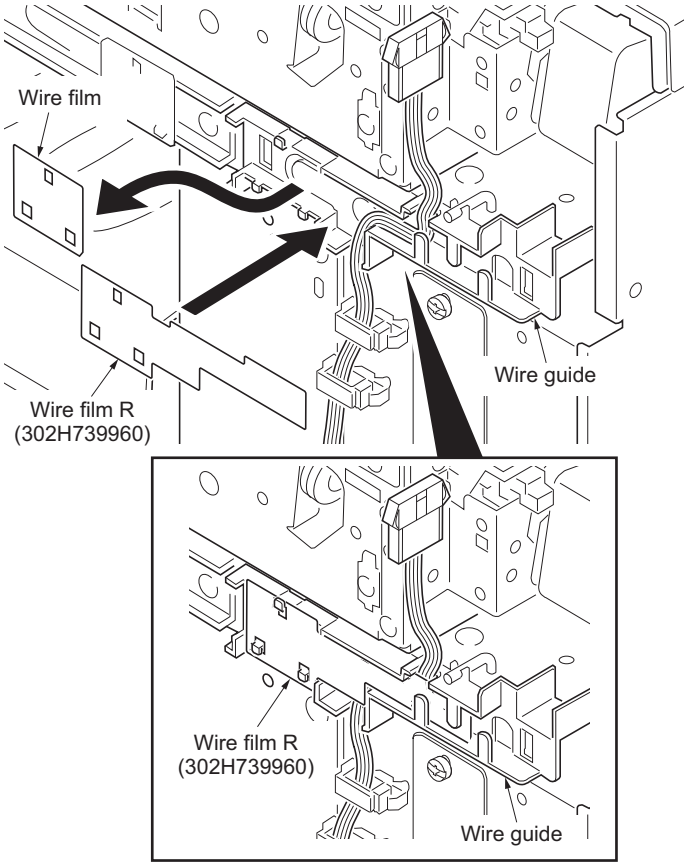


Figure 1-2-27

30. Fit the key counter mount to the rear upper frame using the M4 x 8 screw.

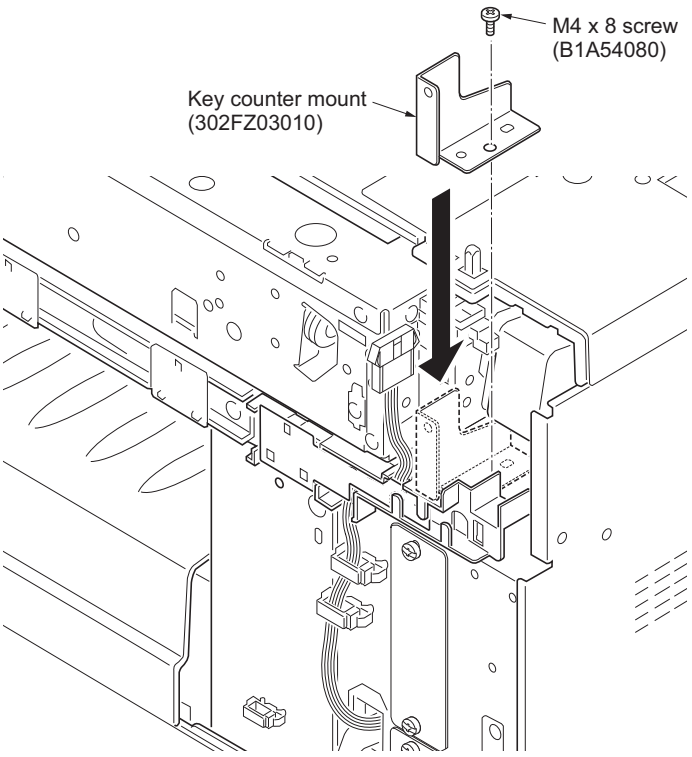


Figure 1-2-28

31. Pass the connector of the key counter wire through the aperture in the upper right cover.
32. Refit the upper right cover.

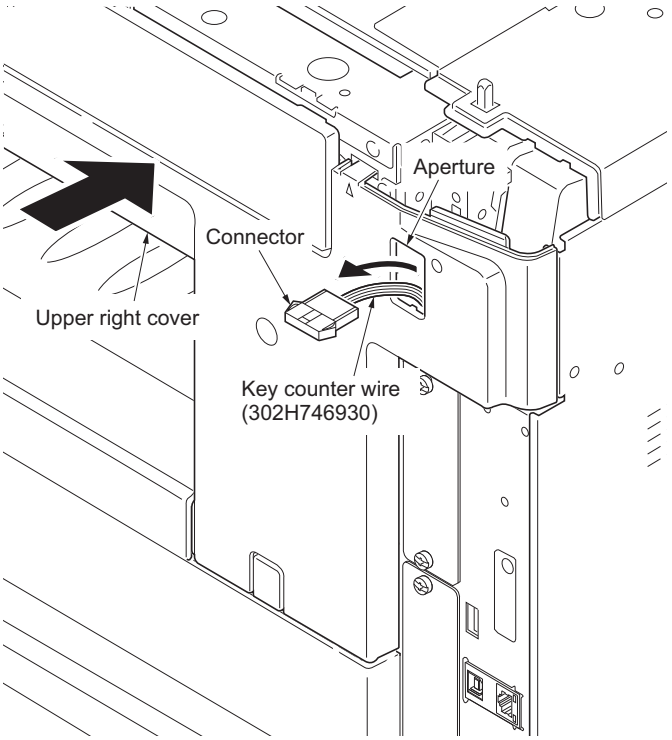


Figure 1-2-29

33. Pass the key counter wire through the aperture in the key counter cover retainer.
34. Insert the projection of the key counter cover retainer in the slit of the upper right cover.
35. Fit the key counter cover retainer using the M4 x 20 screw.

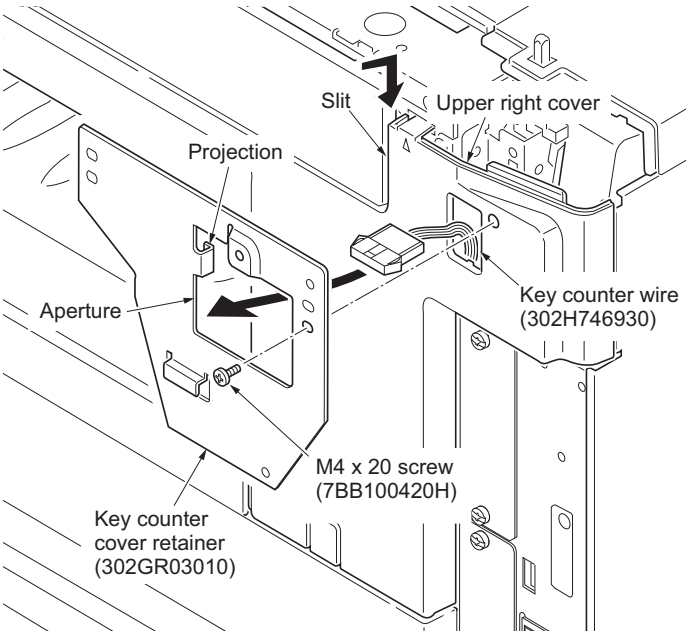


Figure 1-2-30

36. Connect the connector of the key counter signal cable to the connector of the key counter wire.
37. Fit the key counter cover to the machine using the M4 x 6 screw.
38. Refit the scanner right cover.
39. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.

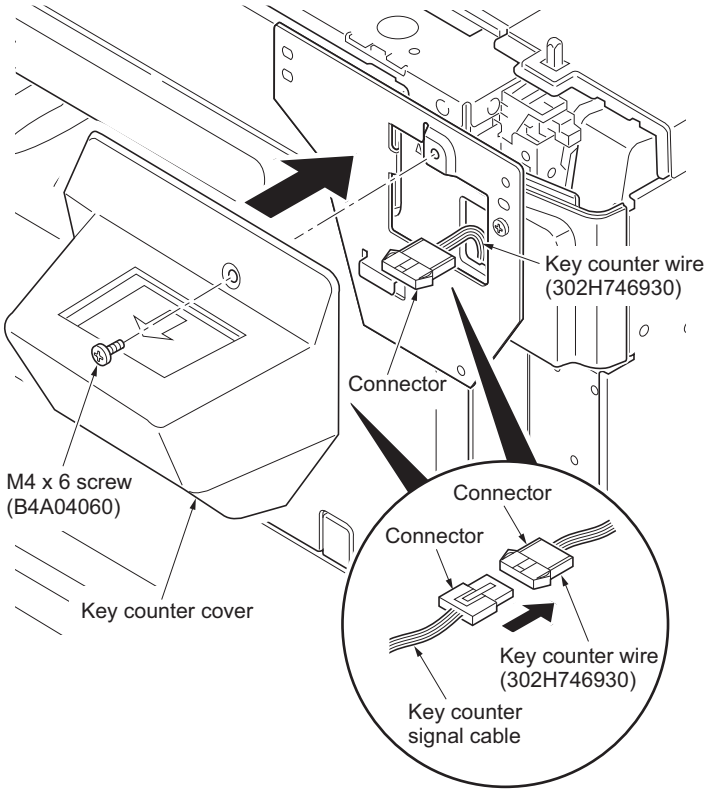


Figure 1-2-31

40. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
41. Run maintenance item U204 and select "Key-Counter".
42. Exit the maintenance mode.
43. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
44. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.

1-2-4 Installing the cassette heater (option) (inch specifications only)

Installing the cassette heater requires the following component:
Cassette heater (P/N 302H794760)
Two (2) M4 x 10 screws (P/N 7BB780410H)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove cassette 1 and 2.
3. Remove the screw and then remove the connector cover.
4. Place the cassette heater by engaging it with the four hooks.
5. Fit the cassette heater using two screws.

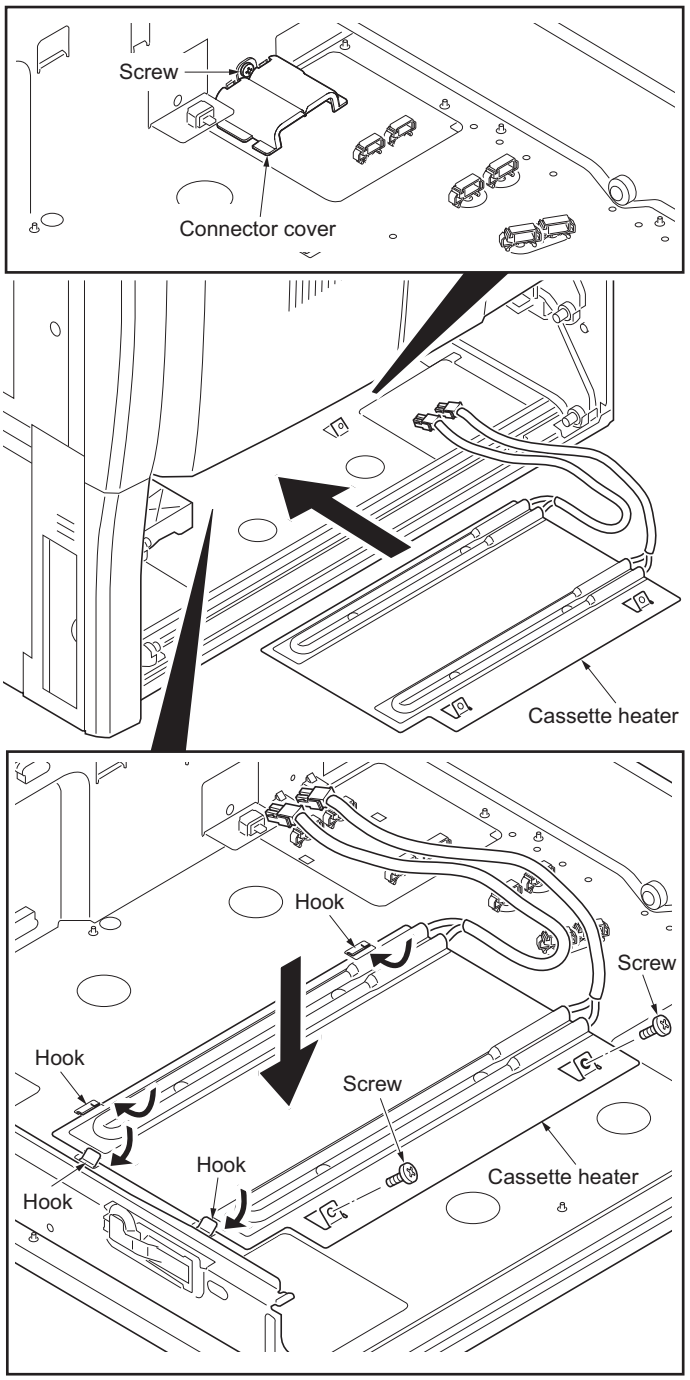


Figure 1-2-32

6. Fasten the cassette heater wires to eight wire saddles.
7. Connect two connectors of cassette heater wires to each connector of the machine.
8. Refit the connector cover.
9. Refit the cassette 1 and 2.

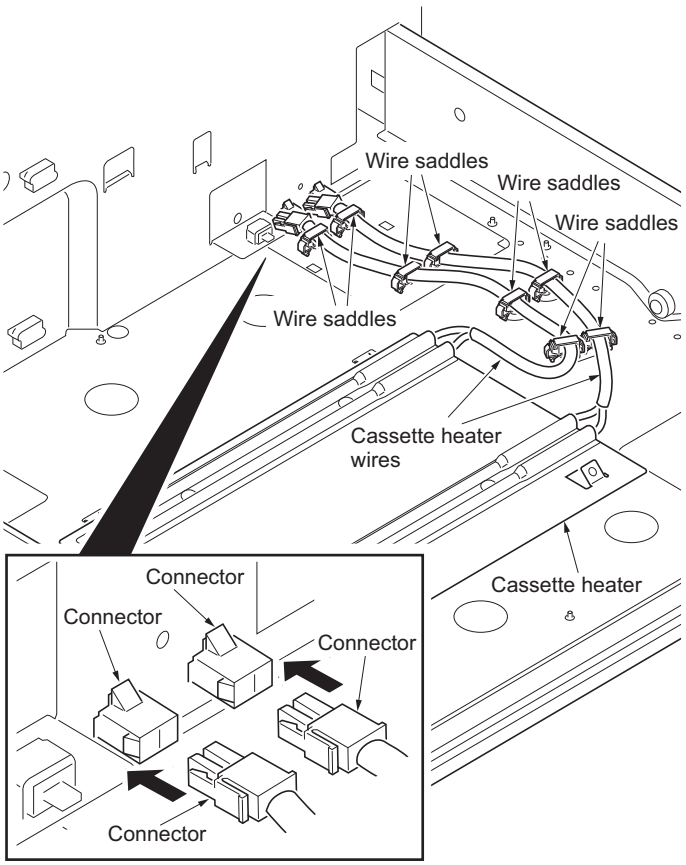


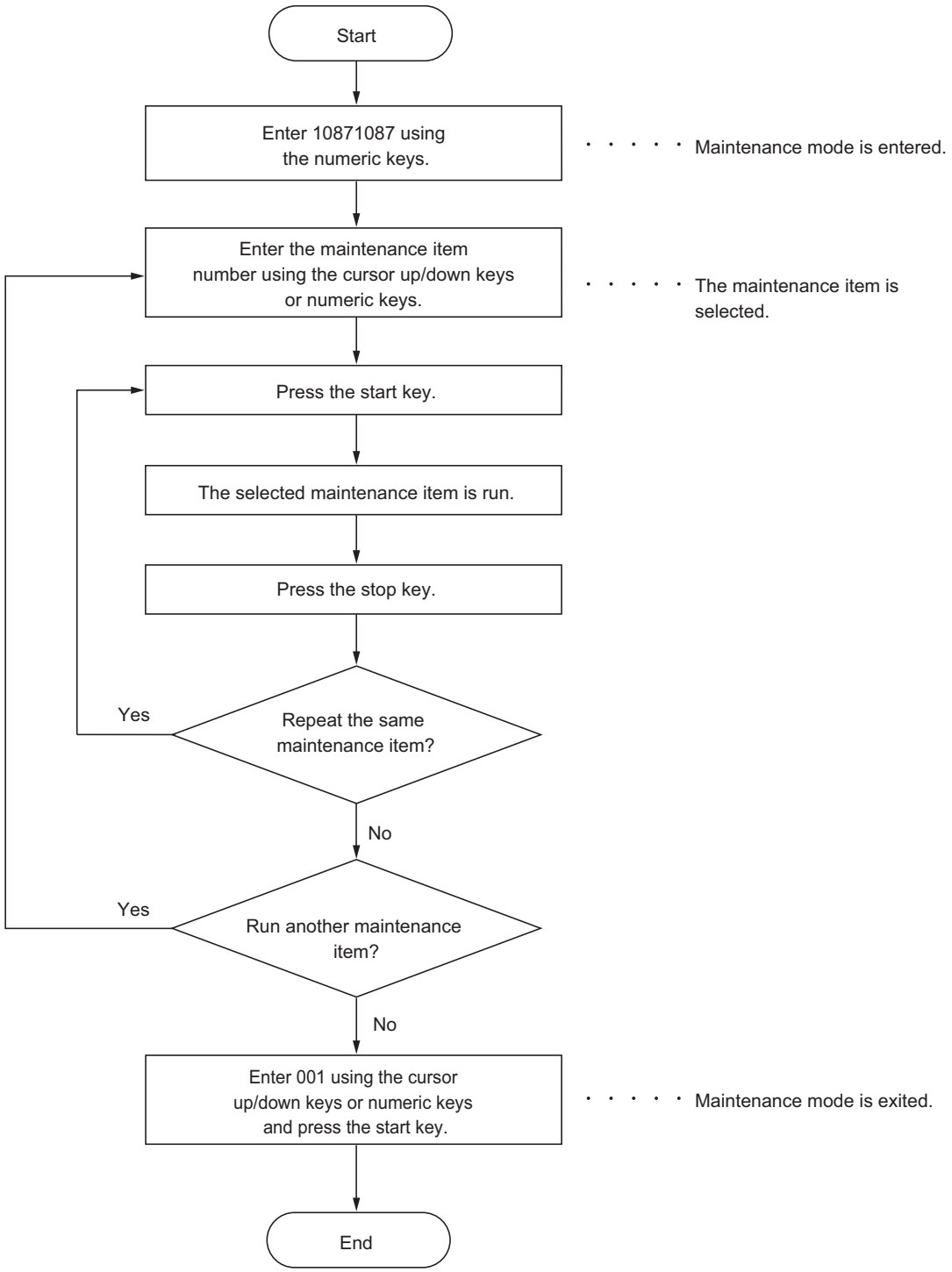
Figure 1-2-33

10. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
11. Run maintenance item U327 and select “MODE Setting” and set “MODE2”.

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance mode item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
General	U000	Outputting an own-status report	-		
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-		
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-		
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	-		
	U004	Setting the machine number	-		
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-		
Initialization	U021	Memory initializing	-		
	U024	HDD formatting	-		
Drive, paper feed and paper conveying system	U030	Checking the operation of the motors	-		
	U031	Checking switches and sensors for paper conveying	-		
	U032	Checking the operation of the clutches	-		
	U033	Checking the operation of the solenoids	-		
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing LSUOUT TOP LSUOUT LEFT LSUOUT TOP B/W	0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0 0/0/0/0/0/0 0/0/0/0/0/0		
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper Length/Width	330/210		
	U037	Checking the operation of the fan motors	-		
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper			
		Paper Loop Amount	0/1/1/1/0/6/0/ -9/0/-9/0/-4	0/7/1/7/-2/7/0/ -2/0/-2/0/-2	
		Paper Loop Amount B/W	0/1/0/0		
	U052	Setting the fuser motor control Set Loop Sensor Loop Sensor Control Loop Sensor Valid	- OFF/ON/ON/ON OFF		
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed			
		Set MOTOR 1	6/6/6/6/ 59/59/59/59	4/4/4/4/ 43/43/43/43	
		Set MOTOR 2	0/0/0/0/0/0/0		
		Set MOTOR 3	0/0/325/0/0/-50	0/0/300/150/0/0	
		Set MOTOR 4	27	20	17
		Set MOTOR 5	0/0/50/50/0		
		Set MOTOR 6	0/0/300/380/0		
	U059	Setting fan mode	MODE1/0/MODE2		
Optical	U061	Checking the operation of the exposure lamp	-		
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0		
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification	0/0		
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	0/0		
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	0/0		
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	0/0		
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0/0/0/0		
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0/0/0/0/0		

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
Optical	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0/0		
	U073	Checking the scanner operation	-		
	U074	Adjusting the DP input light luminosity	0		
	U080	Setting the economy mode	60/60		
	U081	Adjusting the correct exposure	0/0/0/0/0/0		
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	145/145/145		
	U089	Outputting the MIP-PG pattern	-		
	U091	Setting the white line correction	112/75/0		
	U093	Adjusting the exposure density gradient TEXT MIXED OTHER FAX TEXT FAX PHOTO	 0/0/0/0 0/0/0/0 0/0/0/0 0/0 0/0		
	U099	Adjusting original size detection	40/30/20/40/30/20/40/30/20/ 19/19/19/150		
			50/50/50/50/50/50/50/50/50/ 49/49/49/150 (when DP is installed		
High voltage	U100	Adjusting main high voltage Adjust MC AC Bias AC Auto Adjustment Set DC1 Adjust DC2 Adjust DC2(B/W) Low Temp. Setting (Drum) Set Charger Freq	 150/150/150/150/150 ON - 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0 0 1 31449/31449		
	U101	Setting the voltage for the primary transfer			
		Normal (Full M)	95	105	
		Normal (Half M)	75	78	
		Normal (B/W M)	105		
		Add Color (C)	5		
		Add Color (Y)	5		
		Add Color (K)	15	20	
		Add Color 2nd(C)	0		
		Add Color 2nd(M)	0		
		Add Color 2nd(Y)	0		
		Add Color 2nd(K)	-10	-15	
		Surround Correct	0		
	U106	Setting the voltage for the secondary transfer			
		Light/Normal 1 Full Front	150/120/100/90	160/140/120/110	
		Normal 2/3 Full Front	150/120/90	180/150/120	
		Light/Normal 1 Full Back	150/110/80/65	180/120/95/75	
		Normal 2/3 Full Back	150/110/70	150/130/90	
		Light Normal1(F)Front BW	150/120/90	180/140/130	
		Normal2/3(F)Front BW	150/120/90	180/140/130	
		Light/Normal1(F)Back BW	150/110/65	160/130/90	
		Normal2/3(F)Back BW	150/110/70	160/130/90	

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
High voltage	U106	Heavy 1 - 3 (H)Front	150/90/65	150/90/70	
		Heavy 1 - 3 (H)Back	110/80/45	13/100/60	
		OHP	97/44	123/51	
		Bias	189/189/34/34/34		
	U107	Setting the transfer cleaning voltage			
		Belt Clean A(F)	70/70/70	83/83/83	
		Belt Clean A(H)	50/50/50	62/62/62	
		Belt Clean B	140/105/150	150/120/150	
		Belt Clean A(BW)	120/120/120		
	U108	Setting separation shift bias			
		Set Output Value	85/60/52/60/8/26		
		Set Output Value B/W	-		85/60/ 52/60
		Set Timing	-190/0/110	-200/0/70	
	U109	Checking the drum type	-		
	U110	Checking the drum count	-		
	U111	Checking the drum drive time	-		
	U117	Checking the drum number	-		
	U118	Displaying the drum history	-		
	U119	Setting the drum	-		
	U122	Checking the transfer belt unit number	-		
	U123	Displaying the transfer belt unit history	-		
	U127	Checking/clearing the transfer count	-		
	U128	Setting transfer high-voltage timing	-54/-54/10		
Developing	U131	Adjusting the toner sensor control voltage Manual Adjustment Auto Adjustment Set Operation Mode	116/116/116/116 - Automatic adjustment		
	U132	Replenishing toner forcibly	-		
	U135	Checking toner motor operation	-		
	U136	Setting toner near end detection	3/3		
	U139	Displaying the temperature and humidity outside the machine	-		
	U140	Displaying developing bias	-		
		Dev Roll2 DC	80/80/80/80	93/93/93/93/101	
		Dev Roll1(Calib)DC	102/129/155/182/ 102/129/155/182	112/142/173/204/ 112/142/173/204	
		Dev Roll2 AC	174/174/174/174/174		
		Dev Roll1DC	162/162/162/162/162		
		Roll1 DC Int	85/85/85/85/89		
		Dev Roll1AC	255/255/255/255/255		
		DEV Roll Freq	858/858/858/858/858		
		DEV Roll Duty	592/592/592/592/592		
		Dev Roll2 Duty	373/373/373/373/373		

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
Developing	U147	Setting for toner applying operation Transition Time Set Operation Mode Upper Limit Sleeve Cleaning Interval Set Drum Cleaning Mode Set Minimum Value	50 MODE1 5.0 60 MODE1 10/20		
	U148	Setting drum refresh mode	ON		
	U155	Displaying the toner sensor output	-		
	U156	Setting the toner replenishment level Supply Level Empty Level	502/502/502/502/502 101/101/101/101/101		
	U157	Checking the developing drive time	-		
	U158	Checking the developing count	-		
Fuser	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature			
		Ready Temp.	153*1	160*1	
		Stable (Driving)	160*1	165*1	
		Stable (Stop)	160*1	165*1	
		Temp. Print Full	160*1	165*1	
		Shift Print Dup	0*1	-5*1	
		P. Roller Temp.	-	140*1	
		Stability Condition	0		
	U163	Resetting the fuser problem data	-		
	U167	Checking/clearing the fuser count	-		
	U199	Displaying fuser heater temperature	-		
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-		
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	-		
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	-		
	U203	Operating the DP separately	0		
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	OFF*1		
	U206	Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender	-		
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-		
	U208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	Letter (Inch)/A4 (Metric)*1		
	U221	Setting the USB host lock function	OFF*1		
	U222	Setting the IC card type	-		
	U223	Operation panel lock	Unlock*1		
	U224	Panel sheet extension	-		
	U234	Setting punch destination	INCH (Inch)/EUROPE METRIC (Metric)		
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	0/0*1		
	U240	Checking the operation of the finisher	-		
	U241	Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher	-		
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-		
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-		
	U245	Checking messages	-		

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
Operation panel and support equipment	U246	Setting the finisher 3000 FINISHER BOOKLET FOLDER	0/0/0/0/0/0*1 0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0*1		
	U247	Setting the paper feed device	-		
Mode setting	U250	Change the maintenance count pre-set	-		
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	-		
	U252	Setting the destination	-		
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)		
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	EJECT*1		
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	0		
	U276	Setting the copy count mode	MODE0*1		
	U278	Setting the delivery date	-		
	U284	Setting 2 color copy mode	OFF*1		
	U285	Setting service status page	ON		
	U323	Setting abnormal temperature and humidity warning	ON		
	U325	Setting the paper interval	ON/1		
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON*1/8		
	U327	Setting the cassette heater control	OFF/NONE		
	U328	Side ejection setting	OFF*1		
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	1.0*1		
	U340	Setting the applied mode	0/0*1		
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	-		
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF*1		
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	-		
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	4.0/3.0/3.0/3.9		
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass	2.0/2.0/2.0/2.0		
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0/3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0		
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	0		
	U410	Adjusting the halftone automatically	Table 1		
	U411	Adjusting the scanner automatically	-		
	U412	Adjusting the uneven density	-		
	U425	Setting the target	-		
	U429	Setting the offset for the color balance	0/0/0/0		
	U432	Setting the center offset for the exposure Full Color Mono Color	 0/0/0 0/0/0		

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
Image processing	U464	Setting the ID correction operation Permission Set Time Interval Leaving Time Permission Act.(50sheets) Permission (ON/Sleep out) Permission (AP/NE) Execution Timing Driving Time Execution Print Rate Set Custom Target Value Permission(B/W) AC Calib Magnification SetInt.Calib PrintRate(H) Set Calib TimingduringPrint(H) AC Calib Type			
		Warmup Calib Type	MODE1	-	
	U465	Data reference for ID correction			
	U467	Setting the color registration adjustment			
		Color Regist Adjustment			
		Transfer Belt Speed Adj.			
		Set Timing			
	U468	Checking the color registration data			
	U470	Setting the JPEG compression ratio System Copy Send			
	U473	Adjusting laser power output Set Sensitivity Adjust LSU Laser Power Density Correction Input Density Adjust Value Set Density (Emit Time/Dot)			
	U474	Checking LSU cleaning operation			
	U485	Setting the image processing mode			
	U486	Setting color/black and white operation mode			
Network scanner	U510	Setting the enterprise mode			

25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
		ON
		480
		60
		ON
		ON
		ON
		1800
		600
		20
		OFF
		500/500/500/10/300/300/300/300
		50
		0/0/0/0
		10
		600
		MODE1
MODE1	-	
		-
		ON
		ON
		10
		-
		90/90*1
		90/90/90/90*1
		30/40/51/70/90*1
		30/40/51/70/90*1
		30/40/51/70/90*1
		30/40/51/70/90*1
		15/25/60*1
		15/25/60*1
		-
		16/16/16/16
		ON
		-
		ALL:0
		1000/1
		1/0*1
		MODE2
		ON (Inch)/OFF (Metric)*1

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*		
			25/25,30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm	50/40 ppm
Other	U901	Checking copy counts by paper feed locations	-		
	U902	Checking/clearing finisher punch count	-		
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-		
	U904	Checking/clearing the call for service counts	-		
	U905	Checking counts by optional devices	-		
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-		
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-		
	U910	Clearing the coverage data	-		
	U911	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes	-		
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	-		
	U920	Checking the copy counts	-		
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-		
	U928	Checking machine life counts	-		
	U930	Checking/clearing the charger roller count	-		
	U942	Setting of deflection for feeding from DP	0/0/0		
	U964	Checking of log	-		
	U969	Checking of toner area code	-		
	U977	Data capture mode	-		
	U984	Checking the developing unit number	-		
	U985	Displaying the developing unit history	-		
	U989	HDD Scandisk	-		
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to	-		
	U991	Checking the scanner operation count	-		
	U996	Setting the Self-diagnostic function mode	-		

*Initial setting for executing U020, *1: The item initialized for executing U021

(3) Contents of maintenance mode items

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
Outputting an own-status report
Description
Outputs lists of the current settings of the maintenance items, and paper jam and service call occurrences. Outputs the event log or service status page. Also sends output data to the USB memory.
Printing a report is disabled either when a job is remaining in the buffer or when [Pause All Print Jobs] is pressed to halt printing.
Purpose
To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or paper jam or service call occurrences. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be output.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr>
<tr><td>MAINTENANCE</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr>
<tr><td>USER STATUS</td><td>Outputs the user status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>SERVICE STATUS</td><td>Outputs the service status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>EVENT</td><td>Outputs the event log</td></tr>
<tr><td>NETWORK STATUS</td><td>Outputs the network status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>ALL</td><td>Outputs the all reports</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The interrupt print mode is entered and a list is output.
When A4/Letter paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location.
When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed.
The output status is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>READY</td><td>Standing by for output (including while outputting other reports)</td></tr>
<tr><td>ACTIVE</td><td>Performing output processing</td></tr>
<tr><td>COMPLETE</td><td>Output processing completed normally</td></tr>
<tr><td>ERROR</td><td>Output processing terminated with an error</td></tr>
</table>
Method: Send to the USB memory
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter the maintenance item.
5. Press the start key.
6. Select the item to be send.
7. Select [TEXT] or [HTML].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr>
<tr><td>Print</td><td>Outputs the report</td></tr>
<tr><td>To USB (TEXT)</td><td>Sends output data to the USB memory (text type)</td></tr>
<tr><td>To USB (HTML)</td><td>Sends output data to the USB memory (HTML type)</td></tr>
</table>
8. Press the start key.
Output will be sent to the USB memory.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	**Event log**

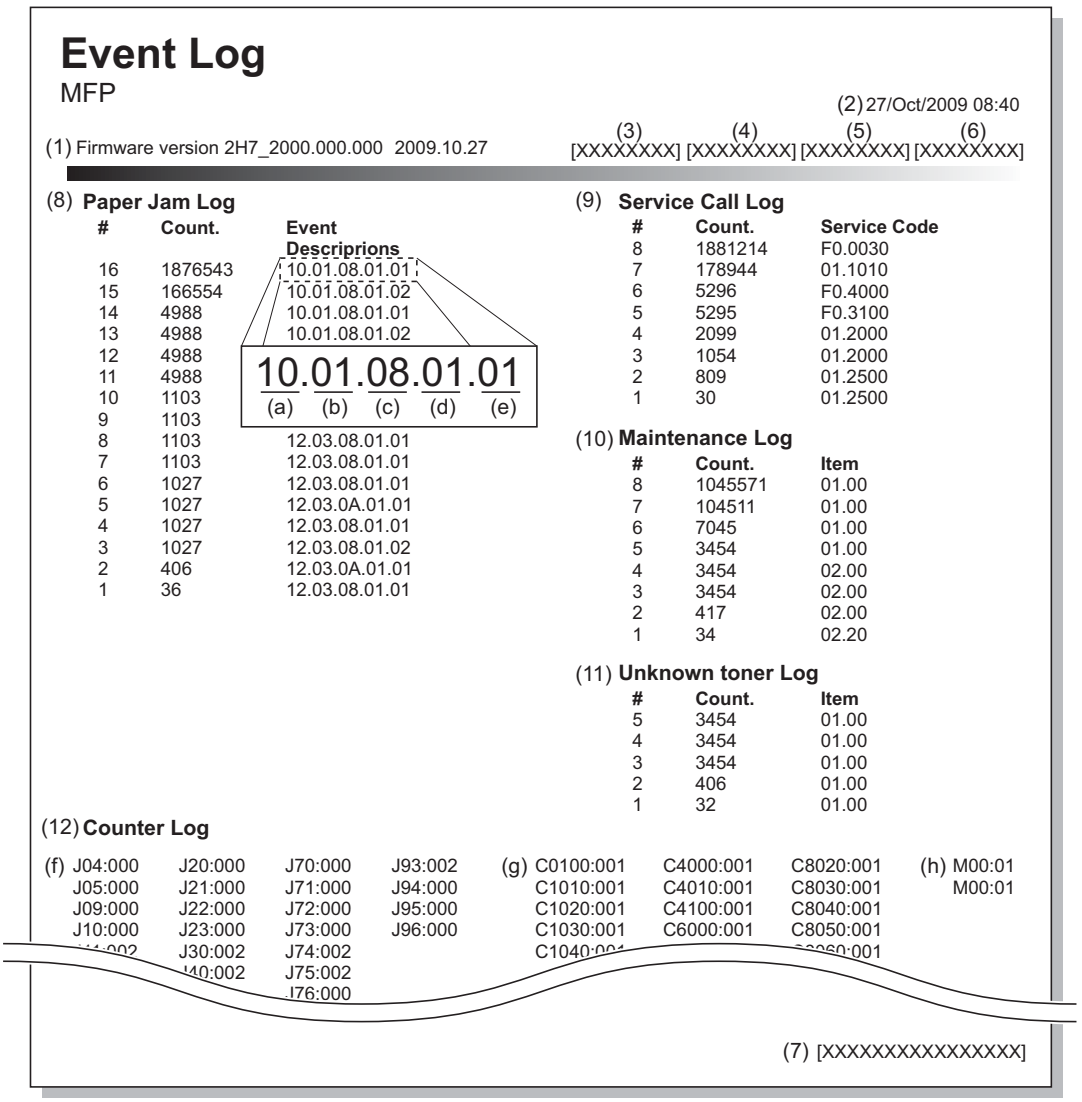


Figure 1-3-1

Detail of event log

No.	Items	Description
(1)	System version	
(2)	System date	
(3)	Engine soft version	
(4)	Engine boot version	
(5)	Controller BROM version	
(6)	Operation panel mask version	
(7)	Machine serial number	

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Items	Description		
(8)	Paper Jam Log	#	Count.	Event
		Remembers 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the occurrence of the previous paper jam is less than 16, all of the paper jams are logged. When the occurrence excesseds 16, the oldest occurrence is removed.	The total page count at the time of the paper jam.	Log code (2 digit, hexadecimal, 5 categories) (a) Cause of a paper jam (b) Paper source (c) Paper size (d) Paper type (e) Paper eject
		(a) Cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)		
		00: Initial JAM 04: Cover open JAM 05: Secondary paper feed does not start 09: Sequence error JAM 10: No paper feed from cassette 1 11: No paper feed from cassette 2 12: No paper feed from optional cassette 3 13: No paper feed from optional cassette 4 14: No paper feed from MP tray 15: Misfeed in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1 16: Misfeed in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2 17: Misfeed in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3 18: Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section 19: Misfeed in paper feeder paper conveying section 21: Multiple sheets in MP tray paper feed section 22: Multiple sheets in cassette 1 paper feed section 23: Multiple sheets in cassette 2 paper feed section 24: Multiple sheets in cassette 3 paper feed section 25: Multiple sheets in cassette 4 paper feed section 26: Multiple sheets in MP tray paper feed section 30: Misfeed in registration/transfer section 31: Misfeed round the transfer belt 40: Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray) 41: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1) 42: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2) 43: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 3) 44: Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 4) 45: Misfeed in fuser section (3000-sheet paper feeder) 46: Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section) 50: Misfeed in eject section 51: Misfeed in job separator eject section 52: Misfeed in feedshift section 60: Misfeed in duplex paper conveying section 1 61: Misfeed in duplex paper conveying section 2 70: No original feed 71: An original jam in the original feed section 72: An original jam in the original conveying section 73: An original jam in the original registration section 74: An original jam in the original feed section 75: An original jam in the original conveying section 76: An original jam in the original switchback section 1 77: An original jam in the original switchback section 2		

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>(8) cont.</td><td>Paper Jam Log</td><td>
78: DP cover open JAM
79: An original jam in the original eject section
80: Jam between the finisher and machine
81: Paper entry sensor non arrival jam
82: Jam in stapler
83: Eject sensor stay jam
84: Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher)
85: Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher)
87: Jam in eject section of inner tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher)
88: Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher)
89: Jam in center-folding unit (3000-sheet document finisher)
89: Jam in center-folding unit (3000-sheet document finisher)
90: Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher)
91: Finisher cover open
92: Eject paper sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher)
93: Reverse sensor jam (document finisher)
94: Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher)
95: Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher)

(b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)

00: MP tray
01: Cassette 1
02: Cassette 2
03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder)
04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder)
08: 3000-sheet paper feeder
05/06/07/09: Reserved

(c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)

00: (Not specified)
01: Monarch
02: Business
03: International DL
04: International C5
05: Executive
06: Letter-R
86: Letter-E
07: Legal
08: A4R
88: A4E
09: B5R
89: B5E
0A: A3
0B: B4
0C: Ledger
0D: A5R
0E: A6
0F: B6
10: Commercial #9
11: Commercial #6
12: ISO B5
13: Custom size
1E: C4
1F: Postcard
20: Reply-paid postcard
21: Oficio II
22: Special 1
23: Special 2
24: A3 wide
25: Ledger wide
26: Full bleed paper (12 × 8)
27: 8K
28: 16K-R
A8: 16K-E
32: Statement-R
B2: Statement-E
33: Folio
34: Western type 2
35: Western type 4

(d) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)

01: Plain
02: Transparency
03: Preprinted
04: Labels
05: Bond
06: Recycled
07: Vellum
08: Rough
09: Letterhead
0A: Color
0B: Prepunched
0C: Envelope
0D: Cardstock
0E: Coated
0F: 2nd side
10: Media 16
11: High quality
15: Custom 1
16: Custom 2
17: Custom 3
18: Custom 4
19: Custom 5
1A: Custom 6
1B: Custom 7
1C: Custom 8
</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Items	Description		
(8) cont.	Paper Jam Log	(e) Detail of paper exit location (Hexadecimal)		
		01: Face down (FD) 02: Face up (FU)/Document finisher face up (FU)/ 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FU) 03: Document finisher face down (FD) 05: Job separator tray 06: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FU) 07: 3000-sheet document finisher left sub tray (FD) 09: 3000-sheet document finisher right sub tray (FD) 0A: Center-folding unit tray 0B: Mailbox tray 1 (FD) 0C: Mailbox tray 1 (FU) 15: Mailbox tray 2 (FD) 16: Mailbox tray 2 (FU) 1F: Mailbox tray 3 (FD) 20: Mailbox tray 3 (FU) 29: Mailbox tray 4 (FD) 2A: Mailbox tray 4 (FU) 33: Mailbox tray 5 (FD) 34: Mailbox tray 5 (FU) 3D: Mailbox tray 6 (FD) 3E: Mailbox tray 6 (FU) 47: Mailbox tray 7 (FD) 48: Mailbox tray 7 (FU) 04/0D/0E: Reserved		
(9)	Service Call Log	#	Count.	Service Code
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.	The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.	Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-27) Example: 01.6000 01: Self diagnostic error 6000: Self diagnostic error code number
(10)	Maintenance Log	#	Count.	Item
		Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.	The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.	Code of maintenance replacing item (1 byte, 2 categories) First byte (Replacing item) 01: Toner container Second byte (Type of replacing item) 00: Black 01: Cyan 02: Magenta 03: Yellow First byte (Replacing item) 02: Maintenance kit Second byte (Type of replacing item) 01: MK-865A/855A 02: MK-865B/855B

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">(11)</td><td rowspan="2">Unknown Toner Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Item</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the [Toner Empty] error with using an unknown toner container.</td><td>Unkown toner log code (1 byte, 2 categories)

First byte
01: Toner container (Fixed)
Second byte
00: Black
01: Cyan
02: Magenta
03: Yellow</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">(12)</td><td rowspan="2">Counter Log

Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.</td><td>(f) Paper jam</td><td>(g) Self diagnostic error</td><td>(h) Maintenance item replacing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location.

Refer to Paper Jam Log.

All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.</td><td>Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause. (See page 1-4-27)

Example:
C6000: 4
Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.</td><td>Indicates the log counter depending on the maintenance item for maintenance.

T: Toner container
00: Black
01: Cyan
02: Magenta
03: Yellow
M: Maintenance kit
00: MK-865A/855A
01: MK-865B/855B

Example:
T00: 1
The (black) toner container has been replaced once.</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	**Service status page (1)**

Service Status Page

MFP

(2) 27/Oct/2009 08:40

(1) Firmware version 2H7_2000.000.000 2009.10.27 (3) [XXXXXXXX] (4) [XXXXXXXX] (5) [XXXXXXXX]

Controller Information

Memory status

(6) Total Size 2.0 GB

Time

(7) Local Time Zone +01:00 Tokio
(8) Date and Time 27/10/2008 08:40
(9) Time Server 10.183.53.13

Installed Options

(10) Document Processor Installed
(11) Paper feeder Cassette
(12) Finisher 3000-Finisher
(13) Mail Box Not Installed
(14) Job Sparator Installed
(15) Document Guard(A) Installed
(16) Internet FAX Kit(A) Installed
(17) Security Kit(E) Installed
(18) Data Security Kit (E) Software Type IV

Digital Dot Coverage

(19) Average(%) / Usage Page(A4/Letter Conversion)
(20) Total
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
C: 2.20 / 2222222.22
M: 3.30 / 3333333.33
Y: 4.40 / 4444444.44
(21) Copy
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
C: 2.20 / 2222222.22
M: 3.30 / 3333333.33
Y: 4.40 / 4444444.44
(22) Printer
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
C: 2.20 / 2222222.22
M: 3.30 / 3333333.33
Y: 4.40 / 4444444.44
(23) FAX
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
(24) Period (03/11/2009 - 27/10/2009 08:40)
(25) Last Page K/C/M/Y(%) 1.11/2.22/3.33/4.44

(26) **FAX Information Slot1/Slot2**
(27) Rings (Normal) 3
(28) Rings (FAX/TEL) 3
(29) Rings (TAD) 3
(30) Option DIMM Size 16 MB

(31) **FRPO Status**

Default Pattern Switch	B8	0
Default Font Number	C5*10000+C2*100+C3	00000
e-MPS error control	Y6	0

1 (32) [XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]

Figure 1-3-2

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	**Service status page (2)**

Service Status Page

MFP

27/Oct/2009 08:40

Firmware version 2H7_2000.000.000 2009.10.27 [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX]

Engine Information

(33) NVRAM Version _Bb04B29_Bb04B29
(34) Scanner Version 2H7_1200.001.089
(35) FAX Slot1
FAX BOOT Version 3MB_5000.001.001
FAX APL Version 3MB_5100.001.001
FAX IPL Version 3MB_5200.001.001
(36) MAC Address 00:C0:EE:D0:01:0D

Send Information

(37) Date and Time 09/10/27
(38) Address

(39) 1/2
(40) 100/100
(41) 0/0/0/0/0/0/
(42) 0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/
0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/
F00/U00/0/0/0/0/30/30/70/70/abcde/1/0
(43)(44)(45)(46)(47)(48)(49)(50)(51)(52)(53)(54)(55)
(56) 0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/
0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/
(57) 0000/0100/0500/1000/0000/0100/0500/1000/0000/0100/0500/1000/0000/0100/0500/1000/
0000/0100/0500/1000/0000/0100/0500/1000/0000/0100/0500/1000/0000/0100/0500/1000/
00000000000000000000000000000000/00000000000000000000000000000000/0000000000/
(58) (59) (60)
(61) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(62) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(63) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(64) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(65) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(66) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(67) 12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/0123456789012345678901234567890l/0008/00/07
12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/0123456789012345678901234567890l/0008/00/07
12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/0123456789012345678901234567890l/0008/00/07
12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/0123456789012345678901234567890l/0008/00/07
(68) XXXXXXXX
[ABCDEFGHIJ][ABCDEFGHIJ]
(69) (70)
(71) 0000000000/F80C001A37/302A183C00/000100013D/8791BEC305/0000003100/000F5D0000/01FD000000/
0000000FB7/0000000000/0000260000/0000000000/0000000000/0000008400/0000000000/011E000F51/
0000000FB7/0000000000/0000260000/0000000000/0000
(72) ABCDEFGHIJ/ABCDEFGHIJ/ABCDEFGHIJ/ABCDEFGHIJ/

2 [XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]

Figure 1-3-3

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	**Detail of service status page**

No.	Description	Supplement
(1)	System version	
(2)	System date	
(3)	Engine soft version	
(4)	Engine boot version	
(5)	Operation panel mask version	
(6)	Total RAM size	
(7)	Local time zone	
(8)	Report output date	Day/Month/Year hour:minute
(9)	NTP server name	
(10)	Presence or absence of the optional DP	Installed/Not Installed
(11)	Presence or absence of the optional paper feeder	Cassette/LCF/Not Installed
(12)	Presence or absence of the optional document finisher	3000-Finisher/1000-Finisher/Not Installed
(13)	Presence or absence of the optional mailbox	Installed/Not Installed
(14)	Presence or absence of the optional job separator	Installed/Not Installed
(15)	Presence or absence of the optional printed document guard kit	Installed/Not Installed
(16)	Presence or absence of the optional internet fax kit	Installed/Not Installed
(17)	Presence or absence of the optional data security kit	Installed/Not Installed
(18)	Data security kit identification name	
(19)	Page of relation to the A4/Letter	
(20)	Average coverage for total	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow
(21)	Average coverage for copy	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow
(22)	Average coverage for printer	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow
(23)	Average coverage for fax	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow
(24)	Cleared date and output date	
(25)	Coverage on the final output page	
(26)	Fax kit information	This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.
(27)	Number of rings	0 to 15
(28)	Number of rings before automatic	0 to 15
(29)	Number of rings before connecting to answering machine	0 to 15
(30)	Optional DIMM size	
(31)	FRPO setting	
(32)	Machine serial number	

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Description	Supplement
(33)	NV RAM version	_ Bb 04B29 _ Bb 04B29 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).
(34)	Scanner firmware version	
(35)	Fax firmware version	This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.
(36)	Mac address	
(37)	The last sent date and time	
(38)	Transmission address	
(39)	Destination information/Area information	
(40)	Margin settings	Top margin/Left margin
(41)	Margin/Page length/Page width settings	Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/ Left margin integer part/Left margin decimal part/ Page length integer part/Page length decimal part/ Page width integer part/Page width decimal part
(42)	Life counter (The first line)	Machine life counter/MP tray life counter/ Cassette 1 counter/Cassette 2 counter/ Cassette 3 counter/Cassette 4 counter/Duplex counter
	Life counter (The second line)	Drum unit K counter/Drum unit C counter/ Drum unit M counter/Drum unit Y counter/ Transfer belt unit counter/Developing unit K counter/ Developing unit C counter/Developing unit M counter/ Developing unit Y counter/Maintenance kit A counter/ Maintenance kit B counter
(43)	Panel lock information	0: OFF/1: Partial lock/2: Full lock
(44)	USB information	0: Not installed/1: Full speed/2: Hi speed
(45)	Paper handling information	0: Paper source unit select/1: Paper source unit
(46)	Color printing double count mode	0: All single counts 1: A3, Single count, Less than 420 mm (length) 2: Legal, Single count, 356 mm or less (length) 3: Folio, Single count, Less than 330 mm (length)
(47)	Black and white printing double count mode	0: All single counts 1: A3, Single count, Less than 420 mm (length) 2: Legal, Single count, 356 mm or less (length) 3: Folio, Single count, Less than 330 mm (length)

Maintenance item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Description	Supplement
(48)	Billing counting timing	
(49)	Temperature (machine inside)	
(50)	Temperature (machine outside)	
(51)	Relative temperature (machine outside)	
(52)	Absolute temperature (machineoutside)	
(53)	Fixed assets number	
(54)	Job end judgment time-out time	
(55)	Job end detection mode	
(56)	Media type attributes 1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20)	Weight settings 0: Light/1: Normal 1 / 2: Normal 2 / 3: Normal 3/ 4: Heavy 1 / 5: Heavy 2 / 6: Heavy 3 / 7: Extra Heavy Fuser settings 0: High / 1: Middle / 2: Low / 3: Vellum Duplex settings 0: Disable / 1: Enable
(57)	Calibration information	
(58)	Calibration information	
(59)	Calibration information	
(60)	Calibration information	
(61)	Calibration information	
(62)	Calibration information	
(63)	Calibration information	
(64)	Calibration information	
(65)	Calibration information	
(66)	Calibration information	
(67)	RFID information	
(68)	RFID reader/writer version information	
(69)	Color table version	
(70)	Color table 2 version	
(71)	Maintenance information	
(72)	Drum serial number	Black/Cyan/Magenta/Yellow

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U001</td><td>Exiting the maintenance mode
Description
Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode.
Purpose
To exit the maintenance mode.

Method
1. Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U002</td><td>Setting the factory default data
Description
Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings.
Purpose
To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed).

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [MODE1(ALL)]
3. Press the start key.
The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
For errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization.

Error codes
<table><tr><th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>01 to 1F</td><td>Counter error</td></tr><tr><td>20 to 3F</td><td>Engine error</td></tr><tr><td>40 to 5F</td><td>Scanner/DP error</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td>U003</td><td>Setting the service telephone number
Description
Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.
Purpose
To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.
Method
Press the start key. The currently set telephone number is displayed.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
The keys to enter the number are displayed on the touch panel.
2. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits).
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U004</td><td>
Setting the machine number
Description
Sets or displays the machine number.
Purpose
To check or set the machine number.

Method
1. Press the start key.
If the machine serial number of engine PWB matches with that of main PWB
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>MACHINE No.</td><td>Displays the machine serial number</td></tr>
</table>
If the machine serial number of engine PWB does not match with that of main PWB
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>MACHINE No. (MAIN)</td><td>Displays the machine serial number of main</td></tr>
<tr><td>MACHINE No. (ENGINE)</td><td>Displays the machine serial number of engine</td></tr>
</table>
Setting
Carry out if the machine serial number does not match.
1. Press [EXECUTE].
2. Press the start key. Writing of serial No. starts.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U019</td><td>
Displaying the ROM version
Description
Displays the part number of the ROM fitted to each PWB.
Purpose
To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.

Method
1. Press the start key. The ROM version are displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MAIN</td><td>Main ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>MMI</td><td>Operation ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>ENGINE</td><td>Engine ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>ENGINE BOOT</td><td>Engine booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Scanner ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>BROWSER</td><td>Browser ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>OPTION LANGUAGE</td><td>Optional language ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>DICTIONARY</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>DBA</td><td>Database connection</td></tr>
<tr><td>Solution Framework</td><td>Framework</td></tr>
<tr><td>COLOR TABLE1</td><td>Color table1</td></tr>
<tr><td>COLOR TABLE2</td><td>Color table2</td></tr>
<tr><td>MOTOR CPU</td><td>Motor CPU</td></tr>
<tr><td>MOTOR CPU BOOT</td><td>Motor CPU booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>H VLT CPU</td><td>High voltage CPU</td></tr>
<tr><td>H VLT CPU BOOT</td><td>High voltage CPU booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>SLEEP CPU</td><td>Sleep CPU</td></tr>
<tr><td>SLEEP CPU BOOT</td><td>Sleep CPU booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP</td><td>Optional DP ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>500x2PF</td><td>Optional paper feeder ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>3000PF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>1000DF</td><td>Optional document finisher ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>3000DF MAIN</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>3000DF MIDDLE</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher Inner tray ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAIL BOX</td><td>Optional mailbox ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>BOOKLET</td><td>Optional center-folding unit ROM</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX BOOT1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB booting (port 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX APL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB APL (port 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX IPL1</td><td>Optional fax control PWB IPL (port 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX BOOT2</td><td>Fax control PWB booting (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX APL2</td><td>Fax control PWB APL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX IPL2</td><td>Fax control PWB IPL (port 2: optional dual FAX)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U021</td><td>
Memory initializing
Description
Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination.
Refer to *1 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.
Purpose
To return the machine settings to their factory default.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel.
3. Press the start key. All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
For errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization.

Error codes
<table>
<tr><th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>01</td><td>Configuration initialization error</td></tr>
<tr><td>02</td><td>Counter initialization error</td></tr>
<tr><td>20</td><td>Engine initialization error</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>Scanner initialization error</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U024</td><td>
HDD formatting
Description
Initializes the hard disk.
In addition, the following settings are also initialized by initializing the hard disk.
System menu (user login administration, job accounting, address book, one-touch keys and document box etc.), shortcuts and panel programs
Purpose
To initialize the hard disk when replacing the hard disk after shipping.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [EXECUTE] on the touch panel.
3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U030</td><td>
Checking the operation of the motors
Description
Drives each motor.
Purpose
To check the operation of each motor.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the motor to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>Feed Motor</td><td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>DLP(Bk) Motor</td><td>Developing motor K (DEVM-K) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>DLP (Color) Motor</td><td>Developing motor MCY (DEVM-MCY) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fuser Motor</td><td>Fuser motor (FUM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>Exit Motor(CW)</td><td>Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockrwise</td></tr>
<tr><td>Exit Motor(CCW)</td><td>Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterclockwise</td></tr>
<tr><td>Color Release Motor</td><td>Color release motor (CRM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>Guide Motor</td><td>Rotary guide motor (RGM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>DU Motor</td><td>Duplex motor (DUM) is turned ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>Job Separator Motor</td><td>Job eject motor (JEM) is turned ON (option)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Regist Motor*</td><td>Registration motor (RM) is turned ON</td></tr>
</table>
*: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U031	**Checking switches and sensors for paper conveying** **Description** Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch or sensor on the paper path. **Purpose** To check if the switches and sensor for paper conveying operate correctly. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When a switch or sensor is detected to be in the ON position, the display for that switch or sensor will be highlighted.

Display	Switches and sensors
MPF Unit	MP tray switch (MPTSW)
MPF Feed1 JAM	MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW)
MPF Feed2 JAM	MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)
Cassette1 JAM	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)
Cassette2 JAM	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)
Desk/Deck JAM	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)
Regist Roller JAM	Registration switch (RSW)
Fuser JAM	Loop sensor (LS)
Exit JAM	Eject switch (ESW)
DU Feed1 JAM	Feedshift switch (FSSW)
DU Feed2 JAM	Duplex switch (DUSW)
Paper Full	Paper full sensor (PFS)
JobSepa FIN Exit JAM	Finisher eject switch (FESW) (option)
JobSepa Inner JAM1	Job eject switch (JESW) (option)
JobSepa Inner JAM2	Job separator eject switch (JBESW) (option)

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U032</td><td>
Checking the operation of the clutches
Description
Turns each clutch on.
Purpose
To check the operation of each clutch.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the clutch to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The clutch turns on for 1 s.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Clutches</th></tr>
<tr><td>Feed1 Clutch</td><td>Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Feed2 Clutch</td><td>Paper feed clutch 2(PFCL2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MPF Feeder On/Off Clutch</td><td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MID Roller Clutch</td><td>Middle clutch (MCL) (25/25, 30/30 ppm model only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vertical CONV. Clutch1</td><td>Feed clutch 1 (FCL1) (40/40, 50/40 ppm model only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MPF Feed Clutch</td><td>MP paper conveying clutch (MPPCCL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Regist Clutch</td><td>Registration clutch (RCL) (25/25, 30/30 ppm model only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vertical CONV. Clutch2</td><td>Feed clutch 2 (FCL2) (40/40, 50/40 ppm model only)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fuser Release Clutch</td><td>Fuser clutch (FUCL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned ON.</td></tr>
</table>
To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U033</td><td>
Checking the operation of the solenoids
Description
Applies current to each solenoid in order to check its ON status.
Purpose
To check the operation of each solenoid.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the solenoid to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The solenoid turns on for 1 s.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Solenoids</th></tr>
<tr><td>Eject Branch Solenoid</td><td>Job feedshift solenoid (JFSSOL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MPT Pick up Solenoid</td><td>MP solenoid (MPSOL)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MOTOR ON</td><td>The paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned ON.</td></tr>
</table>
To stop motor driving, press [MOTOR ON] again.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U034	**Adjusting the print start timing** **Description** Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description
LSUOUT TOP	Leading edge registration adjustment
LSUOUT LEFT	Center line adjustment
LSUOUT TOP B/W*	Leading edge registration adjustment in black/white mode

*: 50/40 ppm model only.

Adjustment: Leading edge registration adjustment

1. Select [LSUOUT TOP] or [LSUOUT TOP B/W].
2. Select the item.
   When [LSUOUT TOP] is selected.

Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step
LSUOUT TOP MPT (L)	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP MPT Half (L)	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size thick paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP CAS (L)	Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP CAS Half (L)	Paper feed from cassette (when large size thick paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP DUP (L)	Duplex mode (second) (when large size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP DUP Half (L)	Duplex mode (second) (when large size thick paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP MPT (S)	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP MPT Half (S)	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size thick paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP CAS (S)	Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP CAS Half (S)	Paper feed from cassette (when small size thick paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP DUP (S)	Duplex mode (second) (when small size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP DUP Half (S)	Duplex mode (second) (when small size thick paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm

Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U034	When [LSUOUT TOP B/W] is selected.

Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step
LSUOUT TOP MPT (L) B/W	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP CAS (L) B/W	Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP DUP (L) B/W	Duplex mode (second) (when large size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP MPT (S) B/W	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP CAS (S) B/W	Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT TOP DUP (S) B/W	Duplex mode (second) (when small size paper is used)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm

Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.

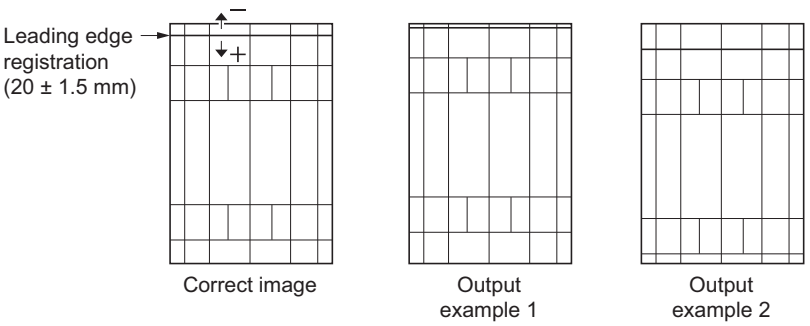
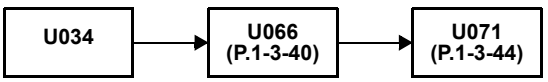


Figure 1-3-4

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Remark
When changing the setting value of [Large] each item is modified, equal to amount of the value which is changed adds also the value of [Small] each item and is pulled.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Maintenance item No.	Description
U034	**Adjustment: Center line adjustment**

1. Select the item.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
LSUOUT LEFT (MPT)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 1)	Paper feed from cassette 1	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 2)	Paper feed from cassette 2	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 3)	Paper feed from optional cassette 3	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 4)	Paper feed from optional cassette 4	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
LSUOUT LEFT (DUP)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm

2. Press the system menu key.
3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.

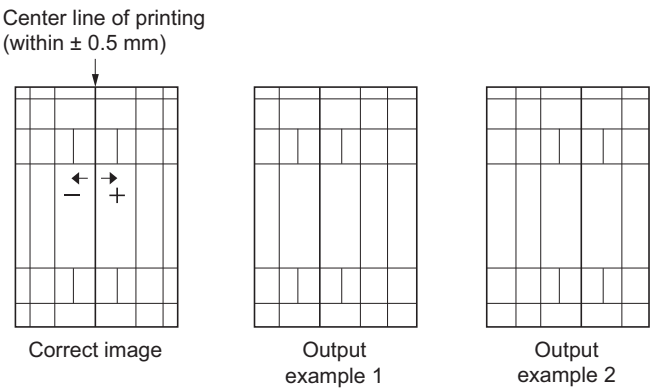
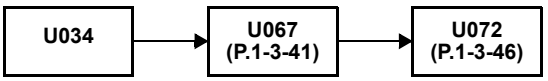


Figure 1-3-5

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Remark
If the setting value for feeding from the MP tray is changed, the difference from the former value is added to or subtracted from the values of other items.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U035</td><td>
Setting the printing area for folio paper
Description
Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper.
Purpose
To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>LENGTH DATA</td><td>Length</td><td>330 to 356 mm</td><td>330</td></tr>
<tr><td>WIDTH DATA</td><td>Width</td><td>200 to 220 mm</td><td>210</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U037</td><td>
Checking the operation of the fan motors
Description
Drives the fan motors.
Purpose
To check the operation of the fan motors.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the motor to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>Fixing Fan</td><td>Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Developing Fan</td><td>Developing fan motor 1, 2 (DEVFM1, 2) are turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>LSU Rear Fan</td><td>Developing fan motor 5 (DEVFM5) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mid Transfer Fan</td><td>Transfer fan motor 1 (TRFM1) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Source Fan</td><td>Power source fan motor 1, 2 (PSFM1, 2) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Conveying Fan</td><td>Paper conveying fan motor 1, 2 (PCFM1, 2) are turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>CONT Fan</td><td>Container fan motor (CFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>POLYGON Motor Fan</td><td>LSU fan motor (LSUFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rotary Guide Fan</td><td>Rotary fan motor (RFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Loop Sensor Fan</td><td>Loop fan motor (LFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mid Transfer Belt Fan</td><td>Transfer fan motor 2, 3 (TRFM2, 3) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Eject Fan</td><td>Eject fan motor (EFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>ISU Fan</td><td>Scanner fan motor (SFM) is turned on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>ALL</td><td>All fan motors are turned on.</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U051	**Adjusting the deflection in the paper** **Description** Adjusts the deflection in the paper at the registration roller. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description
Paper Loop Amount	Deflection adjustment
Paper Loop Amount B/W*	Deflection adjustment in black and white mode

*: 50/40 ppm model only.

Adjustment

1. Select the item.
   When [Paper Loop Amount] is selected

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
MPT (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
MPT Half (L)	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size thick paper is used)	-30 to 20	7*1/1*2	1 mm
Cassette (L)	Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)	-30 to 20	1	1 mm
Cassette Half (L)	Paper feed from cassette (when large size thick paper is used)	-30 to 20	7*1/1*2	1 mm
Duplex (L)	Duplex mode (second) (when large size paper is used)	-30 to 20	-2*1/01*2	1 mm
Duplex Half (L)	Duplex mode (second) (when large size thick paper is used)	-30 to 20	7*1/6*2	1 mm
MPT (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
MPT Half (S)	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size thick paper is used)	-30 to 20	-2*1/-9*2	1 mm
Cassette (S)	Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
Cassette Half (S)	Paper feed from cassette (when small size thick paper is used)	-30 to 20	-2*1/-9*2	1 mm
Duplex (S)	Duplex mode (second) (when small size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
Duplex Half (S)	Duplex mode (second) (when small size thick paper is used)	-30 to 20	-2*1/-4*2	1 mm

Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.
*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

Maintenance item No.	Description
U051	When [Set Paper Loop Amount BW] is selected

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
MPT (Large) B/W	Paper feed from MP tray (when large size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
Cassette (L) B/W	Paper feed from cassette (when large size paper is used)	-30 to 20	1	1 mm
MPT (Small) B/W	Paper feed from MP tray (when small size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
Cassette (S) B/W	Paper feed from cassette (when small size paper is used)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm

Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.

2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.
   The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.

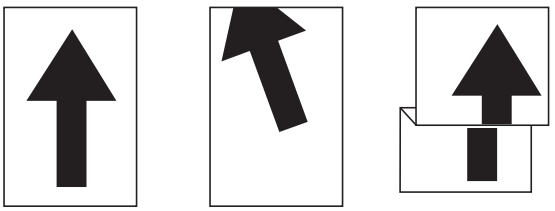
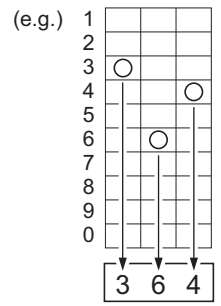


Figure 1-3-6

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Remark
When changing the setting value of [Large] each item is modified, equal to amount of the value which is changed adds also the value of [Small] each item and is pulled.

Completion
Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U052	**Setting the fuser motor control** **Description** Enters the sensor data values described on the supplied sheet provided when the loop sensor is replaced and performs correction processing for the fuser motor. **Purpose** To perform when replacing the loop sensor or paper conveying unit. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing each item is displayed. **Display** / **Description** Set Loop Sensor — Enter the data value for loop sensor Loop Sensor Control — Set the loop sensor detection control Loop Sensor Valid* — Set whether to enable or disable the loop sensor *: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model only. **Method: [Set Loop Sensor]** 1. Select [Scanning Board1]. 2. Enter the sensor data value of supplied sheet DATA1 using the cursor +/- keys. 3. Select [Scanning Board2]. 4. Enter the sensor data value of supplied sheet DATA2 using the cursor +/- keys. 5. Press the start key. The value is set. How to read the sensor data value  **Setting: [Loop Sensor Control]** 1. Select the item. 2. Select ON or OFF. **Display** / **Description** / **Initial setting** Top 125mm — Sensor detection ON/OFF setting at 125 to 250 mm from the top of paper — OFF Top 250mm — Sensor detection ON/OFF setting at 250 to 290 mm from the top of paper — ON Top 300mm — Sensor detection ON/OFF setting at 300 to 330 mm from the top of paper — ON Top 350mm — Sensor detection ON/OFF setting at 350 to 370 mm from the top of paper — ON 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Setting: [Loop Sensor Valid]** 1. Select ON or OFF. **Display** / **Description** ON — Loop sensor is enabled OFF — Loop sensor is disabled Initial setting: OFF 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Completion** Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U053	**Setting the adjustment of the motor speed** **Description** Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors. **Purpose** Basically, the setting need not be changed. Modify settings by interlock setting only if faulty images occur. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description
Set MOTOR1	Adjustment of drum motor M, C, Y, K speeds
Set MOTOR2	Adjustment of developing motor K, developing motor MCY, transfer motor, polygon motor, middle motor and registration motor speeds
Set MOTOR3	Adjustment of MP motor, eject motor, job eject motor, fuser motor and duplex motor speeds
Set MOTOR4*	Drum motor K speed adjustment in black/white mode
Set MOTOR5*	Adjustment of developing motor K, transfer motor, polygon motor, middle motor and registration motor speeds in black/white mode
Set MOTOR6*	Adjustment of MP motor, eject motor, job eject motor, fuser motor and duplex motor speeds in black/white mode

*: 50/40 ppm model only.

Setting: [Set MOTOR1]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Drum C (Full)	Drum motor C (DRM-C) full speed	-500 to 500	4*1/6*2
Drum M (Full)	Drum motor M (DRM-M) full speed	-500 to 500	4*1/6*2
Drum Y (Full)	Drum motor Y (DRM-Y) full speed	-500 to 500	4*1/6*2
Drum K (Full)	Drum motor K (DRM-K) full speed	-500 to 500	4*1/6*2
Drum C (Half)	Drum motor C (DRM-C) half speed	-500 to 500	43*1/59*2
Drum M (Half)	Drum motor M (DRM-M) half speed	-500 to 500	43*1/59*2
Drum Y (Half)	Drum motor Y (DRM-Y) half speed	-500 to 500	43*1/59*2
Drum K (Half)	Drum motor K (DRM-K) half speed	-500 to 500	43*1/59*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

Setting: [Set MOTOR2]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev K	Developing motor K (DEVM-K)	-500 to 500	0
Dev MCY	Developing motor MCY (DEVM-MCY)	-500 to 500	0
TC Motor(Full)	Transfer motor (TRM) full speed	-500 to 500	0
TC Motor(Half)	Transfer motor (TRM) half speed	-500 to 500	0
Polygon(Full)	Polygon motor (PM) full speed	-500 to 500	0
MID Roller Motor*	Middle motor (MM)	-500 to 500	0
Regist Motor*	Registration motor (RM)	-500 to 500	0

*: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U053	

Setting: [Set MOTOR3]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
MPF	MP motor (MPM)	-500 to 500	0
Eject Motor	Eject motor (EM)	-500 to 500	0
OPT Eject	Job eject motor (JEM) (option)	-500 to 500	300*1/325*2
Fixing Motor	Fuser motor (FUM)	-500 to 500	150*1/0*2
Duplex Motor	Duplex motor (DUM)	-500 to 500	0
Feed Motor	Paper conveying motor (PCM)	-500 to 500	0*1/-50*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

Setting: [Set MOTOR4]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Drum K(Full) BW	Drum motor K (DRM-K) full speed	-500 to 500	17*1/20*2/27*3

*1: 50/40 ppm model *2: 40/40 ppm model *3: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

Setting: [Set MOTOR5]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev K(BW Convey)	Developing motor K (DEVM-K)	-500 to 500	0
TC Motor (F) BW	Transfer motor (TRM) full speed	-500 to 500	0
MID Roller Motor BW	Middle motor (MM)	-500 to 500	50
Regist Motor BW	Registration motor (RM)	-500 to 500	50
Polygon (F) BW	Polygon motor (PM) full speed	-500 to 500	0

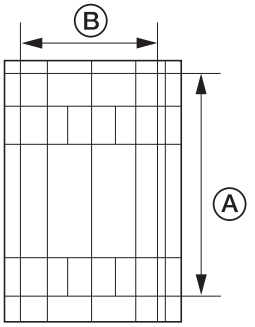
Setting: [Set MOTOR6]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
MPT BW	MP motor (MPM)	-500 to 500	0
Eject Motor BW	Eject motor (EM)	-500 to 500	0
OPT Eject BW	Job eject motor (JEM) (option)	-500 to 500	300
Fixing Motor BW	Fuser motor (FUM)	-500 to 500	380
Duplex Motor BW	Duplex motor (DUM)	-500 to 500	0

Adjustment

1. Press the system menu key.
2. Press the start key to output an A3/Ledger test pattern.



Correct values for an A3/Ledger output are:
A = 350 ± 0.5 mm
B = 250 ± 0.5 mm

Figure 1-3-7

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U053</td><td>
3. Press the system menu key.
4. A: Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction
1) Select [transfer motor].
2) Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.
B: Magnification in the main scanning direction
1) Select [polygon motor].
2) Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
Increasing the setting makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image longer in the main scanning direction.
5. Press the start key. The value is set.
After adjustment, run the maintenance item U001 to exit the maintenance mode. And then turn the main power switch off, then on again.

Completion
Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U059</td><td>
Setting fan mode
Description
Specifies mode for paper conveying fan motors during conveying paper.
Purpose
Change mode to MODE2 of operation mode if paper crease occurs when simplex-printing using A4/Letter size paper or when printing using B4 size paper. If the sound of the motor is disagreeable, change the threshold value of the temperature at which the fans operate to limit operation.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the mode.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Set Operation Mode</td><td>Sets operation mode of paper conveying fan motors.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Timing</td><td>Sets timings to activate paper conveying fan motors.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set FAN Mode</td><td>Sets temperature at which paper conveying fan motors operate.</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Set Operation Mode]
1. Select the mode.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Do not drive paper conveying fan motor.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Drives paper conveying fan motors when A3/Ledger size paper is used or when the second side of A4/Letter size paper is printed during duplex-printing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Drives paper conveying fan motors only when A4/Letter, A3/Ledger and B4 size paper is used.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE1
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Set Timing]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Set Timing</td><td>Timing for paper conveying fan motors</td><td>-800 to 800 (ms)</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
A larger value advances the operating timing, and a smaller value slows it.
2. Press the start key. The value is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U059</td><td>
Setting: [Set FAN Mode]
1. Select the mode.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Temperature at which paper conveying fan motors operate: High</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Temperature at which paper conveying fan motors operate: Normal</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE3</td><td>Temperature at which paper conveying fan motors operate: Low</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE2
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U061</td><td>
Checking the operation of the exposure lamp
Description
Lights the exposure lamp.
Purpose
To check whether the exposure lamp are turned ON.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CCD</td><td>The exposure lamp lights</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS</td><td>The CIS lights (when dual scan DP is installed)</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The lamp lights.
4. To turn the lamp off, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U063</td><td>
Adjusting the shading position
Description
Changes the shading position of the scanner.
Purpose
Used when the white line continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
40/40, 50/40 ppm models
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Shading position</td><td>0 to 18</td><td>0</td><td>0.113 mm</td></tr>
</table>
25/25, 30/30 ppm models
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Shading position</td><td>0 to 24</td><td>0</td><td>0.085 mm</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the value moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U065	**Adjusting the scanner magnification** **Description** Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect. Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect. **Caution** Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order. U053 (P.1-3-34) → U065 (main scanning direction) → U065 (auxiliary scanning direction) → U067 (P.1-3-41) → U070 (P.1-3-43) **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %
SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %

Adjustment: [MAIN SCAN ADJ]

1. Press the system menu key.
2. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
3. Press the system menu key.
4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

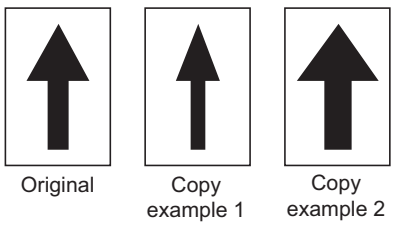


Figure 1-3-8

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Adjustment: [SUB SCAN ADJ]

1. Press the system menu key.
2. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
3. Press the system menu key.
4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

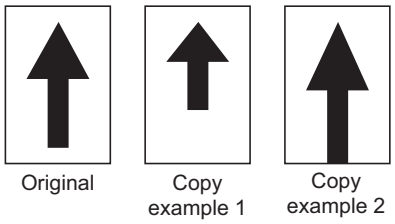


Figure 1-3-9

5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U066	**Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration** **Description** Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted. 40/40, 50/40 ppm model

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	Scanner leading edge registration	-45 to 45	0	0.113 mm
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-45 to 45	0	0.113 mm

3. 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	Scanner leading edge registration	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm

4. Press the system menu key.
5. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
6. Press the system menu key.
7. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

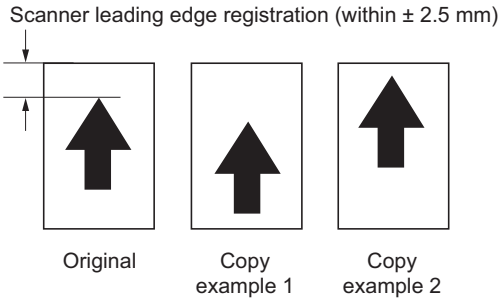
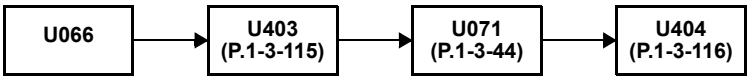


Figure 1-3-10

8. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U067	**Adjusting the scanner center line** Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted. 40/40, 50/40 ppm mode

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	Scanner center line	-35 to 60	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-40 to 40	0	0.085 mm

25/25, 30/30 ppm mode

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	Scanner center line	-40 to 40	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-40 to 40	0	0.085 mm

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

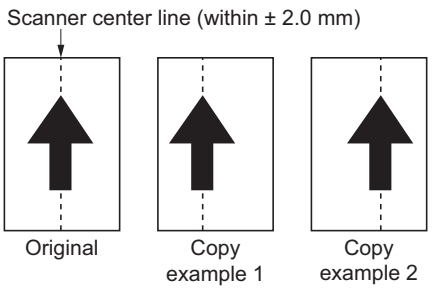
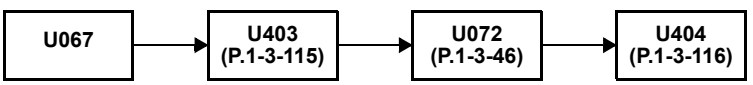


Figure 1-3-11

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U068</td><td>
Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP
Description
Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP. Performs the test copy at the four scanning positions after adjusting.
Purpose
Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
40/40, 50/40 ppm model
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td><td>-55 to 55</td><td>0</td><td>0.113 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEST POSITION</td><td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td><td>-</td></tr>
</table>
25/25, 30/30 ppm model
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST DATA</td><td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td><td>-70 to 70</td><td>0</td><td>0.085 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEST POSITION</td><td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td><td>-</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select [ADJUST DATA] of the screen for selecting an item.
3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
When the setting value is increased, the scanning position moves to the right and it moves to the left when the setting value is decreased.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
5. Select [TEST POSITION] of the screen for selecting an item.
6. Select the scanning position using the +/- or numeric keys.
7. Press the start key. The value is set.
8. Set the original (the one which density is known) in the DP and press the system menu key. The screen for the test copy mode is displayed.
9. Press the start key. Test copy is executed.
10. Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U070	**Adjusting the DP magnification** **Description** Adjusts the DP original scanning speed. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the DP is used. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
CONVEY SPEED1	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (first side)	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
CONVEY SPEED2	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (second side)	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
CIS MAIN ADJ*	Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS	-20 to 20	0	0.1 %
CIS SUB ADJ*	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS	-50 to 50	0	0.05 %

*: Dual scan DP only.

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

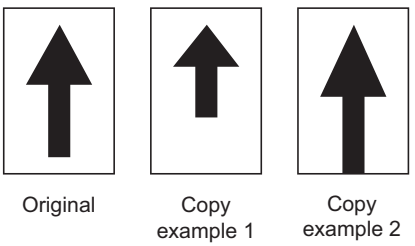
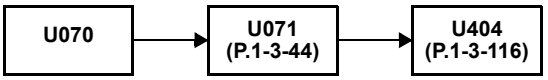


Figure 1-3-12

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	**Adjusting the DP scanning timing** **Description** Adjusts the DP original scanning timing. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the DP is used. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	Leading edge registration of CCD (first side)	-32 to 32	0	0.174 mm
ADJUST DATA2	Trailing edge registration of CCD (first side)	-32 to 28	0	0.174 mm
ADJUST DATA3	Leading edge registration of CCD (second side)	-32 to 32	0	0.174 mm
ADJUST DATA4	Trailing edge registration of CCD (second side)	-32 to 32	0	0.174 mm
ADJUST DATA5*	Leading edge registration of CIS	-45 to 45	0	0.174 mm
ADJUST DATA6*	Trailing edge registration of CIS	-45 to 45	0	0.174 mm

*: Dual scan DP only.

Adjustment: Leading edge registration

1. Press the system menu key.
2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
3. Press the system menu key.
4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

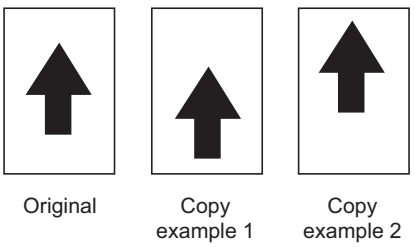


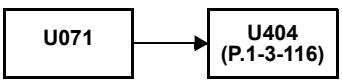
Figure 1-3-13

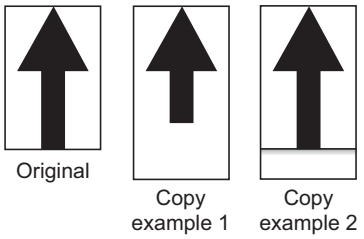
5. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution

If the CCD first side is adjusted, check the CCD second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment.

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Maintenance item No.	Description
U071	**Adjustment: Trailing edge registration** 1. Press the system menu key. 2. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy. 3. Press the system menu key. 4. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.  **Figure 1-3-14** 5. Press the start key. The value is set. **Caution** If the CCD first side is adjusted, check the CCD second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment. Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode. **U071** → **U404 (P.1-3-116)** **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U072	**Adjusting the DP center line** **Description** Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the DP is used. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted. 40/40, 50/40 ppm model

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	DP center line of CCD (first side)	-35 to 60	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA2	DP center line of CCD (second side)	-35 to 60	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA3*	DP center line of CIS	-39 to 39	0	0.085 mm

25/25, 30/30 ppm model

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA1	DP center line of CCD (first side)	-40 to 40	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA2	DP center line of CCD (second side)	-40 to 40	0	0.085 mm
ADJUST DATA3*	DP center line of CIS	-39 to 39	0	0.085 mm

*: Dual scan DP only.

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.

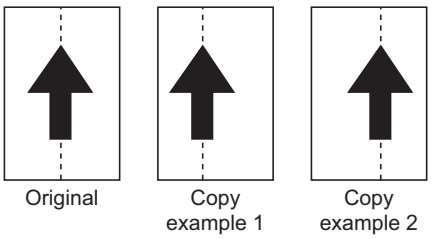
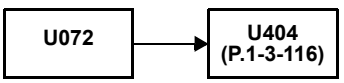


Figure 1-3-15

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
If the CCD first side is adjusted, check the CCD second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment.
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U073	**Checking the scanner operation** **Description** Simulates the scanner operation under the arbitrary conditions. **Purpose** To check the scanner operation. **Start** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be operated.

Display	Description
SCANNER MOTOR	Scanner operation
HOME POSITION	Home position operation
DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on
DP READING	DP scanning position operation

Setting: [SCANNER MOTOR]
1. Select [SCANNER MOTOR].
2. Select the item.
3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.

Display	Operating conditions	Setting range
ZOOM	Magnification	25 to 400 %
SIZE	Original size	See below.
LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)

Original sizes for each setting in SIZE

Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size
5000	A4	5000	A5R
4300	B5	7800	Folio
5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"
10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"
8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"
7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"
6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"

4. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.
5. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Method: [HOME POSITION]
1. Select [HOME POSITION].
2. Press the start key.
   The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the home position.

Method: [DUST CHECK]
1. Select [DUST CHECK].
2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.
3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key.

Method: [DP READING]
1. Select [DP READING].
2. Press the start key.
   The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the reading position.

Completion
Press the stop key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U074</td><td>
Adjusting the DP input light luminosity
Description
Sets the luminosity correction for scanning originals from the DP.
Purpose
Modify the setting only if a spotted background appears when a bluish original is scanned from the DP.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>INPUT DATA</td><td>DP input light luminosity correction</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Settings 0: No correction / 1: Slight correction / 2: Medium correction / 3: Strong correction
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U080</td><td>
Setting the economy mode
Description
Sets the level in the economy mode.
Purpose
To increase or decrease the image density in the eco-print mode.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST DATA1</td><td>For full color and 2 color copy mode</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>60</td></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST DATA2</td><td>For black/white and single color mode</td><td>0 to 100</td><td>60</td></tr>
</table>
3. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U081	**Adjusting the correct exposure** **Description** Adjusts the correct exposure in text and photo mode, text mode or photo mode. **Purpose** To be executed as required. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
MIX ADJ (FULL)	Adjusts the correct exposure in full color text and photo mode	-3 to 3	0
TEXT ADJ (FULL)	Adjusts the correct exposure in full color text mode	-3 to 3	0
PHOTO ADJ (FULL)	Adjusts the correct exposure in full color photo mode	-3 to 3	0
MIX ADJ (MONO)	Adjusts the correct exposure in black/white text and photo mode	-3 to 3	0
TEXT ADJ (MONO)	Adjusts the correct exposure in black/white text mode	-3 to 3	0
PHOTO ADJ (MONO)	Adjusts the correct exposure in black/white photo mode	-3 to 3	0

3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image darker; decreasing it makes the image lighter.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U087	**Setting DP reading position modification operation** **Description** The presence or absence of dust is determined by comparing the scan data of the original trailing edge and that taken after the original is conveyed past the DP original scanning position. If dust is identified, the DP original scanning position is adjusted for the following originals. **Purpose** When using DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. **Setting: [CCD]** 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys. 3. Press the start key. The value is set. **Method: [BLACK LINE]** 1. Select [CLEAR]. 2. Press the start key. The setting is cleared. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Display	Description
CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.
BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust	0 to 255	145
CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust	0 to 255	145
CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust	0 to 255	145

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U089</td><td>
Outputting the MIP-PG pattern
Description
Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created by the machine.
Purpose
To check machine status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (without scanning).

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output and press the start key.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Purpose</th></tr>
<tr><td>256GRADATION</td><td>256-gradation PG</td><td>To check the gradation reproducibility</td></tr>
<tr><td>COLOR BELT</td><td>Four color belts PG</td><td>To check the developing state and the engine section ID</td></tr>
<tr><td>GRAY(C)</td><td>Cyan PG</td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr>
<tr><td>GRAY(M)</td><td>Magenta PG</td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr>
<tr><td>GRAY(Y)</td><td>Yellow PG</td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr>
<tr><td>GRAY(K)</td><td>Black PG</td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr>
<tr><td>WHITE</td><td>Blank paper PG</td><td>To check the drum quality</td></tr>
<tr><td>GRADATION GRAY</td><td>5-graduation gray PG</td><td>To check for vertical lines on the laser scanner unit</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the system menu key.
4. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U091</td><td>
Setting the white line correction
Description
Sets the error detection threshold value for white line correction and displays the count result of abnormal pixels.
Purpose
To perform when replacing the CIS, DP driver PWB or CIS roller.

Method: white line correction
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [EXECUTE].
3. Press the start key. Holding of white reference data is started.
4. The count result of abnormal pixels is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation(R)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color R</td></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation(G)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color G</td></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation(B)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color B</td></tr>
</table>
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Place a gray original on the DP with the gray side down. Load paper in the cassette.
The paper should be the same size as the original.
7. Press the start key.
Two test pattern sheets will be printed. (1st sheet: blank sheet, 2nd sheet: Approx. 60 mm black band)
8. If no vertical lines appear on either sheet, the setting has been completed normally.
If vertical black lines appear on the blank sheet and vertical white lines appear in the black band in the same position, clean the CIS roller and the CIS glass and then repeat white line correction.
If vertical black lines or vertical white lines appear on both sheets, white line correction has been completed normally. However, the cause of the vertical lines lies in the engine, and thus the engine must be checked.
How to view test copies
<table>
<tr><th>blank sheet</th><th>black band</th><th>Causes</th><th>Corrective measures</th></tr>
<tr><td>No lines</td><td>No lines</td><td>-</td><td>Complete</td></tr>
<tr><td>Black lines</td><td>White lines</td><td>Dirty CIS roller or CIS glass</td><td>Clean CIS roller or CIS glass and then perform U091 again</td></tr>
<tr><td>Black lines</td><td>No lines</td><td>Engine side</td><td>U091 ends, check engine</td></tr>
<tr><td>No lines</td><td>White lines</td><td>Engine side</td><td>U091 ends, check engine</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: Threshold value setting
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold(R)</td><td>Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color R</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold(G)</td><td>Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color G</td><td>-</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold(Com)*</td><td>Setting of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color</td><td>0 to 1023</td><td>112</td></tr>
<tr><td>Abnorm Pixel Threshold</td><td>Abnormal pixel threshold value setting</td><td>0 to 8191</td><td>75</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE</td><td>Switching between white line correction mode ON/OFF</td><td>0: OFF/1: ON/
2: Test mode</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
*: Normally the Threshold (Com) value should not be changed from 112, the initial setting.
If white lines appear even though the CIS roller and glass are not dirty, raise the set value.
If fine lines in some originals disappear, lower the set value.
Set within the range 50 to 200. (If set outside this range, the image may be affected.)
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U091</td><td>3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. After changing the Threshold(Com) value, turn the main power switch off and on.
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U093</td><td>Adjusting the exposure density gradient
Description
Changes the exposure density gradient in the manual density mode, depending on respective image quality modes.
Purpose
To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment for respective image quality modes. Also used to make copy images darker or lighter.

Start
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>TEXT</td><td>Density in the text mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>MIXED</td><td>Density in the text and photo mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>OTHER</td><td>Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX TEXT</td><td>Density in the text in fax mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX PHOTO</td><td>Density in the photo in fax mode</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [TEXT]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>TEXT F/C DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark (full color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEXT F/C LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light (full color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEXT MONO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark (single color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEXT MONO LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light (single color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [MIXED]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>MIXED F/C DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark (full color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>MIXED F/C LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light (full color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>MIXED MONO DARKER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set dark (single color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>MIXED MONO LIGHTER</td><td>Change in density when manual density is set light (single color mode)</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U093	**Setting: [OTHER]** 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
OTHER F/C DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark (full color mode)	0 to 3	0
OTHER F/C LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light (full color mode)	0 to 3	0
OTHER MONO DARKER	Change in density when manual density is set dark (single color mode)	0 to 3	0
OTHER MONO LIGHTER	Change in density when manual density is set light (single color mode)	0 to 3	0

Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [FAX TEXT]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
FAX TEXT DARKER	Gradient for darker setting	0 to 3	0
FAX TEXT LIGHTER	Gradient for lighter setting	0 to 3	0

Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [FAX PHOTO]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
FAX PHOTO DARKER	Gradient for darker setting	0 to 3	0
FAX PHOTO LIGHTER	Gradient for lighter setting	0 to 3	0

Increasing the setting makes the change in density larger, and decreasing it makes the change smaller.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U099	**Adjusting original size detection** **Description** Checks the operation of the original size sensor and sets the sensing threshold value. **Purpose** To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing each item is displayed.

Display	Description
DATA1	Displaying original size sensor transmission data
B/W LEVEL1	B/W LEVEL setting original size sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time
DATA2	Displaying original size sensor transmission data (when DP is installed)

Method: [DATA/DATA2]

1. Place the original and close the original cover or DP. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed.

Display	Description
ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)
ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)
ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)
ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size
SIZE SW L	Displays the original size sensor (OSS) ON/OFF

Setting: [B/W LEVEL1]

1. Select an item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
ORIGINAL R1 - 3	Original threshold value for color R	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50*
ORIGINAL G1 - 3	Original threshold value for color G	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50*
ORIGINAL B1 - 3	Original threshold value for color B	0 to 255	40/30/20	50/50/50*
LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value for color R	0 to 255	19	49*
LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value for color G	0 to 255	19	49*
LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value for color B	0 to 255	19	49*
WAIT TIME	Time from activation of the original detection switch (ODSW) to original size judgment	0 to 255	150	150*

*: When DP is installed.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U100	**Adjusting main high voltage** **Description** Controls the charger roller voltage to optimize the surface potential. **Purpose** To change the setting value to adjust the image if an image failure (background blur, etc.) occurs. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select an item and press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed.

Display	Description
Adjust MC AC Bias	Main charger AC bias for each color
AC Auto Adjustment	Setting the AC bias auto adjustment
Set DC1	Main charger DC bias for each color
Adjust DC2	Additional surface potential
Adjust DC2(B/W)	Additional surface potential in black and white mode
Low Temp. Setting (Drum)	Pre-charge time at power supply ON
Set Charger Freq	Setting the main charger frequency

Setting: [Adjust MC AC Bias]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.
   The values set vary depending on environments.

Display	Description	Setting range
MC AC Bias(C)	Main charger AC bias for cyan	0 to 255
MC AC Bias(M)	Main charger AC bias for magenta	0 to 255
MC AC Bias(Y)	Main charger AC bias for yellow	0 to 255
MC AC Bias(K)	Main charger AC bias for black	0 to 255
MC AC Bias(K)BW*	Main charger AC bias for black in black/white mode	0 to 255

   *: 50/40 ppm model only.
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [AC Auto Adjustment]

1. Select ON or OFF.

Display	Description
ON	Turns auto adjustment ON
OFF	Turns auto adjustment OFF

   Initial setting: ON
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U100	**Displaying: [Set DC1]** 1. The current setting is diplayed.

Display	Description
Bias1 C(Full)	Main charger DC bias for cyan (full speed)
Bias1 M(Full)	Main charger DC bias for magenta (full speed)
Bias1 Y(Full)	Main charger DC bias for yellow (full speed)
Bias1 K(Full)	Main charger DC bias for black (full speed)
Bias1 C(Half)	Main charger DC bias for cyan (half speed)
Bias1 M(Half)	Main charger DC bias for magenta (half speed)
Bias1 Y(Half)	Main charger DC bias for yellow (half speed)
Bias1 K(Half)	Main charger DC bias for black (half speed)
Bias1 K(B/W)	Main charger DC bias for black in black/white mode

Setting: [Adjust DC2]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Bias2C Full	Main charger DC bias for cyan (full speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2M Full	Main charger DC bias for magenta (full speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2Y Full	Main charger DC bias for yellow (full speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2K Full	Main charger DC bias for black (full speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2C Half	Main charger DC bias for cyan (half speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2M Half	Main charger DC bias for magenta (half speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2Y Half	Main charger DC bias for yellow (half speed)	-128 to 127	0
Bias2K Half	Main charger DC bias for black (half speed)	-128 to 127	0

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Adjust DC2(B/W)]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Bias2K (BW)	Main charger DC bias for black in black/ white mode	-128 to 127	0

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Low Temp. Setting(Drum)]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Pre-charge time at power supply ON	0 to 6	1

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U100</td><td>
Setting: [Set Charger Freq]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Charger Freq</td><td>Main charger frequency</td><td>0 to 65535</td><td>31449</td></tr>
<tr><td>Charger Freq B/W*</td><td>Main charger frequency in black/white mode</td><td>0 to 65535</td><td>31449</td></tr>
</table>
*: 50/40 ppm model only.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U101</td><td>
Setting the voltage for the primary transfer
Description
Sets the control voltage for the primary transfer.
Purpose
To change the setting when any density problems, such as too dark or light, occur.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal (Full M)</td><td>Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (full speed)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>105*1/95*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Normal (Half M)</td><td>Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (half speed)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>78*1/75*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reverse (B/W M)</td><td>Primary transfer reverse voltage for magenta in black/white mode</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>105</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color (C)</td><td>Addition value (cyan)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color (Y)</td><td>Addition value (yellow)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color (K)</td><td>Addition value (black)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>20*1/15*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color 2nd(C)</td><td>Addition value for the second side (cyan)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color 2nd(M)</td><td>Addition value for the second side (magenta)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color 2nd(Y)</td><td>Addition value for the second side (yellow)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Add Color 2nd(K)</td><td>Addition value for the second side (black)</td><td>-127 to 127</td><td>-15*1/-10*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Surround Correct</td><td>Environmental correction ON/OFF setting</td><td>0 (on)/1 (off)</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U106	**Setting the voltage for the secondary transfer** **Description** Sets the control voltage for the secondary transfer depending on each paper type. **Purpose** To change the setting when any density problems, such as too dark or light, occur. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The screen for executing each item is displayed.

Display	Description
Light/Normal 1 Full Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m² to 64 g/m² and 60 g/m² to 75 g/m²
Normal 2/3 Full Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 75 g/m² to 105 g/m²
Light/Normal 1 Full Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m² to 64 g/m² and 60 g/m² to 75 g/m²
Normal 2/3 Full Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 75 g/m² to 105 g/m²
Light Normal1(F)Front BW	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m² to 64 g/m² and 60 g/m² to 75 g/m² (in black and white mode)
Normal 2/3(F)Front BW	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 75 g/m² to 105 g/m² (in black and white mode)
Light/Normal1(F)Back BW	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m² to 64 g/m² and 60 g/m² to 75 g/m² (in black and white mode)
Normal 2/3(F)Back BW	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 75 g/m² to 105 g/m² (in black and white mode)
Heavy 1 - 3 (H)Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 105 g/m² to 220 g/m²
Heavy 1 - 3 (H)Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 105 g/m² to 220 g/m²
OHP	Control voltage for the transfer bias for transparencies
Bias	Transfer bias value

Setting: [Light/Normal 1 Full Front]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	160*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	140*1/120*2
220<=Width<260	Large sizes (more than 220 to under 260 mm wide)	0 to 255	120*1/100*2
260<=Width	Large sizes (more than 260 mm wide)	0 to 255	110*1/90*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U106	**Setting: [Normal 2/3 Full Front]** 1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	180*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	150*1/120*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	120*1/90*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Light/Normal 1 Full Back]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	180*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	120*1/110*2
220<=Width<260	Large sizes (more than 220 to under 260 mm wide)	0 to 255	95*1/80*2
260<=Width	Large sizes (more than 260 mm wide)	0 to 255	75*1/65*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Normal 2/3 Full Back]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	150
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	130*1/110*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	90*1/70*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Light Normal1(F)Front BW]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	180*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	140*1/120*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	130*1/90*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U106	**Setting: [Normal 2/3(F)Front BW]** 1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	180*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	140*1/120*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	130*1/90*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Light/Normal1(F)Back BW]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	160*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	130*1/110*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	90*1/65*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Normal 2/3(F)Back BW]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	160*1/150*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	130*1/110*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	90*1/70*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Heavy 1 - 3 (H)Front]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	150
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	90
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	70*1/65*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Heavy 1 - 3 (H)Back]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	130*1/110*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	100*1/80*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	60*1/45*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U106</td><td>
Setting: [OHP]
1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Width<220</td><td>Small and medium sizes (under 220 mm wide)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>123*1/97*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>220<=Width</td><td>Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>51*1/44*2</td></tr>
</table>
*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Bias]
1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Reverse(Full)</td><td>Transfer bias when plain paper is used</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>189</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reverse(Half)</td><td>Transfer bias when thick paper is used</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>189</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning(Full)</td><td>Cleaning control value when plain paper is used</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>34</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning(Half)</td><td>Cleaning control value when thick paper is used</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>34</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning(BW)</td><td>Cleaning control value in black and white mode</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>34</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U107	**Setting the transfer cleaning voltage** **Description** Sets the cleaning control voltage for transfer belt unit. **Purpose** Change settings if an offset has occurred due to the failure of cleaning the transfer belt. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Belt Clean A(F)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (printing)
Belt Clean A(H)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (using thick paper)
Belt Clean B	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (paper interval)
Belt Clean A(BW)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage in black/white mode

Setting: [Belt Clean A(F)]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	83*1/70*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	83*1/70*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	83*1/70*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Belt Clean A(H)]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	62*1/50*2
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	62*1/50*2
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	62*1/50*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Belt Clean B]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Belt Clean B(F)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage	0 to 255	150*1/140*2
Belt Clean B(H)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (using thick paper)	0 to 255	120*1/105*2
Belt Clean B(BW)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage in black and white mode	0 to 255	150

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U107</td><td>
Setting: [Belt Clean A(BW)]
1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Width<160</td><td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>120</td></tr>
<tr><td>160<=Width<220</td><td>Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>120</td></tr>
<tr><td>220<=Width</td><td>Large sizes (more than 220 mm wide)</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>120</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U108	**Setting separation shift bias** **Description** Adjusts output of separation shift bias and ON/OFF timing. **Purpose** To set when the separated malfunction of the paper occurs. **Start** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The screen for executing each item is displayed.

Display	Description
Set Output Value	The paper of the paper thick or the separation shift bias output adjustment with type
Set Timing	ON/OFF timing adjustment with paper position

Setting: [Set Output Value]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric key.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Light Full 1st	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 to 64 g/m^2	0 to 255	85
Light Full 2nd	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 to 64 g/m^2	0 to 255	60
Normal Full 1st	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 to 105 g/m^2	0 to 255	52
Normal Full 2nd	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 to 105 g/m^2	0 to 255	60
Normal Lead edge	Separation shift bias for the leading edge on paper with thickness 60 to 105 g/m^2	-127 to 127	8
Heavy/OHP	Separation shift bias for transparencies with thickness 105 to 220 g/m^2	0 to 255	26
Light Full 1st B/W*	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 to 64 g/m^2 (black/white mode)	0 to 255	85
Light Full 2nd B/W*	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 to 64 g/m^2 (black/white mode)	0 to 255	60
Normal Full 1st B/W*	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 to 105 g/m^2 (black/white mode)	0 to 255	52
Normal Full 2nd B/W*	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 to 105 g/m^2 (black/white mode)	0 to 255	60

*: 50/40 ppm model only.

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set Timing]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric key.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
ON Timing Lead	Separation shift bias ON timing at leading edge of paper	-200 to 200	-200*1/-190*2
ON Timing Center	Separation shift bias ON timing at center of paper	-200 to 200	0
OFF Timing	Separation shift bias OFF timing	-200 to 200	70*1/110*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U108</td><td>Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U109</td><td>Checking the drum type
Description
Displays the drum sensitivity data.
Purpose
To check the drum sensitivity data.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CYAN(Dark)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for cyan (dark potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAGENTA(Dark)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for magenta (dark potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>YELLOW(Dark)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for yellow (dark potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLACK(Dark)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for black (dark potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CYAN(Light)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for cyan (light potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAGENTA(Light)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for magenta (light potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>YELLOW(Light)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for yellow (light potential)</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLACK(Light)</td><td>Drum sensitivity data for black (light potential)</td></tr>
</table>
The drum sensitivity data is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>DATA1 - DATA11</td><td>Drum sensitivity data</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U110</td><td>Checking the drum count
Description
Displays the drum counts for checking.
Purpose
To check the drum status.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current drum counts is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Drum counter (CYAN)</td><td>Cyan drum count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum counter (MAGENTA)</td><td>Magenta drum count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum counter (YELLOW)</td><td>Yellow drum count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum counter (BLACK)</td><td>Black drum count value</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U111</td><td>
Checking the drum drive time
Description
Displays the drum drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the high voltage based on time.
Purpose
To check the drum status.

Method
1. Press the start key. The drum drive time is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>C TIME(min)</td><td>Cyan drum drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>M TIME(min)</td><td>Magenta drum drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>Y TIME(min)</td><td>Yellow drum drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>K TIME(min)</td><td>Black drum drive time</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U117</td><td>
Checking the drum number
Description
Displays the drum number.
Purpose
To check the drum number.

Method
1. Press the start key. The drum number is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Drum No.(C)</td><td>Cyan drum number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum No.(M)</td><td>Magenta drum number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum No.(Y)</td><td>Yellow drum number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum No.(K)</td><td>Black drum number</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U118</td><td>
Displaying the drum history
Description
Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter.
Purpose
To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the color to check.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Drum history (C)</td><td>Cyan drum past record</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum history (M)</td><td>Magenta drum past record</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum history (Y)</td><td>Yellow drum past record</td></tr>
<tr><td>Drum history (K)</td><td>Black drum past record</td></tr>
</table>
The history of a machine number and a drum counter for each color is displayed by three cases.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MACHINE HISTORY 1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT HISTORY 1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of drum counter</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U119</td><td>
Setting the drum
Description
Sets drum sensitivity.
Purpose
To set the drum after replacing the drum unit or laser scanner unit.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [Execute].
3. Press the start key. Drum setup is commenced.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U122</td><td>
Checking the transfer belt unit number
Description
Displays the number of the transfer belt unit for checking.
Purpose
To check the number of the transfer belt.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current number of the transfer belt is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Middle Transfer Unit</td><td>Number of the transfer belt unit</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U123</td><td>
Displaying the transfer belt unit history
Description
Displays the past record of machine number and the transfer belt unit counter.
Purpose
To check the count value of machine number and the transfer counter.

Method
1. Press the start key.
The history of a machine number and a transfer belt unit counter for each color is displayed by three cases.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MACHINE HISTORY 1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT HISTORY 1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of transfer belt unit counter</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U127</td><td>
Checking/clearing the transfer count
Description
Displays and clears the counts of the transfer counter.
Purpose
To check the count after replacement of the transfer belt unit or transfer roller. Also to clear the counts after replacing transfer roller.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current counts of the transfer counter is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mid Transfer Unit Count</td><td>Transfer belt unit counter value</td></tr>
<tr><td>2nd Transfer Unit Count</td><td>Transfer roller counter value</td></tr>
</table>
Clearing
1. Press [Clear Counter].
2. Press the start key. Transfer roller counter value is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U128</td><td>
Setting transfer high-voltage timing
Description
Adjusts the ON/OFF timing of transfer high-voltage output.
Purpose
Basically, the setting need not be changed. If any problem such as faulty images or dirt on the back surface occurs, change the setting.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Trans ON Timing1</td><td>Transfer ON timing adjustment value (first side)</td><td>-200 to 200</td><td>-54</td></tr>
<tr><td>Trans ON Timing2</td><td>Transfer ON timing adjustment value (second side)</td><td>-200 to 200</td><td>-54</td></tr>
<tr><td>Trans OFF Timing</td><td>Transfer OFF timing adjustment value</td><td>-200 to 200</td><td>10</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U131	**Adjusting the toner sensor control voltage** **Description** Adjusts the toner sensor control voltage. **Purpose** If control values are not correctly retrievable due to the EEPROM of the developing unit failure, etc., use manual adjustment and obtain a temporary control value. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set or displayed. **Setting: [Manual Adjustment]** 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys. 3. Press the start key. The value is set. **Displaying: [Auto Adjustment]** 1. The current setting is displayed. **Setting: [Set Operation Mode]** 1. Select the item to be set. Initial setting: Automatic adjustment 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Display	Description
Manual Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment
Auto Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment
Set Operation Mode	Switching the manual adjustment and auto adjustment

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
CONTROL C	Toner control voltage for cyan	0 to 255	116
CONTROL M	Toner control voltage for magenta	0 to 255	116
CONTROL Y	Toner control voltage for yellow	0 to 255	116
CONTROL K	Toner control voltage for black	0 to 255	116

Display	Description
Default (C)	Reference value for toner control voltage for cyan
Default (M)	Reference value for toner control voltage for magenta
Default (Y)	Reference value for toner control voltage for yellow
Default (K)	Reference value for toner control voltage for black
Control (C)	Toner control voltage after correction for cyan
Control (M)	Toner control voltage after correction for magenta
Control (Y)	Toner control voltage after correction for yellow
Control (K)	Toner control voltage after correction for black

Display	Description
Manual Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment
Auto Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U132</td><td>
Replenishing toner forcibly
Description
Replenishes toner forcibly until the toner sensor output value reaches the toner feed start level.
Purpose
Used when the toner empty is detected frequently.

Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.
2. Press the start key.
Toner is replenished until the toner sensor output value reaches the toner feed start level.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Supply (C)</td><td>Toner feed start level (cyan)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Supply (M)</td><td>Toner feed start level (magenta)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Supply (Y)</td><td>Toner feed start level (yellow)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Supply (K)</td><td>Toner feed start level (black)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Sensor (C)</td><td>Toner sensor output value (cyan)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Sensor (M)</td><td>Toner sensor output value (magenta)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Sensor (Y)</td><td>Toner sensor output value (yellow)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Sensor (K)</td><td>Toner sensor output value (black)</td></tr>
</table>
3. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U135</td><td>
Checking toner motor operation
Description
Drives toner motors.
Purpose
To check the operation of toner motors.

Remarks
When driving the toner motors long time or several times, developing section becomes the toner full and is locked.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the motor to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>Toner Feed Motor</td><td>Toner motor (TM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Container Motor (CW)</td><td>Toner container motor (TCM) is turned on counterclockwise</td></tr>
<tr><td>Container Motor (CCW)</td><td>Toner container motor (TCM) is turned on clockrwise</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop the operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key after operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U136</td><td>
Setting toner near end detection
Description
Sets the level that indicates the number of sheets that can be printed from occurrence of toner near end to toner empty.
Purpose
To change the setting to advance detection of near end if the interval from toner near end to toner empty seems too short.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>BK</td><td>Setting the level of black toner</td><td>0 to 9</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>CMY</td><td>Setting the level of cyan/magenta/yellow toner</td><td>0 to 9</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the interval from toner near end to toner empty longer.
Decreasing the setting makes the interval from toner near end to toner empty shorter.
If 0 is set, toner near end will not be detected.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U139</td><td>
Displaying the temperature and humidity outside the machine
Description
Displays the detected temperature and humidity outside the machine.
Purpose
To check the temperature and humidity outside the machine.

Method
1. Press the start key. The detected temperature and humidity are displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>External Temperature</td><td>External temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>External Humidity</td><td>External humidity (%)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Internal Temp1 (LSU)</td><td>Internal temperature around the laser scanner unit (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Internal Temp2</td><td>Internal temperature around the transfer section (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Internal Temp3</td><td>Internal temperature around the developing section (°C)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U140	**Displaying developing bias** **Description** Displays various developing bias value. **Purpose** To check the developing bias value. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set or displayed.

Display	Description
Dev Roll2 DC	Developing sleeve roller DC bias
Dev Roll1(Calib)DC	Developing magnet roller DC bias (toner thick layer calibration)
Dev Roll2 AC	Developing sleeve roller AC bias
Dev Roll1DC	Developing magnet roller DC bias
Roll1 DC Int	Developing magnet roller paper interval DC bias
Dev Roll1AC	Developing magnet roller AC bias
DEV Roll Freq	Developing magnet roller frequency
DEV Roll Duty	Developing magnet roller duty
Dev Roll2 Duty	Developing sleeve roller duty

Setting: [Dev Roll2 DC]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll2 DC (C)	Developing sleeve roller DC bias for cyan	0 to 255	93*1/80*2
Dev Roll2 DC (M)	Developing sleeve roller DC bias for magenta	0 to 255	93*1/80*2
Dev Roll2 DC (Y)	Developing sleeve roller DC bias for yellow	0 to 255	93*1/80*2
Dev Roll2 DC (K)	Developing sleeve roller DC bias for black	0 to 255	93*1/80*2
Dev Roll2 DC (BW)	Developing sleeve roller DC bias in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 255	101*1

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U140	**Setting: [Dev Roll1(Calib)DC]** 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
DEV Roll1 DC1 (K)	Developing magnet roller DC1 bias for black	0 to 255	112*1/102*2
DEV Roll1 DC2 (K)	Developing magnet roller DC2 bias for black	0 to 255	142*1/129*2
DEV Roll1 DC3 (K)	Developing magnet roller DC3 bias for black	0 to 255	173*1/155*2
DEV Roll1 DC4 (K)	Developing magnet roller DC4 bias for black	0 to 255	204*1/182*2
DEV Roll1 DC1 (CMY)	Developing magnet roller DC1 bias for cyan/ magenta/yellow	0 to 255	112*1/102*2
DEV Roll1 DC2 (CMY)	Developing magnet roller DC2 bias for cyan/ magenta/yellow	0 to 255	142*1/129*2
DEV Roll1 DC3 (CMY)	Developing magnet roller DC3 bias for cyan/ magenta/yellow	0 to 255	173*1/155*2
DEV Roll1 DC4 (CMY)	Developing magnet roller DC4 bias for cyan/ magenta/yellow	0 to 255	204*1/182*2

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Dev Roll2 AC]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll2 AC (C)	Developing sleeve roller AC bias for cyan	0 to 255	174
Dev Roll2 AC (M)	Developing sleeve roller AC bias for magenta	0 to 255	174
Dev Roll2 AC (Y)	Developing sleeve roller AC bias for yellow	0 to 255	174
Dev Roll2 AC (K)	Developing sleeve roller AC bias for black	0 to 255	174
Dev Roll2 AC (BW)	Developing sleeve roller AC bias in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 255	174

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Dev Roll1DC]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll1 DC (C)	Developing magnet roller DC bias for cyan	0 to 255	162
Dev Roll1 DC (M)	Developing magnet roller DC bias for magenta	0 to 255	162
Dev Roll1 DC (Y)	Developing magnet roller DC bias for yellow	0 to 255	162
Dev Roll1 DC (K)	Developing magnet roller DC bias for black	0 to 255	162
Dev Roll1 DC (BW)	Developing magnet roller DC bias in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 255	162

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U140	**Setting: [Roll1 DC Int]** 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Roll1 DC (C) Int	Developing magnet roller paper interval DC bias for cyan	0 to 255	85
Roll1 DC (M) Int	Developing magnet roller paper interval DC bias for magenta	0 to 255	85
Roll1 DC (Y) Int	Developing magnet roller paper interval DC bias for yellow	0 to 255	85
Roll1 DC (K) Int	Developing magnet roller paper interval DC bias for black	0 to 255	85
Roll1 DC (BW) Int	Developing magnet roller paper interval DC bias in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 255	89

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Dev Roll1AC]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll1 AC (C)	Developing magnet roller AC bias for cyan	0 to 255	255
Dev Roll1 AC (M)	Developing magnet roller AC bias for magenta	0 to 255	255
Dev Roll1 AC (Y)	Developing magnet roller AC bias for yellow	0 to 255	255
Dev Roll1 AC (K)	Developing magnet roller AC bias for black	0 to 255	255
Dev Roll1 AC (BW)	Developing magnet roller AC bias in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 255	255

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [DEV Roll Freq]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll1 Freq C	Developing magnet roller frequency for cyan	0 to 5000	858
Dev Roll1 Freq M	Developing magnet roller frequency for magenta	0 to 5000	858
Dev Roll1 Freq Y	Developing magnet roller frequency for yellow	0 to 5000	858
Dev Roll1 Freq B	Developing magnet roller frequency for black	0 to 5000	858
Dev Roll1 Freq BW	Developing magnet roller frequency in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 5000	858

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U140	**Setting: [DEV Roll Duty]** 1. Select the item to be set. 2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll1 Duty C	Developing magnet roller Duty for cyan	0 to 5000	592
Dev Roll1 Duty M	Developing magnet roller Duty for magenta	0 to 5000	592
Dev Roll1 Duty Y	Developing magnet roller Duty for yellow	0 to 5000	592
Dev Roll1 Duty B	Developing magnet roller Duty for black	0 to 5000	592
Dev Roll1 Duty BW	Developing magnet roller Duty in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 5000	592

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Dev Roll2 Duty]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Dev Roll2 Duty C	Developing sleeve roller Duty for cyan	0 to 5000	373
Dev Roll2 Duty M	Developing sleeve roller Duty for magenta	0 to 5000	373
Dev Roll2 Duty Y	Developing sleeve roller Duty for yellow	0 to 5000	373
Dev Roll2 Duty B	Developing sleeve roller Duty for black	0 to 5000	373
Dev Roll2 Duty BW	Developing sleeve roller Duty in black/white mode (50/40 ppm model only)	0 to 5000	373

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U147	**Setting for toner applying operation** **Description** Sets the mode for removing charged toner in the developing unit (T7 control: Toner applying operation). **Purpose** Changing settings are not required. However, when the documents with lower print density (e.g. less than 2%) should customarily printed in a great volume, mode must be changed. If the charged toner stays inside the developing unit, density decreases. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
Transition Time	Duration of toner applying
Set Operation Mode	Settings for toner applying operation
Upper Limit	Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode
Sleeve Cleaning	Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)
Set Drum Cleaning Mode	Settings for developing the toner layer in accordance with coverage ratio
Set Minimum Value	Toner layer width when [Set Drum Cleaning Mode] is selected

Setting: [Transition Time]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Transition Time	Duration of toner applying	0 to 255 (s)	50

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set Operation Mode]

1. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
OFF	Do not applying the toner operation
MODE1	Normal mode
MODE2	Toner consumption mode

Initial setting; MODE1

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Upper Limit]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Upper Limit	Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode	0 to 10 (%)	5 (%)

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Sleeve Cleaning]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Sleeve Clean Int	Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)	10 to 300 (s)	60 (s)

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U147</td><td>
Setting: [Set Drum Cleaning Mode]
Modify settings only if faulty images, such as smear, occurs in a high humid environment.
1. Select the mode to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Constitutes a toner layer if the print coverage is less than 2%.
(excludes the maximum paper width A3/A4)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Apply toner regardless of the current print coverage.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE1
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Set Minimum Value]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Minimum Value</td><td>Toner layer width (mm)</td><td>0 to 30 (mm)</td><td>MODE1: 10
MODE2: 20</td></tr>
</table>
The initial setting value depends on the setting of [Set Drum Cleaning Mode].
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U148</td><td>
Setting drum refresh mode
Description
Selects the mode used in drum refreshing
Purpose
Change settings when drum refreshing is too frequently executed.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Drum refreshing is not performed</td></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Drum refreshing is performed</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U155	**Displaying the toner sensor output** **Description** Displays the toner sensor output value. **Purpose** To check the output value for each color when any image problems occur. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
Overflow	Waste toner sensor
Toner Sensor	Control voltage value and replenishment level of toner sensor each color

Displaying: [Overflow]

1. Select [Overflow]. The current value is displayed.

Display	Description
Waste Toner Overflow	Waste toner sensor

Displaying: [Toner Sensor]

1. Select [Toner Sensor]. The current value is displayed.

Display	Description
INPUT (C)	Toner sensor C output value
INPUT (M)	Toner sensor M output value
INPUT (Y)	Toner sensor Y output value
INPUT (K)	Toner sensor K output value
TARGET (C)	Toner replenishment level for cyan
TARGET (M)	Toner replenishment level for magenta
TARGET (Y)	Toner replenishment level for yellow
TARGET (K)	Toner replenishment level for black

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U156	**Setting the toner replenishment level** **Description** Sets the toner replenishment level for each color. **Purpose** To change settings according to the original image. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Supply Level	Setting the toner replenishment level
Empty Level	Setting the toner empty level

Method: [Supply Level]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Supply Level (C)	Toner replenishment level for cyan	0 to 900	502
Supply Level (M)	Toner replenishment level for magenta	0 to 900	502
Supply Level (Y)	Toner replenishment level for yellow	0 to 900	502
Supply Level (K)	Toner replenishment level for black	0 to 900	502
Supply Level (K)BW*	Toner replenishment level for black in black/white mode	0 to 900	502

   *: 50/40 ppm model only.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [Empty Level]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Empty Level (C)	Toner empty level for cyan	1 to 1023	101
Empty Level (Y)	Toner empty level for magenta	1 to 1023	101
Empty Level (M)	Toner empty level for yellow	1 to 1023	101
Empty Level (K)	Toner empty level for black	1 to 1023	101
Empty Level (K)BW*	Toner empty level for black in black/white mode	1 to 1023	101

   *: 50/40 ppm model only.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U157</td><td>
Checking the developing drive time
Description
Displays the developing drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.
Purpose
To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The developing drive time of each color is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>C TIME(min)</td><td>Cyan developing drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>M TIME(min)</td><td>Magenta developing drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>Y TIME(min)</td><td>Yellow developing drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>K TIME(min)</td><td>Black developing drive time</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U158</td><td>
Checking the developing count
Description
Displays the developing count for checking.
Purpose
To check the developing count after replacement of the developing unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current developing counts are displayed for each color.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Develop Count (C)</td><td>Cyan developing count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Develop Count (M)</td><td>Magenta developing count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Develop Count (Y)</td><td>Yellow developing count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Develop Count (K)</td><td>Black developing count value</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U161</td><td>
Setting the fuser control temperature
Description
Changes the fuser control temperature.
Purpose
Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Ready Temp.</td><td>Standby temperature control</td><td>50 to 200</td><td>160*1/153*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stable (Driving)</td><td>Stabilized temperature during operation</td><td>130 to 200</td><td>165*1/160*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stable (Stop)</td><td>Stabilized temperature under suspension</td><td>130 to 200</td><td>165*1/160*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Temp. Print Full</td><td>Temperature control during printing</td><td>130 to 200</td><td>165*1/160*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shift Print Dup</td><td>Temperature control during duplex-printing</td><td>-10 to 0</td><td>-5*1/0*2</td></tr>
<tr><td>P. Roller Temp.</td><td>Press roller control temperature</td><td>100 to 160</td><td>140*1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stability Condition</td><td>Fuser stability condition</td><td>0/1</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Stability Condition]
1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Printing is allowed only if the fuser temperature is within the specified temperature range.
If the current temperature is above the specified temperature range, you must wait until the temperature falls to within the range.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Printing is allowed when the fuser temperature is above the specified temperature range.
If the current temperature is above the specified temperature range, gloss may appear in the image.</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U163</td><td>
Resetting the fuser problem data
Description
Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fuser section.
Purpose
To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fuser temperature.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [Execute].
3. Press the start key. The fuser problem data is initialized.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U167</td><td>
Checking/clearing the fuser count
Description
Displays and clears the fuser count for checking.
Purpose
To check or clear the fuser count after replacement of the fuser unit. Also to clear the counts after replacing unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The fuser count is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Fixing Counter</td><td>Fuser count value</td></tr>
</table>
Clearing
1. Press [Clear Counter].
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U199</td><td>
Displaying fuser heater temperature
Description
Displays the detected fuser temperature.
Purpose
To check the fuser temperature.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>HEAT EDGE TEMP</td><td>Heat roller edge temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>HEAT CENTER TEMP</td><td>Heat roller center temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>PRESS TEMP*</td><td>Press roller center temperature (°C)</td></tr>
</table>
*: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance mode No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U200</td><td>
Turning all LEDs on
Description
Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.
Purpose
To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [ALL LED ON]. All the LEDs on the operation panel light.
3. Press the stop key. The LEDs turns off.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U201</td><td>
Initializing the touch panel
Description
Automatically correct the positions of the X- and Y-axes of the touch panel.
Purpose
To automatically correct the display positions on the touch panel after it is replaced.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [INITIALIZE] or [CHECK].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>INITIALIZE</td><td>Adjusts the display on the panel automatically.</td></tr>
<tr><td>CHECK</td><td>Checks the display on the touch panel.</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [INITIALIZE]
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the center of the + keys. Be sure to press three + keys displayed in order.
The touch panel is adjusted automatically.
3. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display.
4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Method: [CHECK]
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the indicated three + keys, and then check the display.
When adjusting the display, press [INITIALIZE] to execute the adjustment automatically.
3. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U202</td><td>
Setting the KMAS host monitoring system
Description
Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system.
This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U203	**Operating the DP separately** **Description** Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the DP. **Purpose** To check the DP operation. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper. 3. Select the item to be operated.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
CCD ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)	-	-
CCD ADP	With paper, single-sided original of CCD	-	-
CCD RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)	-	-
CCD RADP	With paper, double-sided original of CCD	-	-
CIS RADP (NON P)*	Without paper, double-sided original of CIS (continuous operation)	-	-
CIS RADP*	With paper, double-sided original of CIS	-	-
SPEED	Switching between normal reading (600 dpi) and high-speed reading	0 (Normal)/ 1 (High-speed)	0

*: Dual scan DP only.

4. Press the start key. The operation starts.
5. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key when the operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U204</td><td>
Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter
Description
Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.
Purpose
To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Device Setting</td><td>Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter</td></tr>
<tr><td>Message Setting</td><td>Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [KEY-DEVICE]
1. Select the optional counter to be installed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Key-Card</td><td>The key card is installed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Key-Counter</td><td>The key counter is installed</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not installed</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting: [MESSAGE]
1. Select the [Key Device] or [Coin Vender].
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U206</td><td>
Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender
Description
Sets the presence or absence of the optional coin vender. Also sets the details for coin vender operation, such as mode and unit price.
This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U207</td><td>
Checking the operation panel keys
Description
Checks operation of the operation panel keys.
Purpose
To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.

Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.
2. COUNT0 is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights.
3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light.
4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U208</td><td>
Setting the paper size for the paper feeder
Description
Sets the size of paper used in 3000-sheet paper feeder.
Purpose
To change the setting when installing the 3000-sheet paper feeder or the size of paper used in the paper feeder is changed.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the paper size (A4, B5 or Letter).
Initial setting: Letter (Inch specifications)
A4 (Metric specifications)
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U221</td><td>
Setting the USB host lock function
Description
Specifies ON/OFF the USB host lock function. Setting this to ON causes the machine to be unable to recognize the device connected to the USB host.
Purpose
Set according to the preference of the user.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>USB HOST LOCK</td><td>USB host lock function ON/OFF setting</td></tr>
</table>

Setting: [USB HOST LOCK]
1. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>USB host lock function ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>USB host lock function OFF</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U222</td><td>
Setting the IC card type
Description
Sets the IC card type.
This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U223</td><td>
Operation panel lock
Description
Sets the operation panel lock function to ON or OFF.
Purpose
To restrict operation in the system menu on the operation panel.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Unlock</td><td>Release the lock of the operation from the system menu</td></tr>
<tr><td>Partial Lock</td><td>Partially lock the operation from the system menu</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lock</td><td>Entirely lock the operation from the system menu</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Unlock
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U224</td><td>
Panel sheet extension
Description
Changes the image data and the message of the opening screen at the machine startup and the image data and the message of the service call screen to user specified data.
Purpose
Set according to the preference of the user.

Setting
1. Write the image data or the message data to the USB memory.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot of the machine.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter the maintenance item.
5. Press the start key.
6. Select the [Install] or [UnInstall].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Install</td><td>Installs the image data or the message data</td></tr>
<tr><td>UnInstall</td><td>Restores the original image data or message data</td></tr>
</table>
7. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Opening Img</td><td>Startup screen</td></tr>
<tr><td>Call Img</td><td>Service call image</td></tr>
<tr><td>Call Msg Top</td><td>Service call screen 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Call Msg Detail</td><td>Service call screen 2</td></tr>
</table>
8. Press the start key. Installation or uninstallation is started.
9. When normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U234</td><td>
Setting punch destination
Description
Sets the destination of punch unit of 3000-sheet document finisher.
Purpose
To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the destination.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>AUTO</td><td>With no punch unit</td></tr>
<tr><td>JAPAN METRIC</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>INCH</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>EUROPE METRIC</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: INCH (Inch specifications)/EUROPE METRIC (Metric specifications)
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U237</td><td>
Setting finisher stack quantity
Description
Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the Inner tray in 3000-sheet document finisher.
Purpose
To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MAIN TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td></tr>
<tr><td>MIDDLE TRAY</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple mode</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [MAIN TRAY]
1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Setting value</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 3000 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray: 1500 sheets</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: 0
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on.

Setting: [MIDDLE TRAY]
1. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Setting value</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple mode: 50 sheets</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for staple mode: 30 sheets</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: 0
Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for non-staple copying: 10 sheets
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U240	**Checking the operation of the finisher** **Description** Turns each motor and solenoid of 3000-sheet document finisher ON. **Purpose** To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the 3000-sheet document finisher. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked.

Display	Description
FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the document finisher
FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the document finisher
MAIL BOX	Checking the motor of the mailbox
BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the center-folding unit

Method: [FINISHER MOTOR]

1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Motor
FEED IN MOTOR M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed
FEED IN MOTOR L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed
CONV MOTOR H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed
CONV MOTOR M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed
CONV MOTOR L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed
EJECT MOTOR H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed
EJECT MOTOR M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed
EJECT MOTOR L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed
SUB PATH MOTOR H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterclockwise
SUB PATH MOTOR M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockrwise
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on
BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on
STAPLE FR MOTOR	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on
STAPLE S MOTOR	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on
STAPLE MOTOR	Staple motor (STM) is turned on
TRAY MOTOR	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on
PUNCH MOTOR	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on

Maintenance item No.	Description
U240	**Method: [FINISHER SOL]** 1. Select the item to be operated. 2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Solenoid
FEED IN SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)
REAR DOWN SOL 1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)
REAR DOWN SOL 2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)
SUB PATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)
SUB TRAY R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)
SUB TRAY L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)
BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)
PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)
HOLD DOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)
EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)
PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)

Method: [MAIL BOX]
1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Motor
CARRY ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying
BRANCH ROLL	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation

Method: [BOOKLET]
1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Motor
CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)
BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)
BUNDLE UP MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)
BUNDLE DOWN MOTOR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)
WIDTH TEST(A3)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)
WIDTH TEST(LD)	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)
STAPLE MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)

Completion
Press the stop key with the operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U241	**Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher** **Description** Displays the status of each switch of 3000-sheet document finisher. **Purpose** To check the operation of each switch of the 3000-sheet document finisher. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked.

Display	Description
FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher
MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox
BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the center-folding unit

Method: [FINISHER]

1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
   When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.

Display	Switches and sensors
FRONT COVER SW	Front cover switch (FCSW)
TOP COVER SW	Top cover switch (TCSW)
RIGHT COVER SW	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)
SET SW	Joint switch (JSW)
BOOKLET SW	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)
PUNCH TANK SW	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)
TRAY L-LIMIT SW	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)
TRAY U-LIMIT SW	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)
TRAY MIDDLE SW	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)
PAPER HOLD DOWN SW	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)
LOAD DET SW	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)
HP SW	Paper entry sensor (PES)
EJECT SW 1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)
EJECT SW 2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)
EJECT SW 3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)
STAPLE HP SW 1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)
STAPLE HP SW 2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)
MIDDLE FEED SW1	Inner tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)
MIDDLE FEED SW2	Inner tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)
BUNDLE DET SW 1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)
BUNDLE DET SW 2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)
BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)
WIDTH HP SW 1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)
WIDTH HP SW 2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)

Maintenance item No.	Description
U241	**Method: [MAIL BOX]** 1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.

Display	Switches and sensors
HP SW	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)
EJECT SW	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)
COVER SW	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MCOSW)
OVER FLOW SW 1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)
OVER FLOW SW 2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)
OVER FLOW SW 3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)
OVER FLOW SW 4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)
OVER FLOW SW 5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)
OVER FLOW SW 6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)
OVER FLOW SW 7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)

Method: [BOOKLET]

1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.

Display	Switches and sensors
BUNDLE UP HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)
BUNDLE DOWN HP SW	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)
BLADE HP SW	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)
WIDTH HP SW U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)
WIDTH HP SW L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)
FEED IN SW	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)
PAPER DET SW	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)
TRAY PAPER DET SW	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)
EJECT SW	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)
TRAY DET SW	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U243</td><td>
Checking the operation of the DP motors
Description
Turns the motors or solenoids in the DP on.
Purpose
To check the operation of the DP motors and solenoids.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Motor and solenoid</th><th>Operation</th></tr>
<tr><td>DP FEED MOT</td><td>Original feed motor (OFM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP CON MOT</td><td>Original conveying motor (OCM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP REV MOT</td><td>Original switchback motor (OSBM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP LIFT MOT</td><td>DP lift motor (DPLM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP REV PRS SOL</td><td>Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP REV BRCH SOL</td><td>Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)</td><td>On for 0.5 s</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS FAN*</td><td>DP fan motor (DPFM)</td><td>In operation</td></tr>
</table>
*: Dual scan DP only.
4. To turn each motor off, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U244</td><td>
Checking the DP switches
Description
Displays the status of the respective switches in the DP.
Purpose
To check if respective switches in the DP operate correctly.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status.
If the on-status of a switch is detected, the corresponding switch is displayed in reverse.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>FD SW</td><td>Original feed switch (OFSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>REG SW</td><td>Original registration switch (ORSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>TMG SW</td><td>DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>EJT SW</td><td>Original eject switch (OESW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>TRY SW</td><td>Switchback tray switch (SBTSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>SET SW</td><td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>SZ SW A</td><td>Original size length switch (OSLSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>L F U SW</td><td>Tray upper limit switch (TULSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>L F L SW</td><td>Tray lower limit switch (TLLSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>COV OP SW</td><td>DP interlock switch (DPILSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>P OP SW</td><td>DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS SW*</td><td>DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2)</td></tr>
</table>
*: Dual scan DP only.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U245	**Checking messages** **Description** Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel. **Purpose** To check the messages to be displayed. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be displayed. 3. Change the message using the cursor up/down keys. When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed. 4. Change the language using the +/- keys. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	**Setting the finisher** **Description** Provides various settings for the 3000-sheet document finisher, if furnished. **Purpose** **Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode** Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode. **Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode** To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one. **Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position of Inner tray** Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the Inner tray adjuster guides to paper. **Adjusting of front and back/slanted stapling home position** Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. Provides adjustment of slanted stapling. **Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position of center-folding unit** Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the centerfold adjuster guides to paper. **Adjustment of booklet stapling position** Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. **Adjustment of center folding position** Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.

Display	Description
3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of 3000-sheet document finisher
BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of center-folding unit

Method: [3000 FINISHER]

1. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.

Display	Description
PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode
PUNCH POSITION ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode
WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position
WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position
STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position
TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position

Setting: [PUNCH REG ADJ]

1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms

If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.

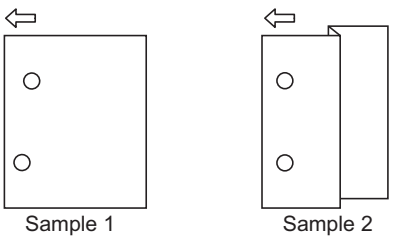


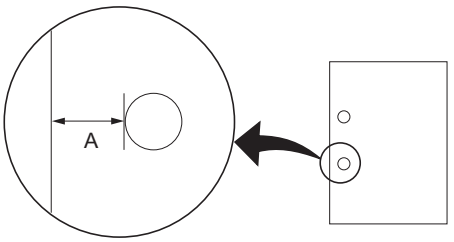
Figure 1-3-16

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [PUNCH POSITION ADJ]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.487 mm

If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value.



Preset value A: 5.5 ± 2 mm (inch)
9.5 ± 2 mm (metric)

Figure 1-3-17

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [WIDTH F HP ADJ/WIDTH R HP ADJ]

1. Select [WIDTH F HP ADJ] or [WIDTH R HP ADJ].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm
Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.314 mm

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select FINISHER MOTOR, then WID A3 TEST.
   The width guides of the Inner tray will move to A3-size position.
6. Pull the Inner tray, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.
7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.

Setting: [STAPLE HP ADJ]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.32 mm

When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the preset value.
When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the preset value.

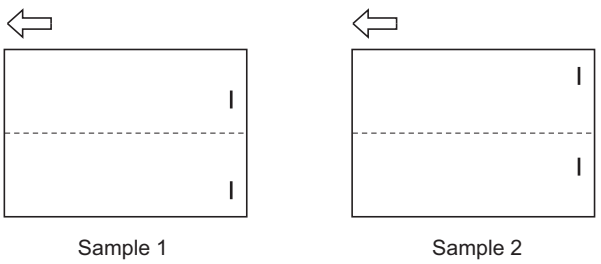


Figure 1-3-18

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [TURNED STAPLE HP ADJ]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.99°

To increase the angle for slanted stapling (sample 1), decrease the preset value. To decrease the angle for slanted stapling (sample 2), increase the preset value.

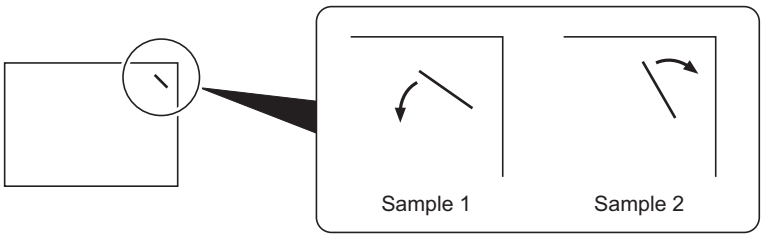


Figure 1-3-19

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [BOOKLET FOLDER]

1. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.

Display	Description
WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position
WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position
STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size
STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size
STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size
SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size
SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size
SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size

Setting: [WIDTH U HP ADJ/WIDTH L HP ADJ]

1. Select [WIDTH U HP ADJ] or [WIDTH L HP ADJ].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.104 mm
Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.104 mm

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [BOOKLET], then [WID A3 TEST].
   The width guides of the center-folding unit will move to A3-size position.
6. Pull the center-folding unit, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.
7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [STAPLE POS ADJ]** 1. Select [STAPLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)], [STAPLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)] or [STAPLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)]. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm

When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value.
Reference value: within ± 2 mm

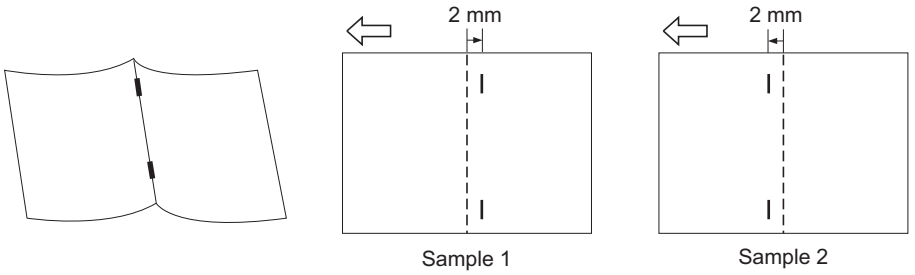


Figure 1-3-20

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [SADDLE POS ADJ]
1. Select [SADDLE POS ADJ (A4R/LTR)], [SADDLE POS ADJ (B4R/LGR)] or [SADDLE POS ADJ (A3/LD)].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm
Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger size	-10 to 10	0	0.55 mm

When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value.
Reference value: within ± 3 mm

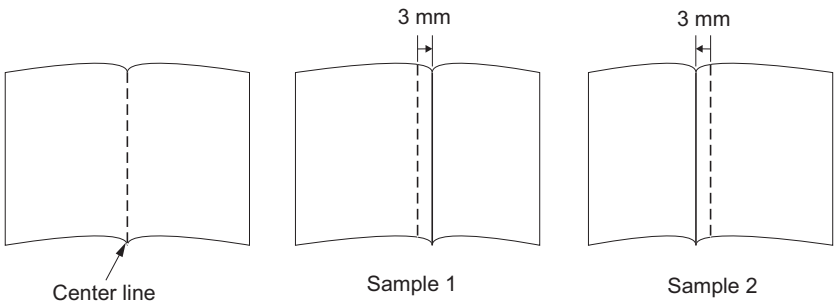


Figure 1-3-21

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U247	**Setting the paper feed device** **Description** Turns on motor and clutches of 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder. **Purpose** To check the operation of motor and clutches of paper feed device. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The value varies depending to the option furnished. 2. Select the item to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts. 3000-sheet paper feeder. **Display** / **Motor and clutches** / **Operation** LCF FEED / PF conveying motor (PFCM) / In operation CLUTCH B / PF conveying clutch (PFCCL) / On for 1 s CLUTCH P1 / PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) / On for 1 s CLUTCH P2 / PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) / On for 1 s Paper feeder **Display** / **Motor and clutches** / **Operation** DESK FEED / PF drive motor (PFDM) / In operation CLUTCH FEED / PF feed clutch (PFFCL) / On for 1 s CLUTCH U / PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) / On for 1 s CLUTCH L / PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) / On for 1 s 4. To turn each motor off, press the stop key. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U250	**Change the maintenance count pre-set** **Description** Changes preset values for maintenance cycle and automatic grayscale adjustment. **Purpose** Provides changing the time when the message to acknowledge to conduct maintenance and automatic grayscale adjustment is periodically displayed. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. The current pre-set value is displayed. **Clearing** 1. Select the item to be cleared. To clear all items, select [ALL CLEAR]. 2. Press the clear key. 3. Press the start key. The setting value is cleared. **Setting** 1. Select the item to be changed. 2. Enter the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. 3. Press the start key. The setting value is set. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Display	Description	Setting range
Maintenance Count A	Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color and black/white print)	0 to 9999999
Maintenance Count B	Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color print)	0 to 9999999
COUNT GRAY ADJUST*100	Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment	0 to 99900*

*: The setting can be changed by 100 per step.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U251	**Checking/clearing the maintenance count** **Description** Displays and clears or changes the maintenance count and automatic grayscale adjustment count. **Purpose** To verify the maintenance counter count and automatic grayscale count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service. **Method** Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.

Display	Description	Setting range
Maintenance Count A	Maintenance count (Color and black/white print)	0 to 9999999
Maintenance Count B	Maintenance count (Color print)	0 to 9999999
COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)	Automatic grayscale adjustment count	0 to 9999999

Clearing
1. Select the item to be cleared. To clear all items, select [ALL CLEAR].
2. Press the clear key.
3. Press the start key. The count is cleared.

Setting
1. Select the item to be changed.
2. Enter the count using the numeric keys.
3. Press the start key. The count is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U252	**Setting the destination** **Description** Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination. **Purpose** To be executed after initializing the backup RAM, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the destination. **Display** / **Description** JAPAN METRIC — Metric (Japan) specifications EUROPE METRIC — Metric (Europe) specifications INCH — Inch (North America) specifications ASIA PACIFIC — Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications AUSTRALIA — Australia specifications CHINA — China specifications KOREA — Korea specifications 3. Press the start key. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. **Supplement** The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination. **Initial setting according to the destinations** **Maintenance No.** / **Title** / **Japan spec.** / **Inch spec.** / **Europe/Asia Pacific spec.** 208 — Setting the paper size for the paper feeder — A4 — Letter — A4 253 — Switching between double and single counts — Single count — Double count (A3/LEDGER) — Double count (A3/LEDGER)

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U253</td><td>
Switching between double and single counts
Description
Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters for every color mode.
Purpose
Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/Ledger paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Full-color</td><td>Count system of full color mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mono Color*</td><td>Count system of single color mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>B/W</td><td>Count system of black/white mode</td></tr>
</table>
Displayed only if the setting of U276 (Setting the copy count mode) is MODE1.
3. Select the count system.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ALL SINGLE</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)</td><td>Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOUBLE COUNT(B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr>
<tr><td>DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)</td><td>Double count for FOLIO/Legal size or larger</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)
4. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U260</td><td>
Selecting the timing for copy counting
Description
Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.
Purpose
To be set according to user (copy service provider) request.
If a paper jam occurs frequently in the optional document finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier.
If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fuser sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made.
To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the copy count timing.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>FEED</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr>
<tr><td>EJECT</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: EJECT
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U265</td><td>
Setting OEM purchaser code
Description
Sets the OEM purchaser code.
Purpose
Sets the code when replacing the main PWB and the like.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the preset value using the numeric keys.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U276</td><td>
Setting the copy count mode
Description
Sets the count mode of single color mode.
Purpose
To change the charging counter which counts up in single color printing.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the mode.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE 0</td><td>This lets the full color counter count up in single color</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE 1</td><td>This lets the single color counter count up in single color</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE 0
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U278</td><td>
Setting the delivery date
Description
Enter delivery date in month, day, and year.
Purpose
To operate when installing the machine. Perform this to confirm the delivery date.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [TODAY].
3. Press the start key. The delivery date is set.

Clearing
1. Select [CLEAR].
2. Press the start key. The delivery date is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U284</td><td>
Setting 2 color copy mode
Description
Sets whether to use 2 color copy mode.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>2 color copy mode is enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>2 color copy mode is disabled</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
If ON is selected, 2-color copy will be displayed on the color function screen.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U285</td><td>
Setting service status page
Description
Determines displaying the digital dot coverage report on reporting.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [COVERAGE] and select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Displays the digital dot coverage</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the digital dot coverage</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U323</td><td>
Setting abnormal temperature and humidity warning
Description
Specify whether or not a notice is displayed on the operation panel when abnormal temperature and humidity is detected.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Displays the abnormal temperature and humidity warning</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to display the abnormal temperature and humidity warning</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U325	**Setting the paper interval** **Description** Determines the interval between pages and the toner replenishment amount when printing pages with high print coverage. **Purpose** Modify the settings only if a spotted background or uneven density appears when printing pages with high print coverage. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.

Display	Description
Paper Interval	Paper interval control ON/OFF setting
Select MODE	Setting mode of the paper interval control

Setting: [Paper Interval]

1. Select ON or OFF.

Display	Description
ON	Paper interval control is performed
OFF	Paper interval control is not performed

Initial setting: OFF

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Select MODE]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
MODE	Paper interval control mode when printing high density original continuously	0 to 5	1

If a spotted background appears when printing pages with high print coverage, change the setting to 5. However, if you prefer to give priority to printing speed, change the setting to 4.

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Detail of mode

Mode	Output value of the sensor to widen the paper interval	Paper interval time	Toner supply amount
MODE1	550 or more	Standard	Normal
MODE2	502 or more	Long (x 1.5)	Normal
MODE3	550 or more	Short (x 0.8)	Normal
MODE4	550 or more	Standard	Less
MODE5	502 or more	Long (x 1.5)	Less

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U326	**Setting the black line cleaning indication** **Description** Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line. **Purpose** Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the contact glass when scanning from the DP. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed. **Setting: [BLACK LINE MODE]** 1. Select ON or OFF. Initial setting: ON Setting count value is displayed only if the setting is ON. 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Setting: [BLACK LINE COUNT]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. When setting is 0, the black line cleaning indication is displayed only if the black line is detected. 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Display	Description
BLACK LINE MODE	Black line cleaning guidance ON/OFF setting
BLACK LINE COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication

Display	Description
ON	Displays the cleaning guidance
OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
COUNT	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication (x 1000 sheets)	0 to 255	8

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U327</td><td>
Setting the cassette heater control
Description
Sets the cassette heater control.
Purpose
To change the setting according to the machine installation environment.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE Setting</td><td>Setting the cassette heater control</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option Heater</td><td>Optional cassette heater installed/not Installed setting</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [MODE Setting]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Cassette heater OFF</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Cassette heater ON during sleep mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Cassette heater ON during sleep mode and standby</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Option Heater]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>NONE</td><td>Optional cassette heater not Installed</td></tr>
<tr><td>EXISTS</td><td>Optional cassette heater installed</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: NONE
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U328</td><td>
Side ejection setting
Description
Sets whether to eject to the side of the machine when an optional curl eliminator is installed.
Purpose
Set according to the preference of the user.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>To eject to the side of the machine</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Not to eject to the side of the machine</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U332</td><td>
Setting the size conversion factor
Description
Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in user simulation.
Purpose
To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation Rate</td><td>Size parameter</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U340</td><td>
Setting the applied mode
Description
Allocates memory to ensure that there is sufficient memory available for the printer to use as a working area.
Purpose
Modify the memory allocation if insufficient memory for transparency support or XPS direct printing occurs.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Image Memory Adj.</td><td>Area temporarily used to create output image.</td><td>0 to 400 (MB)</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Image Memory Adj. Detail</td><td>Area temporarily used to hold downloaded font and other data.</td><td>0 to 400 (MB)</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
Set the values below in case print failure occurs with the memory shortage. (recommended value)
Image Memory Adj. : +190
Image Memory Adj. Detaile : +1
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.

Supplement
The work area for copy is small and it may cause output failure if the values are large.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U341</td><td>
Specific paper feed location setting for printing function
Description
Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output (only if a printer kit is installed).
Purpose
To use a paper feed location only for printer output.
A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the paper feed location for the printer.
Two or more cassette can be selected.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CASSETTE 1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASSETTE 2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASSETTE 3</td><td>Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASSETTE 4</td><td>Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>LCF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder</td></tr>
</table>
When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U343</td><td>
Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode
Description
Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.
Purpose
To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: OFF
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U345</td><td>
Setting the value for maintenance due indication
Description
Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends.
When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed.
Purpose
To change the time for maintenance due indication.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT</td><td>Time for maintenance due indication
(Remaining number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends)</td><td>0 to 9999</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U402	**Adjusting margins of image printing** **Description** Adjusts margins for image printing. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm
A	Printer left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
C	Printer right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.9	0.1 mm

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

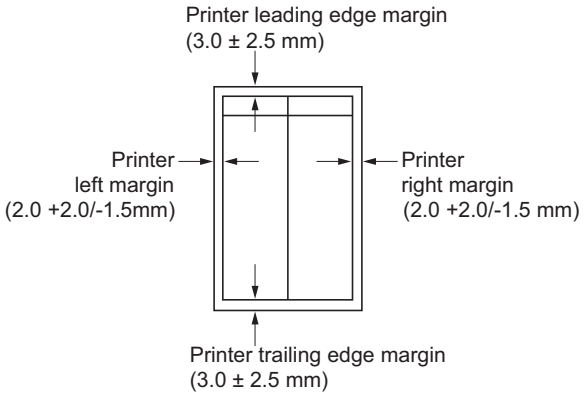
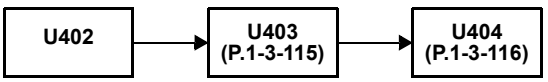


Figure 1-3-22

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U403	**Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass** **Description** Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the contact glass. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

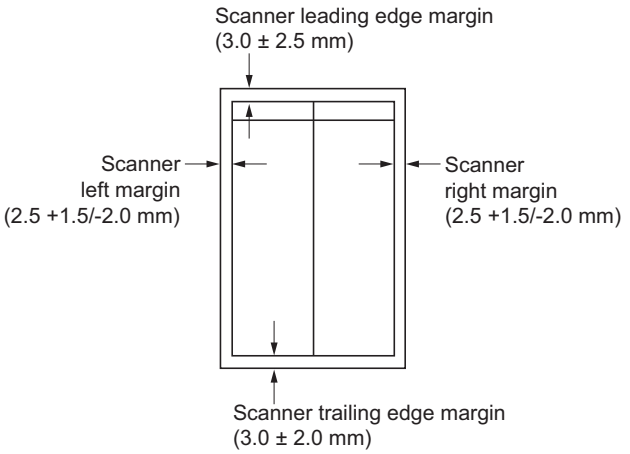
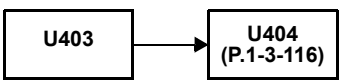


Figure 1-3-23

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.



Completion
Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U404	**Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP** **Description** Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect. **Caution** Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode U402 (P.1-3-114) → U403 (P.1-3-115) → U404 **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm
C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm
A MARGIN (BACK)*	Left margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
B MARGIN (BACK)*	Leading edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm
C MARGIN (BACK)*	Right margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
D MARGIN (BACK)*	Trailing edge margin (second side)	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm

*: Dual scan DP only.

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

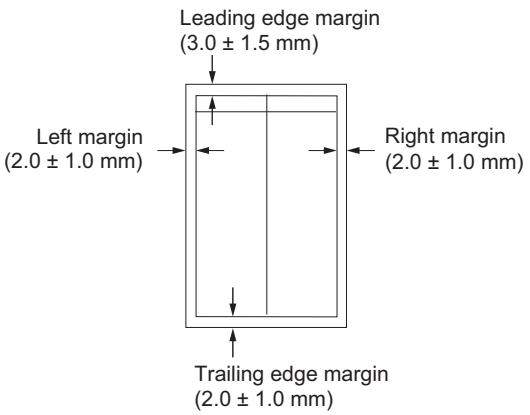


Figure 1-3-24

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U407	**Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing** **Description** Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying. **Purpose** Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image on the front face and that on the reverse face during duplex switchback copying. **Caution** Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode U034 (P.1-3-27) → U402 (P.1-3-114) → U066 (P.1-3-40) → U403 (P.1-3-115) → U071 (P.1-3-44) → U404 (P.1-3-116) → U407 **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
ADJUST DATA	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	0	0.1 mm

2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, decrease the value.
   For copy example 2, increase the value.

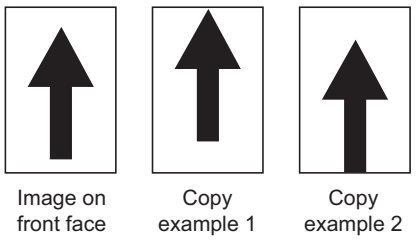


Figure 1-3-25

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U410	**Adjusting the halftone automatically** **Description** Carries out processing for the data acquisition that is required in order to perform either automatic adjustment of the halftone or the ID correction operation. Also the color table is changed when an offset occurs. **Purpose** Performed when the quality of reproduced halftones has dropped. Also when an offset occurs, the setting of color table is changed to table2. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description
Continuous Adjustment	Executing the automatic adjustment of the halftone
Table Config	Switching the color table

Method: [Continuous Adjustment]

1. Select [Continuous Adjustment].
2. Press the start key. A test pattern 1 is outputted.
3. Place the output test pattern 1 as the original.
   Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 1 and set them.
4. Press the start key.
   Adjustment is made (first time).
5. A test pattern 2 is outputted. Place the output test pattern 2 as the original.
   Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 2 and set them.
6. Press the start key.
   Adjustment is made (second time).
7. A test pattern 3 is outputted. Place the output test pattern 3 as the original.
   Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 3 and set them.
8. Press the start key.
   Adjustment is made (third time).
9. When normally completed, [ALL COMP.] is displayed.
   If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed.

Error codes

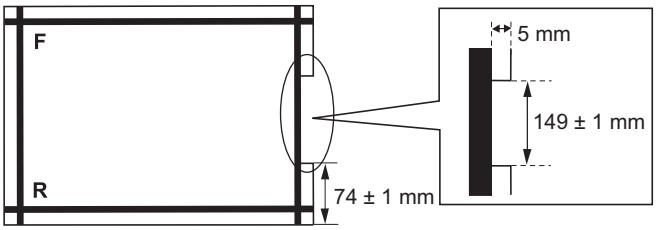
Codes	Description
S01	Order error
S02	Patch not detected
S03	Original deviation in the main scanning direction
S04	Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction
S05	Original inclination error
E01	Engine error
E02	Sensor error
C01	Controller error
C02 (C/M/Y/K)	Adjustment value error
C03 (C/M/Y/K)	Adjustment value error

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U410</td><td>
Method: [Table Config]
1. Select [Table Config].
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Table1</td><td>Normal color table</td></tr>
<tr><td>Table2</td><td>Color table for offset improvement</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Table1
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U411</td><td>
Adjusting the scanner automatically
Description
Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.
Purpose
To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)</th></tr>
<tr><td>SCANNER</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the scanner section</td><td>302FZ56990</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP(FACE UP)</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (first page)</td><td>302AC68243</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP(FACE DOWN)*</td><td>Automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section (second page)</td><td>302AC68243/303JX57010/ 303JX57020</td></tr>
</table>
*: Dual scan DP only.

Method: [SCANNER]
1. Enter the target values which are shown on the specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) executing maintenance item U425.
2. Set a specified original (P/N: 302FZ56990) on the platen.
3. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ALL</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/ leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix.</td></tr>
<tr><td>INPUT</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: original size magnification/ leading edge timing/center line.</td></tr>
<tr><td>C.A.</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: chromatic aberration filter.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MTF</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: MTF filter.</td></tr>
<tr><td>GAMMA</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: input gamma.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MATRIX</td><td>Automatic adjustment using the platen for: matrix.</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U411	**Method: DP(FACE UP)** 1. Measure the leading edge, main scanning, and auxiliary scanning of the specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) and enter the values by executing maintenance item U425. 2. Set a specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) in the DP. Cut the trailing edge of the original.  **Figure 1-3-26** 3. Press [INPUT]. **Display** / **Description**: INPUT — Automatic adjustment of first page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line. 4. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items. **Method: DP(FACE DOWN)** 1. Place the specified original for acquiring gamma target data (P/N: 303JX57010) on the platen, and press the start key. 2. Place the specified original for acquiring matrix target data (P/N: 303JX57020) on the platen, and press the start key. When normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed. 3. Select the item (place all originals face down). **Display** / **Description** / **Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)**: ALL — Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line, input gamma, chromatic aberration filter, MTF filter and matrix. — 302AC68243/303JX57010/303JX57020 INPUT — Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: original size magnification/leading edge timing/center line. — 302AC68243 MTF/GAMMA — Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: MTF filter and input gamma. — 303JX57010 MATRIX — Automatic adjustment of second page using the DP for: matrix. — 303JX57020 **[INPUT]** 1. Select [INPUT]. 2. Place a specified original (P/N: 302AC68243). 3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. **[GAMMA]** 1. Select [MTF/GAMMA]. 2. Place a specified original (P/N: 303JX57010). 3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. **[MTF/MATRIX]** 1. Select [MATRIX]. 2. Place a specified original (P/N: 303JX57020). 3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U411	When [ALL] is selected, the adjustment of [INPUT], [MTF/GAMMA] and [MATRIX] can be executed at once. When adjusting, place the three specified originals, and then press the start key. Set the original 303JX57020, and then place 303JX57010 and 302AC68243 in order on the top of the original. When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, [ERROR XX] (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items. **Error Codes** **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.

Codes	Description
ERROR 01	Black band detection error (scanner leading edge registration)
ERROR 02	Black band detection error (scanner center line)
ERROR 03	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction magnification)
ERROR 04	Black band is not detected (scanner leading edge registration)
ERROR 05	Black band is not detected (scanner center line)
ERROR 06	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction magnification)
ERROR 07	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification)
ERROR 08	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification far end)
ERROR 09	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction magnification near end)
ERROR 0a	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge)
ERROR 0b	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction magnification leading edge
ERROR 0c	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)
ERROR 0d	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge 2)
ERROR 0e	DMA time out
ERROR 0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error
ERROR 10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge detection error
ERROR 11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge detection error
ERROR 12	Auxiliary scanning direction skew 1.5 error
ERROR 13	Maintenance request error
ERROR 14	Main scanning direction center line error
ERROR 15	Main scanning direction skew 1.5 error
ERROR 16	Main scanning direction magnification error
ERROR 17	Service call error
ERROR 18	DP paper misfeed error
ERROR 19	PWB replacement error
ERROR 1a	Original error

Maintenance item No.	Description
U412	**Adjusting the uneven density** **Description** Adjusts the uneven developing/transfer density in the drum axis direction by scanning directly the density distribution of test pattern with the scanner and adjusting LSU light quantity. **Purpose** To perform when replacing the drum unit or laser scanner unit. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item. The screen for executing is displayed.

Display	Description
Adjust Uneven Density	Executing the uneven density correction
ON/OFF Config	Uneven density correction ON/OFF setting

Method: [Adjust Uneven Density]

1. Select [Adjust Uneven Density].
2. Select [Default Value].
   A test pattern is outputted with the initial light quantity setting. (1st sheet)
3. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
4. Press the start key. A test pattern is outputted. (2nd sheet)
   A test pattern is outputted with light quantity setting lower than the 1st test pattern by 20%.
5. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
6. Press the start key. A test pattern is outputted. (3rd sheet)
7. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
8. Press the start key.
   The correction result is checked. When normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed.

Retray (1st time)

9. If the correction is not completed normally, [Retry] is displayed and a test pattern is outputted. (4th sheet)
   A test pattern is outputted with light quantity setting lower than the 3rd test pattern by 20%.
10. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
11. Press the start key. A test pattern is outputted. (5th sheet)
12. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
13. Press the start key.
    The correction result is checked. When normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed.

Retray (2nd time)

14. If the correction is not completed normally, [Retry] is displayed and a test pattern is outputted. (6th sheet)
    A test pattern is outputted with light quantity setting lower than the 5th test pattern by 20%.
15. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
16. Press the start key. A test pattern is outputted. (7th sheet)
17. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
18. Press the start key.
    The correction result is checked. When normally completed, [COMPLETE] is displayed
    If a problem occurs during auto correction, error code is displayed.
    [SetDef] is displayed in case of an engine error.

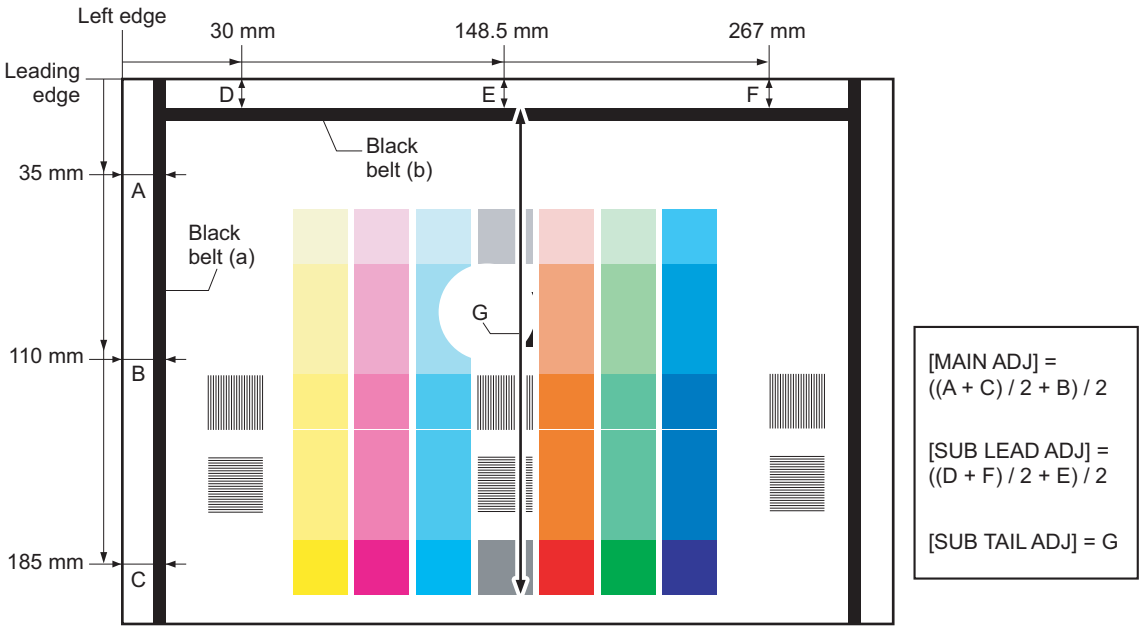
Error codes

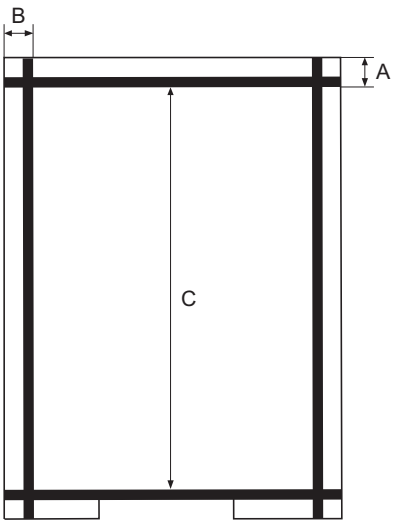
Codes	Description	Corrective measures
S01	Order error	Check the original
S02	Patch not detected	Check the original
S03	Original deviation in the main scanning direction	Check the original
S04	Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction	Check the original
S05	Original inclination error	Check the original

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U412</td><td>
Setting: [ON/OFF Config]
1. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Uneven density correction is enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Uneven density correction is disabled</td></tr>
</table>
ON is automatically set after the correction is complete.
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U425</td><td>
Setting the target
Description
Enters the lab values that is indicated on the back of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment. Also enters the measurement value of the chart (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment.
Purpose
Performs data input in order to correct for differences in originals during automatic adjustment.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CCD</td><td>Entering the target values of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP</td><td>Entering the measurement value of the chart (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS</td><td>Execution is not required</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [CCD]
1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>N875</td><td>Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>N475</td><td>Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>N125</td><td>Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>CYAN</td><td>Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAGENTA</td><td>Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>YELLOW</td><td>Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>RED</td><td>Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>GREEN</td><td>Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLUE</td><td>Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>ADJUST ORIGINAL</td><td>Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>L</td><td>Setting the L value</td><td>0.0 to 100.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>A</td><td>Setting the A value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td>Setting the B value</td><td>-200.0 to 200.0</td></tr>
</table>
3. Enters the value that is indicated on the back of the chart using the +/- or numeric keys.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U425	**Setting: [ADJUST ORIGINAL]** 1. Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A, B and C. Measurement procedure 1) Measure the distance from the edge to the black belt (a) of the original at A (35 mm from the leading edge), B (110 mm from the leading edge) and C (185 mm from the leading edge), respectively. 2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: ((A + C) / 2 + B) / 2 2. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [MAIN ADJ]. 3. Press the start key. The value is set. 4. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D, E and F. Measurement procedure 1) Measure the length from the edge to the black belt (b) of the original at D (30 mm from the left edge), E (148.5 mm from the left edge) and F (267 mm from the left edge), respectively. 2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: ((D + F) / 2 + E) / 2 5. Enter the values solved using the +/- keys in [SUB LEAD ADJ]. 6. Press the start key. The value is set. 7. Measure the length (G) from the leading edge of the black belt (b) to the bottom of the N475 patch of the original. 8. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [SUB TAIL ADJ]. 9. Press the start key. The value is set. 10. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop key.  Original for adjustment (P/N: 302FZ56990) **Figure 1-3-27**

Maintenance item No.	Description
U425	**Setting: [DP]** 1. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (inside) of the original at A. 2. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [LEAD]. 3. Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (inside) of the original at B. 4. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [MAIN SCAN]. 5. Measure the distance from the black belt of leading edge (inside) to the black belt of trailing edge (inside) of the original at C. 6. Enter the measured value using the +/- keys in [SUB SCAN]. 7. Press the start key. The value is set.  Original for adjustment (P/N: 302AC68243) **Figure 1-3-28** **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U429	**Setting the offset for the color balance** **Description** Displays and changes the density for each color during copying in the various image quality modes. **Purpose** To change the balance for each color. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
Text + Photo	Density of each color in the text & photo mode
Photo	Density of each color in the photo mode
Printed photo	Density of each color in the printed photo mode
Text	Density of each color in the text mode
Map	Density of each color in the map mode
Printed Document	Density of each color in the ptinted document mode

Setting

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
CYAN	Value of the cyan setting	-5 to 5	0
MAGENTA	Value of the magenta setting	-5 to 5	0
YELLOW	Value of the yellow setting	-5 to 5	0
BLACK	Value of the black setting	-5 to 5	0

Increasing the value darkens the density and decreasing it lightens the density.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement

While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U432	**Setting the center offset for the exposure** **Description** Sets the offset value for the setting data for exposure centering adjustment under user simulation. For example, if the value for the exposure centering adjustment is set to -1 and you change the offset value to +2, image processing is performed as though the exposure centering adjustment setting is +1. **Purpose** Set according to the preference of the user. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed. **Setting** 1. Select image quality mode. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. If the setting value is increased to increase the exposure centering adjustment value, images is darker. If the setting value is decreased to decrease the exposure centering adjustment value, images is lighter. 3. Press the start key. The value is set. **Supplement** While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key). **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Display	Description
Full Color	Exposure offset setting for the full color mode
Mono Color	Exposure offset setting for the black and white mode

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Text	Offset value for the text mode	-3 to 3	0
Text + Photo	Offset value for the text & photo mode	-3 to 3	0
Other	Offset value for other modes	-3 to 3	0

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U464</td><td>
Setting the ID correction operation
Description
Turns ID correction (calibration) on or off. Also, this determines the duration of calibration and the timing of calibration during printing. Also, this allows individual settings for calibration operation by enabling custom settings.
Purpose
To restrict calibration when poor image quality is generated. Also, this allows individual settings for calibration by enabling custom settings in setting the calibration cycle under the machine defaults depending on the user preferences.
Performs AC calibration when replacing the developing or drum unit.
Supplement
If you changes the settings, set the [Set Custom] setting to ON and select [System Menu] → [Adjustment/ Maintenance] → [Color Calibration Cycle] → [Custom].

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Permission</td><td>Setting to turn calibration on/off</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Time Interval</td><td>Setting the interval time of calibration after printing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Sleep Period for Calib</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the sleep time when the machine recovers from the sleep mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Permission Act.(50sheets)</td><td>Turning paper interval calibration on/off after continuously printing 50 pages</td></tr>
<tr><td>Permission (ON/Sleep out)</td><td>Setting execution parameters for calibration when powered up or reverted from auto-sleep</td></tr>
<tr><td>Permission (AP/NE)</td><td>Paper interval calibration ON/OFF setting at the time of calibration/near end after toner feed</td></tr>
<tr><td>SetCalib Timing duringPrint</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the continuous print driving time during printing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Interval CalibDriveTime</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out paper interval calibration based on the driving time during printing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Interval CalibPrint Rate</td><td>Setting the standard printing ratio for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the printing ratio when printing the tenth sheet.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Custom</td><td>Turning custom settings on/off in setting the calibration cycle under the system menu</td></tr>
<tr><td>AC Calibration</td><td>Executing the AC calibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>Target Value</td><td>Setting the sensor target values for toner thick layer calibration and light amount calibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>PrintRate(B/W)</td><td>Setting the proportion of black/white printing at which black/white calibration is executed during color printing.</td></tr>
<tr><td>AC Calib Magnification</td><td>AC calibration target bias value setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>SetInt.Calib PrintRate(H)</td><td>Setting the standard printing ratio for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the printing ratio when printing the tenth sheet (half speed).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Calib TimingduringPrint(H)</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the continuous print driving time during printing (half speed).</td></tr>
<tr><td>AC Calib Type</td><td>Mode setting for AC calibration bias control</td></tr>
<tr><td>Warmup Calib Type*</td><td>Mode setting for start-up calibration</td></tr>
</table>
*: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model only
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U464	**Setting: [Permission]** 1. Select ON or OFF. **Display** / **Description** ON: Turns calibration ON OFF: Turns calibration OFF Initial setting: ON 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Setting: [Set Time Interval]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. **Display** / **Description** / **Setting range** / **Initial setting** COUNT / Setting the interval time of calibration / 0 to 9999 (s) / 480 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Setting: [Set Sleep Period for Calib]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. **Display** / **Description** / **Setting range** / **Initial setting** Time(min) / Setting the standard time of sleep mode / 0 to 480 (min) / 60 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Setting: [Permission Act.(50sheets)]** 1. Select ON or OFF. **Display** / **Description** ON: Enables permission to execute at continuously 50 pages OFF: Disables permission to execute at continuously 50 pages Initial setting: ON 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Setting: [Permission (ON/Sleep out)]** 1. Select ON or OFF. **Display** / **Description** ON: Executes calibration if fuser temperature is less than 50°C/122°F at power-up or recovery from auto sleep mode OFF: Executes calibration regardless of fuser temperature at power-up or recovery from auto sleep mode Initial setting: ON 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Setting: [Permission (AP/NE)]** 1. Select ON or OFF. **Display** / **Description** ON: Paper interval calibration at the time of calibration/near end after toner feed is carried out OFF: Paper interval calibration at the time of calibration/near end after toner feed is not carried out Initial setting: ON 2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U464	**Setting: [SetCalib Timing duringPrint]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys. 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Setting: [Set Interval CalibDriveTime]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys. 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Setting: [Set Interval CalibPrintRate]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Setting: [Set Custom]** 1. Select ON or OFF. Initial setting: OFF 2. Press the start key. The setting is set. **Setting: [AC Calibration]** 1. Select the color of the replaced developing unit or drum unit. 2. Press ON/OFF. If the machine is installed at high altitude, select [High Altitude]. 3. Press the start key. AC calibration is executed. 4. When normally completed, [Complete] is displayed. When an error occurs, an error code is displayed. 5. Turn the main power switch off and on.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Timing(sec)	Setting the drive standard time of continuous print	300 to 3600 (s)	1800

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Time(sec)	Setting the drive standard time	300 to 3000 (s)	600

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Threshold Level(%)	Setting the standard printing ratio	0 to 100 (%)	20

Display	Description
ON	Set to custom settings in setting the calibration cycle under the system menu
OFF	Set to standard settings in setting the calibration cycle under the system menu

Display	Description
CYAN	Developing unit C or drum unit C
MAGENTA	Developing unit M or drum unit M
YELLOW	Developing unit Y or drum unit Y
BLACK	Developing unit K or drum unit K
High Altitude	Overall setting for installation at high altitude

Maintenance item No.	Description
U464	

Error codes

Codes	Description
1	Cover open detection
2	Toner empty detection
3	Waste toner full detection
11/12/13/14	Connector removed or failure of PWB (cyan / yellow / magenta / black)
15/16/17/18	Foreign matter in developing unit (cyan / yellow / magenta / black)
19/20/21/22	Discharging of developing bias is not detected (cyan / yellow / magenta / black)

Setting: [Target Value]

1. Select the item.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Thickness Calib C	Toner thick layer calibration (cyan)	0 to 1000	500
Thickness Calib M	Toner thick layer calibration (magenta)	0 to 1000	500
Thickness Calib Y	Toner thick layer calibration (yellow)	0 to 1000	500
Thickness Calib Addition Bias K	Bias for addition in toner thick layer calibration (black)	-100 to +100	10
Gamma Calib C	Light amount calibration (cyan)	0 to 500	300
Gamma Calib M	Light amount calibration (magenta)	0 to 500	300
Gamma Calib Y	Light amount calibration (yellow)	0 to 500	300
Gamma Calib K	Light amount calibration (black)	0 to 500	300

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [PrintRate(B/W)]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Threshold Level(%)	Proportion of black/white printing	0 to 100 (%)	50

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [AC Calib Magnification]

1. Select the item.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
CYAN	Target bias value (cyan)	-10 to 5	0
MAGENTA	Target bias value (magenta)	-10 to 5	0
YELLOW	Target bias value (yellow)	-10 to 5	0
BLACK	Target bias value (black)	-10 to 5	0

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U464</td><td>
Setting: [SetInt.Calib PrintRate(H)]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold Level(%)</td><td>Setting the standard printing ratio</td><td>0 to 100 (%)</td><td>10</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set Calib TimingduringPrint(H)]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Timing(sec)</td><td>Setting the drive standard time of continuous print</td><td>300 to 3600 (s)</td><td>600</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [AC Calib Type]
1. Select MODE1 or MODE2.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Execute AC calibration by normal bias control</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Execute AC calibration by fixed bias value</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE1
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Warmup Calib Type]
1. Select MODE1 or MODE2.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Execute simple calibration for 25/25, 30/30 ppm model at startup.</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Execute regular calibration for 40/40, 50/40 ppm model at startup.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE1
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U465	**Data reference for ID correction** **Description** References the data related to ID correction. **Purpose** To check the corresponding data. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be reference. The screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
TCONT	Developing bias control value after ID correction
XYZ (C)	Data of grayscale variance for cyan
XYZ (M)	Data of grayscale variance for magenta
XYZ (Y)	Data of grayscale variance for yellow
XYZ (K)	Data of grayscale variance for black
LASER POWER	Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration
Bias Calib	Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration

Displaying: [TCOUNT]

1. Select [TCOUNT]. The current value is displayed.

Display	Description
BEFORE (C)	Developing bias control value for cyan before ID correction
BEFORE (M)	Developing bias control value for magenta before ID correction
BEFORE (Y)	Developing bias control value for yellow before ID correction
BEFORE (K)	Developing bias control value for black before ID correction
AFTER (C)	Developing bias control value for cyan after ID correction
AFTER (M)	Developing bias control value for magenta after ID correction
AFTER (Y)	Developing bias control value for yellow after ID correction
AFTER (K)	Developing bias control value for black after ID correction

Displaying: [XYZ]

1. Select [XYZ (C)], [XYZ (M)], [XYZ (Y)] or [XYZ (K)]. The current value is displayed.

Display	Description
DATA1 - 8 (C)	Data of grayscale variance (cyan)
DATA1 - 8 (M)	Data of grayscale variance (magenta)
DATA1 - 8 (Y)	Data of grayscale variance (yellow)
DATA1 - 8 (K)	Data of grayscale variance (black)

Displaying: [LASER POWER]

1. Select [LASER POWER]. The current value is displayed.

Display	Description
LASER POWER K	Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration (black)
LASER POWER C	Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration (cyan)
LASER POWER M	Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration (magenta)
LASER POWER Y	Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration (yellow)

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U465</td><td>
Displaying: [Bias Calib]
1. Select [Bias calib]. The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Bias Calib Density K</td><td>Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration (black)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bias Calib Density C</td><td>Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration (cyan)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bias Calib Density M</td><td>Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration (magenta)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bias Calib Density Y</td><td>Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration (yellow)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U467	**Setting the color registration adjustment** **Description** Sets the color registration adjustment and transfer belt speed correction. Also, determines the conditions by which color registration correction is executed depending on the LSU temperature. **Purpose** If color variance is uneven due to a sensor failure, etc., turn this off and temporarily make a manual adjustment. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Color Regist Adjustment	Setting the color registration correction operation
Transfer Belt Speed Adj.	Setting the transfer belt speed correction operation
Set Timing	After the previous correction is executed, color registration is compensated as the LSU temperature varies by the value determined.

Setting: [Color Regist Adjustment]

1. Select ON or OFF.

Display	Description
ON	Enables the color registration correction operation.
OFF	Disables the color registration correction operation.

Initial setting: ON

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Transfer Belt Speed Adj.]

1. Select ON or OFF.

Display	Description
ON	Enables the transfer belt speed correction operation.
OFF	Disables the transfer belt speed correction operation.

Initial setting: ON

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Set Timing]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
TIMING	Conditions for execution depending on the LSU temperature variation	2 to 10	10

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U468</td><td>
Checking the color registration data
Description
Displays the color registration correction data and transfer belt speed correction data.
Purpose
To check the corresponding data.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be reference. The screen for the selected item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Auto Adjustment(C)</td><td>Display the auto color registration adjustment value for cyan</td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto Adjustment(M)</td><td>Display the auto color registration adjustment value for magenta</td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto Adjustment(Y)</td><td>Display the auto color registration adjustment value for yellow</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manual Adjustment(C)</td><td>Display the manual color registration adjustment value for cyan</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manual Adjustment(M)</td><td>Display the manual color registration adjustment value for magenta</td></tr>
<tr><td>Manual Adjustment(Y)</td><td>Display the manual color registration adjustment value for yellow</td></tr>
<tr><td>Speed Adjustment</td><td>Display the transfer speed adjustment value</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [Auto Adjustment]
1. Select [Auto Adjustment(C)], [Auto Adjustment(M)] or [Auto Adjustment(Y)].
The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Main Scan(C)/(M)/(Y)</td><td>Auto color registration adjustment value of the main scanning direction</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sub Scan(C)/(M)/(Y)</td><td>Auto color registration adjustment value of the auxiliary scanning direction</td></tr>
<tr><td>Magnification(C)/(M)/(Y)</td><td>Auto color registration adjustment value of the magnification</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [Manual Adjustment]
1. Select [Manual Adjustment(C)], [Manual Adjustment((M)] or [Manual Adjustment((Y)].
The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Main Scan(C)/(M)/(Y)</td><td>Manual color registration adjustment value of the main scanning direction</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sub Scan(C)/(M)/(Y)</td><td>Manual color registration adjustment value of the auxiliary scanning direction</td></tr>
<tr><td>Magnification 1 - 6 (C)/(M)/(Y)</td><td>Manual color registration adjustment value of the magnification</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [Speed Adjustment]
1. Select [Speed Adjustment].
The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>SPEED</td><td>transfer speed</td></tr>
<tr><td>STATUS</td><td>transfer speed adjustment value</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U470	**Setting the JPEG compression ratio** **Description** Sets the compression ratio for JPEG images in each image quality mode. **Purpose** To change the setting in accordance with the image that the user is copying. For example, in order to soften the coarseness of the image when making copies at over 200% magnification, change the level of compression by raising the value. Lowering the value will increase the compression and thereby lower the image quality; Raising the value will increase image quality but lower the image processing speed. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.

Display	Description
System	Compression ratio for temporary storage in system
Copy	Compression ratio for copying
Send	Compression ratio for sending

Setting: [System]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Y	Brightness	1 to 100	90
C	Color differential	1 to 100	90

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Copy]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Text Y	Brightness in the text mode	1 to 100	90
Text C	Color differential in the text mode	1 to 100	90
Photo Y	Brightness in the photo mode	1 to 100	90
Photo C	Color differential in the photo mode	1 to 100	90

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Send]
1. Select [Text], [Photo] or [HC-PDF].
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Text Y (1) to (5)	Brightness in the text mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90
Text C (1) to (5)	Color differential in the text mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90
Photo Y (1) to (5)	Brightness in the photo mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90
Photo C (1) to (5)	Color differential in the photo mode	1 to 100	30/40/51/70/90
HC-PDF Y (1) to (3)	Brightness of high compression PDF	1 to 100	15/25/60
HC-PDF C (1) to (3)	Color differential of high compression PDF	1 to 100	15/25/60

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U470	**Supplement** While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key). **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U473	**Adjusting laser power output** **Description** Adjusts the laser output power for each color. Also, this is used to toggle exposure density correction and enter exposure density correction values. **Purpose** Enter the exposure density correction data after replacing the laser scanner unit. Also performed when the quality of dots, lines or low density has dropped. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set or checked.

Display	Description
Set Sensitivity	Indication of drum sensitivity correction value of each every color
Adjust LSU Laser Power	LSU laser output value of each every color
Density Correction	The setting whether or not correct the sensitivity
Input Density Adjust Value	Exposure density correction value
Set Density (EmitTime/Dot)	Setting the LSU laser output

Method: [Set Sensitivity]

1. The current value is displayed.

Display	Description
C (Full)	Cyan drum sensitivity correction value
M (Full)	Magenta drum sensitivity correction value
Y (Full)	Yellow drum sensitivity correction value
K (Full)	Black drum sensitivity correction value
K(BW)*	Drum sensitivity correction value in black/white mode
C (Half)	Cyan drum sensitivity correction value
M (Half)	Magenta drum sensitivity correction value
Y (Half)	Yellow drum sensitivity correction value
K (Half)	Black drum sensitivity correction value

*: 50/40 ppm model only.

Setting: [LSU laser output value]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
LSU LD Power (C)	Laser output value for cyan	-128 to 127	16
LSU LD Power (M)	Laser output value for magenta	-128 to 127	16
LSU LD Power (Y)	Laser output value for yellow	-128 to 127	16
LSU LD Power (K)	Laser output value for black	-128 to 127	16
LSU LD Power (K) BW*	LSU laser output value for black in black/white mode	-128 to 127	16

*: 50/40 ppm model only.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U473</td><td>
Setting: [Density Correction]
1. Select ON or OFF.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Correct the sensitivity</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Do not correct the sensitivity</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Input Density Adjust Value]
1. Select the color.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CYAN</td><td>Exposure density correction value for cyan</td></tr>
<tr><td>MAGENTA</td><td>Exposure density correction value for magenta</td></tr>
<tr><td>YELLOW</td><td>Exposure density correction value for yellow</td></tr>
<tr><td>BLACK</td><td>Exposure density correction value for black</td></tr>
</table>
2. Enter the setting value on the sheet suppled with LSU using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>X0 (C) - X10 (C)</td><td>Enter the setting value for cyan</td><td>-30 to 30</td></tr>
<tr><td>X0 (M) - X10 (M)</td><td>Enter the setting value for magenta</td><td>-30 to 30</td></tr>
<tr><td>X0 (Y) - X10 (Y)</td><td>Enter the setting value for yellow</td><td>-30 to 30</td></tr>
<tr><td>X0 (K) - X10 (K)</td><td>Enter the setting value for black</td><td>-30 to 30</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set Density(EmitTime/Dot)]
1. Select [BLACK] or [ALL].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>BLACK</td><td>LSU laser output for black</td></tr>
<tr><td>ALL</td><td>LSU laser output for all colors</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0 (100%)</td><td>LSU laser output (100%)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1 (90%)</td><td>LSU laser output (90%)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2 (80%)</td><td>LSU laser output (80%)</td></tr>
<tr><td>3 (70%)</td><td>LSU laser output (70%)</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ALL: 0
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Supplement
When selecting [Adjust Laser Power Output] or [Input Density Adjust Value], copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U474</td><td>
Checking LSU cleaning operation
Description
Provides cleaning LSU by means of the LSU cleaning clutch and LSU cleaning solenoid. Also, the cleaning cycle can be adjusted.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning Operation</td><td>Executing the cleaning operation</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning Cycle</td><td>Setting the cleaning cycle</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning Setting</td><td>Setting the cleaning operation</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [Cleaning Operation]
1. Select [Cleaning Operation].
2. Press the start key. Cleaning the LSU slit glass.

Setting: [Cleaning Cycle]
1. Select [Cleaning Cycle].
2. Change the setting value using +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cleaning Cycle</td><td>Cleaning cycle</td><td>0 to 5000</td><td>1000</td></tr>
</table>
The setting can be changed by 1000 per step.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Cleaning Setting]
1. Change the setting using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>LSU cleaning operation is not executed at startup or sleep recovery.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>LSU cleaning operation is executed at startup and sleep recovery.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: 1
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U485	**Setting the image processing mode** **Description** Sets the detection level for scanning printed matter outputted with the confidential document guard function. Also, sets the process PDF images are rotated. **Purpose** To change the detection level when the confidential document guard is not printed well for detection in scanning. Also, changes the process of how PDF images are rotated. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description
Conf. Doc. Detection	Confidential document guard detection level
PDF Rotate	Processing the rotation of PDF images

Setting: [Conf. Doc. Detection]

1. Change the setting value using +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Conf. Doc. Detection	Confidential document guard detection level	1 to 5	1

A smaller value raises the detection sensitivity but increases the possibility of false detection.
A larger value lowers the detection sensitivity but decreases the possibility of false detection.

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [PDF Rotate]

1. Change the setting value using +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description
0	Assigns the image rotation with the internal parameter
1	Assigns the image rotation with the actual image

Initial setting: 0

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U486</td><td>
Setting color/black and white operation mode
Description
When color and B/W documents are mixed, sets operation mode after a color document is detected.
Purpose
To ensure productivity when copying color and B/W documents in ACS mode, select MODE3.
However, selecting MODE3 will increase the maintenance count for cyan, magenta, and yellow color developing units even when there is a B/W original after a color original.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the MODE.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MODE1</td><td>Line speed: Color and B/W line speed is switched according to each original
Controlling developing motor MCY: Color and B/W mode is switched according to each original</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE2</td><td>Line speed: Fixed at color line speed
Controlling developing motor MCY: Color and B/W mode is switched according to each original</td></tr>
<tr><td>MODE3</td><td>Line speed: Fixed at color line speed on and after a color original
Controlling developing motor MCY: Fixed at color mode on and after a color original</td></tr>
<tr><td>AUTO</td><td>Automatic selection of MODE1 to 3 depending on the using pattern</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: MODE2
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U510</td><td>
Setting the enterprise mode
Description
Sets whether or not the application function (DBA) is enabled.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [MODE1].
3. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Application function is enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>Application function is disabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>INSTALL</td><td>Executing the install</td></tr>
<tr><td>UNINSTALL</td><td>Executing the uninstall</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: ON (Inch specifications)/OFF (Metric specifications)
4. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Method: [INSTALL]
1. Insert the USB memory that contains the application into the USB memory slot on the machine.
2. Turn the main power switch on.
3. Enter the maintenance item.
4. Press the start key.
5. Select [INSTALL].
6. Press the start key. Installation of application is started.
7. When normally completed, [Complete] is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U901</td><td>
Checking copy counts by paper feed locations
Description
Displays or clears copy counts by paper feed locations.
Purpose
To check the time to replace consumable parts.

Method
1. Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MP TRAY</td><td>MP tray</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASETTE 1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASETTE 2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASETTE 3</td><td>Cassette 3 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CASETTE 4</td><td>Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>DUPLEX</td><td>Duplex unit</td></tr>
<tr><td>LCF</td><td>Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder</td></tr>
</table>
When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.

Clearing
1. Select the counts to be cleared.
CASETTE 3, CASETTE 4 and LCF cannot be cleared.
2. Select the counts for all and press [ALL CLEAR].
3. Press the start key. The counts is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U902</td><td>
Checking/clearing finisher punch count
Description
Sets the punch limit and displays and clears the punch-hole scrap count when 3000-sheet document finisher is installed.
Purpose
Sets the punch limit to notify the user of the time to collect punch-hole scrap. Also, used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. If punch-hole scrap is collected with the machine power turned off, the punch-hole scrap count is not cleared and consequently this problem occurs.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
3. Change the value using the numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>PUNCH LIMIT (*1000)</td><td>Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 9999000</td></tr>
<tr><td>PUNCH WASTE COUNT</td><td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td><td>0 to 9999999</td></tr>
</table>
The punch limit can be set in increments of 1000.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Clearing
1. Enter 0 using the numeric keys.
2. Press the start key. The count is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U903</td><td>
Checking/clearing the paper jam counts
Description
Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.
Purpose
To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Count</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total Count</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [Count]
1. Select [Count]. The count of jam code by type is displayed.
Codes for which the count value is 0 are not displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Select the counts for all jam codes and press [ALL CLEAR]. The individual counter cannot be cleared.
4. Press the start key. The count is cleared.

Method: [Total Count]
1. Select [Total Count]. The total number of jam code by type is displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of jam count cannot be cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U904</td><td>
Checking/clearing the call for service counts
Description
Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.
Purpose
To check the service call code status by types.
Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.

Start
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Count</td><td>Displays/clears the call for service counts</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total Count</td><td>Displays the total call for service counts</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [Count]
1. Select [Count]. The count for service call detection by type is displayed.
Codes for which the count value is 0 are not displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Select the counts for all service call codes and press [ALL CLEAR]. The individual counter cannot be cleared.
4. Press the start key. The count is cleared.

Method: [Total Count]
1. Select [Total Count]. The total number of service call counts by type is displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys. The total number of service call count cannot be cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U905	**Checking counts by optional devices** **Description** Displays the counts of DP or finisher. **Purpose** To check the use of DP and finisher. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked. 3. Press the start key. The count of the selected device is displayed.

Display	Description
DP	Counts of optional DP
FINISHER	Counts of optional document finisher or 3000-sheet document finisher

DP

Display	Description
ADP	No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP
RADP	No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP
CONCURRENT	No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP

Document finisher

Display	Description
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated

3000-sheet document finisher

Display	Description
CP CNT	No. of copies that has passed
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated
STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated
SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U906</td><td>Resetting partial operation control
Description
Resets the service call code for partial operation control.
Purpose
To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the cassettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [Execute].
3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U908</td><td>Checking the total counter value
Description
Displays the total counter value.
Purpose
To check the total counter value.

Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for total count value is displayed.
<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Total Count</td><td>Total count value</td></tr></table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U910</td><td>Clearing the coverage data
Description
Clears the accumulated data for the digital dot coverage per A4 size paper in all colors.
Purpose
To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [Execute].
3. Press the start key. The digital dot coverage data is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
</table>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U911	**Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes** **Description** Displays and clears the paper feed counts by paper sizes. **Purpose** To check or clear the counts after replacing consumable parts. **Method** Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed. **Clearing** 1. Select the paper size to be cleared. Select the counts for all and press [ALL CLEAR]. 2. Press the start key. All counts are cleared. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U917	**Setting backup data reading/writing** **Description** Retrieves the backup data to a USB memory from the machine; or writes the data from the USB memory to the machine. **Purpose** To store and write data when replacing the HDD. **Method** 1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. 2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot. 3. Turn the main power switch on. 4. Enter the maintenance item. 5. Press the start key. 6. Select [Export] or [Import].

Display	Description
Export	Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory
Import	Writing data from the USB memory to the machine

7. Select the item.

Display	Description	Depending data*1
Address Book	Address book	-
Job Accnt.	Job accounting	-
FAX Forward	FAX transfer information	Job accounting, user management and document box information
One Touch	Information on one-touch	Address book
User	User managements	Job accounting
Shortcut	Shortcut information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information
Document Box	Document box information	Job accountings and user managements
Program	Program information	Job accountings, user managements and document box information
ADDRESS BOOK ONE TOUCH*2	Address book and Information on one-touch	Address book and Information on one-touch

*1: Since data are dependent with each other, data other than those assigned are also retrieved or written in.
*2: When ADDRESS BOOK ONE TOUCH is selected, editing with the Set up tool is not possible, however, Import/Export in high speed mode is possible.

8. Press the start key. Starts reading or writing.
   The progress of selected item is displayed in %.
   When an error occurs, the operation is canceled and an error code is displayed (see page 1-3-151).
9. When normally completed, [Finished] is displayed.
10. Turn the main power switch off and on after completing writing when selecting [Import].

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Maintenance item No.	Description
U917	**Error Codes**

Codes	Description	Codes	Description
321e0001	Parameter error	321e002f	Box open error
321e0002	File write error	321e0030	Box close error
321e0003	File initialization error	321e0031	Box creation error
321e0004	File error	321e0032	Box creation error
321e0005	Processing error	321e0033	Box deletion error
321e0006	Address book clear error (contact)	321e0034	Box movement error
321e0007	Address book open error (contact)	321e0035	Fax memory directory creation error
321e0008	Address book list error (contact)	321e0036	Fax memory error in writing
321e0009	Address book list error (contact)	321e0037	Fax memory error in reading
321e000a	Address book clear error (group)	321e0038	Shortcut error in writing
321e000b	Address book open error (group)	321e0039	Shortcut error in reading
321e000c	Address book list error (group)	321e003a	Program error in writing
321e000d	Address book list error (group)	321e003b	Program error in reading
321e000e	Job accounting clear error	321e003c	Address/One Touch directory creation error
321e000f	Job accounting file open error	321e003d	Address/One Touch error in writing
321e0010	Job accounting file open error	321e003e	Address/One Touch error in reading
321e0011	Job accounting error in writing	321e003f	File reading error
321e0012	Job accounting list error	321e0040	File writing error
321e0013	Job accounting list error	321e0041	Data mismatch
321e0014	One-touch open error	321e0042	Log file open error
321e0015	One-touch list error	321e0043	Log file error in writing
321e0016	One-touch list error	321e0044	Directory open error
321e0017	User managements backup error	321e0045	Directory error in reading
321e0018	User managements clear error	321d0000	Unspecified error
321e0019	User managements file open error	321d0001	HDD unavailable
321e001a	User managements file open error	321d0002	USB memory is not inserted
321e001b	User managements file open error	321d0003	File for writing is not found in the USB
321e001c	User managements error in writing	321d0004	File for reading is not found in the HDD
321e001d	User managements list error	321d0005	USB error in writing
321e001e	User managements list error	321d0006	USB error in reading
321e001f	User managements list error	321d0007	USB unmount error
321e0020	User managements list error	321d0008	File rename error
321e0021	User managements file open error	321d0009	File open error
321e0022	User managements error	321d000a	File close error
321e0023	User managements error	321d000b	File reading error
321e0024	User managements file open error	321d000c	File writing error
321e0025	User managements error	321d000d	File copy error
321e0026	User managements file open error	321d000e	File compressed error
321e0027	User managements error	321d000f	File decompressed error
321e0028	Box file open error	321d0010	Directory open error
321e0029	Box error in writing	321d0011	Directory creation error
321e002a	Box error in reading	321d0012	File writing error
321e002b	Box list error	321d0013	File reading error
321e002c	Box list error	321d0014	File deletion error
321e002d	Box error	321d0015	Log file copy error to the USB
321e002e	Box error		

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U920</td><td>
Checking the copy counts
Description
Checks the copy counts.
Purpose
To check the copy counts.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current counts of full color copy counter, single color copy counter, black and white copy counter, color printer counter, black and white printer counter and black and white fax counter are displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Full Color Copy Count</td><td>Count value of full color copy</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mono Color Copy Count</td><td>Count value of single color copy</td></tr>
<tr><td>Monochrome Copy Count</td><td>Count value of black/white copy</td></tr>
<tr><td>Color Printer Count</td><td>Count value of color printer</td></tr>
<tr><td>Monochrome Printer Count</td><td>Count value of black/white printer</td></tr>
<tr><td>Monochrome Fax Count</td><td>Count value of black/white fax</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U927</td><td>
Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)
Description
Resets all of the counts back to zero.

Supplement
The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [EXECUTE].
3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared.
[CAN NOT EXECUTE] is displayed if the count cannot be cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U928</td><td>
Checking machine life counts
Description
Displays the machine life counts.
Purpose
To check the machine life counts.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>LIFE COUNT</td><td>Machine life counts</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U930</td><td>
Checking/clearing the charger roller count
Description
Displays the counts of the charger roller counter for checking or clearing.
Purpose
To check the count after replacement of the charger roller unit. To clear the counter value when replacing the charger roller unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current counts of the charger roller count for each color is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Charge Roller Count(K)</td><td>Count value of black charger roller</td></tr>
<tr><td>Charge Roller Count(C)</td><td>Count value of cyan charger roller</td></tr>
<tr><td>Charge Roller Count(M)</td><td>Count value of magenta charger roller</td></tr>
<tr><td>Charge Roller Count(Y)</td><td>Count value of yellow charger roller</td></tr>
</table>
Clearing
1. Select the counts to be cleared.
Select the counts for all and press [ALL CLEAR].
2. Press the start key. The counts is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U942</td><td>
Setting of deflection for feeding from DP
Description
Adjusts the deflection generated when the DP is used.
Purpose
Use this mode if an original non-feed jam, oblique feed or wrinkling of original occurs when the DP is used.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be adjusted.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting</th><th>Initial</th><th>Change in</th></tr>
<tr><td>REGIST TOP</td><td>Deflection of single-sided original</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.176 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>REGIST BACK</td><td>Deflection of double-sided original</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.176 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>REGIST MIX</td><td>Deflection of dual scanning</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.176 mm</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the system menu key.
4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
5. Press the system menu key.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.
If an original non-feed jam or oblique feed occurs, increase the setting value. If wrinkling of original occurs, decrease the value.
7. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U964</td><td>
Checking of log
Description
Sends a log file saved on the HDD to a USB memory.
Purpose
To transfer a log file saved on the HDD to a USB memory as a means of investigating malfunctions.

Method
1. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
2. Turn the main power switch on.
3. Enter the maintenance item.
4. Press the start key.
5. Select [Execute].
6. Press the start key.
Starts sending the log file saved on the HDD to the USB memory.
7. When normally completed, [Complete] is displayed.
When an error occurs, an error code is displayed.
8. Turn the main power switch off and on.

Error codes
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>No Usb Storage</td><td>USB memory is not inserted</td></tr>
<tr><td>No File</td><td>File is not found</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mount Error</td><td>USB memory mount error</td></tr>
<tr><td>File Delete Error</td><td>File deletion error</td></tr>
<tr><td>Copy Error</td><td>File copy error</td></tr>
<tr><td>Unmount Error</td><td>USB memory unmount error</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other Error</td><td>Other error</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U969</td><td>
Checking of toner area code
Description
Displays the toner area code.
Purpose
To check the toner area code.

Method
1. Press the start key. The toner area code is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U977</td><td>
Data capture mode
Description
Store the print data sent to the machine into USB memory.
Purpose
In case to occur the error at printing, check the print data sent to the machine.

Method
1. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
2. Turn the main power switch on.
3. Enter the maintenance item.
4. Press the start key.
5. Press [EXECUTE].
6. Press the start key.
7. Send the print data to the machine.
Once the print data is stored into USB memory, [Complete] will be displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U984</td><td>
Checking the developing unit number
Description
Displays the developing unit number.
Purpose
To check the developing unit number.

Method
1. Press the start key. The developing unit number for each color is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOPING UNIT NO. (C)</td><td>Cyan developing unit number</td></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOPING UNIT NO. (M)</td><td>Magenta developing unit number</td></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOPING UNIT NO. (Y)</td><td>Yellow developing unit number</td></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOPING UNIT NO. (K)</td><td>Black developing unit number</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U985</td><td>
Displaying the developing unit history
Description
Indicates the past record of machine number and the developing counter.
Purpose
To check the machine number and the developing counter.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the color to check.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOP HISTORY(C)</td><td>Cyan developing unit past record</td></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOP HISTORY(M)</td><td>Magenta developing unit past record</td></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOP HISTORY(Y)</td><td>Yellow developing unit past record</td></tr>
<tr><td>DEVELOP HISTORY(K)</td><td>Black developing unit past record</td></tr>
</table>
The history of a machine number and a developing counter for each color is displayed by three cases.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MACHINE HISTORY 1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr>
<tr><td>COUNT HISTORY 1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of developing counter</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U989</td><td>
HDD Scandisk
Description
Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.
Purpose
If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press [EXECUTE].
3. Press the start key. When scanning of the disk is complete, the execution result is displayed.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U990</td><td>
Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light
Description
Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the CIS to light.
Purpose
To check duration of use of the CIS. Also to clear the accumulated time for the CIS after replacement.

Method
1. Press the start key.
The accumulated time of illumination for the CIS is displayed in minutes.
2. Clear the accumulated time using the +/- or numeric keys.
3. Press the start key. The time is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Maintenance item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U991</td><td>
Checking the scanner operation count
Description
Displays the scanner operation count.
Purpose
To check the status of use of the scanner.

Method
1. Press the start key.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>COPY SCAN CNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for copying</td></tr>
<tr><td>FAX SCAN CNT</td><td>Scanner operation count for fax</td></tr>
<tr><td>OTHER SCAN COUNT</td><td>Scanner operation count except for copying</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U996</td><td>
Setting the Self-diagnostic function mode
Description
Assigns the detection and operation of service calls with normal mode.
Purpose
Switches the detection and operation of service calls from line mode to normal mode.

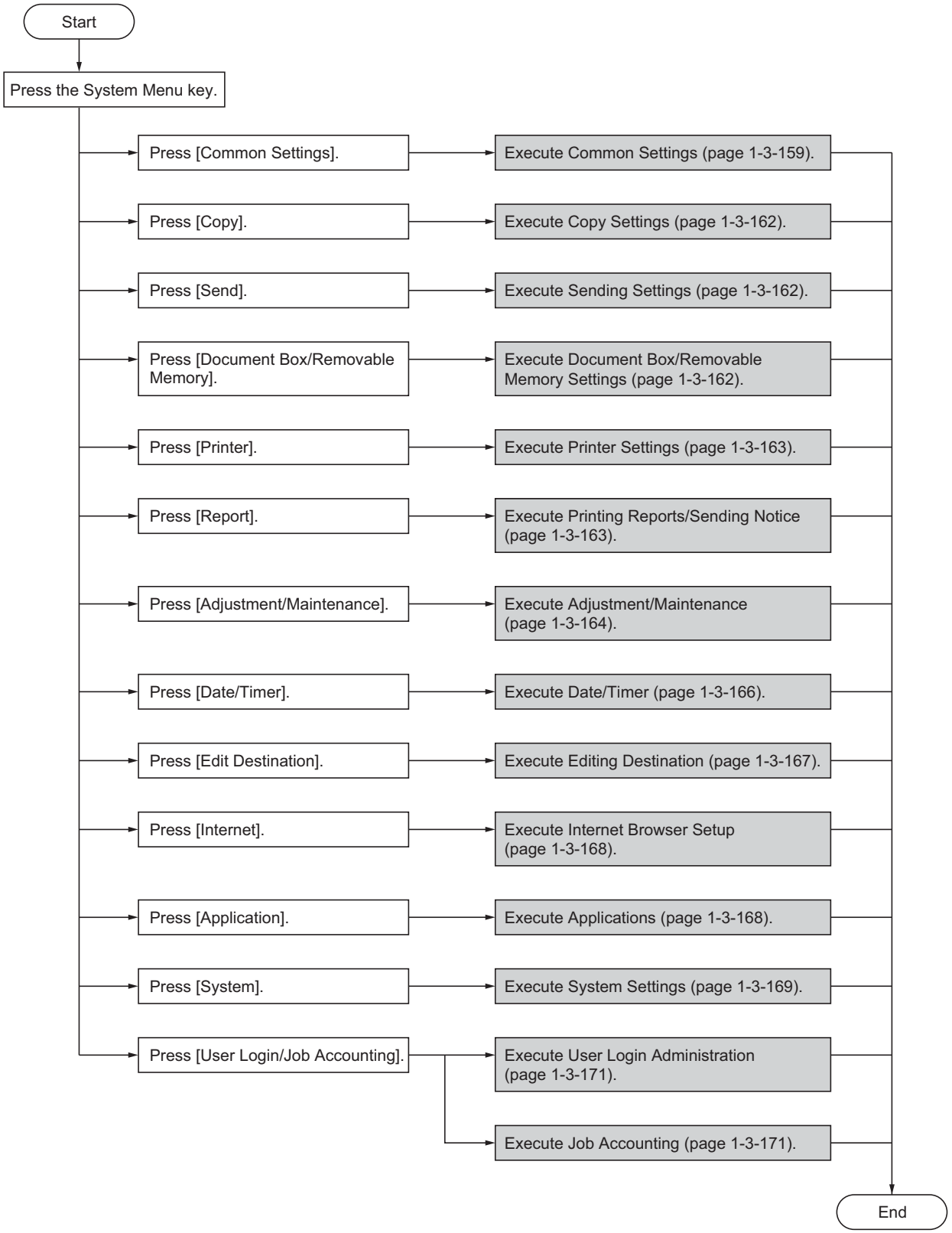
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [NORMAL MODE].
3. Press the start key. The detection and operation of service calls is set as normal mode.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

1-3-2 Management mode

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the machine is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users (mainly by the administrator). In this management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

(1) Using the management mode



(2) Common Settings

Switching the Language for Display [Language]

1. Press [Change] of Language.
2. Press the key for the language you want to use.
3. Press [OK].
   The touch panel language will be changed.

Default Screen

1. Press [Change] of Default Screen.
2. Select the screen to be displayed as the default screen.
3. Press [OK].

Sound

1. Press [Next] of Sound and then [Next] of Buzzer.
2. Press [Change] of Volume, Key Confirmation, Job Finish, Ready, or Warning.
3. Select the buzzer volume level, or other sound options.

Original/Paper Settings

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Next] of Custom Original Size.
2. Press [Change] of any one of Custom 1 to Custom 4, on which you wish to register the size.
3. Press [On], and then press [+], [-] or numeric keys to enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions.
4. Press [OK].

Adding a Custom Size and Media Type for Paper to Print

1. Paper Settings and then [Next] of Custom Paper Size.
2. Press [Change] of any one of Custom 1 to Custom 4, on which you want to register the size.
3. Press [On], and then press [+], [-] or numeric keys to enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions. Press [Media Type] to select the type of paper and press [OK] if necessary.
4. Press [OK].

Paper Size and Media Type Setup for Cassettes

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, [Next] of Cassette Setting, [Next] of Cassette 1 to Cassette 4, on which you want to register the size, and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size. To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1] or [Standard Sizes 2] for Paper Size.
3. Press [OK]. The previous screen reappears.
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select media type and press [OK].

Paper Size and Media Type Setup for Multi Purpose Tray

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, [Next] of MP Tray Setting and then [Change] of Paper Size.
2. To detect paper size automatically, press [Auto] and select Metric or Inch for Paper Size. To select paper size, press [Standard Sizes 1], [Standard Sizes 2], [Others] or [Size Entry] for Paper Size.
   If you select [Size Entry], press [+], [-] to enter X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) dimensions.
   Press [# keys] to enter the paper size using the numeric keys.
3. Press [OK]. The previous screen reappears.
4. Press [Change] of Media Type to select the media type and press [OK].

Paper Weight

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Next] of Media Type Setting.
2. Press [Next] for the media type whose weight you want to change.
3. Press [Change] of Paper Weight.
4. Select the weight and press [OK].
5. Press [Close]. The previous screen reappears.
6. To change the duplex printing settings for Custom 1 (-8), press [Next] of Custom 1(-8) and then [Change] of Duplex. Select [Prohibit] or [Permit] and press [OK]. The previous screen reappears.
7. Press [Close].
8. To change the name for Custom 1(-8), press [Next] of Custom 1(-8) and then [Change] of Name. Enter the name and press [OK].

Default Paper Source

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Change] of Default Paper Source.
2. Select a paper cassette for the default setting.
3. Press [OK].

Automatic Detection of Originals (Available for metric models only)

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Change] of Original Auto Detect.
2. Select [A6] or [Hagaki] of A6/Hagaki. Select [Off] to disable automatic detection or [On] to enable automatic detection of Folio and 11x15" respectively.
3. Press [OK].

Media for Auto Selection (Color/B&W)

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings and then [Change] of Media for Auto (Color) or Media for Auto (B & W).
2. Select [All Media Types] or any media type for paper selection.
3. Press [OK].

Paper Source for Cover Paper

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, cursor down key and then [Change] of Paper Source for Cover.
2. Select the paper source to load cover paper.
3. Press [OK].

Special Paper Action

1. Press [Next] of Original/Paper Settings, cursor down key and then [Change] of Special Paper Action.
2. Select [Adjust Print Direction] or [Speed Priority].
3. Press [OK].

Switching Unit of Measurement

1. Press [Change] of Measurement.
2. Select [mm] for metric or [inch] for inch.
3. Press [OK].

Error Handling

1. Press [Next] of Error Handling.
2. Press [Change] at the error you wish to change the handling.
3. Select the error handling method in the selection screen for each of the errors and then press [OK].
4. The previous screen appears. To set the handling for a different error, repeat steps 2 and 3.

Paper Output

1. Press [Next] of Paper Output.
2. Press [Change] of Copy/Custom Box, Printer, or FAX.
3. Select Output Tray.
   For [Finisher Tray], [Tray B], [Tray C] or [Tray 1] to [Tray 7], select [Face Up] (print surface up) or [Face Down] (print surface down) as the paper orientation at output.
4. Press [OK].

Orientation Confirmation

1. Press [Change] of Orientation Confirmation.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Function Defaults

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Orientation.
2. Select [Top Edge Top] or [Top Edge Left] for the default.
3. Press [OK].

Continuous Scan

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Continuous Scan.
2. Select [Off] or [On] for the default. Use the procedure below to select the default quality setting for originals.
3. Press [OK].

Original Image

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Original Image.
2. Select the [Text+Photo], [Photo], [Print Photo], [Text], [Map] or [for OCR] as the default.
3. Press [OK].

Scan Resolution

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of Scan Resolution.
2. Select the default resolution.
3. Press [OK].

Color Selection (Copy)

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of mode Color Selection(Copy).
2. Select the default color setting.
3. Press [OK].

Color Selection (Send/Store)

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of mode Color Sel. (Send/Store).
2. Select the default color mode.
3. Press [OK].

File Format

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults and then [Change] of File Format.
2. Select the default file format.
3. Press [OK].

Density

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Density.
2. Select the default density.
3. Press [OK].

Zoom

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Zoom.
2. Select the default zoom setting.
3. Press [OK].

File Name Entry

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of File Name Entry.
2. Press [File Name] to enter the file name in not more than 32 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Date and Time] to add the date/time to the job, or press [Job No.] to add the job number to the job. The added information will be displayed in Additional Info.
5. Press [OK].

E-mail Subject/Body

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key, and then [Change] of E-mail Subject/Body.
2. Press [Subject] to enter an E-mail subject not more than 60 characters.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press [Body] to enter an E-mail Body not more than 500 characters.
5. Press [OK].
6. Check that the entries are correct and press [OK].

Border Erase Default

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Border Erase Default.
2. Press [+] or [-] for the Border and Gutter width to erase.
   You can use the number keypad to enter the number directly.
3. Press [OK].

Margin Default

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Margin Default.
2. Use the [+] or [-] to enter the margin widths for Left/Right and Top/Bottom(-0.75 - +0.75).
   You can use the number keypad to enter the number directly.
3. Press [OK].

Collate/Offset

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Collate/Offset.
2. Select the defaults for Collate and Offset respectively.
3. Press [OK].

Auto Image Rotation

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key and then [Change] of Auto Image Rotation.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

EcoPrint

1. Press cursor down key, [Next] of Function Defaults, cursor down key twice, and then [Change] of Eco-Print.
2. Select [Off] or [On] for the default.
3. Press [OK].

PDF/TIFF/JPEG Image

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and then [Change] of PDF/TIFF/JPEG Image.
2. Select the default image quality from [1] (Low Quality) to [5] (High Quality).
3. Press [OK].

High Comp. PDF Image

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of High Comp. PDF Image.
2. Select the default for [Compression Ratio Priority], [Standard], or [Quality Priority].
3. Press [OK].

Color TIFF Compression Settings

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and then [Change] of Color TIFF Compression.
2. Select [TIFF V6] or [TTN2].
3. Press [OK].

Repeat Copying

1. Press cursor down key and [Next] of Function Defaults. Press cursor down key twice and [Change] of Repeat Copy.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

(3) Copy Settings

Border Erase for Back Page
1. Press [Change] of Border Erase to Back Page.
2. Press [Same as Front Page] or [Do Not Erase].
3. Press [OK].

Paper Selection
1. Press [Change] of Paper Selection.
2. Press [Auto] or [Default Paper Source].
3. Press [OK].

Auto Paper Selection
1. Press [Change] of Auto Paper Selection.
2. Press [Most Suitable Size] or [Same as Original Size].
3. Press [OK].

Auto % Priority
1. Press [Change] of Auto % Priority.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Reserve Next Priority
1. Press [Change] of Reserve Next Priority.
2. Select the default for [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Preset Limit
1. Press [Change] of Preset Limit.
2. Press [+] or [-] or use the numeric keys to enter the limit for the number of copies.
3. Press [OK].

Quick Setup Registration
1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK]. If you overwrite the setting, a confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

(4) Sending Settings

Quick Setup Registration
1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
3. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup Registration screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
4. Press [OK]. If you overwrite the setting, a confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

Color Type
1. Press [Change] of Color Type.
2. Select [RGB] or [sRGB].
3. Press [OK].

Setting the Default Send Screen
1. Press [Change] of Default Screen.
2. Press [Destination] or [Address Book].
3. Press [OK].

(5) Document Box/Removable Memory Settings

Removable Memory (JPEG Print)
1. Press [Next] of Removable Memory and then [Change] of JPEG Print.
2. Select [Fit to Paper Size], [Image Resolution] or [Fit to Print Resolution].
3. Press [OK].

Quick Setup Registration
1. Press [Next] of Quick Setup Registration.
2. Press [Next] of Store File or Send.
3. Press [Change] of the function to be registered in Quick Setup.
4. Select a key (1-6) allocated on the Quick Setup screen. Press [Off] to delete a key from the Quick Setup.
5. Press [OK]. If you overwrite the setting, a confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

(6) Printer Settings

Emulation
1. Press [Change] of Emulation.
2. Select the desired emulation.
3. Press [OK].

Setting of Alternative Emulation
1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPDL(Auto)] and then [Alt Emulation].
2. Select the desired alternative emulation and then press [OK].
3. Press [OK].

Setting of KPDL error report
1. Press [Change] of Emulation, [KPDL] or [KPDL(Auto)] and then [KPDL Error Report].
2. Press [On] or [Off] and then press [OK].
3. Press [OK].

Color Setting
1. Press [Change] of Color Setting.
2. Select [Color] or [Black & White].
3. Press [OK].

EcoPrint
1. Press [Change] of EcoPrint.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Override A4/Letter
1. Press [Change] of Override A4/Letter.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Duplex
1. Press [Change] of Duplex.
2. Press [1-sided], [2-sided Bind LongEdge], or [2-sided Bind ShortEdge].
3. Press [OK].

Copies
1. Press [Change] of Copies.
2. Press [+],[-] or the numeric keys to set the default number of copies.
3. Press [OK].

Orientation
1. Press [Change] of Orientation.
2. Press [Portrait] or [Landscape].
3. Press [OK].

Form Feed Timeout
1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Form Feed Timeout.
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the Form Feed Timeout.
   You can set the timeout delay in seconds.
   You cannot use the number keypad to enter this value.
3. Press [OK].

LF Action
1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of LF Action.
2. Press [LF Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore LF].
3. Press [OK].

CR Action
1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of CR Action.
2. Press [CR Only], [LF and CR] or [Ignore CR].
3. Press [OK].

(7) Printing Reports/Sending Notice

Printing Reports
1. Press [Next] of Print Report.
2. Press [Print] for the report you want to print. Printing starts.
   A confirmation screen appears. Press [Yes].

Send Result Report
1. Press [Next] of Result Report Setting, [Next] of Send Result Report and then [Change] of E-mail/Folder.
2. Press [Off], [On], or [Error Only].
3. Press [OK].

(8) Adjustment/Maintenance

Copy Density Adjustment
1. Press [Next] of Copy Density Adjustment.
2. Press [Change] of Auto or of Manual.
3. Press [-3] - [+3] (Lighter-Darker) to adjust density.
4. Press [OK].

Send/Box Density Adjust
1. Press and [Next] of Send/Box Density Adjust.
2. Press [Change] of Auto or of Manual.
3. Press [-3] - [+3] (Lighter-Darker) to adjust density.
4. Press [OK].

Print Density
1. Press [Change] of Print Density.
2. Press [1] - [5] (Lighter-Darker) to adjust density.
3. Press [OK].

Drum Refresh
1. Press [Next] of Drum Refresh.
2. Press [Execute] to Drum Refresh.
3. After Drum Refresh is completed, press [OK] to return to the Adjustment/Maintenance screen.

Correcting Fine Black Lines
1. Press [Change] of Correcting Black Line.
2. Press [Off], [On(Low)] or [On(High)].
3. Press [OK].

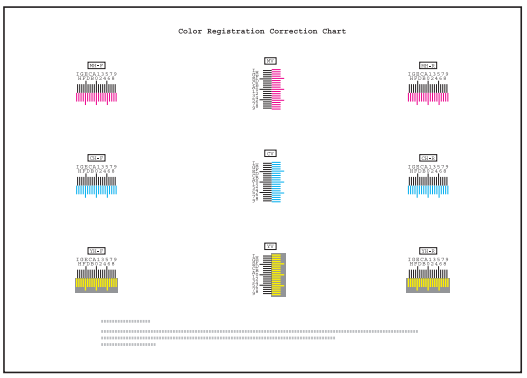
Display Brightness
1. Press [Change] of Display Brightness.
2. Press [1] - [4] (Darker- Lighter) to adjust brightness.
3. Press [OK].

Silent Mode
1. Press [Change] of Silent Mode.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

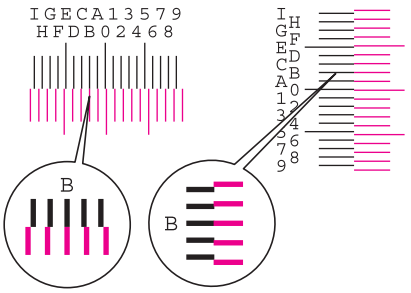
Auto Color Correction
1. Press cursor down key and [Change] of Auto Color Correction.
2. Press one of keys [1] to [5] (Color - B & W) to set the detection level.
3. Press [OK].

Color Registration

Normal Registration
1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Color Registration.
2. Press [Print] of Chart. A chart is printed.
   On the chart, for each of M (magenta), C (cyan) and Y (yellow), 3 chart types are printed on one sheet: H-F (left), V (right), H-R (horizontal).



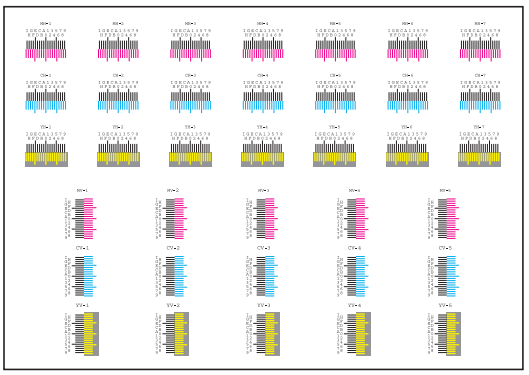
3. Find the location on each chart where 2 lines most closely overlap each other. If this is the 0 position, registration for that color is not required. For the illustration, B is the appropriate value.



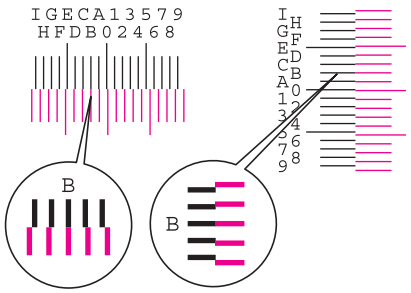
4. Press [Next] of Registration.
5. Press [Change] for the chart to be corrected.
6. Press [+] or [-] to enter the values read from the chart and press [OK].
   Press [+] to increase the value from 0 to 9. To decrease, press [-].
   By pressing [-], the value changes from 0 to alphabetic letters, going from A to I. To move in the reverse direction, press [+].
   You cannot use the numeric keys to enter these values.
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to enter the registration values for each chart.
8. Press [Execute] after all values have been entered. Color registration begins.
9. Press [OK] after color registration is complete.

Detailed Settings

1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Color Registration.
2. Press [Detail].
3. Press [Print] of Chart (Details). A chart is printed. On the chart, for each of M (magenta), C (cyan) and Y (yellow), charts for H-1 to 7 and V-3 are printed.



4. Find the location on each chart where 2 lines most closely match. If this is the 0 position, registration for that color is not required. For the illustration, B is the appropriate value.
   From charts V-1 to V-5, read only the values from V-3 (center).



5. Press [Next] of Registration (Details).
6. Press [Change] for the chart to be corrected.
7. Press [+] or [-] to enter the values read from the chart and press [OK].
   Press [+] to increase the value from 0 to 9. To decrease, press [-].
   By pressing [-], the value changes from 0 to alphabetic letters, going from A to I. To move in the reverse direction, press [+].
   You cannot use the numeric keys to enter these values.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 to enter the registration values for each chart.
9. Press [Execute] after all values have been entered. Color registration begins.
10. Press [OK] after color registration is complete.

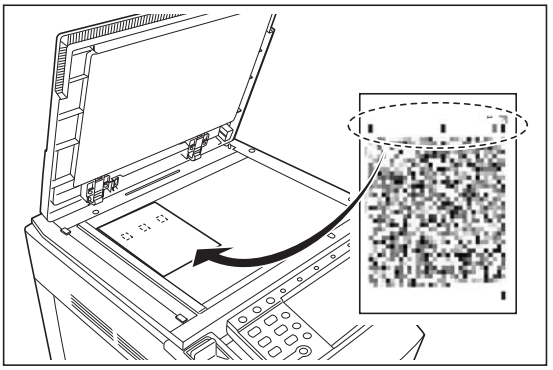
Setting the Color Calibration Cycle

1. Press cursor down key and then [Change] of Color Calibration Cycle.
2. Select [Auto], [Short], [Standard] or [Long].
3. Press [OK].

Gray Adjustment

Normal adjustment

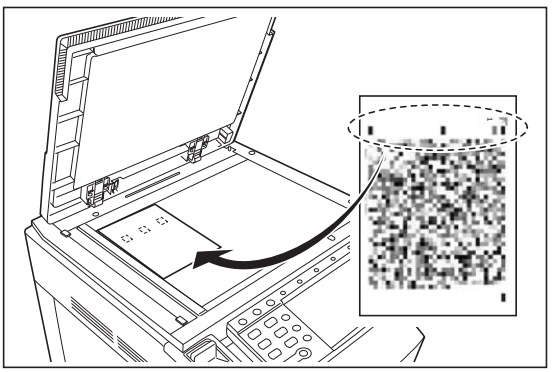
1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Gray Adjustment.
2. Press [Execute]. A color pattern is printed. Check that the number "1" and one magenta box are printed in the top right corner of the color pattern.
3. As shown in the illustration, place the printed side down on the platen with the three black boxes aligned to the top.



4. Press the Start key. The color pattern is read and adjustment begins.
5. The second color pattern is output. Check that the number "2" and two magenta boxes are printed in the top right corner of the color pattern and then repeat steps 3 and 4.
6. Press [OK] in the adjustment end confirmation screen.

Detailed Adjustment

1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Gray Adjustment.
2. Press [Detail].
3. Press [Execute]. A color pattern is printed. Check that the number "1" and one magenta box are printed in the top right corner of the color pattern.
4. As shown in the illustration, place the printed side down on the platen with the three black boxes aligned to the top.



5. Press the Start key. The color pattern is read and adjustment begins.

6. The second color pattern is printed.
   Check that the number "2" (to "4") and two (to four) magenta boxes are printed in the top right corner of the color pattern and repeat steps 4 to 6 three times to read color patterns 2, 3 and 4 in sequence.
7. Press [OK] in the adjustment end confirmation screen.

Color Calibration
1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Color Calibration.
2. Press [Execute]. Color calibration begins.
3. Press [OK] after color calibration is complete.

Developer Refresh
1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Developer Refresh.
2. Press [Execute]. Developer refresh begins.
3. Press [OK] after developer refresh is complete.

Laser Scanner Cleaning
1. Press cursor down key and then [Next] of Laser Scanner Cleaning.
2. Press [Execute]. Laser scanner cleaning begins.
3. Press [OK] after laser scanner cleaning is complete.

System Initialization
1. Press [Execute] of System Initialization.
2. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
3. When the confirmation screen appears, press[Yes]. Initialization starts.
4. Once the initialization ends, the message Task is completed. Turn the main power switch off and on. appears. Turn the main power switch off.

(9) Date/Timer

Date/Time
1. Press [Change] of Date/Time.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the date and time respectively.
3. Press [Off] or [On] of Summer Time and press [OK].

Date Format
1. Press [Change] of Date Format.
2. Select [MM/DD/YYYY], [DD/MM/YYYY], or [YYYY/MM/DD] and press [OK].

Time Zone
1. Press [Change] of Time Zone.
2. Select the location.
3. Press [Off] or [On] of Summer Time and press [OK].

Auto Panel Reset
1. Press [Change] of Auto Panel Reset.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Panel Reset Timer
1. Press [Change] of Panel Reset Timer.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the time until Auto Panel Reset is turned on.
   You cannot use the number keypad to enter this value.
3. Press [OK].

Low Power Timer
1. Press [Low Power Timer].
2. Press [+],[-] or the numeric keys to enter the time until Low Power Mode is turned on.
3. Press [OK].

Auto Sleep
1. Press [Change] of Auto Sleep.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Sleep Timer
1. Press [Change] of Sleep Timer.
2. Press [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the time until Auto Sleep is turned on.
3. Press [OK].

Auto Error Clear ON/OFF
1. Press [Change] of Auto Error Clear.
2. Press [Off] or [On].
3. Press [OK].

Error Clear Timer
1. Press cursor down key and then [Change] of Error Clear Timer.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the time until printing restarts.
   You cannot use the number keypad to enter this value.
3. Press [OK].

Interrupt Clear Timer
1. Press cursor down key and then [Change] of Interrupt Clear Timer.
2. Press [+] or [-] to enter the time for the interrupt clear timer.
3. Press [OK].

(10) Editing Destination (Address Book/Adding One Touch Keys)

Adding an individual

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Contact] and then [Next].
2. To specify the address number, press [Change] in Address Number.
3. Press [+],[-] or numeric keys to enter a particular Address Number (1-2500).
   To have the number assigned automatically, enter "0000".
4. Press [OK]. The screen shown in step 2 reappears.
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the destination name (up to 32 characters) to be displayed on the Address Book and press [OK].
   The screen shown in step 2 reappears.
7. Press [E-mail] to add an e-mail address, [SMB] to add a folder on the computer, or [FTP] to add an FTP folder.
   The procedure differs depending on the transmission method selected.
   E-mail Address
   1. Press [Change] of E-mail Address, enter the E-mail address and press [OK].
      The table below explains the items to be entered.

   The Folder (FTP) Address
   1. Press [Change] of Host Name, Path, Login User Name and Login Password, enter the information for each item and press [OK].

   The Folder (SMB) Address
   1. Press [Change] of Host Name, Path, Login User Name and Login Password, enter the information for each item and press [OK].
8. Check if the destination entry is correct and press [Register]. The destination is added to the Address Book.

Adding a Group

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book, [Add], [Group] and then [Next].
2. To specify the address number, press [Change] in Address Number.
3. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter an address number (1 to 2500).
   To have the number assigned automatically, set "0000".
4. Press [OK]. The Add Group screen reappears.
5. Press [Change] of Name.
6. Enter the group name displayed on the Address Book not more than 32 characters.
7. Press [Member].
8. Press [Add].
9. Select a destination (individual) to add to the group.
10. Press [OK].
    If you have more destinations to add, repeat Steps 8 to 10.
11. Check if the selected destination was added to the group and press [Register]. Now the group is added to the Address Book.

Editing a Destination

1. Press [Register/Edit] of Address Book.
2. Select a destination or group to edit.
3. Press [Detail].
   The procedure differs depending on the details to be edited.
   Editing an Individual Destination
   1. Change Address Number, Name and destination type and address.
   2. After you have completed the changes, press [Register].
   3. Press [Yes] in the change confirmation screen to register the changed destination.

   Editing a Group
   1. Change Address Number and Name.
   2. Press [Member].
   3. To delete any destination from the group, select the destination and press [Delete].
      Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the deletion.
   4. After you have completed the changes, press [Register].
   5. Press [Yes] in the change confirmation screen to register the changed group.

   Deleting an Individual Destination or Group
   1. Press [Delete]. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the deletion. Deletion is performed.

Adding a Destination on One Touch Key

1. Press [Register/Edit] of One touch Key.
2. Select a One Touch Key number (0001 to 1000) for the destination. Pressing Quick No. Search key or [No.] enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.
   Select a One Touch Key with no registered destination.
3. Press [Register/Edit]. The address book appears.
4. Select a destination (individual or group) to add to the One Touch Key number. Pressing [Detail] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.
5. Press [OK]. The destination will be added to the One Touch Key.

Editing One Touch Key

1. Press [Register/Edit] of One Touch Key.
2. Select a One Touch Key number (0001 to 1000) for the destination. Pressing Quick No. Search key or [No.] enables direct entry of a One Touch Key number.
   The procedure differs depending on the details to be edited.
   Changing the Registered Information
   1. Press [Register/Edit].
   2. Select a new destination (individual or group). Pressing [Detail] shows the detailed information of the selected destination.
   3. Press [OK].
   4. Press [Yes] on the screen to add the destination to the One Touch Key.

Deleting the Registered Information

1. Press [Delete].
2. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the deletion of the data registered in the One Touch Key.

Destination Filter Settings

1. Press [Next] of Address Book Defaults and then [Change] of Narrow Down.
2. Select the type of destination filter.
3. Press [OK].

(11) Internet Browser Setup

Internet Browser Setting

1. Press [Change] of Internet Browser.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].

Browser Preferences

1. Press [Next] of Browser Environment.
2. To set your home page, press [Change] of Home Page, press [URL], enter the URL and then press [OK]. Press [OK] again.
3. To set the text size, press [Change] of Text Size, select [Large], [Medium] or [Small] as the text size and then press [OK].
4. To set the display mode, press [Change] of Display Mode, select [Normal], [Just-Fit Rendering] or [Smart-Fit Rendering] as the display mode and then press [OK].
5. To specify the settings for accepting cookies, press [Change] of Cookie, select [Accept All], [Reject All] or [Prompt before Accepting] as your cookie acceptance policy and then press [OK].

Proxy Settings

1. Press [Change] of Proxy and then press [On].
   To set a proxy server (HTTP)
   1. Press [Keyboard] of Proxy Server (HTTP), enter the proxy address and press [OK].
   2. Press [# Keys] and enter the port number.

   To set a proxy server (HTTPS)
   1. Press [Keyboard] of Proxy Server (HTTPS), enter the proxy address and press [OK].
   2. Press [# Keys] and enter the port number.

   To set domains for which no proxy is used
   1. Press [Keyboard] of Do Not Use Proxy for Following Domains, enter the domain name and press [OK].
2. Press [OK].

(12) Applications

Starting/Exiting Application Use

1. Select the desired application and press [License On].
   You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
2. Enter the license key and press [Official]. Some applications do not require you to enter an license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 3.
   To use the application as a trial, press [Trial] without entering the license key.
3. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes].

Installing Applications

1. Insert the USB memory containing the application to be installed into the USB memory slot (A1).
2. Press [Add].
3. Select the application to be installed and press [Install].
   You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
4. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes].
   Installation of the application begins. Depending on the application being installed, the installation may take some time. Once the installation ends, the original screen reappears.
5. To install another application, repeat steps 3 to 4.
6. To remove the USB memory, press [Remove Memory] and wait until the Removable Memory can be safely removed message appears. Then remove the USB memory.

Deleting Applications

1. Select the application to be deleted and press [Delete].
   You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
2. When the deletion confirmation screen appears, press [Yes]. The application is deleted.

(13) System Settings

Restarting the System

1. Press [Execute] of Restart.
2. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes]. The system is restarted.

Network Setup

LAN Interface Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of LAN Interface.
2. Select [Auto], [10BASE-T Half], [10BASE-T Full], [100BASE-TX Half] or [100BASE-TX Full] as the LAN interface.
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

TCP/IP (IPv4) Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of IPv4.
5. Press [DHCP].
6. Press [Off] of DHCP and then press [OK].
7. Press [Bonjour].
8. Press [Off] of Bonjour and then press [OK].
9. Press [IP Address] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
10. Press [Subnet Mask] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
11. Press [Default Gateway] and enter the address using the numeric keys.
12. Check if all the address entries are correct and press [OK].
13. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

TCP/IP (IPv6) Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of IPv6.
5. Press [On].
6. Press [OK].
7. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

DHCP (IPv6) Settings

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of IPv6.
5. Press [On].
6. Press [DHCP].
7. Press [On] or [Off] of DHCP.
8. Press [OK].
9. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

RA (Stateless) Settings

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of IPv6.
5. Press [On].
6. Press [RA(Stateless)].
7. Press [On] or [Off] of RA (Stateless).
8. Press [OK].
9. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

Prefix Length Settings

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Next] of TCP/IP Setting.
2. Press [Change] of TCP/IP.
3. Press [On] and then press [OK].
4. Press [Change] of IPv6.
5. Press [On].
6. Press [Prefix Length] and then press [+] or [-] to enter the prefix length. You can enter a prefix length between 0 and 128.
7. Press [OK].
8. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

NetWare Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of NetWare.
2. Press [On].
3. Press the key for the frame type you want to use.
4. Press [OK].
5. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

AppleTalk Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of AppleTalk.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

FTP (Transmission) Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of FTP (Transmission).
2. Press [On] or [Off].
   Press [+] or [-] to change the port number as desired. You can enter a port number between 1 and 65535.
3. Press [OK].

SMB (Transmission) Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network and then [Change] of SMB (Transmission).
2. Press [On] or [Off].
   Press [+] or [-] to change the port number as desired. You can enter a port number between 1 and 65535.
3. Press [OK].

IPP Setup

1. Press [Next] of Network, cursor down key (twice) and then [Change] of IPP.
2. Press [On] or [Off].
   Press [+] or [-] to change the port number as desired. You can enter any port number between 1 and 65535.
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

Network Security

SSL Setting

1. Press [Next] of Network Security, and then [Next] of SSL Setting.
2. Press [Change] of SSL.
3. Press [On].
4. Press [OK].
   To set IPP port
   1. Press [Change] of IPP Port Setting.
   2. Press [IPP over SSL Only] or [IPP or IPP over SSL].
   3. Press [OK].

   To set HTTP port
   1. Press [Change] of HTTP Port Setting.
   2. Press [HTTP or HTTPS] or [HTTPS Only].
   3. Press [OK].
5. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

SNMPv3 Setting

1. Press [Next] of Network Security and then [Change] of SNMPv3.
2. Press [On].
3. Press [OK].
4. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

IPSec Setting

1. Press [Next] of Network Security, and then [Change] of IPSec.
2. Press [On].
3. Press [On] and [Off] of Rule Setting.
4. Press [OK].
5. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the machine OFF and then ON again.

Interface Block Setting

USB Host (USB memory slot setting)

1. Press [Next] of Interface Block Setting and then [Change] of USB Host.
2. Press [Block].
3. Press [OK].

USB Device (USB interface setting)

1. Press [Next] of Interface Block Setting and then [Change] of USB Device.
2. Press [Block].
3. Press [OK].

Optional interface (Optional interface card setting)

1. Press [Next] of Interface Block Setting and then [Change] of Optional Interface 1 or Optional Interface 2.
2. Press [Block].
3. Press [OK].

Security Level (Security Level setting)

Document Guard Setting

1. Press and then [Change] of Document Guard.
2. Press [On].
   To scan documents, press [Off].
3. Press [OK].

Optional Functions

Starting Application Use

1. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
2. Select the desired application and press [License On].
   You can view detailed information on the selected application by pressing [Detail].
3. In the license key entry screen, press [Official].
   Some applications do not require you to enter an license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 4.
   To use the application as a trial, press [Trial] without entering the license key.
4. When the confirmation screen appears, press [Yes].

Checking Application Details

1. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
2. Select the application you want to check the details of and press [Detail].
   You can now view detailed information on the selected application.

(14) User Login Administration

Enabling/Disabling User Login Administration

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting and then [Change] of User Login.
3. Select [Local Authentication] or [Network Authentication]. Select [Off] to disable user login administration.
   If you select [Network Authentication], enter the host name (62 characters or less) and domain name (256 characters or less) for the Authentication Server. Select [NTLM] or [Kerberos] as the server type.
4. Press [OK].

Adding a User

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting, [Register/Edit] of Local User List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of User Name.
4. Enter the user name and press [OK].
5. Enter the login user name and E-mail address following 3 and 4 above.
6. Press [Change] of Login Password and then [Password].
7. Enter the login password and press [OK].
8. Press [Confirm Password].
9. Enter the same login password to confirm and press [OK].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Change] of Access Level.
12. Select the user access privilege and press [OK].
13. Press [Change] of Account Name.
14. Select the account and press [OK].
15. Press [Register] to add a new user on the local user list.

Changing User Properties

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of User Login Setting and [Register/Edit] of Local User List.
3. Select the user whose properties you wish to change.
   The procedure differs depending on the details to be edited.
   Changing user information
   1. Press [Detail].
   2. Refer to steps 3 to 14 of Adding a User to change a user property.
   3. Press [Register].
   4. Press [Yes] in the registration confirmation screen. The user information is changed.

   Deleting a user
   1. Press [Delete].
   2. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm deletion. The selected user will be deleted.

Unknown login user name Job

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Change] of Unknown ID Job.
3. Press [Reject] or [Permit].
4. Press [OK].

(15) Job accounting

Enabling/Disabling Job Accounting

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, and then [Change] of Job Accounting.
3. Press [On]. To disable job accounting, press [Off].
4. Press [OK].

Adding an Account

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] of Account Name.
4. Enter the account name and press [OK].
   The Account screen reappears.
5. Follow steps 3 and 4 above to enter the Account ID.
6. Activate or deactivate restriction.
7. Press [Register] to add a new account on the Account List.

Managing Accounts

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Register/Edit] of Accounting List.
3. Select an account to change or delete.

Changing account information

1. Press [Detail].
2. Refer to steps 3 to 5 of Adding an Account and steps 3 to 6 of Restricting Using the Machine to change account information.
3. Press [Register].
4. Press [Yes] in the registration confirmation screen. The account information is changed.

Deleting an account

1. Press [Delete].
2. Press [Yes]. To delete the account.

Managing the Copier/Printer Counts

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Copier/Printer Count.
3. Press [Total] or [Split].
4. Press [OK].

Applying Restriction

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Register/Edit] of Accounting List, and then [Add].
3. Press [Change] for the item to be restricted.
4. Select the restriction mode.
   If [Counter Limit] is selected, press [+],[-] or numeric keys to select the number of pages.
5. Press [OK].
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 for other accounts to be restricted.
7. Press [Register]. The restricted account is added.

Applying Limit of Restriction

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Change] of Apply Limit.
3. Select [Immediately], [Subsequently], or [Alert Only].
4. Press [OK].

Default Counter Limit

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting and then [Next] of Default Counter Limit.
3. Press [Change] for the item you want to modify and then press [+] or [-] or use the numeric keys to enter the default restriction on the number of sheets.
4. Press [OK].
5. To set another default restriction, repeat steps 3 to 4.

Total Job Accounting/Resetting the Counter

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Next] of Total Job Accounting.
3. Press [Check] at the function to check the count. The results will be displayed.
4. Confirm the count and press [Close].
5. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
6. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter is reset.

Each Job Accounting/Resetting the Counter

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and [Check] of Each Job Accounting.
3. Select the account to check the count.
4. Press [Detail].
5. Press [Check] at the function to check the count. The results will be displayed.
6. Confirm the count and press [Close].
7. Press [Execute] of Counter Reset to reset the counter.
8. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the reset. The counter will be reset.

Counting by Paper Size

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting, [Next] of Default Setting, [Change] of Count by Paper Size, [Change] of Paper Size 1 to 5 and then [On].
3. Select the paper size.
4. Press [Media Type] to specify media type.
5. Select the media type and press [OK].
6. Press [Close].

Printing an Accounting Report

1. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login].
2. Press [Next] of Job Accounting Setting and then [Print] of Print Accounting Report.
3. Press [Yes] on the screen to confirm the printing.

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.
Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.
To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the left cover, pull the cassette out or pull the paper feed unit out.
To remove original jammed in optional DP, open the DP top cover.
To remove the jammed paper in optional document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.
Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers.

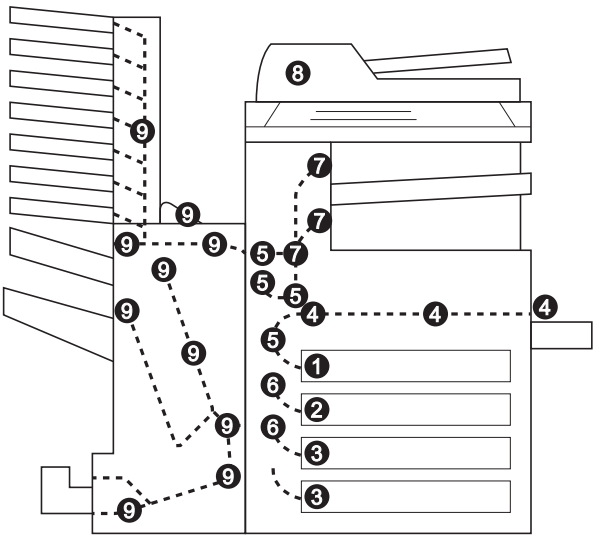


Figure 1-4-1

(1) Misfeed in cassette 1
(2) Misfeed in cassette 2
(3) Misfeed in cassette 3 or 4 (option)
(4) Misfeed in the MP tray
(5) Misfeed in the duplex section
(6) Misfeed in left cover 1,3 or 4
(7) Misfeed in the fuser section
(8) Misfeed in document processor (option)
(9) Misfeed in document finisher (option)

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

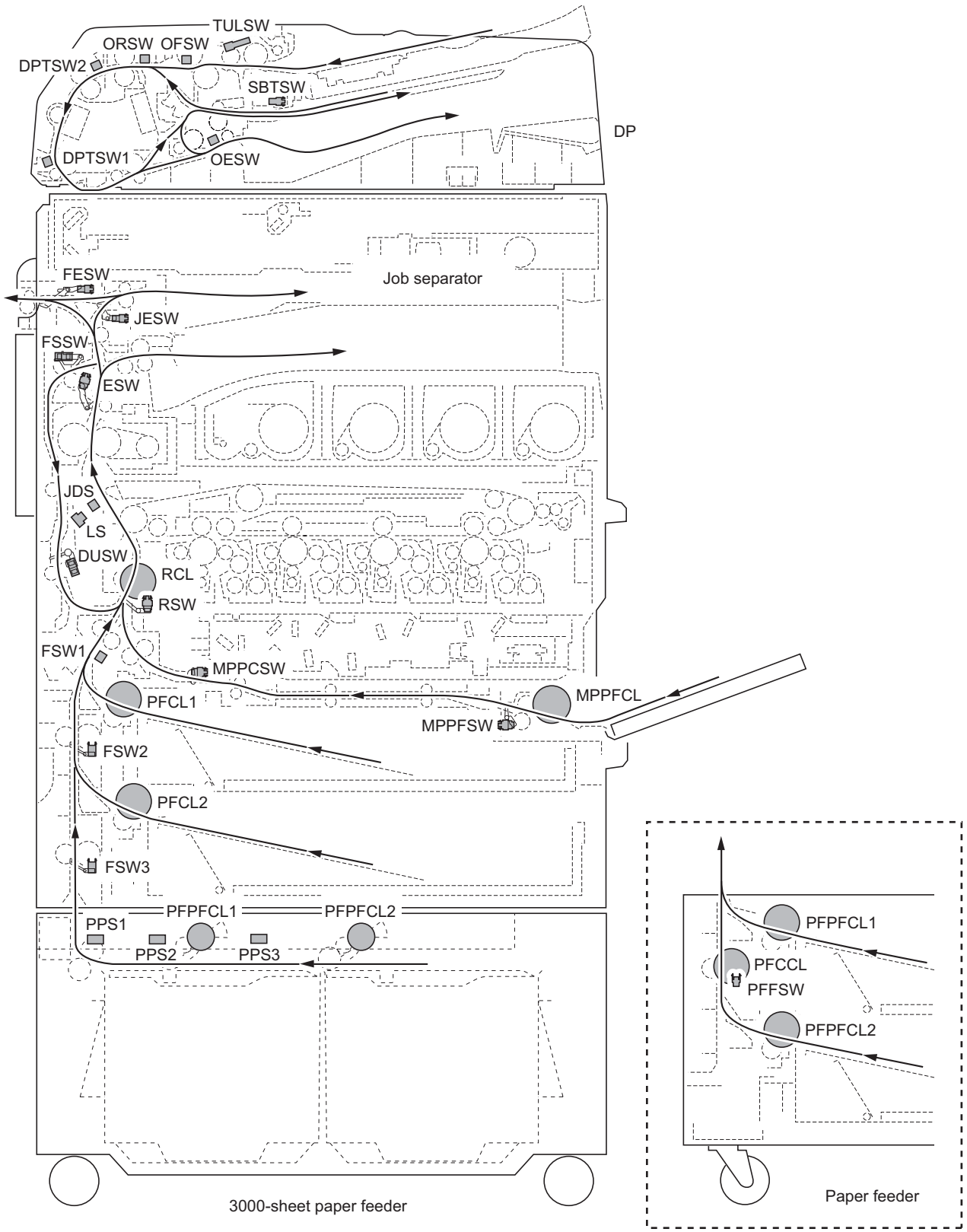


Figure 1-4-2

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
System	00 Initial JAM	The power is turned on when a sensor in the conveying system is on.	-	-	-
	04 Cover open JAM	Cover is open during paper conveying.	-	-	-
	05 Secondary paper feed does not start	Secondary paper feed does not start within specified time of arrival of paper at the registration section.	40 s	40 s	40 s
	09 Sequence error JAM	Sequence error is occurred between the machine and 3000-sheet paper feeder.	-	-	-
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1713 ms	1224 ms	1028 ms
	11 No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1800 ms	1286 ms	1080 ms
	12 No paper feed from optional cassette 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry (paper feed from paper feeder).	2853 ms	2324 ms	2112 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	620 ms	620 ms	620 ms
	13 No paper feed from optional cassette 4	The PF feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry (paper feed from paper feeder).	2853 ms	2324 ms	2112 ms
	14 No paper feed from MP tray	The MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on and cannot be detected at the same timing even after retry.	1540 ms	1100 ms	924 ms
	15 Misfeed in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1	Paper path sensor 3 (PPS3) does not turn on within specified time of PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	360 ms	360 ms	360 ms
	16 Misfeed in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2	Paper path sensor 2 (PPS2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 3 (PPS3) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	380 ms	380 ms	380 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Paper feed section	17 Misfeed in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3	Paper path sensor 1 (PPS1) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 2 (PPS2) turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	250 ms	250 ms	250 ms
	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1407 ms	1005 ms	844 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1040 ms	743 ms	624 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	2133 ms	1524 ms	1280 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning off.	2040 ms	1457 ms	1224 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning off.	1133 ms	810 ms	680 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1040 ms	743 ms	624 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	2133 ms	1524 ms	1280 ms
	19 Misfeed in paper feeder paper conveying section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within specified time of PF feed switch (PFFSW) turning on.	1134 ms	810 ms	680 ms
	21 Multiple sheets in MP tray paper feed section	The MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn off within specified time from start of paper feed.	1540 ms	1100 ms	924 ms
		The MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length + 1460 ms	Paper length + 1043 ms	Paper length + 876 ms
	22 Multiple sheets in cassette 1 paper feed section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time from start of paper feed.	1713 ms	1224 ms	1028 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	2380 ms	1700 ms	1428 ms
	23 Multiple sheets in cassette 2 paper feed section	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time from start of paper feed.	1800 ms	1286 ms	1080 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	2467 ms	1762 ms	1480 ms
	24 Multiple sheets in cassette 3 paper feed section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from paper feeder).	1136 ms	812 ms	682 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from 3000-sheet paper feeder).	950 ms	950 ms	950 ms
	25 Multiple sheets in cassette 4 paper feed section	The PF feed switch 1 (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	1136 ms	812 ms	682 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Paper feed section	26 Multiple sheets in MP tray paper feed section	The MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) turning on.	3507 ms	2505 ms	2104 ms
		The MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW) does not turn off within specified time of MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) turning off.	4173 ms	2981 ms	2504 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW) turning on.	2787 ms	1990 ms	1672 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) turning off.	2120 ms	1514 ms	1272 ms
Paper conveying section	30 Misfeed in registration/transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.	1413 ms	1010 ms	848 ms
	31 Misfeed round the transfer belt	The loop sensor (LS) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	973 ms	695 ms	584 ms
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms
	41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms
	42 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms
	43 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 3)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms
	44 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 4)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms
	45 Misfeed in fuser section (3000-sheet paper feeder)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms
	46 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning on.	967 ms	690 ms	580 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the loop sensor (LS) (40/40, 50/40 ppm)/JAM detection sensor (JDS) (25/25, 30/30 ppm) turning off.	2767 ms	1976 ms	1660 ms
	51 Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job eject switch (JESW) does not turn off within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning off.	1047 ms	748 ms	628 ms
		During switchback ejection, the job eject switch (JESW) does not turn off within specified time.	Paper length + 1133 ms	Paper length + 810 ms	Paper length + 680 ms
		During switchback ejection, the job eject switch (JESW) does not turn off within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning off.	2720 ms	1943 ms	1632 ms
		During switchback ejection, the job eject switch (JESW) does not turn on within specified time.	1800 ms	1286 ms	1080 ms
		During switchback ejection/job separator ejection, the job eject switch (JESW) does not turn on within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning on.	1667 ms	1190 ms	1000 ms
		During finisher ejection, the finisher eject switch (FESW) does not turn on within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning on.	1913 ms	1367 ms	1148 ms
		During finisher ejection, the finisher eject switch (FESW) does not turn off within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning off.	2840 ms	2029 ms	1704 ms
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section	During paper switchback operation in the main body, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time.	1913 ms	1367 ms	1148 ms
Duplex section	60 Misfeed in duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex switch (DUSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	4313 ms	3081 ms	2588 ms
		During duplex refeeding, the duplex switch (DUSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning on.	1220 ms	871 ms	732 ms
	61 Misfeed in duplex paper conveying section 2	During duplex refeeding, the registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time.	1080 ms	771 ms	648 ms
Optional DP	70 No original feed	The original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within specified time during the first sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	1159 ms	705 ms	705 ms
		The original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn on within specified time during the second sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	1159 ms	705 ms	705 ms
		During original tray ascent, the tray upper limit switch (TULSW) does not turn on within specified time.	2 s	2 s	2 s

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Optional DP	71 An original jam in the original feed section	The original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn on within specified time of the original feed switch (OFSW) turning on.	914 ms	557 ms	557 ms
	72 An original jam in the original conveying section	DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turns off within the specified time since the switch turns on.	914 ms	557 ms	557 ms
	73 An original jam in the original registration section	During single scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning on (Retry 5 times).	1774 ms	1080 ms	1080 ms
		During duplex switchback scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn on within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning on (Retry 5 times).	1774 ms	1080 ms	1080 ms
		During dual scanning, the DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2) does not turn on within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning on (Retry 5 times).	1014 ms	617 ms	617 ms
	74 An original jam in the original feed section	The original feed switch (OFSW) or original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn off within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning on.	2084 ms	1268 ms	1268 ms
		Scanning of previous original is not complete when DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turns on.	-	-	-
	75 An original jam in the original conveying section	During single scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning off.	1416 ms	862 ms	862 ms
		During duplex switchback scanning, the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) does not turn off within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning off.	1416 ms	862 ms	862 ms
		During dual scanning, the DP timing switch 2 (DPTSW2) does not turn off within specified time of the original registration switch (ORSW) turning off.	656 ms	400 ms	400 ms
	76 An original jam in the original switchback section 1	During duplex switchback scanning, the switchback tray switch (SBTSW) does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning on.	2318 ms	1411 ms	1411 ms
	77 An original jam in the original switchback section 2	During duplex switchback scanning, the original registration switch (ORSW) does not turn on within specified time since original switchback operation starts.	935 ms	569 ms	569 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Optional DP	78 DP cover open JAM	The DP or DP top cover is opened during original feeding.	-	-	-
		When the power is turned on or original feeding starts, the original feed switch (OFSW), the original registration switch (ORSW) or DP timing switch 1/2 (DPTSW1/2) turning on.	-	-	-
	79 An original jam in the original eject section	During single scanning or dual scanning, the original eject switch (OESW) does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning on.	1705 ms	1038 ms	1038 ms
		During duplex switchback scanning, the original eject switch (OESW) does not turn on within specified time since switchback ejection starts.	841 ms	512 ms	512 ms
		During single scanning or dual scanning, the original eject switch (OESW) does not turn off within specified time of the DP timing switch 1 (DPTSW1) turning off.	1705 ms	1038 ms	1038 ms
Optional finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	15 s	15 s	15 s
		The paper entry sensor (PES) turns on before the eject signal is output from the machine.	-	-	-
	81 Paper entry sensor non arrival jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1613 ms	1152 ms	968 ms
		(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1613 ms	1152 ms	968 ms
		(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3547 ms	2533 ms	2128 ms
		(Document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1124 ms	803 ms	674 ms
	82 Jam in stapler	(3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected within the specified time when driving the staple motor.	600 ms	600 ms	600 ms
		(Document finisher) The staple home position sensor (STSPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	-	-	-

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Optional finisher	83 Eject sensor stay jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1404 ms	1404 ms	1404 ms
		(Document finisher) In the straight mode, the eject paper sensor (EPS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	-	-	-
		(Document finisher) In the bundle discharge mode or the staple mode, bundle discharge operation does not turn off within specified time since the operation starts.	902 ms	902 ms	902 ms
	84 Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1853 ms	1324 ms	1112 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1853 ms	1324 ms	1112 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3547 ms	2533 ms	2128 ms
	85 Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	2187 ms	1562 ms	1312 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	2187 ms	1562 ms	1312 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3547 ms	2533 ms	2128 ms
	87 Jam in eject section of inner tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Inner tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	3447 ms	2462 ms	2068 ms
		Inner tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn off within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	1371 ms	1371 ms	1371 ms
	88 Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned on within specified time.	1324 ms	1324 ms	1324 ms
		At the time of bundle up initial operation, paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1) does not turn on.	-	-	-
		At the time of bundle down initial operation, paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2) does not turn on.	-	-	-
		At the time of side registration standby operation, side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1) does not turn off within specified time.	500 ms	500 ms	500 ms
		At the time of side registration standby operation, side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2) does not turn off within specified time.	500 ms	500 ms	500 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Optional finisher	89 Jam in center-folding unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn off within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	5373 ms	3838 ms	3224 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn on within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	5373 ms	3838 ms	3224 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms	2313 ms	2313 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned on within specified time.	4080 ms	4080 ms	4080 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	8200 ms	8200 ms	8200 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms	600 ms	600 ms
	89 Jam in center-folding unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms	600 ms	600 ms
		The home position is not detected within the specified time after driving the centerfold staple motor (CSTM).	1000 ms	1000 ms	1000 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time.	1370 ms	1370 ms	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned on within specified time.	1370 ms	1370 ms	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms	2313 ms	2313 ms
	90 Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 1).	5120 ms	3657 ms	3072 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 2).	4633 ms	3310 ms	2780 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 3).	4147 ms	2962 ms	2488 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 4).	3660 ms	2614 ms	2196 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 5).	3173 ms	2267 ms	1904 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 6).	2687 ms	1919 ms	1612 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time from start of paper eject (tray 7).	2200 ms	1571 ms	1320 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	Depends on paper size	Depends on paper size	Depends on paper size

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time		
			25/25 ppm 30/30 ppm	40/40 ppm 50/40 ppm Color	50/40 ppm B/W
Optional finisher	91 Finisher cover open	(3000-sheet document finisher) The front cover, top cover or right sub tray is opened when starting the finisher operation. The centerfold unit top cover is opened when starting the center-fold operation. The mailbox cover is opened when starting the operation.	-	-	-
		(Document finisher) The finisher cover becomes open during paper is running. Paper is remaininig in paths at power on.	-	-	-
	92 Eject paper sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher only)	In the straight mode, the eject paper sensor (EPS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the paper entry sensor (PES) was turned on.	-	-	-
	93 Reverse sensor jam (document finisher only)	The reverse sensor (SBS) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on (unfinished reversing canceled).	671 ms	479 ms	402 ms
		The reverse sensor (SBS) is not turned on within specified time (unfinished reversing set).	431 ms	431 ms	431 ms
		The reverse sensor (SBS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (resident reversing canceled).	2800 ms	2000 ms	1680 ms
		The reverse sensor (SBS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (resident reversing set).	700 ms	700 ms	700 ms
	94 Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher only)	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	2100 ms	1500 ms	1260 ms
	95 Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher only)	The paper conveying sensor (PCS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (reversing canceled).	2100 ms	1500 ms	1260 ms
		The paper conveying sensor (PCS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on (reversing set).	656 ms	656 ms	656 ms

(3) Paper misfeeds

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying, duplex or eject section is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switche1/2/3, MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch, duplex switch, eject switch, feedshift switch or loop sensor.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch, duplex switch, eject switch, feedshift switch, loop sensor
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 1). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 1 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys (see page 1-5-3).
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 2). Jam code 11	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 2 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys (see page 1-5-3).
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-4-72).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 3). Jam code 12	Paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 3 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	3000-sheet paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. PF paper feed clutch 1/2, PF paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 4). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 4 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken PF feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective PF feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-7 on the PF main PWB, check if YC3-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when the PF feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the PF feed switch.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley, MP forwarding pulley and MP separation pulley are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys (see page 1-5-8).
	Broken MP paper feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP paper feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP paper feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper feed clutch or MP paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with MP paper feed clutch or MP paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
	Defective MP solenoid.	Run maintenance item U033 and select MP solenoid on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with MP solenoid.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the PF main PWB, check if CN6-11 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the PF main PWB, check if CN6-8 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Check if PF paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the PF main PWB, check if CN6-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Check if PF paper conveying clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper conveying clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch
	Defective paper conveying motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and select paper conveying motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (misfeed in paper feeder vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray). Jam code 21	Broken MP paper feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP paper feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP paper feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective MP paper conveying clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-72).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette 1). Jam code 22	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper feed clutch 1.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
	Defective paper conveying motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and select paper conveying motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette 2). Jam code 23	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper feed clutch 2.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
	Defective paper conveying motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and select paper conveying motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette 3). Jam code 24	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective PF paper feed clutch 1.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(16) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette 4). Jam code 25	Broken PF feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC3-7 on the PF main PWB, check if YC3-5 on the PF main PWB remains low or high when the PF feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the PF feed switch.
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective PF paper feed clutch 2.	Run maintenance item U247 and select PF paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with PF paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
(17) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray). Jam code 26	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch
	Defective MP paper conveying clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with MP paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
(18) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (misfeed in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1, registration switch
	The contact between the right and left registration rollers is not correct.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective registration clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-72).
(19) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (misfeed round the transfer belt). Jam code 31	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective loop sensor.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the loop sensor on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-72).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(20) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during copying (misfeed in fuser section). Jam code 40 to 46	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Loop sensor, eject switch
(21) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (misfeed in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken eject switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Loop sensor, eject switch
(22) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (misfeed in job separator eject section). Jam code 51	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Eject switch, job eject switch, finisher eject switch
(23) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (misfeed in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Broken feedshift switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(24) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (misfeed in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, duplex switch, registration switch
(25) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (misfeed in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken registration switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective registration switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective registration clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-72).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(26) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective original feed switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original feed motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select original feed motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Defective tray upper limit switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the tray upper limit switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original lift motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select original lift motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(27) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original feed section). Jam code 71	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original feed switch, original registration switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(28) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 72	Defective DP timing switch 1.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the DP timing switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(29) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original registration section). Jam code 73	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original registration switch, DP timing switch 1/2
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(30) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original feed section). Jam code 74	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch1, original feed switch, original registration switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(31) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 75	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original registration switch, DP timing switch 1/2
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(32) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original switchback section 1). Jam code 76	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch 1, switchback tray switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original conveying motor, original switchback motor
(33) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original switchback section 2). Jam code 77	Defective original registration switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original registration switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original switchback motor, original feed motor
(34) A original jam in the optional DP is indicated as soon as the main power switch is turned on. (DP cover open JAM). Jam code 78	A piece of paper torn from original is caught around original feed switch, original registration switch or DP timing switch 1/2.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original feed switch, original registration switch, DP timing switch 1/2
(35) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original eject section). Jam code 79	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch 1, original eject switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original switchback motor
(36) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
		(Document finisher) With 5 V DC present at CN3-1 and CN3-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-2and CN3-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
(37) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
		(Document finisher) With 5 V DC present at CN3-1 and CN3-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-2and CN3-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(38) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	Defective staple home position sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the staple home position sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(39) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	3000-sheet document finisher	
	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Document finisher	
	Defective eject paper sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN7-1 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN7-3 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject paper sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject paper sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(40) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (right sub tray eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective eject switch 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(41) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (left sub tray eject jam). Jam code 85	Defective eject switch 3.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(42) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (inner tray paper entry sensor 2 jam). Jam code 87	Defective inner tray paper entry sensor 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn inner tray paper entry sensor 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(43) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (main tray eject jam). Jam code 88	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(44) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (center-folding unit jam). Jam code 89	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Centerfold paper entry sensor, centerfold eject switch, centerfold paper conveying sensor
(45) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (mailbox jam). Jam code 90	Defective tray eject sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn tray eject sensor on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(46) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor non-arrival jam). Jam code 92	Defective eject paper sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN7-1 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN7-3 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject paper sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject paper sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the eject roller and eject pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the eject guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(47) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (switchback sensor jam). Jam code 93	Defective switchback sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN3-5 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the switchback sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the switchback sensor.
	Check if the switchback motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the switchback roller and switchback pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the switchback guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(48) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper entry sensor stay jam). Jam code 94	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN3-1and CN3-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN3-2 and CN3-4 on the main PCB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Check if the paper entry guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(49) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper conveying sensor jam). Jam code 95	Defective paper conveying sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN9-1 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN9-3 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the paper conveying guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

(1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem. A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.
After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning cover switch off and back on.

List of system errors
When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. (When 0800 error is detected, JAM05 is indicated.) After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the power switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-4-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0800	Image processing problem	Repetition of JAM05 → System error → JAM05
1800	Paper feeder communication error (optional paper feeder)	System error → Service call → Partial operation control
4100	BD initialization problem	System error → Normal service call processing
8800	Document finisher communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)	System error → Service call → Partial operation control

Table 1-4-1

Partial operation control

If one of the following service codes is detected, partial operation control will be activated. Take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

Code	Contents
C0840	Faults of RTC
C1010	Lift motor 1 error
C1020	Lift motor 2 error
C1030	PF lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)
C1040	PF lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)
C1100	PF lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1110	PF lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1120	PF left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1130	PF right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1140	Rotary guide motor error
C2600	PF paper conveying motor error (optional paper feeder)
C8020	Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8030	Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)
C8040	Belt problem (optional document finisher)
C8050	Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8060	Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8070	Inner tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8140	Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8170	Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8180	Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8210	Stapler moving motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher) Stapler problem (optional document finisher)
C8220	Stapler moving motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8230	Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8300	Center-folding unit communication error (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8310	Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8320	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Adjustment motor 2 problem (optional document finisher)
C8330	Blade motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Adjustment motor 1 problem (optional document finisher)
C8340	Centerfold staple motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8350	Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Roller motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8360	Centerfold main motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher) Slide motor problem (optional document finisher)
C8440	Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)
C8460	EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)
C8500	Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C8510	Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)
C9040	DP lift motor going up error (optional DP)
C9050	DP lift motor going down error (optional DP)
C9060	DP EEPROM error (optional DP)
C9070	Communication problem between DP and SHD (optional DP)
C9080	Communication problem between DP and CIS (optional DP)

Measures against the service codes detecting fuser problems
If one of the following service codes is detected, take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U163 to reset the service code.

Code	Contents
C6000	Fuser heater 1 break
C6010	Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature
C6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1 temperature
C6030	Fuser thermistor 1 break error
C6040	Fuser heater error
C6050	Abnormally low fuser thermistor 1 temperature
C6100	Fuser heater 2 break
C6120	Abnormally high fuser thermistor 2 temperature
C6130	Fuser thermistor 2 break error
C6200	Fuser heater 1 edge break
C6220	Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1 edge temperature
C6230	Fuser thermistor 1 edge break error
C6400	Zero-cross signal error

(2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0030	**Fax control PWB system problem** Processing with the fax software was disabled due to a hardware or software problem.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0070	**Abnormal detection of fax control PWB incompatibility** In the initial communication with the fax control PWB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0100	**Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Main PWB)** Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0110	**Backup memory (EEPROM) data problem (Main PWB)** Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0150	**Backup memory (EEPROM) device problem (Engine PWB)** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0160	**Backup memory (EEPROM) data problem (Engine PWB)** Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0170	**Copy counts problem** A checksum error is detected in the main and sub backup memories for the copy counters.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0180	**Machine number mismatch error** Machine number of main PWB and engine PWB does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0320	**Power CPU communication problem** A communication error is detected 10 times in succession.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0620	**FAX image DIMM problem** DIMM is not installed correctly. DIMM cannot be accessed.	DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PWB correctly.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0630	**DMA problem** DMA transmission of image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection the signal cable for CIS and the main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0640	**Hard disk drive problem** The hard disk cannot be accessed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection the main PWB and the hard disk, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective hard disk.	Run U024 (HDD formatting) without turning the power off to initialize the hard disk (see page 1-3-23). Replace the hard disk drive and check for correct operation if the problem is still detected after initialization.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0650	**FAX image DIMM check problem** Improper DIMM is installed.	DIMM installed incorrectly.	Check if the DIMM is inserted into the socket on the main PWB correctly.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0800	**Image processing problem** JAM05 is detected twice.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0820	**Fax control PWB CG ROM checksum error (optional fax)** A checksum error occurred with the CG ROM data of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0830	**Fax control PWB flash program area checksum error (optional fax)** A checksum error occurred with the program of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0840	**Faults of RTC** The time is judged to go back based on the comparison of the RTC time and the current time or five years or more have passed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		The battery is disconnected from the main PWB.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
C0860	**Fax control PWB software switch checksum error (optional fax)** A checksum error occurred with the software switch value of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0870	**Fax control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer problem** High-capacity data transfer between the fax control PWB and the scanner MIP PWB was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried 10 times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the main PWB and the connector on the fax control PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0880	**Program archive problem (optional fax)** When power is turned on, the compressed program in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0890	**Fax control PWB CG FONT archive problem (optional fax)** When power is turned on, the compressed CG font in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0920	**Fax file system error** The backup data is not retained for file system abnormality of flash memory of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C1010	**Lift motor 1 error** After cassette 1 is inserted, lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected four times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift motor 1 and the connector YC3 on the feed PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lift motor 1.	Replace lift motor 1.
		Defective lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lift motor 1.
		Defective lift switch 1.	Check if YC4-2 on the feed PWB goes low when lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace lift switch 1.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift switch 1 and the connector YC4 on the feed PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C1020	**Lift motor 2 error** After cassette 2 is inserted, lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected four times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift motor 2 and the connector YC3 on the feed PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lift motor 2.	Replace lift motor 2.
		Defective lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lift motor 2.
		Defective lift switch 2.	Check if YC4-8 on the feed PWB goes low when lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace lift switch 2.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift switch 2 and the connector YC4 on the feed PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1030	**PF lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)** After cassette 3 is inserted, PF lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected two times successively. During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 500 ms or more two times successively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 1 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of PF lift motor 1.	Replace PF lift motor 1.
		Defective PF lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 1.
		Defective PF lift switch 1.	Check if YC1-7 on the PF main PWB goes low when PF lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace PF lift switch 1.
C1040	**PF lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)** After cassette 4 is inserted, PF lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected two times successively. During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 500 ms or more two times successively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 2 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of PF lift motor 2.	Replace PF lift motor 2.
		Defective PF lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 2.
		Defective PF lift switch 2.	Check if YC1-9 on the PF main PWB goes low when PF lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace PF lift switch 2.
C1100	**PF lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)** A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		PF lift motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
C1110	**PF lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)** A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		PF lift motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1120	**PF left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)** Level switch 1 does not turn on within 30 s of PF lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective level switch 1.	Check if YC5-4 on the PF main PWB goes low when level switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace PF lift switch 1.
		Defective PF lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 1.
		The PF left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1130	**PF right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)** Level switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of PF lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective level switch 2.	Check if YC5-7 on the PF main PWB goes low when level switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace PF lift switch 2.
		Defective PF lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace PF lift motor 2.
		The PF right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1400	**Rotary guide motor error** Rotary guide sensor does not turn on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of the rotary guide motor and the connector YC2 on the main front PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of rotary guide motor.	Replace rotary guide motor.
		Defective rotary guide motor.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace rotary guide motor.
		Defective rotary guide sensor.	Check if YC2-8 on the main front PWB goes low when rotary guide sensor is turned off. If not, replace rotary guide sensor.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of the rotary guide sensor and the connector YC2 on the main front PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Main front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1800	**Paper feeder communication error (optional paper feeder)** A communication error from paper feeder is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C1900	**Paper feeder EEPROM error (optional paper feeder)** When writing the data, the write data and the read data is not continuously in agreement three times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder.	Replace the paper feeder with another unit and check the operation. If the operation is normal, replace or repair optional paper feeder.
C1950	**Transfer belt unit EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC28 on the engine PWB and the connector of the transfer belt unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective transfer belt speed PWB (inner transfer belt unit).	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
C2101	**Developing motor K error** The rated speed achievement signal does not turn to L within 2 s since developing motor K is activated. The rated speed achievement signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously after developing motor K is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the connector of the developing motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective developing motor K.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the developing motor K operates when YC16-B4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the developing motor K.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC16-B4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2102	**Developing motor MCY error** The rated speed achievement signal does not turn to L within 2 s since developing motor MCY is activated. The rated speed achievement signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously after developing motor MCY is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the connector of the developing motor MCY, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective developing motor MCY.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the developing motor MCY operates when YC16-A4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the developing motor MCY.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC16-A4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
C2201	**Drum motor K steady-state error** Drum motor K does not keep the steady-state speed for 5 s successively since the motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor K.	Replace the drum motor K.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2202	**Drum motor C steady-state error** Drum motor C does not keep the steady-state speed for 5 s successively since the motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor C.	Replace the drum motor C.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2203	**Drum motor M steady-state error** Drum motor M does not keep the steady-state speed for 5 s successively since the motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor M.	Replace the drum motor M.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2204	**Drum motor Y steady-state error** Drum motor Y does not keep the steady-state speed for 5 s successively since the motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor Y.	Replace the drum motor Y.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2211	**Drum motor K startup error** Drum motor K is not stabilized within 5 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor K.	Replace the drum motor K.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2212	**Drum motor C startup error** Drum motor C is not stabilized within 5 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor C.	Replace the drum motor C.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2213	**Drum motor M startup error** Drum motor M is not stabilized within 5 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor M.	Replace the drum motor M.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2214	**Drum motor Y startup error** Drum motor Y is not stabilized within 5 s since the motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor Y.	Replace the drum motor Y.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2231	**Drum motor K main sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor K.	Replace the drum motor K.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2232	**Drum motor C main sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor C.	Replace the drum motor C.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2233	**Drum motor M main sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor M.	Replace the drum motor M.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2234	**Drum motor Y main sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor Y.	Replace the drum motor Y.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2241	**Drum motor K sub sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor K.	Replace the drum motor K.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2242	**Drum motor C sub sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor C.	Replace the drum motor C.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2243	**Drum motor M sub sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor M.	Replace the drum motor M.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2244	**Drum motor Y sub sensor error** No signal is input to the sensor for 1.5 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor Y.	Replace the drum motor Y.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2261	**Drum motor K device sensor error** The device alarm signal is input.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor K.	Replace the drum motor K.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2262	**Drum motor C device error** The device alarm signal is input.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor C.	Replace the drum motor C.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2263	**Drum motor M device error** The device alarm signal is input.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor M.	Replace the drum motor M.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2264	**Drum motor Y device error** The device alarm signal is input.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the motor control PWB and the connector of the drum motor Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor Y.	Replace the drum motor Y.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2271	**Drum position sensor K error** While the drum rotates two turns, no signal is input to the sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the main front PWB and the connector of the drum unit K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum position sensor K.	Replace the drum unit K (see page 1-5-35).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2272	**Drum position sensor C error** While the drum rotates two turns, no signal is input to the sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the sub front PWB and the connector of the drum unit C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum position sensor C.	Replace the drum unit C (see page 1-5-35).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the sub front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2273	**Drum position sensor M error** While the drum rotates two turns, no signal is input to the sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the sub front PWB and the connector of the drum unit M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum position sensor M.	Replace the drum unit M (see page 1-5-35).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the sub front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2274	**Drum position sensor Y error** While the drum rotates two turns, no signal is input to the sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the sub front PWB and the connector of the drum unit Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum position sensor Y.	Replace the drum unit Y (see page 1-5-35).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the sub front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2300	**Fuser motor error** After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC25 on the engine PWB and the connector of the fuser motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective fuser motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the fuser motor operates when YC25-B4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the fuser motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC25-B4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
C2351	**Cleaning motor K error** After the motor drive ON signal is output and 2 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 1 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the connector of the cleaning motor K, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective cleaning motor K.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the cleaning motor K operates when YC16-B13 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the cleaning motor K.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC16-B13 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2352	**Cleaning motor MCY error** After the motor drive ON signal is output and 2 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 1 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the connector of the cleaning motor MCY, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective cleaning motor K.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the cleaning motor MCY operates when YC16-A13 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the cleaning motor MCY.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC16-A13 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
C2400	**Eject motor error** After the motor drive ON signal is output and 2 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 1 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC25 on the engine PWB and the connector on the eject motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates when YC25-A5 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the eject motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC25-A5 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
C2500	**MP motor error** After the motor drive ON signal is output and 2 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 1 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC24 on the engine PWB and the connector on the MP motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective MP motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the MP motor operates when YC24-2 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the MP motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC24-3 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2550	**Paper conveying motor error** After the motor drive ON signal is output and 2 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 1 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the feed PWB and the connector on the paper conveying motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective paper conveying motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the motor operates. If not, replace the paper conveying motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2600	**PF paper conveying motor error (optional paper feeder)** The lock signal of the motor is detected above 450 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the PF main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective paper PF paper conveying motor.	Replace the PF paper conveying motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2700	**Color release motor error** After driving of the color release motor starts, the error signal is not at the H level for 4 s continuously. After driving of the color release motor starts, the release signal does not turn to the L level within 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC28 on the engine PWB and the connector of the color release motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective color release motor.	Replace the color release motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation
C2810	**Waste toner motor error** After driving of the waste toner motor starts, the error signal is not at the H level for 2 s continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the engine PWB and the connector of the waste toner motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective waste toner motor.	Replace the waste toner motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2950	**Motor control PWB communication error** A communication error from motor control PWB is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC14 and YC15 on the engine PWB and the connector of the motor control PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C3100	**Scanner carriage problem** The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the table.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the ISM PWB and the connector of the home position switch, and the connection of connector YC7 on the ISM PWB and the connector on the scanner motor and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective home position switch.	Replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
		The mirror frame, exposure lamp, or scanner wire is defective.	Check if the mirror flames and exposure lamp are on the rail. And check the scanner wire winds correctly.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB or ISC PWB and check for correct operation.
C3200	**Exposure lamp problem** When input value at the time of exposure lamp illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the ISM PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp or inverter PWB.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Incorrect shading position.	Adjust the position of the contact glass (shading plate). If the problem still occurs, replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB, ISC PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3210	**CIS lamp problem** When input value at the time of CIS illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the ISM PWB and the connector on the DP driver PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP inverter PWB.	Replace the DP inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective CIS.	Replace the CIS and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C3300	**Optical system (AGC) problem** After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the ISM PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp or inverter PWB.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB, ISC PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3310	**CIS AGC problem** After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CIS.	Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
		CIS output problem.	Replace the CIS and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP inverter PWB.	Replace the DP inverter PWB and check for correct operation.
C3500	**Communication error between scanner and ASIC** An error code is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the CCD PWB and the connector YC2 on the ISC PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the CCD PWB or ISC PWB and check for correct operation.
C3900	**Backup memory read/write problem (ISC PWB)** Read and write data does not match.	Defective backup RAM or PWB.	Replace the ISC PWB or ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
C3910	**Backup memory data problem (ISC PWB)** Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Defective backup RAM or PWB.	Replace the ISC PWB or ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
C4000	**Polygon motor synchronization problem** The rated speed achievement signal won't turn to L in 48 s since the polygon motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C4010	**Polygon motor steady-state problem** The rated speed achievement signal turns to H every other 24 s after the polygon motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C4100	**BD initialization problem** When power is turned on, ASIC of engine PWB detects a BD error for 1 s after the polygon motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective APC PWB BK (inner laser scanner unit)	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C5101	**Main high-voltage K error** Abnormality of charger roller K is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit K.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit K. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit K.	Replace the charger roller unit K (see page 1-5-36).
C5102	**Main high-voltage C error** Abnormality of charger roller C is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit C.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit C. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit C.	Replace the charger roller unit C (see page 1-5-36).
C5103	**Main high-voltage M error** Abnormality of charger roller M is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit M.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit M. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit M.	Replace the charger roller unit M (see page 1-5-36).
C5104	**Main high-voltage Y error** Abnormality of charger roller Y is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit Y.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit Y. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit Y.	Replace the charger roller unit Y (see page 1-5-36).
C6000	**Fuser heater 1 break** Fuser thermistor 1 detects a temperature lower than the Ready indication temperature for 90 s during warming up. Fuser thermistor 1 deduced less than 130 °C/266 °F for 5 s during stand-by. Fuser thermistor 1 does not reach 75° C/ 167 °F even after 30 s during warming up.	Defective fuser heater 1.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective fuser thermostat 1.	Check for continuity across thermostat. If none, remove the cause and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty\ \Omega$, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C6010	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature** The fuser Abnormally high signal is detected for 60 s or more.	Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6020	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1 temperature** The fuser temperature exceeds 240 °C/464 °F for 1 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6030	**Fuser thermistor 1 break error** During warming up, fuser thermistor 1 does not detect temperature rise of 1 °C/1.8 °F for 10 s. When the difference of temperature of fuser thermistor 1 and 2 becomes 100 °C/212 °F or more.	Defective fuser heater 1.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6040	**Fuser heater error** Fuser thermistor 1 detects temperature change of 20 °C/36 °F or more for 160 ms 100 times or more since the power is turned on.	Defective fuser heater 1.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6050	**Abnormally low fuser thermistor 1 temperature** During printing, the temperature at the heat roller lower than 100 °C/212 °F is detected continuously for 1 s.	Defective fuser heater 1.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6100	**Fuser heater 2 break** Fuser thermistor 2 detected less than 100 °C/212 °F for 120 s during driving. Fuser thermistor 2 deduced less than 150 °C/302 °F for 300 s during driving. Fuser thermistor 2 deduced less than 100 °C/212 °F for 5 s during driving.	Defective fuser heater 2.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective fuser thermostat 2.	Check for continuity across thermostat. If none, remove the cause and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6120	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor 2 temperature** The fuser temperature exceeds 190 °C/374 °F for 1 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C6130	**Fuser thermistor 2 break error** Fuser thermistor 2 detects a temperature of 30 °C/86 °F or lower for 45 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective fuser heater 2.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6200	**Fuser heater 1 edge break** During warming up, fuser thermistor 1 does not detect temperature rise of 1 °C/1.8 °F for 10 s. Fuser thermistor 1 does not reach 90° C/194 °F even after 30 s during warming up.	Defective fuser heater 1.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective fuser thermostat 1.	Check for continuity across thermostat. If none, remove the cause and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6220	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1 edge temperature** The fuser temperature exceeds 250 °C/482 °F for 1 s.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6230	**Fuser thermistor 1 edge break error** Fuser thermistor 1 detects a temperature of 40 °C/104 °F or lower for 30 s.	Defective fuser heater 1.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1.	Measure the resistance. If it is ∞ Ω, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6400	**Zero-cross signal error** While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero-cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the engine PWB and the connector YC10 on the power source PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or power source PWB and check for correct operation.
C6410	**Fuser unit type mismatch problem** Absence of the fuser unit is detected.	Fuser unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the fuser unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the fuser unit is installed.	Install the correct fuser unit.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7000	**Toner motor problem** After driving of the toner motor starts, the error signal is not at the H level for 500 ms continuously.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC26 on the engine PWB and the connector of the toner motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
		Defective toner motor M/C/Y/K.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the toner motor operates. If not, replace the toner motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7100	**Toner container motor error** The rated speed achievement signal does not turn to L within 2 s since toner container motor is activated. The rated speed achievement signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously after toner container motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC26 on the engine PWB and the connector on the toner container motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective toner container motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the toner container motor operates when YC26-A7 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the toner container motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC26-A7 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB.
C7101	**Toner sensor K problem** Sensor output value of 60 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit K.	Replace the developing unit K (see page 1-5-34).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7102	**Toner sensor C problem** Sensor output value of 60 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit C.	Replace the developing unit C (see page 1-5-34).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the sub front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7103	**Toner sensor M problem** Sensor output value of 60 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit M.	Replace the developing unit M (see page 1-5-34).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the sub front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7104	**Toner sensor Y problem** Sensor output value of 60 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit Y.	Replace the developing unit Y (see page 1-5-34).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the sub front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7200	**Broken internal thermistor wire** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 1.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7210	**Short-circuited internal thermistor** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 1.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7240	**Broken internal thermistor 2 wire** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 2.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7250	**Short-circuited internal thermistor 2** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 2.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7401	**Developing unit K type mismatch problem** Absence of the developing unit K is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7402	**Developing unit C type mismatch problem** Absence of the developing unit C is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7403	**Developing unit M type mismatch problem** Absence of the developing unit M is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7404	**Developing unit Y type mismatch problem** Absence of the developing unit Y is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7411	**Drum unit K type mismatch problem** Absence of the drum unit K is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7412	**Drum unit C type mismatch problem** Absence of the drum unit C is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7413	**Drum unit M type mismatch problem** Absence of the drum unit M is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7414	**Drum unit Y type mismatch problem** Absence of the drum unit Y is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7420	**Transfer belt unit type mismatch problem** Absence of the transfer belt unit is detected.	Transfer belt unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the transfer belt unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the transfer belt unit is installed.	Install the correct transfer belt unit.
C7601	**ID sensor 1 error** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to ID sensor 1.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7602	**ID sensor 2 error** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to ID sensor 2.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7800	**Broken external thermistor wire** An abnormal value is detected in the input data to the outer temperature sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the main front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the main front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C7901	**Drum K EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the main front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB K.	Replace the drum unit K (see page 1-5-35).
C7902	**Drum C EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the sub front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB C.	Replace the drum unit C (see page 1-5-35).
C7903	**Drum M EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the sub front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB M.	Replace the drum unit M (see page 1-5-35).
C7904	**Drum Y EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the sub front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB Y.	Replace the drum unit Y (see page 1-5-35).
C7911	**Developing unit K EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 7.5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the main front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB K.	Replace the developing unit K (see page 1-5-34).

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7912	**Developing unit C EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 7.5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the sub front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB C.	Replace the developing unit C (see page 1-5-34).
C7913	**Developing unit M EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 7.5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the sub front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB M.	Replace the developing unit M (see page 1-5-34).
C7914	**Developing unit Y EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 7.5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs eight times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs eight times successively.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the sub front PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB Y.	Replace the developing unit Y (see page 1-5-34).
C7950	**High voltage control PWB error** A communication error from high voltage control PWB is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC30 on the engine PWB and the connector on the high voltage control PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the high voltage control PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C8020	**Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** The error signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the punch PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8030	**Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)** When the tray elevation motor raises a tray, the ON status of the tray upper limit sensor is detected.	The tray upper limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray upper limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8040	**Belt problem (optional document finisher)** The belt sensor does not turn on/off within specified time of the belt solenoid turning on.	The belt sensor, belt solenoid connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective belt sensor.	Replace the belt sensor.
		Defective belt solenoid.	Replace the belt solenoid.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8050	**Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn on within 2.5 s. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8060	**Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn on within 1.5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8070	**Inner tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** Communication with the inner tray is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 and YC24 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 and YC4 on the inner tray PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8140	**Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** The main tray is not detected by the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor within 20 s since the tray has started ascending. The main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor is not detected to be turned off in 20 s after the main tray has descended. The main tray low limit detection sensor is not detected to be turned on in 20 s after the main tray has descended. During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the main tray motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main tray motor.	Replace the main tray motor.
		Defective main tray upper limit detection sensor/main tray paper upper surface detection sensor/main tray lower limit detection sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher) The tray low limit sensor or paper surface sensor 1/2 cannot be detected to be on within 10 s since the tray elevation motor is activated.	The tray elevation motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor.
		The tray lower limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray lower limit sensor, paper surface sensor 1/2.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8170	**Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the inner tray PWB and the connector on side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 1.	Replace side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8180	**Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the inner tray PWB and the connector of side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective side registration motor 2.	Replace side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the inner tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8210	**Stapler moving motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler moving motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 1.	Replace stapler moving motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Stapler problem (optional document finisher) Jam 82 is indicated.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the stapler and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8220	**Stapler moving motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of staple relay PWB and stapler moving motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler moving motor 2.	Replace stapler moving motor 2.
		Defective staple relay PWB.	Replace the staple relay PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8230	**Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** Jam 82 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of staple relay PWB and stapler motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler motor.	Replace the stapler motor.
		Defective staple relay PWB.	Replace the staple relay PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8300	**Center-folding unit communication error (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** Communication with the center-folding unit is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 and YC20 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 and YC2 on the centerfold main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold set switch.	Replace the centerfold set switch.
		Defective centerfold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8310	**Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 2.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8320	**Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 2.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6, YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.	Replace centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Adjustment motor 2 problem (optional document finisher) The adjustment sensor 2 does not turn on/off within specified time of the adjustment motor 2 turning on.	The adjustment sensor 2, adjustment motor 2 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment sensor 2.	Replace the adjustment sensor 2.
		Defective adjustment motor 2.	Replace the adjustment motor 2.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8330	**Blade motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the blade motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective blade motor.	Replace the blade motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Adjustment motor 1 problem (optional document finisher) The adjustment sensor 1 does not turn on/off within specified time of the adjustment motor 1 turning on.	The adjustment sensor 1, adjustment motor 1 connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective adjustment sensor 1.	Replace the adjustment sensor 1.
		Defective adjustment motor 1.	Replace the adjustment motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8340	**Centerfold staple motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** Jam 89 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold staple motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold staple motor.	Replace the centerfold staple motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8350	**Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 1.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Roller motor problem (optional document finisher) The roller sensor does not turn on/off within specified time of the roller motor turning on.	The roller sensor, roller motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective roller sensor.	Replace the roller sensor.
		Defective roller motor.	Replace the roller motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8360	**Centerfold main motor problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** The motor lock signal is detected above 1 s during driving the centerfold main motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main motor.	Replace the centerfold main motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	Slide motor problem (optional document finisher) The slide sensor does not turn on/off within specified time of the slide motor turning on.	The slide sensor, slide motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective slide sensor.	Replace the slide sensor.
		Defective slide motor.	Replace the slide motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8440	**Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)** The sensor cannot be adjusted within the specified range.	The paper entry sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper entry sensor.	Replace the paper entry sensor and check for correct operation.
		The optical path of the paper entry sensor is blocked by foreign matter.	Remove the foreign matter.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8460	**EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)** Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Defective EEPROM or finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8500	**Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)** Communication with the mailbox is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the connector of the mailbox and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8510	**Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)** The motor lock signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the mailbox drive motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC5 on the mailbox main PWB and the connector of the mailbox drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox drive motor.	Replace the mailbox drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8800	**Document finisher communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** A communication error from document finisher is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C8900	**Backup memory data problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)** Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector of the machine, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		EEPROM installed incorrectly.	Install EEPROM correctly.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

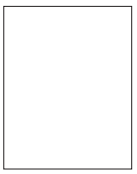
Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8910	**Backup memory data problem (optional of 3000-sheet document finisher)** Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the connector YC4 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch PWB.	Replace the punch PWB and check for correct operation.
C8930	**Backup memory data problem (optional center-folding unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)** Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the centerfold main PWB and the connector YC5 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		EEPROM installed incorrectly.	Install EEPROM correctly.
		Defective centerfold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9000	**DP communication problem (optional DP)** A communication error is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the ISM PWB and the connector of the DP, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB or ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
C9010	**Coin vender communication error** A communication error from coin vender is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the main PWB and the connector on the coin vender control PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Data setting failure.	Set maintenance mode U206 to off when a coin vender is not installed.
		Defective coin vender control PWB.	Replace the coin vender control PWB.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9040	**DP lift motor going up error (optional DP)** The tray upper limit switch does not turn on within 2 s of DP lift motor turning on.	Loose connection of the DP lift motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the DP lift motor.	Replace the DP lift motor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the tray upper limit switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the tray upper limit switch.	Replace the tray upper limit switch and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C9050	**DP lift motor going down error (optional DP)** The tray lower limit switch does not turn on within 2 s of DP lift motor turning on.	Loose connection of the DP lift motor connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the DP lift motor.	Replace the DP lift motor and check for correct operation.
		Loose connection of the tray lower limit switch connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Malfunction of the tray lower limit switch.	Replace the tray lower limit switch and check for correct operation.
		Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
C9060	**DP EEPROM error (optional DP)** Read and write data does not match. Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Defective DP driver PWB.	Replace the DP driver PWB and check for correct operation.
		Device damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9070	**Communication problem between DP and SHD (optional DP)** A communication error is detected.	Loose connection of the ISC PWB.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective ISC PWB.	Replace the ISC PWB and check for correct operation.
C9080	**Communication problem between DP and CIS (optional DP)** A communication error is detected.	Loose connection of CIS.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective CIS.	Replace CIS and check for correct operation.
C9500			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9510			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9520			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9530			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9540			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9550			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
F000	**Operation panel PWB communication error**	Firmware upgrade error	Execute again upgrading.
			Replace the main firmware DIMM with the latest one and then execute again upgrading.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective main operation panel PWB.	Replace the main operation panel PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
F040	**Engine PWB communication error**	Firmware upgrade error	Only for engine firmware, execute upgrading using USB memory in which software for 40/40, 50/40 ppm model and for 25/25, 30/30 ppm model are stored individually.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F041	**Scanner PWB communication error**	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective ISM PWB.	Replace the ISM PWB and check for correct operation.
F050	**Engine ROM checksum error**	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation.
F090	**Fax control PWB communication error**	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-3 Image formation problems

(1)No image appears (entirely white).



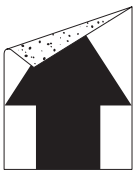
See page 1-4-62.

(2)No image appears (entirely black).



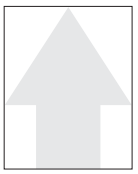
See page 1-4-62.

(3)Dirty on the back side.



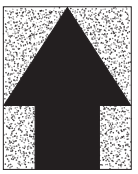
See page 1-4-63.

(4)Image is too light.



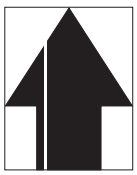
See page 1-4-63.

(5)The background is colored.



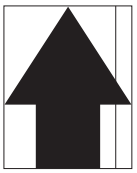
See page 1-4-64.

(6)A white line appears longitudinally.



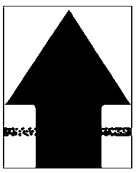
See page 1-4-64.

(7)A line appears longitudinally.



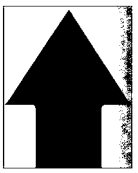
See page 1-4-64.

(8)A line appears laterally.



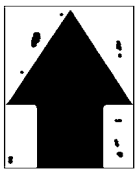
See page 1-4-65.

(9)One side of the copy image is darker than the other.



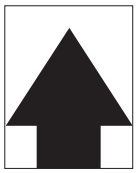
See page 1-4-65.

(10)Dots appear on the image.



See page 1-4-65.

(11)The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.



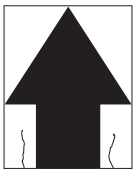
See page 1-4-65.

(12)The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.



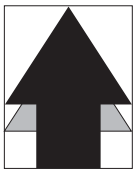
See page 1-4-66.

(13)Paper creases.



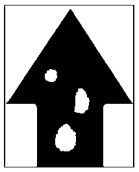
See page 1-4-66.

(14)Offset occurs.



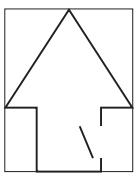
See page 1-4-66.

(15)Image is partly missing.



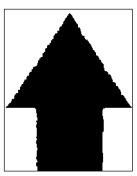
See page 1-4-67.

(16)Fusing is poor.



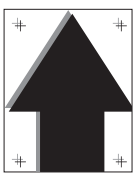
See page 1-4-67.

(17)Image is out of focus.



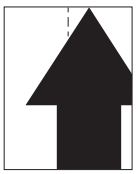
See page 1-4-67.

(18)Colors are printed offset to each other.



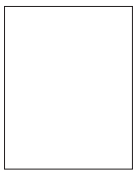
See page 1-4-68.

(19)Image center does not align with the original center.



See page 1-4-68.

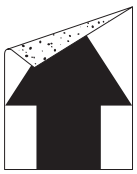
(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective transfer bias output.	The connector terminals of the transfer high voltage PWB 1 make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
		Defective transfer high voltage PWB 1.	Replace the transfer high voltage PWB 1.
		Defective transfer belt unit.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	Defective developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The connector terminals of the high voltage control PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
		Defective high voltage control PWB.	Replace the high voltage control PWB.
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.

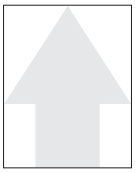
(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
		The connector terminals of the main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective inverter PWB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when the terminal on the inverter PWB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		Defective ISM PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC5-4 on the ISM PWB goes low. If not, replace the ISM PWB.
	The laser is activated simultaneously for all colors.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-21).

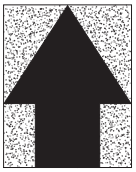
(3) Dirty on the back side.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Faulty transfer belt cleaning.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
	Dirty paper conveying path.	Clean the paper conveying path.
	Dirty fuser belt or press roller (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).

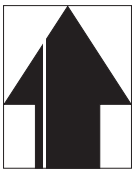
(4) Image is too light.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective developing bias output.	Defective developing unit.	Run maintenance mode U089 to output four-color bar PG, check the output status of the four colors, and replace the developing unit for any faulty color (see page 1-3-51 and page 1-5-34).
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
		Defective high voltage control PWB.	Replace the high voltage control PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	Dirty drum.		Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Defective transfer bias output.	Defective transfer high voltage PWB 1.	Replace the transfer high voltage PWB 1.
		Defective transfer belt unit.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	Defective color calibration.		Perform gray adjustment.
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Defective agitation of toner container.		Shake the toner container up and down approximately ten times.
	Paper damp.		Check the paper storage conditions, replace the paper.

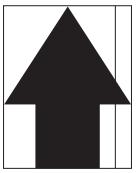
(5) The background is colored.

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective develop-ing bias output.	Defective developing unit.	Run maintenance mode U089 to output four-color bar PG, check the output status of the four colors, and replace the developing unit for any faulty color (see page 1-3-51 and page 1-5-34).
		Defective main high volt-age PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
		Defective high voltage control PWB.	Replace the high voltage control PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	Defective color calibration.		Perform gray adjustment.

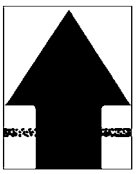
(6) A white line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Run maintenance mode U089 to output four-color bar PG, check the output status of the four colors, and replace the developing unit for any faulty color (see page 1-3-51 and page 1-5-34).
	Dirty transfer belt.	Clean the transfer belt. Replace the transfer belt unit if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-37).
	Dirty transfer roller.	Clean the transfer roller. Replace the transfer roller if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-39).
	Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty LSU slit glasses.	Clean the LSU slit glasses.
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.

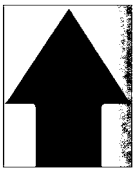
(7) A line appears longitudinally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty slit glass.	Clean the slit glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade of the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty lens of ISU.	Clean lens of ISU.
	Worn transfer belt.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
	Defective transfer roller.	Replace the transfer roller (see page 1-5-39).

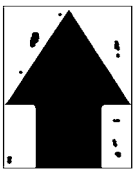
(8) A line appears laterally.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner or carrier in the developing section.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.
	Poor contact of grounding terminal of drum unit.	Check the mounting state of the image formation holder. If any problem is found, repair it (see page 1-5-30).

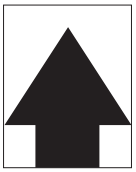
(9) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly to run maintenance item U061. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-3-37 and page 1-5-11).

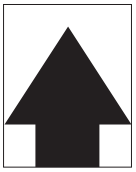
(10) Dots appear on the image.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade of the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Flawed developing roller.	Replace the developing unit (see page 1-5-34).
	Dirty fuser belt or press roller (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).

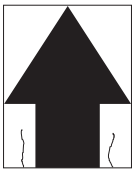
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Registration clutch operating incorrectly.	Check the installation of the registration clutch. If it operates incorrectly, replace it.
	Misadjusted the deflection in the paper.	Run maintenance mode U051 to readjust the deflection in the paper (see page 1-3-31).
	Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-27).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-40).

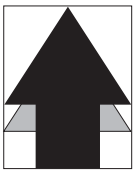
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper feed clutch 1/2, paper conveying clutch, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of paper feed clutch 1/2, paper conveying clutch, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch and registration clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.

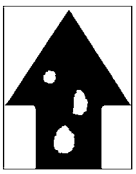
(13) Paper creases.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Dirty separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

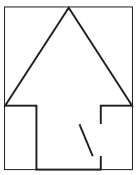
(14) Offset occurs.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade of the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Faulty transfer belt cleaning.	Run maintenance item U107 (see page 1-3-63). Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
	Defective fuser unit.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.

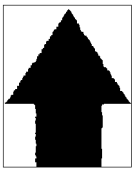
(15) Image is partly missing.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Change the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation. If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	Dirty transfer belt.	Clean the transfer belt. Replace the transfer belt unit if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-37).
	Dirty transfer roller.	Clean the transfer roller. Replace the transfer roller if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-39).
	Dirt on the back surface of the contact glass and scanner mirror.	Clean the contact glass and scanner mirror.

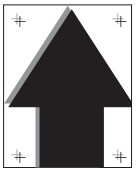
(16) Fusing is poor.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Flawed fuser belt (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
	Flawed fuser heater (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).

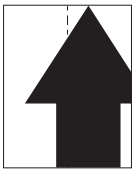
(17) Image is out of focus.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective ISU.	Replace the ISU (see page 1-5-19).
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation.

(18) Colors are printed offset to each other.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective calibration.	Perform the color calibration.
	Slip the mirror position of laser scanner unit.	Perform the color registration. When the problem is not cleared, perform the manual color registration adjustment (see page 1-5-28).

(19) Image center does not align with the original center.

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-29).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-41).
	Original is not placed correctly.	Place the original correctly.
	The paper is not loaded correctly.	Load the paper correctly.

1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC7-1, YC7-2 and 5 V DC at YC7-6 on the power source PWB. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) Registration motor or duplex motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the motor operates. If not, replace the motor.
	4. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the motor operates. If not, replace the feed PWB.
	5. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) Toner container motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the motor operates. If not, replace the motor.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(4) Rotary fan motor or container fan motor does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective fan motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the fan motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding fan motor. Rotary fan motor: YC2-1 on the main front PWB Container fan motor: YC7-2 on the main front PWB
	4. Defective main front PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the main front PWB goes low. If not, replace the main front PWB. Rotary fan motor: YC2-1 on the main front PWB Container fan motor: YC7-2 on the main front PWB
	5. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Rotary fan motor: YC18-A8 on the engine PWB Container fan motor: YC18-B1 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(5) Developing fan motor 1/2 does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective fan motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the fan motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding fan motor. Developing fan motor 1: YC9-1 on the sub front PWB Developing fan motor 2: YC9-3 on the sub front PWB
	4. Defective sub front PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the sub front PWB goes low. If not, replace the sub front PWB. Developing fan motor 1: YC9-1 on the sub front PWB Developing fan motor 2: YC9-3 on the sub front PWB
	5. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Developing fan motor 1: YC19-17 on the engine PWB Developing fan motor 2: YC19-16 on the engine PWB
(6) Fuser fan motor, developing fan motor 5, power source fan motor 1/2, LSU fan motor or transfer fan motor 1/2/3 does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective fan motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the fan motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding fan motor. Fuser fan motor: YC25-B11 on the engine PWB Developing fan motor 5: YC39-2 on the engine PWB Power source fan motor 1/2: YC10-B15 on the engine PWB LSU fan motor: YC38-1 on the engine PWB Transfer fan motor 1: YC12-A7 on the engine PWB Transfer fan motor 2: YC28-B15 on the engine PWB Transfer fan motor 3: YC28-B17 on the engine PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Fuser fan motor: YC25-B11 on the engine PWB Developing fan motor 5: YC39-2 on the engine PWB Power source fan motor 1/2: YC10-B15 on the engine PWB LSU fan motor: YC38-1 on the engine PWB Transfer fan motor 1: YC12-A7 on the engine PWB Transfer fan motor 2: YC28-B15 on the engine PWB Transfer fan motor 3: YC28-B17 on the engine PWB

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(7) Loop fan motor or paper conveying fan motor 1/2 does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective fan motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the fan motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding fan motor. 40/40, 50/40 ppm model Loop fan motor: YC14-A14 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1: YC14-B3 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 2: YC14-B5 on the feed PWB 25/25, 30/30 ppm model Loop fan motor: YC15-10 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1: YC14-1 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 2: YC14-3 on the feed PWB
	4. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the feed PWB goes low. If not, replace the feed PWB. 40/40, 50/40 ppm model Loop fan motor: YC14-A14 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1: YC14-B3 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 2: YC14-B5 on the feed PWB 25/25, 30/30 ppm model Loop fan motor: YC15-10 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1: YC14-1 on the feed PWB Paper conveying fan motor 2: YC14-3 on the feed PWB
	5. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Loop fan motor: YC20-A2 on the engine PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1/2: YC20-B14 on the engine PWB
(8) Scanner fan motor does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective fan motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the fan motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding fan motor. Scanner fan motor: YC3-2 on the ISM PWB
	4. Defective ISC PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the ISC PWB goes high. If not, replace the ISC PWB. Scanner fan motor: YC3-24 on the ISC PWB
	5. Defective ISM PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the ISM PWB goes low. If not, replace the ISM PWB. Scanner fan motor: YC3-2 on the ISM PWB
(9) Main fan motor or developing fan motor 3/4 does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(10) Middle motor, scanner motor or transfer motor does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(11) Paper feed clutch 1/2, feed clutch 1/2, registration clutch or middle clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the feed PWB goes low. If not, replace the feed PWB. 40/40, 50/40 ppm model Paper feed clutch 1: YC5-2 on the feed PWB Paper feed clutch 2: YC1-2 on the feed PWB Feed clutch 1: YC13-3 on the feed PWB Feed clutch 2: YC13-1 on the feed PWB 25/25, 30/30 ppm model Paper feed clutch 1: YC5-2 on the feed PWB Paper feed clutch 2: YC1-2 on the feed PWB Registration clutch: YC13-3 on the feed PWB Middle clutch: YC13-1 on the feed PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. 40/40, 50/40 ppm model Paper feed clutch 1: YC20-B2 on the engine PWB Paper feed clutch 2: YC20-A8 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 1: YC20-B8 on the engine PWB Feed clutch 2: YC20-B7 on the engine PWB 25/25, 30/30 ppm model Paper feed clutch 1: YC20-B2 on the engine PWB Paper feed clutch 2: YC20-A8 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC20-B8 on the engine PWB Middle clutch: YC20-B7 on the engine PWB
(12) MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch or fuser clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. MP paper feed clutch: YC23-20 on the engine PWB MP paper conveying clutch: YC10-B18 on the engine PWB Fuser clutch: YC25-B10 on the engine PWB
(13) The MP solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the MP solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if the solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(14) The LSU cleaning solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the LSU cleaning solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U474 and check if the solenoid operates. If not, replace the feed PWB.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U474 and check if the solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(15) The exposure lamp does not turn on or off.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective inverter PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if the exposure lamp turns on with the inverter PWB go low. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
	3. Defective ISC PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC3-23 on the ISC PWB goes high. If not, replace the ISC PWB.
	4. Defective ISM PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC5-4 on the ISM PWB goes low. If not, replace the ISM PWB.
(16) Main charging is not performed.	1. Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-35).
	2. The connector terminals of the main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	4. Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
(17) Defective developing bias output.	1. The connector terminals of the main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. The connector terminals of the high voltage control PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	4. Defective high voltage control PWB.	Replace the high voltage control PWB.
	5. Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
(18) Defective transfer bias output.	1. The connector terminals of the transfer high voltage PWB 1 make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB.
	3. Defective transfer high voltage PWB 1.	Replace the transfer high voltage PWB 1.
	4. Defective transfer belt unit.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
(19) The original size is not detected correctly.	1. Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	2. Poor contact in the original detection switch or original size sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC4-2 on the ISM PWB does not go low when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
	4. Defective original size sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(20) The touch panel keys do not work.	1. Poor contact in the touch panel connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective touch panel or main operation PWB.	If any keys do not work after running the maintenance item U201 to initialize the touch panel, replace the touch panel or main operation unit PWB.
(21) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper switch 1/2 or MP paper switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper switch 1/2 or MP paper switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper switch 1: YC4-5 on the feed PWB Paper switch 2: YC4-11 on the feed PWB MP paper switch: YC23-11 on the engine PWB
	3. Defective paper stoppers.	Remove the MP tray unit and check if the paper stoppers are darmaged. Replace if necessary.
(22) The size of paper on the cassette or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper size length switch 1/2, paper size width switch 1/2, MP paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper size length switch 1/2, paper size width switch 1/2, MP paper size length switch or MP paper size width switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper size length switch 1: YC10-B3 on the engine PWB Paper size width switch 1: YC10-B12, B13, B14 on the engine PWB Paper size length switch 2: YC10-B5 on the engine PWB Paper size width switch 2: YC10-B8, B9, B10 on the engine PWB MP paper size length switch: YC23-2 on the engine PWB MP paper size width switch: YC23-6, 7, 8 on the engine PWB
(23) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, fuser, duplex or eject section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch, duplex switch, eject switch, feedshift switch or loop sensor.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective feed switch 1/2/3, MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch, duplex switch, eject switch, feedshift switch or loop sensor.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn each switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(24) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover 1/3 is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 3 switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 3 switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(25) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.

1-4-5 Mechanical problems

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following pulleys are dirty with paper powder: forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley, MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley or separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-8).
	Electrical problem with the MP solenoid.	See page 1-4-72.
	Electrical problem with the following electromagnetic clutches: paper feed clutch 1/2 and MP paper feed clutch	See page 1-4-72.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-72.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Paper width guides in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the paper width guides visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed paper width guides in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
	Paper width guides of MP tray installed incorrectly.	Check the paper width guides visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed paper width guides of MP tray.	Check visually and replace any deformed.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-5-15).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-4-71.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Paper is loaded incorrectly.	Load the paper correctly.
	Check if the separation pulley is worn.	Replace the separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the MP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-8).
	Check if the spring which pressurizes the separation pulley or the MP separation pulley is damaged or not in position.	Repair or replace.
(6) Paper jams.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check whether or not the drive for waste toner disposal is locked.	Check the waste toner sensor visually and correct or replace if necessary.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Electrical problem with the following electro-magnetic clutches: paper feed clutch 1/2, feed clutch, registration clutch, middle clutch, MP paper feed clutch and MP paper conveying clutch	Correct.

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
Turning off the main power switch before pressing the Power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.
When the fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.
When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.
The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.
Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.
Take care not to get the cables caught.
To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.
Never connect or disconnect the signal cable of the DP when the power is on.

(2) Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.
When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.
Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between -20°C/-4°F and 40°C/104°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.
Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.
Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

(3) Toner

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.
Avoid direct light and high humidity.

(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera Mita toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window
A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera Mita branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

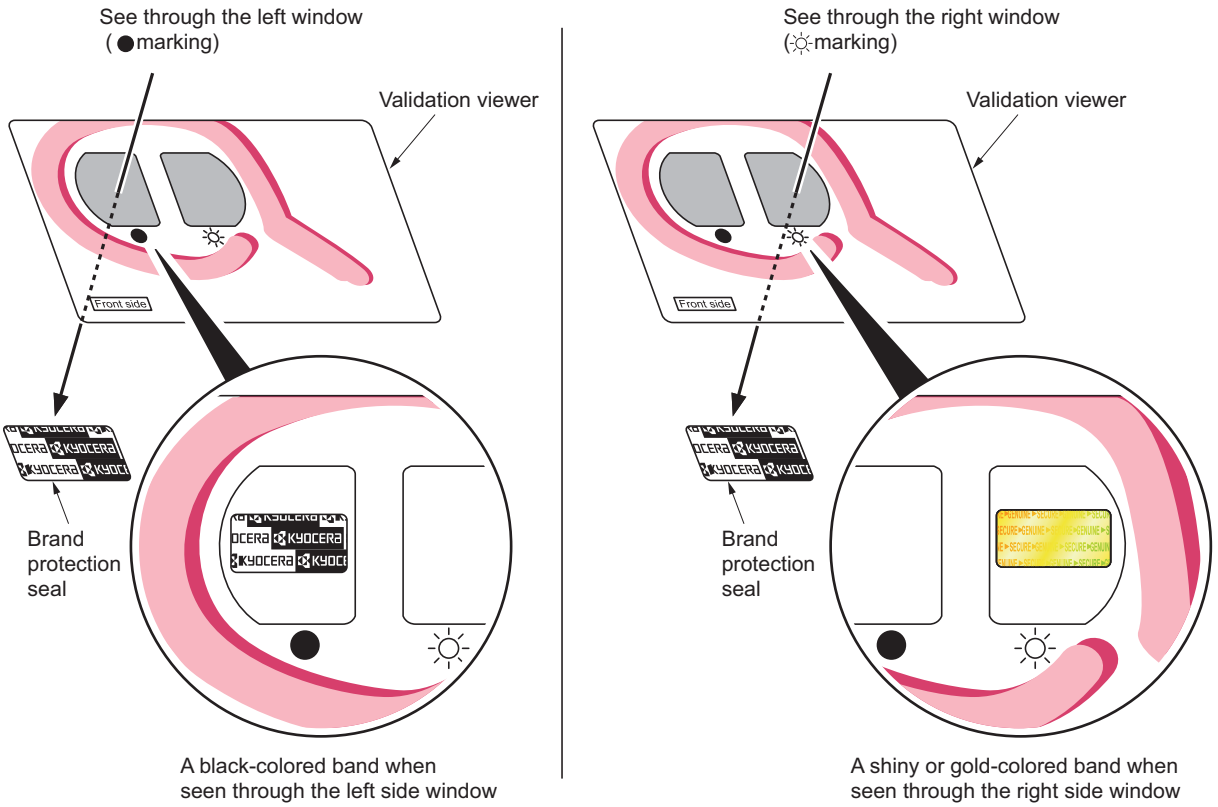


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

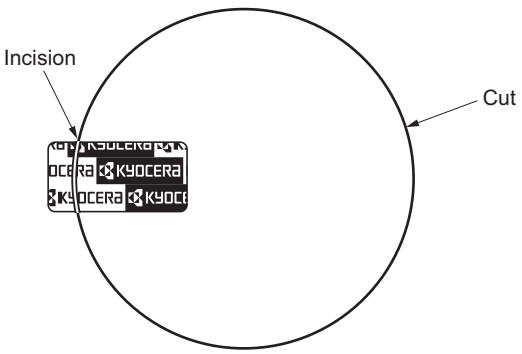


Figure 1-5-2

1-5-2 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to clean or replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

Procedure

Removing the primary paper feed unit

1. Remove cassette 1 and 2.
2. Remove the screw and remove the primary paper feed unit.

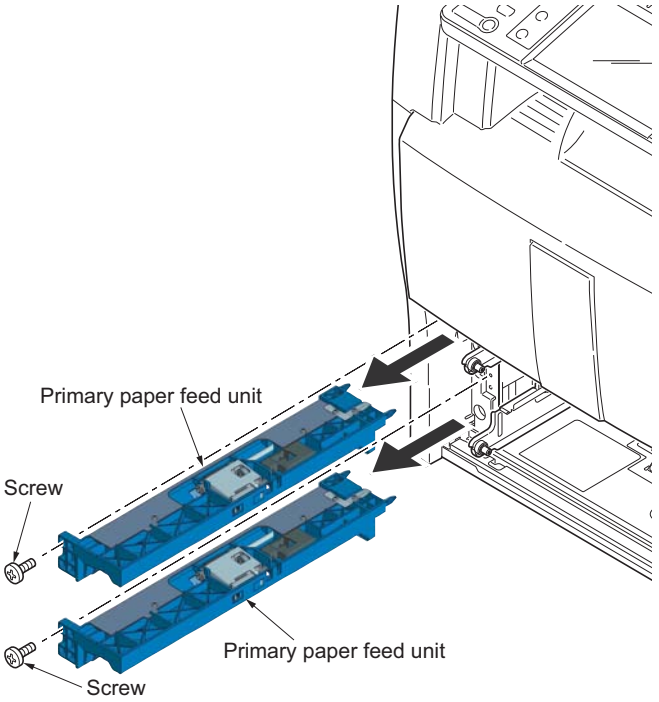


Figure 1-5-3

Removing the forwarding pulley

3. Remove the stopper and spring from the primary paper feed unit.
4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

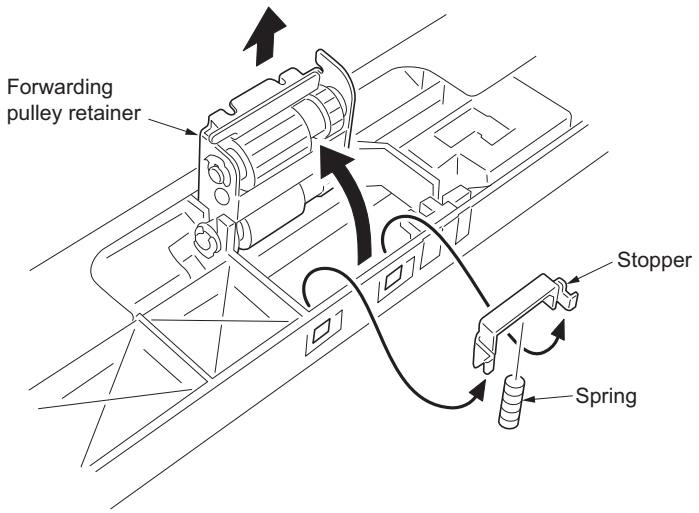


Figure 1-5-4

5. Remove the stop ring from the forwarding pulley retainer.
6. Remove the forwarding pulley from the forwarding shaft.

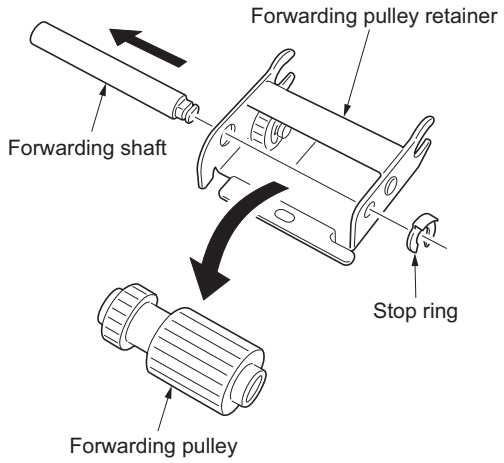


Figure 1-5-5

Removing the paper feed pulley

7. Remove two stop rings from the primary paper feed unit.
8. Pull the paper feed shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the paper feed pulley.

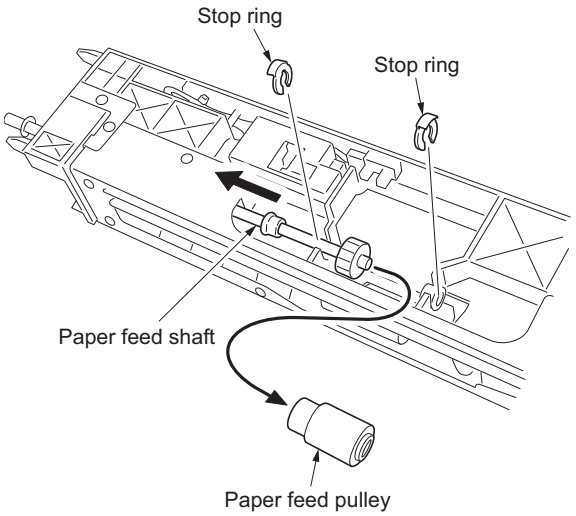


Figure 1-5-6

Removing the separation pulley

9. Remove the stop ring from the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the separation pulley.

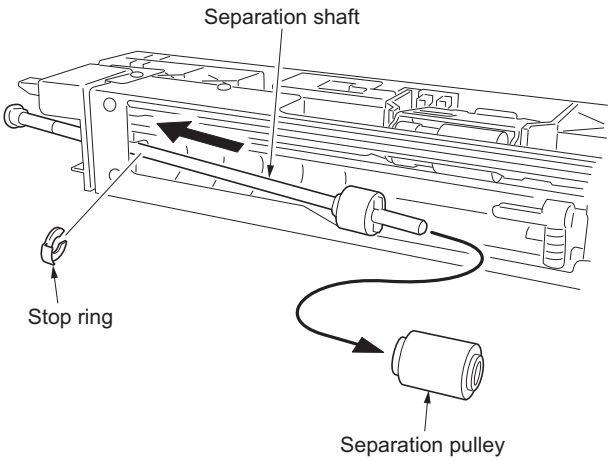


Figure 1-5-7

11. Clean or replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Install the separation and paper feed pulleys to the primary paper feed unit.
13. Install the forwarding pulley to the forwarding pulley retainer.
    When refitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-5-8.
14. Refit the forwarding pulley retainer to the primary paper feed unit.
15. Refit the primary paper feed unit.

16. When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley or the primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-146).

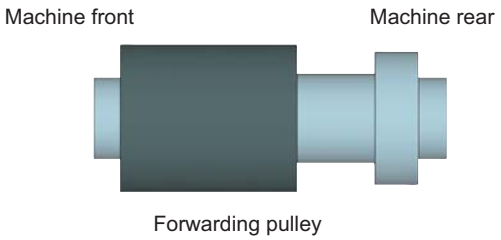


Figure 1-5-8

(2) Detaching and refitting the MP unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the MP unit.

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Remove the right filter.
3. Remove five screws and remove the right cover.

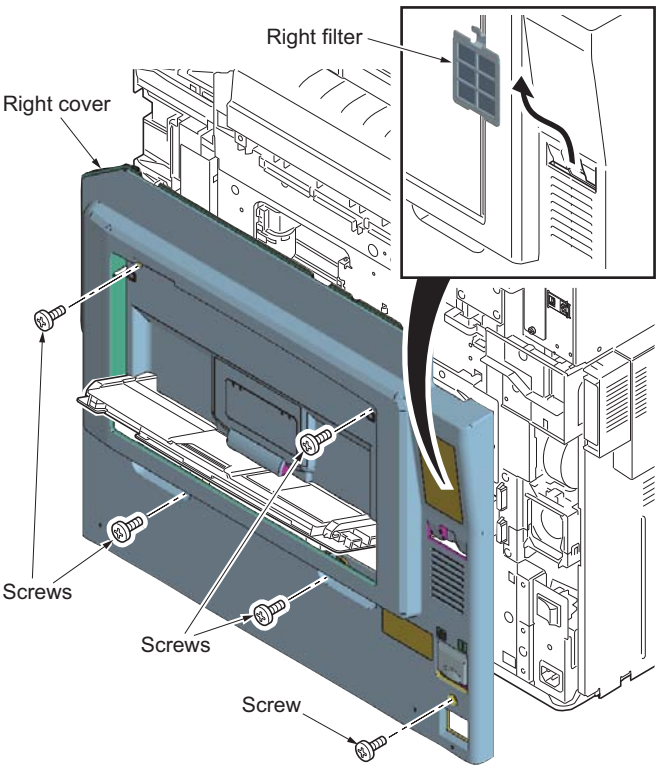


Figure 1-5-9

4. Remove one connector.
5. Remove the MP tray.

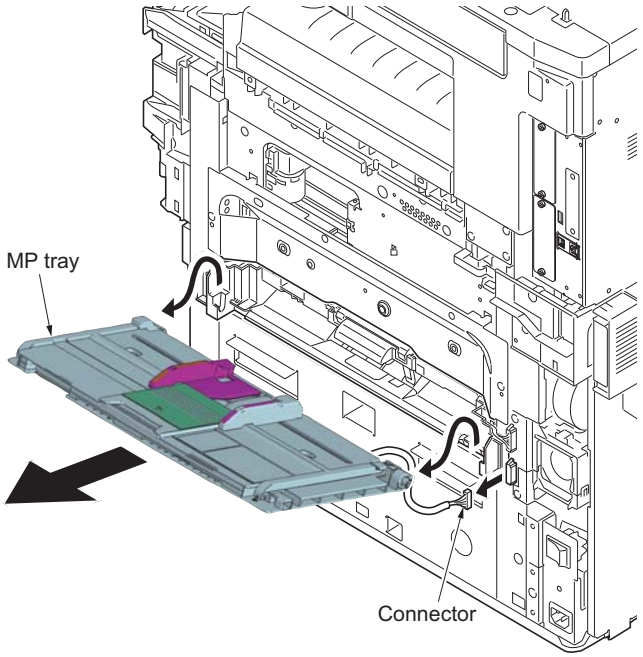


Figure 1-5-10

6. Remove two screws and one connector, and remove the MP unit.

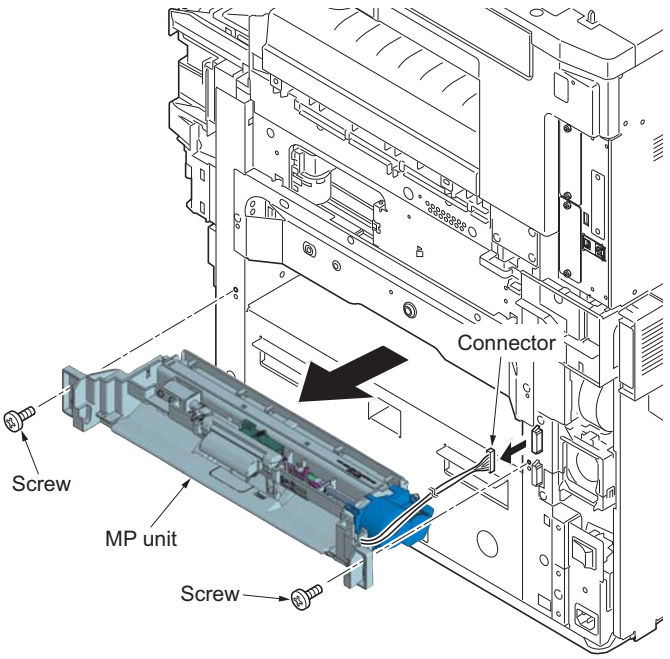


Figure 1-5-11

(3) Detaching and refitting the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to clean or replace the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys.

Procedure

Removing the MP forwarding and MP feed pulleys

1. Remove the MP unit (see page 1-5-6).
2. Remove the lever and spring from the MP unit.
3. Release the MP solenoid lever in the direction of the arrow.
4. Remove three stop rings.

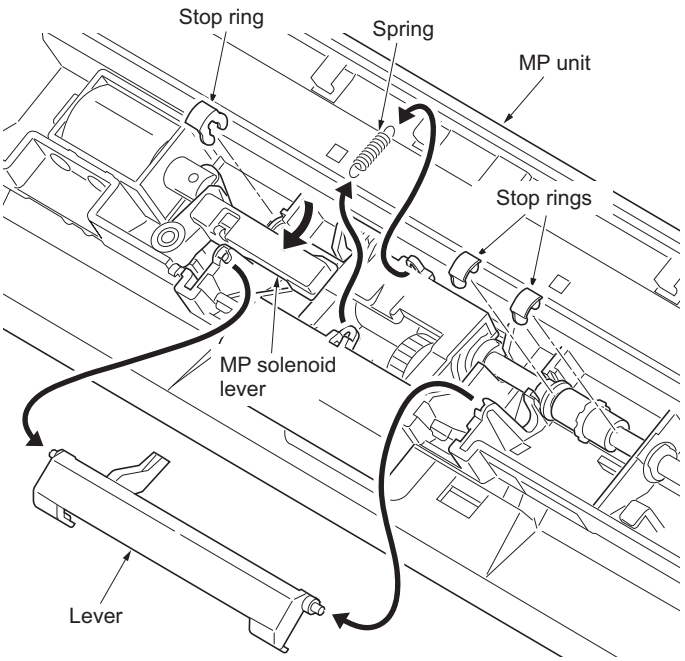


Figure 1-5-12

5. Slide the joint and remove two bushes. Remove the pulley unit from the MP unit.

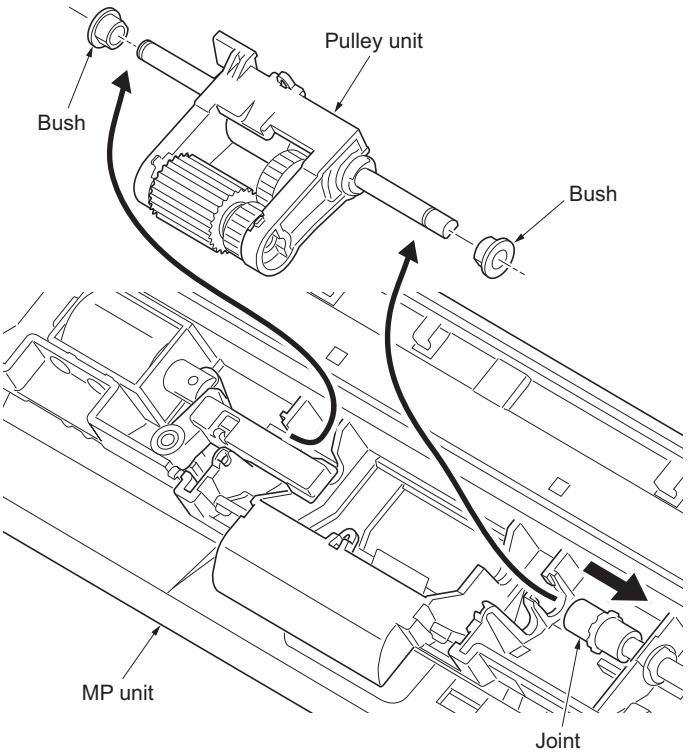


Figure 1-5-13

6. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the MP forwarding pulley from the pulley unit.
7. Remove two stop rings and bushes.
8. Remove the MP paper feed pulley from the MP paper feed shaft.

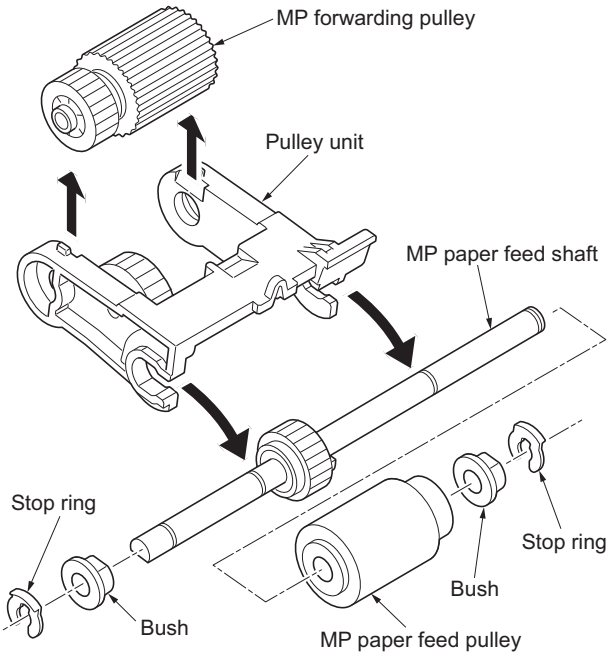


Figure 1-5-14

Removing the MP separation pulley

9. Turn the MP unit over and remove the spring.
10. Remove the separation pulley holder from the MP unit.

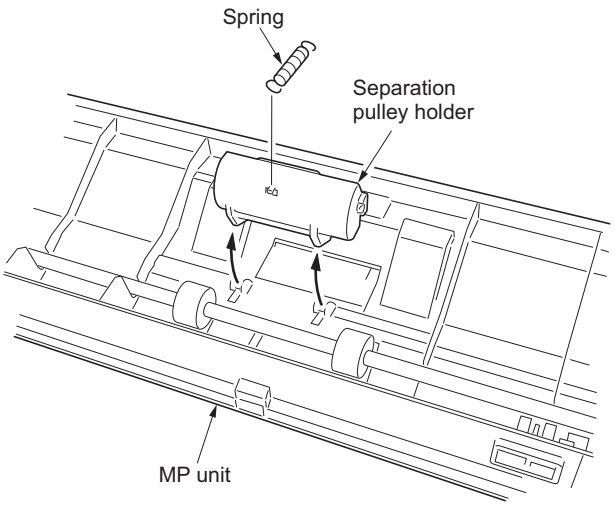


Figure 1-5-15

11. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the MP separation pulley from the separation pulley holder.
12. Clean or replace the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys.
13. Refit the MP separation pulley to the separation pulley holder.
14. Refit the MP forwarding and MP paper feed pulleys to the pulley unit.
15. Refit the separation pulley holder and pulley unit.
16. Refit the MP unit.

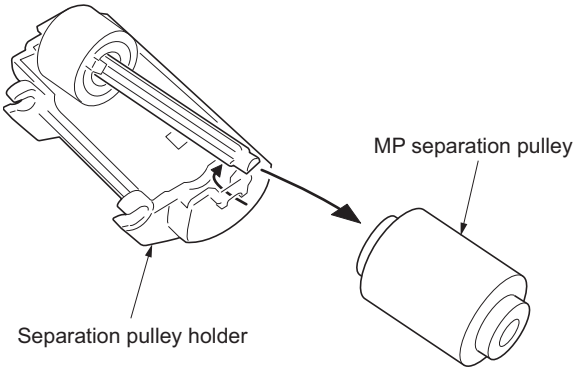


Figure 1-5-16

17. When the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or the MP separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-146).

1-5-3 Optical section

(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Follow the procedure below to replace the exposure lamp.

Procedure

1. Remove the original platen or DP.
2. Remove the rear upper filter cover.
3. Remove nine screws and remove the rear upper cover.

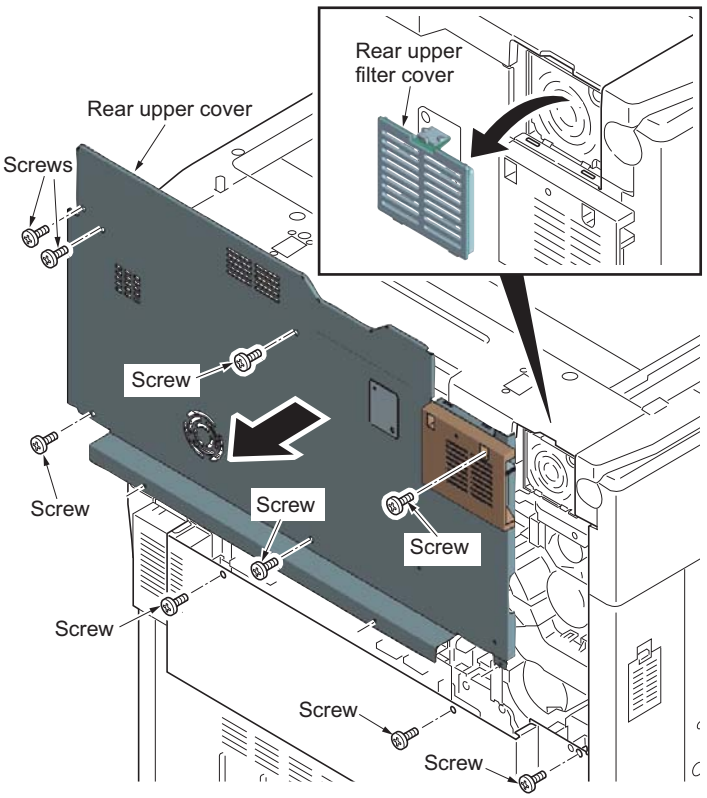


Figure 1-5-17

4. Open the front cover.
5. Remove the clip support.
6. Remove two screws and remove front left cover 1.

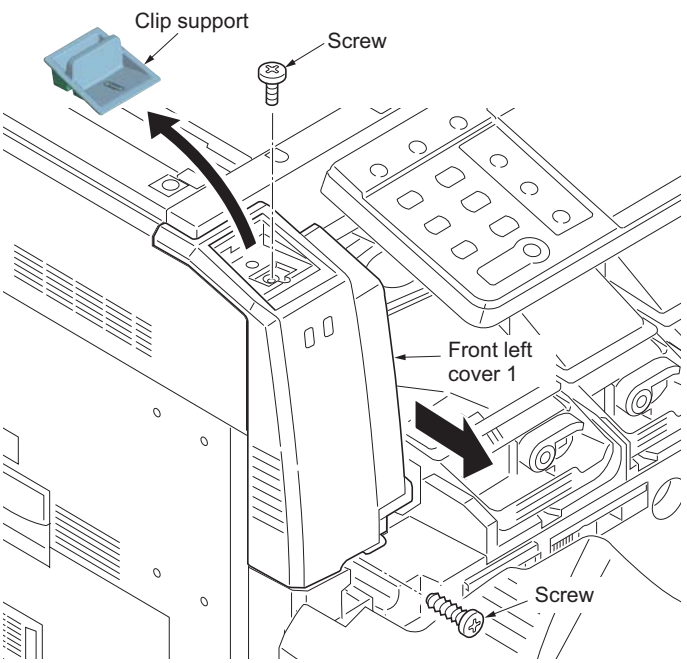


Figure 1-5-18

7. Open the left cover 1.
8. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the left upper cover.

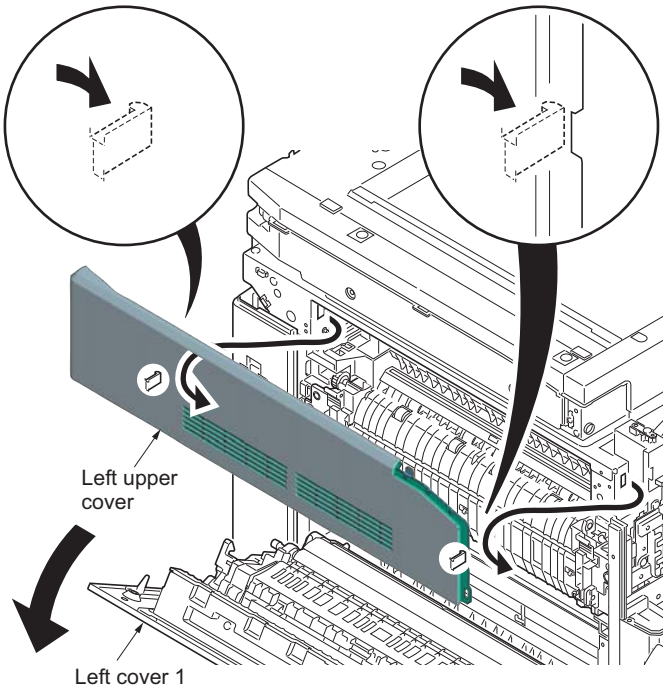


Figure 1-5-19

9. Remove two screws and remove the scanner left cover.

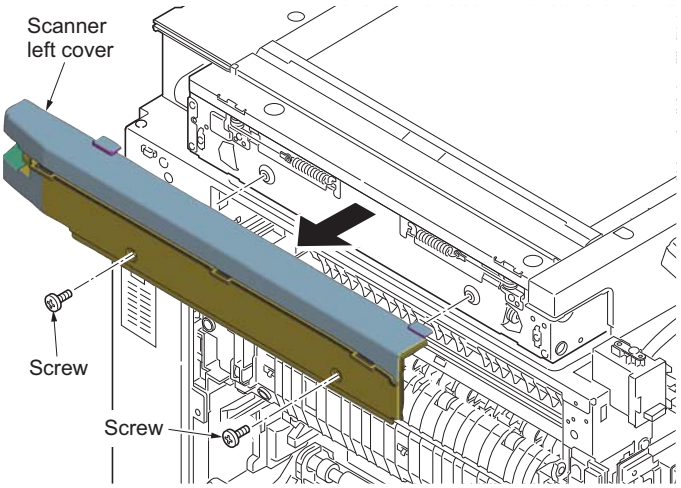


Figure 1-5-20

10. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.

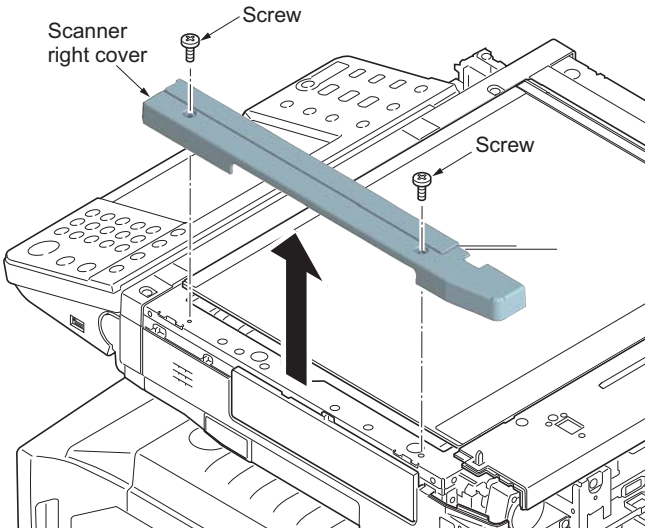


Figure 1-5-21

11. Remove the contact glass.

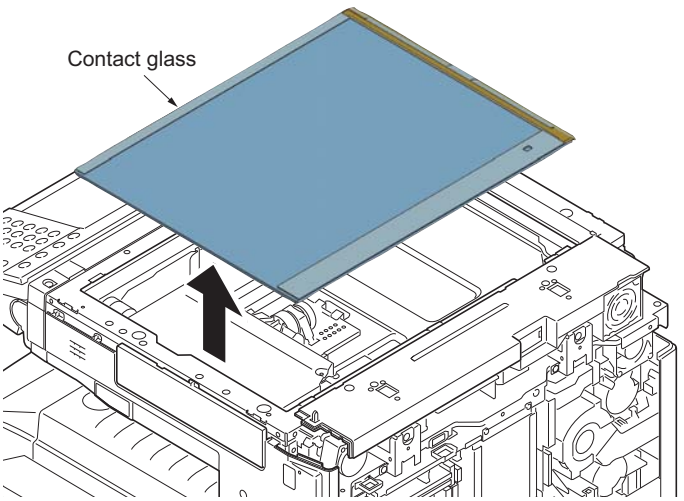


Figure 1-5-22

12. Remove the connector of the inverter PWB.
13. Draw the connector into the machine inside from opening.

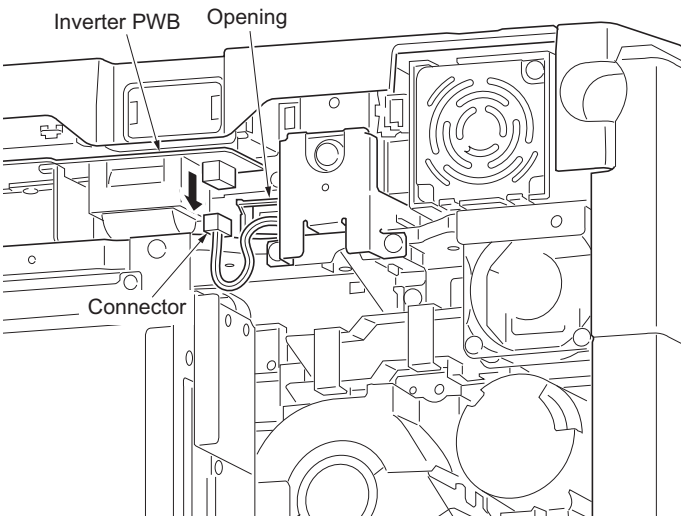


Figure 1-5-23

14. Remove the sponge from the wire guide and release the wire.
15. Move the mirror 1 frame to notch position.
16. Release the wire holder and then remove the wire.

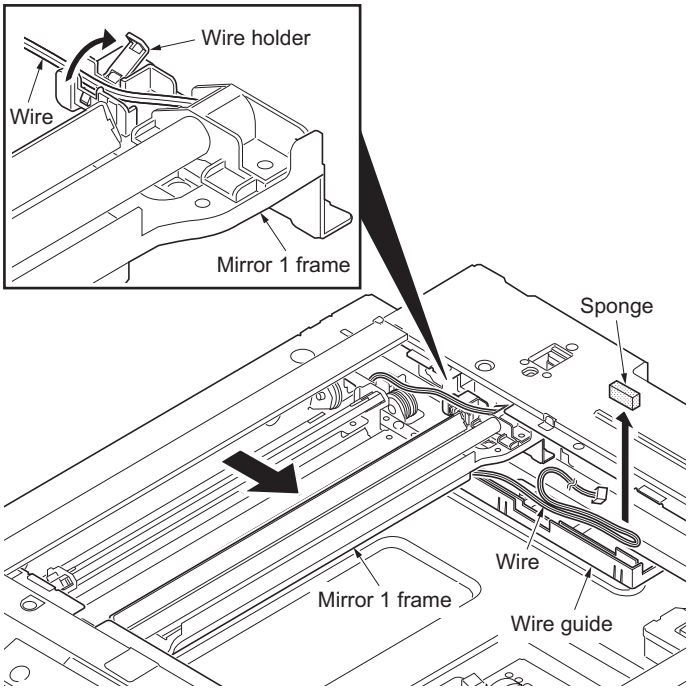


Figure 1-5-24

17. Remove the screw and remove the exposure lamp from mirror 1 frame.
18. Check or replace the exposure lamp and then install the lamp.
19. Refit all the removed parts.

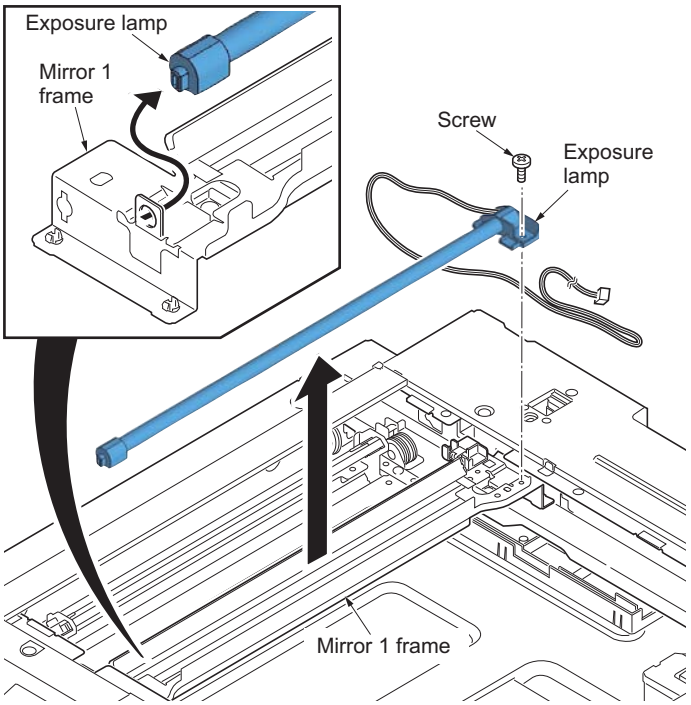


Figure 1-5-25

(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

NOTE
When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.
Machine front: (P/N: 302H717380), black
Machine rear: (P/N: 302H717390), gray

Fitting requires the following tools
Two frame securing tools (P/N 302FZ17100)
Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

Procedure
Detaching the scanner wires

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-11).
2. Remove each screw and then remove front and rear wire holder plates from mirror 1 frame.
3. Remove the mirror 1 frame.

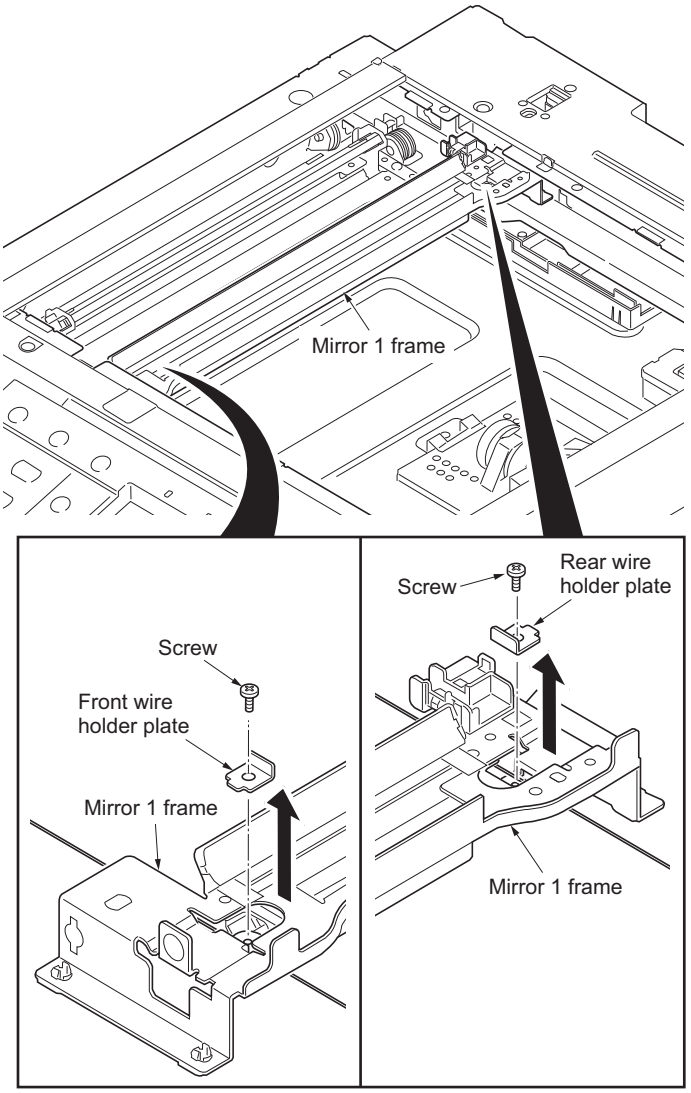


Figure 1-5-26

4. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs on scanner unit left side.
5. Remove the scanner wire.

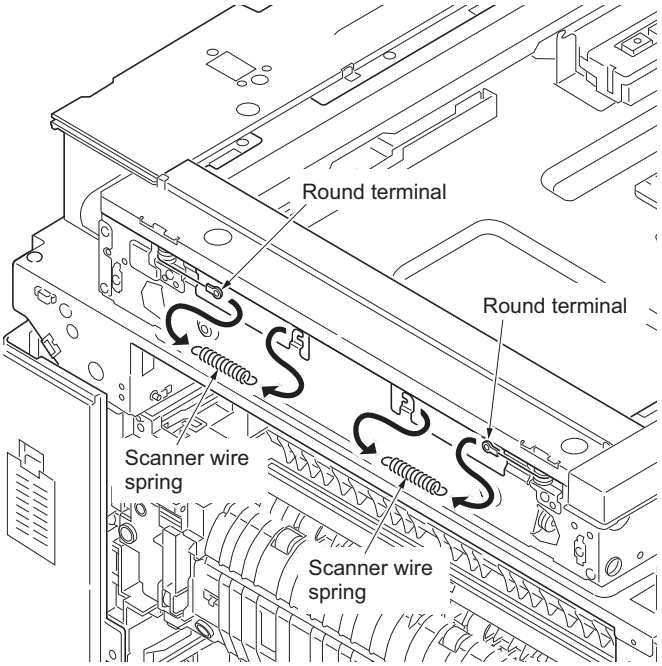


Figure 1-5-27

Fitting the scanner wires

6. Move the mirror 2 frame as shown in the figure and insert two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the machine center to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

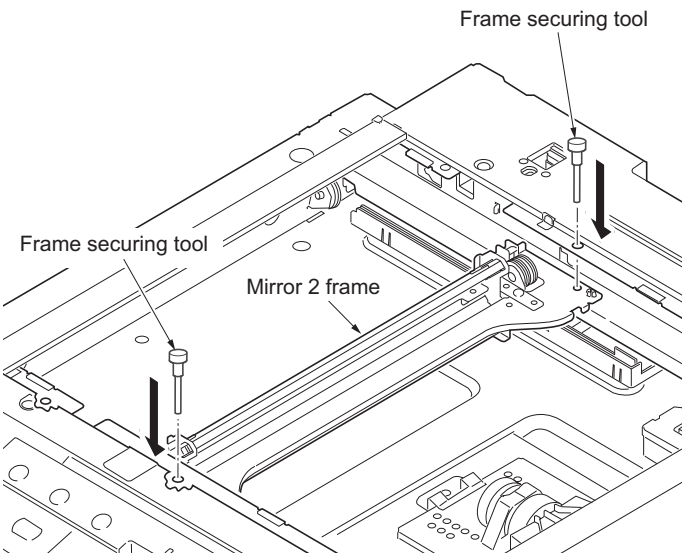


Figure 1-5-28

7. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside of the scanner unit. . . . . (1)
8. Loop the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. . . . . (2)
9. Loop the scanner wire around the groove in the scanner wire pulley at the scanner unit right, winding from above to below. . . . . (3)
10. Wind the scanner wires around the scanner wire drum five turns from the rear toward the hole in the drum. . . . . (4)
11. Insert the locating ball on the scanner wire into the hole in the scanner wire drum. . . . . (5)
12. Wind the scanner wires three turns from the inner toward the hole in the drum. . . . . (6)
13. Install the scanner wire stoppers to the scanner wire drum to fix the wires. . . . . (7)
14. Loop the scanner wire around the groove in the scanner wire pulley at the scanner unit left, winding from below to above. . . . . (8)
15. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above. . . . . (9)
16. Hook the scanner wires around the scanner wire guides at the machine left. . . . . (10)
17. Hook the round terminal onto the scanner wire spring. . . . . (11)

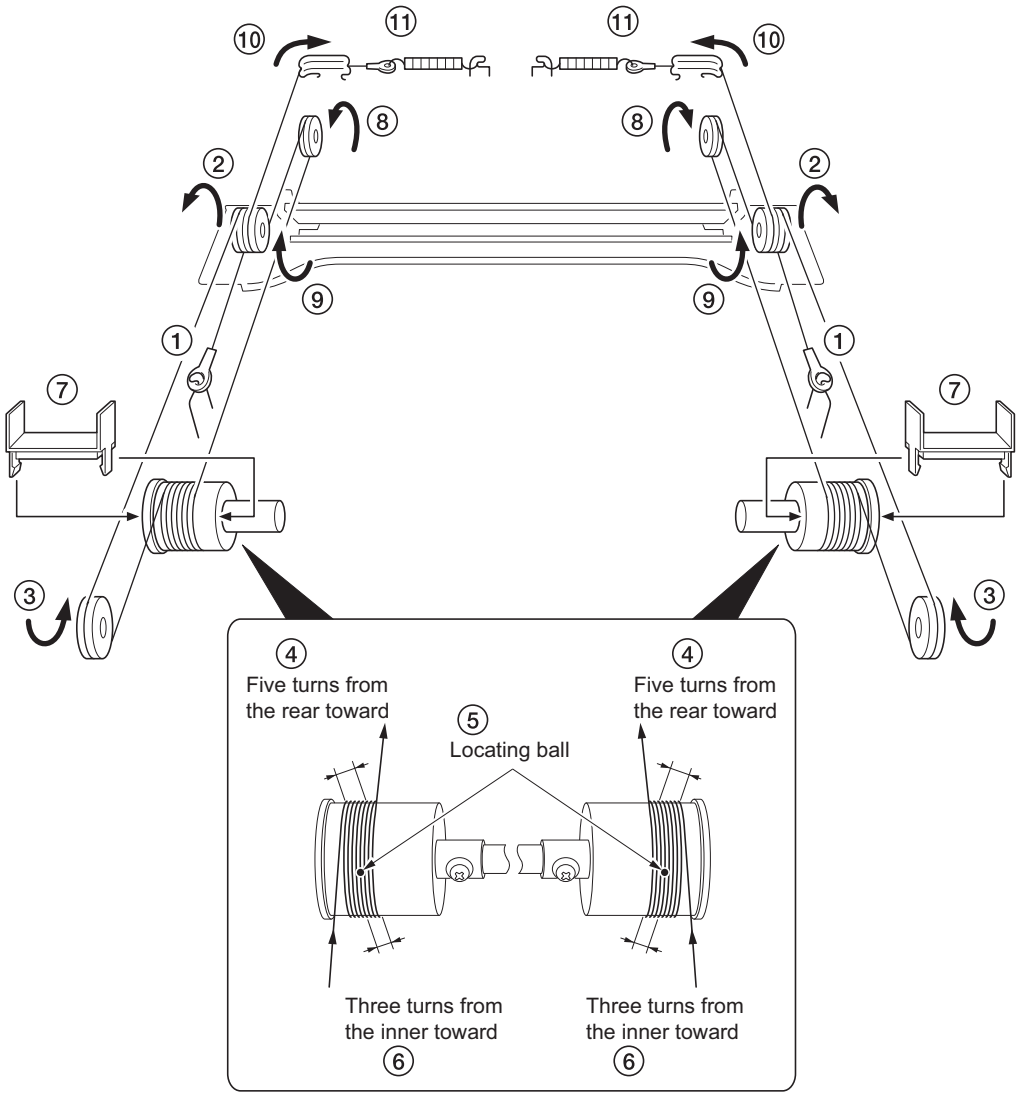


Figure 1-5-29

18. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
19. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, move aside the wires to inside.
20. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
21. Refit the mirror 1 frame.
22. Move the mirror 1 and 2 frames to the machine left, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
23. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to mirror 1 frame with the screw.
24. Remove the two frame securing tools.
25. Refit the exposure lamp.

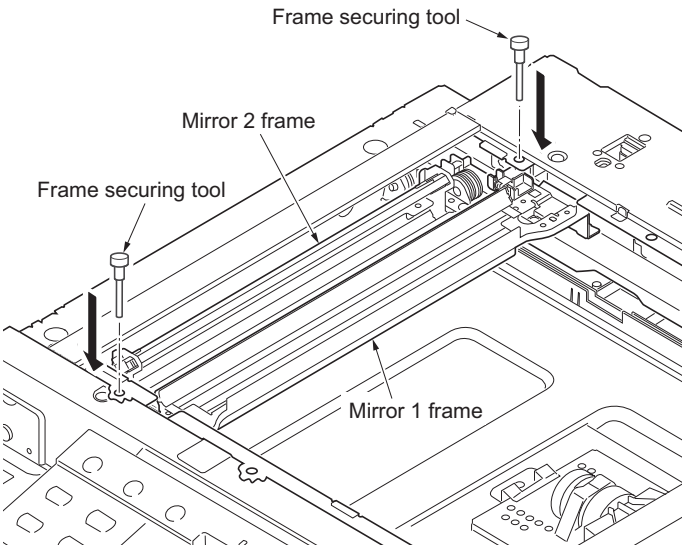


Figure 1-5-30

(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU.

Fitting requires the following tools
Two positions pins (P/N 18568120)

Procedure
Detaching the ISU

1. Remove the contact glass (see page 1-5-11).
2. Remove seven screws and then remove the ISU cover.

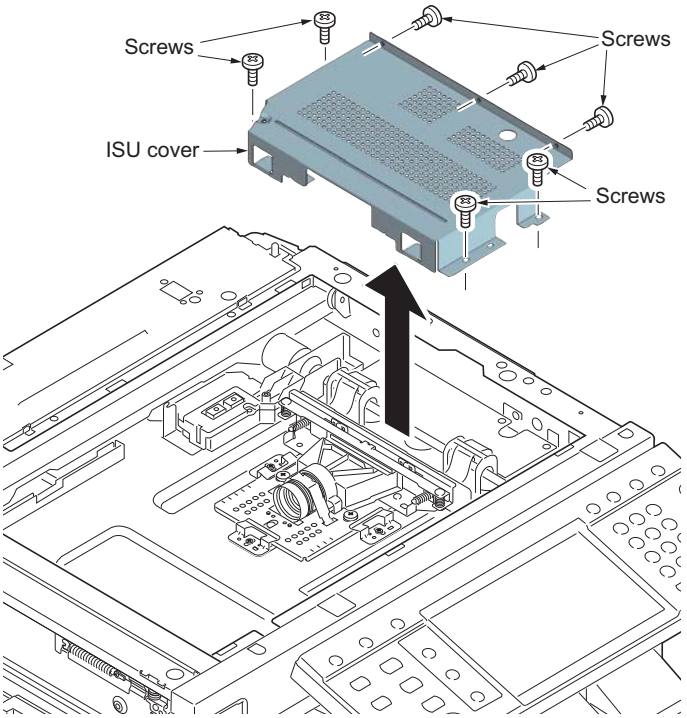


Figure 1-5-31

3. Remove three screws and two connectors, and then remove the ISU.
4. Replace the ISU.

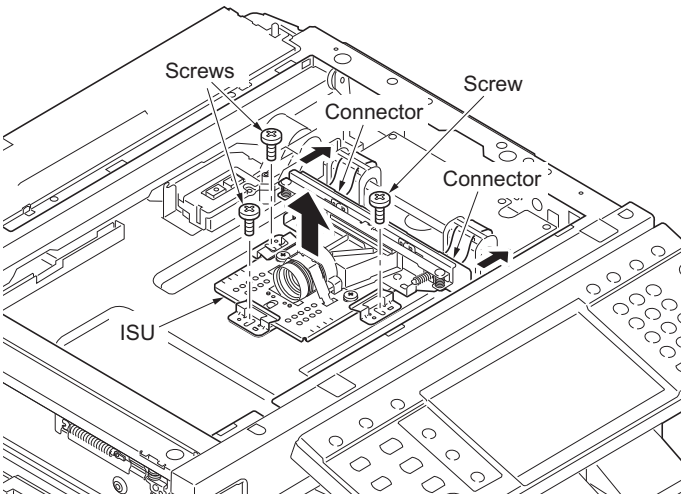
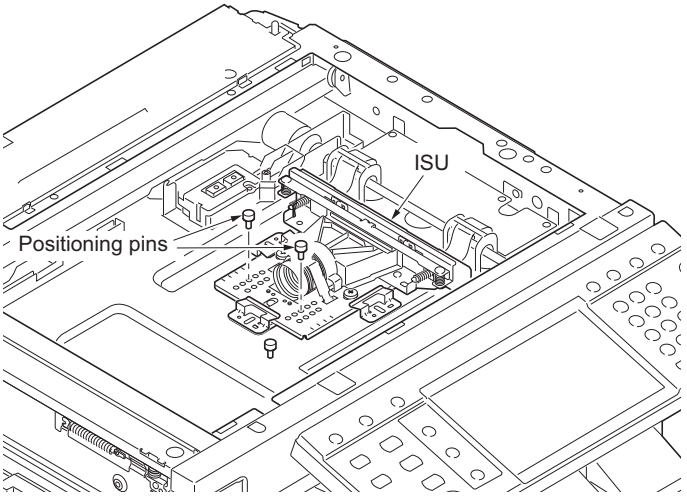


Figure 1-5-32

Refitting the ISU

5. Adjust the position of ISU to the frame hole of number and the same number which are recorded in the lens of ISU and then insert two positioning pins.
   Example: When a lens number is 5, move ISU so that the positioning hole of 5 of the number stamped in the scanner unit suit and insert two pins.
6. Remove two positioning pins after fixing ISU with three screws.



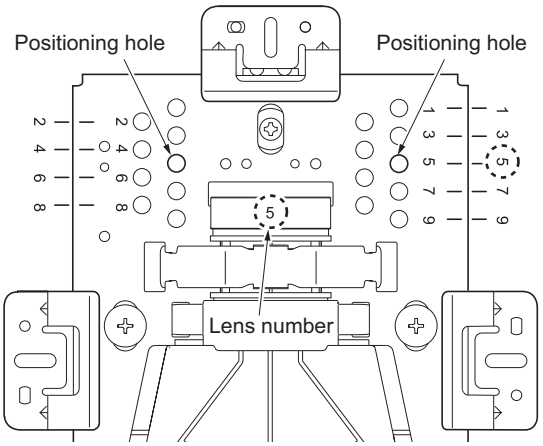


Figure 1-5-33

7. Refit two connectors.
8. Refit the ISU cover.
   Screw tightening order
   1) Three screws A
   2) Four screws B
9. Refit the contact glass.

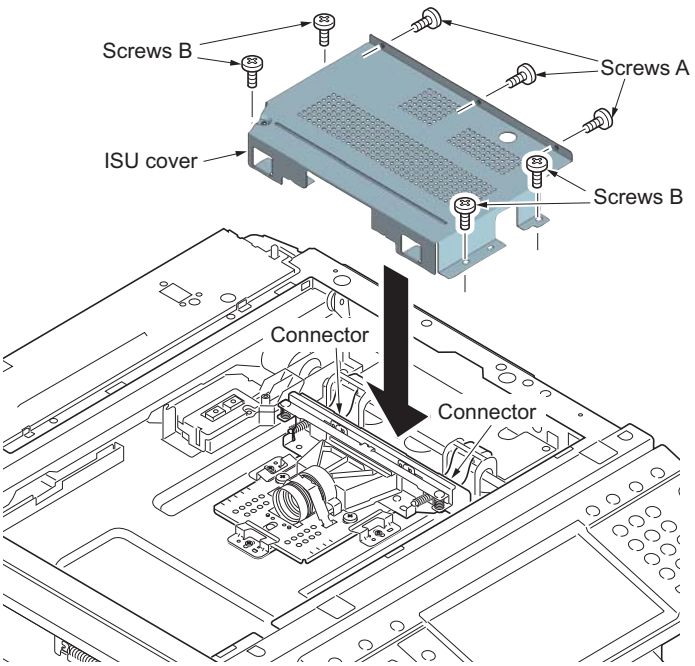


Figure 1-5-34

(4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the laser scanner unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the left cover 1 (see page 1-5-47).
2. Remove the conveying guide.

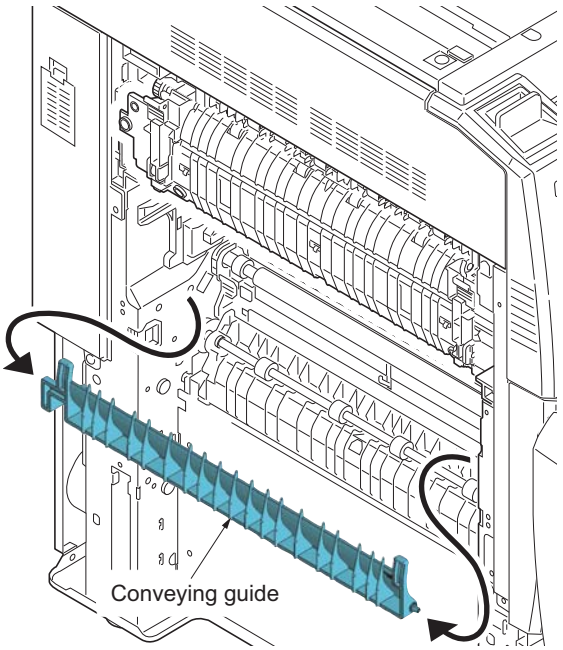


Figure 1-5-35

3. Open the middle guide unit.
4. Remove two pins and springs.

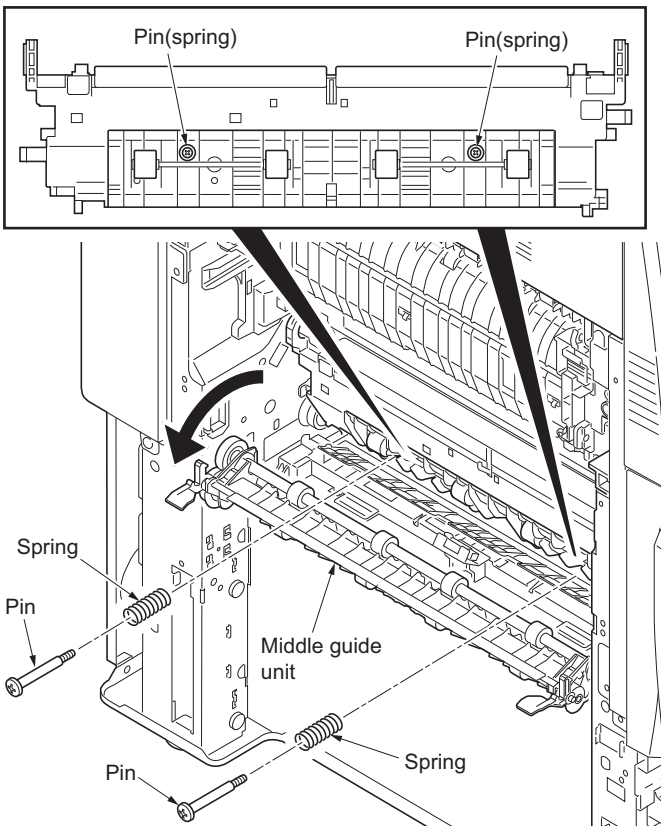


Figure 1-5-36

5. Remove the MP unit (see page 1-5-6).
6. Remove two screws and then remove the LSU right frame.

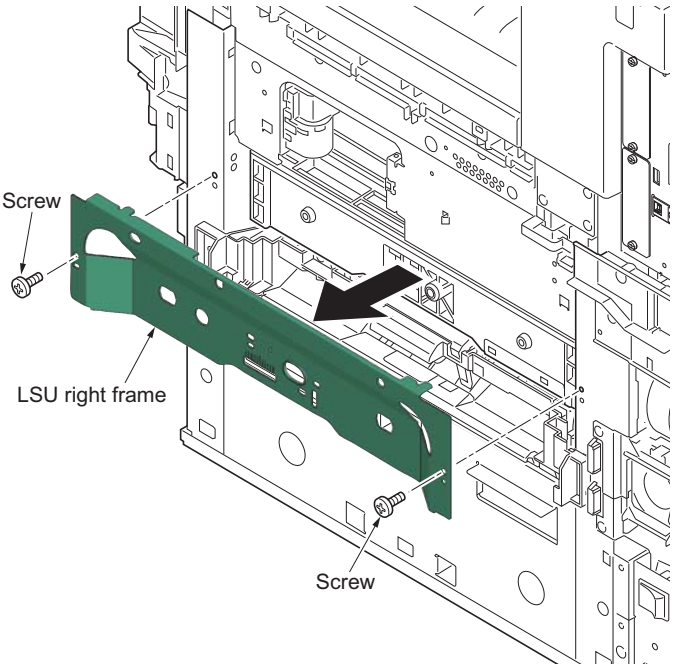


Figure 1-5-37

7. Remove the screw and then right upper cover.

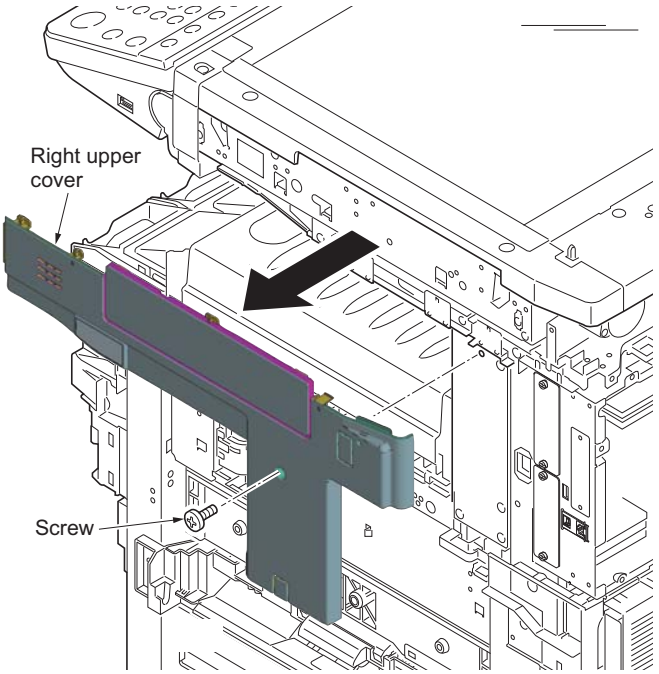


Figure 1-5-38

8. Remove the connector.
9. Remove the relay connector.
10. Release wire saddle 1 and 2, and then remove the wire.

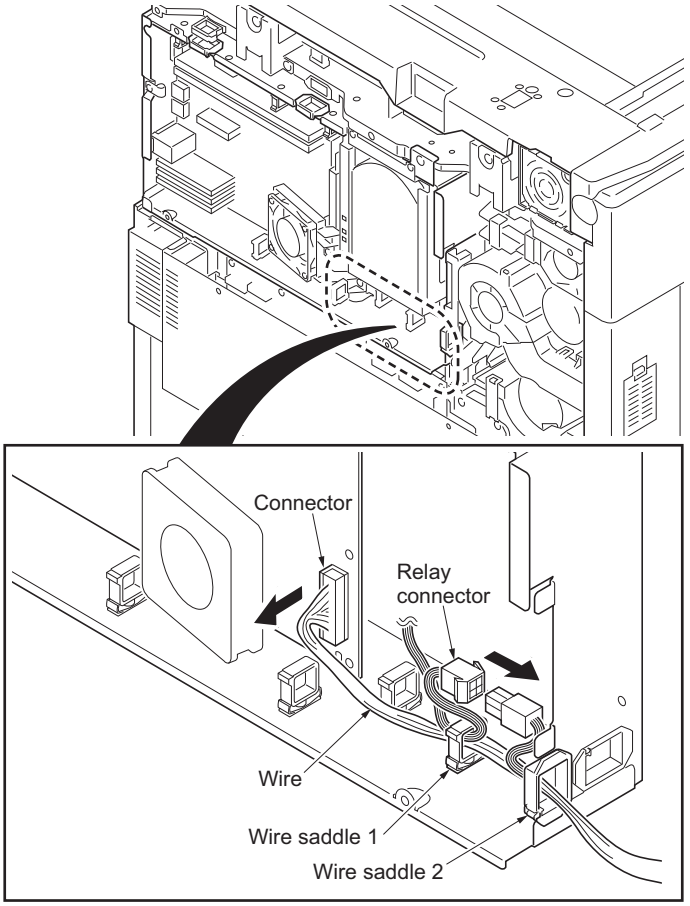


Figure 1-5-39

11. Remove two connectors (YC17 and YC21).
12. Remove the screw and then remove the clamp.
13. Remove the connector (YC12).
14. Release wire saddle 1 and 2, and then remove the wires.

15. While pressing and holding the lock levers, remove the three connectors (YC3, YC4 and YC11).
16. Release wire saddles 3 to 6, and then remove the wires.

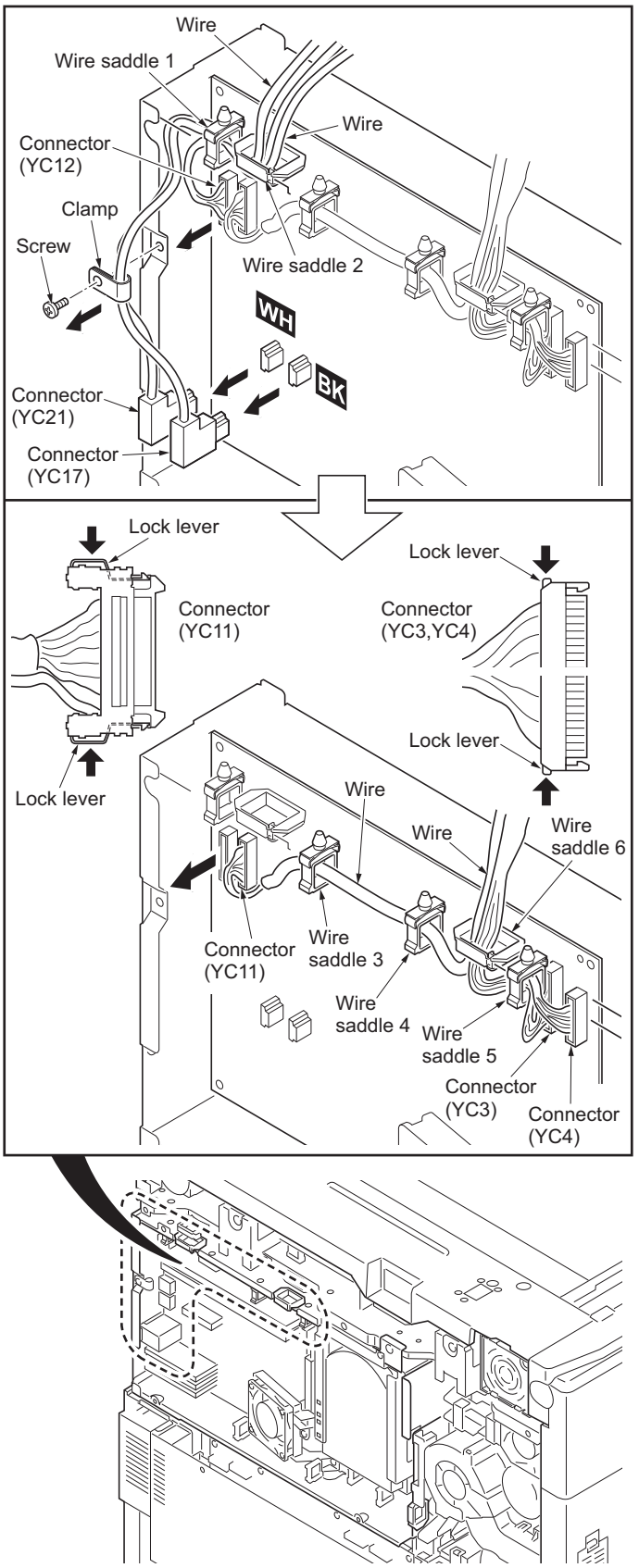


Figure 1-5-40

17. Remove three screws
18. Open the controller box.

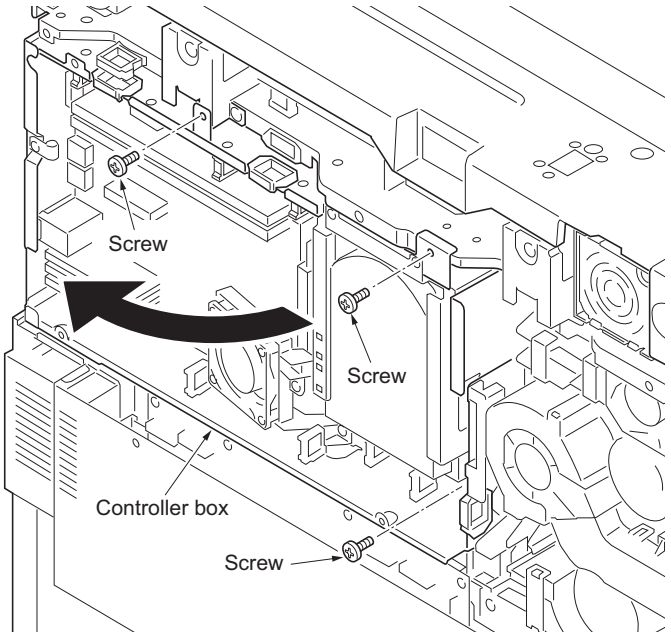


Figure 1-5-41

19. While holding the controller box, remove the pin.
    Take care not to drop the controller box.
20. Remove the controller box.

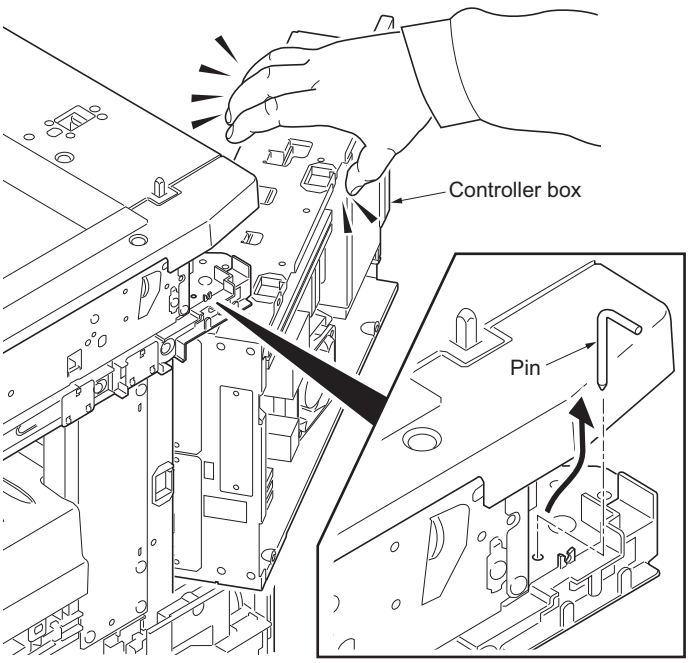


Figure 1-5-42

21. Remove the following connector.
    40/40, 50/40 ppm model: connector A and B
    25/25, 30/30 ppm model: connector A
22. Release four wire saddles and then remove the wire.

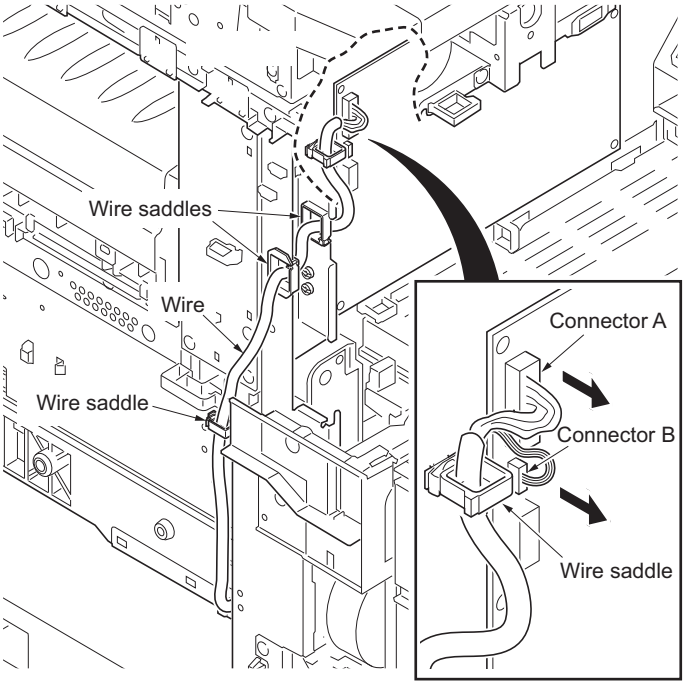


Figure 1-5-43

23. Remove the Laser scanner unit.

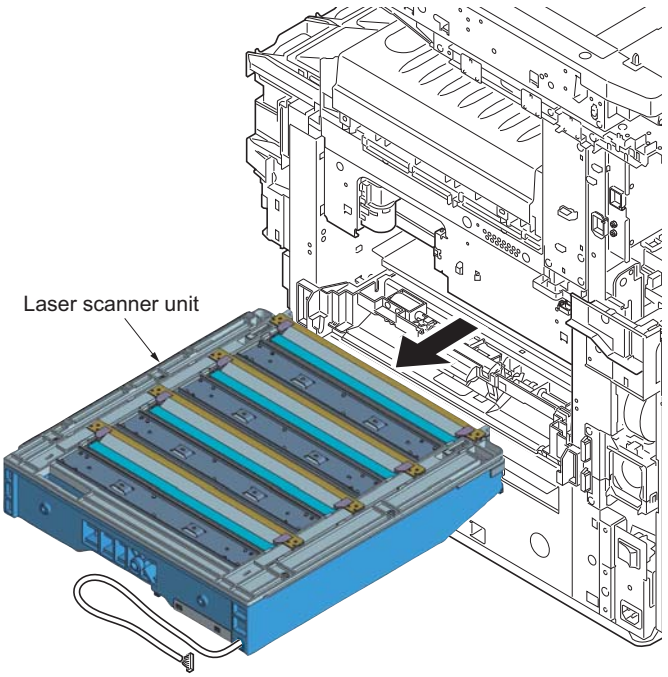


Figure 1-5-44

24. Check or replace the laser scanner unit and refit all the removed parts.
    When refitting the laser scanner unit, take care not to hit it to the rib.

25. When the laser scanner unit is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
26. Performs manual color registration adjustment (see page 1-5-28).
27. Perform the following image adjustment.
    1)Color Calibration
    2)Color Registration
    3)Maintenance mode U412 (adjusting the uneven density) (see page 1-3-122).
    4)Maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-118).

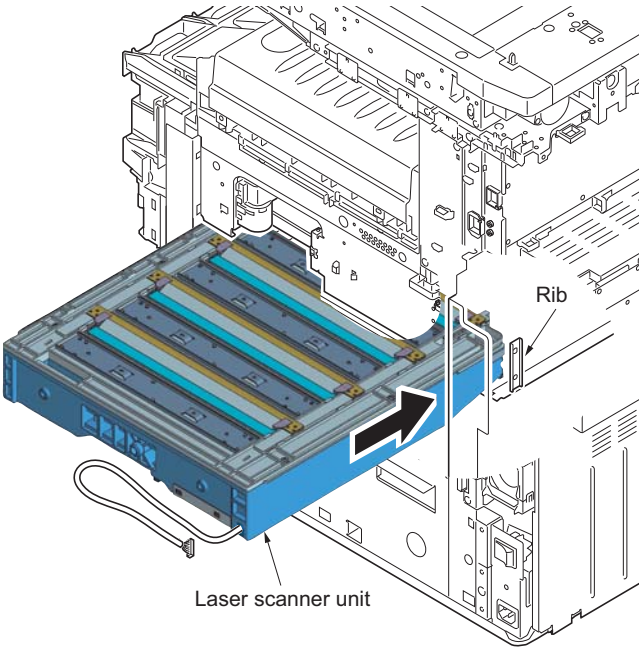


Figure 1-5-45

(5) Manual color registration adjustment

Follow the procedure below to replace the laser scanner unit.

Procedure

1. Press the system menu key.
2. Press [User Adjustment]. Press [Color Calibrat.] ([Colour Calibrat.]).
   Press [On]. Color calibration begins.
3. Press [Color Regist.] ([Colour Regist.]). Press [Configuration].
   Press [PrintChart (Details)]. A chart is printed.
4. Press [InputValue (Details)].
   Read figures at MH-1 to 7/CH-1 to 7/YH-1 to 7 and MV-3/CV-3/YV-3 of the reference chart and enter the figure marked at the scale which the BK fine line is in line with the M/C/Y fine lines, using the cursor up/down keys.
5. Press [Completed.] after all values have been entered. Color registration begins.

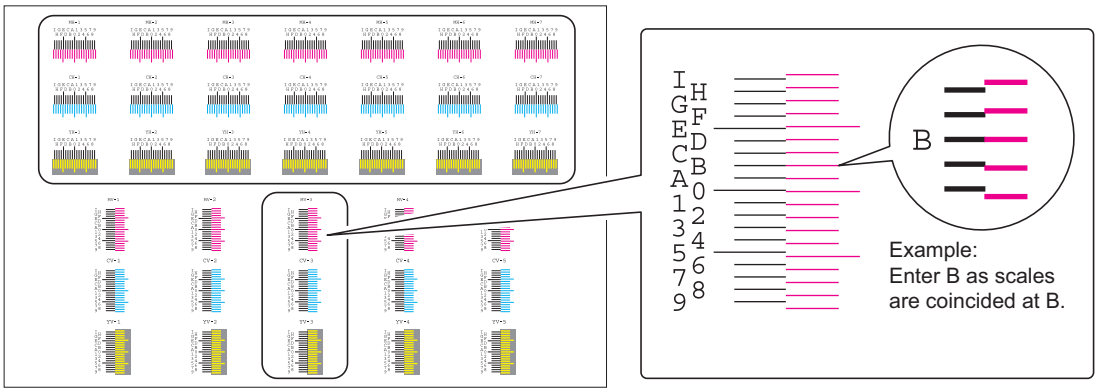


Figure 1-5-46

6. Press [Print Chart (Details)] to print a reference chart.
7. Verify that each scale is within the range of 1 to A. If they are within the range, proceed to step 8.
   If scales are out of range, repeat steps 4 through 7.

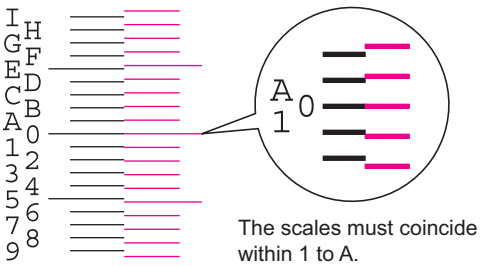


Figure 1-5-47

8. Verify that scales of MV-1,2,4,5/CV-1,2,4,5/YV-1,2,4,5 coincide within the range of 1 to A.
   If they are within the range, adjustment is complete.
   If they are out of range, proceed to step 9.

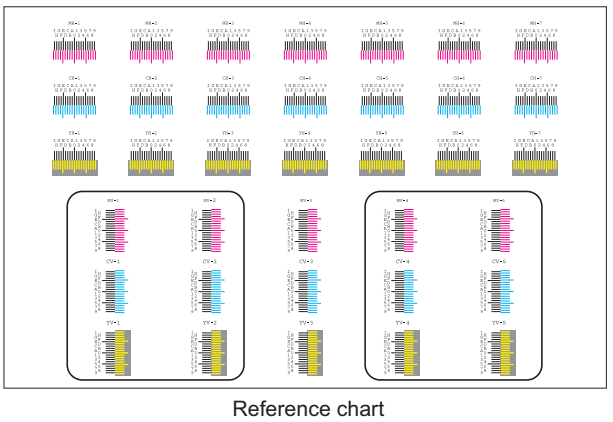


Figure 1-5-48

If manual color registration has failed:

9. If the balance between V-1 and V-5 is more than 2 scales (sample 1) or less than -2 scales (sample 2), perform the following steps:

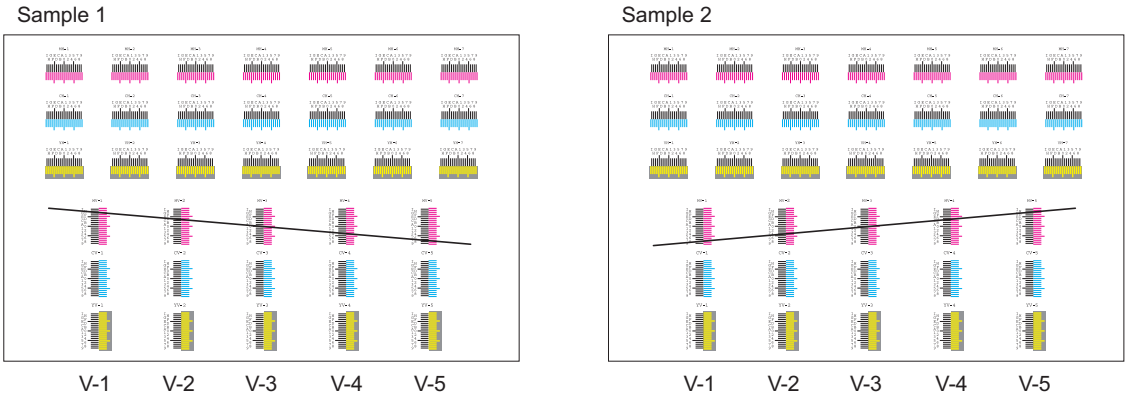


Figure 1-5-49

10. Open the front cover. Push the release button and pull out the waste toner tray.
11. Release two hooks and then remove the waste toner tray.
12. Rotate the adjustment knob using a 5 mm hex wrench.
    Direction of rotation
    (V-1 - V-5) >= 2 scales (sample 1): rotate counterclockwise.
    (V-1 - V-5) <= -2 scales (sample 2): rotate clockwise.
    Number of rotation
    (V-1- V-5) x 4 clicks
13. Refit the toner container and close the front cover.
14. Turn the main power switch off and on. Correction automatically starts.
15. Print a reference chart and verify the result.

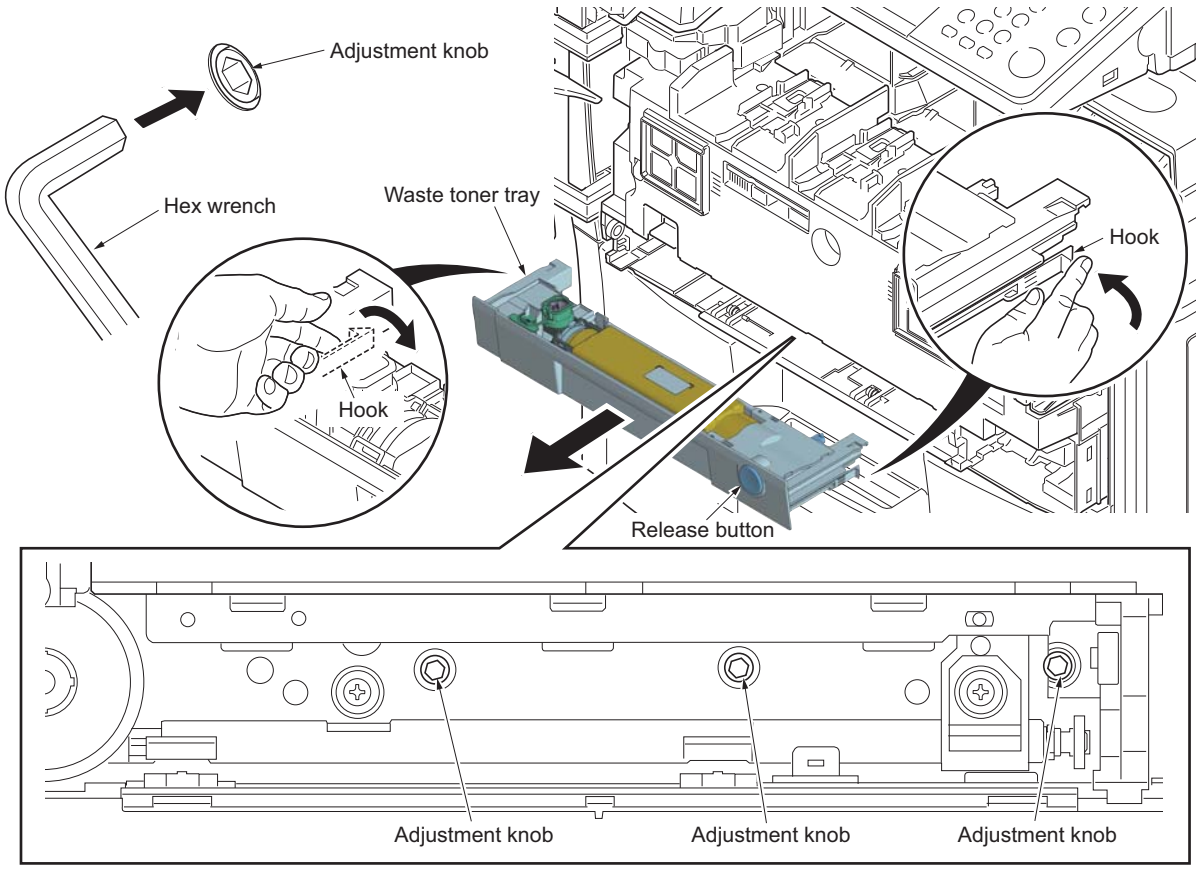


Figure 1-5-50

1-5-4 Image formation section

(1) Detaching and refitting the image formation holder

Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Turn the toner container lock lever for the toner container counterclockwise to release the lock.
3. Remove four toner containers.

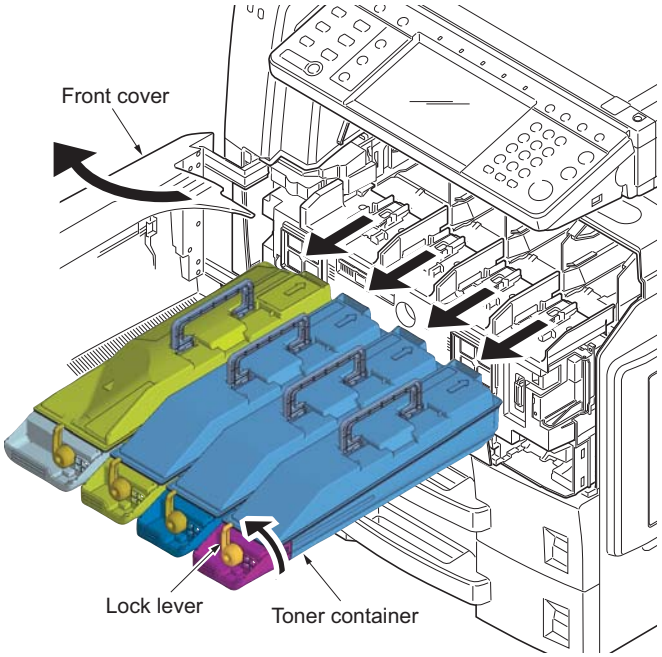


Figure 1-5-51

4. Push the release button and pull out the waste toner tray.
5. Release two hooks and then remove the waste toner tray.

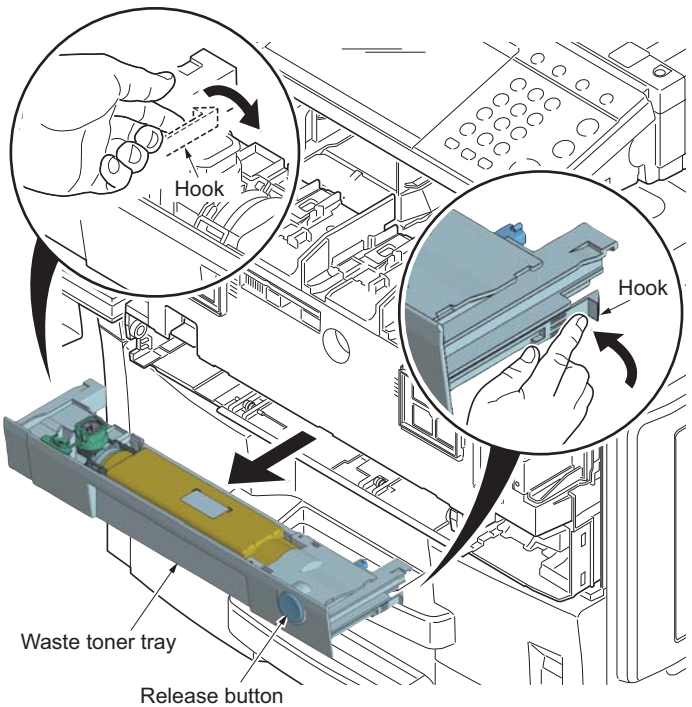


Figure 1-5-52

6. Remove the screw and then open the connector cover.

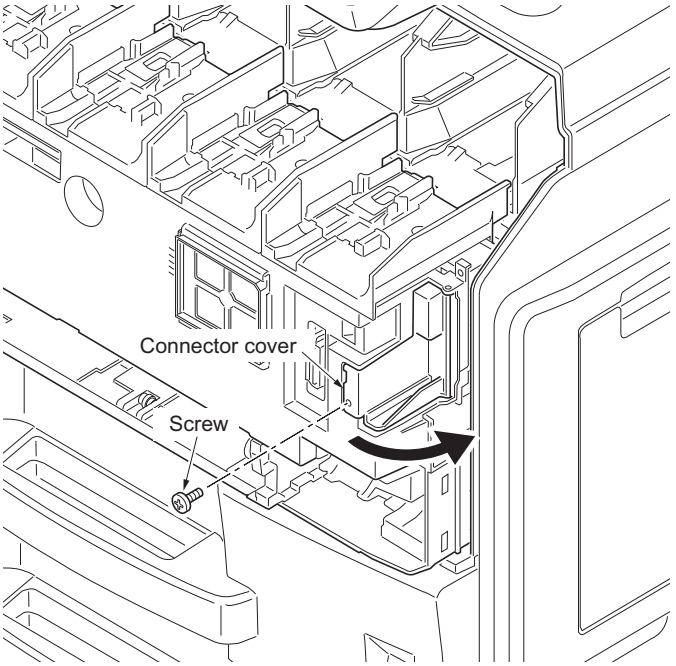


Figure 1-5-53

7. Remove the connector.

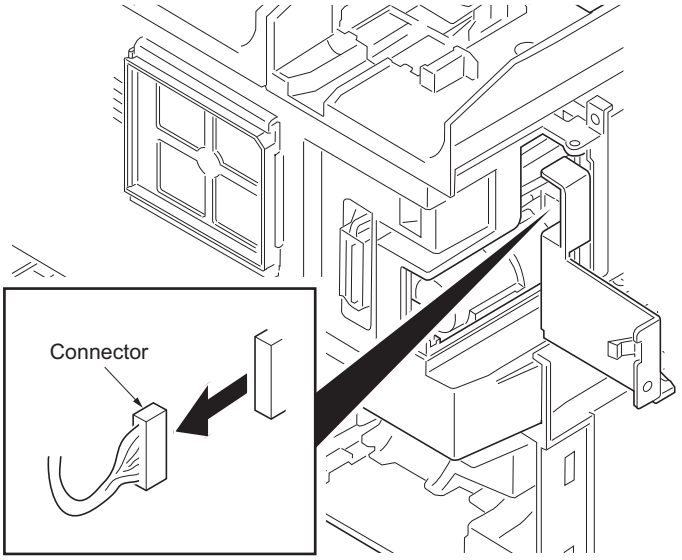


Figure 1-5-54

8. Remove five screws of the image formation holder.

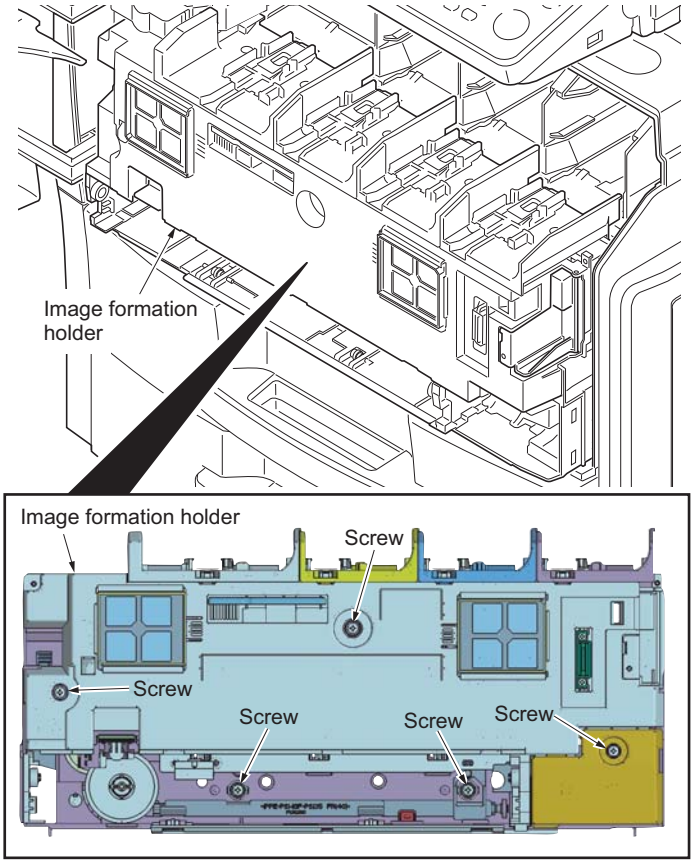


Figure 1-5-55

9. Press the two holder levers to unlock.

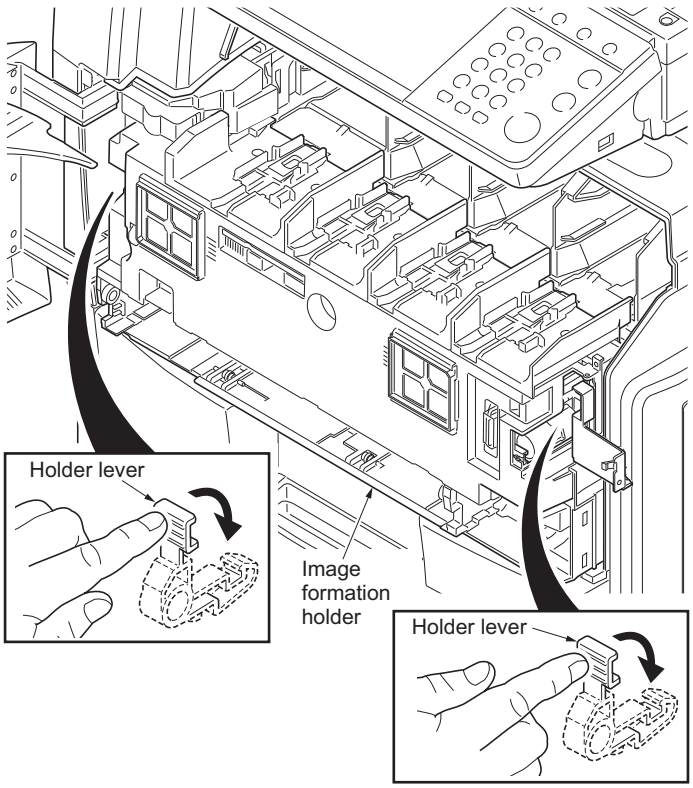


Figure 1-5-56

10. Remove the image formation holder.
    When refitting the image formation holder, first insert the left pin into the machine and then insert the right pin.

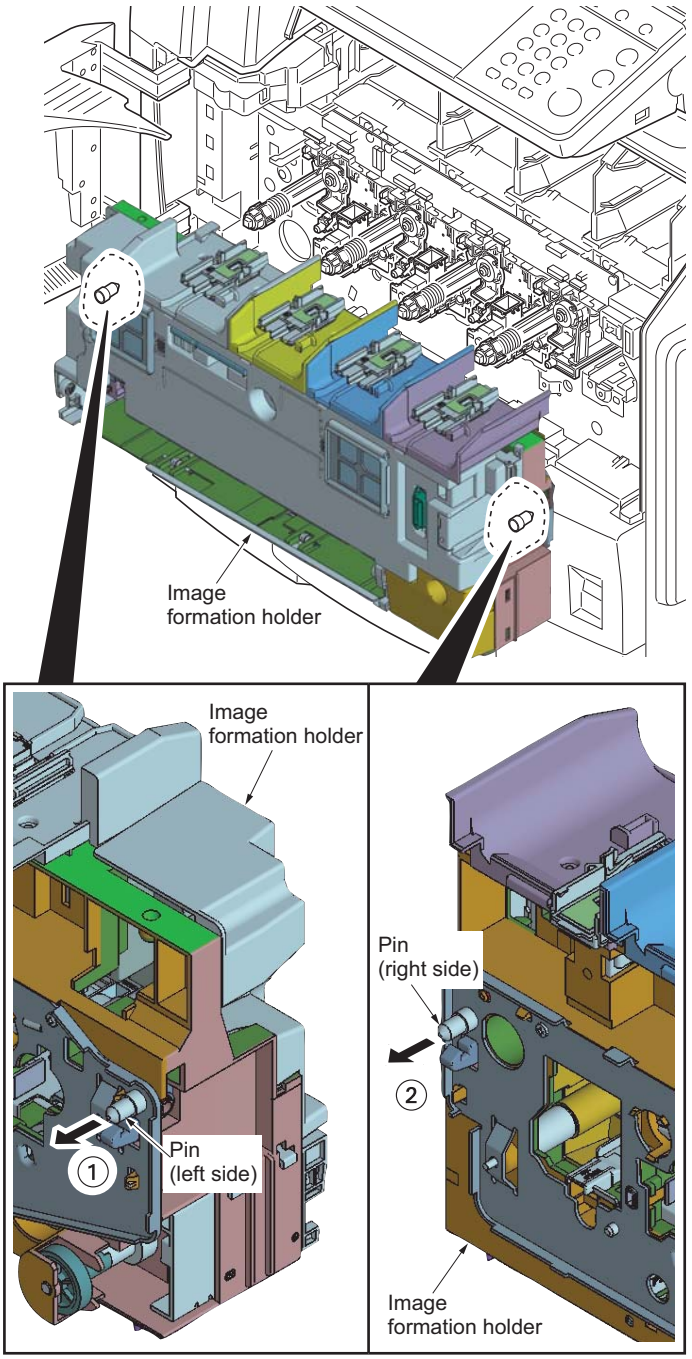


Figure 1-5-57

(2) Detaching and refitting the developing unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

Example of detaching and refitting: developing unit Y

Procedure

1. Remove the image formation holder (see page 1-5-30).
2. Close the toner replenishment lid.
3. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
4. Remove the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
5. Remove the connector.
6. Remove the screw.

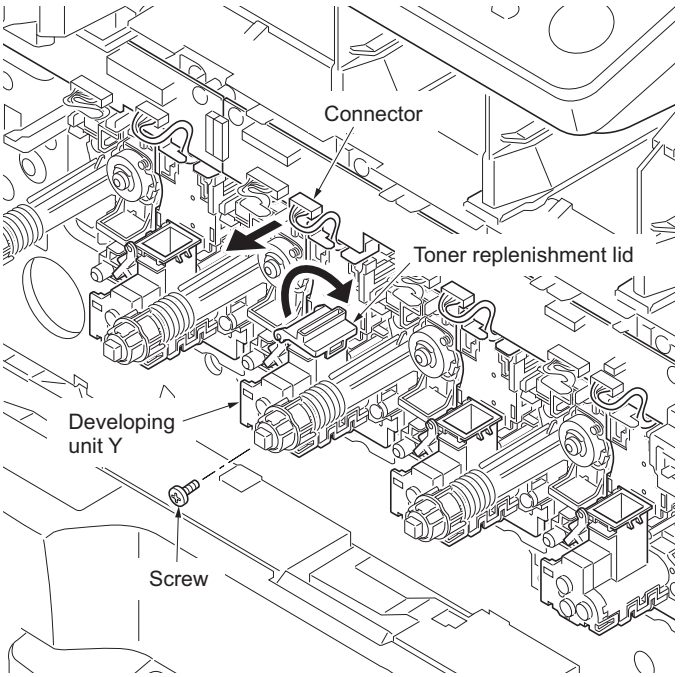


Figure 1-5-58

7. Remove the developing unit Y.
8. Check or replace the developing unit Y and refit all the removed parts.
   Caution:
   When refitting the developing unit, secure the developing unit and then secure the transfer belt unit.
   When securing the developing unit, be sure to insert the unit all the way into the machine and fix it using the screw.

9. When the developing unit is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
10. Perform maintenance mode U464 (AC calibration) (see page 1-3-128).
11. Perform the following image adjustment.
    1)Color Calibration
    2)Color Registration
    3)Maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-118).

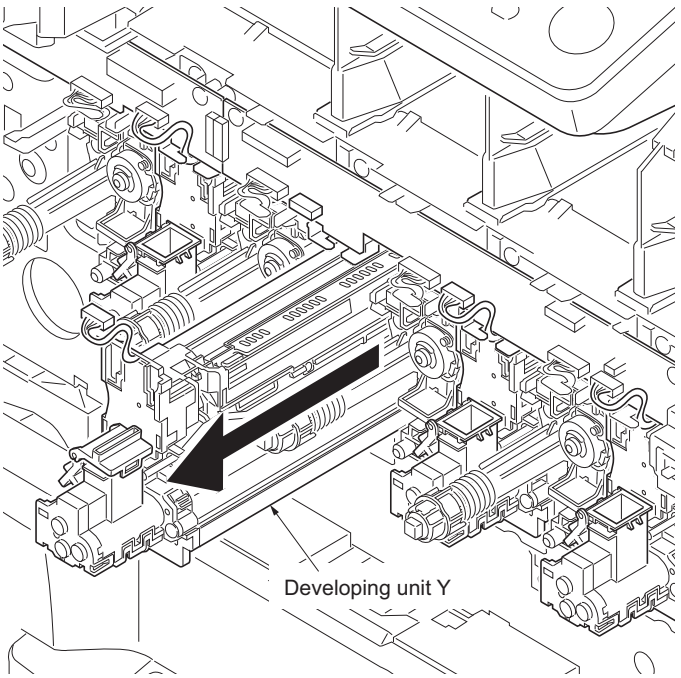


Figure 1-5-59

(3) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

Caution
Avoid direct sunlight and strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.
Never touch the drum surface.

Example of detaching and refitting: drum unit Y

Procedure

1. Remove the image formation holder (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove developing units K and C that are adjacent to drum unit Y.
3. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
4. Remove the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-37).
5. Remove the connector.

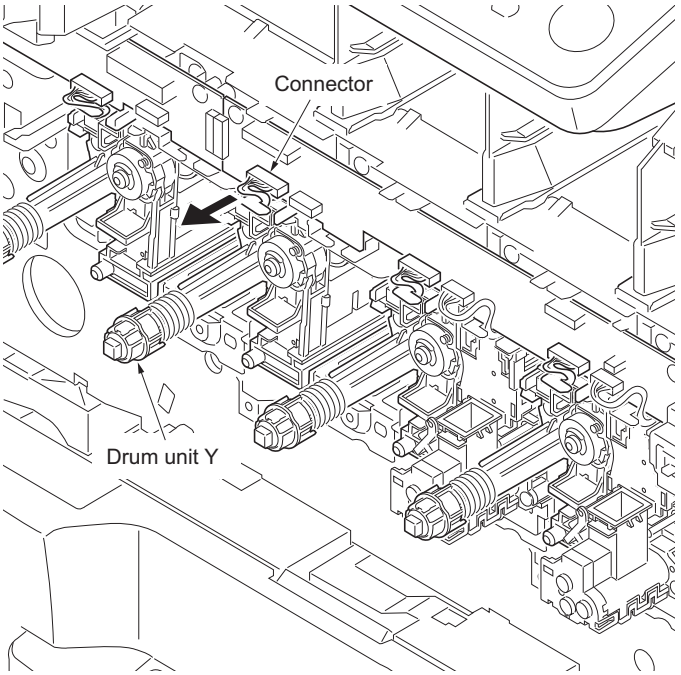


Figure 1-5-60

6. Remove the drum unit Y.
7. Check or replace the drum unit Y and refit all the removed parts.
   Caution:
   When refitting the drum unit, secure the developing unit and then secure the transfer belt unit.

8. When the drum unit is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
9. Perform maintenance mode U119 (drum setup) (see page 1-3-68).
10. Perform maintenance mode U930 (clearing the charger roller count) (see page 1-3-153).
11. Perform maintenance mode U464 (AC calibration) (see page 1-3-128).
12. Perform the following image adjustment.
    1)Color Calibration
    2)Color Registration
    3)Maintenance mode U412 (adjusting the uneven density) (see page 1-3-122).
    4)Maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-118).

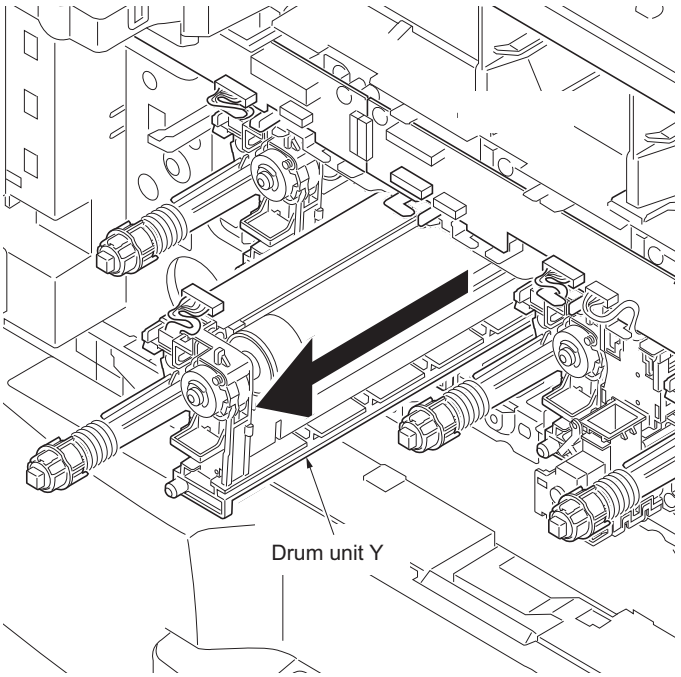


Figure 1-5-61

(4) Detaching and refitting the charger roller unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the charger roller unit.

Example of detaching and refitting: charger roller unit Y

Procedure

1. Remove the image formation holder (see page 1-5-30).
2. Remove the screw and then remove the charger roller unit Y.
3. Check or replace the charger roller unit Y and refit all the removed parts.

4. When the charger roller unit is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
5. Perform maintenance mode U930 (clearing the charger roller count) (see page 1-3-153).

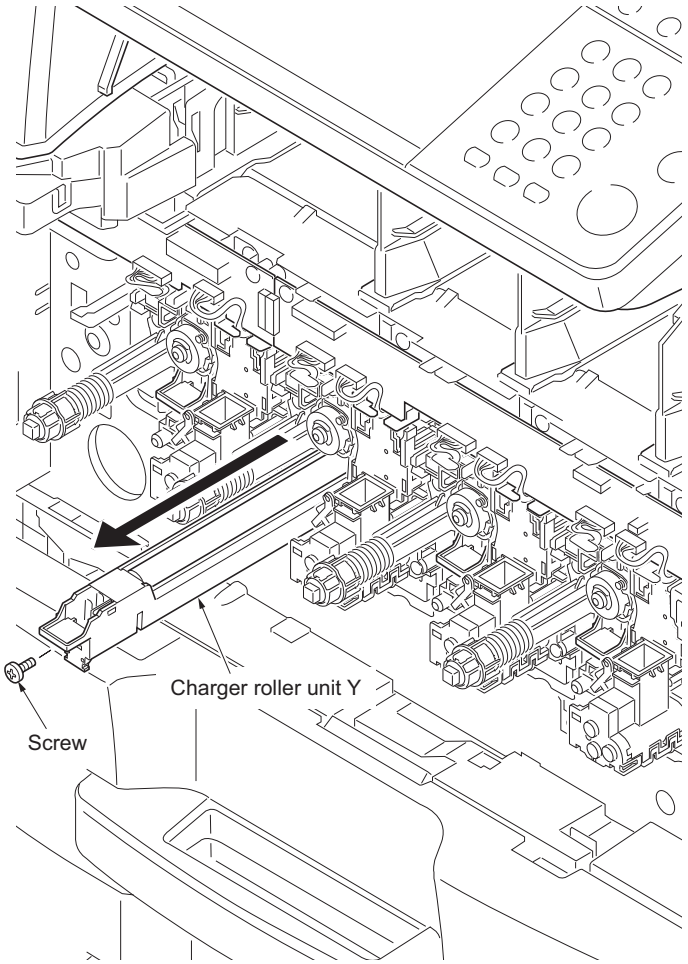


Figure 1-5-62

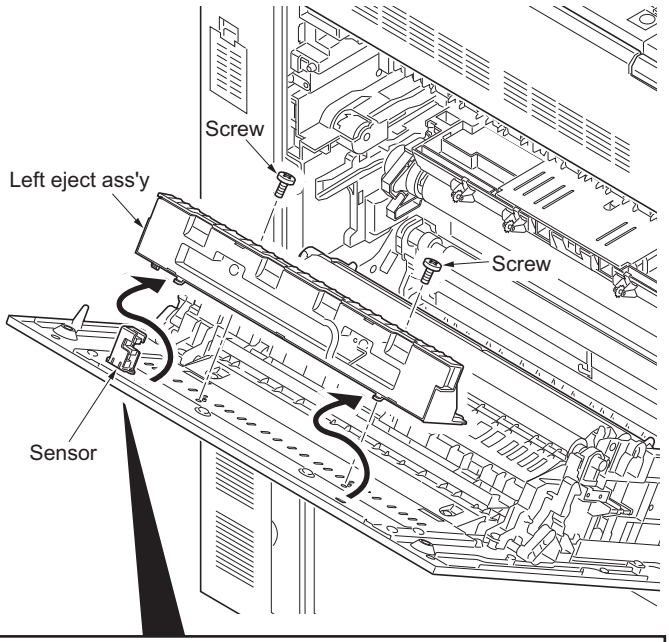
1-5-5 Transfer section

(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer belt unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer belt unit.

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-41).
2. Remove two screws and then remove the left eject ass'y.



Caution in installation of left eject ass'y

Take care not to damage the sensor and the light shielding plate of actuator.
And also check the operation of the actuator after installing to see if the actuator operates correctly.

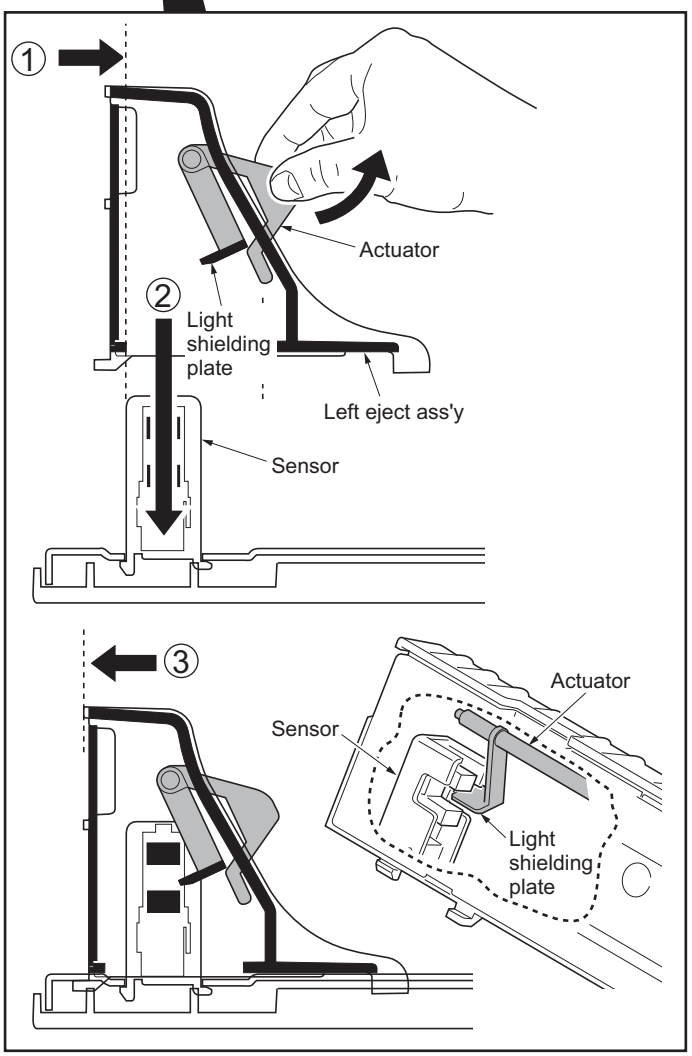


Figure 1-5-63

3. Remove the connector.
4. While lifting the “A” sections, remove the transfer belt unit from the machine.
   Take care not to hit the transfer belt unit to the sensor.
5. Replace the transfer belt unit and install it in the machine in a horizontal manner.
6. Refit all the removed parts.

7. When the transfer belt unit is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
8. Perform the following image adjustment.
   1)Color Calibration
   2)Color Registration
   3)Maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-118).

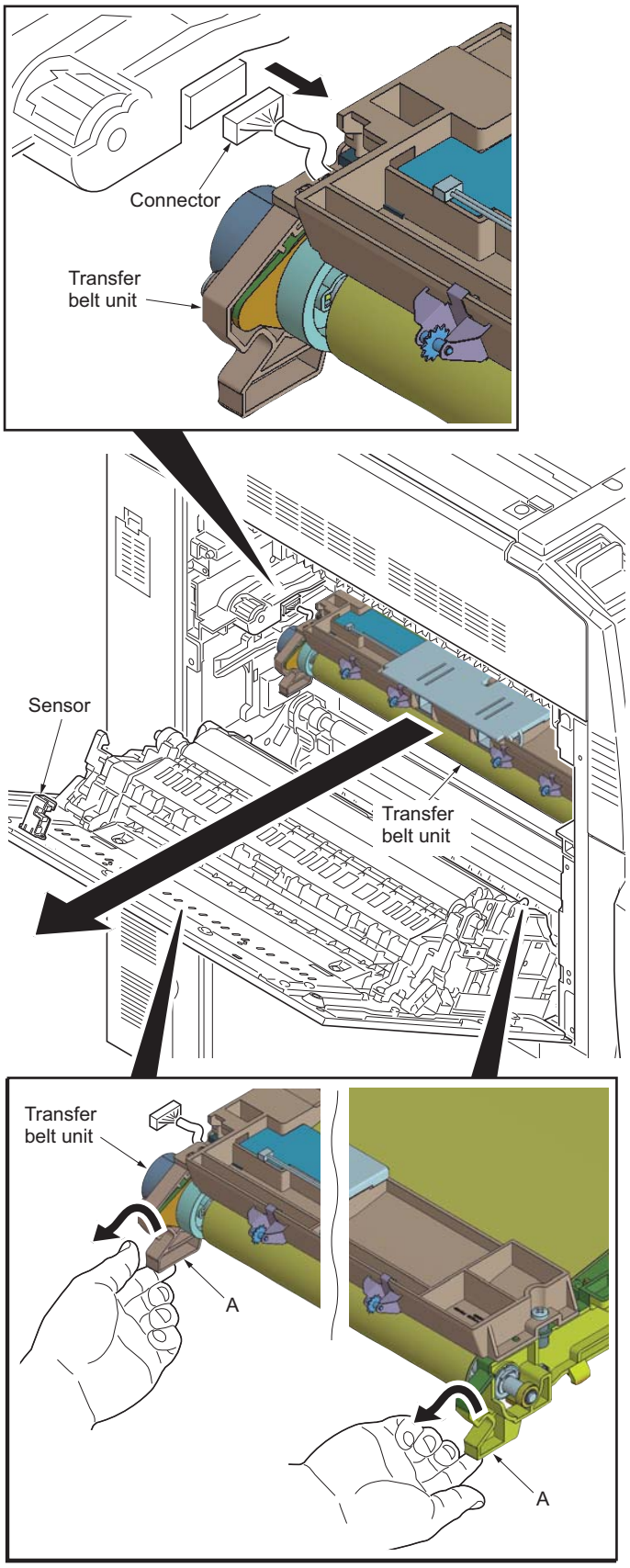


Figure 1-5-64

(2) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller.

Procedure

1. Open left cover 1.
2. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, remove the left transfer guide by prying the protrusion off the hole.
3. Remove the screw and then remove the ground terminal and varistor terminal.

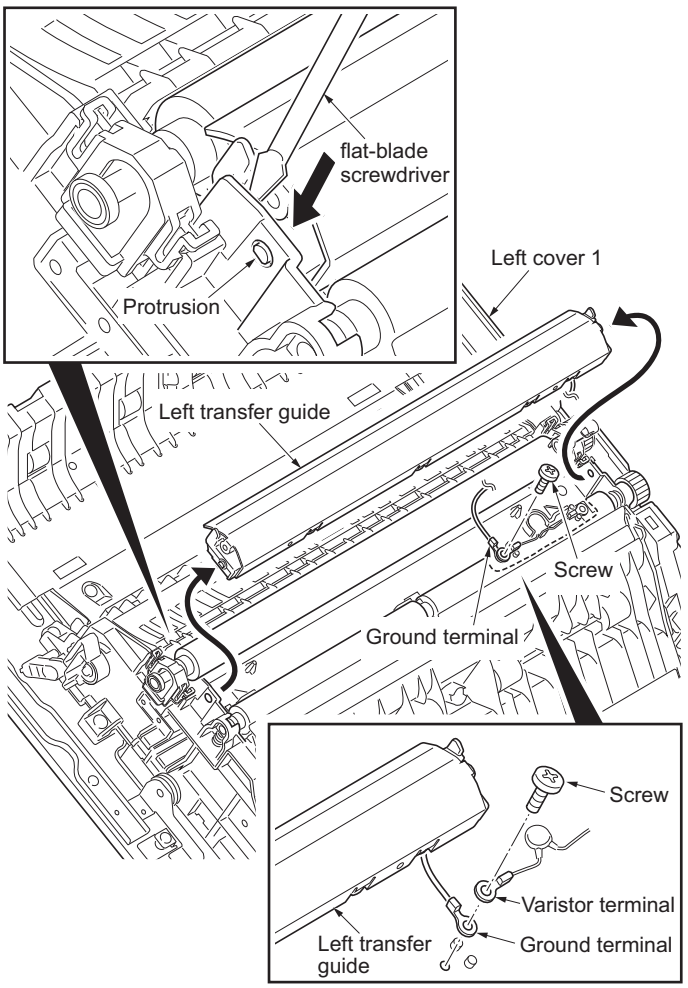


Figure 1-5-65

4. Remove the transfer roller while pressing down the transfer stopper of both ends.

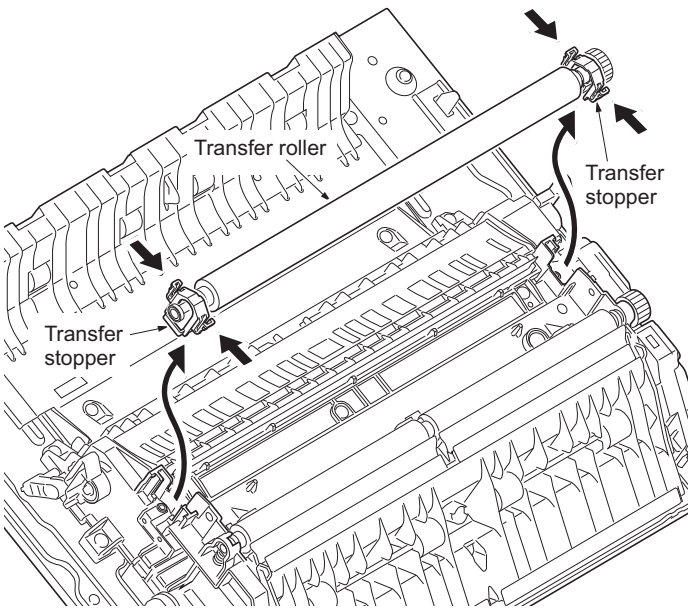


Figure 1-5-66

5. Remove the cut washer, bearing, stop ring, gear, pin, transfer stopper, transfer bush and argent transfer spring from the transfer roller rear.
   Remove the cut washer, bearing, transfer stopper, transfer bus and black transfer spring from the transfer roller front.
6. Check or replace the transfer roller and refit all the removed parts.

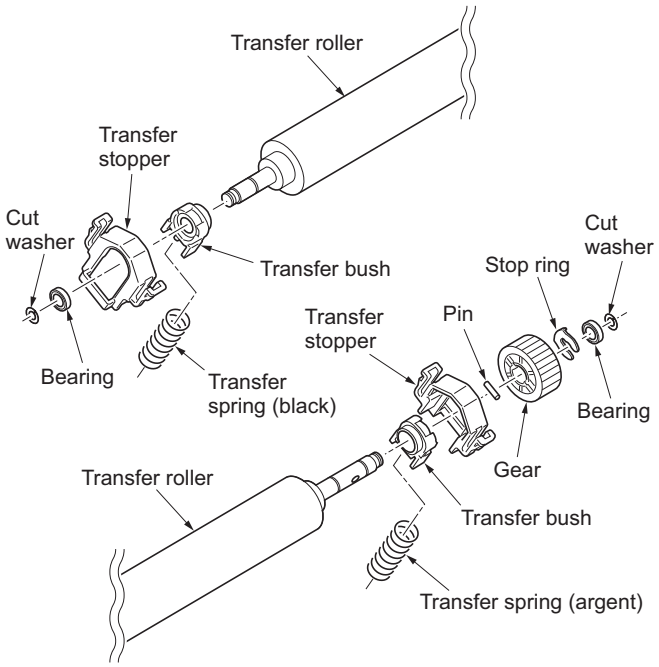


Figure 1-5-67

7. Push in the left transfer guide to refit the guide in position.
   Caution in refitting left transfer guide
   The ground terminal and the varistor terminal must be tightened together with a screw. Make sure that the two springs on the left transfer guide are caught with the protrusions on the paper conveying unit.

8. When the transfer roller is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
9. Perform maintenance mode U127 (clearing the transfer counter) (see page 1-3-69).
10. Perform the following image adjustment.
    1)Color Calibration
    2)Color Registration
    3)Maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-118).

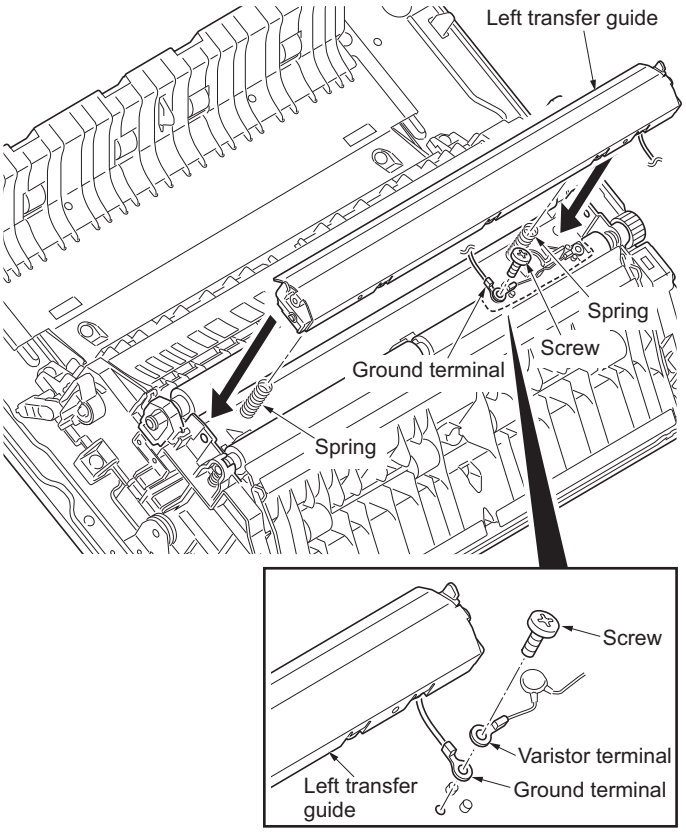


Figure 1-5-68

1-5-6 Fuser section

(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser unit.

Procedure

1. Open left cover 1.
2. Remove two screws and then remove the fuser unit.

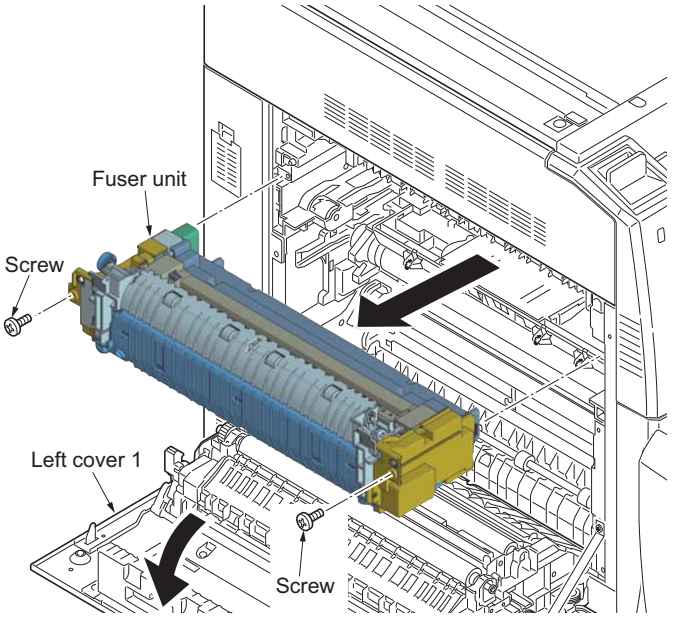


Figure 1-5-69

3. Replace the fuser unit and install the unit.
   Caution
   When refitting the fuser unit, take care not to get the wire of transfer belt unit caught.

4. When the fuser unit is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
5. Perform maintenance mode U167 (clearing the fuser counter) (see page 1-3-84).
6. Perform the following image adjustment.
   1)Color Calibration
   2)Color Registration
   3)Maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-118).

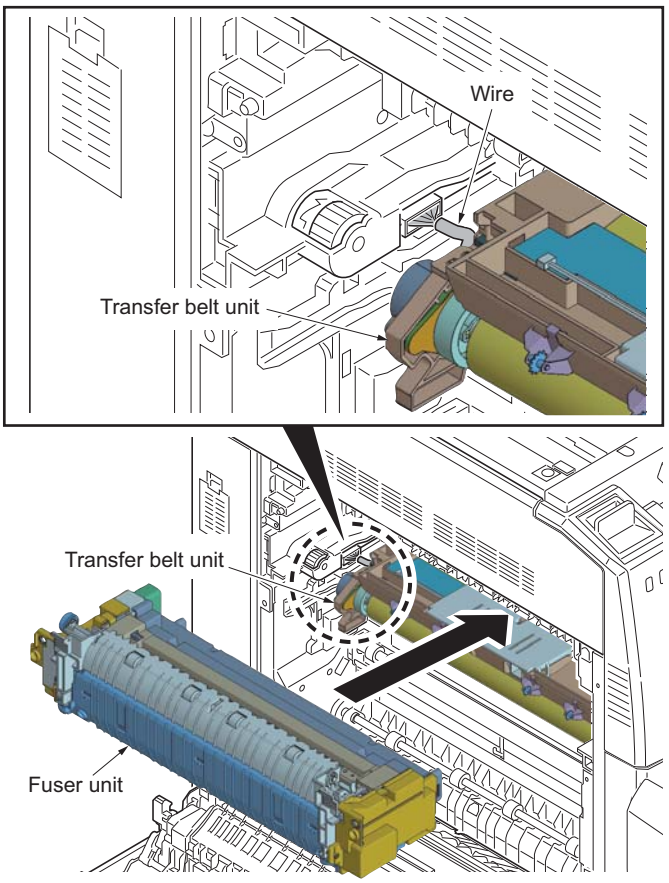


Figure 1-5-70

1-5-7 Other

(1) Detaching and refitting the left filter, rear upper filter 1/2, right filter, rear lower filter, front filter and duct filter

Follow the procedure below to replace the left filter, rear upper filter 1/2, right filter, rear lower filter, front filter and duct filter.

Procedure

1. Remove the rear upper filter cover from the machine rear upper side.
2. Remove the rear upper filter 1 from the rear upper filter cover.
3. Clean or replace the rear upper filter 1 and refit the filter.
4. Remove the rear upper filter 2.
5. Clean or replace the rear upper filter 2 and refit the filter.
6. Remove the left filter cover from machine left side.
   For a machine with an optional duct unit installed, remove the two screws and remove duct unit B.
7. Remove the left filter.
8. Clean or replace the left filter and refit the filter.

Only machine with an optional duct unit

9. Remove the duct filter cover.
10. Remove the duct filter.
11. Clean or replace the duct filter and refit the filter.

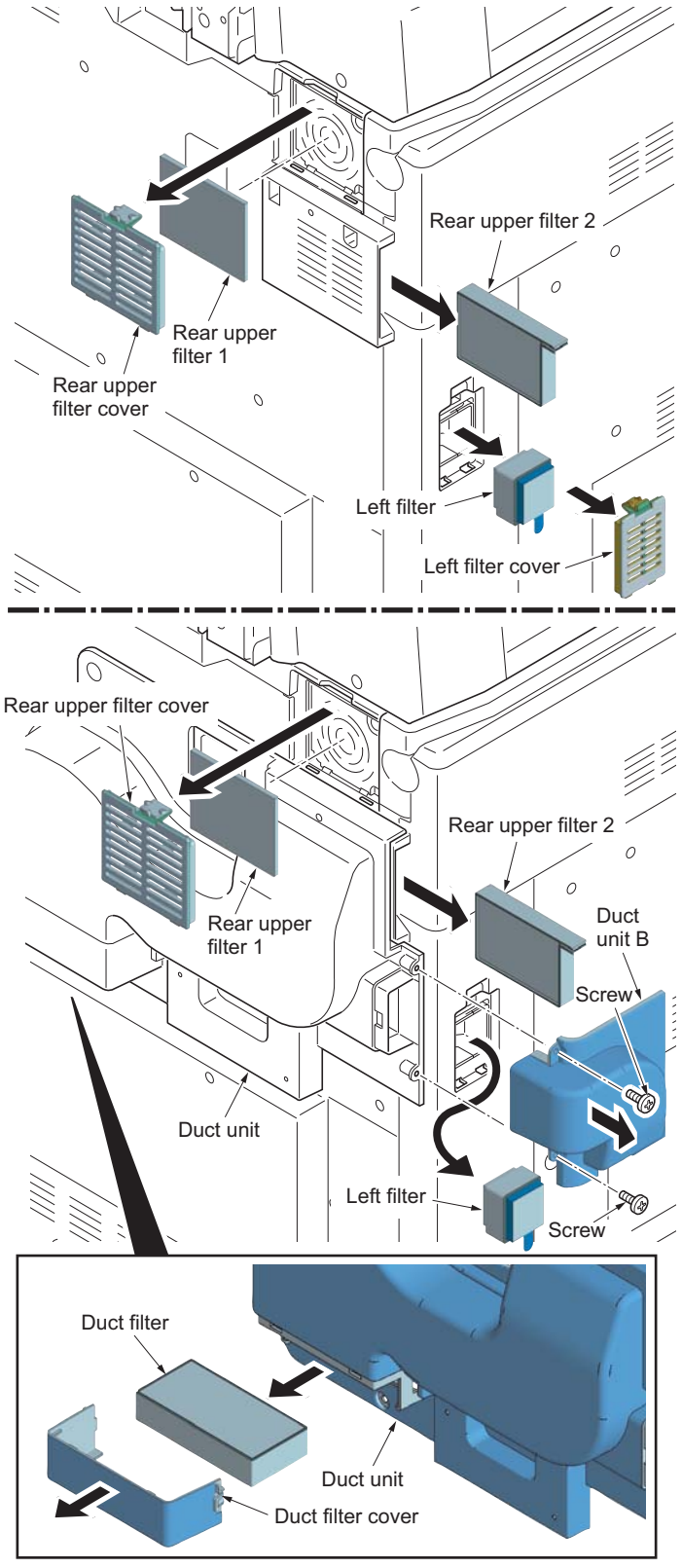


Figure 1-5-71

12. Remove the right filter from machine right side.
13. Clean or replace the right filter and refit the filter.
14. Remove the rear lower filter from machine rear lower side.
15. Clean or replace the rear lower filter and refit the filter.

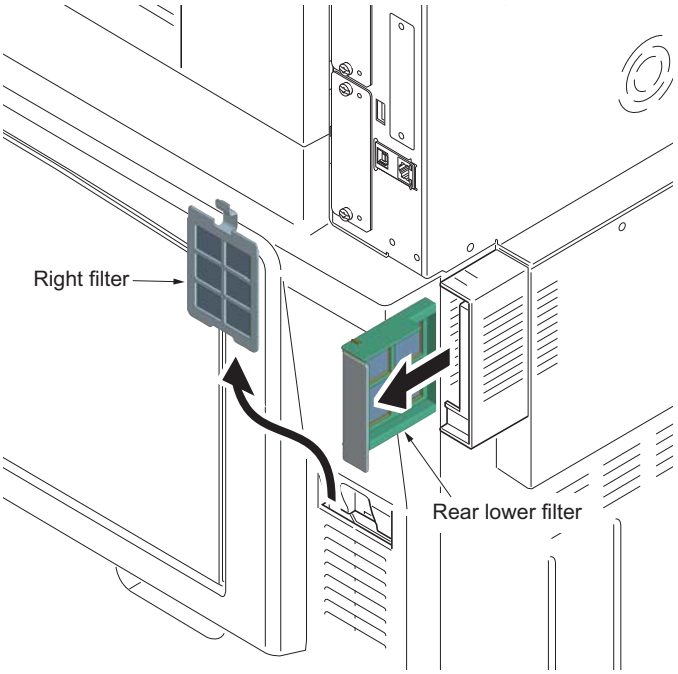


Figure 1-5-72

16. Open the front cover.
17. Remove the front filters from the machine front side.
18. Clean or replace the front filters and refit the filters.

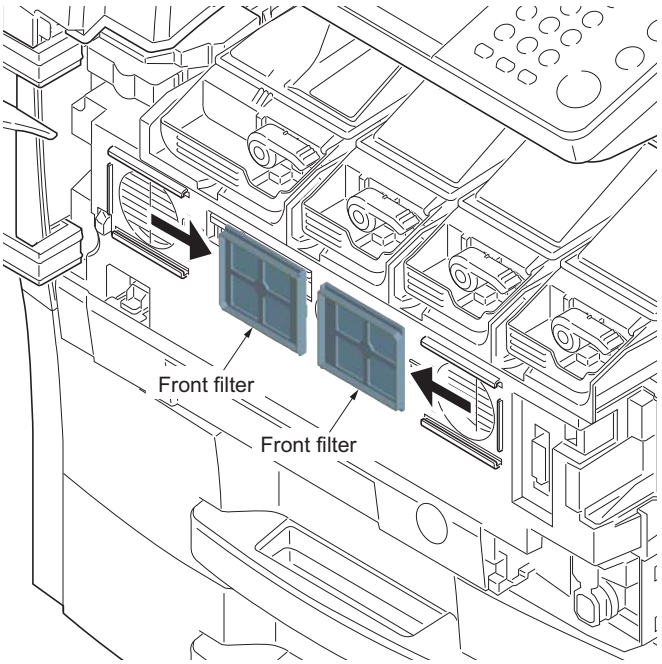


Figure 1-5-73

(2) Detaching and refitting the hard disk unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the hard disk unit.

Procedure

1. Perform maintenance mode U917 (backup data reading) (see page 1-3-150).
2. Remove the upper rear cover (see page 1-5-21).
3. Remove two cable clamps.
4. Pressing the lock lever and remove the following connectors
   40/40, 50/40 ppm model:
   connector (blue), connector (black)
   25/25 30/30 ppm model:
   connector (black)

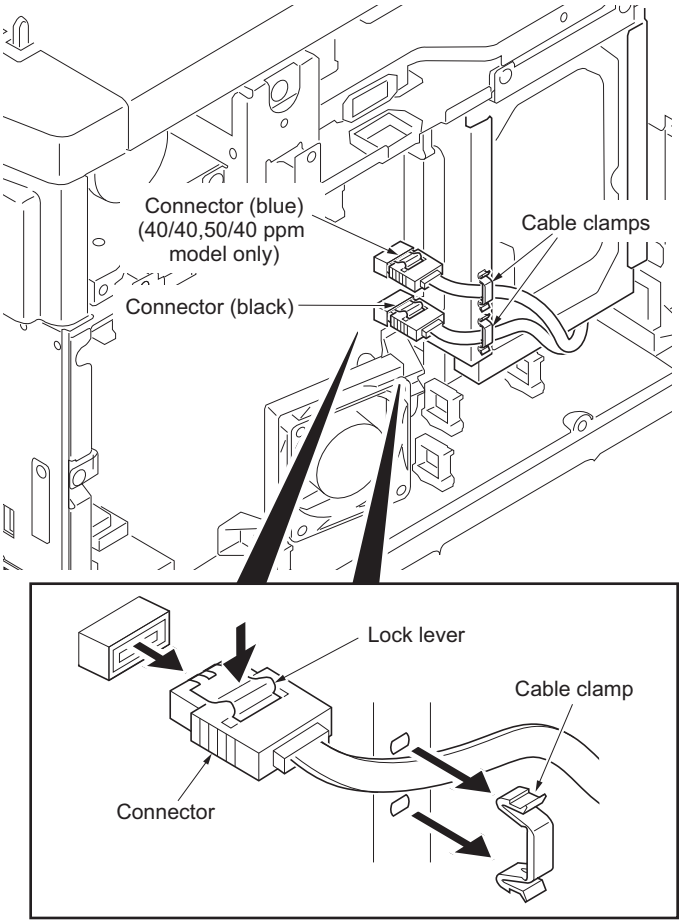


Figure 1-5-74

5. Remove the connector.
6. Release the wire saddle and then remove the wire.
7. Remove two screws.

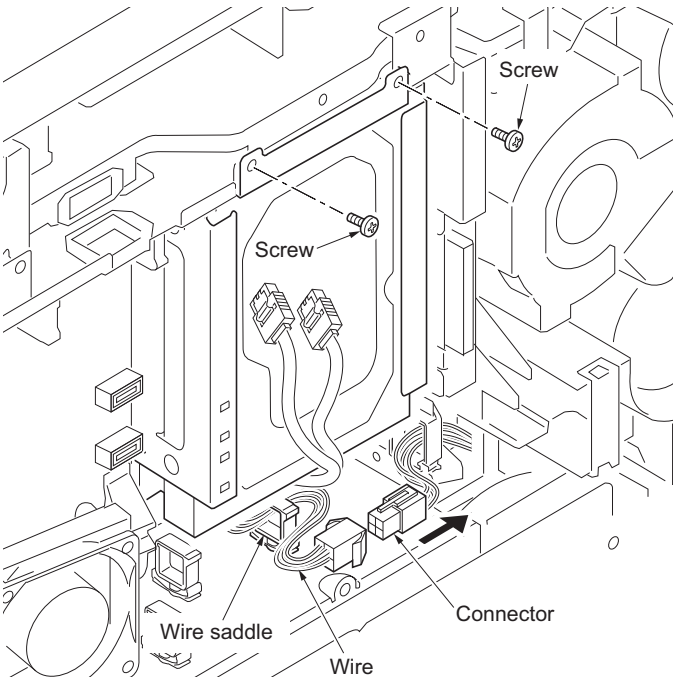


Figure 1-5-75

8. Remove four hooks and then remove the hard disk unit.

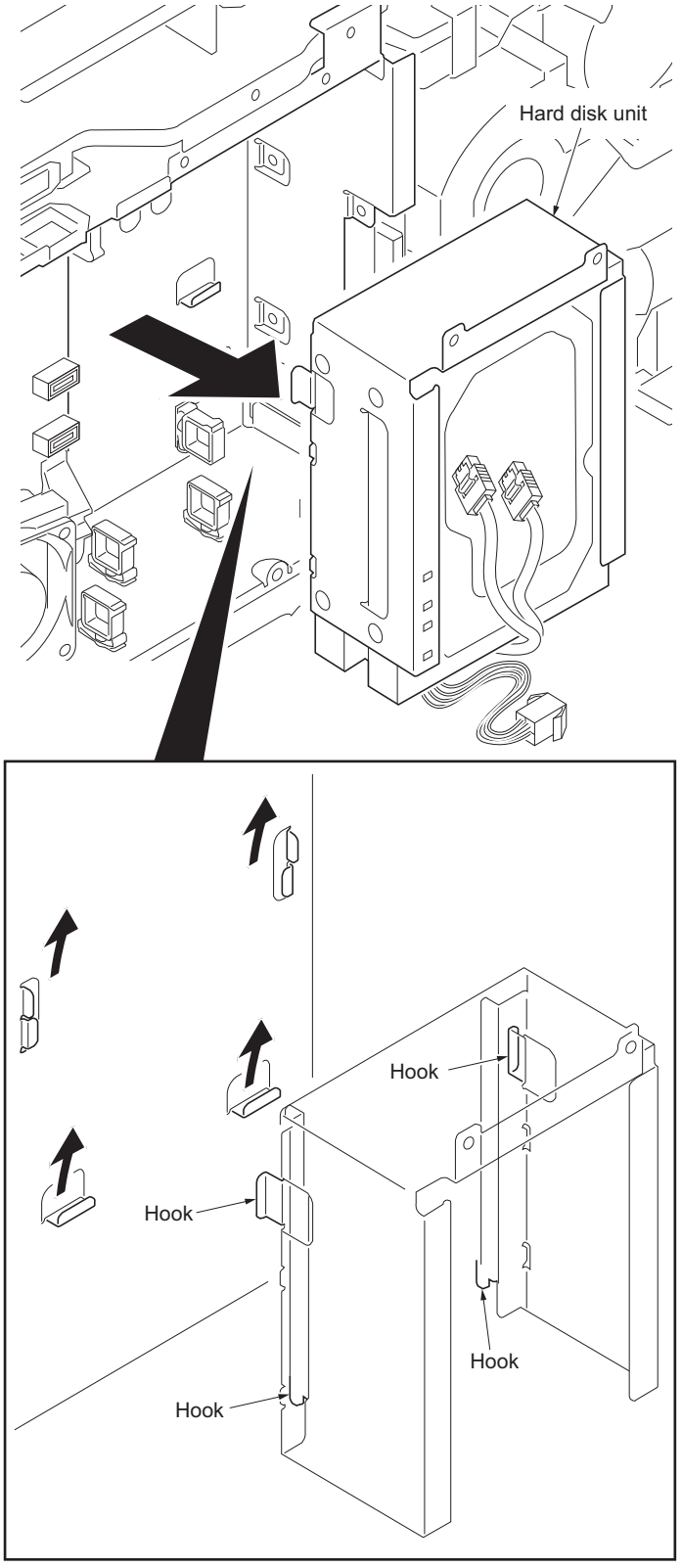


Figure 1-5-76

9. Pressing the lock lever and remove the following connectors
   40/40, 50/40 ppm model:
   two power connectors, connector (blue), connector (black)
   25/25 30/30 ppm model:
   power connector, connector (black)

10. Replace the hard disk unit and refit all the removed parts.
11. Perform maintenance mode U024 (HDD initializing) (see page 1-3-23).
12. Perform maintenance mode U917 (backup data writing) (see page 1-3-150).

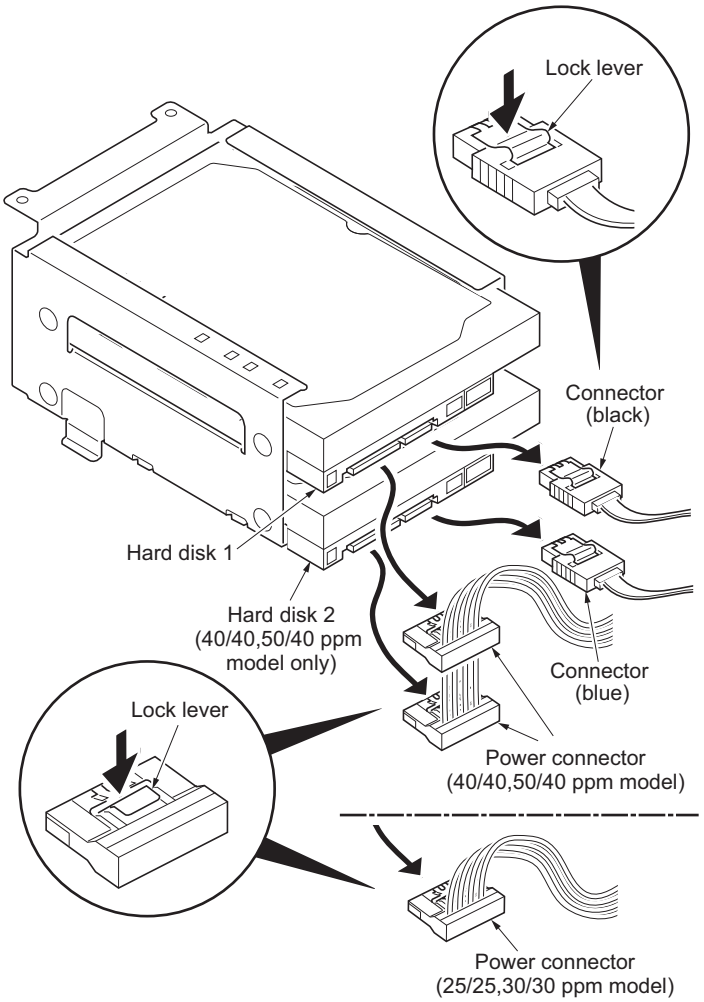


Figure 1-5-77

(3) Detaching and refitting the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit)

Follow the procedure below to replace the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit).

Procedure

1. Open the left cover 3.
2. Remove two straps and then remove left cover 3.

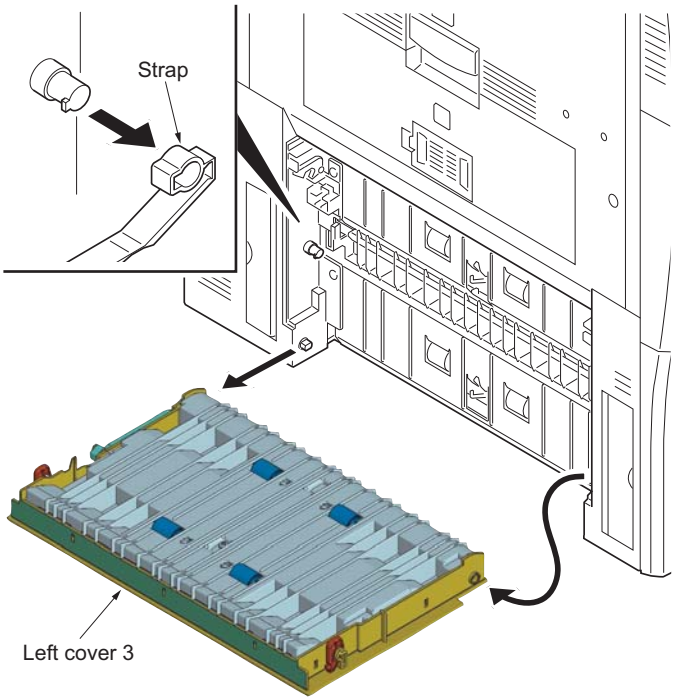


Figure 1-5-78

3. Open the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit).
4. Remove three screws and then remove the left lower cover 2.

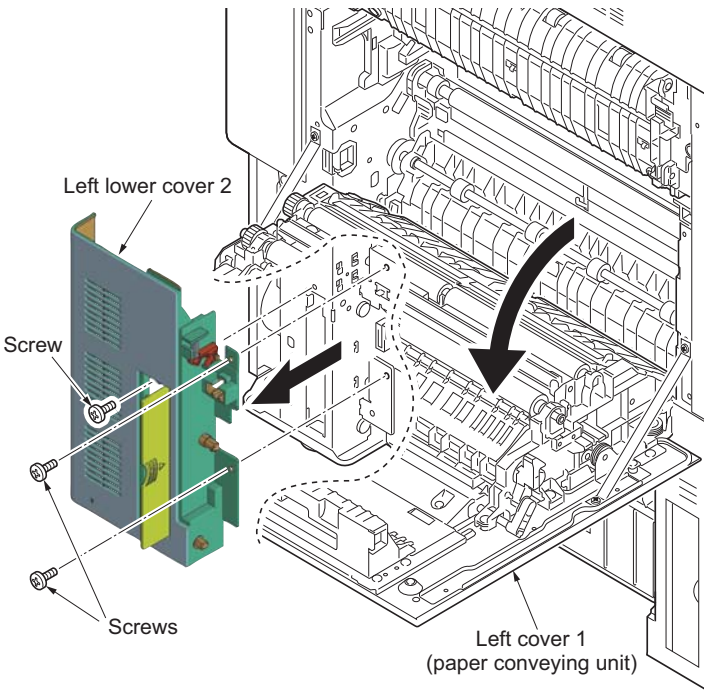


Figure 1-5-79

5. Remove the connector.

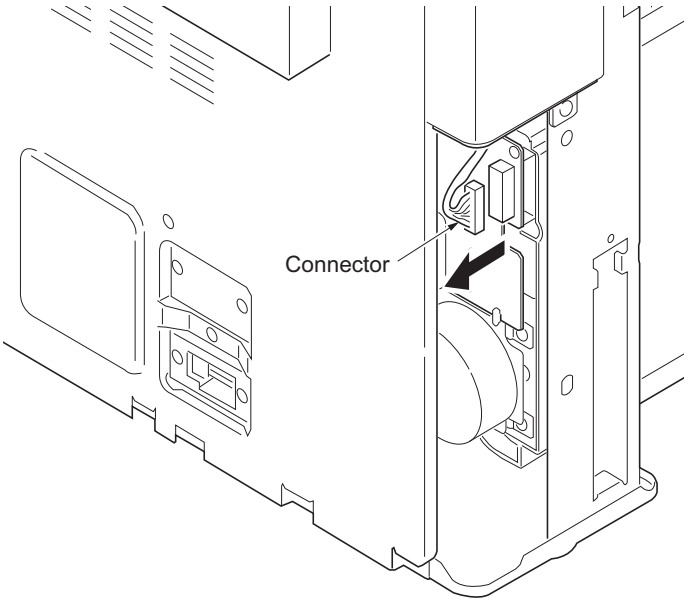


Figure 1-5-80

6. Release the wire saddle and pull the connector out of the machine rear frame.
7. Remove the spring.

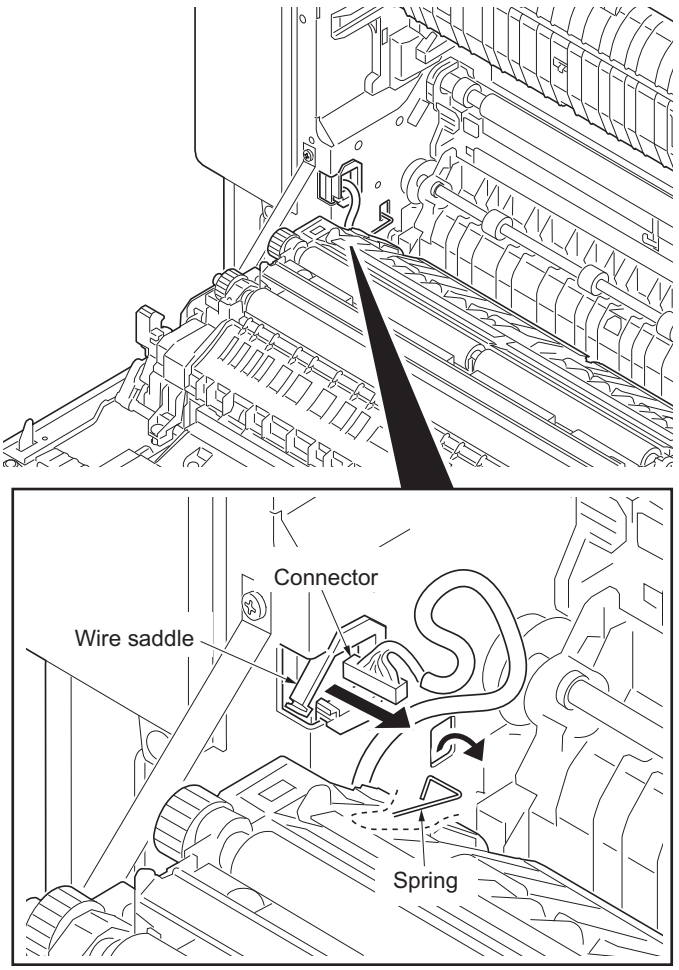


Figure 1-5-81

8. Remove cassette 1 and 2.
9. Remove two screws.
10. Release the hook and then remove the front left cover 2.

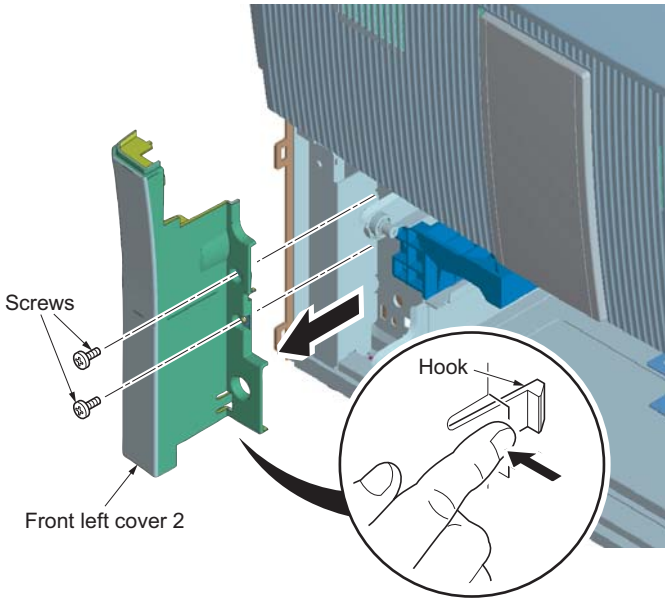


Figure 1-5-82

11. Close the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit).
12. Remove two screws and then remove the left lower cover 1.

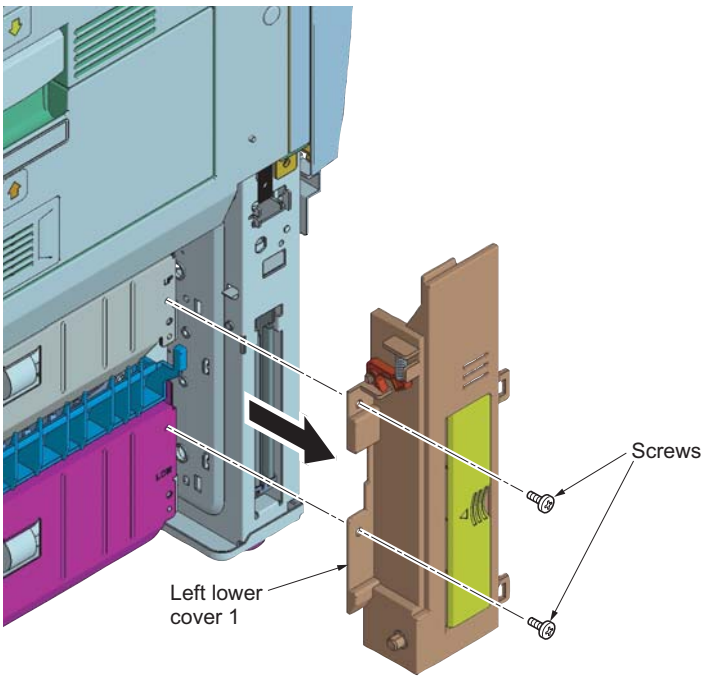


Figure 1-5-83

13. Remove the screw and then remove the terminal.
14. Remove the wire from two hooks.

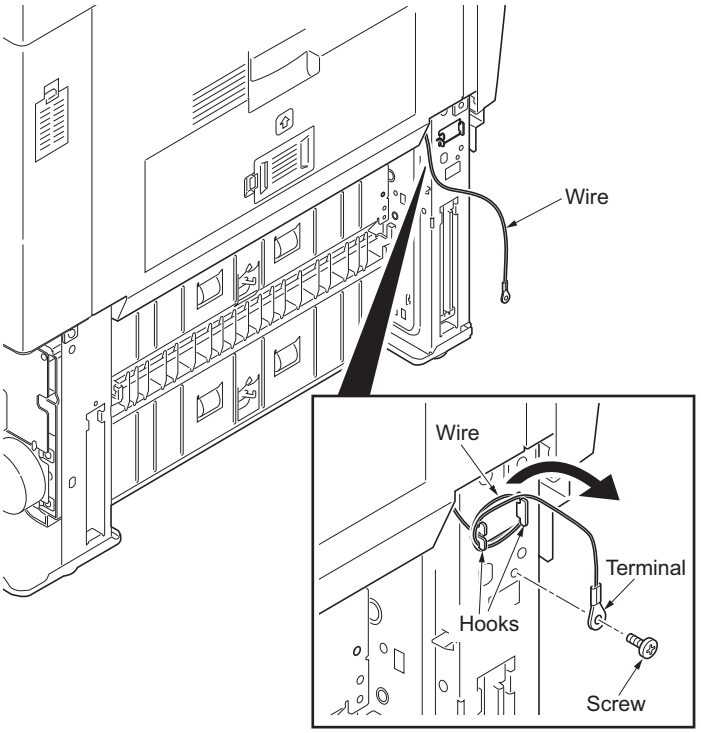


Figure 1-5-84

15. Open the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit).
16. Remove the wire from pin.
17. Remove two screws and two washers and then remove two straps.

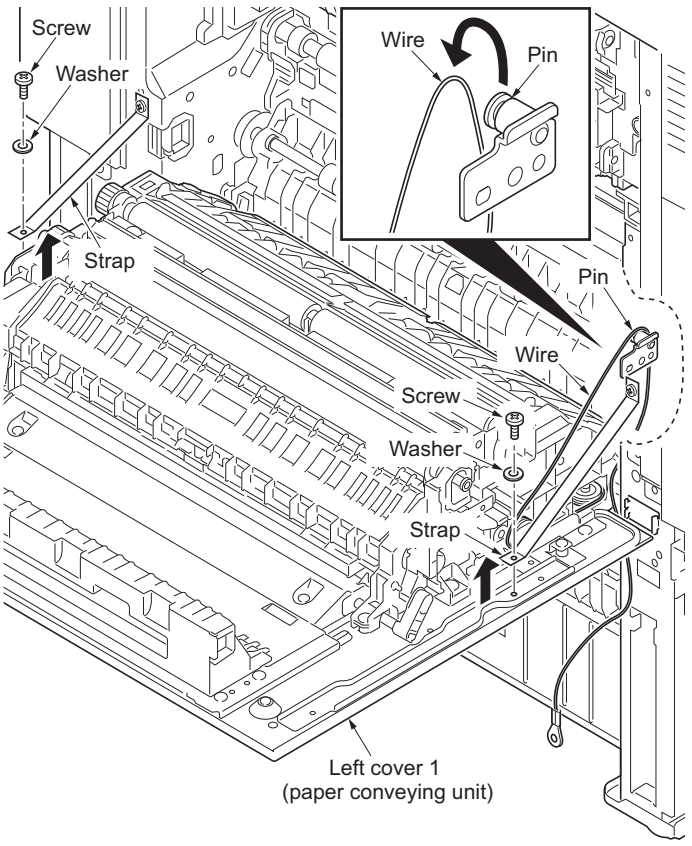


Figure 1-5-85

18. Raise the pin and slide it.
19. Remove the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit).
20. Replace the left cover 1 (paper conveying unit) and refit all the removed parts.

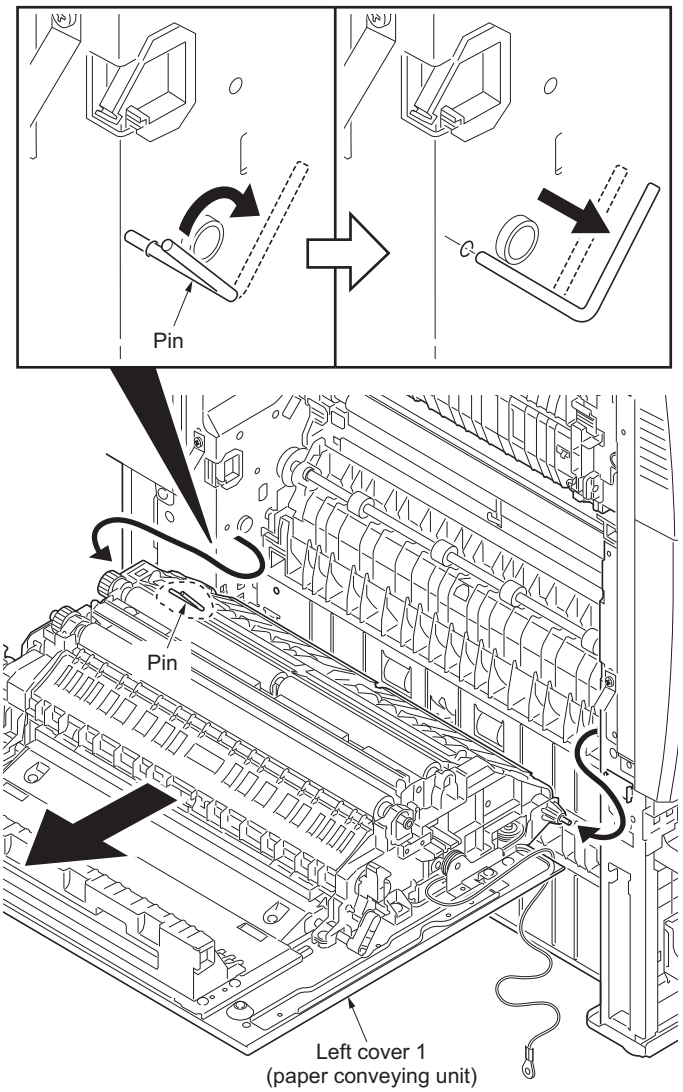


Figure 1-5-86

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware of main PWB, engine PWB, MMI, scanner and option.

Procedure

1. **Check the ROM version**
   Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check U019 ROM version.
2. **Insert USB memory**
   Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
   Insert the USB memory in which the firmware has been written into a notch hole of the machine. (see the Figure 1-6-1).
   Caution:
   For batch upgrading, use USB memory that has a capacity of 256 MB or more.
   Write the firmware files into the same directory as USB memory.
3. **Perform the upgrade**
   Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts. (For batch upgrading, 30 minutes are required at the maximum.)
   [100% Completed] is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
   If a problem occurs during upgrade, error code is displayed (see the error codes table).
   Caution:
   Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.
   Never turn the main power switch off before upgrading the MMI software for panel because the screen changes.
   When upgrading the engine firmware, open the front cover and turn off the safety switch.
4. **Remove USB memory**
   Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
   Wait for several seconds and then remove the USB memory from the machine.
5. **Check the ROM version**
   Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.
   Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check that U019 ROM version has been upgraded.

Error codes

Codes	Description	Corrective measures
CF000	Operation panel PWB communication error	Execute again upgrading.
		Replace the main firmware DIMM with the latest one and then execute again upgrading.
CF040	Engine PWB communication error	Only for engine firmware, execute upgrading using USB memory in which software for 40/40, 50/40 ppm model and for 25/25, 30/30 ppm model are stored individually.

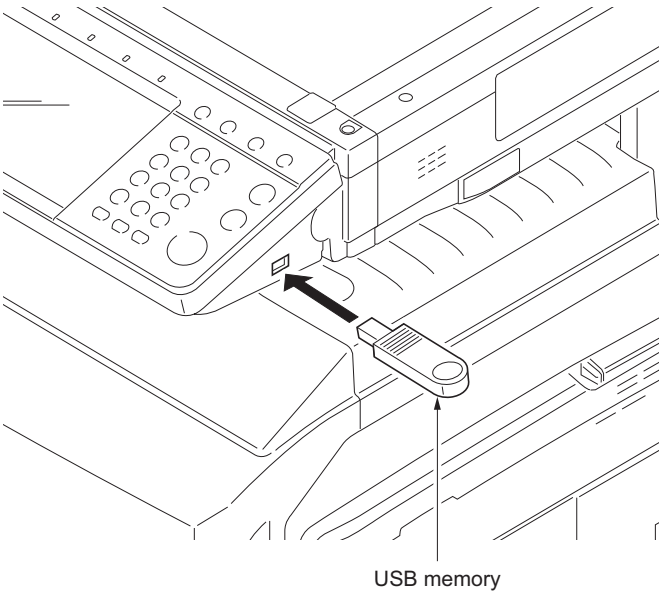


Figure 1-6-1

1-6-2 Remarks on main PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB, remove the EEPROM from the main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PWB.

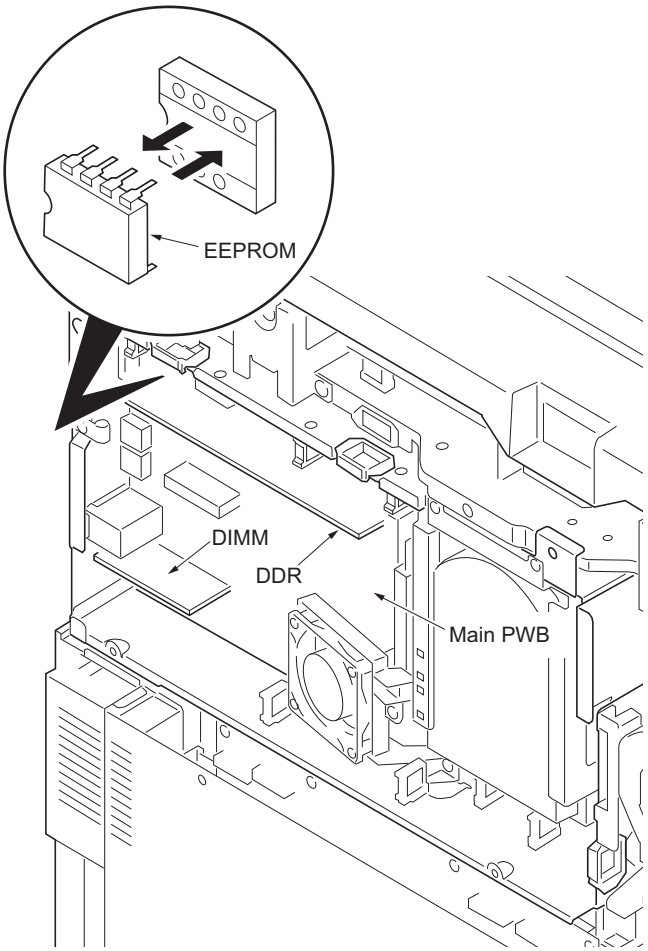


Figure 1-6-2

When refitting DIMM, check "CODE", "FLS" and "SPI" marked on the PWB and refit them to the original positions.

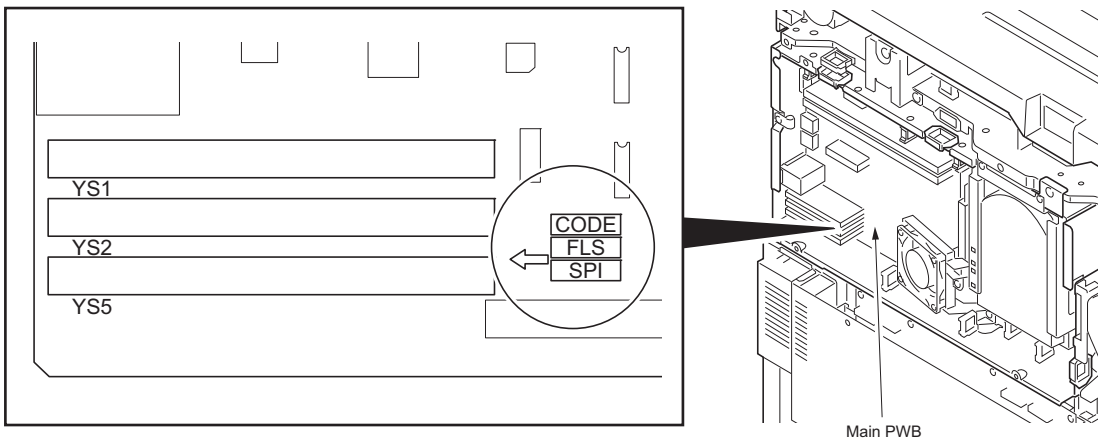


Figure 1-6-3

When removing YC1, YC2, YC3, YC4, YC8, YC9 and YC11 from the main PWB, press the lock lever.

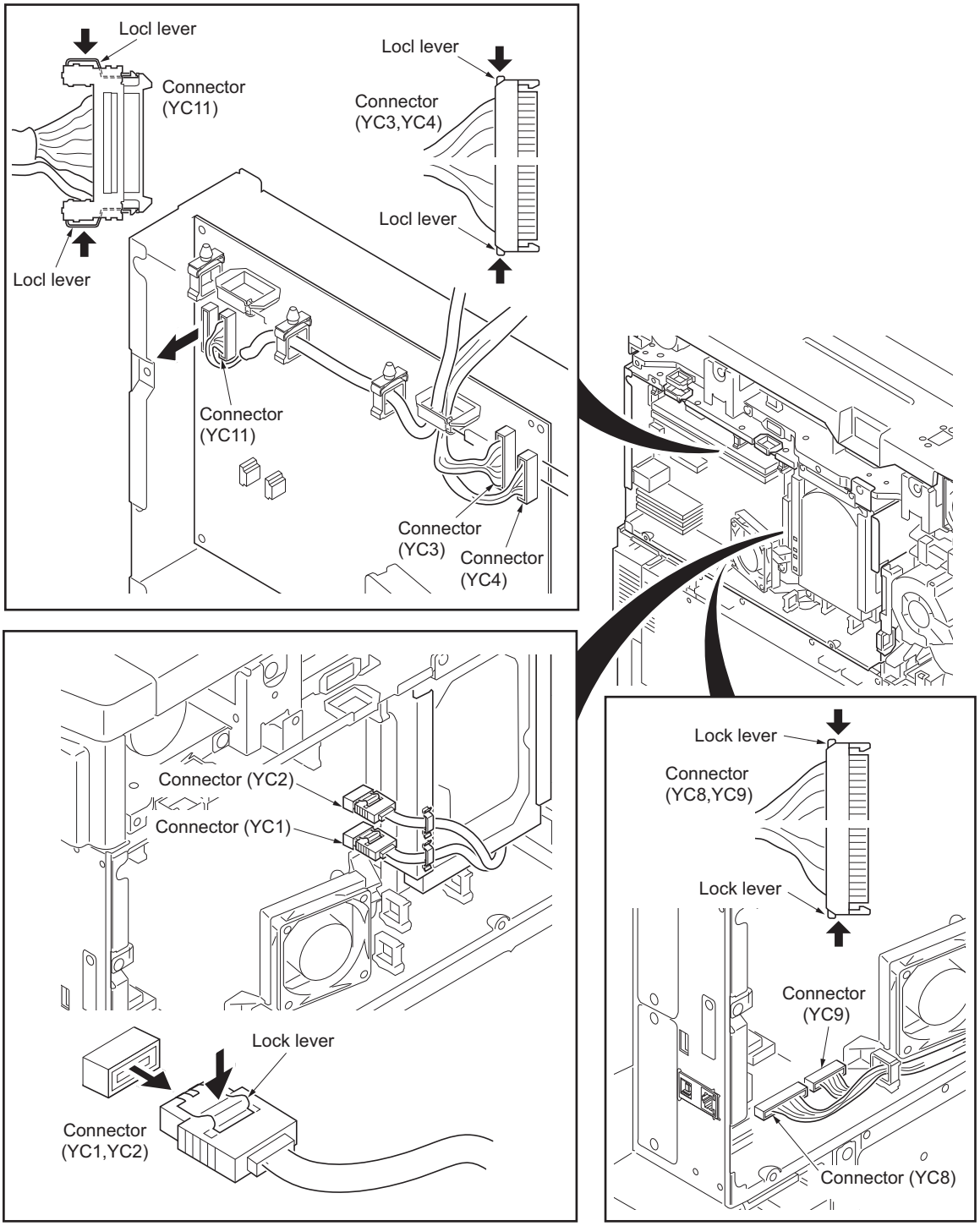


Figure 1-6-4

When connecting the hard disk cables (YC1, YC2) to the PWB, match "BLACK" and "BLUE" marked on the PWB with the connector colors.
When connecting the USB cables (YC17, YC21) to the PWB, match "BK" and "WH" marked on the PWB with the connector colors.

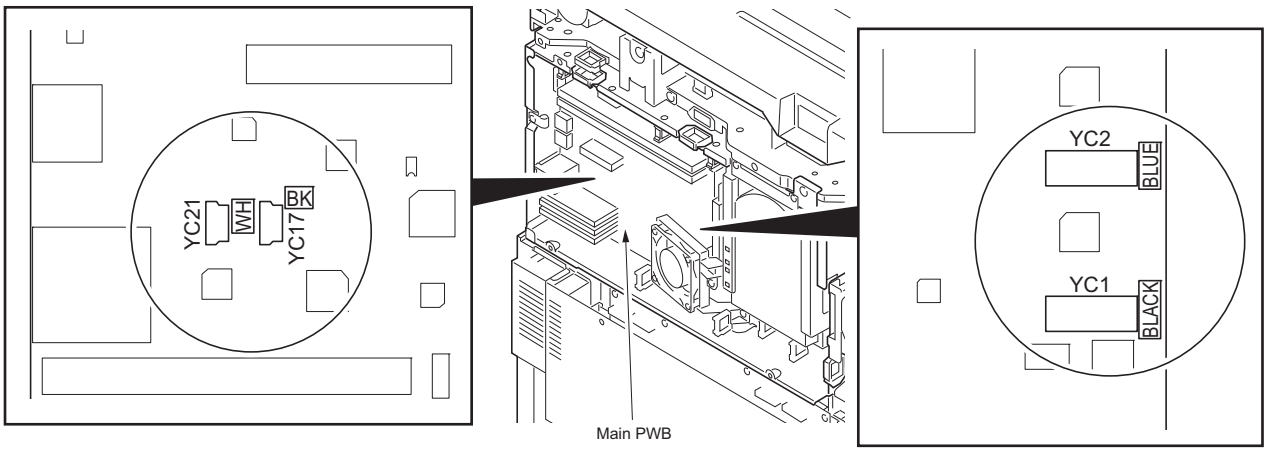


Figure 1-6-5

1-6-3 Remarks on engine PWB replacement

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM from the engine PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new engine PWB.

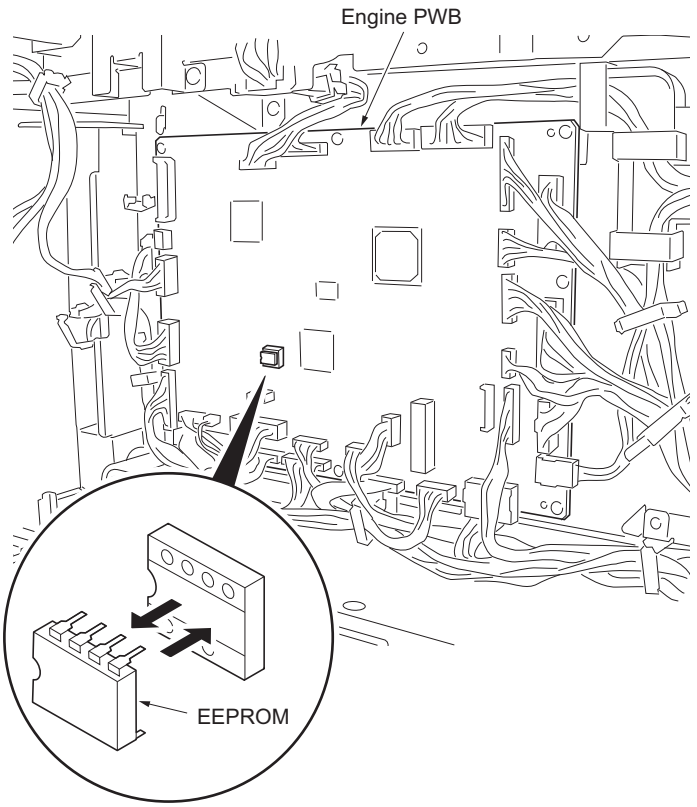


Figure 1-6-6

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-1-1 Paper feed section

(1) Cassette paper feed section

Cassette paper feed section consists of the paper holder with the cassette operation plate activated by lift motor 1 and 2, and the pulleys, such as the forwarding pulley, the paper feed pulley and the separation pulley, for extracting and conveying the paper. Paper is fed out of the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley and separation pulley.

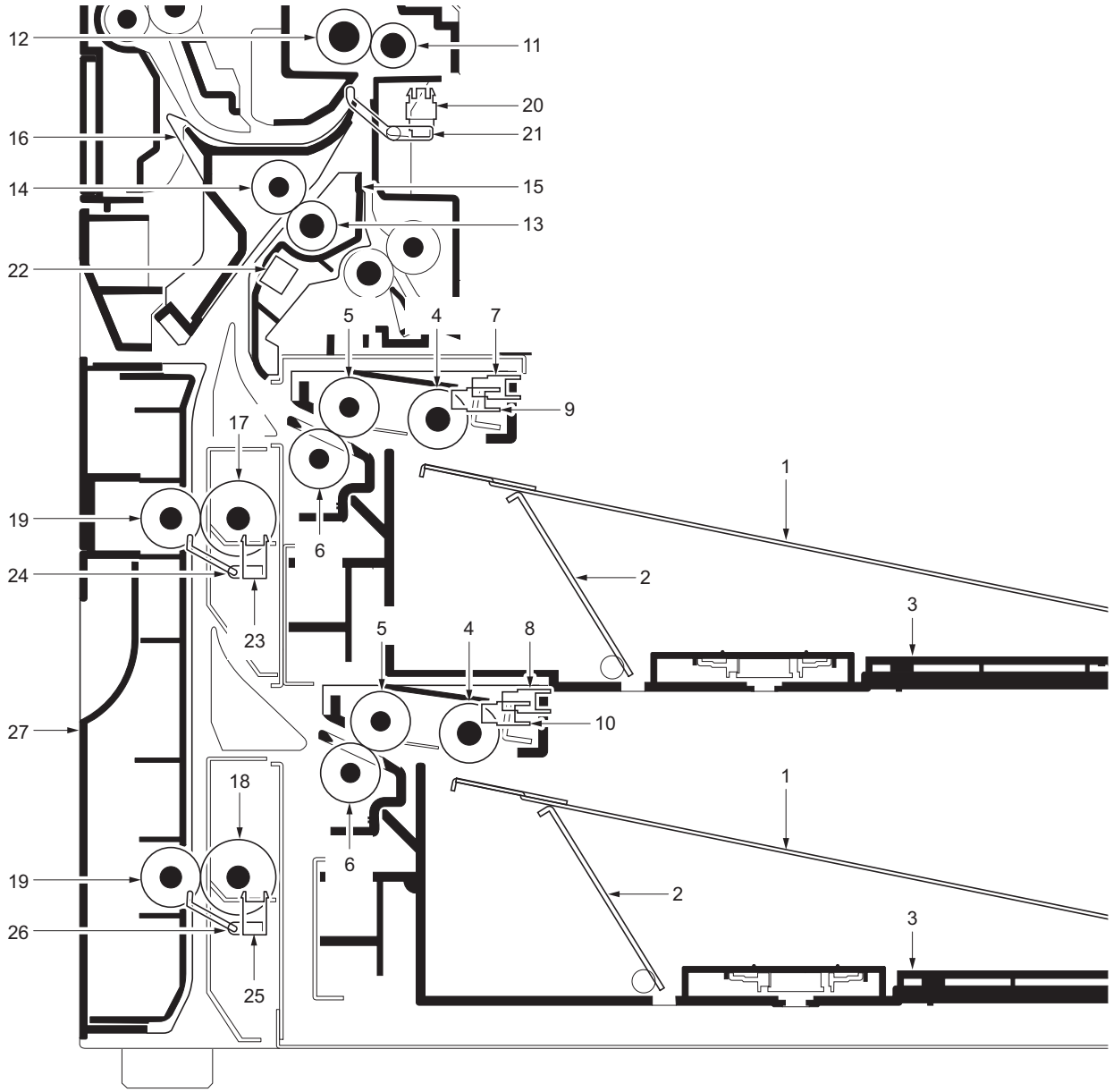


Figure 2-1-1 Cassette paper feed section

(1) Cassette base
(2) Cassette operation plate
(3) Cassette
(4) Forwarding pulley
(5) Paper feed pulley
(6) Separation pulley
(7) Paper switch 1 (PSW1)
(8) Paper switch 2 (PSW2)
(9) Lift switch 1 (LSW1)
(10) Lift switch 2 (LSW2)
(11) Right registration roller
(12) Left registration roller
(13) Middle roller
(14) Middle pulley
(15) MIddle right guide
(16) Middle left guide
(17) Upper feed roller
(18) Lower feed roller
(19) Feed pulley
(20) Registration switch (RSW)
(21) Actuator (registration switch)
(22) Feed switch 1 (FSW1)
(23) Feed switch 2 (FSW2)
(24) Actuator (Feed switch 2)
(25) Feed switch 3 (FSW3)
(26) Actuator (Feed switch 3)
(27) Left cover 3

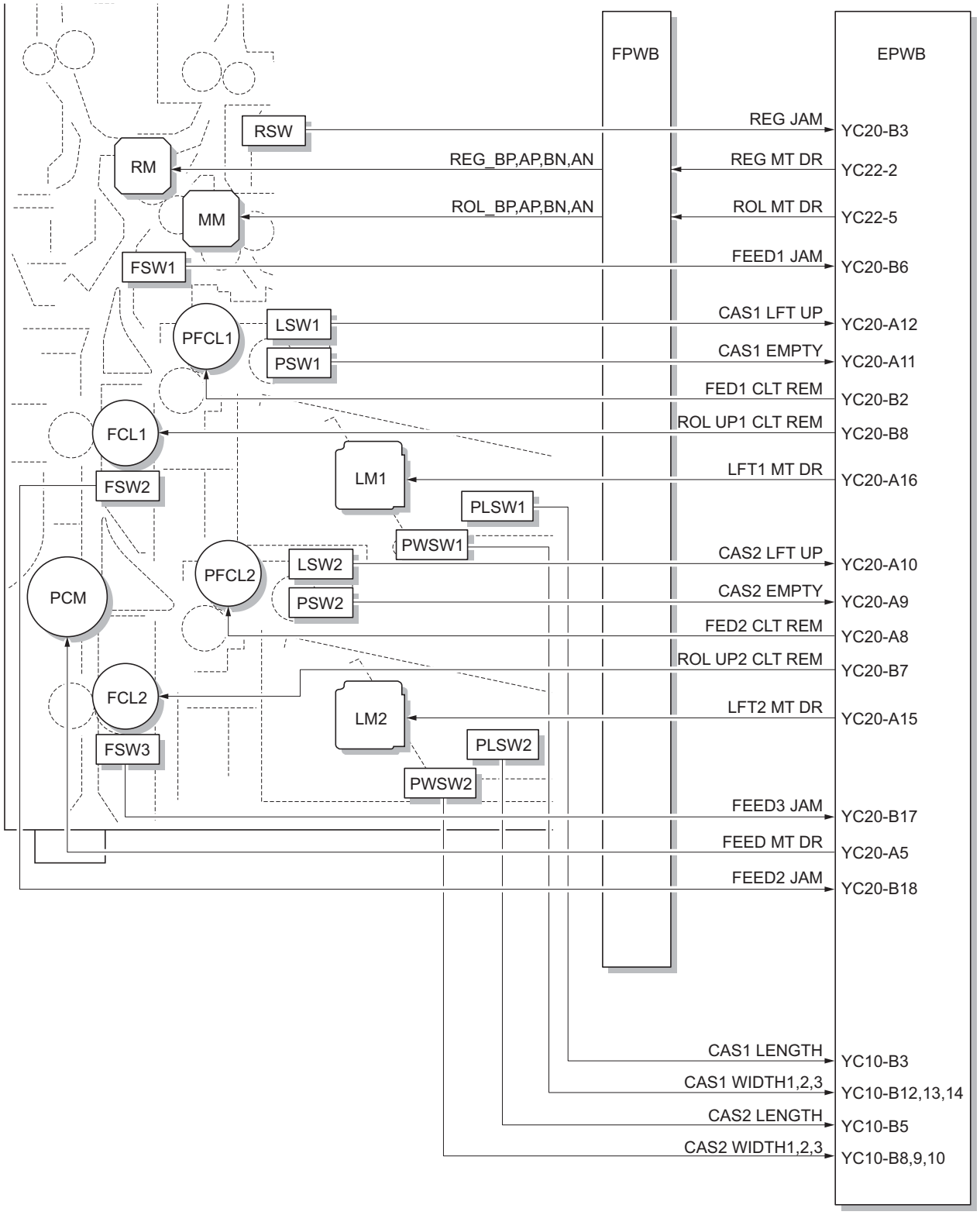


Figure 2-1-2 Cassette paper feed section block diagram (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)

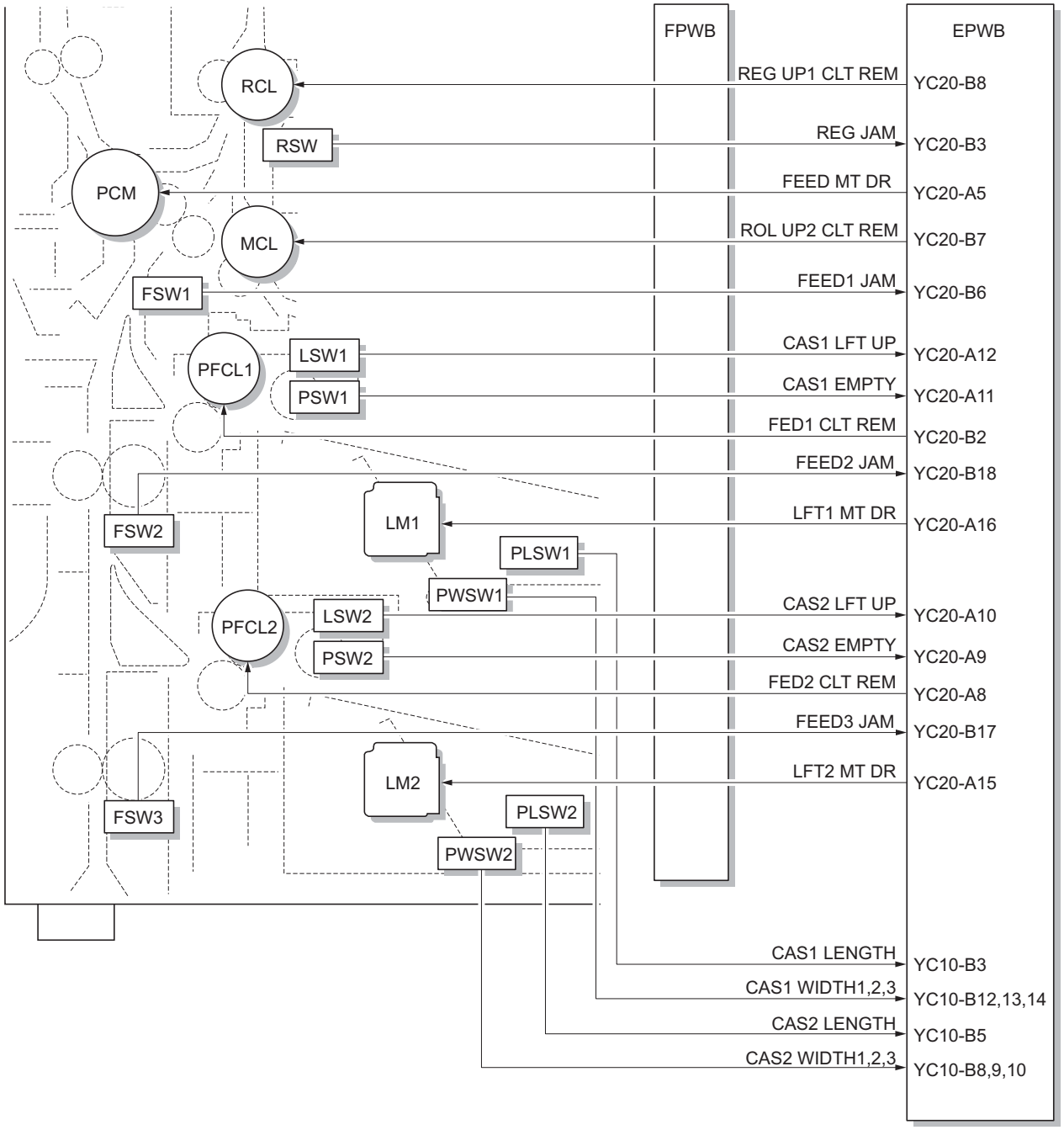


Figure 2-1-3 Cassette paper feed section block diagram (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)

(2) MP tray paper feed section

Pressing the start key activates the MP solenoid (MPSOL) to release the paper stopper, which in turn causes the MP forwarding pulley mounted on the MP support to descend. In turn, the MP forwarding pulley comes in contact with the paper placed on the MP tray is fed forward as the MP forward pulley rotates and forwarded to the MP paper feed pulley and the MP separation pulley. Also during paper feed, the MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

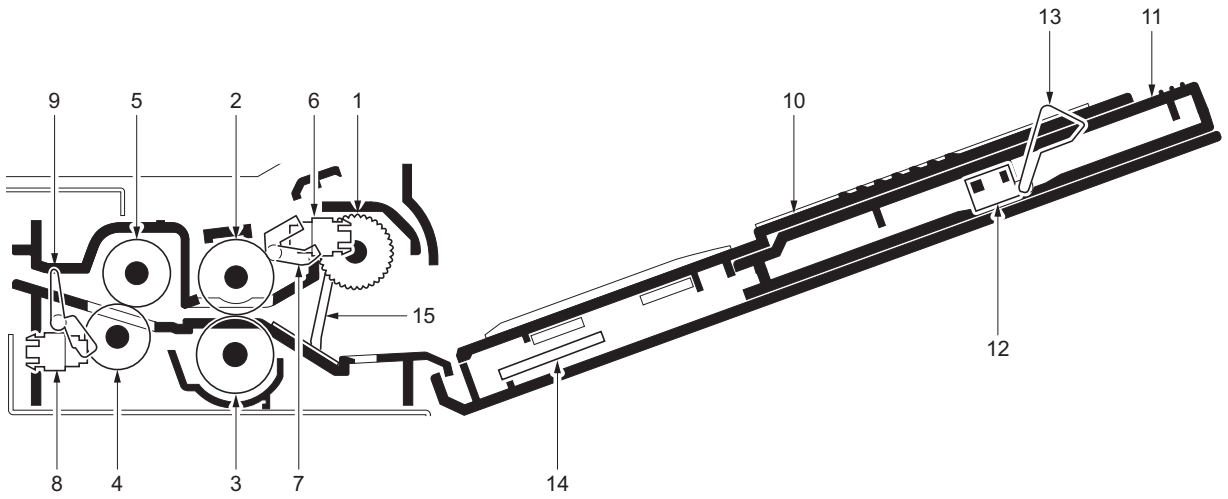


Figure 2-1-4 MP tray paper feed section (1)

(1) MP forwarding pulley
(2) MP paper feed pulley
(3) MP separate pulley
(4) MP middle roller
(5) MP middle pulley
(6) MP paper switch (MPPSW)
(7) Actuator (MP paper switch)
(8) MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW)
(9) Actuator (MP paper feed switch)
(10) MP table
(11) MP tray extension
(12) MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW)
(13) Actuator (MP paper size length switch)
(14) MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW)
(15) Paper stopper

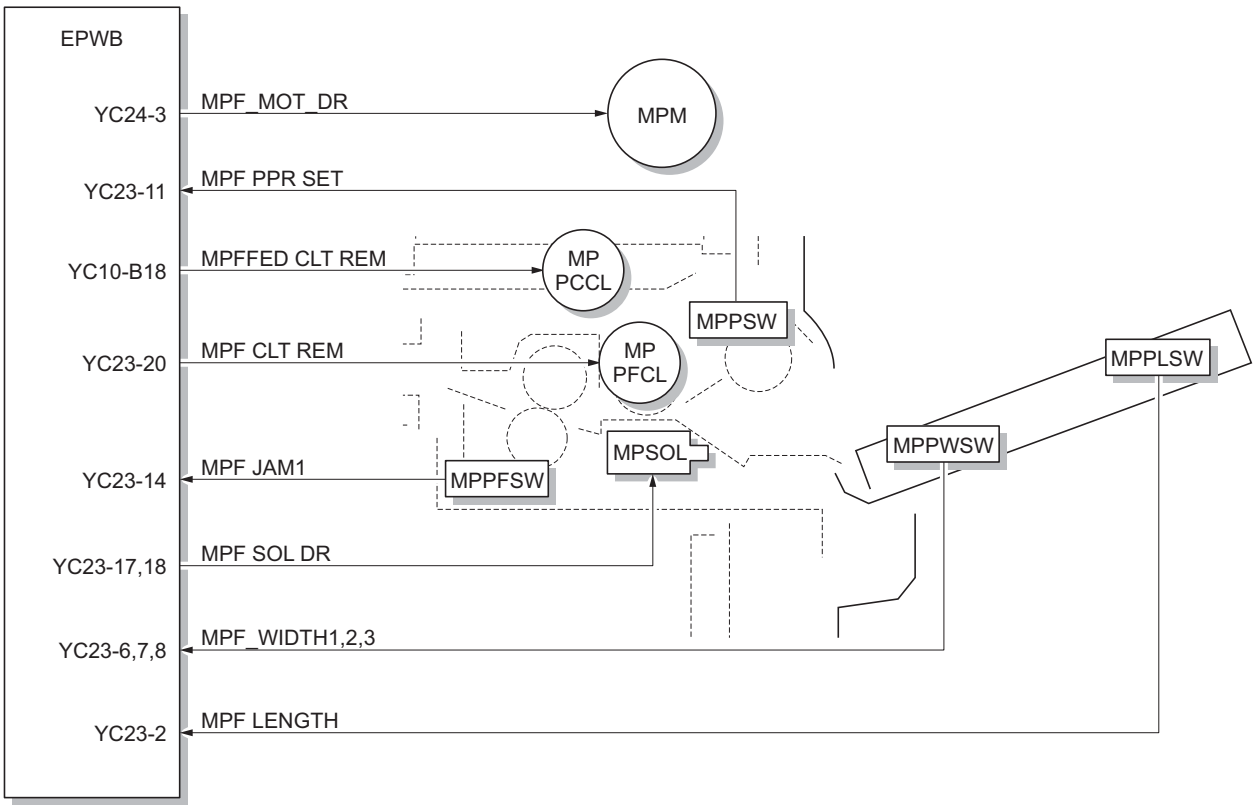


Figure 2-1-5 MP tray paper feed section block diagram (1)

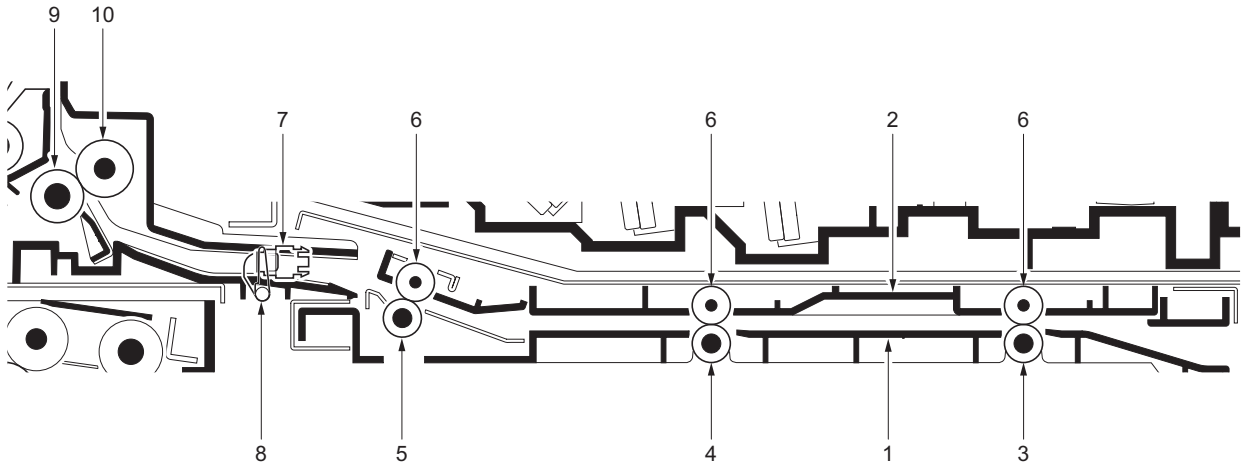


Figure 2-1-6 MP tray paper feed section (2)

(1) MP paper conveying base
(2) MP paper conveying cover
(3) MP paper conveying roller 1
(4) MP paper conveying roller 2
(5) MP paper conveying roller 3
(6) MP paper conveying pulley
(7) MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)
(8) Actuator (MP paper conveying switch)
(9) Middle roller
(10) Middle pulley

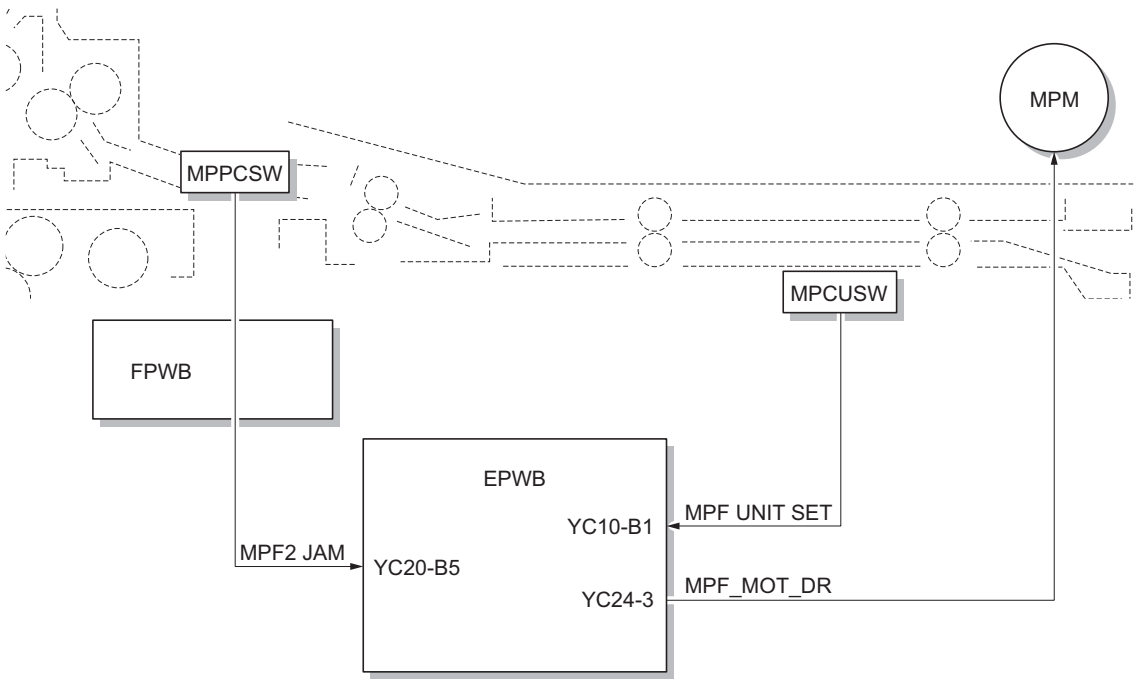


Figure 2-1-7 MP tray paper feed section block diagram (2)

2-1-2 Drum section

(1) Drum section

The drum section consists of the charger roller unit, drum and cleaning section. The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a charger roller to form a latent image on the surface. The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade and the cleaning roller which remove residual toner from the drum surface after transfer. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging.
.

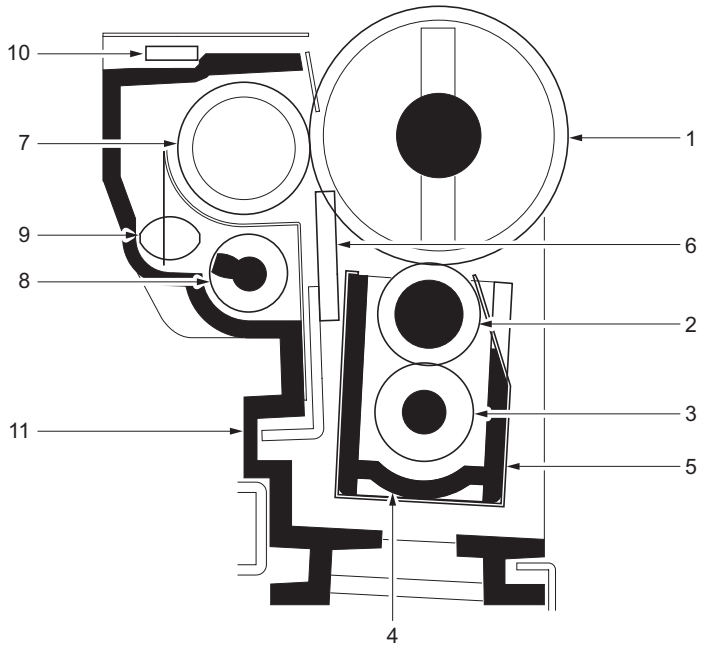


Figure 2-1-8 Drum section

(1) Drum
(2) Charger roller
(3) Charger cleaning roller
(4) Charger roller holder
(5) Charger shield
(6) Cleaning blade
(7) Cleaning roller
(8) Drum screw
(9) Drum roller
(10) Cleaning lamp (CL)
(11) Drum frame

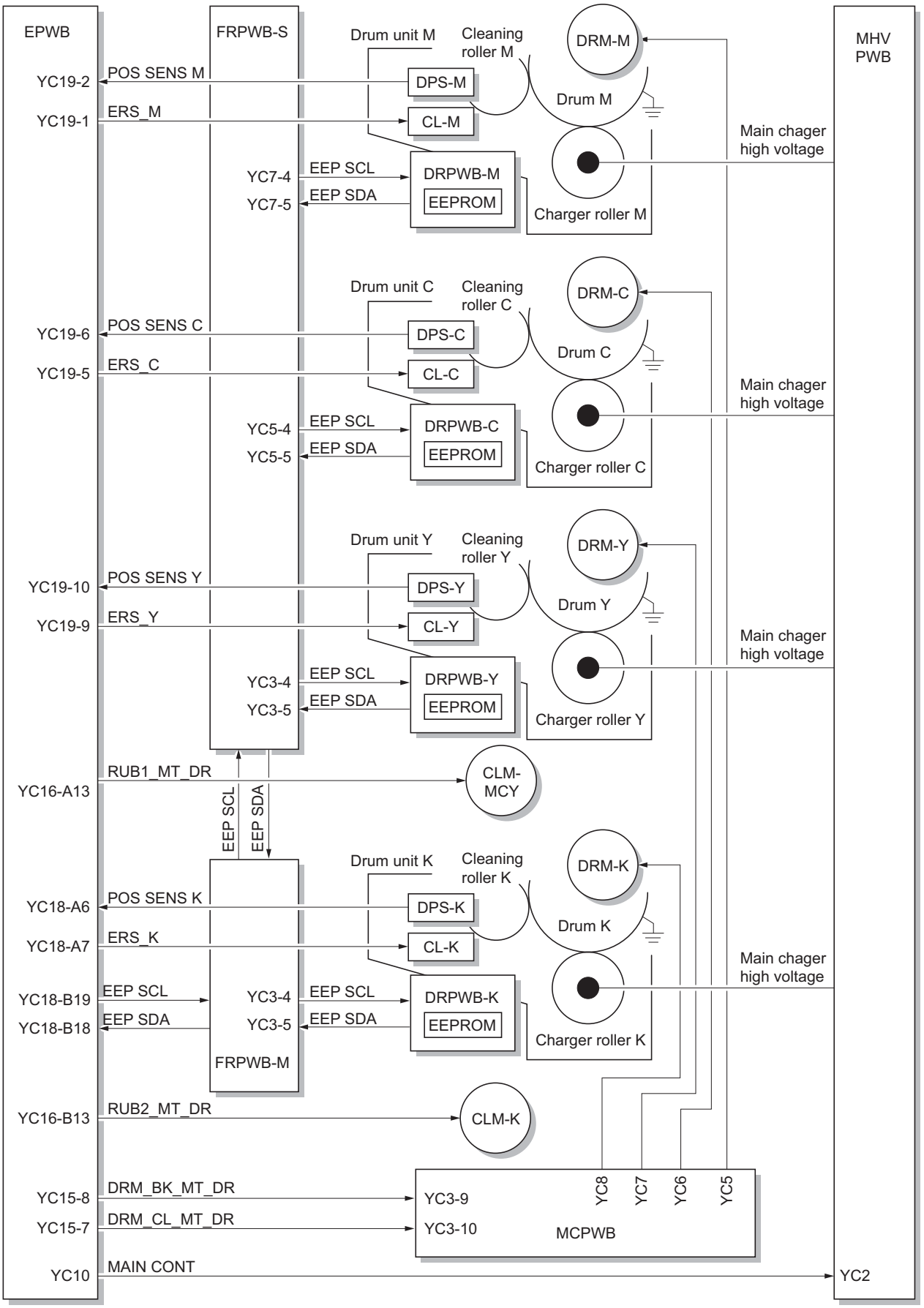


Figure 2-1-9 Drum section block diagram

2-1-3 Developing section

(1) Developing section

The dual component developing system develops magnetic brushes (of developer) around the magnet roller. The toner moves onto the sleeve roller which is positioned parallel to the drum and generates a thin layer of toner. The sleeve roller is pressed against the drum with the DS pulley for developing static latent image.

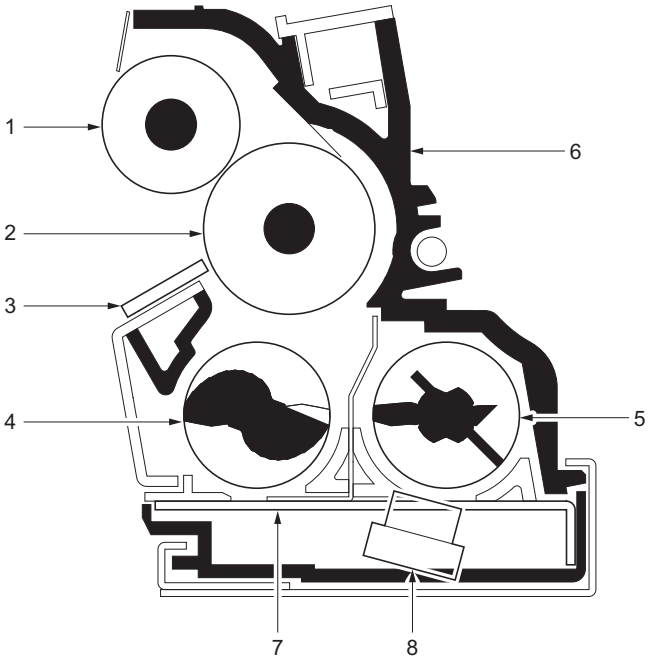


Figure 2-1-10 Developing section

(1) Sleeve roller
(2) Magnet roller
(3) Developing blade
(4) Developing screw A
(5) Developing screw B
(6) Developing case
(7) Developing lid
(8) Toner sensor (TS)

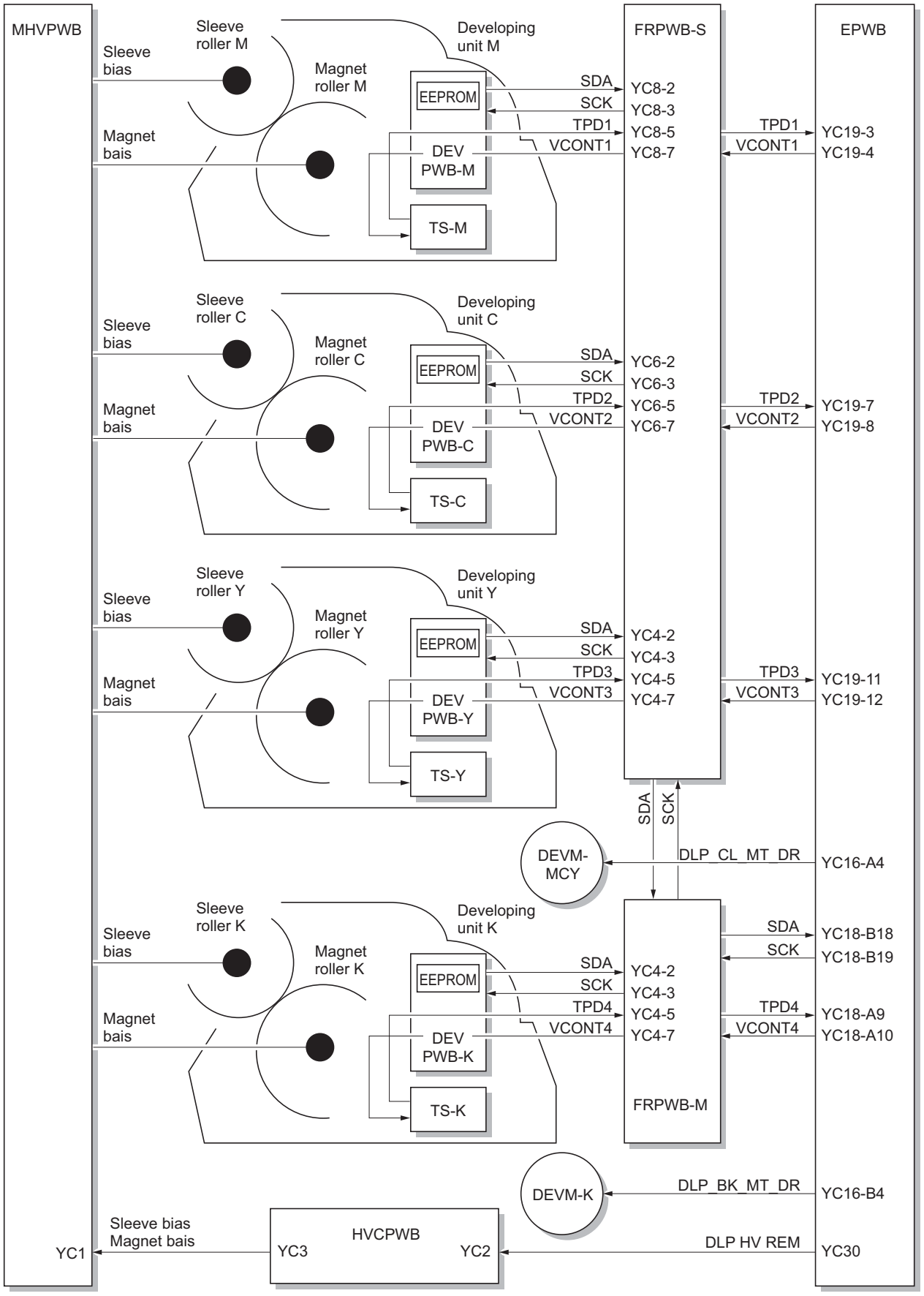


Figure 2-1-11 Developing section block diagram

2-1-4 Optical section

The optical section consists of the scanner, mirror frame and image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner unit for printing.

(1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD in the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) via the three mirrors and lens, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal. The mirror frame A and B travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frame B is half the speed of the mirror frame A.

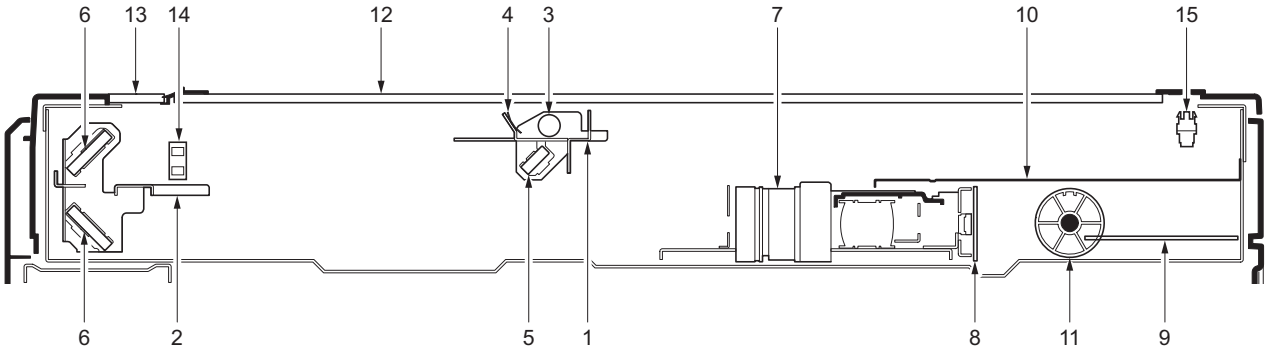


Figure 2-1-12 Image scanner section

(1) Mirror frame A
(2) Mirror frame B
(3) Exposure lamp (EL)
(4) Scanner reflector
(5) Mirror A
(6) Mirror B
(7) ISU lens
(8) CCD PWB (CCDPWB)
(9) ISC PWB (ISCPWB)
(10) ISU cover
(11) Scanner wire drum
(12) Contact glass
(13) Slit glass
(14) Home position switch (HPSW)
(15) Original detection switch (ODSW)

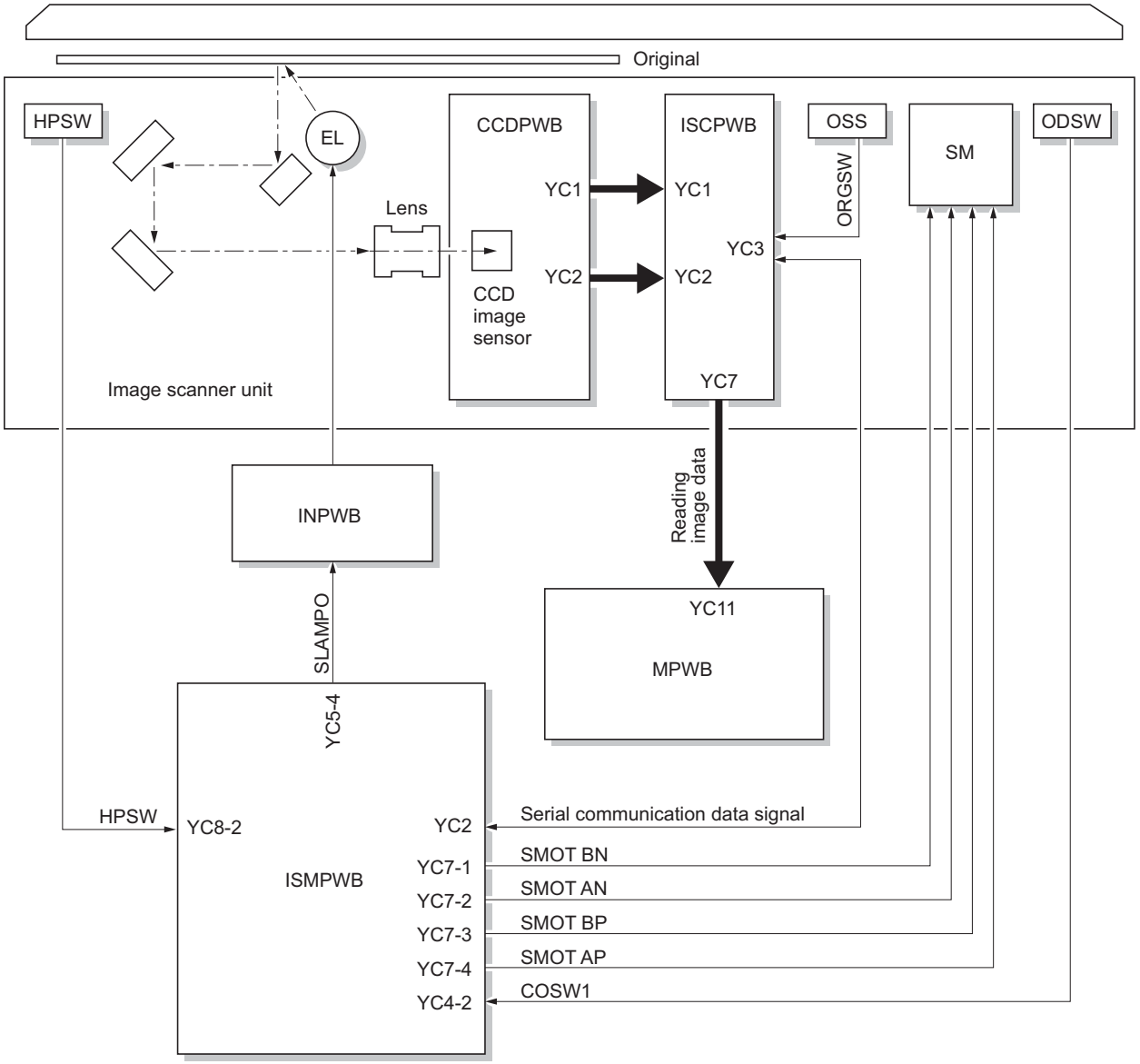


Figure 2-1-13 Image scanner section block diagram

(2) Laser scanner section

The image data scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted from engine PWB (EPWB) as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.

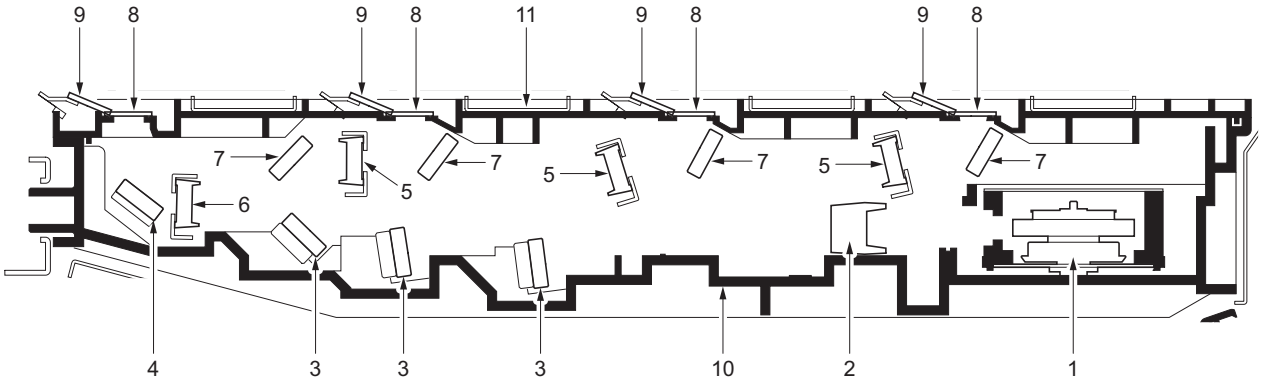


Figure 2-1-14 Laser scanner section

(1) Polygon motor (PM)
(2) Lens A
(3) Mirror A
(4) Mirror K
(5) Lens B
(6) Lens K
(7) Mirror B
(8) Dust shield glass
(9) LSU blade
(10) Scanner frame
(11) Scanner lid

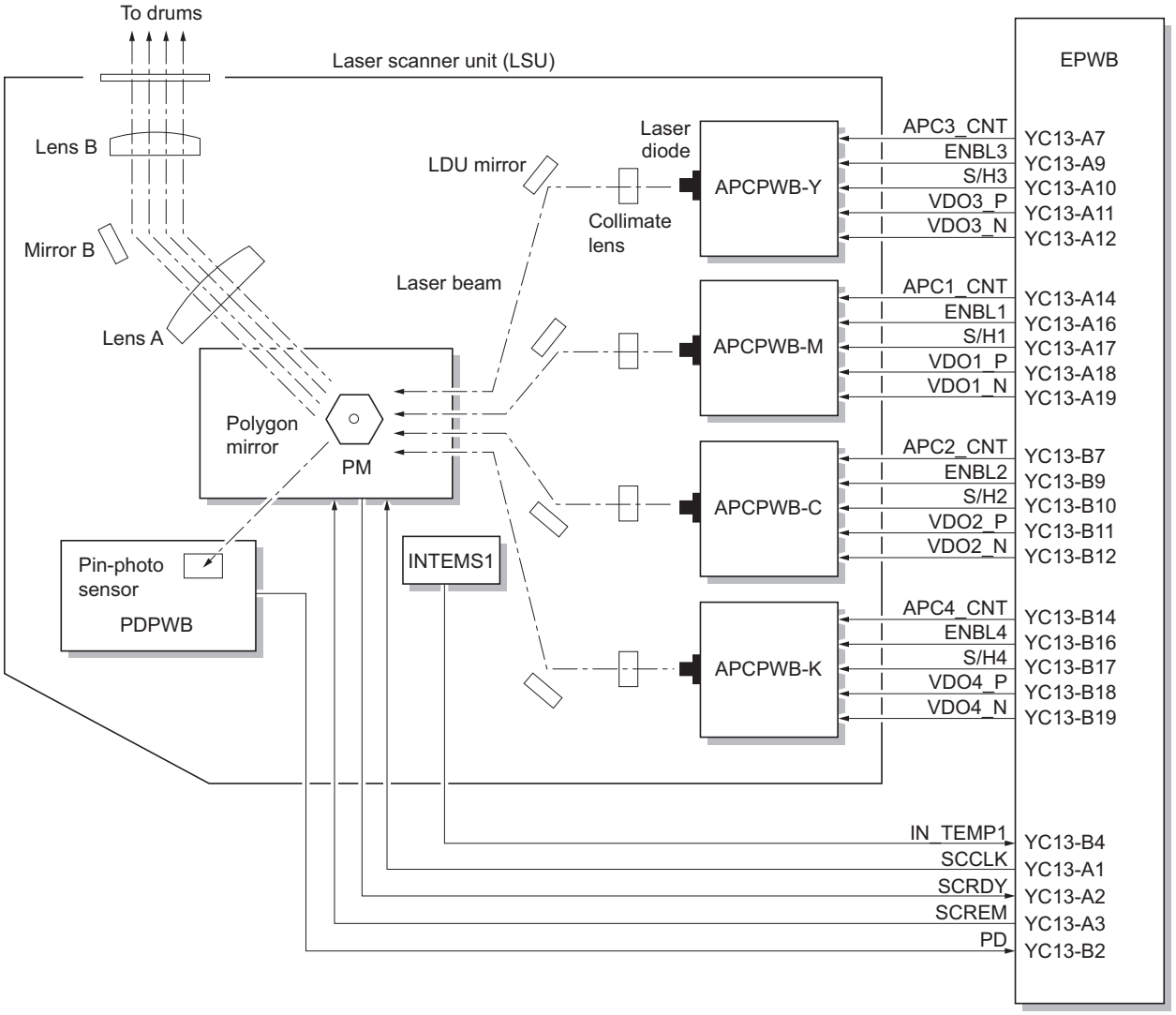


Figure 2-1-15 Laser scanner section block diagram

2-1-5 Transfer/separation section

(1) Primary transfer section

There are four primary transfer rollers opposed to each color drum inside of transfer belt, toner on the drum is transferred to transfer belt by impressed bias voltage (minus). Remaining toner on the transfer belt is cleaned by fur brush.

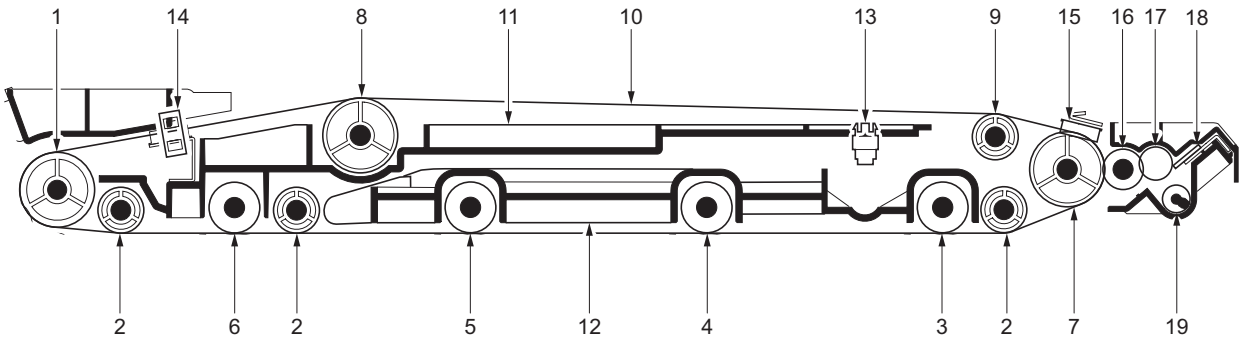


Figure 2-1-16 Primary transfer section

(1) Drive roller
(2) Backup roller
(3) Primary transfer roller M
(4) Primary transfer roller C
(5) Primary transfer roller Y
(6) Primary transfer roller K
(7) Tension roller
(8) Sensor belt roller
(9) Idle roller
(10) Transfer belt
(11) Transfer frame
(12) Transfer inner frame
(13) Color release sensor (CRS)
(14) Transfer position sensor (TPS)
(15) Pre brush
(16) Fur brush
(17) Sweep roller
(18) ICL blade
(19) ICL screw

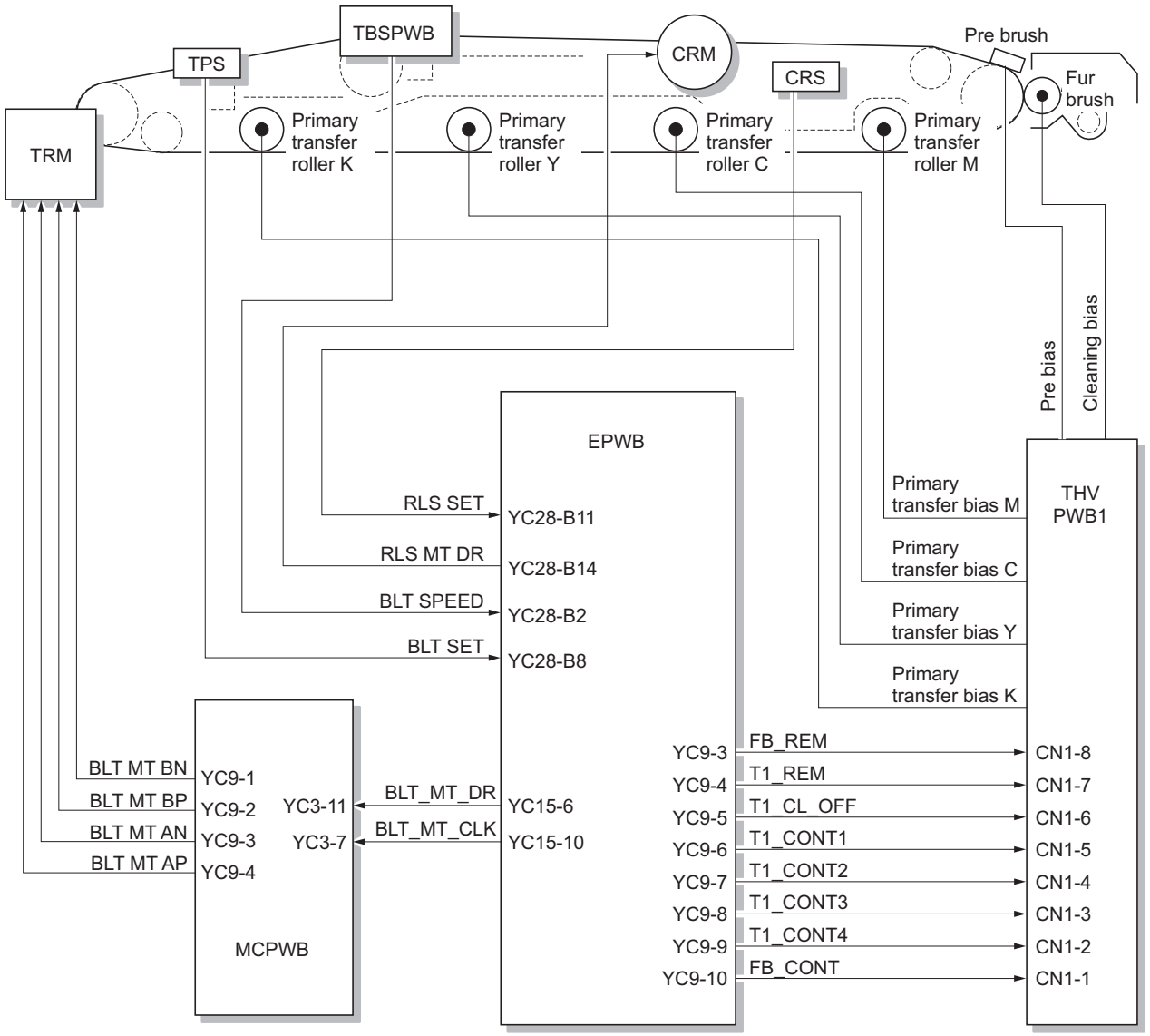


Figure 2-1-17 Primary transfer section block diagram

(2) Secondary transfer/separation section

The secondary transfer/separation section consists mainly of the transfer (TC) roller and separation discharge plate.
A high voltage generated by the transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2) is applied to the transfer (TC) roller for secondary transfer charging. Paper after secondary transfer is separated from the transfer (TC) roller by applying separation bias that is output from the transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2) to the separation discharge plate.

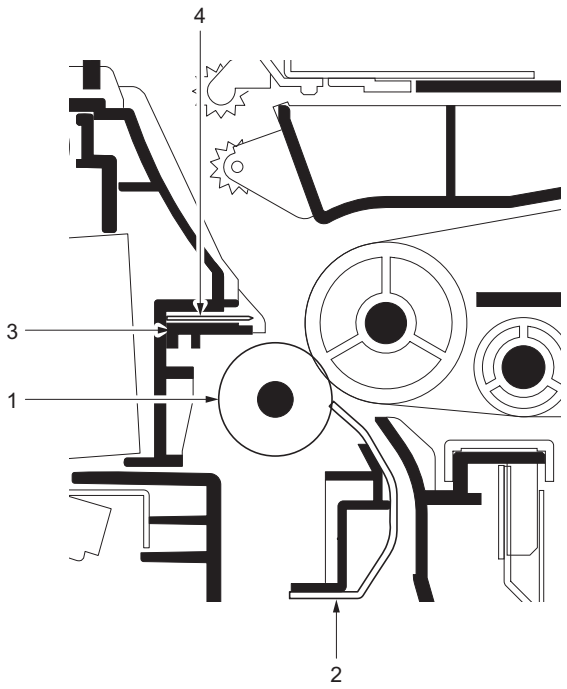


Figure 2-1-18 Secondary transfer/separation section

(1) Secondary transfer roller
(2) Left transfer guide
(3) Discharge holder
(4) Separation discharge plate

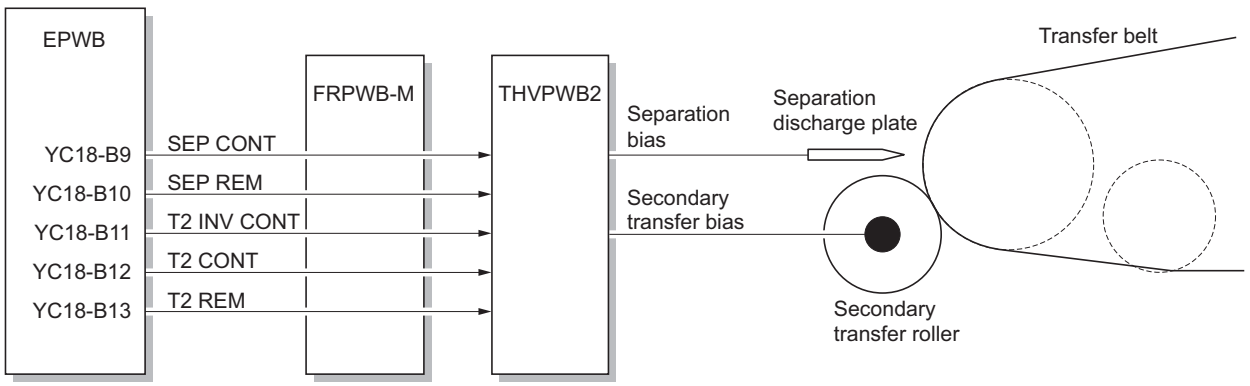


Figure 2-1-19 Secondary transfer /separation section block diagram

2-1-6 Fuser section

(1) Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in figure below. When paper reaches the fuser section after the secondary transfer process, it passes between the press roller and melt belt. Pressure is applied by the fuser unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The melt belt is heated by fuser heaters 1 (FH1) or 2 (FH2) inside the heat roller. The press roller is heated by fuser heater 3 (FH3) (40/40, 50/40 ppm model only).

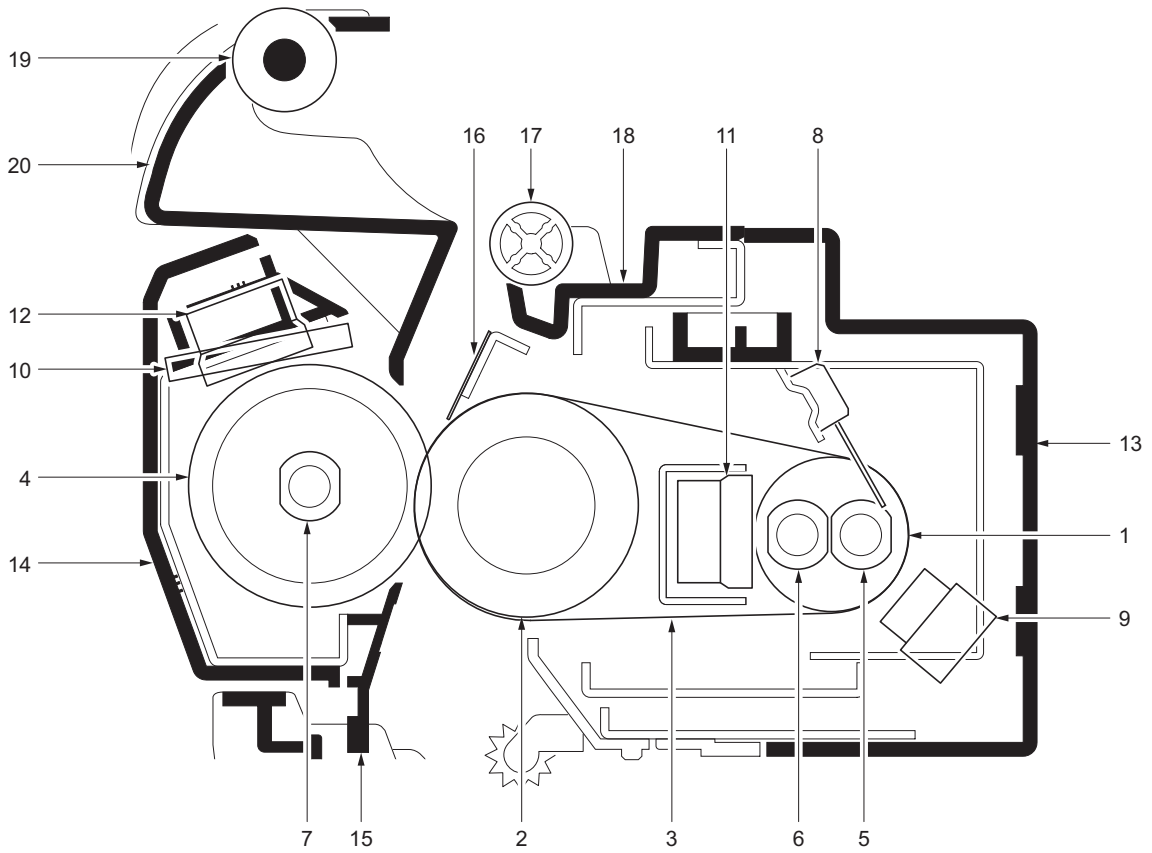


Figure 2-1-20 Fuser section

(1) Heat roller
(2) Fuser roller
(3) Melt belt
(4) Press roller
(5) Fuser heater 1 (FH1)
(6) Fuser heater 2 (FH2)
(7) Fuser heater 3 (FH3)*
(8) Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1)
(9) Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2)
(10) Fuser thermistor 3 (FTH3)*
(11) Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)
(12) Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)*
(13) Right fuser cover
(14) Left fuser cover
(15) Fuser entry guide
(16) Fuser charge erasing brush
(17) Fuser eject pulley
(18) Right eject guide
(19) Feedshift roller
(20) Left eject guide

*: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.

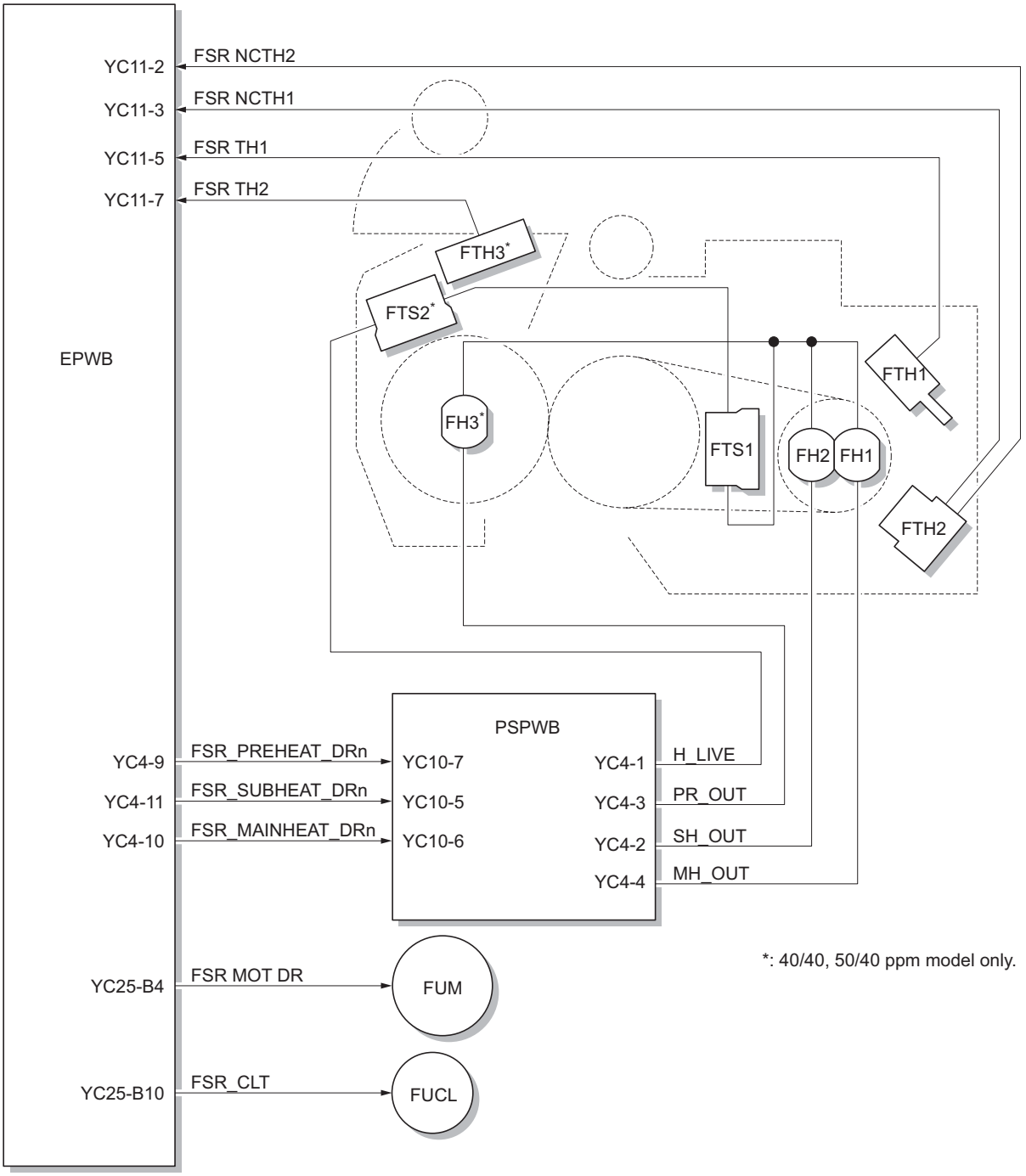


Figure 2-1-21 Fuser section block diagram

2-1-7 Eject/feedshift section

(1) Eject/feedshift section

The eject/feedshift sections switch the paper path based on the copy mode and eject paper or convey the paper to the duplex section or job separator. For duplex copy mode, the paper for which copying on the rear side has been completed is conveyed to the duplex section by the feedshift section operation.
When paper is ejected to the finisher or the job separator tray, the paper path is switched by rotation of the rotary guide to convey the paper into the job separator.

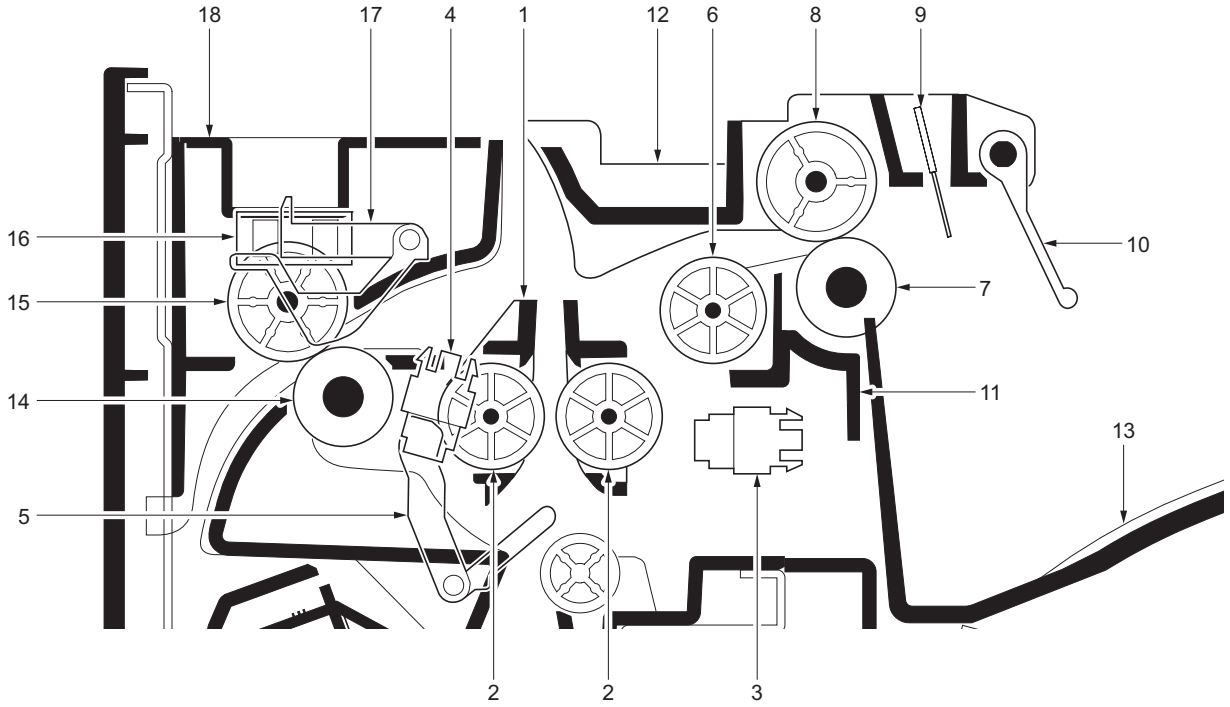


Figure 2-1-22 Eject/feedshift section

(1) Rotary guide
(2) Eject pulley
(3) Rotary guide sensor (RGS)
(4) Eject switch (ESW)
(5) Actuator (eject switch)
(6) Eject pulley
(7) Eject roller
(8) Eject pulley B
(9) Eject charge erasing brush
(10) Actuator (paper full sensor)
(11) Lower eject frame
(12) Upper eject frame
(13) Output tray
(14) Feedshift roller
(15) Middle pulley
(16) Feedshift switch (FSSW)
(17) Actuator (feedshift switch)
(18) Left eject frame

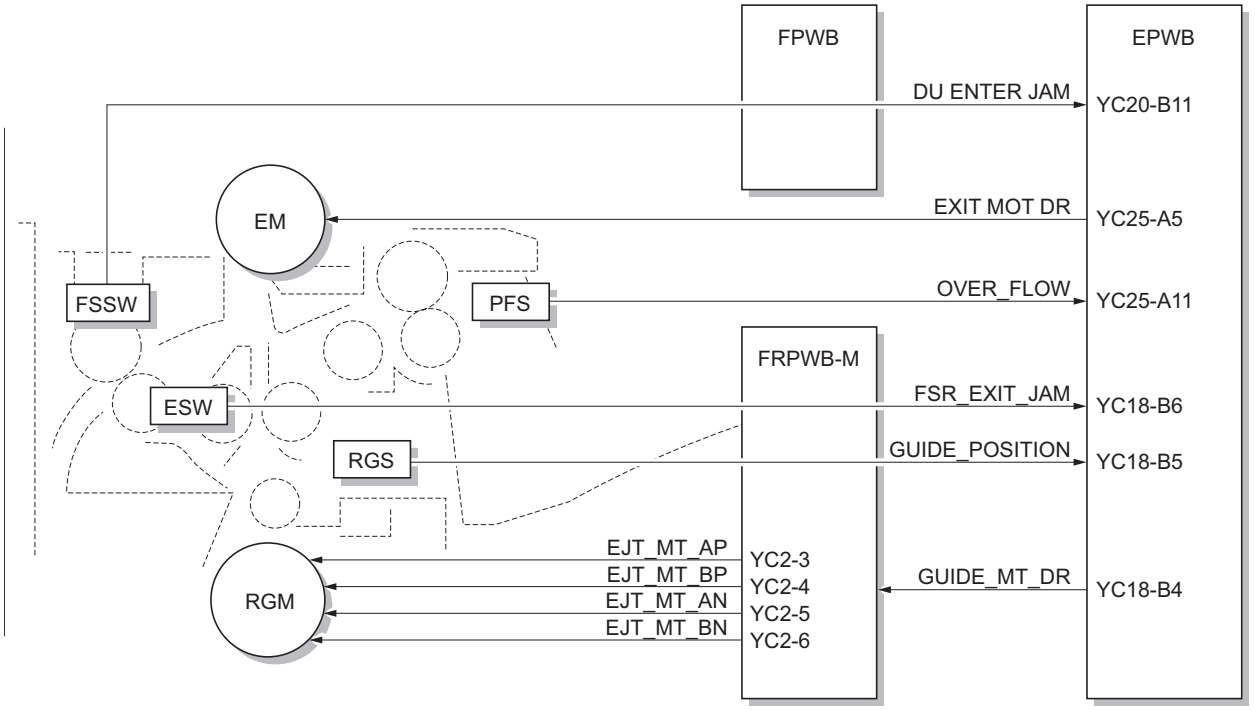


Figure 2-1-23 Eject/feedshift section block diagram

2-1-8 Duplex section

(1) Duplex section

In duplex mode, after printing on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the feedshift section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the duplex B roller and duplex A roller.

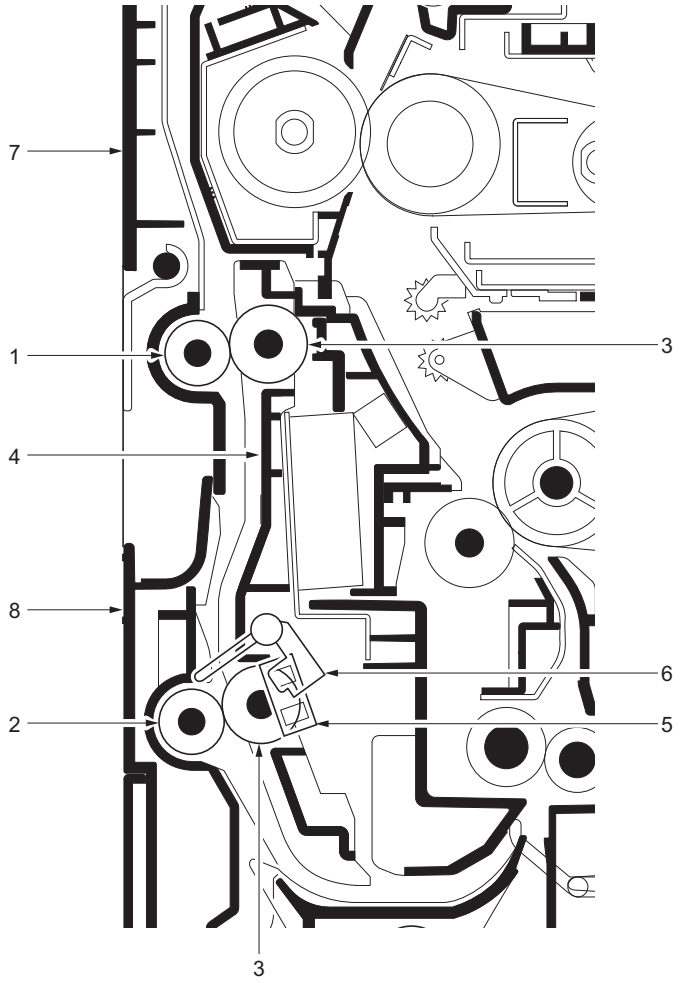


Figure 2-1-24 Duplex section

(1) Duplex A roller
(2) Duplex B roller
(3) Middle pulley
(4) Duplex frame
(5) Duplex switch (DUSW)
(6) Actuator (duplex switch)
(7) Left cover 1
(8) Left cover 2

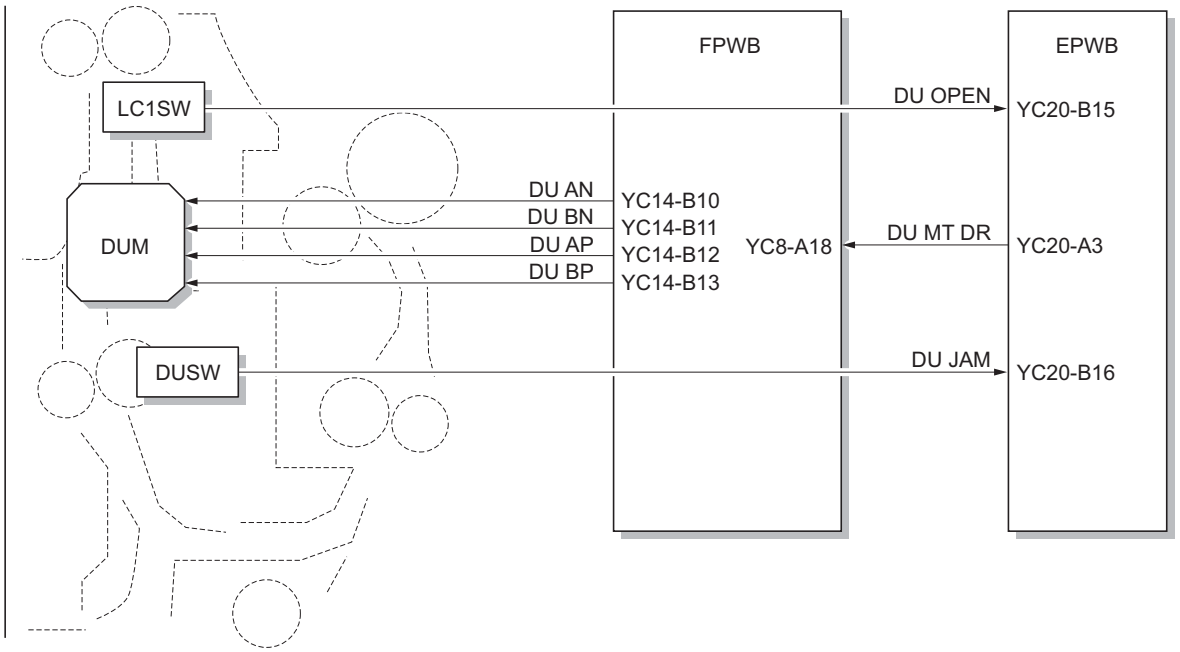


Figure 2-1-25 Duplex section block diagram

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs

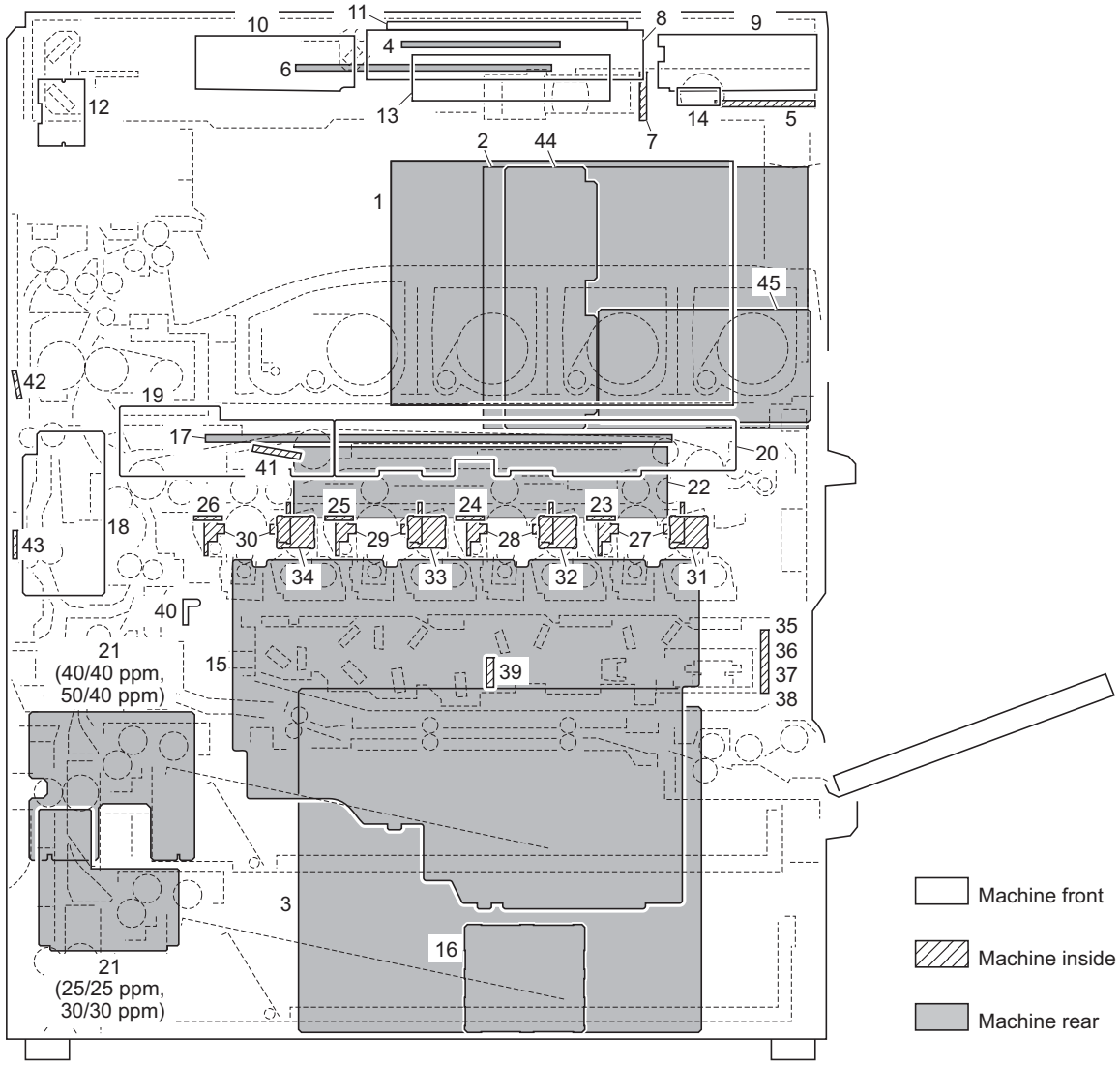


Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

1. Engine PWB (EPWB)..... Controls the other PWBs, electrical components and optional devices.
2. Main PWB (MPWB) ..... Controls the image processing and operation panel.
3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) ..... Generates +24 V DC, +12 V DC and 5 V DC; controls the fuser heaters.
4. ISM PWB (ISMPWB) ..... Controls the scanner section.
5. ISC PWB (ISCPWB) ..... Controls the shading correction and AGC of CCD.
6. Inverter PWB (INPWB) ..... Controls the exposure lamp.
7. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)..... Reads the image of originals.
8. Main operation PWB (OPWB-M) ..... Controls touch panel and LCD indication.
9. Right operation PWB (OPWB-R) ..... Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.
10. Left operation PWB (OPWB-L) ..... Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.
11. Upper operation PWB (OPWB-U)..... Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.
12. Front operation PWB (OPWB-F)..... Consists of the display LEDs.
13. LCD PWB (LCDPWB)..... Controls LCD indication.
14. LCD inverter PWB (LINPWB) ..... Controls LCD back light.
15. Main high voltage PWB (MHVPWB) ..... Generates high voltage for main charger high voltage and developing bias.
16. High voltage control PWB (HVCPWB)..... Controls high voltage for developing bias.

17. Transfer high voltage PWB 1 (THVPWB1) .. Generates high voltage for primary transfer bias and primary transfer cleaning bias.
18. Transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2) .. Generates high voltage for secondary transfer bias and separation bias.
19. Main front PWB (FRPWB-M) ..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and developing unit K and each electrical component.
20. Sub front PWB (FRPWB-S) ..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and developing unit M,C,Y and each electrical component.
21. Feed PWB (FPWB)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and each electrical component (paper feed section and etc.).
22. Motor control PWB (MCPWB)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and drum motors and transfer motor.
23. Drum PWB M (DRPWB-M) ..... Drum individual information in EEPROM storage on the drum unit M.
24. Drum PWB C (DRPWB-C)..... Drum individual information in EEPROM storage on the drum unit C.
25. Drum PWB Y (DRPWB-Y) ..... Drum individual information in EEPROM storage on the drum unit Y.
26. Drum PWB K (DRPWB-K) ..... Drum individual information in EEPROM storage on the drum unit K.
27. Encoder PWB M (ECPWB-M)..... Controls the drum motor M.
28. Encoder PWB C (ECPWB-C) ..... Controls the drum motor C.
29. Encoder PWB Y (ECPWB-Y)..... Controls the drum motor Y.
30. Encoder PWB K (ECPWB-K)..... Controls the drum motor K.
31. Developing PWB M (DEVPWB-M)..... Relays wirings from electrical components on the developing unit M.
32. Developing PWB C (DEVPWB-C) ..... Relays wirings from electrical components on the developing unit C.
33. Developing PWB Y (DEVPWB-Y)..... Relays wirings from electrical components on the developing unit Y.
34. Developing PWB K (DEVPWB-K)..... Relays wirings from electrical components on the developing unit K.
35. APC PWB M (APCPWB-M) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Magenta)
36. APC PWB C (APCPWB-C)..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Cyan)
37. APC PWB Y (APCPWB-Y) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Yellow)
38. APC PWB K (APCPWB-K) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Black)
39. PD PWB (PDPWB) ..... Detects horizontal synchronizing timing of laser beam.
40. Waste toner full PWB (WTFPWB)..... Detects the waste toner box being full.
41. Transfer belt speed PWB (TBSPWB) ..... Detects the rotation speed of the transfer belt.
42. JAM LED PWB 1 (JLEDPWB1) ..... Controls LED indication.
43. JAM LED PWB 2 (JLEDPWB2) ..... Controls LED indication.
44. Interface PWB (IFPWB) ..... Consists of wiring relay circuits between main PWB and Fax control PWB.
45. Fax control PWB (FCPWB)* ..... Modulates, demodulates, compresses, decompresses and smoothes out image data, and converts resolution of image data.

*: Option

List of correspondences of PWB names

No.	Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list
1	Engine PWB (EPWB)	PARTS PWB ENGINE ASSY SP
2	Main PWB (MPWB)	PARTS PWB MAIN ASSY SP
3	Power source PWB (PSPWB)	PARTS UNIT LOW VOLTAGE
4	ISM PWB (ISMPWB)	PARTS PWB ISM ASSY SP
5	ISC PWB (ISCPWB)	PARTS PWB ISC ASSY SP
6	Inverter PWB (INPWB)	PARTS UNIT LAMP INVERTER
7	CCD PWB (CCDPWB)	-
8	Main operation PWB (OPWB-M)	PARTS PWB PANEL MAIN ASSY SP
9	Right operation PWB (OPWB-R)	PARTS PWB PANEL RIGHT ASSY SP
10	Left operation PWB (OPWB-L)	PARTS PWB PANEL LEFT ASSY SP
11	Upper operation PWB (OPWB-U)	OPERATION UPPER PWB ASS'Y
12	Front operation PWB (OPWB-F)	OPERATION FRONT PWB ASS'Y
13	LCD PWB (LCDPWB)	LCD OPERATION
14	LCD inverter PWB (LINPWB)	LCD INVERTER
15	Main high voltage PWB (MHVPWB)	PARTS UNIT HIGH VOLTAGE MAIN
16	High voltage control PWB (HVCPWB)	PARTS PWB HVU CONTROL ASSY SP
17	Transfer high voltage PWB 1 (THVPWB1)	PARTS UNIT HIGH VOLTAGE TRANSFER1
18	Transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2)	HVU TRANSFER 2
19	Main front PWB (FRPWB-M)	PARTS PWB FRONT MAIN ASSY SP
20	Sub front PWB (FRPWB-S)	PARTS PWB FRONT SUB ASSY SP
21	Feed PWB (FPWB)	PARTS PWB FEED ASSY SP
22	Motor control PWB (MCPWB)	PARTS PWB MOTOR CONTROL ASSY SP
23	Drum PWB M (DRPWB-M)	-
24	Drum PWB C (DRPWB-C)	-
25	Drum PWB Y (DRPWB-Y)	-
26	Drum PWB K (DRPWB-K)	-
27	Encoder PWB M (ECPWB-M)	-
28	Encoder PWB C (ECPWB-C)	-
29	Encoder PWB Y (ECPWB-Y)	-
30	Encoder PWB K (ECPWB-K)	-
31	Developing PWB M (DEVPWB-M)	-
32	Developing PWB C (DEVPWB-C)	-
33	Developing PWB Y (DEVPWB-Y)	-
34	Developing PWB K (DEVPWB-K)	-
35	APC PWB M (APCPWB-M)	-
36	APC PWB C (APCPWB-C)	-
37	APC PWB Y (APCPWB-Y)	-
38	APC PWB K (APCPWB-K)	-
39	PD PWB (PDPWB)	-
40	Waste toner full PWB (WTFPWB)	PRINTED W.BOARD TONER FULL ASSY
41	Transfer belt speed PWB (TBSPWB)	-
42	JAM LED PWB 1 (JLEDPWB1)	PARTS PWB LED ASSY SP
43	JAM LED PWB 2 (JLEDPWB2)	PARTS PWB LED ASSY SP
44	Interface PWB (IFPWB)	PARTS PWB KUIO IF ASSY SP
45	Fax control PWB (FCPWB)	-

(2) Switches and sensors

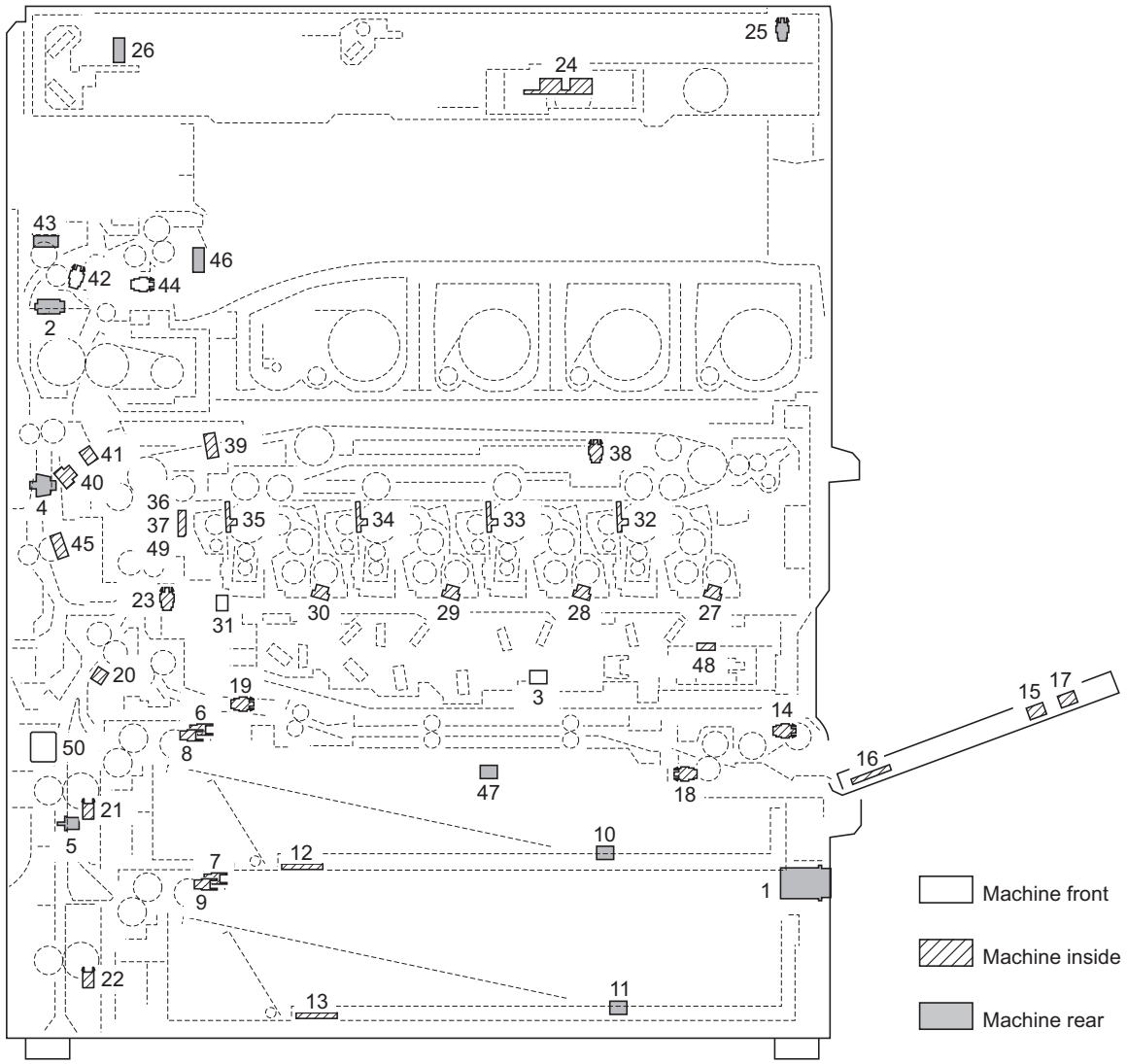


Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors

1. Main power switch (MSW) ..... Turns the AC power on and off.
2. Interlock switch (ILSW) ..... Turns the AC power for the fuser heaters on and off.
3. Front cover switch (FCSW)..... Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened.
4. Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW) ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 1 is opened.
5. Left cover 3 switch (LC3SW) ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 3 is opened.
6. Lift switch 1 (LSW1)..... Detects cassette 1 cassette reaching the upper limit.
7. Lift switch 2 (LSW2)..... Detects cassette 2 cassette reaching the upper limit.
8. Paper switch 1 (PSW1)..... Detects the presence of paper in cassette 1.
9. Paper switch 2 (PSW2)..... Detects the presence of paper in cassette 2.
10. Paper size length switch 1 (PLSW1)..... Detects the length of paper in cassette 1.
11. Paper size length switch 2 (PLSW2)..... Detects the length of paper in cassette 2.
12. Paper size width switch 1 (PWSW1)..... Detects the width of paper in cassette 1.
13. Paper size width switch 2 (PWSW2)..... Detects the width of paper in cassette 2.
14. MP paper switch (MPPSW) ..... Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.
15. MP paper size length switch (MPPLSW) ..... Detects the length of paper on the MP tray.
16. MP paper size width switch (MPPWSW) ..... Detects the width of paper on the MP tray.
17. MP tray switch (MPTSW)..... Detects the MP tray extension is extend.
18. MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the MP tray paper feed section.
19. MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the MP tray paper conveying section.
20. Feed switch 1 (FSW1) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.

21. Feed switch 2 (FSW2) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
22. Feed switch 3 (FSW3) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
23. Registration switch (RSW) ..... Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
24. Original size sensor (OSS) ..... Detects the size of the original.
25. Original detection switch (ODSW) ..... Detects the opening/closing of the original platen (or DP).
26. Home position switch (HPSW) ..... Detects the optical system in the home position.
27. Toner sensor M (TS-M) ..... Detects the toner density in the developing unit M.
28. Toner sensor C (TS-C) ..... Detects the toner density in the developing unit C.
29. Toner sensor Y (TS-Y) ..... Detects the toner density in the developing unit Y.
30. Toner sensor K (TS-K) ..... Detects the toner density in the developing unit K.
31. Waste toner sensor (WTS) ..... Detects when the waste toner box is full.
32. Drum position sensor M (DPS-M) ..... Detects positioning of drum rotation (drum unit M).
33. Drum position sensor C (DPS-C) ..... Detects positioning of drum rotation (drum unit C).
34. Drum position sensor Y (DPS-Y) ..... Detects positioning of drum rotation (drum unit Y).
35. Drum position sensor K (DPS-K) ..... Detects positioning of drum rotation (drum unit K).
36. ID sensor 1 (IDS1) ..... Measures image density for color registration.
37. ID sensor 2 (IDS2) ..... Measures image density for color registration.
38. Color release sensor (CRS) ..... Detects separation of secondary transfer rollers M, C, and Y.
39. Transfer position sensor (TPS) ..... Detects positioning of transfer belt rotation.
40. Loop sensor (LS)*1 ..... Detects a paper misfeed. Controls the fuser motor.
41. JAM detection sensor (JDS)*2 ..... Detects a paper misfeed.
42. Eject switch (ESW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper eject section.
43. Feedshift switch (FSSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper feedshift section.
44. Rotary guide sensor (RGS) ..... Detects positioning of rotary guide rotation.
45. Duplex switch (DUSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the duplex section.
46. Paper full sensor (PFS) ..... Detects whether the output tray is full.
47. MP conveying unit switch (MPCUSW) ..... Detects the MP conveying unit.
48. Inner temperature sensor 1 (INTEMS1) ..... Detects the inside temperature.
49. Inner temperature sensor 2 (INTEMS2) ..... Detects the inside temperature.
50. Outer temperature sensor (OUTTEMS) ..... Detects the outside temperature and humidity.

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.
*2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model only.

(3) Motors

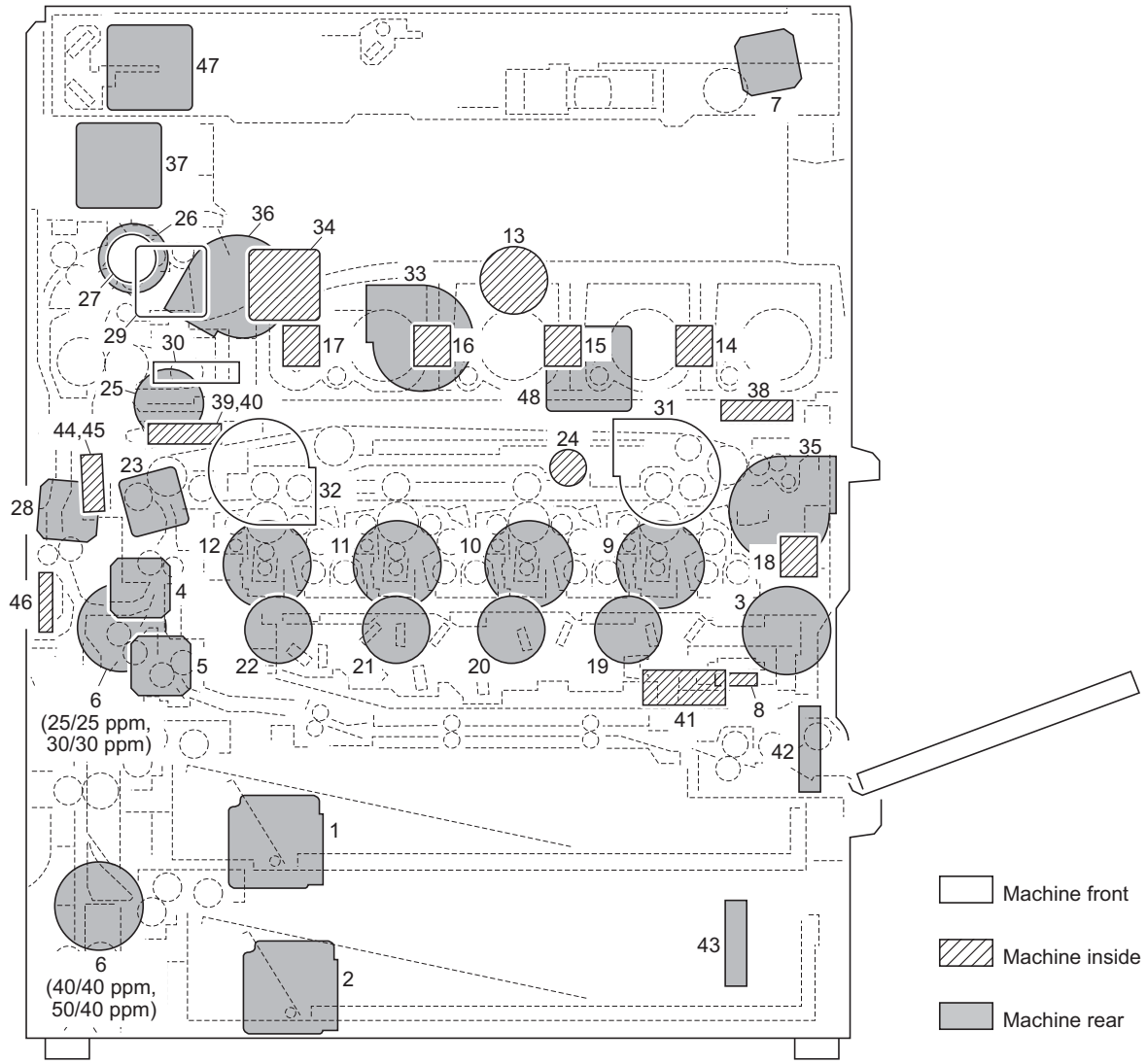


Figure 2-2-3 Motors

1. Lift motor 1 (LM1)..... Drives the cassette operation plate and detects the paper level in cassette 1.
2. Lift motor 2 (LM2)..... Drives the cassette operation plate in and detects the paper level in cassette 2.
3. MP motor (MPM)..... Drives the MP tray paper feed section.
4. Registration motor (RM)* ..... Drives the registration section.
5. Middle motor (MM)* ..... Drives the paper conveying section.
6. Paper conveying motor (PCM)..... Drives the paper feed and paper conveying section.
7. Scanner motor (SM)..... Drives the optical system.
8. Polygon motor (PM) ..... Drives the polygon mirror.
9. Drum motor M (DRM-M) ..... Drives the drum unit M.
10. Drum motor C (DRM-C) ..... Drives the drum unit C.
11. Drum motor Y (DRM-Y) ..... Drives the drum unit Y.
12. Drum motor K (DRM-K) ..... Drives the drum unit K.
13. Toner container motor (TCM)..... Drives the toner container.
14. Toner motor M (TM-M) ..... Replenishes toner to developing unit M
15. Toner motor C (TM-C)..... Replenishes toner to developing unit C
16. Toner motor Y (TM-Y) ..... Replenishes toner to developing unit Y
17. Toner motor K (TM-K) ..... Replenishes toner to developing unit K
18. Waste toner motor (WTM)..... Drives the waste toner conveying system.

19. Developing motor MCY (DEVM-MCY)..... Drives the developing units M,C,Y.
20. Cleaning motor MCY (CLM-MCY) ..... Drives the cleaning rollers M,C,Y.
21. Developing motor K (DEVM-K)..... Drives the developing unit K.
22. Cleaning motor K (CLM-K)..... Drives the cleaning roller K.
23. Transfer motor (TRM) ..... Drives the transfer belt.
24. Color release motor (CRM)..... Drives separation of secondary transfer rollers M, C, and Y.
25. Fuser motor (FUM) ..... Drives the fuser section.
26. Eject motor (EM)..... Drives the eject section.
27. Rotary guide motor (RGM)..... Drives the rotary guide.
28. Duplex motor (DUM)..... Drives duplex section.
29. Rotary fan motor (RFM)..... Cools the rotary guide section.
30. Container fan motor (CFM) ..... Cools the toner container section.
31. Developing fan motor 1 (DEVFM1)..... Cools the developing section.
32. Developing fan motor 2 (DEVFM2)..... Cools the developing section.
33. Developing fan motor 3 (DEVFM3)..... Cools the developing section.
34. Developing fan motor 4 (DEVFM4)..... Cools the toner container section.
35. Developing fan motor 5 (DEVFM5)..... Cools the transfer belt section.
36. Fuser fan motor (FUFM) ..... Cools the fuser section.
37. Eject fan motor (EFM)..... Cools the eject section.
38. Transfer fan motor 1 (TRFM1) ..... Cools the transfer belt.
39. Transfer fan motor 2 (TRFM2) ..... Stabilizes the paper conveying in the transfer section.
40. Transfer fan motor 3 (TRFM3)*..... Stabilizes the paper conveying in the transfer section.
41. LSU fan motor (LSUFM)*..... Cools the LSU.
42. Power source fan motor 1 (PSFM1) ..... Cools the high voltage PWB and power source PWB.
43. Power source fan motor 2 (PSFM2) ..... Cools the high voltage PWB and power source PWB.
44. Paper conveying fan motor 1 (PCFM1) ..... Cools the paper conveying section.
45. Paper conveying fan motor 2 (PCFM2) ..... Cools the paper conveying section.
46. Loop fan motor (LFM)*..... Cools the loop sensor.
47. Scanner fan motor (SFM) ..... Cools the optical section.
48. Main fan motor (MFM) ..... Cools the main PWB.

*: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.

(4) Others

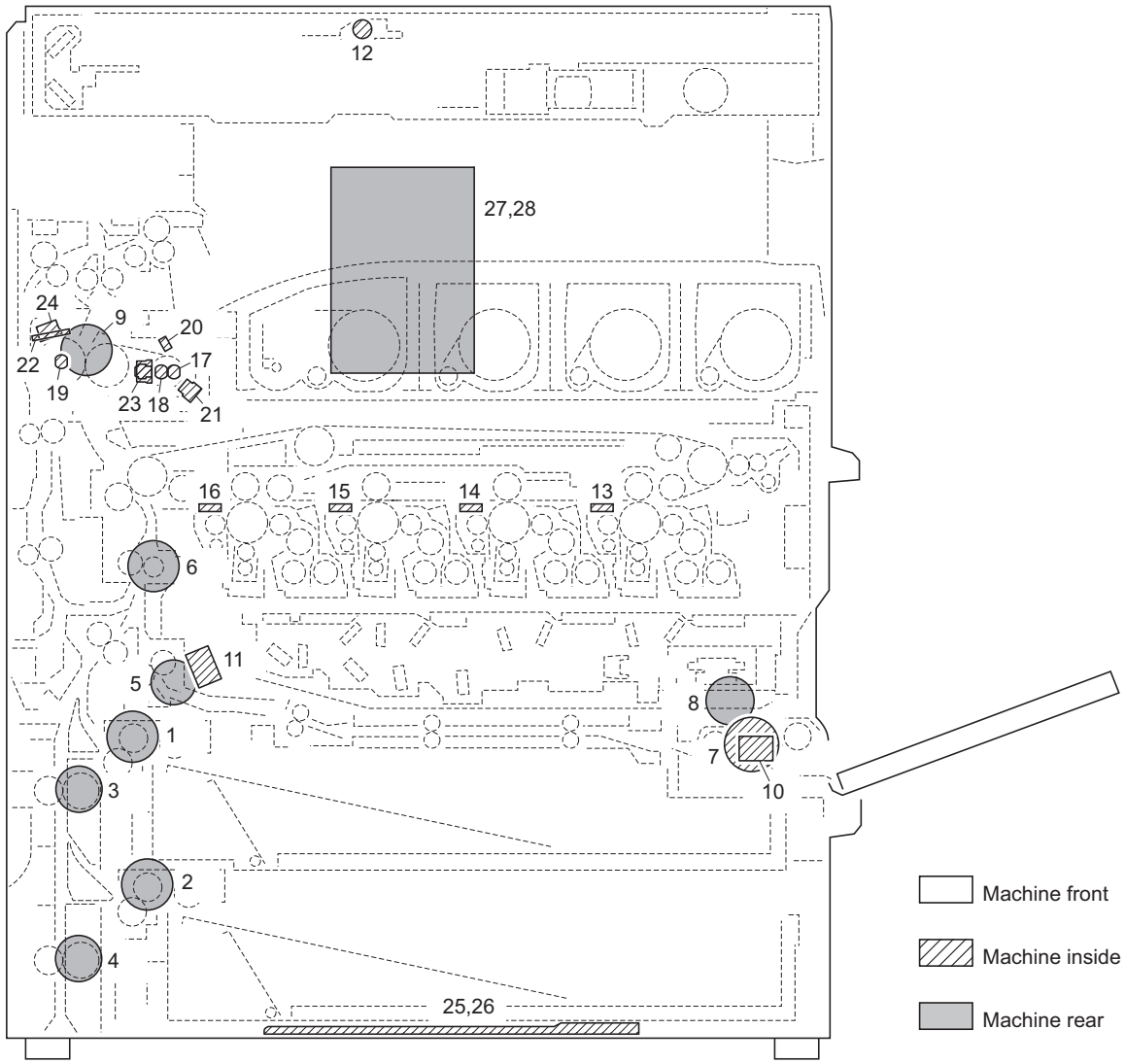


Figure 2-2-4 Others

1. Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) ..... Primary paper feed from cassette 1.
2. Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) ..... Primary paper feed from cassette 2.
3. Feed clutch 1 (FCL1)*1 ..... Controls the drive of upper feed roller.
4. Feed clutch 2 (FCL2)*1 ..... Controls the drive of lower feed roller.
5. Middle clutch (MCL)*2 ..... Controls the drive of paper conveying section.
6. Registration clutch (RCL)*2 ..... Controls secondary paper feed.
7. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) ..... Controls primary paper feed from the MP tray.
8. MP paper conveying clutch (MPPCCL) ..... Controls the drive of MP feed roller.
9. Fuser clutch (FUCL) ..... Controls the fuser section.
10. MP solenoid (MPSOL) ..... Operates up/down of the MP forwarding pulley.
11. LSU cleaning solenoid (LSUCSOL) ..... Operates the LSU blade for dust shield glass cleaning.
12. Exposure lamp (EL) ..... Exposes originals.
13. Cleaning lamp M (CL-M) ..... Removes residual charge from the drum surface (Magenta).
14. Cleaning lamp C (CL-C) ..... Removes residual charge from the drum surface (Cyan).
15. Cleaning lamp Y (CL-Y) ..... Removes residual charge from the drum surface (Yellow).
16. Cleaning lamp K (CL-K) ..... Removes residual charge from the drum surface (Black).
17. Fuser heater 1 (FH1) ..... Heats the melt belt (heat roller).
18. Fuser heater 2 (FH2) ..... Heats the melt belt (heat roller).
19. Fuser heater 3 (FH3)*1 ..... Heats the press roller.
20. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1) ..... Detects the melt belt (heat roller) temperature.

21. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2) ..... Detects the melt belt (heat roller) temperature.
22. Fuser thermistor 3 (FTH3)*1 ..... Detects the press roller temperature.
23. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)..... Prevents overheating of the melt belt (heat roller).
24. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)*1..... Prevents overheating of the press roller.
25. Cassette heater 1 (CH1)..... Dehumidifies the cassette section.
26. Cassette heater 2 (CH2)..... Dehumidifies the cassette section.
27. Hard disk 1 (HDD1)..... Storages the image data and information of job accounting mode.
28. Hard disk 2 (HDD2)*1..... Storages the image data and information of job accounting mode.

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm model only.
*2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm model only.

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-3-1 Power source PWB

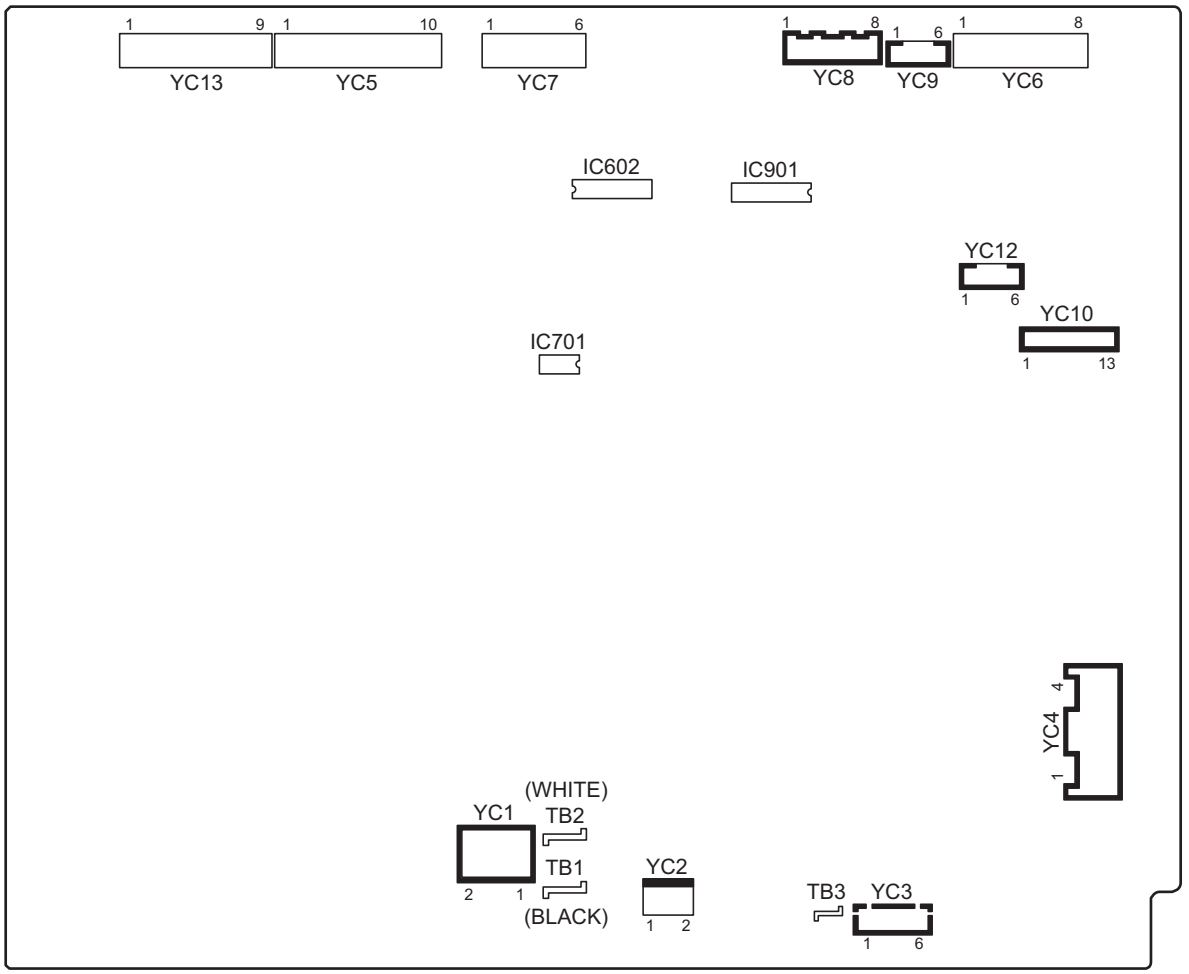
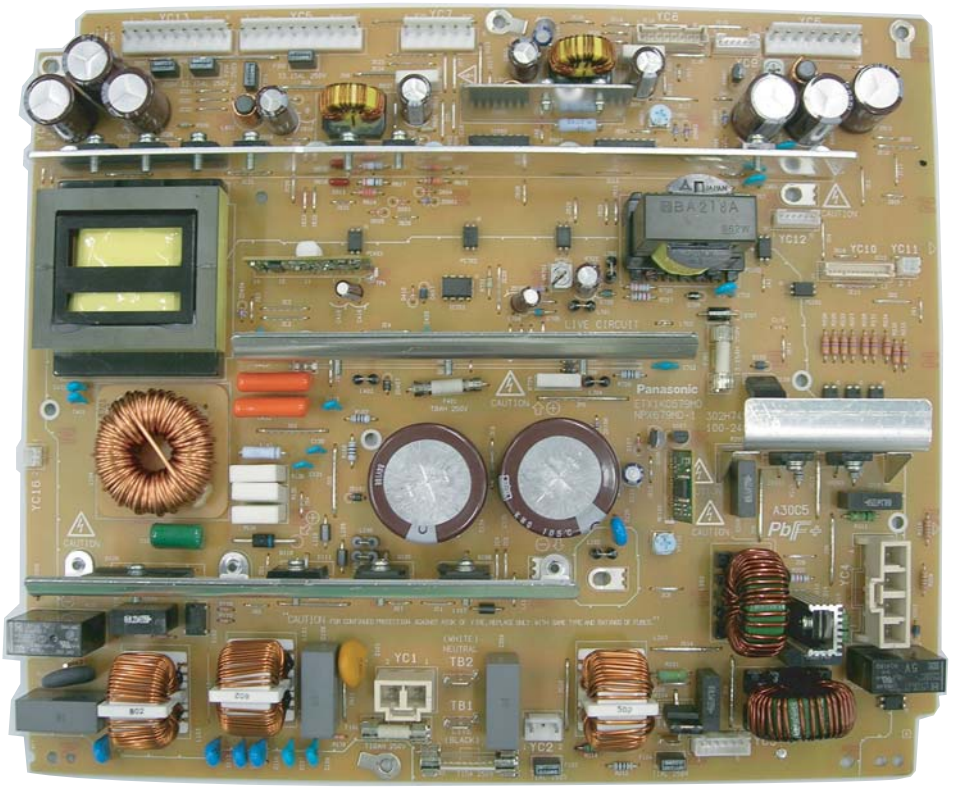


Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram



Power source PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB	1	AC_LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
Connected to the inlet and main power switch	2	AC_NEUTRAL	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	3	HEATER LIVE	-	-	Not used
YC1	1	MSW_IN	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input from MSW
Connected to the main power switch	2	MSW_OUT	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input from MSW
YC2	1	DH2_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH (option)
Connected to the optional paper feeder	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	DH2_NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH (option)
YC3	1	DH3_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH1
Connected to the cas-sette heater 1/2	2	DH3_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH2
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	DH3_NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH1
	6	DH3_NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH2
YC4	1	H_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power to FH1/2/3
Connected to the fuser heater 1/2/3	2	SH_OUT	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	FH2: On/Off
	3	PR_OUT	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	FH3: On/Off
	4	MH_OUT	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	FH1: On/Off
YC5	1	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ISMPWB
Connected to the ISM PWB and optional DP	2	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DPDPWB
	3	12V1	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to ISMPWB
	4	5V1	-	-	Not used
	5	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DPDPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
Connected to the main PWB	2	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EPWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to EPWB
YC8	1	+12V	O	12 V DC	24 V DC power to HDD1
Connected to the hard disk 1/2	2	+12V	O	12 V DC	24 V DC power to HDD1
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HDD1
	4	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HDD1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
YC9	1	+12V1	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to OPWB-M
Connected to the main operation PWB	2	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB-M
	3	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB-M
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC10	1	FSR_RELAY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Relay signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	24V2IN	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input (via left cover 1 switch)
	3	SLEEPN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	4	ZCROSSC	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	5	S_HEATN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH2: On/Off
	6	M_HEATN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH1: On/Off
	7	PR_HEATN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH3: On/Off
	8	FAN_REM	I	0/24 V DC	PSFM: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to EPWB
	12	5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to EPWB
	13	D_HEATN	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the optional document finisher	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC13	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to paper feeder
Connected to the optional paper feeder and optional document finisher	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to document finisher
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to paper feeder
	8	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to document finisher
	9	NC	-	-	Not used

2-3-2 Engine PWB

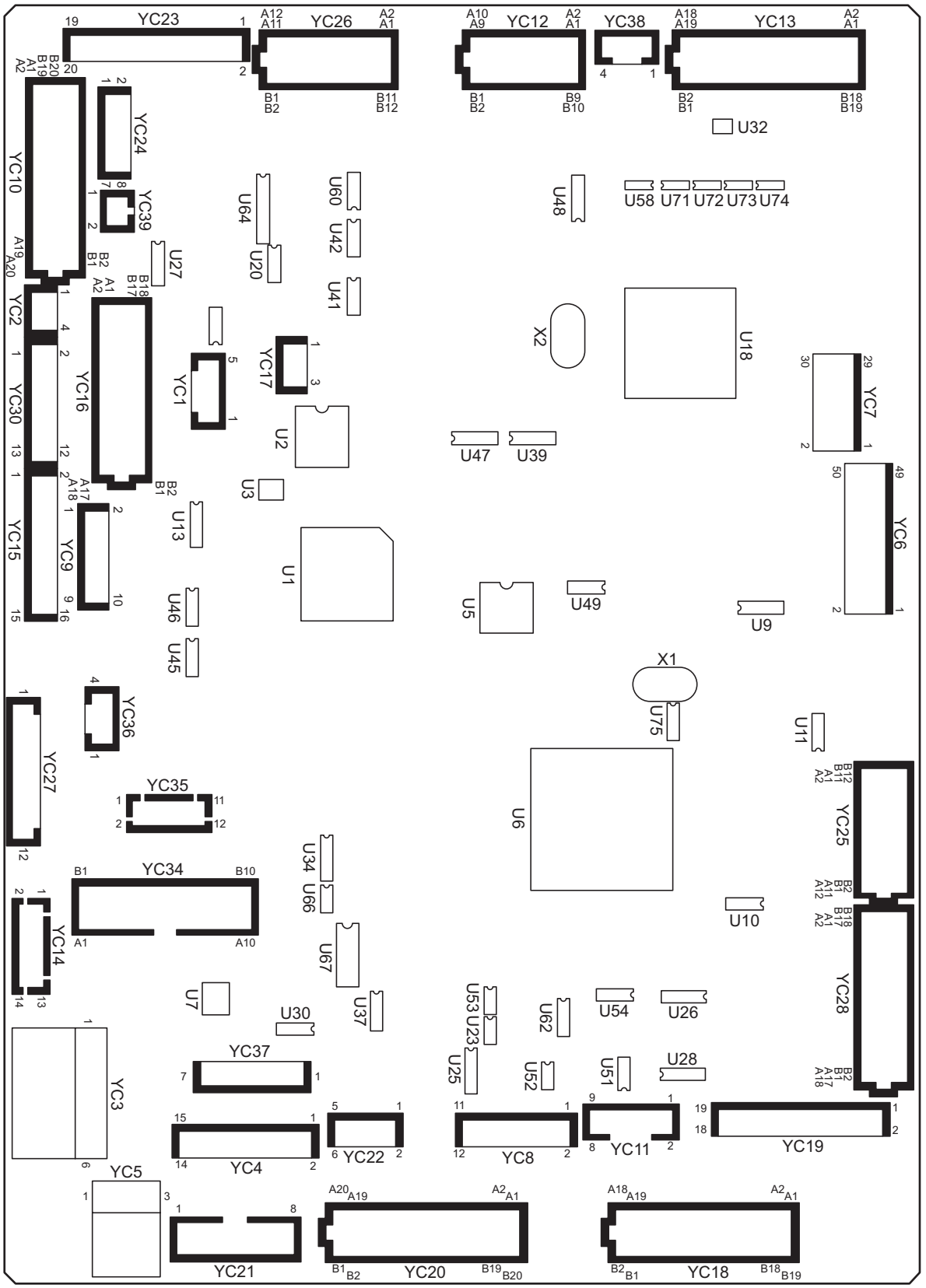
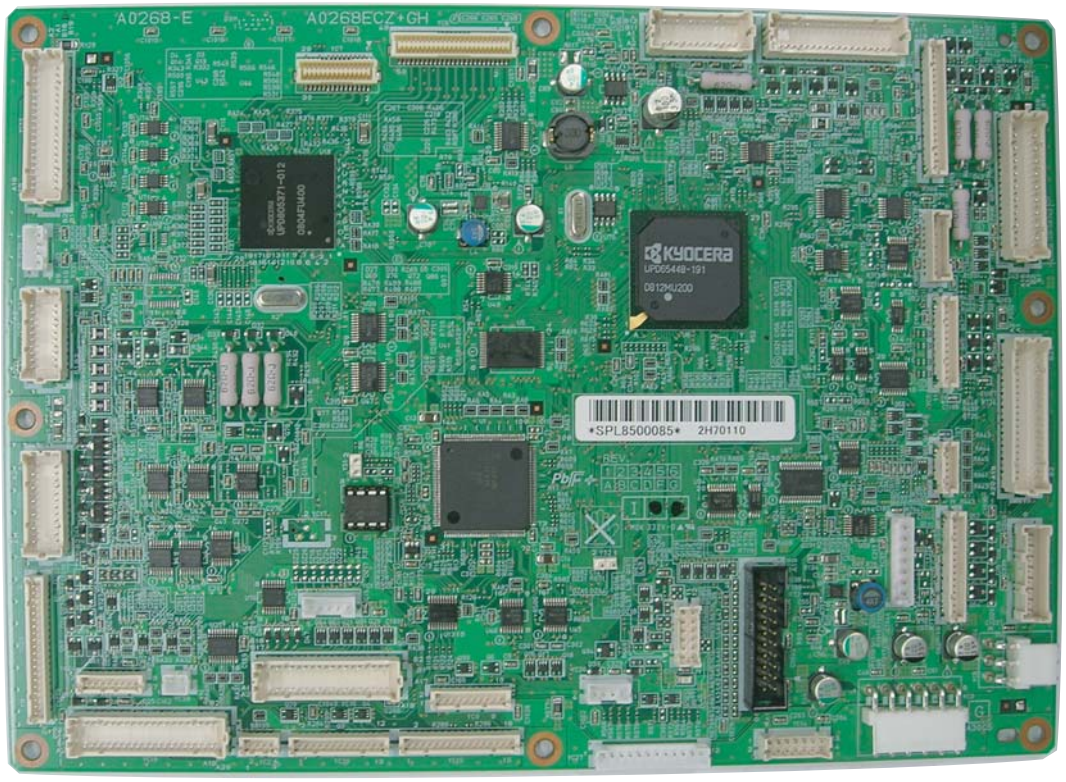


Figure 2-3-2 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram



Engine PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC2	1	DISCHARGE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger M control signal
Connected to the main high voltage PWB	2	DISCHARGE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger C control signal
	3	DISCHARGE3	I	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger Y control signal
	4	DISCHARGE4	I	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger K control signal
YC3	1	+5V1	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
Connected to the power source PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
	6	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
YC4	1	LVU_FAN_REM	-	-	Not used
Connected to the power source PWB	2	DRM_HEAT_DR	-	-	Not used
	3	5V3	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	4	5V3	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	5	5V3	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	LVU FAN REM	-	-	Not used
	9	FSR_PREHEAT_DRn	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH3: On/Off
	10	FSR_MAINHEAT_DRn	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH1: On/Off
	11	FSR_SUBHEAT_DRn	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH2: On/Off
	12	ZEROC	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	13	SLEEP_ENG	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal: On/Off
	14	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output (via left cover 1 switch)
	15	FSR_RELAY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Relay signal
YC5	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC to ILSW
Connected to the inter-lock switch	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from ILSW (via left cover 1 switch)
YC6	1	G6_EG_SCLOK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB clock signal
Connected to the main PWB	2	HLD_ENG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB hold signal
	3	G6_EG_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB serial communication data signal
	4	SLEEP_ENG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB sleep signal: On/Off
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	MRE_AN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	8	MRE_DP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	9	MRE_AP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	10	MRE_DN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	11	VD_AP0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	12	VD_DP0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	13	VD_AN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	14	VD_DN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
Connected to the main PWB	15	VD_AP1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	16	VD_DP1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	17	VD_AN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	18	VD_DN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	19	VD_AP2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	20	VD_DP2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	21	VD_AN2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	22	VD_DN2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	23	VD_AP3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	24	VD_DP3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	25	VD_AN3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	26	VD_DN3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	27	MRE_BN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	28	MRE_CP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	29	MRE_BP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	30	MRE_CN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	31	VD_BP0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	32	VD_CP0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	33	VD_BN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	34	VD_CN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	35	VD_BP1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	36	VD_CP1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	37	VD_BN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	38	VD_CN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	39	VD_BP2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	40	VD_CP2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	41	VD_BN2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	42	VD_CN2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	43	VD_BP3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	44	VD_CP3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	45	VD_BN3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	46	VD_CN3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	47	VCLKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	48	SGND	-	-	Ground
	49	VCLKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	50	SGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the main PWB	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	HSYNC_DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	4	VSYNC_DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	5	HSYNC_DN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	6	VSYNC_DN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	7	HSYNC_CP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	8	VSYNC_CP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	9	HSYNC_CN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	10	VSYNC_CN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	11	HSYNC_BP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	12	VSYNC_BP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	13	HSYNC_BN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	14	VSYNC_BN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	15	HSYNC_AP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	16	VSYNC_AP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	17	HSYNC_AN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	18	VSYNC_AN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	19	SGND	-	-	Ground
	20	SGND	-	-	Ground
	21	G6_EG_IRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB interrupt signal
	22	NC	-	-	Not used
	23	G6_EG_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPWB serial communication data signal
	24	NC	-	-	Not used
	25	G6_EG_SDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB communication direction signal
	26	NC	-	-	Not used
	27	G6_EG_SBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB busy signal
	28	NC	-	-	Not used
	29	24DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB 24 V down signal
	30	NC	-	-	Not used
YC8	1	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to INTEMS2
Connected to the inner tempera-ture sensor 2 and ID sensor 1/2	2	DLP_TEMP	I	Analog	INTEMS2 detection signal
	3	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to IDS1
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	REG_1S	I	Analog	IDS1 detection signal
	6	REG_1P	I	Analog	IDS1 detection signal
	7	REG_LED1	O	Analog	IDS1 control signal
	8	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to IDS2
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	REG_2S	I	Analog	IDS2 detection signal
	11	REG_2P	I	Analog	IDS2 detection signal
	12	REG_LED2	O	Analog	IDS2 control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to THVPWB1
Connected to the transfer high voltage PWB 1	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	FB_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Primary transfer cleaning bias: On/Off
	4	T1_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Primary transfer bias: On/Off
	5	T1_CL_OFF	O	0/3.3 V DC	Primary transfer control signal
	6	T1_CONT1	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias M control voltage
	7	T1_CONT2	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias C control voltage
	8	T1_CONT3	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias Y control voltage
	9	T1_CONT4	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias K control voltage
	10	FB_CONT	O	Analog	Primary transfer cleaning bias control voltage
YC10	A1	PGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the main high voltage PWB, MP conveying unit switch, paper size length switch 1/2, paper size width switch 1/2, power source fan motor 1/2 and MP paper conveying clutch	A2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A4	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MHVPWB
	A5	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MHVPWB
	A6	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MHVPWB
	A7	MAIN IDC4	I	Analog	Main charger K control signal
	A8	MAIN IDC3	I	Analog	Main charger Y control signal
	A9	MAIN IDC2	I	Analog	Main charger C control signal
	A10	MAIN IDC1	I	Analog	Main charger M control signal
	A11	DC MAIN CONT4	O	Analog	Main charger K DC control voltage
	A12	AC MAIN CONT4	O	Analog	Main charger K AC control voltage
	A13	DC MAIN CONT3	O	Analog	Main charger Y DC control voltage
	A14	AC MAIN CONT3	O	Analog	Main charger Y AC control voltage
	A15	DC MAIN CONT2	O	Analog	Main charger C DC control voltage
	A16	AC MAIN CONT2	O	Analog	Main charger C AC control voltage
	A17	DC MAIN CONT1	O	Analog	Main charger M DC control voltage
	A18	AC MAIN CONT1	O	Analog	Main charger M AC control voltage
	A19	AC MAIN CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Main charger AC clock signal
	A20	DC MAIN REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger DC: On/Off
	B1	PF UNIT SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPCUSW: On/Off
	B2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B3	CAS1 LENGTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	B4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B5	CAS2 LENGTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	B6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B7	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B8	CAS2 WIDTH3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	B9	CAS2 WIDTH2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
Connected to the main high voltage PWB, MP conveying unit switch, paper size length switch 1/2, paper size width switch 1/2, power source fan motor 1/2 and MP paper conveying clutch	B10	CAS2 WIDTH1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	B11	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B12	CAS1 WIDTH3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	B13	CAS1 WIDTH2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	B14	CAS1 WIDTH1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	B15	HVU_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PSFM1/2: On/Off
	B16	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PSFM1/2
	B17	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MPPCCL
	B18	MPFFED CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	MPPCCL: On/Off
	B19	NC	-	-	Not used
	B20	NC	-	-	Not used
YC11	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the fuser thermistor 1/2/3	2	FSR NCTH2	I	Analog	FTH2 detection signal
	3	FSR NCTH1	I	Analog	FTH2 detection signal
	4	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FTH1
	5	FSR TH1	I	Analog	FTH1 detection signal
	6	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FTH3
	7	FSR TH2	I	Analog	FTH3 detection signal
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	9	FSR SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser unit set signal
YC12	A5	SIDE DLP FAN	-	-	Not used
Connected to the transfer fan motor 1 and waste toner motor	A6	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	A7	SIDE BELT FAN	O	0/24 V DC	TRFM1: On/Off
	A8	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TRFM1
	A9	WT MT RTN	I	Analog	WTM return signal
	A10	WT MT DR	O	0/24 V DC	WTM: On/Off
	B1	SP FAN	-	-	Not used
	B2	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	B3	SGND	-	-	Not used
	B4	CONTAIN1_SET	-	-	Not used
	B5	SGND	-	-	Not used
	B6	CONTAIN2_SET	-	-	Not used
	B7	SGND	-	-	Not used
	B8	CONTAIN3_SET	-	-	Not used
	B9	SGND	-	-	Not used
	B10	CONTAIN4_SET	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13	A1	SCCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
Connected to the polygon motor, APC PWB M/C/Y/K, PD PWB and inner temperature sensor 1	A2	SCRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PM ready signal
	A3	SCREM	O	0/3.3 V DC	PM: On/Off
	A4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A5	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PM
	A6	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB-Y
	A7	APC3 CNT	O	Analog	APCPWB-Y control signal
	A8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A9	ENBL3	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-Y enable signal
	A10	S/H3	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-Y sample/hold signal
	A11	VDO3 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	A12	VDO3 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	A13	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB-M
	A14	APC1 CNT	O	Analog	APCPWB-M control signal
	A15	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A16	ENBL1	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-M enable signal
	A17	S/H1	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-M sample/hold signal
	A18	VDO1 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	A19	VDO1 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	B1	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PDPWB
	B2	PD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PD signal
	B3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B4	IN TEMP1	I	Analog	INTEMS1 detection signal (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)
		NC	-	-	Not used (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)
	B5	SGND	-	-	Ground (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)
		NC	-	-	Not used (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)
	B6	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB-C
	B7	APC2 CNT	O	Analog	APCPWB-C control signal
	B8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B9	ENBL2	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-C enable signal
	B10	S/H2	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-C sample/hold signal
	B11	VDO2 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	B12	VDO2 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	B13	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB-K
	B14	APC4 CNT	O	Analog	APCPWB-K control signal
	B15	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B16	ENBL4	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-K enable signal
	B17	S/H4	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB-K sample/hold signal
	B18	VDO4 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	B19	VDO4 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	PGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the motor control PWB	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCPWB
	5	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCPWB
	6	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCPWB
	7	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCPWB
	8	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCPWB
	9	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCPWB
	10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	11	PGND	-	-	Ground
	12	PGND	-	-	Ground
	13	PGND	-	-	Ground
	14	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MCPWB
YC15	1	DRM4_POSITON	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM-K control signal
Connected to the motor control PWB	2	DRM3_POSITON	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM-Y control signal
	3	DRM2_POSITON	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM-C control signal
	4	DRM1_POSITON	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM-M control signal
	5	MT_CONT_ENB	O	0/3.3 V DC	MCPWB control signal
	6	BLT_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRM: On/Off
	7	DRM_CL_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM-MCY: On/Off
	8	DRM_BK_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM-K: On/Off
	9	REF_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	10	BLT_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TRM clock signal
	11	PWB_RDY_BUF	I	0/3.3 V DC	MCPWB ready signal
	12	MT_SEL_BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC	MCPWB select signal
	13	PWB_SDI_BUF	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MCPWB serial communication data signal
	14	PWB_SDO_BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MCPWB serial communication data signal
	15	PWB_SCLK_BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MCPWB clock signal
	16	INTER_LOCK	O	0/3.3 V DC	MCPWB interlock signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC16	A1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to the developing motor MCY, cleaning motor MCY, developing motor K, cleaning motor K	A2	DLP_CL_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVM-MCY clock signal
	A3	DLP_CL_MT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM-MCY drive switch signal
	A4	DLP_CL_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM-MCY: On/Off
	A5	DLP_CL_MT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM-MCY ready signal
	A6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A8	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVM-MCY
	A9	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVM-MCY
	A10	NC	-	-	Not used
	A11	RUB1_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CLM-MCY clock signal
	A12	RUB1_MT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	CLM-MCY drive switch signal
	A13	RUB1_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	CLM-MCY: On/Off
	A14	RUB1_MT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	CLM-MCY ready signal
	A15	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A16	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A17	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CLM-MCY
	A18	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CLM-MCY
	B1	NC	-	-	Not used
	B2	DLP_BK_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVM-K clock signal
	B3	DLP_BK_MT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM-K drive switch signal
	B4	DLP_BK_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM-K: On/Off
	B5	DLP_BK_MT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM-K ready signal
	B6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	B7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	B8	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVM-K
	B9	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVM-K
	B10	NC	-	-	Not used
	B11	RUB2_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CLM-K clock signal
	B12	RUB2_MT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	CLM-K drive switch signal
	B13	RUB2_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	CLM-K: On/Off
	B14	RUB2_MT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	CLM-K ready signal
	B15	PGND	-	-	Ground
	B16	PGND	-	-	Ground
	B17	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CLM-K
	B18	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CLM-K

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	A1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB-M
Connected to the main front PWB	A2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB-M
	A3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB-M
	A4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A5	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FRPWB-M
	A6	ERS4_DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-K: On/Off
	A7	DRM4_POSITION	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-K: On/Off
	A8	FRONT_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	RFM: On/Off
	A9	TPD4	I	Analog	TS-K detection signal
	A10	DLP_VCONT4	O	Analog	TS-K control signal
	A11	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FRPWB-M
	A12	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A13	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A14	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FRPWB-M
	A15	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A16	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB-M
	A17	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A18	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A19	PGND	-	-	Ground
	B1	CONTAIN FAN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM: On/Off
	B2	GUIDE_MT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	RGM drive switch signal
	B3	GUIDE_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RGM clock signal
	B4	GUIDE_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	RGM: On/Off
	B5	GUIDE_POSITION	I	0/3.3 V DC	RGS: On/Off
	B6	FSR_EXIT_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	B7	JOB_EXIST	I	0/3.3 V DC	JEPSW: On/Off
	B8	JOB_LED	-	-	Not used
	B9	SP_CONT	O	Analog	Separation bias control voltage
	B10	SEP_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Separation bias control voltage: On/Off
	B11	T2_INV_CONT	O	Analog	Secondary transfer (reverse) bias control voltage
	B12	T2_CONT	O	Analog	Secondary transfer bias control voltage
	B13	T2_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Secondary transfer bias: On/Off
	B14	GUIDE_MT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	RGM control signal
	B15	I2C_SDA4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	OUTTEMS EEPROM data signal
	B16	I2C_SCL4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	OUTTEMS EEPROM clock signal
	B17	FRONT_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCSW: On/Off
	B18	EEP_SDA3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	B19	EEP_SCL3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC19	1	ERS1_DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-M: On/Off
Connected to the sub front PWB	2	DRM1_POSITION	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-M: On/Off
	3	TPD1	I	Analog	TS-M detection signal
	4	DLP_VCONT1	O	Analog	TS-M control signal
	5	ERS2_DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-C: On/Off
	6	DRM2_POSITION	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-C: On/Off
	7	TPD2	I	Analog	TS-C detection signal
	8	DLP_VCONT2	O	Analog	TS-C control signal
	9	ERS3_DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-Y: On/Off
	10	DRM3_POSITION	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-Y: On/Off
	11	TPD3	I	Analog	TS-Y detection signal
	12	DLP_VCONT3	O	Analog	TS-Y control signal
	13	WTNR_SET	-	-	Not used
	14	WTNER_CHECK	I	Analog	WTS detection signal
	15	WTNR_LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	WTLED LED emitter signal
	16	FRONTDLP2_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM2: On/Off
	17	FRONTDLP1_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM1: On/Off
	18	PAPER FAN	-	-	Not used
	19	24V1	-	-	Not used
YC20	A1	DU MT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DUM clock signal
Connected to the feed PWB	A2	LOOP FAN	O	0/3.3 V DC	LFM: On/Off
	A3	DU MT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUM: On/Off
	A4	FEED MT RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCM ready signal
	A5	FEED MT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCM: On/Off
	A6	FEED MT DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCM drive switch signal
	A7	FEED MT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PCM clock signal
	A8	FED2 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	A9	CAS2 EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW2: On/Off
	A10	CAS2 LIFT UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	LSW2: On/Off
	A11	CAS1 EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW1: On/Off
	A12	CAS1LIFT UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	LSW1: On/Off
	A13	LFT2 MT LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 lock signal
	A14	LFT1 MT LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 lock signal
	A15	LFT2 MT DR	O	0/24 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	A16	LFT1 MT DR	O	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
	A17	LFT2 MT SIG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	A18	LFT2 MT SIG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	A19	LFT1 MT SIG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
	A20	LFT1 MT SIG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
	B1	MT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCM current control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC20	B2	FED1 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
Connected to the feed PWB	B3	REG JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	B4	LSU SOL DR	O	0/24 V DC	LSUCSOL: On/Off
	B5	MPF2 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPCSW: On/Off
	B6	FEED1 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	B7	ROL UP2 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	MCL: On/Off
	B8	REG UP1 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	B9	LOOP SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LS: On/Off
	B10	BELT JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	JDS: On/Off
	B11	DU ENTER JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	B12	JAM1 LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	JLEDPWB1 LED emitter signal
	B13	JAM2 LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	JLEDPWB2 LED emitter signal
	B14	COV FAN REM	O	0/24 V DC	PCFM1,2: On/Off
	B15	DU OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	B16	DU JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUSW: On/Off
	B17	FEED3 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	B18	FEED2 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	B19	CAS OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC2SW: On/Off
	B20	DU MT PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUM current control signal
YC21	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB
Connected to the feed PWB	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB
	3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FPWB
YC22	1	REG MT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RM clock signal
Connected to the feed PWB (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)	2	REG MT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	RM: On/Off
	3	REG MT PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	RM current control signal
	4	ROL MT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MM clock signal
	5	ROL MT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MM: On/Off
	6	ROL MT PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	MM current control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC23	1	5V SENSOR LED	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPPLSW
Connected to the MP paper size length switch, MP tray switch, MP paper size width switch, MP paper switch, MP paper feed switch, MP solenoid and Mp paper feed clutch	2	MPF LENGTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	MPF TABLE	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPTSW: On/Off
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	MPF_WIDTH1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	7	MPF_WIDTH2	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	8	MPF_WIDTH3	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	9	PGND	-	-	Ground
	10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	11	MPF PPR SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPSW: On/Off
	12	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPPSW
	13	PGND	-	-	Ground
	14	MPF JAM1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPFSW: On/Off
	15	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPPFSW
	16	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MPSOL
	17	MPF SOL1 DR	O	0/24 V DC	MPSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	18	MPF SOL2 DR	O	0/24 V DC	MPSOL: On/Off (REV)
	19	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MPPFCL
	20	MPF CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
YC24	1	MPF_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MPM clock signal
Connected to the MP motor	2	MPF_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPM drive switch signal
	3	MPF_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPM: On/Off
	4	MPF_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPM ready signal
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MPM
	8	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MPM
YC25	A1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to the eject motor, paper full sensor, fuser motor, fuser clutch and fuser fan motor	A2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EM
	A3	GND	-	-	Ground
	A4	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to EM
	A5	EXIT MOT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM: On/Off
	A6	EXIT MOT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EM clock signal
	A7	EXIT MOT DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM drive switch signal
	A8	EXIT MOT LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	EM lock signal
	A9	EXIT MOT GAIN	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM gain signal
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	OVER_FLOW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFS: On/Off
	A12	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PFS
	B1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FUM
	B2	SGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC25	B3	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FUM
Connected to the eject motor, paper full sensor, fuser motor, fuser clutch and fuser fan motor	B4	FSR MOT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM: On/Off
	B5	FSR MOT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FUM clock signal
	B6	FSR MOT DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM drive switch signal
	B7	FSR MOT LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUM lock signal
	B8	FSR MOT GAIN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM gain signal
	B9	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FUCL
	B10	FSR_CLT	O	0/24 V DC	FUCL: On/Off
	B11	FSR_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	FUFM: On/Off
	B12	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FUFM
YC26	A5	CONTAIN_MT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TCM clock signal
Connected to the toner container motor, developing fan motor 3/4 and toner motor M/C/Y/K	A6	CONTAIN_MT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	TCM drive switch signal
	A7	CONTAIN_MT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	TCM: On/Off
	A8	CONTAIN_MT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCM ready signal
	A9	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A10	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A11	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TCM
	A12	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TCM
	B1	SUB_DLP_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM4: On/Off
	B2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM4
	B3	TMOT1 DR	O	0/24 V DC	TM-M: On/Off
	B4	TMOT1RTN	I	Analog	TM-M return signal
	B5	TMOT2 DR	O	0/24 V DC	TM-C: On/Off
	B6	TMOT2RTN	I	Analog	TM-C return signal
	B7	TMOT3 DR	O	0/24 V DC	TM-Y: On/Off
	B8	RMOT3RTN	I	Analog	TM-Y return signal
	B9	TMOT4 DR	O	0/24 V DC	TM-K: On/Off
	B10	TMOT4RTN	I	Analog	TM-K return signal
	B11	REAR DLP FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM3: On/Off
	B12	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM3
YC27	1	EH RDY (PFRDY)	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
Connected to the optional paper feeder and optional document finisher	2	EH RDY (DF RDY)	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher ready signal
	3	PF FEED	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder control signal
	4	PF SEL	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal
	5	DF SEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document finisher select signal
	6	EH SCLK (PFS-CLK)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder clock signal
	7	EH SCLK (DFS-CLK)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher clock signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC27	8	EHSDI (PFSDI)	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
Connected to the optional paper feeder and optional document finisher	9	EH SDI (DFSDI)	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	10	EH SDO (PFSDO)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	11	EH SDO (DFSDO)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	12	DF DET	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher set signal
YC28	A1	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JMPWB
Connected to the optional job separator, eject fan motor, transfer belt speed PWB, transfer position sensor, color release sensor, color release motor and transfer fan motor 2/3	A2	JOB EXIT JAM2	I	0/5 V DC	JESW: On/Off
	A3	JOB EXIT JAM1	I	0/5 V DC	FESW: On/Off
	A4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	A5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A7	JOB EJECT	I	0/5 V DC	JPFSW: On/Off
	A8	JOB SOL2 DR	O	0/24 V DC	JFSSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	A9	JOB SOL1 DR	O	0/24 V DC	JFSSOL: On/Off (REV)
	A10	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to JMPWB
	A11	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to JMPWB
	A12	JOB MOT DR	O	0/24 V DC	JEM: On/Off
	A13	JOB MOT CLK	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	JEM clock signal
	A14	JOB MOT MODE	O	0/5 V DC	JEM mode signal
	A15	JOB MOT DIR	O	0/5 V DC	JEM drive switch signal
	A16	JOB_SET	I	0/5 V DC	Job separator set signal
	A17	REAR_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	EFM: On/Off
	A18	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EFM
	B1	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to TBSPWB
	B2	BLT SPEED	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TBSPWB detection signal
	B3	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to TBSPWB
	B4	EEP SDA0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TBSPWB EEPROM data signal
	B5	EEP SCL0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TBSPWB EEPROM clock signal
	B6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B7	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B8	BLT SET	I	0/5 V DC	TPS: On/Off
	B9	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to TPS
	B10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	B11	RLS SET	I	0/5 V DC	CRS: On/Off
	B12	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to CRS
	B13	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CRM
	B14	RLS MT DR	O	0/24 V DC	CRM: On/Off
	B15	BLT FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	TRFM2: On/Off
	B16	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TRFM2
	B17	BLT FAN2	O	0/24 V DC	TRFM3: On/Off
	B18	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TRFM3

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC30	1	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HVCPWB
Connected to the high voltage control PWB	2	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HVCPWB
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	PWB SCLK BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	HVCPWB clock signal
	6	PWB SDI BUF	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	HVCPWB serial communication data signal
	7	PWB SDO BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	HVCPWB serial communication data signal
	8	HVU SEL BUF	O	0/3.3 V DC	HVCPWB select signal
	9	PWB RDY BUF	I	0/3.3 V DC	HVCPWB ready signal
	10	DLP1 HV REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Developing bias M: On/Off
	11	DLP2 HV REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Developing bias C: On/Off
	12	DLP3 HV REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Developing bias Y: On/Off
	13	DLP4 HV REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Developing bias K: On/Off
YC36	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the optional key counter	2	DC1_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter installing detecting signal
	3	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the key counter
	4	DC1_COUNT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter count signal
YC38	1	LSU FAN REM	O	0/24 V DC	LSUFM: On/Off
Connected to the LSU fan motor and inner temperature sensor 1 (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LSUFM
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	POLYGON TEMP	I	Analog	INTEMS1 detection signal
YC39	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM5
Connected to the developing fan motor 5	2	SIDE_DLP_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM5: On/Off

2-3-3 Main PWB

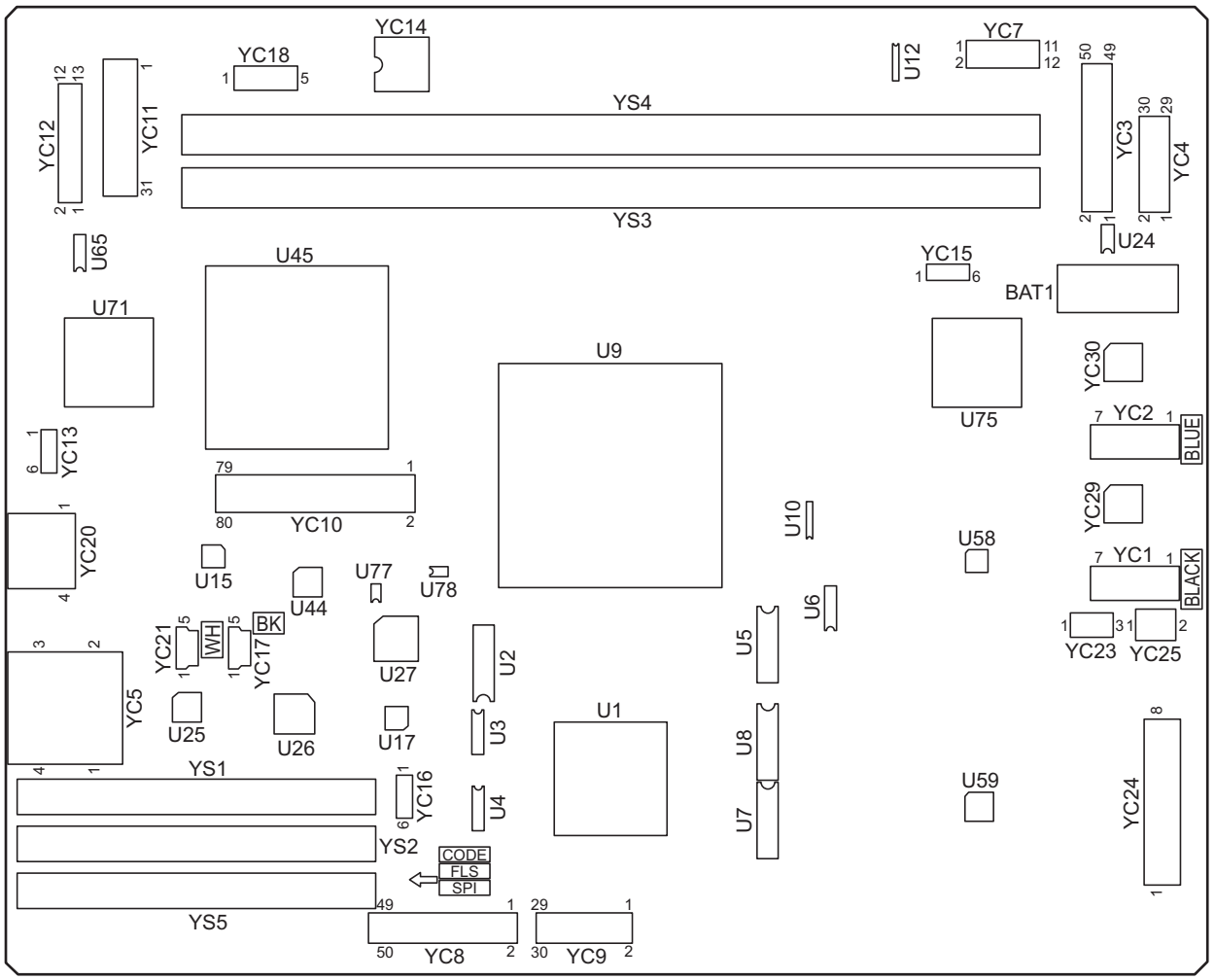
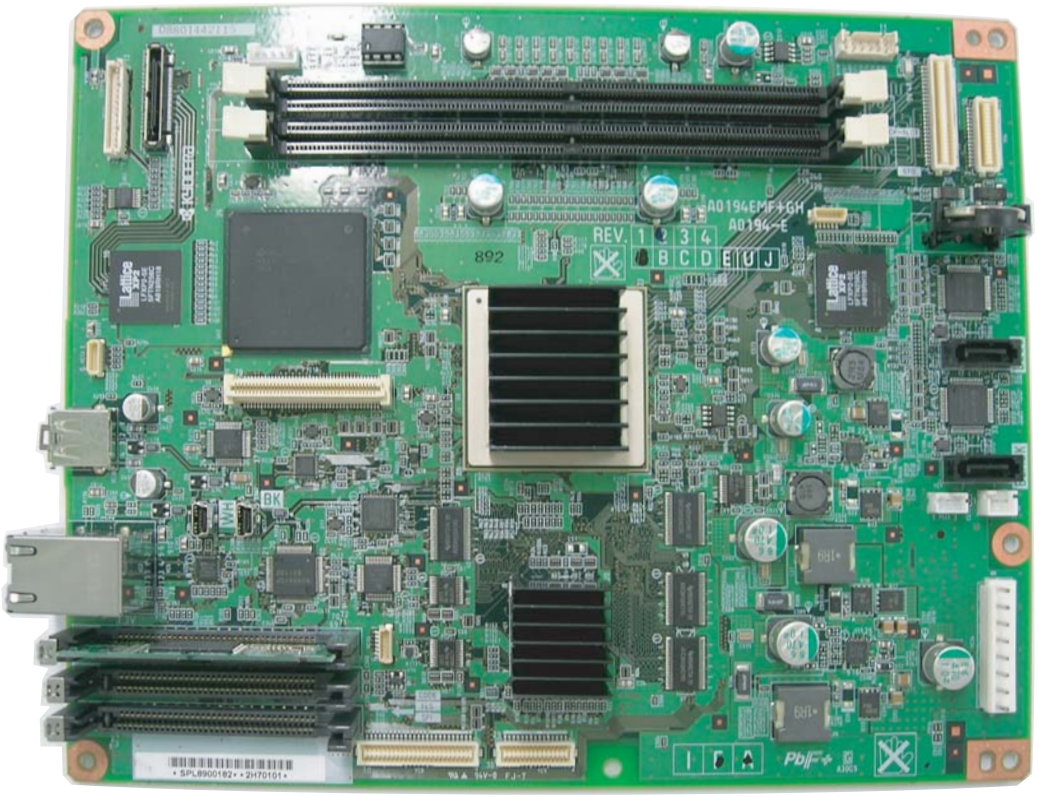


Figure 2-3-3 Main PWB silk-screen diagram



Main PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the hard disk 1	2	TXP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TXN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RXN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	6	RXP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the hard disk 2	2	TXP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TXN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RXN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	6	RXP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC3	1	EG_SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB clock signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	HLD_ENG	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB hold signal
	3	EG_SI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB serial communication data signal
	4	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB sleep signal: On/Off
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	VMREA N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	8	VMRED P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	9	VMREA P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	10	VMRED N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	11	VD A0 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	12	VD D0 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	13	VD A0 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	14	VD D0 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	15	VD A1 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	16	VD D1 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	17	VD A1 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	18	VD D1 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	19	VD A2 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	20	VD D2 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	21	VD A2 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	22	VD D2 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	23	VD A3 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	24	VD D3 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	25	VD A3 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	26	VD D3 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	27	VMREB N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	28	VMREC P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	29	VMREB P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	30	VMREC N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	31	VD B0 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
Connected to the engine PWB	32	VD C0 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	33	VD B0 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	34	VD C0 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	35	VD B1 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	36	VD C1 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	37	VD B1 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	38	VD C1 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	39	VD B2 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	40	VD C2 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	41	VD B2 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	42	VD C2 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	43	VD B3 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	44	VD C3 P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	45	VD B3 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	46	VD C3 N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	47	VCLKOUT P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	48	GND	-	-	Ground
	49	VCLKOUT N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	50	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	HSYNCDN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	4	VSYNCD P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	5	HSYNCDN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	6	VSYNCD N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	7	HSYNCCN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	8	VSYNCC P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	9	HSYNCCN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	10	VSYNCC N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	11	HSYNCBN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	12	VSYNCB P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	13	HSYNCBN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	14	VSYNCB N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	15	HSYNCAN P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	16	VSYNCA P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	17	HSYNCAN N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	18	VSYNCA N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	EG_IRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB interrupt signal
	22	NC	-	-	Not used
	23	EG_SO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EPWB serial communication data signal
	24	NC	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	25	EG_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB communication direction signal
Connected to the engine PWB	26	NC	-	-	Not used
	27	EG_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB busy signal
	28	NC	-	-	Not used
	29	+24V DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	EPWB 24 V down signal
	30	NC	-	-	Not used
YC5-1	1	CT	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
Connected to the ether-net	2	TD+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TD-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	RD+	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	5	RD-	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data
	6	CT	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	7	CAT PHY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	8	ANO PHY	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	9	CAT MAC	-	-	Ground
	10	ANO MAC	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
YC5-2	U1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
Connected to the USB	U2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U4	GND	-	-	Ground
YC8	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the inter-face PWB	2	AUDIO	I	Analog	AUDIO signal
	3	SEL AUDIO0	O	0/3.3 V DC	SEL AUDIO0 signal
	4	SEL AUDIO1	O	0/3.3 V DC	SEL AUDIO1 signal
	5	_REG	I	0/3.3 V DC	REG signal
	6	A8	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	7	A15	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	8	A7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	9	A14	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	10	A6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	11	A13	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	12	A5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	13	A12	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	14	A4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	15	A11	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	16	A3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	17	A10	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	18	A2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	19	A9	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	20	A1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	D8	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	24	D0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	25	D9	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	26	D1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
Connected to the interface PWB	27	D10	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	28	D2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	29	D11	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	30	D3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	D12	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	34	D4	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	35	D13	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	36	D5	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	37	D14	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	38	D6	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	39	D15	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	40	D7	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	KUIODREQT0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQT0 signal
	44	KUIODREQT1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQT1 signal
	45	KUIODREQR0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQR0 signal
	46	KUIODREQR1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODREQR1 signal
	47	KUIOIORN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIORN0 signal
	48	KUIOIORN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIORN1 signal
	49	KUIOIOWN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIOWN0 signal
	50	KUIOIOWN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOIOWN1 signal
YC9	1	KUIOCSN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOCSN0 signal
Connected to the interface PWB	2	KUIOCSN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOCSN1 signal
	3	KUIOACKN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOACKN0 signal
	4	KUIOACKN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIOACKN1 signal
	5	KUIOIRN0	I	0/3.3 V DC	KUIOIRN0 signal
	6	KUIOIRN1	I	0/3.3 V DC	KUIOIRN1 signal
	7	KUIORDY0	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORDY0 signal
	8	KUIORDY1	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORDY1 signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	KUIODACKRN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKRN0 signal
	12	KUIODACKRN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKRN1 signal
	13	KUIODACKTN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKTN0 signal
	14	KUIODACKTN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KUIODACKTN1 signal
	15	KUIORSTN0	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORSTN0 signal
	16	KUIORSTN1	O	0/3.3 V DC	KUIORSTN1 signal
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	SLEEP signal
	20	CFOEN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CFOEN0 signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9	21	EXTBOEN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EXTBOEN signal
Connected to the inter-face PWB	22	CFWEN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CFWEN0 signal
	23	EXTBDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EXTBDIR signal
	24	CFRST0	O	0/3.3 V DC	CFRST0 signal
	25	CF0CSN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CF0CSN0 signal
	26	CFWAITN0	I	0/3.3 V DC	CFWAITN0 signal
	27	CF0CSN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	CF0CSN1 signal
	28	CF0CDET1	I	0/3.3 V DC	CF0CDET1 signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	CF0CDET2	I	0/3.3 V DC	CF0CDET2 signal
YC10	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the optional DP	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	4	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	5	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	6	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	7	VCLKB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	8	VSYNCB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB VSYNCB signal
	9	HSYNCB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB HSYNCB signal
	10	MREB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB MREB signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	DRB0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	13	DRB1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	14	DRB2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	15	DRB3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	16	DRB4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	17	DRB5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	18	DRB6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	19	DRB7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	DGB0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	22	DGB1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	23	DGB2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	24	DGB3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	25	DGB4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	26	DGB5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	27	DGB6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	28	DGB7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	DBB0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	31	DBB1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	32	DBB2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	33	DBB3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	34	DBB4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	35	DBB5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	36	DBB6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
Connected to the optional DP	37	DBB7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	38	TWS_SCM_HALF	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	39	RES_SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	40	TWS_DET1	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
	42	LA2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	43	LA3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	44	LA4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	45	LA5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	46	LA6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	47	LA7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	48	LA8	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	49	LA9	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	50	LA10	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	51	LA11	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	52	LA12	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	53	LA13	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	54	LA14	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	55	LA15	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	56	LA16	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	57	LA17	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Address bus signal
	58	GND	-	-	Ground
	59	LD0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	60	LD1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	61	LD2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	62	LD3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	63	LD4	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	64	LD5	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	65	LD6	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	66	LD7	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	67	GND	-	-	Ground
	68	INT	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	69	RESETZ	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB control signal
	70	GND	-	-	Ground
	71	CEZ	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB control signal
	72	WEZ	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB control signal
	73	OEZ	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB control signal
	74	SCLKIN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	75	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	76	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	77	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	78	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	79	GND	-	-	Ground
	80	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the ISC PWB	2	G6_SC_SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB clock signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	G6_SC_SI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB serial communication data signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	G6_SC_SO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB serial communication data signal
	7	G6_SC_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB busy signal
	8	G6_SC_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB communication direction signal
	9	G6_SC_IRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB interrupt signal
	10	HLD_SCN	O	0/3.3 V DC	ISCPWB scanner hold signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	IS_SAD4N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	15	IS_SAD4P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	IS_SACKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB clock signal
	18	IS_SACKP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ISCPWB clock signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	IS_SAD3N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	21	IS_SAD3P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	IS_SAD2N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	24	IS_SAD2P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	IS_SAD1N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	27	IS_SAD1P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
YC12	1	FPSTAT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel status signal
Connected to the main operation PWB	2	S LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	3	S LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	4	PANEL RESET	O	0/3.3 V DC	OPWB-M reset signal
	5	HLD PANEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	6	SW FOOTN	-	-	Not used
	7	+24V DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC down signal
	8	SUPND ENTER	O	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	9	AUDIO	O	Analog	Audio output signal
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	PH KEY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	12	SGND	-	-	Ground
	13	SUPND POWER	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB-M

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC17	1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
Connected to the main operation PWB	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC20	U1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to the USB	U2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	U4	GND	-	-	Ground
YC21	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to the USB	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC23	1	CLT FAN	O	0/5 V DC	MFM: On/Off
Connected to the main fan motor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MFM
YC24	1	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
Connected to the power source PWB	2	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	3	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	4	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
YC25	1	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to IFPWB
Connected to the inter-face PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-4 Main front PWB

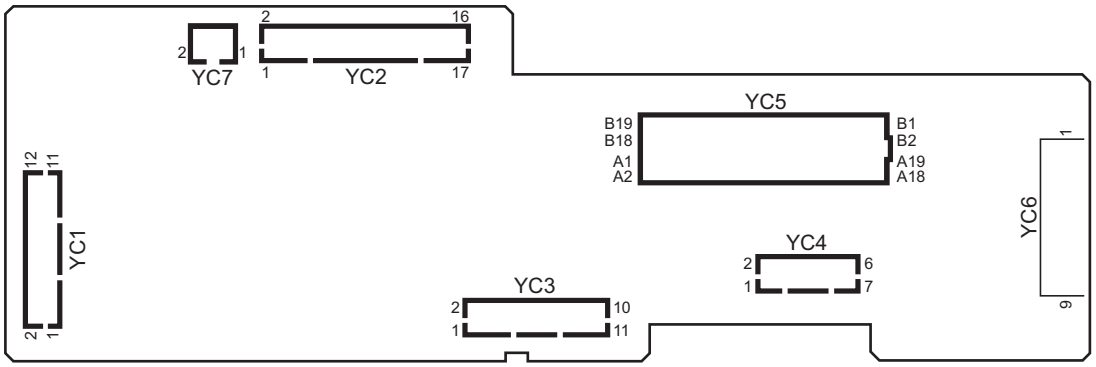
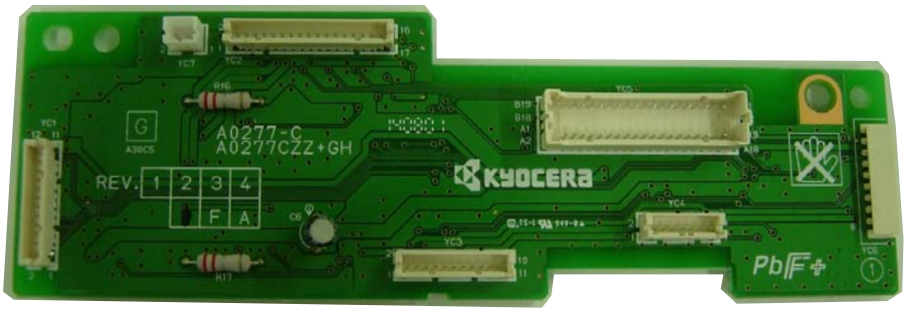


Figure 2-3-4 Main front PWB silk-screen diagram



Main front PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	SEP CONT	O	Analog	Separation bias control voltage
Connected to the transfer high voltage PWB 2 and outer temperature sensor	2	SEP REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Separation bias: On/Off
	3	T2 INV CONT	O	Analog	Secondary transfer (reverse) bias control voltage
	4	T2 CONT	O	Analog	Secondary transfer bias control voltage
	5	T2 REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Secondary transfer bias: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to THVPWB2
	8	T2 HV SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	THVPWB2 set signal
	9	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OUTTEMS
	10	SDA	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	OUTTEMS EEPROM data signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	OUTTEMS EEPROM clock signal
YC2	1	FRONT_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	RFM: On/Off
Connected to the rotary fan motor, rotary guide motor, rotary guide sensor, eject switch and job eject paper switch	2	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to RFM
	3	EJT_MT_AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RGM drive control signal
	4	EJT_MT_BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RGM drive control signal
	5	EJT_MT_AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RGM drive control signal
	6	EJT_MT_BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RGM drive control signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GUIDE PI	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	9	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FSSW
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	FUSER PI	I	0/3.3 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	12	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to ESW
	13	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JEPSW
	14	JOB_EXIST	I	0/3.3 V DC	JEPSW: On/Off
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	+5V1	-	-	Not used
	17	JOB LED	-	-	Not used
YC3	1	ERASER K	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CL-K
Connected to the cleaning lamp K, drum PWB K and drum position sensor K	2	ERS DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-K: On/Off
	3	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DRPWB-K
	4	EEP SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-K EEPROM clock signal
	5	EEPSDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-K EEPROM data signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	A0(OPEN)	-	-	Not used
	8	A1(OPEN)	-	-	Not used
	9	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DPS-K
	10	POS SENS 4	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-K: On/Off
	11	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the developing PWB K	2	SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-K EEPROM data signal
	3	SCK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-K EEPROM clock signal
	4	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DEVPWB-K
	5	TPD4	I	Analog	TS-K detection signal
	6	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVPWB-K
	7	VCONT 4	O	Analog	TS-K control signal
YC5	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the engine PWB	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	GND	-	-	Ground
	A4	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	A5	GND	-	-	Ground
	A6	+5V3	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB
	A7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A8	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A9	+5V1	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB
	A10	VCONT K	I	Analog	TS-K control signal
	A11	TPD1 K	O	Analog	TS-K detection signal
	A12	FRONT_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	RFM: On/Off
	A13	POS SEN K	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-K: On/Off
	A14	ERS K	I	24/0 V DC	CL-K: On/Off
	A15	+3.3V1	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from EPWB
	A16	PGND	-	-	Ground
	A17	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	A18	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	A19	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	B1	EEP SCL 1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	B2	EEP SDA 1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	B3	FRONTOPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCSW: On/Off
	B4	HUMIDSCL	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	OUTTEMS EEPROM clock signal
	B5	HUMIDSDA	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	OUTTEMS EEPROM data signal
	B6	MT_PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	RGM control signal
	B7	T2REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Secondary transfer bias: On/Off
	B8	T2CONT	I	Analog	Secondary transfer bias control voltage
	B9	T2INVCONT	I	Analog	Secondary transfer (reverse) bias control voltage
	B10	SEPREM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Separation bias: On/Off
	B11	SEPCONT	I	Analog	Separation bias control voltage
	B12	JOB_LED	-	-	Not used
	B13	JOB_EXIST	O	0/3.3 V DC	JEPSW: On/Off
	B14	FUSER PI	O	0/3.3 V DC	ESW: On/Off
	B15	GUIDE PI	O	0/3.3 V DC	RGS: On/Off
	B16	MT DR	I	0/3.3 V DC	RGM: On/Off
	B17	MT CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RGM clock signal
	B18	MT DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	RGM drive switch signal
	B19	CONTAIN FAN	I	0/24 V DC	CFM: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FRPWB-S
Connected to the sub front PWB	2	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FRPWB-S
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB-S
	4	EEP SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	5	EEP SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	6	FRONT OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCSW: On/Off
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CFM
Connected to the container fan motor	2	CONTAIN_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	CFM: On/Off

2-3-5 Sub front PWB

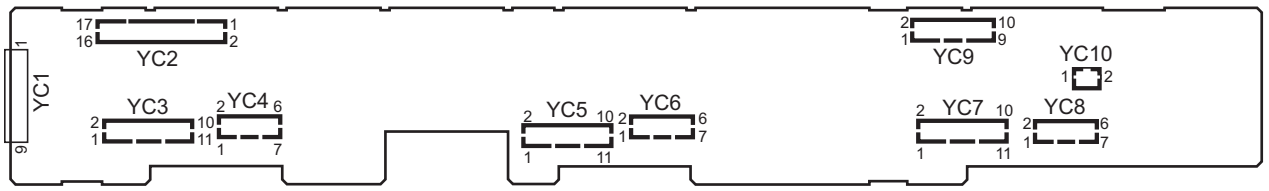
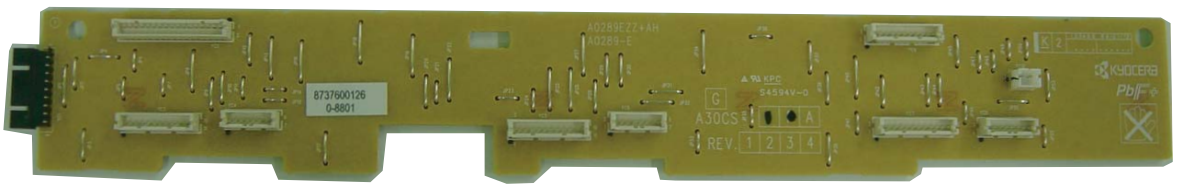


Figure 2-3-5 Sub front PWB silk-screen diagram



Sub front PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	+3.3V1	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FRPWB-S
Connected to the main front PWB	2	+5V1	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FRPWB-S
	3	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB-S
	4	EEP SCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	5	EEP SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	6	FRONT OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FCSW: On/Off
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	FDLPFAN1	I	0/24 V DC	DEVFM1: On/Off
Connected to the engine PWB	2	FDLPFAN2	I	0/24 V DC	DEVFM2: On/Off
	3	WTNR_LED	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	WTLED LED emitter signal
	4	WTNR_SENS	O	Analog	WTS detection signal
	5	WTB	-	-	Not used
	6	VCONT Y	I	Analog	TS-Y control signal
	7	TPD-1 Y	O	Analog	TS-Y detection signal
	8	POS SEN Y	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-Y: On/Off
	9	ERS_Y	I	24/0 V DC	CL-Y: On/Off
	10	VCONT C	I	Analog	TS-C control signal
	11	TPD-1 C	O	Analog	TS-C detection signal
	12	POS SEN C	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-C: On/Off
	13	ERS_C	I	24/0 V DC	CL-C: On/Off
	14	VCONT M	I	Analog	TS-M control signal
	15	TPD-1 M	O	Analog	TS-M detection signal
	16	POS SEN M	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-M: On/Off
	17	ERS_M	I	24/0 V DC	CL-M: On/Off
YC3	1	ERASER Y	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CL-Y
Connected to the cleaning lamp Y, drum PWB Y and drum position sensor Y	2	ERS DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-Y: On/Off
	3	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DRPWB-Y
	4	EEP SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-Y EEPROM clock signal
	5	EEPSDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-Y EEPROM data signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	A0(GND)	-	-	Ground
	8	A1(OPEN)	-	-	Not used
	9	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DPS-Y
	10	POS SENS 3	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-Y: On/Off
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the developing PWB Y	2	SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-Y EEPROM data signal
	3	SCK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-Y EEPROM clock signal
	4	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DEVPWB-Y
	5	TPD3	I	Analog	TS-Y detection signal
	6	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVPWB-Y
	7	VCONT 3	O	Analog	TS-Y control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	ERASER C	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CL-C
Connected to the cleaning lamp C, drum PWB C and drum position sensor C	2	ERS DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-C: On/Off
	3	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DRPWB-C
	4	EEP SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-C EEPROM clock signal
	5	EEPSDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-C EEPROM data signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	A1(OPEN)	-	-	Not used
	8	A0(GND)	-	-	Ground
	9	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DPS-C
	10	POS SENS 2	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-C: On/Off
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the developing PWB C	2	SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-C EEPROM data signal
	3	SCK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-C EEPROM clock signal
	4	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DEVPWB-C
	5	TPD2	I	Analog	TS-C detection signal
	6	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVPWB-C
	7	VCONT 2	O	Analog	TS-C control signal
YC7	1	ERASER M	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CL-M
Connected to the cleaning lamp M, drum PWB M and drum position sensor M	2	ERS DR	O	24/0 V DC	CL-M: On/Off
	3	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DRPWB-M
	4	EEP SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-M EEPROM clock signal
	5	EEPSDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRPWB-M EEPROM data signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	A0(GND)	-	-	Ground
	8	A0(GND)	-	-	Ground
	9	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DPS-M
	10	POS SENS 1	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPS-M: On/Off
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
YC8	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the developing PWB M	2	SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-M EEPROM data signal
	3	SCK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVPWB-M EEPROM clock signal
	4	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DEVPWB-M
	5	TPD1	I	Analog	TS-M detection signal
	6	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVPWB-M
	7	VCONT 1	O	Analog	TS-M control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9	1	FDLP FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM1: On/Off
Connected to the developing fan motor 1/2 and waste toner full PWB	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM1
	3	FDLP FAN2	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM2: On/Off
	4	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM2
	5	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to WTFPWB
	6	WTNR LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	WTFPWB LED emitter signal
	7	WTNR SENS	I	Analog	WTS detection signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	WTB	-	-	Not used
	10	GND	-	-	Not used
YC10	1	FRONT OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FCSW: On/Off
Connected to the front cover switch	2	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-6 Feed PWB

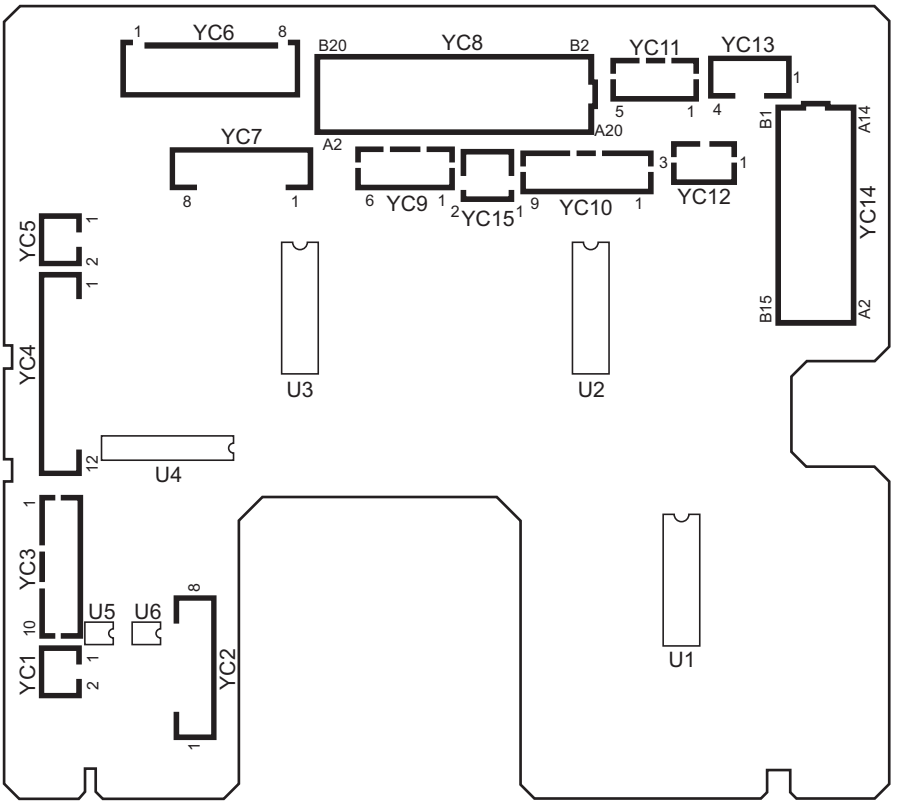


Figure 2-3-6 Feed PWB silk-screen diagram (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)

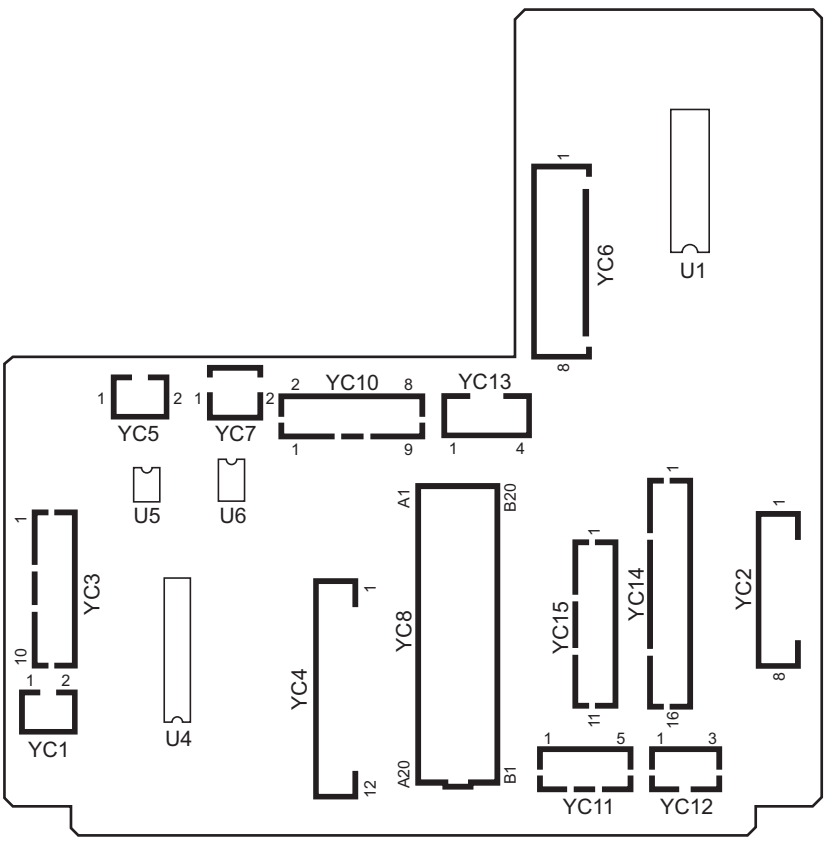
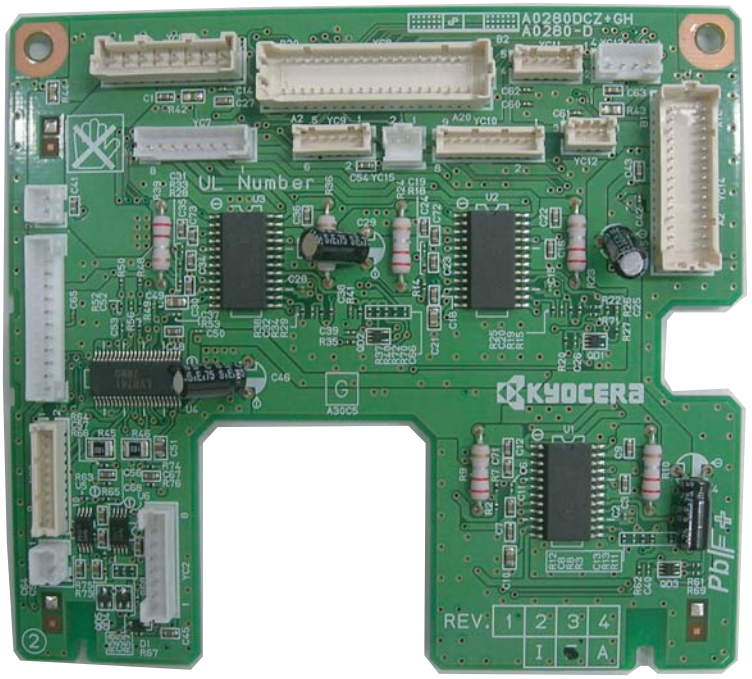
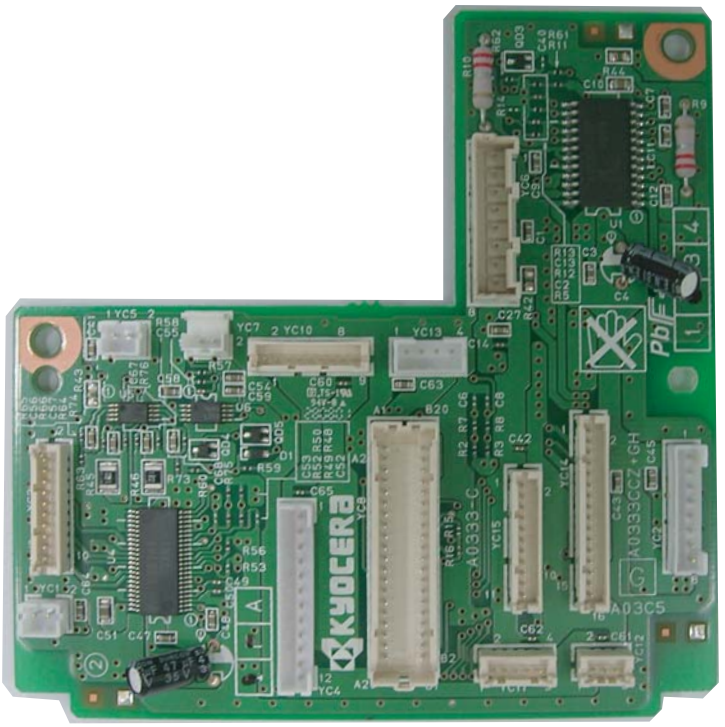


Figure 2-3-7 Feed PWB silk-screen diagram (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)



Feed PWB (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)



Feed PWB (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PFCL2
Connected to the paper feed clutch 2	2	FED2 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
YC2	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCM
Connected to the paper conveying motor	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCM
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	FEED MT RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCM ready signal
	6	FEED MT DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCM: On/Off
	7	FEED MT DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCM drive switch signal
	8	FEED MT CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PCM clock signal
YC3	1	LFT1 MOT SIG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
Connected to the lift motor 1/2	2	PGND	-	-	Ground
	3	LFT1 MOT SIG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
	4	LFT1 MOT DR2	O	0/24 V DC	LM1 drive control signal
	5	LFT1 MOT DR1	O	0/24 V DC	LM1 drive control signal
	6	LFT2 MOT SIG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	LFT2 MOT SIG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	9	LFT2 MOT DR2	O	0/24 V DC	LM2 drive control signal
	10	LFT2 MOT DR1	O	0/24 V DC	LM2 drive control signal
YC4	1	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LSW1
Connected to the lift switch 1/2 and paper switch 1/2	2	CAS1 LFT UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	LSW1: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PSW1
	5	CAS1 EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW1: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LSW2
	8	CAS2 LFT UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	LSW2: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PSW2
	11	CAS2 EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PSW2: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PFCL1
Connected to the paper feed clutch 1	2	FED1 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
YC6	1	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	3	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	PGND	-	-	Ground
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	+5V1	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7	1	REG_BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
Connected to the registration motor and middle motor (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)	2	REG_AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
	3	REG_BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
	4	REG_AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
	5	ROL_BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
	6	ROL_AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
	7	ROL_BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
	8	ROL_AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
YC7	1	LSU SOL DR	O	0/24 V DC	LSUCSOL: On/Off
Connected to the LSU cleaning solenoid (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LSUCSOL
YC8	A1	LFT1 MT SIG2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
Connected to the engine PWB	A2	LFT1 MT SIG1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 paper gauge signal
	A3	LFT2 MT SIG2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	A4	LFT2 MT SIG1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 paper gauge signal
	A5	LFT1 MT DR	I	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
	A6	LFT2 MT DR	I	0/24 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	A7	LFT1 MT LOCK	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 lock signal
	A8	LFT2 MT LOCK	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 lock signal
	A9	CAS1LIFT UP	O	0/3.3 V DC	LSW1: On/Off
	A10	CAS1 EMPTY	O	0/3.3 V DC	PSW1: On/Off
	A11	CAS2 LIFT UP	O	0/3.3 V DC	LSW2: On/Off
	A12	CAS2 EMPTY	O	0/3.3 V DC	PSW2: On/Off
	A13	FED2 CLT REM	I	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	A14	FEED MT CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PCM clock signal
	A15	FEED MT DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCM drive switch signal
	A16	FEED MT DR	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCM: On/Off
	A17	FEED MT RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCM ready signal
	A18	DU MT DR	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUM: On/Off
	A19	SENSOR FAN	I	0/3.3 V DC	LFM: On/Off
	A20	DU MT CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DUM clock signal
	B1	DU MT PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUM current control signal
	B2	CAS OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	LC2SW: On/Off
	B3	FEED2 JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	B4	FEED3 JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	B5	DU JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUSW: On/Off
	B6	DU OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	B7	COV FAN REM	I	0/24 V DC	PCFM1,2: On/Off
	B8	JAM2 LED	I	0/3.3 V DC	JLEDPWB2 LED emitter signal
	B9	JAM1 LED	I	0/3.3 V DC	JLEDPWB1 LED emitter signal
	B10	DU ENTER JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	B11	BELT JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	JDS: On/Off
Connected to the engine PWB	B12	LOOP SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	LS: On/Off
	B13	REG UP1 CLT REM	I	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
	B14	ROL UP2 CLT REM	I	0/24 V DC	MCL: On/Off
	B15	FEED1 JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	B16	MPF2 JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPCSW: On/Off
	B17	LSU SOL DR	I	0/24 V DC	LSUCSOL: On/Off
	B18	REG JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	B19	FED1 CLT REM	I	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
	B20	MT_PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCM current control signal
YC9	1	ROL MT PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	MM current control signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	ROL MT DR	I	0/3.3 V DC	MM: On/Off
	3	ROL MT CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MM clock signal
	4	REG MT PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	RM current control signal
	5	REG MT DR	I	0/3.3 V DC	RM: On/Off
	6	REG MT CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RM clock signal
YC10	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the registration switch, MP paper conveying switch and feed switch 1	2	REG JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	RSW: On/Off
	3	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to RSW
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	MPF2 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPCSW: On/Off
	6	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPPCSW
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	FEED1 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW1: On/Off
	9	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FSW1
YC11	1	CAS OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC3SW: On/Off
Connected to the left cover 3 switch and feed switch 2	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	FEED2 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW2: On/Off
	5	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FSW2
YC12	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the feed switch 3	2	FEED3 JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSW3: On/Off
	3	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FSW3
YC13	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FCL2
Connected to the feed clutch 1/2 (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)	2	ROL UP2 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	FCL2: On/Off
	3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FCL1
	4	REG UP1 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	FCL1: On/Off

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCL
Connected to the middle clutch and registration clutch (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)	2	ROL UP2 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	MCL: On/Off
	3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to RCL
	4	REG UP1 CLT REM	O	0/24 V DC	RCL: On/Off
YC14	A1	LOOP SENS	I	Analog	LS: On/Off
Connected to the loop sensor, feedshift switch, JAM LED PWB 1/2, loop fan motor, paper conveying fan motor 1/2, left cover 1 switch, duplex switch and duplex motor (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LS
	A4	GND	-	-	Not used
	A5	BELT JAM	-	-	Not used
	A6	+5V1	-	-	Not used
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	DU ENTER JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	A9	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FSSW
	A10	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JLEDPWB2
	A11	JAM2 LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LED emitter signal
	A12	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JLEDPWB1
	A13	JAM1 LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LED emitter signal
	A14	SENSOR FAN	O	0/24 V DC	LFM: On/Off
	A15	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LFM
	B1	NC	-	-	Not used
	B2	NC	-	-	Not used
	B3	COV FAN1 REM	O	0/24 V DC	PCFM1: On/Off
	B4	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCFM1
	B5	COV FAN2 REM	O	0/24 V DC	PCFM2: On/Off
	B6	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCFM2
	B7	DU OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	DU JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUSW: On/Off
	B11	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DUSW
	B12	DU AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	B13	DU BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	B14	DU AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	B15	DU BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	COV FAN1 REM	O	0/24 V DC	PCFM1: On/Off
Connected to the paper conveying fan motor 1/2, left cover 1 switch, duplex switch, duplex motor and JAM detection sensor (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCFM1
	3	COV FAN2 REM	O	0/24 V DC	PCFM2: On/Off
	4	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCFM2
	5	DU OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	LC1SW: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	DU JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUSW: On/Off
	9	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DUSW
	10	DU AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	11	DU BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	12	DU AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	13	DU BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM drive control signal
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	BELT JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	JDS: On/Off
	16	+5V1	O	5 V DC	24 V DC power to JDS
YC15	1	LSU SOL DR	O	0/24 V DC	LSUCSOL: On/Off
Connected to the LSU cleaning solenoid (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LSUCSOL
YC15	1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to the feed-shift switch, JAM LED PWB 1/2 and loop fan motor (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	DU EMTER JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FSSW: On/Off
	5	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FSSW
	6	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JLEDPWB2
	7	JAM2 LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LED emitter signal
	8	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JLEDPWB1
	9	JAM1 LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	LED emitter signal
	10	SENSOR FAN	O	0/24 V DC	LFM: On/Off
	11	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LFM

2-3-7 ISM PWB

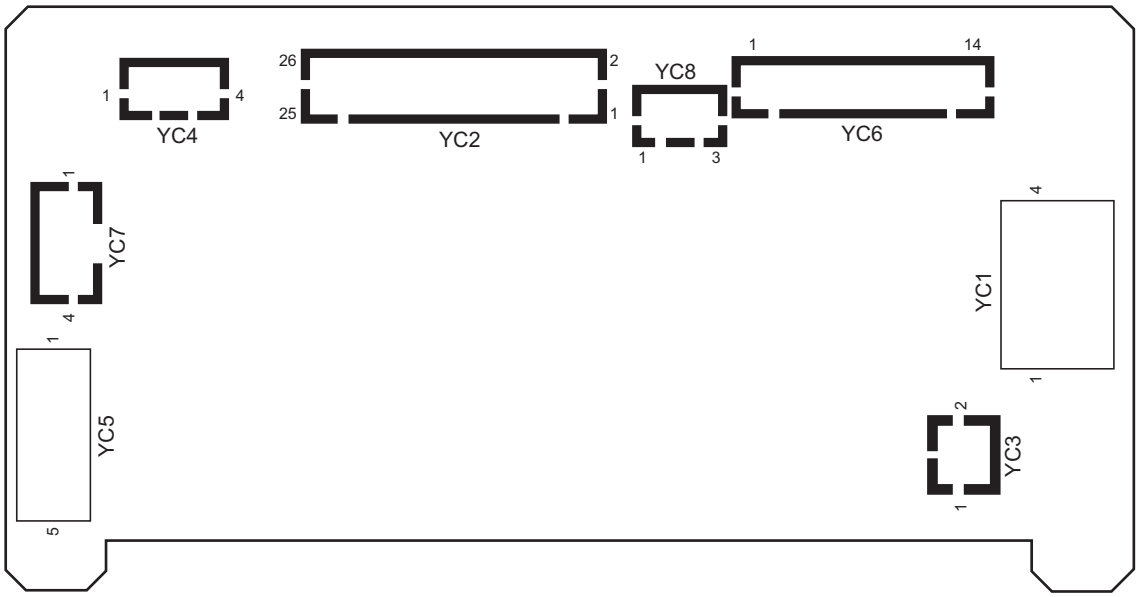
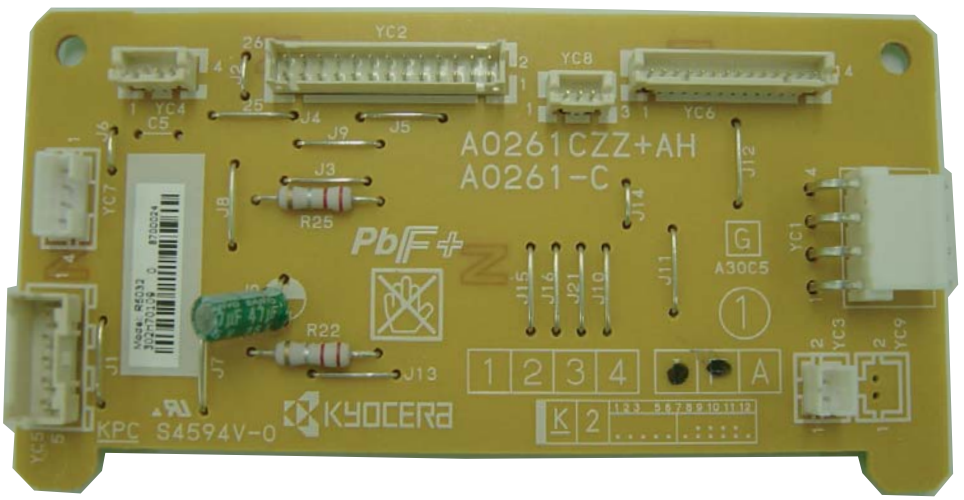


Figure 2-3-8 ISM PWB silk-screen diagram



ISM PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
Connected to the power source PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	12V1	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power from PSPWB
YC2	1	DPTMG	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP timing signal
Connected to the ISC PWB	2	DPRDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP ready signal
	3	HPSW	O	0/3.3 V DC	HPSW: On/Off
	4	DPEND	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP end signal
	5	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to ISCPWB
	6	DPSEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP select signal
	7	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to ISCPWB
	8	DPSDI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	9	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from ISCPWB
	10	DPCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DP clock signal
	11	FANREM	I	0/3.3 V DC	SFM: On/Off
	12	DPSDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	13	SM_FR	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	14	DP_CO	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP open signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	SMTVREF	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	SM_STP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	20	INV_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	INPWB clock signal
	21	SM_STB	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	SM control signal
	22	COSW1	O	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
	23	MON24V	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	24	INVTH	O	0/3.3 V DC	EL control signal
	25	SLAMPON	I	0/3.3 V DC	EL: On/Off
	26	NC	-	-	Not used
YC3	1	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to SFM
Connected to the scanner fan motor	2	FANREM	O	0/24 V DC	SFM: On/Off
YC4	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the original detection switch	2	COSW1	I	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	24 V DC power to ODSW
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
YC5	1	INV_CL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	INPWB clock signal
Connected to the inverter PWB	2	INVTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	EL control signal
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SLAMPON	O	0/3.3 V DC	EL: On/Off
	5	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to INPWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	DPCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DP clock signal
Connected to the optional DP	2	DPSDO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	3	DPSDI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	DPSEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	DP select signal
	5	DPEND	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP end signal
	6	DPRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP ready signal
	7	DPTMG	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP timing signal
	8	DP CO	I	0/3.3 V DC	DP open signal
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7	1	SMOT BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
Connected to the scanner motor	2	SMOT AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	3	SMOT BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	4	SMOT AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
YC8	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the home position switch	2	HPSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	HPSW: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HPSW

2-3-8 Main operation PWB

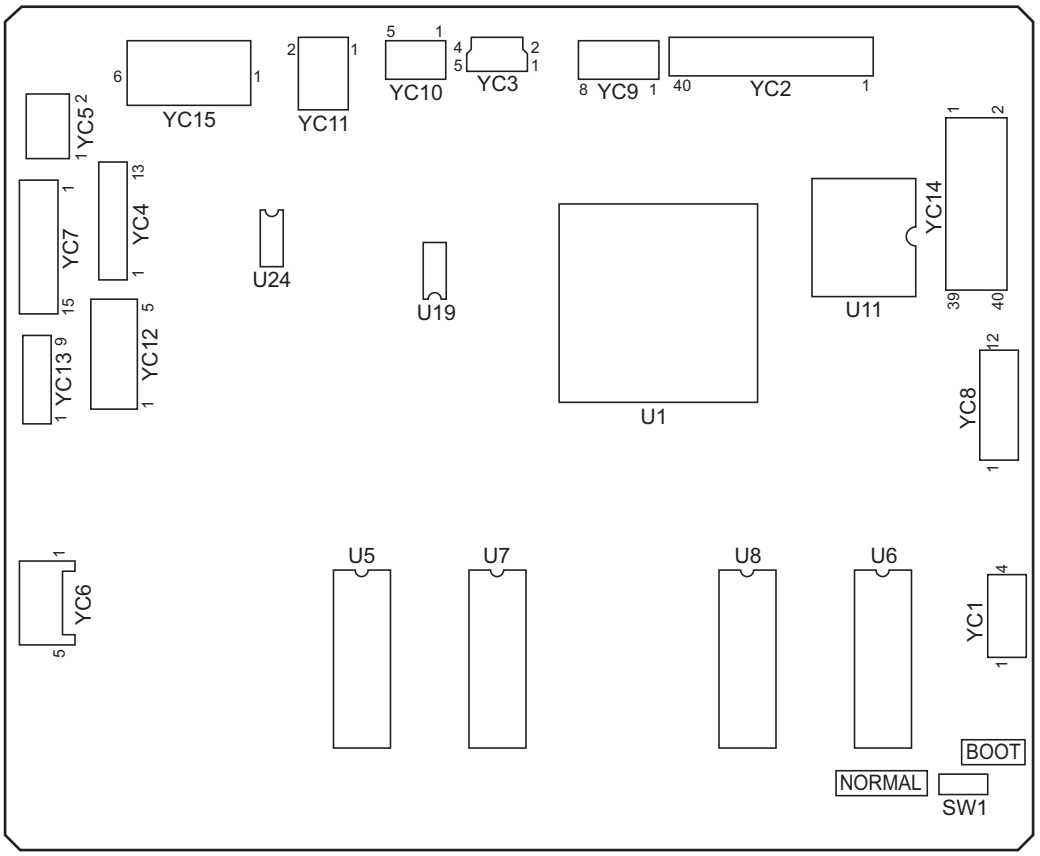
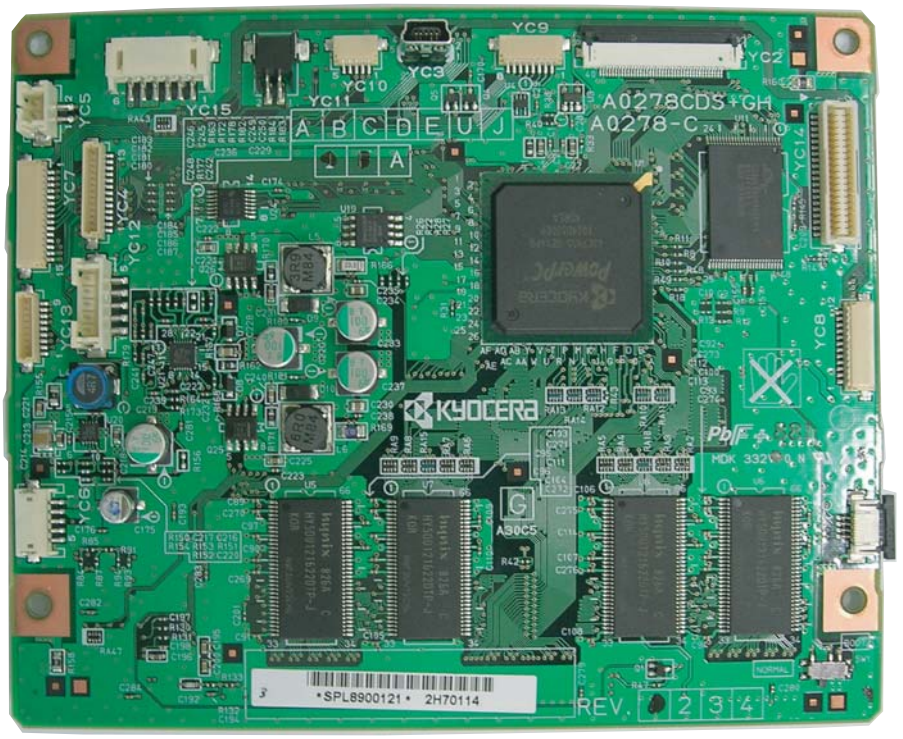


Figure 2-3-9 Main operation PWB silk-screen diagram



Main operation PWB

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	TOP Y+	I	Analog	Touch panel Y+ position signal
Connected to the touch panel	2	LEFT X+	I	Analog	Touch panel X+ position signal
	3	BOT Y-	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
	4	RIGHT X-	I	Analog	Touch panel X- position signal
YC2	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the LCD	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	B5(MSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	4	B4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	5	B3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	B2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	8	B1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	9	B0(LSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	10	SGND	-	-	Ground
	11	G5(MSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	12	G4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	13	G3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	14	SGND	-	-	Ground
	15	G2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	16	G1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	17	G0(LSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	18	SGND	-	-	Ground
	19	R5(MSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	20	R4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	21	R3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	22	SGND	-	-	Ground
	23	R2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	24	R1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	25	R0(LSB)	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	26	SGND	-	-	Ground
	27	DE	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	28	SGND	-	-	Ground
	29	L_R	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	30	U_D	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	31	SGND	-	-	Ground
	32	DCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD clock signal
	33	NC	-	-	Not used
	34	SGND	-	-	Ground
	35	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LCD
	36	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LCD
	37	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LCD
	38	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LCD
	39	SGND	-	-	Ground
	40	SGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	VBUS	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
Connected to the main PWB	2	DN	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DP	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	ID	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	SUPND POWER	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from MPWB
Connected to the main PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	PH KEY	O	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	AUDIO	I	Analog	Audio output signal
	6	SUPND_ENTER	I	0/3.3 V DC	Energy save mode control signal
	7	+24V_DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	24 V DC down signal
	8	SW_FOOTN	-	-	Not used
	9	HOLDPANEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel displaying enable signal
	10	PANEL_RESET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPWB reset signal
	11	S_LED1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	12	S_LED0	I	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel LED display signal
	13	PANEL_STATUS	O	0/3.3 V DC	Operation panel status signal
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the LCD inverter PWB	2	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to LINPWB
	3	LCDBKLT	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD back light: On/Off
	4	ADJUST	O	Analog	LCD back light brightness adjustment signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC7	1	KEY0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
Connected to the right operation PWB	2	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	3	KEY2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	4	KEY3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	5	KEY4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 4
	6	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	7	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	8	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	9	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	10	SCAN6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
	11	LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 0
	12	LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	13	PH KEY	I	0/5 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	14	SUPND POWER	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB-R
	15	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	1	SCAN6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 6
Connected to the left operation PWB	2	KEY5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 5
	3	KEY6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 6
	4	KEY7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 7
	5	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	6	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	7	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	8	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	9	LED2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 2
	10	LED3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 3
	11	LED4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 4
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
YC9	1	SCAN4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
Connected to the upper operation PWB	2	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
	3	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 5
	4	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 6
	5	LED7	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 7
	6	S_LED0	O	0/5 V DC	Operation panel LED display drive signal 0
	7	S_LED1	O	0/5 V DC	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
YC10	1	SCAN5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 5
Connected to the front operation PWB	2	LED5	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 5
	3	LED6	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 6
	4	S_LED1	O	0/5 V DC	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC11	1	VO2	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (+)
Connected to the speaker	2	VO1	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (-)
YC15	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the power source PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	5	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	6	+12V	I	12 V DC	12 V DC power from PSPWB

Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
Paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-
Separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-
Forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-
MP paper feed pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY LEADING FEED MPT	302FZ08130	2FZ08130
Registration left roller	PARTS,ROLLER REGIST L SP	302FZ94520	2FZ94520
MP paper conveying roller 2	PARTS,ROLLER BYPASS A SP	302FZ94472	2FZ94472
MP paper conveying roller 3	PARTS,ROLLER BYPASS B SP	302FZ94481	2FZ94481
MP middle roller	PARTS,ROLLER MID MPT SP	302FZ94490	2FZ94490
MP paper conveying pulley	PULLEY MPT BYPASS	302FZ07020	2FZ07020
Middle roller	PARTS,ROLLER MIDDLE R SP	302FZ94540	2FZ94540
Upper/Lower feed roller*1	PARTS ROLLER FEED LOW	302H794200	2H794200
Upper/Lower feed roller*2	ROLLER FEED LOW	302FZ22750	2FZ22750
Slit glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS ADF ASSY	302H793481	2H793481
Contact glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS ASSY(C)	302H793380	2H793380
	PARTS CONTACT GLASS ASSY(I)	302H793370	2H793370
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	2FB12140	-
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	302GR17280	2GR17280
Lens	-	-	-
Exposure lamp	PARTS LAMP SCANNER	302H794260	2H794260
Optical rail F	-	-	-
Optical rail R	-	-	-
Original size sensor	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	-
Laser scanner unit*1	PARTS LSU UNIT HIGH	302H793432	2H793432
Laser scanner unit*2	PARTS LSU UNIT LOW	302JZ93062	2JZ93062
Transfer belt unit*1	PARTS TRANSFER BELT H UNIT	302H793225	2H793225
Transfer belt unit*2	PARTS TRANSFER BELT L UNIT	302JZ93075	2JZ93075
Transfer roller	PARTS ROLLER TRANSFER ASSY	302H793540	2H793540
Developing unit K	PARTS DLP K UNIT	302H793178	2H793178
Developing unit C	PARTS DLP C UNIT	302H793188	2H793188
Developing unit Y	PARTS DLP Y UNIT	302H793198	2H793198
Developing unit M	PARTS DLP M UNIT	302H793208	2H793208
Drum unit*1	PARTS DRUM 50 UNIT	302H793012	2H793012
Drum unit*2	PARTS DRUM 25 UNIT	302JZ93012	2JZ93012
Fuser unit*1	PARTS FUSER 240 H UNIT	302H793244	2H793244
	PARTS FUSER 120 H UNIT	302H793234	2H793234
Fuser unit*2	PARTS FUSER 240 L UNIT	302JZ93094	2JZ93094
	PARTS FUSER 120 L UNIT	302JZ93084	2JZ93084
Eject roller	ROLLER EXIT FD	302H728010	2H728010
Duplex A roller	PARTS,ROLLER DUPLEX A SP	302FZ94620	2FZ94620
Duplex B roller	PARTS,ROLLER DUPLEX B SP	302FZ94630	2FZ94630

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
Rear upper filter 2	FILTER VOC	302H733610	2H733610
Left filter	FILTER DUCT PU2	302H733540	2H733540
	FILTER DUCT PU KME	302H733630	2H733630
Rear lower filter	PARTS COVER FILTER UNIT	302H794630	2H794630
Right filter	PARTS FILTER VU ASSY	302H794430	2H794430
Front filter	FILTER DUST	302H703590	2H703590

*1: 40/40, 50/40 ppm models *2: 25/25, 30/30 ppm models

Maintenance kits (25/25, 30/30 ppm models)

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	**Name used in parts list**		
Maintenance kit A (for 120 V specifications)	MK-865A/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702JZ7US0	072JZ7US
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER ASSY SP	-	-
Drum unit K	DRUM 25 UNIT	-	-
Transfer belt unit	TRANSFER BELT L UNIT	-	-
Developing unit K	DLP K L UNIT	-	-
Drum unit	DRUM 25 UNIT	-	-
Fuser unit	FUSER 120 L UNIT SP	-	-
Left filter	FILTER DUCT PU2	-	-
Rear upper filter 2	FILTER VOC	-	-
Maintenance kit A (for 220 - 240 V specifications)	MK-865A/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702JZ8EU0	072JZ8EU
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER ASSY SP	-	-
Drum unit K	DRUM 25 UNIT	-	-
Transfer belt unit	TRANSFER BELT L UNIT	-	-
Developing unit K	DLP K L UNIT	-	-
Fuser unit	FUSER 240 L UNIT SP	-	-
Rear upper filter 2	FILTER VOC	-	-
Left filter	FILTER DUCT PU KME	-	-
Maintenance kit B	MK-865B/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702JZ0UN0	072JZ0UN
Drum unit Y	DRUM 25 Y UNIT	-	-
Drum unit M	DRUM 25 M UNIT	-	-
Drum unit C	DRUM 25 C UNIT	-	-
Developing unit C	DLP C L UNIT	-	-
Developing unit Y	DLP Y L UNIT	-	-
Developing unit M	DLP M L UNIT		

Maintenance kits (40/40, 50/40 ppm models)

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	**Name used in parts list**		
Maintenance kit A (for 120 V specifications)	MK-855A/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702H77US0	072H77US
Drum unit K	DRUM 50 UNIT	-	-
Transfer belt unit	TRANSFER BELT H UNIT	-	-
Developing unit K	DLP K UNIT	-	-
Fuser unit	FUSER 120 H UNIT SP	-	-
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER ASSY SP	-	-
Left filter	FILTER DUCT PU2	-	-
Rear upper filter 2	FILTER VOC	-	-
Maintenance kit A (for 220 - 240 V specifications)	MK-855A/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702H78EU0	072H78EU
Developing unit K	DLP K UNIT	-	-
Transfer belt unit	TRANSFER BELT H UNIT	-	-
Drum unit K	DRUM 50 UNIT	-	-
Fuser unit	FUSER 240 H UNIT SP	-	-
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER ASSY SP	-	-
Rear upper filter 2	FILTER VOC	-	-
Left filter	FILTER DUCT PU KME	-	-
Maintenance kit B	MK-855B/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702H70UN0	072H70UN
Developing unit C	DLP C UNIT	-	-
Developing unit Y	DLP Y UNIT	-	-
Developing unit M	DLP M UNIT		
Drum unit Y	DRUM 50 Y UNIT	-	-
Drum unit M	DRUM 50 M UNIT	-	-
Drum unit C	DRUM 50 C UNIT	-	-

Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Test copy		



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Paper feed pulley	Check Clean	Check Replace	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	Separation pulley	Check Clean	Check Replace	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	Forwarding pulley	Check Clean	Check Replace	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	MP paper feed pulley	Check Clean	Check Replace	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-8
	MP separation pulley	Check Clean	Check Replace	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-8
	MP forwarding pulley	Check Clean	Check Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-8
	Registration left roller	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	MP paper conveying roller 2	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	MP paper conveying roller 3	Clean	Check Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	MP middle roller	Check Clean	Check Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	
	MP paper conveying pulley	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Middle roller	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Upper/Lower feed roller	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Rollers and pulleys	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Clutches	Check Replace	Check	Check state of paper feed	
	Guides	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Slit glass	-	Clean	Clean with a dry cloth or alcohol (do not clean with a wet cloth).	
	Contact glass (metric)	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Contact glass (inch)	Clean	Clean	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Mirror 1	Clean	-	Clean with a dry cloth and then air blow only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	-	Clean with a dry cloth and then air blow only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Lens	Clean	-	Clean with a dry cloth and then air blow only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Exposure lamp	Check Replace	-	Replace if an image problem occurs.	P.1-5-11
	Optical rail	Grease	-	Check noise and shifting and then apply scanner rail grease PG-671.	
	Original size sensor	Check Clean	-	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.	
	Laser scanner unit	-	Check Clean	Vacuum the slit glass.	P.1-5-21



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer section	Transfer belt unit	-	Replace	Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-37
	Transfer roller	-	Replace	Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-39



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit K	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-34
	Developing unit C	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-34
	Developing unit Y	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-34
	Developing unit M	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-34



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Drum section	Drum unit	Clean	Replace	Vacuum. Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-35



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Fuser section	Fuser unit	-	Replace	Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-41



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Duplex A roller	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Duplex B roller	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Guides	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

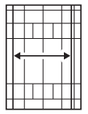
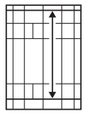
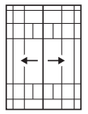
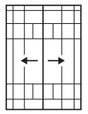
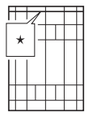
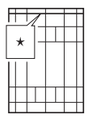
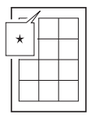
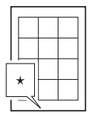
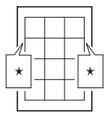
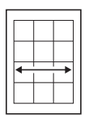


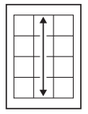
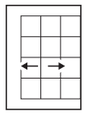
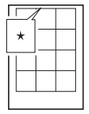
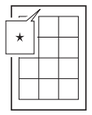
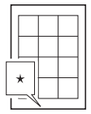
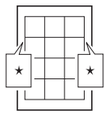
Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Original platen	-	Clean	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	300K/ 600K/900K	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Rear upper filter 2	-	Replace	Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-42
	Left filter	-	Replace	Replace after feeding 300,000 sheets.	P.1-5-42
	Rear lower filter	Clean	Clean	Vacuum.	P.1-5-42
	Right filter	Clean	Clean	Vacuum.	P.1-5-42
	Front filter	Clean	Clean	Vacuum.	P.1-5-42
	Clutches	Check Replace	Check	Check state of paper conveying	
	Sensors	Check	Check	Clean the sensor receiver with a dry cloth or air blow.	
	Image quality	Check Adjust	Check Adjust		

Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	Polygon	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-34	
2	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Transfer motor speed adjustment	U053	TC Motor	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-34	
3	Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT LEFT (MPT)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-29	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT LEFT (DUP).
4	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 1) LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 2) LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 3) LSUOUT LEFT (CAS 4)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-29	Cassette 1: select Center (Feed 1) Cassette 2: select Center (Feed 2) Cassette 3: select Center (Feed 3) Cassette 4: select Center (Feed 4)
5	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSUOUT TOP MPT	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-27	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT TOP DUP.
6	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the cassette (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSUOUT TOP CAS	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-27	
7	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-114	
8	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-114	
9	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A/C	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-114	
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-39	No adjustment for copying using the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
11	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	SUB SCAN ADJ CONVEY SPEED1 CONVEY SPEED2 CIS SUB ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-39 P.1-3-43	U065: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U070: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select CONVEY SPEED2 or CIS SUB ADJ.
12	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067 U072	ADJUST DATA1 ADJUST DATA2 ADJUST DATA1 ADJUST DATA2 ADJUST DATA3	Test chart	P.1-3-41 P.1-3-46	U067: For copying an original placed on the contact glass To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select ADJUST DATA2. U072: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select ADJUST DATA2 or ADJUST DATA3.
13	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing	U066 U071	ADJUST DATA1 ADJUST DATA2 ADJUST DATA1 ADJUST DATA3 ADJUST DATA5	Test chart	P.1-3-40 P.1-3-44	U066: For copying an original placed on the contact glass To make an adjustment for trailing edge registration, select ADJUST DATA2. U071: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select ADJUST DATA3 or ADJUST DATA5.
14	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	B MARGIN B MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-115 P.1-3-116	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
15	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	D MARGIN D MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-115 P.1-3-116	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
16	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	A MARGIN C MARGIN A MARGIN C MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-115 P.1-3-116	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.

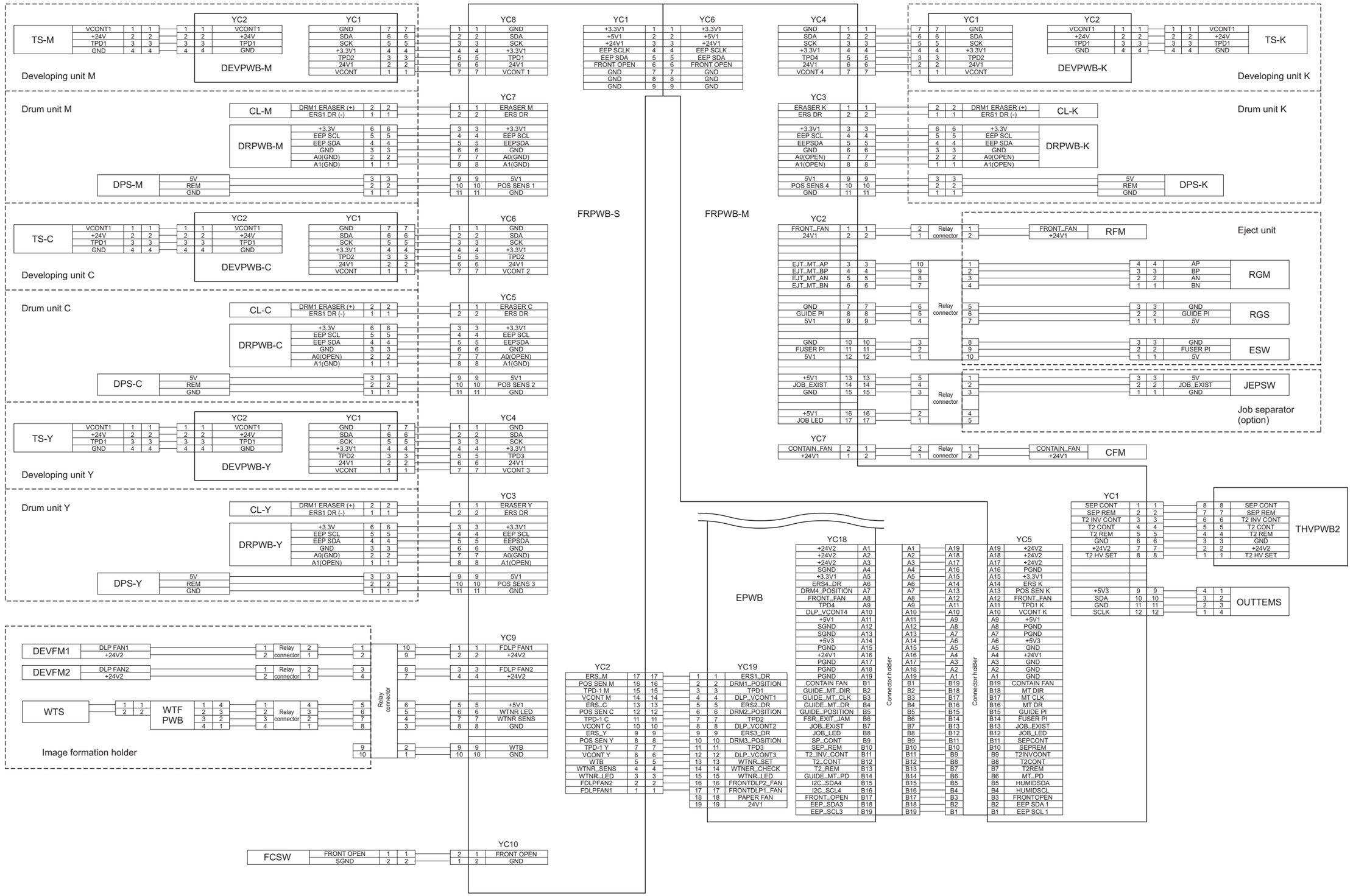
When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the specified original (P/N 302FZ56990), the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065)
Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the DP) is run using the specified original (P/N 302AC68243), the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

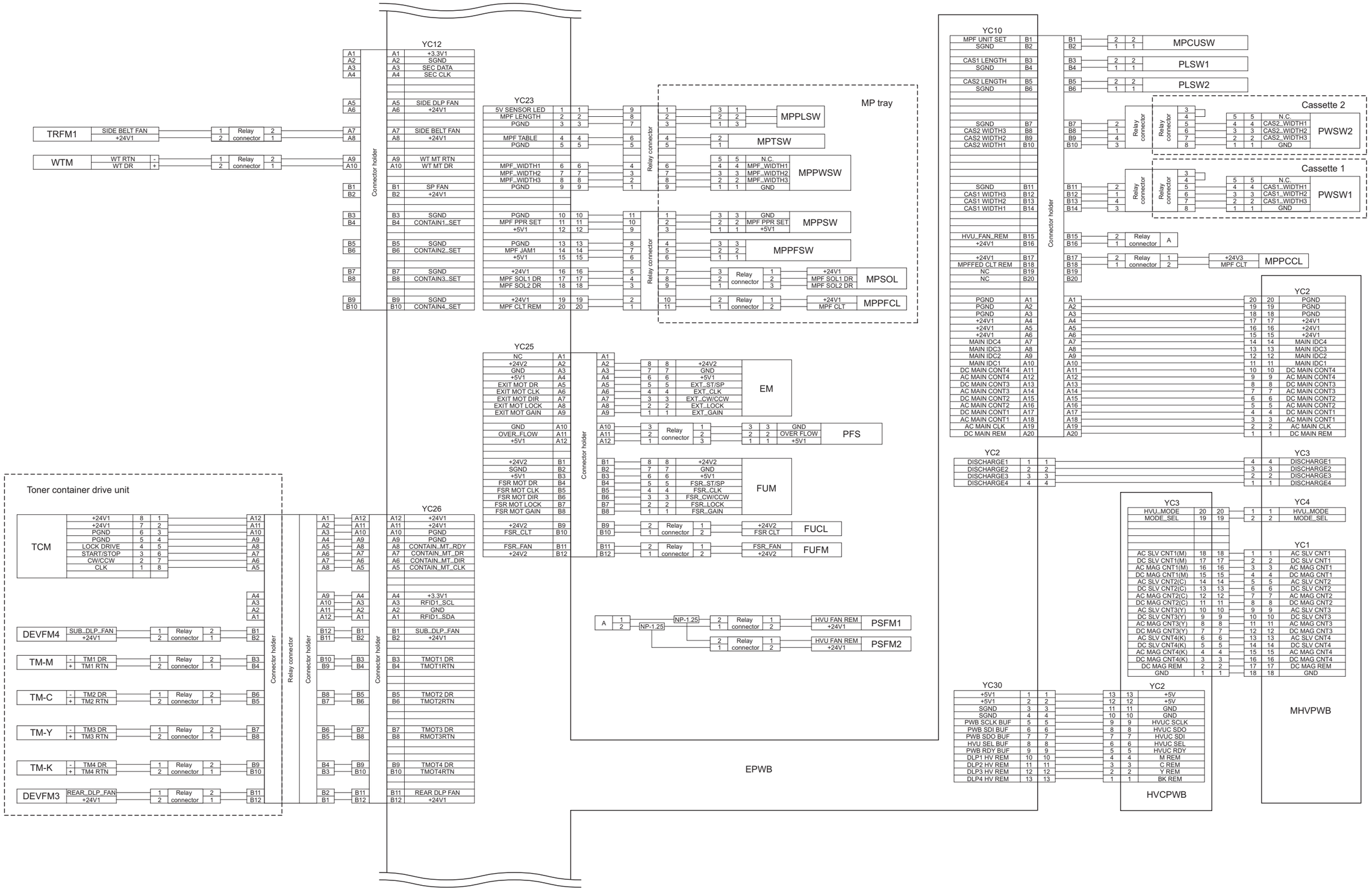
Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: ±0.8% Using DP: ±1.5%
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: ±1.0% Using DP: ±1.5%
Lateral squareness	Machine: ±1.5 mm/375 mm Using DP: ±2.5 mm/375 mm
Leading edge registration	Cassette: +1.0/-1.5 mm MP tray: +1.0/-1.5 mm Duplex: +1.0/-1.5 mm
Skewed paper feed (left-right difference)	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less MP tray: 1.5 mm or less Duplex: 2.0 mm or less
Lateral image shifting	Cassette: ±2.0 mm MP tray: ±2.0 mm Duplex: ±3.0 mm

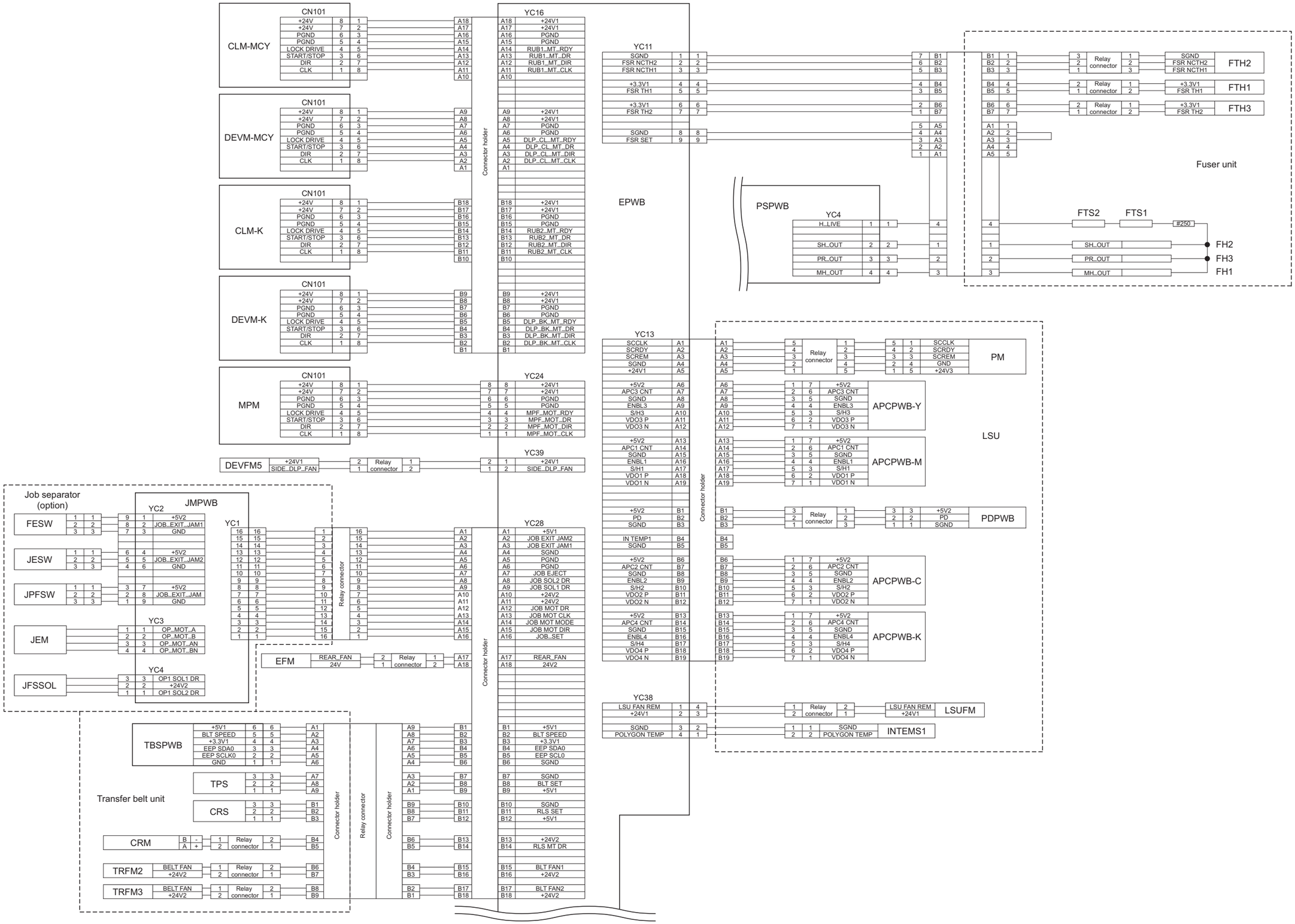
Wiring diagram No.1



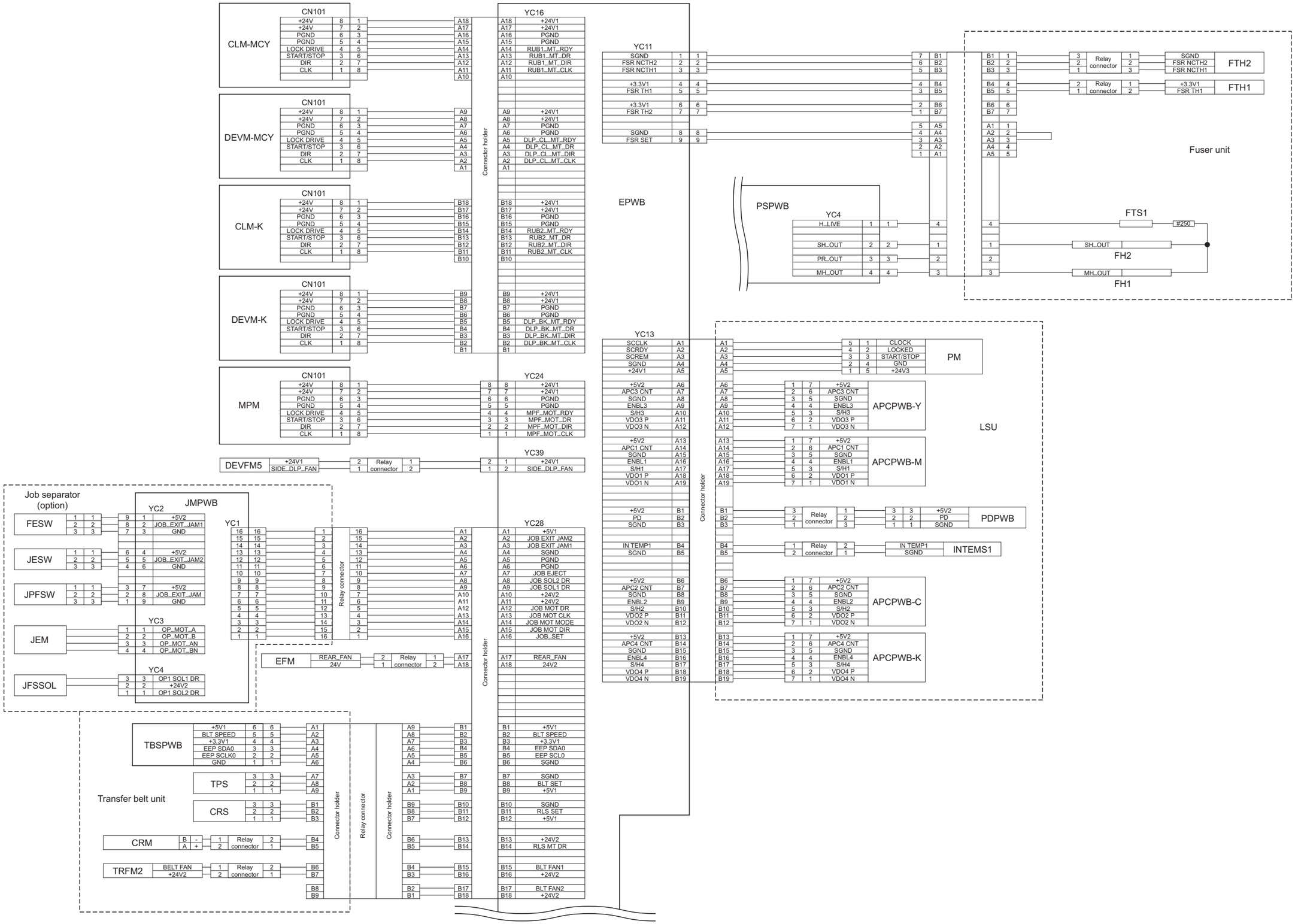
Wiring diagram No.2



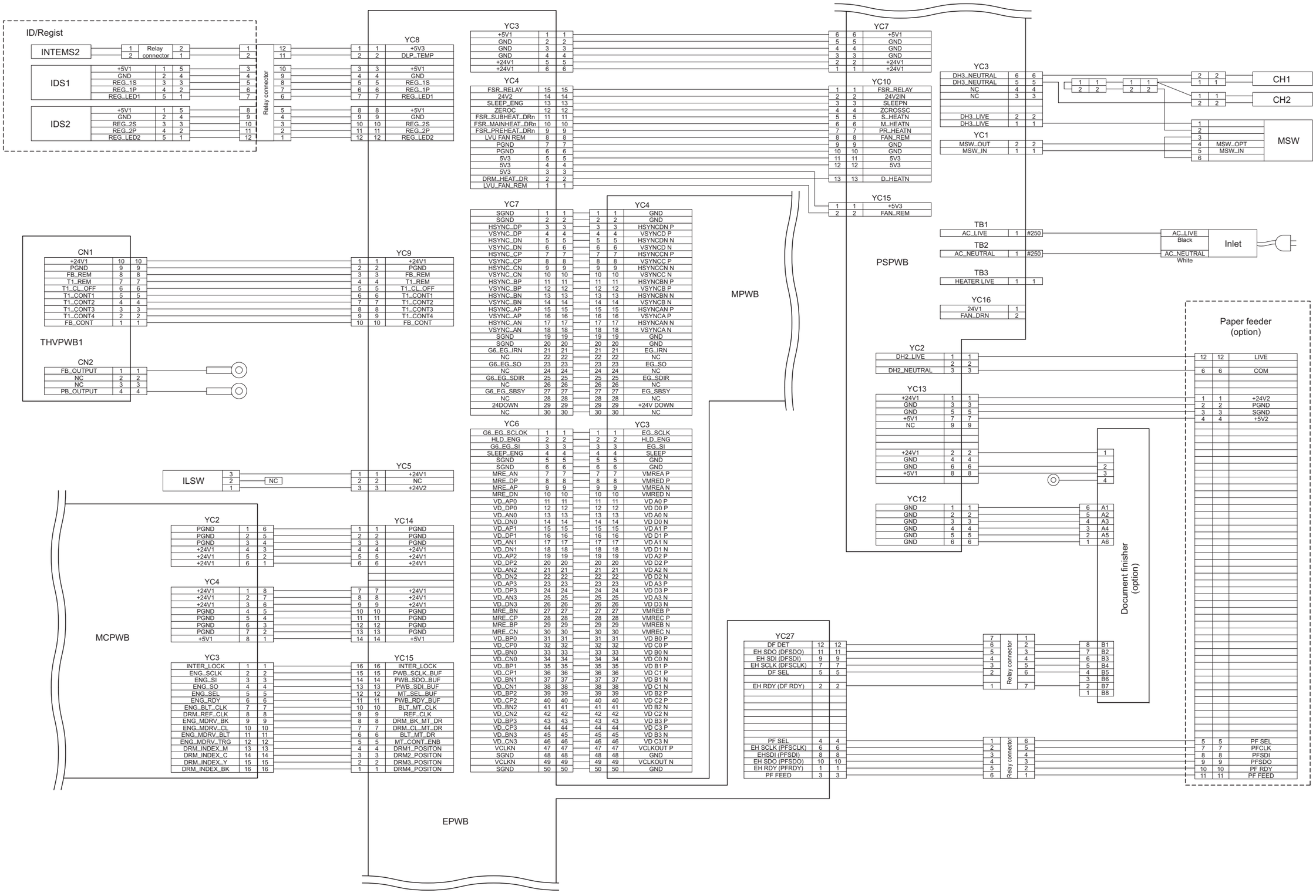
Wiring diagram No.3 (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)



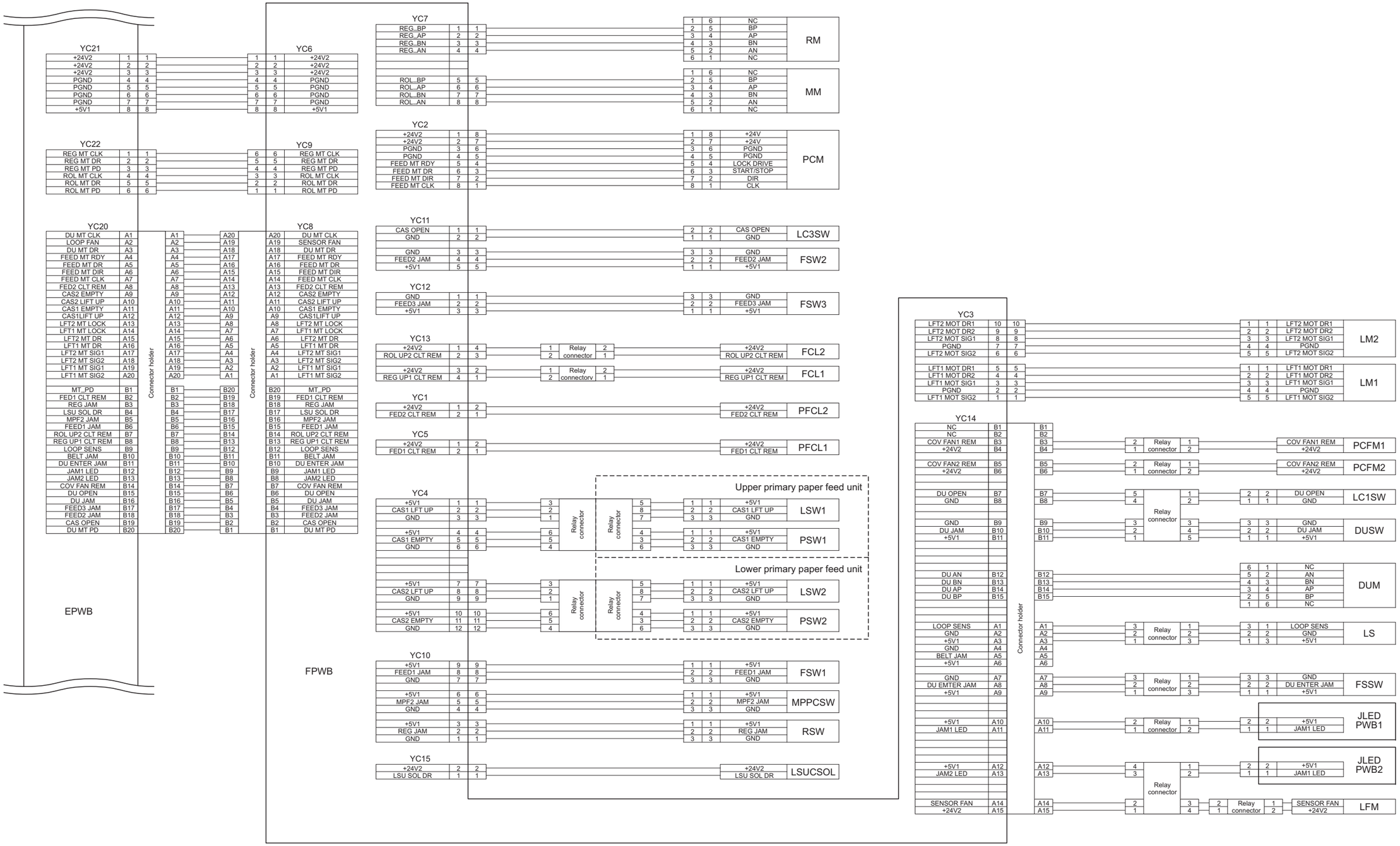
Wiring diagram No.3 (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)



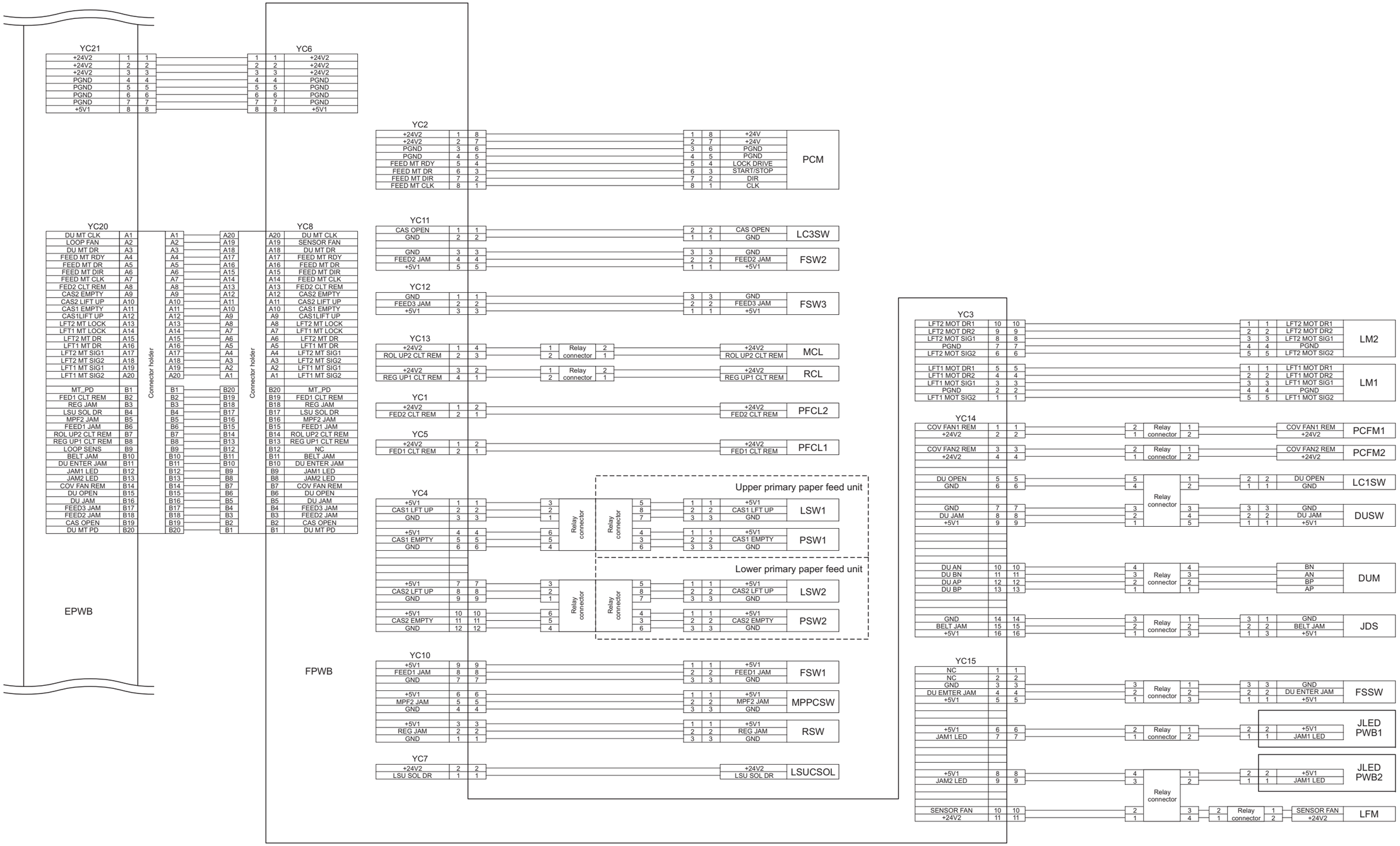
Wiring diagram No.4



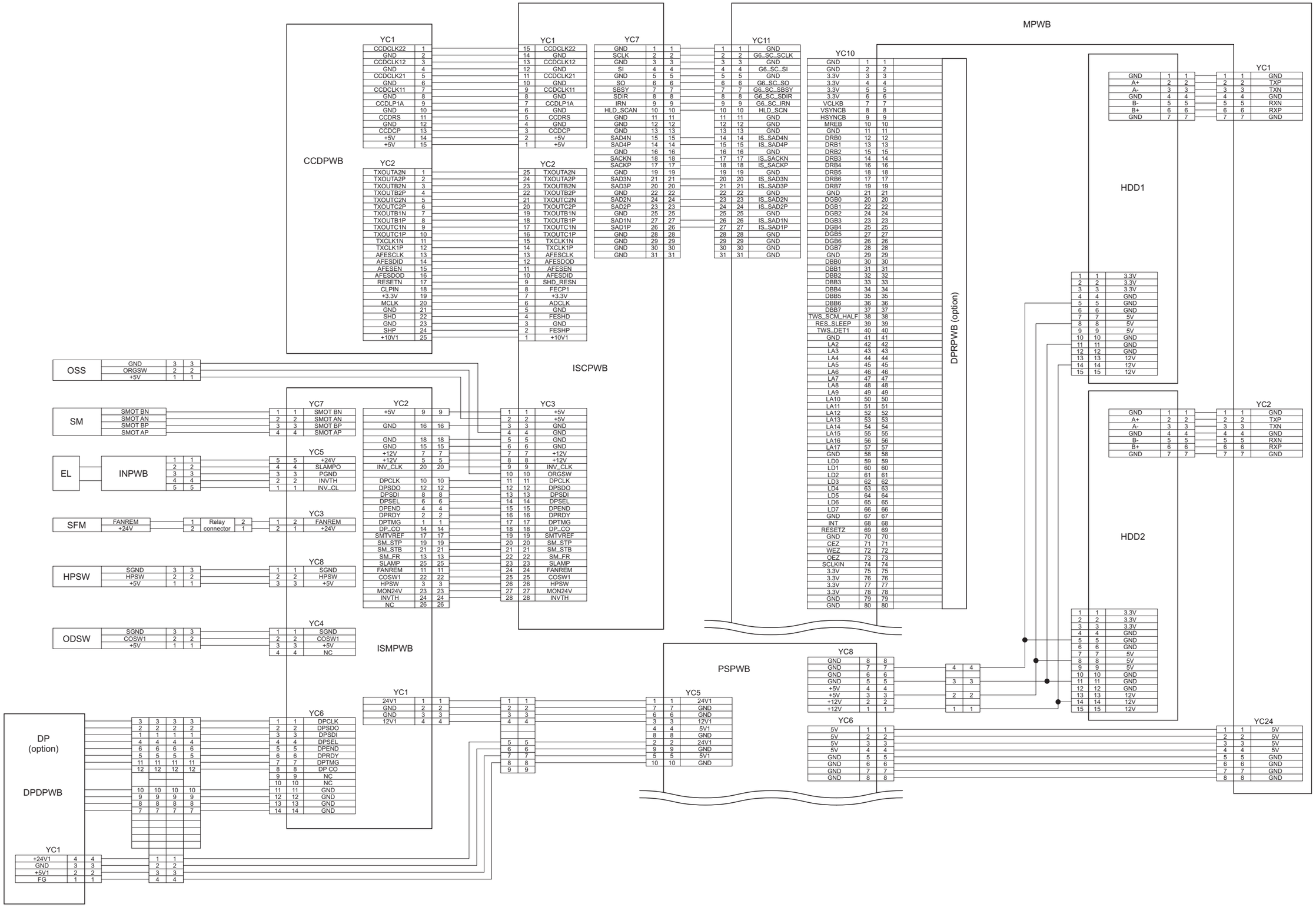
Wiring diagram No.5 (40/40, 50/40 ppm model)



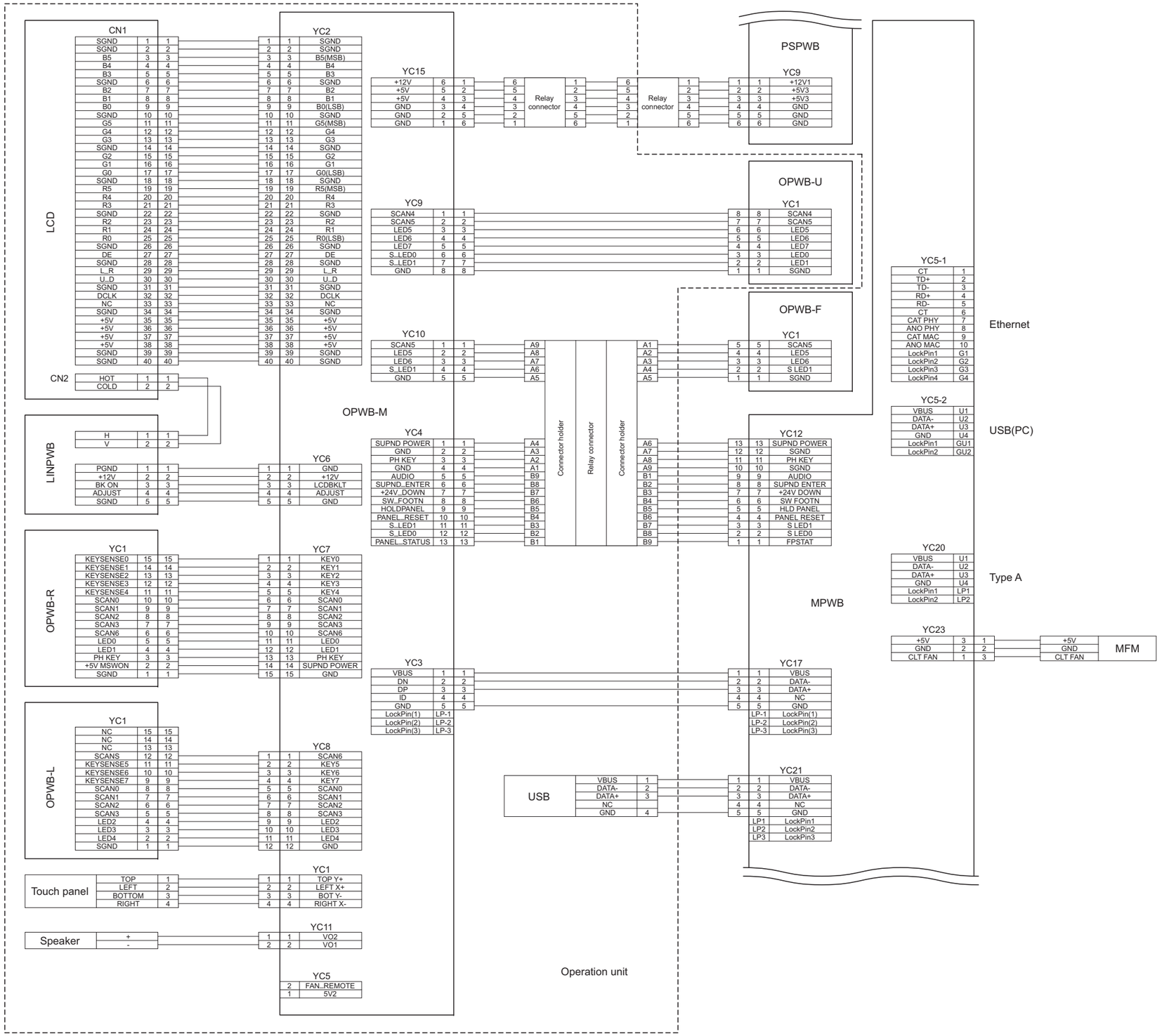
Wiring diagram No.5 (25/25, 30/30 ppm model)



Wiring diagram No.6



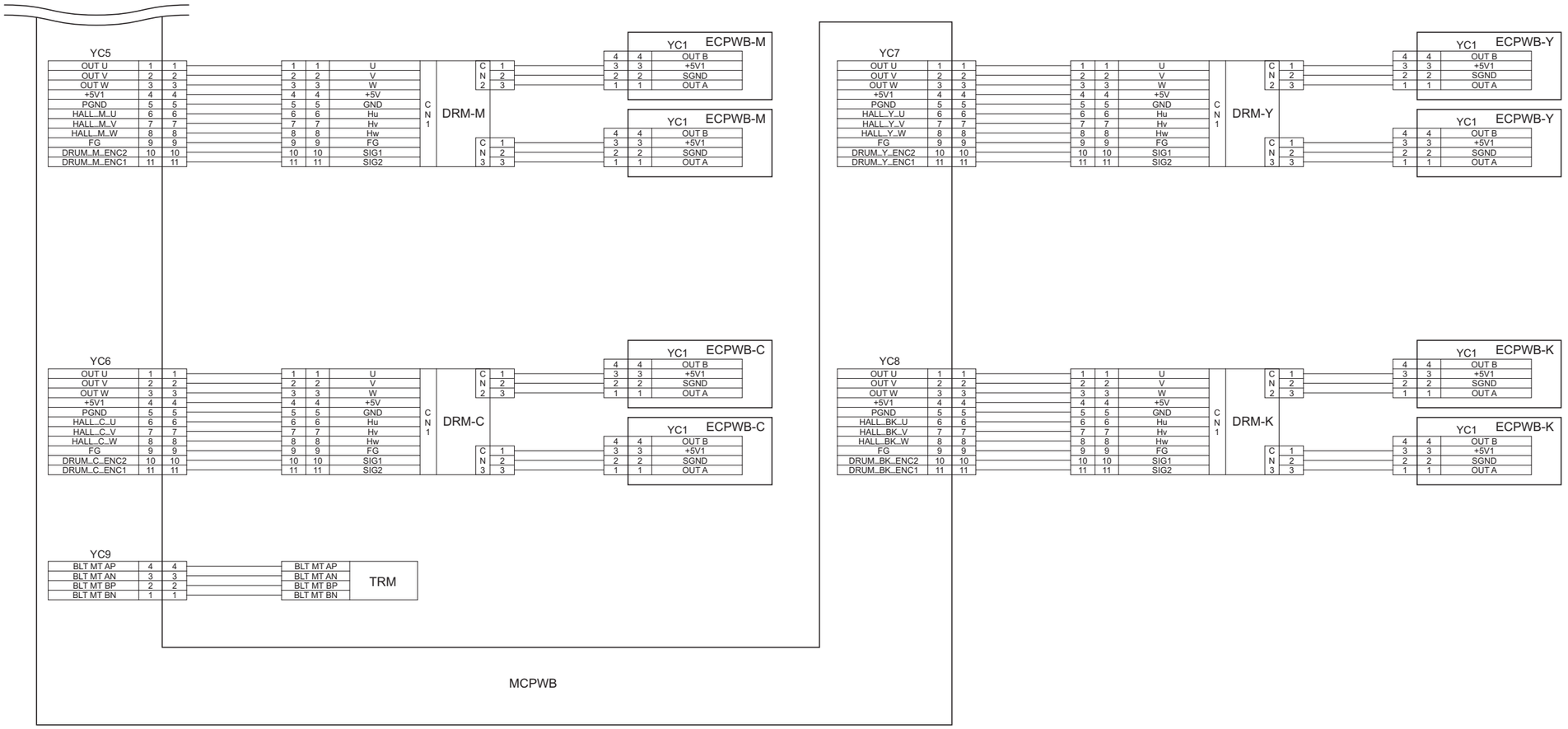
Wiring diagram No.7



Wiring diagram No.8

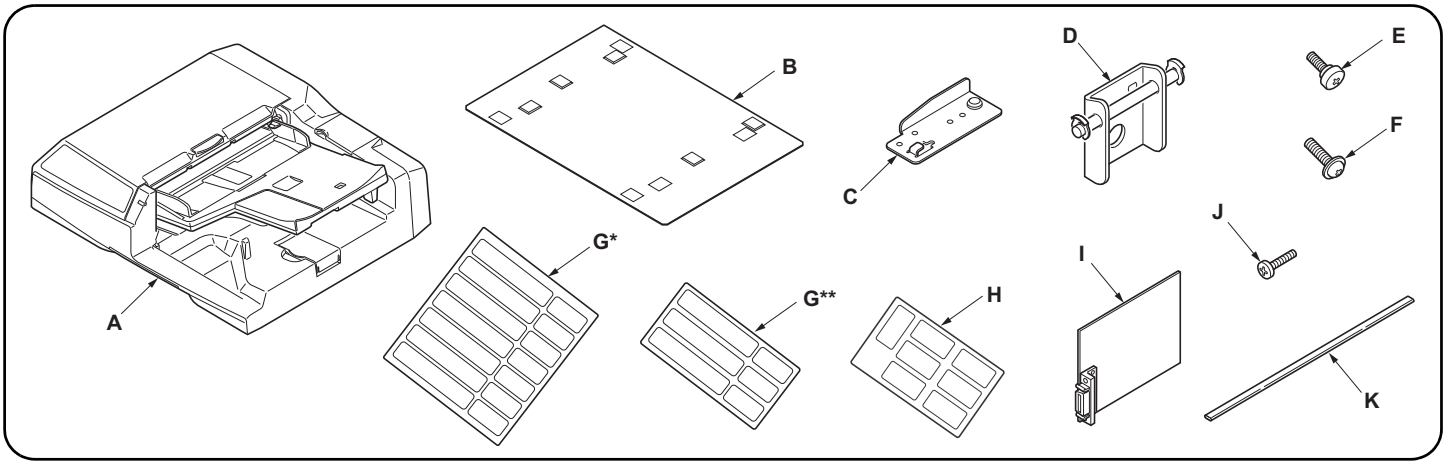


Wiring diagram No.9



INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT PROCESSOR

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 587 VA max.
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/
P/N: 303LK46010, 303LL46010



English

Supplied parts

A DP 1
B Original mat 1
C Fixing fitting 2
D Angle control fitting 1
E Pin 1
F M4 × 14TP screw 8
G Label “Operation procedure” (except for 100 V models) 1
*: for metric specification
**: for inch specification
H Caution label “Original face up!” (except for 100 V models) 1
I DP relay PWB (for DP-760 only) 1
J M2.6 x 8 screw (for DP-760 only) 2
K Gasket (for DP-760 only) 1

Precautions

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

The illustrations of the DP in the Installation Guide are for DP-760.

Français

Pièces fournies

A DP 1
B Plaque d’original 1
C Fixation 2
D Fixation d’angle 1
E Goupille 1
F Vis TP M4 × 14 8
G Étiquette relative à la procédure d’utilisation (sauf pour les modèles 100 V) 1
* : pour des spécifications métriques
** : pour des spécifications anglo-saxonnes
H Étiquette d’avertissement relative à l’orientation vers le haut de la face de l’original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V) 1
I Carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (pour DP-760 uniquement) 1
J Vis M2.6 x 8 (pour DP-760 uniquement) 2
K Garniture(pour DP-760 uniquement) 1

Précautions

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Les schémas du DP dans le Guide d"installation concernent le DP-760.

Español

Piezas suministradas

A DP 1
B Alfombrilla para originales 1
C Herraje de fijación 2
D Herraje de control de ángulo 1
E Pasador 1
F Tornillo TP M4 × 14 8
G Etiqueta “Procedimiento operativo” (excepto para modelos de 100 V) 1
*: para especificaciones en el sistema métrico
**: para especificaciones en el sistema de pulgadas
H Etiqueta de precaución “Original cara arriba” (excepto para los modelos de 100 V) 1
I PWB del relé del DP (solamente para el DP-760) 1
J Tornillo M2.6 × 8 (solamente para el DP-760) ... 2
K Junta (solamente para el DP-760) 1

Precauciones

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Las ilustraciones del DP en la Guía de instalación corresponden al DP-760.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A DP 1
B Originalmatte 1
C Befestigungshalterung 2
D Winkeleinstellbefestigung 1
E Stift 1
F M4 × 14TP Schraube 8
G Schild “Funktionsanweisung” (außer 100 V-Modelle) 1
*: für metrische Angaben
**: für Angaben in Zoll
H Warnschild “Originalschriftseite nach oben” (außer 100 V-Modelle) 1
I DP-Relaisleiterplatte (nur für DP-760) 1
J M2.6 × 8 Schraube (nur für DP-760) 2
K Dichtung (nur für DP-760) 1

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Die Abbildungen des DP in der Installationsanleitung gelten für Modell DP-760.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A DP 1
B Tappetino originale 1
C Accessorio di fissaggio 2
D Accessorio di regolazione angolare 1
E Perno 1
F Vite M4 × 14TP 8
G Etichetta “Procedura di funzionamento” (eccetto modelli 100 V) 1
*: per specifiche in unità del sistema metrico
**: per specifiche in pollici
H Etichetta di avvertimento “Originale rivolto verso l’alto!” (eccetto modelli 100 V) 1
I Scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (solo per DP-760) 1
J Vite M2,6 x 8 (solo per DP-760) 2
K Guarnizione (solo per DP-760) 1

Precauzioni

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Le illustrazioni del DP nella Guida all’installazione sono per il modello DP-760.

简体中文

附属品

A DP 1
B 原稿垫 1
C 固定附件 2
D 角度控制附件 1
E 销 1
F M4 × 14TP 螺钉 8
G 标签“动作步骤”（220V 规格以外） 1
*：公制规格
**：英制规格
H 注意标签“原稿正面朝上！（220V 规格以外） 1
I DP 中继板（仅限 DP-760） 2
J M2.6 × 8 螺钉（仅限 DP-760） 1
K 衬垫（仅限 DP-760） 1

注意事项

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

安装手册中关于 DP 的图示以 DP-760 为例。

日本語

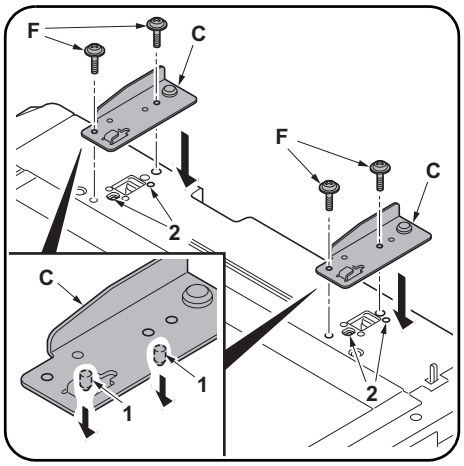
同梱品

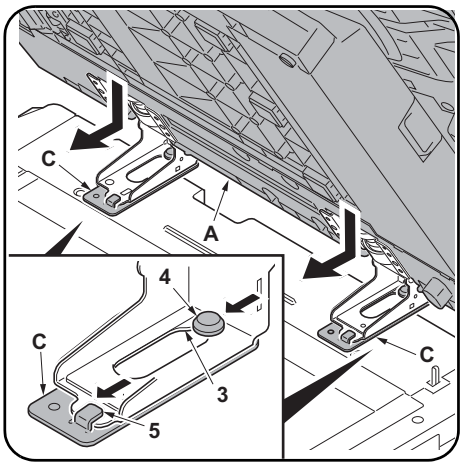
A DP 本体 1
B 原稿マット 1
C 固定金具 2
D 角度規制金具 1
E ピン 1
F ビス M4 × 14TP 8
G 操作ラベル（100V 仕様以外） 1
*: センチ仕様
**: インチ仕様
H 原稿表向きラベル（100V 仕様以外） 1
I DP 中継基板(DP-760 のみ) 1
J ビス M2.6 × 8(DP-760 のみ) 2
K ガスケット(DP-760 のみ) 1

注意事項

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

設置手順書に記載している DP 本体のイラストは、DP-760 です。





Procedure
When installing the DP, be sure to turn the MFP power off and disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

Attach the fixing fitting.
1. Align projections (1) of each fixing fitting (C) with holes (2) on the MFP and insert the fixing fittings (C) into the MFP.
2. Secure each fixing fitting (C) with two M4 x 14TP screws (F).

Install the DP.
3. Align hinge hole (3) of DP (A) with pin (4) of fixing fitting (C), place DP (A) on the MFP.
4. Slide the DP (A) toward the front side and engage hinges into hooks (5) on fixing fittings (C).

Procédure
Lors de l'installation du DP, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Mettre en place la fixation.
1. Aligner les saillies (1) de chacune des pièces de fixation (C) avec les trous (2) sur le MFP et insérer ces pièces (C) dans le MFP.
2. Fixer chacune des pièces de fixation (C) avec deux vis M4 x 14TP (F).

Installer le DP.
3. Aligner le trou de la charnière (3) du DP (A) sur la goupille (4) de la fixation (C) et placer le DP (A) sur le MFP.
4. Faire glisser le DP (A) vers l'avant et engager les charnières dans les crochets (5) sur les pièces de fixation (C).

Procedimiento
Cuando instale el DP, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchúfelo del tomacorriente de la pared.

Monte el herraje de fijación.
1. Alinee las salientes (1) de cada herraje de fijación (C) con los orificios (2) del MFP e inserte los herrajes de fijación (C) en el MFP.
2. Asegure cada uno de los herrajes de fijación (C) con dos tornillos M4 x 14TP (F).

Instale el DP.
3. Alinee el orificio de bisagra (3) del DP (A) con el pasador (4) del herraje de fijación (C) y coloque el DP (A) en el MFP.
4. Deslice el DP (A) hacia el frente y enganche las bisagras en los ganchos (5) de los herrajes de fijación (C).

Verfahren
Schalten Sie vor Installation des DP unbedingt den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

Anbringen der Befestigungshalterung.
1. Die Zapfen (1) jeder Befestigungshalterung (C) mit den Öffnungen (2) am MFP ausrichten und die Befestigungshalterungen (C) in den MFP einsetzen.
2. Jede Befestigungshalterung (C) mit zwei M4 x 14TP Schrauben (F) befestigen.

Installieren des DP.
3. Scharnierloch (3) des DP (A) mit Stift (4) der Befestigungshalterung (C) ausrichten, und DP (A) auf den MFP stellen.
4. Den DP (A) nach vorne hin verschieben und die Scharniere in die Haken (5) an den Befestigungshalterungen (C) einsetzen.

Procedura
Spegnere l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il DP.

Applicazione dell'accessorio di fissaggio.
1. Allineare le sporgenze (1) di ogni accessorio di fissaggio (C) con i fori (2) sull'MFP, ed inserire gli accessori di fissaggio (C) nell'MFP.
2. Bloccare ogni accessorio di fissaggio (C) con le due viti M4 x 14TP (F).

Montaggio del DP.
3. Allineare il foro della cerniera (3) del DP (A) con il perno (4) dell'accessorio di fissaggio (C), quindi posizionare il DP (A) sull'MFP.
4. Far scorrere il DP (A) verso il lato anteriore ed inserire le cerniere nei ganci (5) sugli accessori di fissaggio (C).

安装步骤
安装 DP 时，请务必将 MFP 电源关闭，关拔下电源插头再进行安装作业。

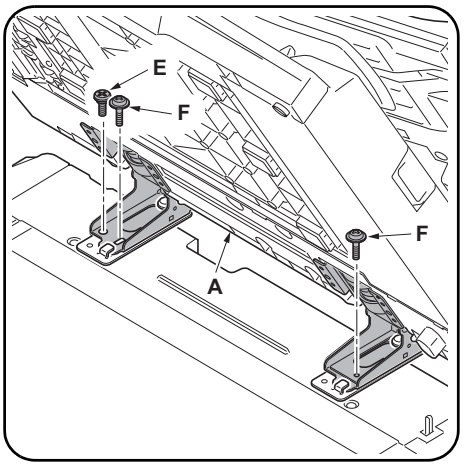
安装固定附件。
1. 将各固定附件（C）上的突出部分（1）与 MFP 上的孔（2）对齐，然后将固定附件（C）插入 MFP 中。
2. 用两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉（F）固定各固定附件（C）。

安装 DP
3. 将 DP（A）的铰链孔（3）对准固定附件（C）的销（4），并将 DP（A）放在 MFP 上。
4. 朝前侧滑动 DP（A），然后将铰链与固定附件（C）上的卡扣（5）相啮合。

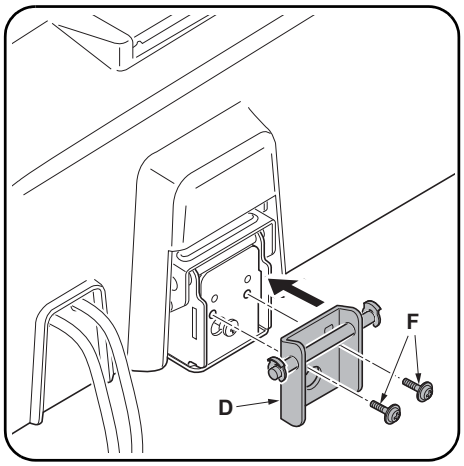
取付手順
DP 本体を設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

固定金具の取り付け
1. 固定金具 (C) の突起 (1) と MFP 本体の穴 (2) を合わせ、MFP 本体に固定金具 (C) を差し込む。
2. ビス M4 × 14TP(F) 各 2 本で固定金具 (C) を固定する。

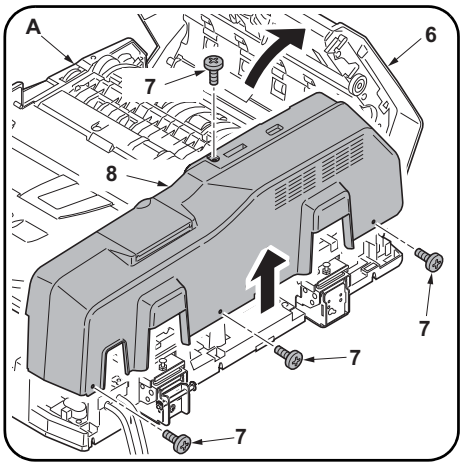
DP 本体の取り付け
3. DP 本体 (A) のヒンジ部の穴 (3) と固定金具 (C) のピン (4) を合わせ、MFP 本体に DP 本体 (A) を乗せる。
4. DP 本体 (A) を手前にスライドさせ、ヒンジ部を固定金具 (C) の引っ掛け部 (5) にはめ込む。



5. Install DP (A) onto the MFP securely with pin (E) and two M4 × 14TP screws (F).



Install the angle control fitting.
To adjust DP open-close angle 60 degrees
6. Install angle control fitting (D) at the rear side of the right hinge with two M4 × 14TP screws (F).



To adjust DP open-close angle 30 degrees
7. Open the upper cover (6) of the DP (A).
8. Remove four screws (7) and then remove rear cover (8) of DP (A).

---

5. Installer le DP (A) sur le MFP en le fixant à l'aide de la goupille (E) et des deux vis TP M4 × 14 (F).

Installer la fixation d'angle.
Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/de fermeture du DP de 60 degrés
6. Placer la fixation d'angle (D) à l'arrière de la charnière droite à l'aide des deux vis TP M4 × 14 (F).

Pour régler l'angle d'ouverture/de fermeture du DP de 30 degrés
7. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (6) du DP (A).
8. Retirer les quatre vis (7), puis le couvercle arrière (8) du DP (A).

---

5. Instale el DP (A) firmemente en el MFP con el pasador (E) y dos tornillos TP M4 × 14 (F).

Instale el herraje de control de ángulo.
Para ajustar el DP, abra o cierre el ángulo 60 grados
6. Instale el herraje de control de ángulo (D) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha con dos tornillos TP M4 × 14 (F).

Para ajustar el DP, abra o cierre el ángulo 30 grados
7. Abra la cubierta superior (6) del DP (A).
8. Saque cuatro tornillos (7) y retire la cubierta trasera (8) del DP (A).

---

5. DP (A) sicher mit einem Stift (E) und zwei M4 × 14TP Schrauben (F) am MFP befestigen.

Installieren der Winkeleinstellbefestigung.
Einstellen des Öffnungs-/Schließungswinkels des DP um 60 Grad
6. Winkeleinstellbefestigung (D) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers mit zwei M4 × 14TP Schrauben (F) befestigen.

Einstellen des Öffnungs-/Schließungswinkels des DP um 30 Grad
7. Die obere Abdeckung (6) des DP (A) öffnen.
8. Vier Schrauben (7) abnehmen und dann die Rückabdeckung (8) des DP (A) abnehmen.

---

5. Montare il DP (A) sull'MFP assicurandolo con il perno (E) e due viti M4 × 14TP (F).

Montaggio dell'accessorio di regolazione angolare.
Per regolare l'angolo di chiusura / apertura del DP a 60 gradi
6. Montare l'accessorio di regolazione angolare (D) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra con due viti M4 × 14TP (F).

Per regolare l'angolo di chiusura / apertura del DP a 30 gradi
7. Aprire il pannello superiore (6) del DP (A).
8. Rimuovere quattro viti (7), quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (8) del DP (A).

---

5. 用销(E)和两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉(F)将 DP(A)安装到 MFP 上。

安装角度控制附件。
若要将 DP 的开关角度调整为 60 度
6. 在右部铰链的后部使用两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉(F)安装角度控制附件(D)。

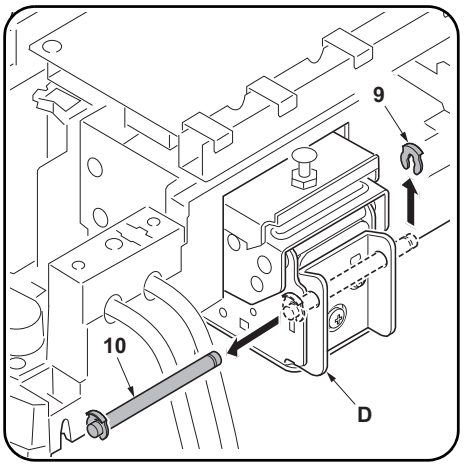
若要将 DP 的开关角度调整为 30 度
7. 打开 DP(A)的上盖板(6)。
8. 拆下 4 颗螺钉(7)，然后拆下 DP(A)的后盖板(8)。

---

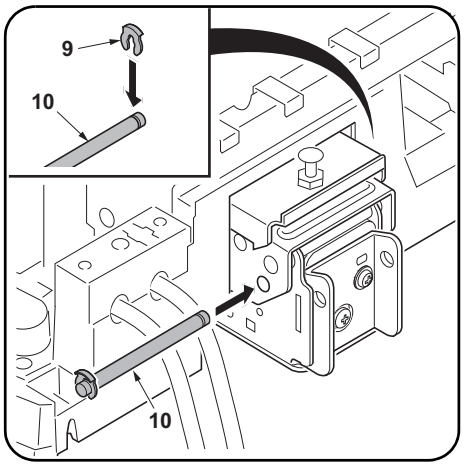
5. ピン (E)1 本とビス M4 × 14TP(F)2 本で DP 本体 (A) を MFP 本体に固定する。

角度規制金具の取り付け
DP 開閉角度を 60 度に設定する場合
6. 右ヒンジ後側にビス M4 × 14TP(F)2 本で角度規制金具 (D) を取り付ける。

DP 開閉角度を 30 度に設定する場合
7. DP 本体 (A) の DP 上カバー(6) を開く。
8. ビス (7)4 本を外し、DP 本体 (A) の後カバー (8) を取り外す。



9. Remove stop ring (9) of angle control fitting (D) that has been installed in step 6 to remove shaft (10).



10. Insert shaft (10) into the rear side of the right hinge.
11. Attach stop ring (9) to the notch of shaft (10) and secure shaft (10).
12. Reinstall rear cover (8) that has been removed in step 8, with four screws (7).

13. Move to:
Step 14 when using DP-760 (full-color machines), or
Step 24 when using DP-760 (monochrome machines), or
Step 32 when using DP-750.

---

9. Retirer l'anneau de butée (9) de la fixation d'angle (D) installée à l'étape 6 pour enlever la tige (10).

10. Insérer la tige (10) à l'arrière de la charnière droite.
11. Fixer l'anneau de butée (9) sur l'encoche de la tige (10) et mettre en place la tige (10).
12. Remettre en place le couvercle arrière (8) retiré à l'étape 8 à l'aide des quatre vis (7).

13. Passer à:
Etape 14 en cas d'utilisation DP- 760 (machines entièrement en couleurs), ou
Etape 24 en cas d'utilisation DP-760 (machines monochromes), ou
Etape 32 en cas d'utilisation DP-750

---

9. Retire el anillo de retención (9) del herraje de control de ángulo (D) que se instaló en el paso 6 para retirar el eje (10).

10. Inserte el eje (10) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha.
11. Fije el anillo de retención (9) a la muesca del eje (10) y asegure el eje (10).
12. Reinstale la cubierta trasera (8) que ha retirado en el paso 8 con cuatro tornillos (7).

13. Vaya:
al paso 14 cuando utilice DP-760 (máquinas a todo color), o
al paso 24 cuando utilice DP-760 (máquinas monocromáticas), o
al paso 32 cuando utilice DP-750.

---

9. Anschlagring (9) von der Winkeleinstellbefestigung (D) abnehmen, die in Schritt 6 montiert wurde, um die Welle (10) zu entfernen.

10. Welle (10) in die Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einsetzen.
11. Anschlagring (9) an der Wellenkerbe (10) anbringen und Welle befestigen (10).
12. Die in Schritt 8 abgenommene Rückabdeckung (8) wieder mit vier Schrauben (7) einbauen.

13. Weitergehen zu:
Schritt 14, wenn DP-760 (Vollfarbenmaschinen) verwendet werden, oder
Schritt 24, wenn DP-760 (Monochrommaschinen) verwendet werden, oder
Schritt 32, wenn DP-750 verwendet wird.

---

9. Rimuovere l'anello di bloccaggio (9) dell'accessorio di regolazione angolare (D) che era stato installato al Punto 6 per rimuovere l'albero (10).

10. Inserire l'albero (10) nella parte posteriore della cerniera destra.
11. Applicare l'anello di bloccaggio (9) nell'incavo dell'albero (10) e assicurare l'albero (10).
12. Rimontare il coperchio posteriore (8) rimosso al Punto 8 con quattro viti (7).

13. Andare a:
Passo 14 quando si DP-760 (Macchine a colori), o
Passo 24 quando si DP-760 (Macchine in bianco e nero), o
Passo 32 quando si DP-750.

---

9. 拆下在第 6 步中安装的角度控制配件（D）的止动环（9），以将轴（10）拆下。

10. 将轴（10）插入到右部铰链的后部。
11. 将止动环（9）安装到轴（10）的切口并将轴（10）固定。
12. 用 4 颗螺钉（7）将步骤 8 中拆下的后盖板（8）重新安装。

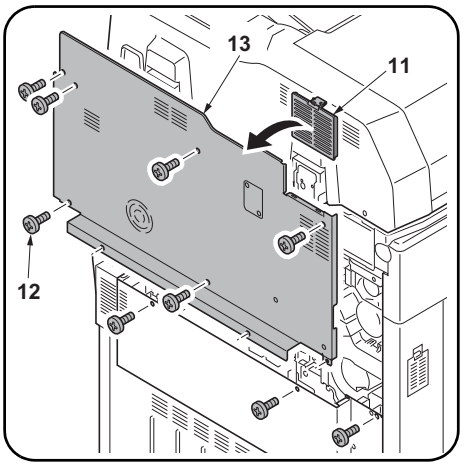
13. 移至:
步骤 14（使用 DP-760 时，彩色机器），或者
步骤 24（使用 DP-760 时，黑白机器），或者
步骤 32（使用 DP-750 时）。

---

9. 手順 6 で取り付けた角度規制金具 (D) のストップリング (9)1 個を外し、シャフト (10) を取り外す。

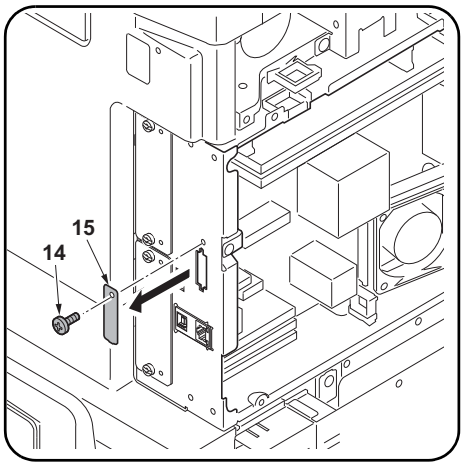
10. 右ヒンジ後側にシャフト (10) を挿入する。
11. ストップリング (9) をシャフト (10) の溝に取り付け、シャフト (10) を固定する。
12. 手順 8 で外した後カバー(8) をビス (7)4 本で元通り取り付ける。

13. 以下の手順から実行する。
DP-760(カラー機) ： 手順 14
DP-760(モノクロ機)： 手順 24
DP-750 ： 手順 32

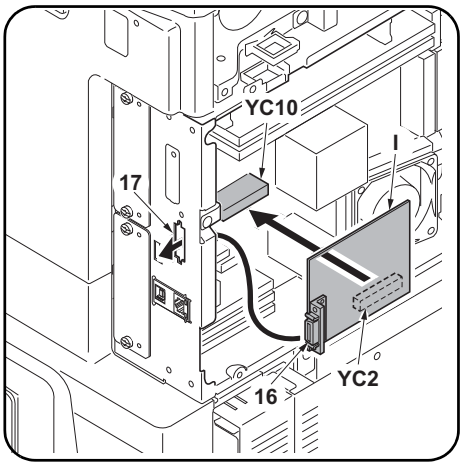


Installing the DP relay PWB

14. Remove the filter cover (11) of the MFP.
15. Remove nine screws (12) and then remove the upper rear cover (13).



16. Remove the screw (14) to remove the DP cover (15) on the MFP.



17. Place connector (16) on the DP relay PWB (I) through the rectangular hole (17).
18. Connect connector (YC2) on the DP relay PWB (I) to connector (YC10) on the MFP.

Installation de la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP

14. Déposer le couvercle du filtre (11) du MFP.
15. Déposer les neuf vis (12) puis le couvercle arrière supérieur (13).

16. Déposer la vis (14) pour libérer la couvercle du DP (15) sur le MFP.

17. Positionner le connecteur (16) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) en passant par le trou rectangulaire (17).
18. Raccorder le connecteur (YC2) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) au connecteur (YC10) sur le MFP.

Instalación del PWB del relé del DP

14. Abra la cubierta del filtro (11) del MFP.
15. Quite los nueve tornillos (12) y, a continuación, desmonte la cubierta trasera superior (13).

16. Quite el tornillo (14) para extraer la cubierta del DP (15) en el MFP.

17. Inserte el conector (16) del PWB del relé del DP (I) a través del orificio rectangular (17).
18. Conecte el conector (YC2) del PWB del relé del DP (I) al conector (YC10) del MFP.

Installieren der DP-Relaisleiterplatte

14. Die Filterabdeckung (11) des MFP entfernen.
15. Entfernen Sie neun Schrauben (12), und nehmen Sie dann die obere hintere Abdeckung (13) ab.

16. Die Schraube (14) entfernen, um dann die DP-Abdeckung (15) abzunehmen.

17. Den Stecker (16) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) in die Rechtecköffnung (17) schieben.
18. Den Stecker (YC2) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit dem Stecker (YC10) am MFP verbinden

---

Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP

14. Rimuovere il coperchio del filtro (11) sull'MFP.
15. Rimuovere le nove viti (12) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio superiore posteriore (13).

16. Togliere la vite (14) per rimuovere il coperchio del DP (15) sull'MFP.

17. Collocare il connettore (16) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) attraverso il foro rettangolare (17).
18. Collegare il connettore (YC2) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) al connettore (YC10) sull'MFP.

安装 DP 中继板

14. 拆下 MFP 上的过滤器盖板（11）。
15. 拆下 9 颗螺钉（12），然后拆下上部后盖板（13）。

16. 拆下螺钉（14）以拆下 MFP 上的 DP 盖板（15）。

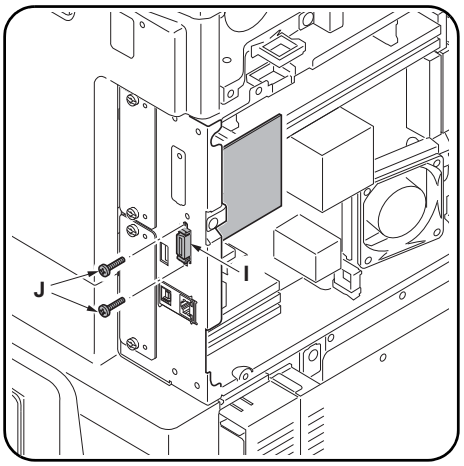
17. 将 DP 中继板（I）上的接插件（16）穿过矩形孔（17）。
18. 将 DP 中继板（I）上的接插件（YC2）连接至 MFP 上的接插件（YC10）。

DP 中継基板の取り付け

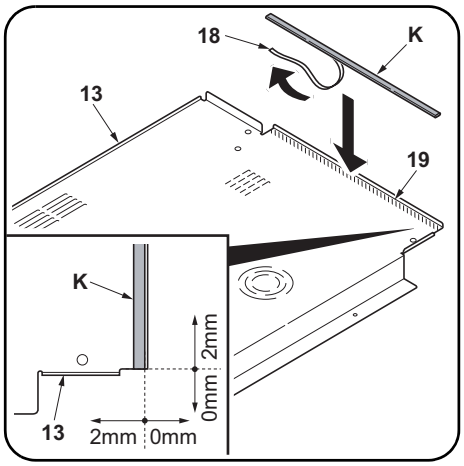
14. MFP 本体のフィルタカバー(11) を取り外す。
15. ビス (12)9 本を外し、MFP 本体の後上カバー (13) を取り外す。

16. ビス (14)1 本を外し、MFP 本体の DP フタ (15) を取り外す。

17. DP 中継基板 (I) のコネクタ (16) を、角穴 (17) に通す。
18. DP 中継基板 (I) のコネクタ (YC2) を、MFP 本体のコネクタ (YC10) に接続する。



19. Secure the DP relay PWB (I) with two M2.6 x 8 screws (J).



Installing the gasket

20. Peel the release paper (18) off the gasket (K).

21. Clean the shaded area (19) of the upper rear cover (13) with alcohol, and then adhere the gasket (K) as shown in the illustration.

22. Replace the upper rear cover (13) of the MFP using nine screws (12).

23. Reinstall the filter cover (11) of the MFP.

Proceed to step 30 on page 8

---

19. Fixer la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) avec deux vis M2.6 x 8 (J).

Installation de la garniture

20. Enlever le papier de protection (18) de la garniture (K).

21. Nettoyer la partie en grisé (19) du couvercle arrière supérieur (13) avec de l'alcool puis coller la garniture (K) en procédant comme illustré.

22. Reposer le couvercle arrière supérieur (13) du MFP à l'aide des huit vis (12).

23. Reposer le couvercle du filtre (11) du MFP.

Passer à l'étape 30 de la page 8

---

19. Asegure el PWB del relé del DP (I) con dos tornillos M2,6 x 8 (J).

Instalación de la junta

20. Despegue el papel (18) de la junta (K).

21. Limpie el área sombreada (19) de la cubierta trasera superior (13) con alcohol, y, después, adhiera la junta (K), como se muestra en la ilustración.

22. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (13) del MFP, utilizando los ocho tornillos (12).

23. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta del filtro (11) del MFP.

Vaya al paso 30 de la página 8

---

19. Die DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit zwei M2.6 x 8 Schrauben (J) befestigen.

Anbringen der Dichtung

20. Das Deckpapier (18) von der Dichtung (K) abziehen.

21. Den schraffierten Bereich (19) der oberen hinteren Abdeckung (13) mit Alkohol reinigen, und dann die Dichtung (K) wie abgebildet ankleben.

22. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (13) des MFP mittels acht Schrauben (12) wieder anbringen.

23. Die Filterabdeckung (11) des MFP wieder anbringen.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 30 auf Seite 8 weiter

---

19. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) con due viti M2,6 x 8 (J).

Installazione della guarnizione

20. Staccare la carta protettiva (18) dalla guarnizione (K).

21. Pulire l'area ombreggiata (19) del coperchio superiore posteriore (13) con alcool, e quindi far aderire la guarnizione (K) come mostrato nell'illustrazione.

22. Rimettere il coperchio superiore posteriore (13) dell'MFP utilizzando otto viti (12).

23. Reinstallare il coperchio del filtro (11) dell'MFP.

Procedere con il punto 30 a pagina 8

---

19. 用两颗 M2.6 × 8 螺钉（J）固定 DP 中继板（I）。

安装衬垫

20. 撕下衬垫（K）上的防粘纸（18）。

21. 使用酒精清洁上部后盖板（13）上的阴影区域（19），然后如图所示粘贴衬垫（K）。

22. 使用 9 颗螺钉（12）安装 MFP 的上部后盖板（13）。

23. 重新安装 MFP 上的过滤器盖板（11）。

进行第 8 页上的第 30 步

---

19. DP 中継基板（I）をビス M2.6 × 8(J)2 本で固定する。

ガスケットの取り付け

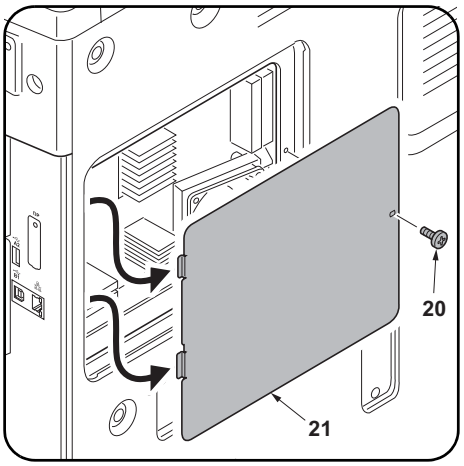
20. ガスケット（K）の剥離紙（18）を剥がす。

21. 後上カバー(13) の斜線部（19）をアルコール清掃後、ガスケット（K）を図の通りに貼り付ける。

22. ビス（12)9 本で、MFP 本体の後上カバー(13) を元通り取り付ける。

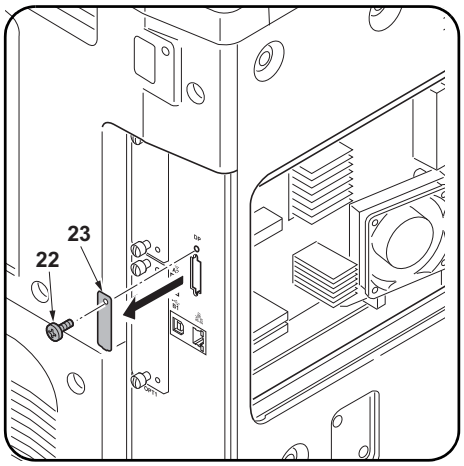
23. MFP 本体のフィルタカバー(11) を元通り取り付ける。

8 ページ手順 30 へ進む。

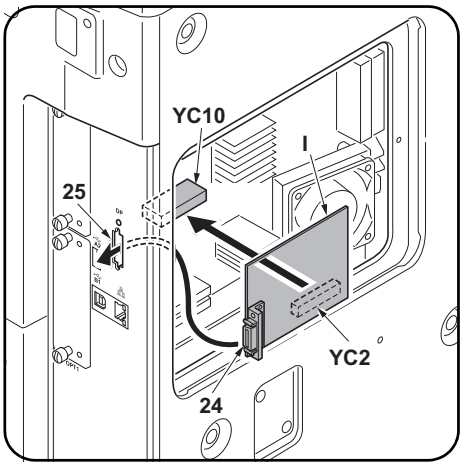


Installing the DP relay PWB

24. Remove the screw (20) and then remove the upper rear cover (21).



25. Remove the screw (22) to remove the DP cover (23) on the MFP.



26. Place connector (24) on the DP relay PWB (I) through the rectangular hole (25).

27. Connect connector (YC2) on the DP relay PWB (I) to connector (YC10) on the MFP.

Installation de la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP

24. Déposer la vis (20) puis le couvercle arrière supérieur (21).

25. Déposer la vis (22) pour libérer la couvercle du DP (23) sur le MFP.

26. Positionner le connecteur (24) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) en passant par le trou rectangulaire (25).

27. Raccorder le connecteur (YC2) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) au connecteur (YC10) sur le MFP.

Instalación del PWB del relé del DP

24. Quite el tornillo (20) y, a continuación, desmonte la cubierta trasera superior (21).

25. Quite el tornillo (22) para extraer la cubierta del DP (23) en el MFP.

26. Inserte el conector (24) del PWB del relé del DP (I) a través del orificio rectangular (25).

27. Conecte el conector (YC2) del PWB del relé del DP (I) al conector (YC10) del MFP.

Installieren der DP-Relaisleiterplatte

24. Entfernen Sie die Schrauben (20), und nehmen Sie dann die obere hintere Abdeckung (21) ab.

25. Die Schraube (22) entfernen, um dann die DP-Abdeckung (23) abzunehmen.

26. Den Stecker (24) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) in die Rechtecköffnung (25) schieben.

27. Den Stecker (YC2) an der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit dem Stecker (YC10) am MFP verbinden

---

Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP

24. Rimuovere la viti (20) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio superiore posteriore (21).

25. Togliere la vite (22) per rimuovere il coperchio del DP (23) sull'MFP.

26. Collocare il connettore (24) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) attraverso il foro rettangolare (25).

27. Collegare il connettore (YC2) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) al connettore (YC10) sull'MFP.

安装 DP 中继板

24. 拆下螺钉（20），然后拆下上部后盖板（21）。

25. 拆下螺钉（22）以拆下 MFP 上的 DP 盖板（23）。

26. 将 DP 中继板（I）上的接插件（24）穿过矩形孔（25）。

27. 将 DP 中继板（I）上的接插件（YC2）连接至 MFP 上的接插件（YC10）。

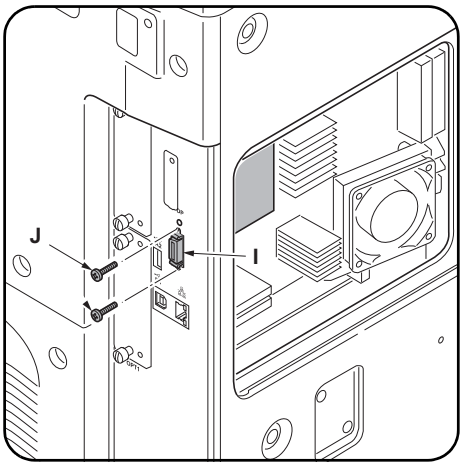
DP 中継基板の取り付け

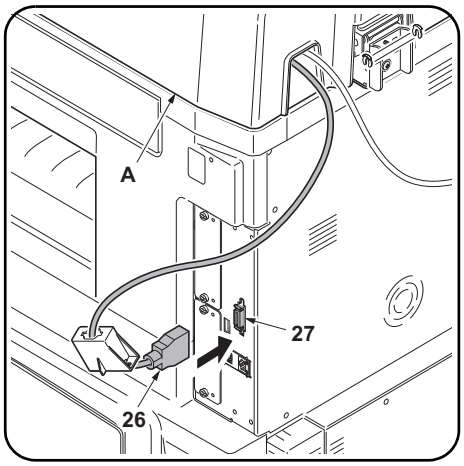
24. ビス (20)1 本を外し、MFP 本体の後上カバー (21) を取り外す。

25. ビス (22)1 本を外し、MFP 本体の DP フタ (23) を取り外す。

26. DP 中継基板 (I) のコネクタ (24) を、角穴 (25) に通す。

27. DP 中継基板 (I) のコネクタ (YC2) を、MFP 本体のコネクタ (YC10) に接続する。





28. Secure the DP relay PWB (I) with two M2.6 x 8 screws (J).
29. Replace the upper rear cover (21) of the MFP using the screw (20).

Connect the signal lines.
30. Connect data signal line (26) on the DP (A) to connector (27) on the DP relay PWB (I).

---

28. Fixer la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I) avec deux vis M2.6 x 8 (J).
29. Reposer le couvercle arrière supérieur (21) du MFP à l'aide de 1 vis (20).

Connecter les circuits de transmission.
30. Raccorder la ligne de transmission des données (26) sur le DP (A) au connecteur (27) sur la carte de circuit imprimé relais du DP (I).

---

28. Asegure el PWB del relé del DP (I) con dos tornillos M2,6 x 8 (J).
29. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (21) del MFP, utilizando 1 tornillo (20).

Conecte las líneas de señal.
30. Conecte la línea de señal de datos (26) del DP (A) al conector (27) del PWB del relé del DP (I).

---

28. Die DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) mit zwei M2.6 x 8 Schrauben (J) befestigen.
29. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (21) des MFP mittels 1 Schrauben (20) wieder anbringen.

Anschließen der Signalleitungen.
30. Die Datensignalleitungen (26) des DP (A) an den Stecker (27) der DP-Relaisleiterplatte (I) anschließen.

---

28. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I) con due viti M2,6 x 8 (J).
29. Rimettere il coperchio superiore posteriore (21) dell'MFP utilizzando 1 viti (20).

Connessione delle linee dei segnali.
30. Connettere la linea del segnale dati (26) sul DP (A) al connettore (27) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di comunicazione DP (I).

---

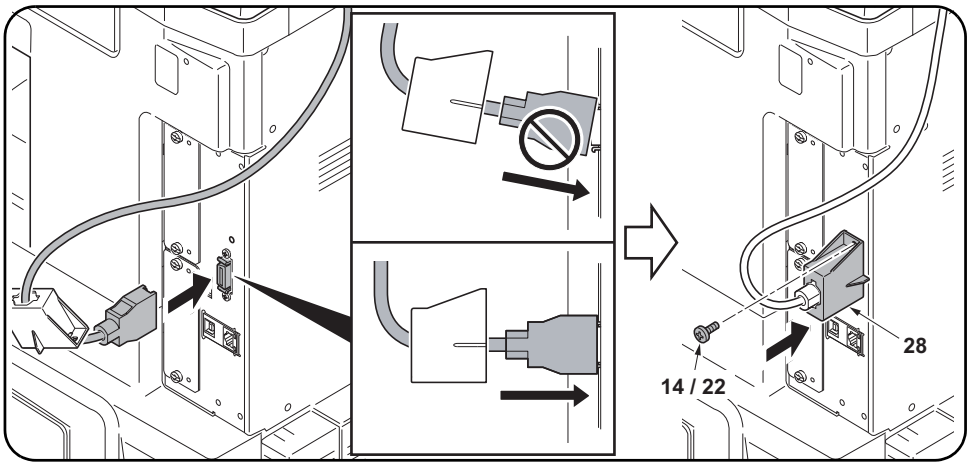
28. 用两颗 M2.6 × 8 螺钉（J）固定 DP 中继板（I）。
29. 使用 9 颗螺钉（20）安装 MFP 的上部后盖板（21）。

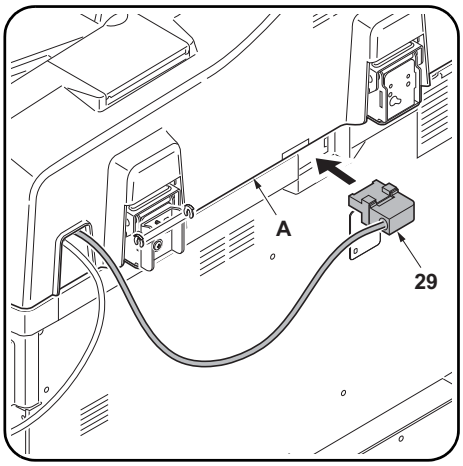
连接信号线。
30. 将 DP（A）上的数据信号线（26）连接至 DP 中继板（I）上的接插件（27）。

---

28. DP 中継基板（I）をビス M2.6 × 8(J)2 本で固定する。
29. ビス（20)1 本で、MFP 本体の後上カバー(21)を元通り取り付ける。

信号線の接続
30. DP 本体（A）のデータ信号線（26）を DP 中継基板（I）のコネクタ（27）に接続する。





31. Confirm that the signal line is firmly connected to the connector and secure the connector cover (28) with the screw (*14 / 22) removed in step *16 / 25.
*** : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines**

Connect the signal lines.
32. Connect data signal line (29) on the DP (A) to the MFP.

NOTICE:
When moving the MFP, be sure to remove the data signal lines (26, 29). (This is to prevent them from getting caught.)

---

31. Vérifier que le DP est bien connecté au moteur par le cable (28) et sécurisé grâce à la visse (*14 / 22) vue dans l'étape *16 / 25.
*** : Machines entierement en couleurs / Machines monochromes**

Connecter les circuits de transmission.
32. Raccorder la ligne de transmission des données (29) sur le DP (A) au MFP.

AVIS:
Quand le MFP est déplacé, ne pas oublier d'enlever les lignes de transmission des données (26, 29).(Cette précaution permettra d'éviter de les arracher.)

---

31. Asegurese de que el conector esta conectado firmemente, deslice la cubierta protectora (28) y fijela con el tornillo (*14 / 22) retirado en el paso *16 / 25.
*** : Maquinas a todo color / Maquinas monocromaticas**

Conecte las líneas de señal.
32. Conecte la línea de señal de datos (29) del DP (A) al MFP.

AVISO:
Cuando mueva el MFP, asegúrese de desconectar las líneas de señal de datos (26, 29). (Esto es para evitar que queden atrapadas.)

---

31. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Kabel fest mit dem Stecker verbunden ist. Sichern Sie die Steckerabdeckung (28) mit der Schraube (*14 / 22), die in Schritt *16 / 25 entfernt wurde.
*** : Vollfarbenkopierers / Monochrommaschinen**

Anschließen der Signalleitungen.
32. Die Datensignalleitung (29) des DP (A) an den MFP anschließen.

HINWEIS:
Zum Transportieren des MFP sollten vorher unbedingt die Datensignalleitungen (26, 29) entfernt werden. (Andernfalls könnten sie sich verfangen.)

---

31. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Kabel fest mit dem Stecker verbunden ist. Sichern Sie die Steckerabdeckung (28) mit der Schraube (*14 / 22), die in Schritt *16 / 25 entfernt wurde.
*** : un macchinario a colori / solo per le macchine**

Connessione delle linee dei segnali.
32. Connettere la linea del segnale dati (29) sul DP (A) all'MFP.

NOTIFICA:
Quando si sposta l'MFP, assicurarsi di rimuovere le linee dei segnali dati (26, 29). (Questo allo scopo di prevenire il loro impigliamento.)

---

31. 在确保信号线和接插件牢固连接后，用步骤 *16/25 卸下的螺钉（*14/22）固定盖板接插件（28）。
*：**彩色机器 / 黑白机器**

连接信号线。
32. 将 DP（A）上的数据信号线（29）连接至 MFP。

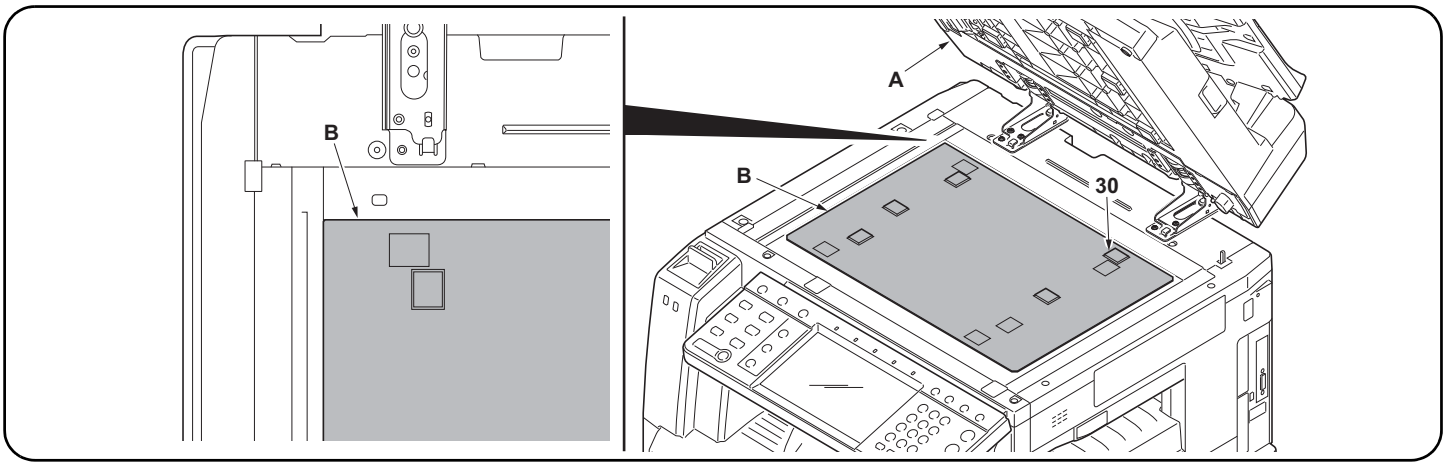
注意事项：
移动 MFP 时，请确保拆下了数据信号线 （26，29）。（防止数据信号线牵绊。）

---

31. 信号線が確実にコネクタに接続しているか確認後、手順 *16/25 で外したビス（*14/22）でカバーコネクタ（28）を固定してください。
*：**カラー機／モノクロ機**

信号線の接続
32. DP 本体（A）のデータ信号線（29）を MFP 本体に接続する。

（注意）
MFP 本体を移動する際は、データ信号線（26, 29）を外すこと。（引っ掛かり防止のため）



Fasten the original mat.

33. Place original mat (B) with its Velcro (30) upward over the contact glass.
Align original mat (B) corner that has 90 degrees of angle with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.

34. Close DP (A) and attach original mat (B) onto it with Velcro.

Fixer la plaque d'original.

33. Placer la plaque d'original (B) sur la vitre d'exposition, en orientant les bandes Velcro (30) vers le haut.
Aligner le coin du plateau d'original (B) faisant un angle de 90 degrés avec le coin gauche interne du panneau d'instructions d'original.

34. Abaisser le DP (A) et y fixer la plaque d'original (B) à l'aide des bandes Velcro.

Fije la alfombrilla para originales.

33. Coloque la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro (30) hacia arriba sobre el cristal de contacto.
Alinee la esquina que tiene un ángulo de 90 grados de la alfombrilla para originales (B) con la esquina interior izquierda del panel de instrucciones para el original.

34. Cierre el DP (A) y fije la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro.

Befestigen der Originalmatte.

33. Die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband (30) nach oben über das Kontaktglas legen.
Die Ecke der Originalmatte (B), die einen 90-Grad-Winkel aufweist, mit der linken, inneren Kante des Originalbedienfeldes ausrichten.

34. Den DP (A) schließen und die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband auf ihm befestigen.

Fissaggio del tappetino originale.

33. Posizionare il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro (30) rivolto verso l'alto sul vetro di appoggio.
Allineare l'angolo di 90 gradi del coprioriginale (B) con l'angolo interno sinistro del pannello di controllo originale.

34. Chiudere il DP (A) e applicarvi il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro.

粘贴原稿垫。

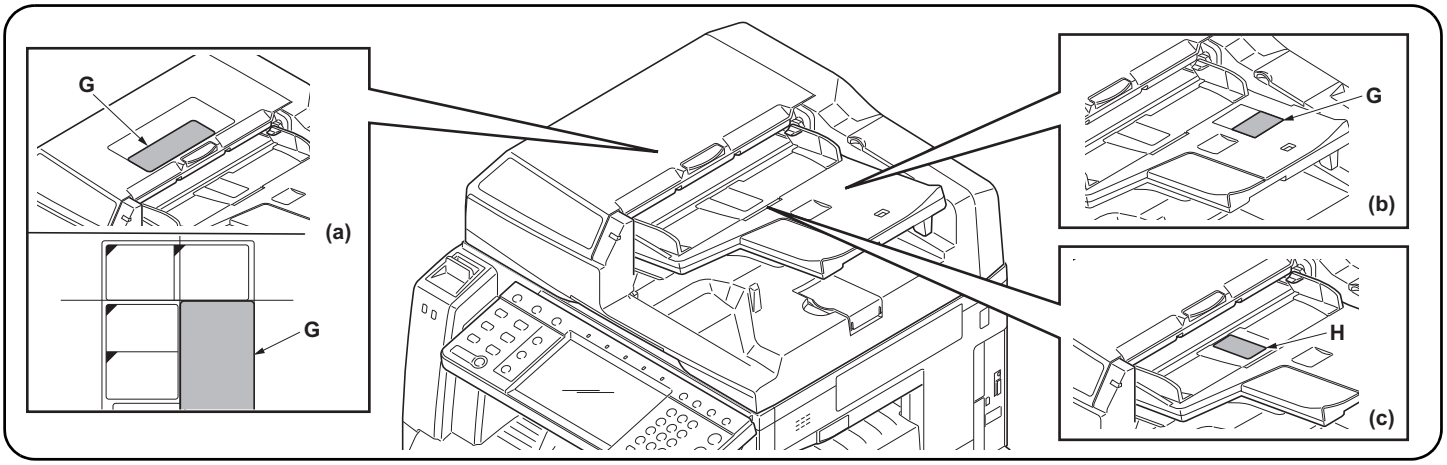
33. 将原稿垫(B)放置在稿台玻璃上，并使魔术贴(30)向上。
将原稿垫 (B) 的 90 度角对准原稿指示板的内部左角。

34. 关闭 DP(A)，使原稿垫(B)粘贴到 DP 上。

原稿マットの貼り付け

33. マジックテープ (30) を上に向けて、原稿マット (B) をコンタクトガラス上に置く。
原稿マット (B) は 90° になっている角を原稿指示板の左奥に合わせること。

34. DP 本体 (A) を下ろし、原稿マット (B) を DP 本体 (A) に貼り付ける。



Adhere the label (except for 100 V models)

35. Clean the label on the DP upper cover with alcohol.
Clean the label on the original table with alcohol.

36. Adhere Label “Operation procedure” (G) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP onto the existing label on the DP upper cover and the original table. Figure (a/b)

37. Adhere Caution label “Original face up!” (H) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP onto the label on the original table. Figure (c)

Coller l’étiquette relative (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)

35. Avec de l'alcool, nettoyer l'étiquette sur le couvercle supérieur du DP.
Avec de l'alcool, nettoyer létiquette se trouvant sur le plateau d'original.

36. Coller l'étiquette “Processus opératoire” (G) dans la langue correspondant au destinataire du MFP sur l'étiquette existante sur le couvercle supérieur et le plateau d'original du DP. Figure (a/b)

37. Coller l'étiquette de mise en garde “Original en haut!” (H) dans la langue correspondant au destinataire du MFP sur l'étiquette du plateau d'original. Figure (c)

Pegue la etiqueta (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)

35. Limpie con alcohol la etiqueta de la cubierta superior del DP.
Limpie con alcohol la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales.

36. Adhiera la etiqueta “Procedimiento operativo” (G) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta que se encuentra sobre la cubierta superior del DP y la cubierta de originales.Figura (a/b)

37. Pegue la etiqueta de precaución “¡La cara del original hacia arriba!” (H), del idioma que corresponde al destino del MFP, sobre la etiqueta en la cubierta de originales. Figura (c)

Anbringen des Schildes (außer 100 V-Modelle)

35. Das Schild auf der oberen DP-Abdeckung mit Alkohol reinigen.
Das Schild auf dem Originalbedienfeld mit Alkohol reinigen.

36. Das Schild „Funktionsanweisung“ (G) in der Sprache des jeweiligen Einsatzlandes des MFP auf das vorhandene Schild an der oberen DP-Abdeckung und auf dem Originalbedienfeld aufkleben.Abbildung (a/b)

37. Das Warnschild „Originalschriftseite nach oben!“ (H) in der Sprache des jeweiligen Einsatzlandes des MFP auf das vorhandene Schild auf dem Originalbedienfeld aufkleben. Abbildung (c)

Applicazione dell’etichetta (eccetto modelli 100 V)

35. Pulire con alcool l’etichetta sul pannello superiore del DP.
Pulire con alcool l’etichetta sul piano originale.

36. Far aderire l’etichetta “Procedure di funzionamento” (G) corrispondente alla lingua di destinazione dell’MFP, sull’etichetta esistente sul pannello superiore del DP e sul piano originale. Figura (a/b)

37. Far aderire l’etichetta di avvertenza “Originale rivolto verso l’alto!” (H) corrispondente alla lingua di destinazione dell’MFP, sull’etichetta del piano originale. Figura (c)

粘贴标签（220V 规格以外）

35. 使用酒精清洁 DP 上盖板上的标签。使用酒精清洁原稿台上的标签。

36. 将“动作步骤”标签（G）（其语言与对应的 MFP 销往目的地语言一致）粘贴至 DP 上盖板和原稿台的现有标签上。图（a/b）

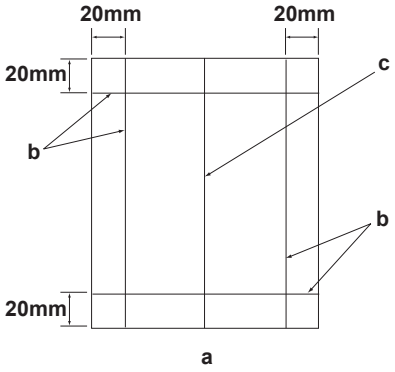
37. 将小心标签原稿正面朝上！（H）（其语言与对应的 MFP 销往目的地语言一致）粘贴至原稿台的标签上。图（c）

ラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

35. DP 上カバーのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
原稿テーブルのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。

36. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った操作ラベル（G）を DP 上カバーおよび原稿テーブルのラベル上に貼り付ける。図（a/b）

37. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った原稿表向きラベル（H）を原稿テーブルのラベル上に貼り付ける。図（c）



[Operation check]

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.
4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.
Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.

NOTICE: If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

[Vérification du fonctionnement]

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.
4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.
Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

AVIS: Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

[Verifique el funcionamiento]

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.
4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.
Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

AVISO: Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP

[Funktionsprüfung]

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.
4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.
Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

HINWEIS: Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

[Verifica del funzionamento]

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.
4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.
Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

NOTIFICA: Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

[动作确认]

1. 若要检查机器动作，准备一张 A3 原稿（a），距纸张边缘 20㎜ 画出 4 条线（b）并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线（c）。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿（a）并进行测试复印，确认机器动作和复印样本。
4. 对比复印样本和原稿（a），如果偏移值在标准值以上时，对偏移原稿进行调整。
对 MFP 本体的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。

（注意）
如果图像出现底灰，用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置，则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整。

[動作確認]

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20㎜ の位置に線 (b)4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c)1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP 本体にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。
4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。
MFP 本体の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP 本体の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

（注意）
画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.
For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 14. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within ±3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±4.0 mm
For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 17. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within ±3.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±4.0 mm
For checking the magnification, see page 20. <Reference value> Within ±1.5%
For checking the leading edge timing, see page 22. <Reference value> Within ±2.5 mm
For checking the center line, see page 24. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within ±2.0 mm; Duplex copying: within ±3.0 mm
When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.
For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 27.

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.
Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 14. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.
Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 17. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.
Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page20. <Valeur de référence>±1,5% max.
Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 22.<Valeur de référence>±2,5 mm max.
Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page24. <Valeur de référence>Copie recto seul: ±2,0 mm max.; copie recto verso: ±3,0 mm max.
Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.
Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 27.

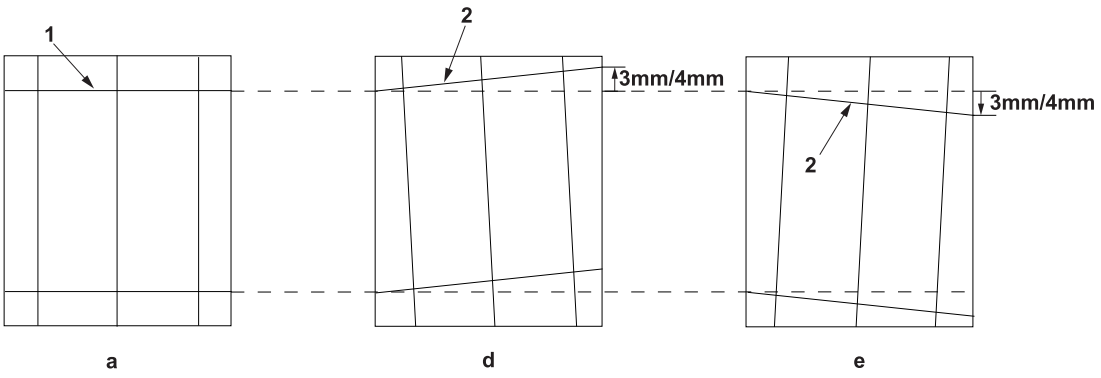
Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.
Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 14. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm
Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 17. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±4,0 mm
Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 20. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de ±1,5 %
Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 22. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de ±2,5 mm
Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 24. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: dentro de ±3,0 mm
Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo.
Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 27.

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.
Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 14. <Bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 17. <Bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±4,0 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 20. <Bezugswert>Innerhalb ±1,5 %
Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 22. <Bezugswert>Innerhalb ±2,5 mm
Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 24. <Bezugswert>Simplexkopie: innerhalb ±2,0 mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden.
Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 27.

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.
Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 14. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm
Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 17. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ±3,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±4,0 mm
Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 20. <Valore di riferimento> Entro ±1,5%
Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 22. <Valore di riferimento> Entro ±2,5 mm
Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 24. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro ±2,0 mm; Copia duplex: entro ±3,0 mm
Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente.
Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 27.

必须按照以下步骤进行调整，否则不能达到准确调整的要求。
・确认前端倾斜度 第 14 页 ＜标准值＞ 单面：± 3.0mm 以内，双面：± 4.0mm 以内
・确认后端倾斜度 第 17 页 ＜标准值＞ 单面：± 3.0mm 以内，双面：± 4.0mm 以内
・确认等倍值 第 20 页 ＜标准值＞ ± 1.5% 以内
・确认前端定时调整 第 22 页 ＜标准值＞ ± 2.5mm 以内
・确认中心线 第 24 页 ＜标准值＞ 单面：± 2.0mm 以内，双面：± 3.0mm 以内
使用调整用的原稿时，可以同时自动进行等倍值，前端定时以及中心线的调整。
・通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 27 页

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。
・先端斜め確認 14 ページ ＜基準値＞ 片面：± 3.0mm 以内、両面：± 4.0mm 以内
・後端斜め確認 17 ページ ＜基準値＞ 片面：± 3.0mm 以内、両面：± 4.0mm 以内
・等倍度確認 20 ページ ＜基準値＞ ± 1.5% 以内
・先端タイミング確認 22 ページ ＜基準値＞ ± 2.5mm 以内
・センターライン確認 24 ページ ＜基準値＞ 片面：± 2.0mm 以内、両面：± 3.0mm 以内
調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。
・調整用原稿による自動調整 27 ページ



[Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.
<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±3 mm.
For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±4 mm.

[Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.
<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±3 mm.
Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±4 mm.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.
<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±3 mm.
Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±4 mm.

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.
<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±3 mm liegen.
Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±4 mm liegen.

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

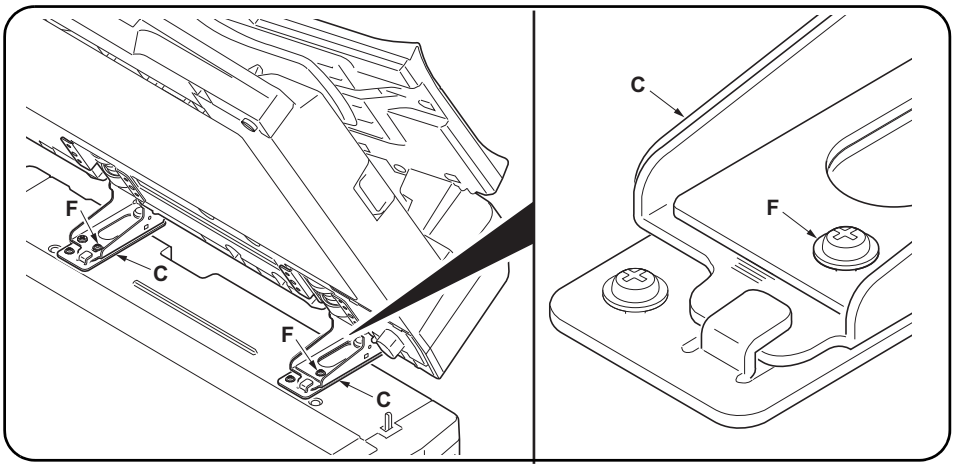
1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.
<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3 mm.
Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ±4 mm.

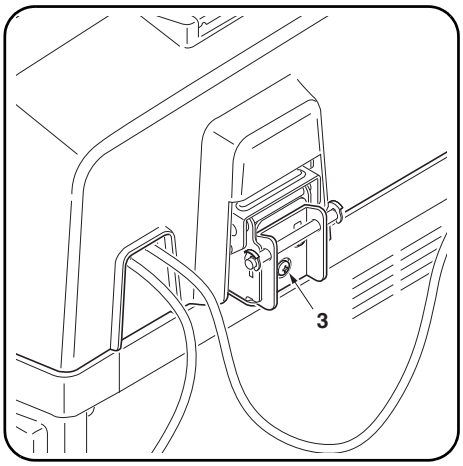
[确认前端倾斜度]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。
〈标准值〉单面复印时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 3㎜ 以内。
双面复印时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 4㎜ 以内。

[先端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 3㎜ 以内
両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 4㎜ 以内





Adjusting the DP

2. Loosen two M4 × 14TP screws (F) of right and left fixing fittings (C).
3. Turn adjusting screw (3) at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.
For copy example (d): Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the inner side.
For copy example (e): Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the front side.
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1 mm
4. Perform a test copy.

Réglage du DP

2. Desserrer les deux vis TP M4 × 14 (F) des fixations (C) droite et gauche.
3. Tourner la vis de réglage (3) à l'arrière de la charnière droite pour régler la position du DP.
Pour l'exemple de copie (d) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'intérieur.
Pour l'exemple de copie (e) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'avant.
Changement par graduation d'échelle : environ 1 mm
4. Effectuer une copie de test.

Ajuste del DP

2. Afloje dos tornillos TP M4 × 14 (F) de los herrajes de fijación (C) derecho e izquierdo.
3. Gire el tornillo de ajuste (3) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha para ajustar la posición del DP.
Para el ejemplo de copia (d): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido antihorario y mueva el DP al lado interno.
Para el ejemplo de copia (e): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido horario y mueva el DP al lado frontal.
Magnitud del cambio por escala: aprox. 1 mm
4. Haga una copia de prueba.

Einstellen des DP

2. Die zwei M4 × 14TP Schrauben (F) an der rechten und linken Befestigungshalterung (C) lösen.
3. Die Einstellschraube (3) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einstellen, um die DP-Position einzustellen.
Kopierbeispiel (d): Die Einstellschraube nach links drehen und den DP nach innen schieben.
Kopierbeispiel (e): Die Einstellschraube nach rechts drehen und den DP nach vorne schieben.
Änderung pro Maßstab: Ungefähr 1 mm
4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

Regolazione del DP

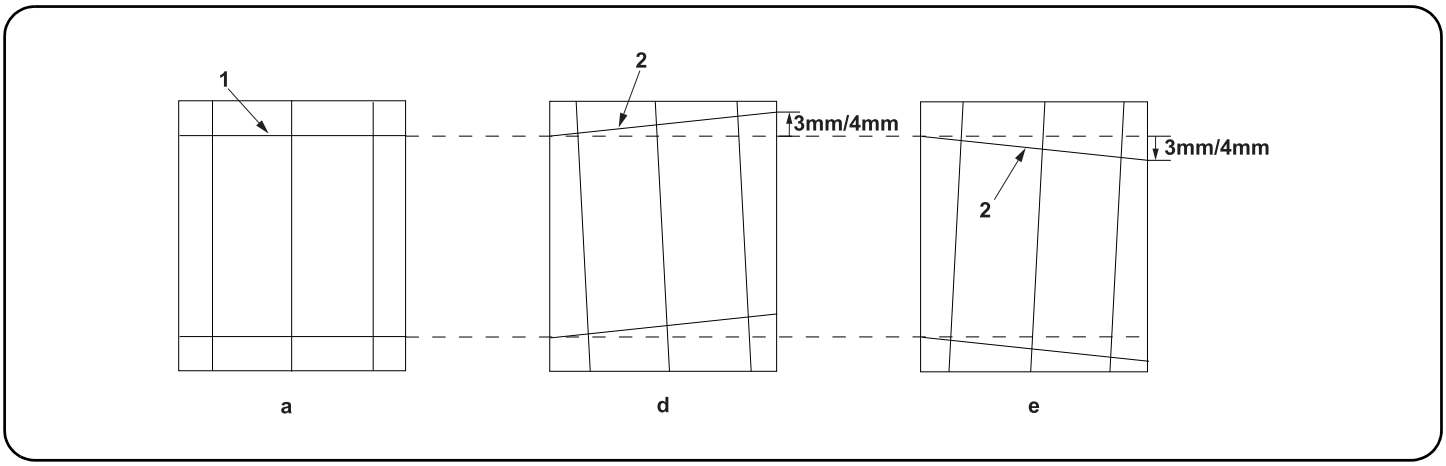
2. Allentare le due viti M4 × 14TP (F) degli accessori di fissaggio (C) destro e sinistro.
3. Ruotare la vite di regolazione (3) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra per regolare la posizione del DP.
Per l'esempio di copia (d): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso antiorario e spostare il DP verso l'interno.
Per l'esempio di copia (e): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso orario e spostare il DP in avanti.
Entità modifica per scala: circa 1 mm
4. Eseguire una copia di prova.

调整 DP

2. 松开右侧和左侧的固定附件（C）的两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉（F）。
3. 旋转右部铰链的后部的调整螺钉（3）以调整 DP 位置。
对于复印样本 (d)：逆时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到内侧。
对于复印样本 (e)：顺时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到正面。
按比例尺的更改量：约 1mm
4. 进行测试复印。

DP の調整

2. 左右の固定金具 (C) のビス M4 × 14TP (F) ２本を緩める。
3. 右ヒンジ後側の調整ビス (3) を回し、DP 本体の位置を調整する。
コピーサンプル (d) の場合:調整ビスを左に回し、DP 本体を奥へ動かす
コピーサンプル (e) の場合:調整ビスを右に回し、DP 本体を手前へ動かす
1 目盛り当たりの変化量:約 1mm
4. テストコピーを行う。



5. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.
<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±3 mm.
For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within ±4 mm.
6. After adjustment is completed, retighten two M4 × 14TP screws (F) that have been loosened in step 2.
7. Remove the original mat (B) and refit it (see steps 33 and 34 on page 10).

---

5. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.
<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±3 mm.
Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de ±4 mm.
6. Une fois le réglage effectué, resserrer les deux vis TP M4 × 14 (F) desserrées à l'étape 2.
7. Retirez le tapis d'original (B) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 33 et 34 à la page 10.)

---

5. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±3 mm.
Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de ±4 mm.
6. Una vez hecho el ajuste, vuelva a apretar los dos tornillos TP M4 × 14 (F) que ha aflojado en el paso 2.
7. Desmonte la plancha de original (B) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 33 y 34 en la página 10).

---

5. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±3 mm liegen.
Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von ±4 mm liegen.
6. Nach der Einstellung die zwei M4 × 14TP Schrauben (F), die in Schritt 2 gelöst wurden, wieder festziehen.
7. Die Originalmatte (B) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 33 und 34 auf Seite 10).

---

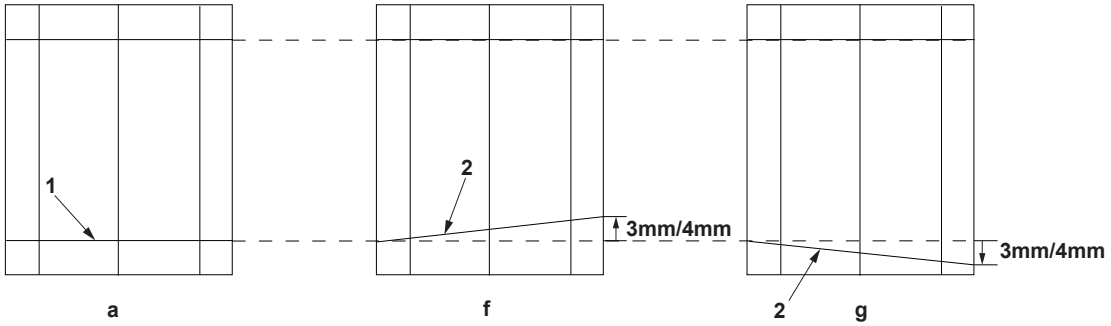
5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.
<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ± 3 mm.
Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a ±4 mm.
6. Una volta conclusa la regolazione, serrare nuovamente le viti M4 × 14TP (F) che erano state allentate al Punto 2.
7. Rimuovere il coprioriginale (B) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 33 e 34 a pagina 10).

---

5. 重复上述步骤直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。
〈标准值〉单面时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 3mm 以内
双面时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 4mm 以内
6. 调整完成后，重新拧紧在步骤 2 中松开的两颗 M4 × 14TP 螺钉(F)。
7. 拆下原稿垫(B)，参照第 10 页的步骤 33 和 34 再次装上。

---

5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 3mm 以内
両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 4mm 以内
6. 調整終了後、手順 2 で緩めたビス M4 × 14TP(F)2 本を締め付ける。
7. 原稿マット (B) を取り外し、10 ページの手順 33、34 を参考に再度取り付ける。



[Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

[Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

[Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

[Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

1. Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

[Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

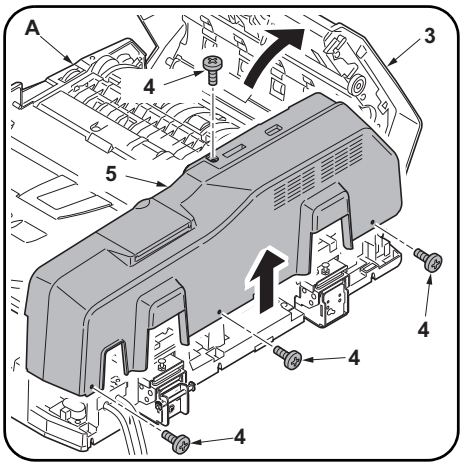
1. Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

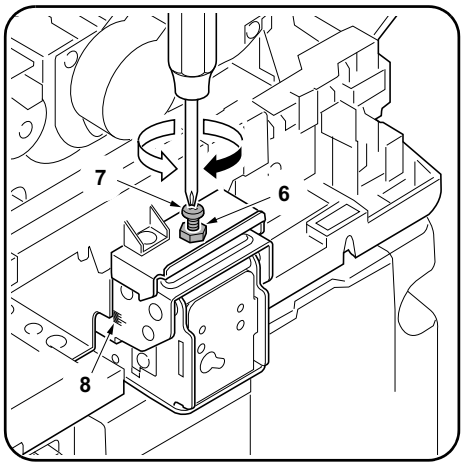
[确认后端倾斜度]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值。如果超过标准值时，必须进行调整。
〈标准值〉单面时：± 3.0㎜ 以内
双面时：± 4.0㎜ 以内

[後端斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞ 片面の場合：± 3.0㎜ 以内
両面の場合：± 4.0㎜ 以内





Adjusting the DP

2. Open the upper cover (3) of the DP (A). Remove four screws (4) to remove the rear cover (5).

3. Adjust the height of DP.
Loosen the nut (6).
For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (7).
For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (7).
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm (8)
Retighten the nut (6).
4. Refit the rear cover (5) removed in step 2.
5. Remove the original mat (B) and refit it (see steps 33 and 34 on page 10).

Réglage du DP

2. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (3) du DP (A). Déposer les quatre vis (4) pour enlever le capot arrière (5).

3. Réglez la hauteur du DP.
Desserrez l'écrou (6).
Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (7).
Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (7).
Quantité de changement par pas: environ 0,5 mm (8)
Resserrez l'écrou (6).
4. Reposer le capot arrière (5) déposé à l'étape 2.
5. Retirez le tapis d'original (B) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 33 et 34 à la page 10.)

Ajuste del DP

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) del DP (A). Quite los cuatro tornillos (4) para desmontar la cubierta trasera (5).

3. Ajuste la altura del DP.
Afloje la tuerca (6).
Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (7).
Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (7).
Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm (8)
Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (6).
4. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (5) desmontada en el paso 2.
5. Desmonte la plancha de original (B) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 33 y 34 en la página 10).

Einstellen des DP

2. Die obere Abdeckung (3) des DP (A) öffnen. Die vier Schrauben (4) entfernen, um die hintere Abdeckung (5) abzunehmen.

3. Die Höhe des DP einstellen.
Lösen Sie die Mutter (6).
Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (7).
Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (7) festziehen.
Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: ca. 0,5 mm (8)
Ziehen Sie die Mutter (6) wieder fest.
4. Die in Schritt 2 entfernte hintere Abdeckung (5) wieder anbringen.
5. Die Originalmatte (B) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 33 und 34 auf Seite 10).

Regolazione del DP

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) del DP (A). Togliere le quattro viti (4) per rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (5).

3. egolazione dell'altezza del DP
Allentare il dado (6).
Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (7).
Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (7).
Variazione graduale: circa 0,5 mm (8)
Stringere di nuovo il dado (6).
4. Reinserire il coperchio posteriore (5) rimosso nel passo 2.
5. Rimuovere il coprioriginale (B) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 33 e 34 a pagina 10).

调整 DP

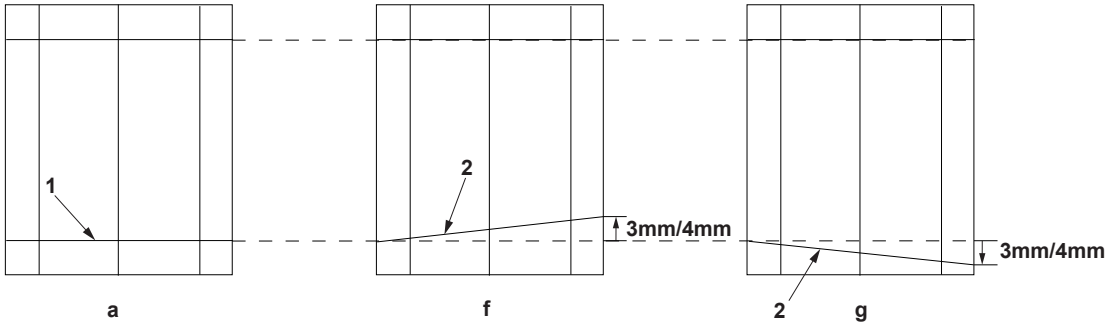
2. 打开 DP(A)的上盖板(3)。
拆下 4 颗螺钉 (4) 以拆下后盖板 (5)。

3. 调整 DP 的高度。
松驰螺母(6)。
测印件(f)时: 松弛调整螺丝(7)。
测印件(g)时: 紧固调整螺丝(7)。
每 1 格的移动量: 约 0.5㎜(8)
将螺母(6)按原样紧固好。
4. 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的后盖板(5)。
5. 拆下原稿垫(B)，参照第 10 页的步骤 33 和 34 再次装上。

DP の調整

2. DP 本体 (A) の DP 上カバー(3) を開く。
ビス (4)4 本を外し、後カバー(5) を取り外す。

3. DP の高さを調整する。
ナット (6) をゆるめる。
コピーサンプル (f) の場合:調整ビス (7) をゆるめる。
コピーサンプル (g) の場合:調整ビス (7) を締める。
1 目盛り当たりの変化量:約 0.5㎜(8)
ナット (6) を元通り締める。
4. 手順 2 で取り外した後カバー(5) を元通り取り付ける。
5. 原稿マット (B) を取り外し、10 ページの手順 33、34 を参考に再度取り付ける。



6. Make a proof copy again.
7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
<Reference value>
For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

---

6. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
7. Répétez les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
<Valeur de référence>
Copie recto seul: ±3,0 mm max.
Copie recto verso: ±4,0 mm max.

---

6. Haga otra copia de prueba.
7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para copia simple: Dentro de ±3,0 mm
Para copia duplex: Dentro de ±4,0 mm

---

6. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.
7. Die Schritte 1 bis 6 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb ±3,0 mm
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb ±4,0 mm

---

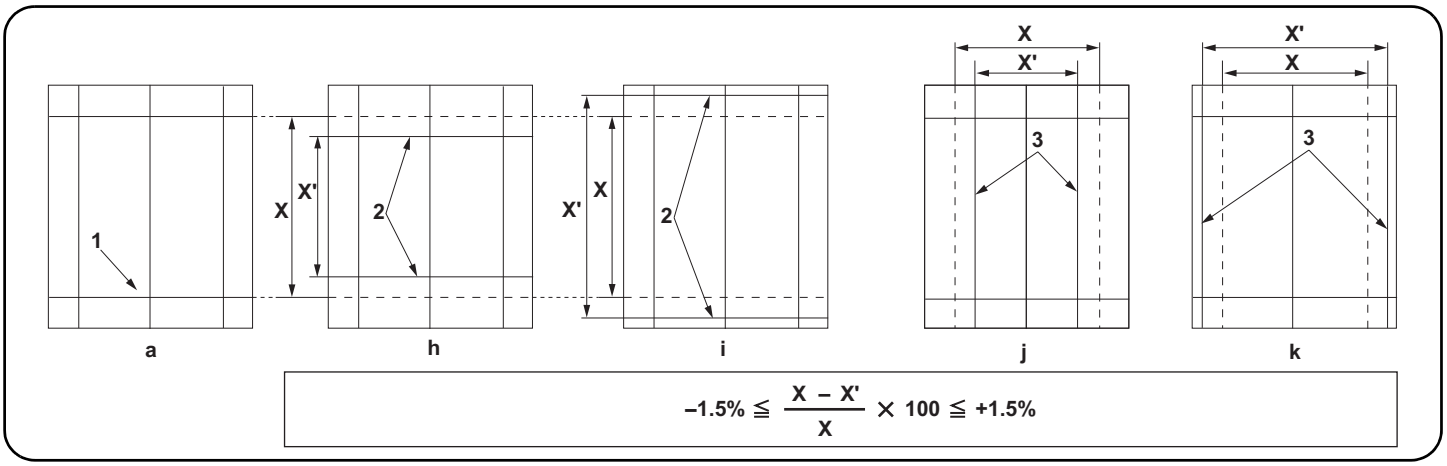
6. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.
7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per copia simplex: Entro ±3,0 mm
Per copia duplex: Entro ±4,0 mm

---

6. 再次进行测试复印。
7. 反复操作步骤 1~6，直至测印件的线（2）为标准值内。
〈标准值〉单面时：± 3.0mm 以内
双面时：± 4.0mm 以内

---

6. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
7. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ 片面の場合：± 3.0mm 以内
両面の場合：± 4.0mm 以内



[Checking the magnification]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) (3) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.
<Reference value>
For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within ±1.5%
For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within ±1.5%

Adjusting the DP magnification

*** : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines**

2. Use the maintenance mode U070 to adjust the magnification.
For the front page, adjust * CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT).
(The back page for the reverse duplex is also adjusted at the same time)
For the back page of the dual scan (CIS reading), adjust the * CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) and the * CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

[Vérification de l'agrandissement]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.
<Valeur de référence>
Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de ±1,5%
Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de ±1,5%

Réglage de l'agrandissement du DP

*** : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes**

2. Pour régler l'agrandissement, utilisez le mode entretien U070.
Pour le côté recto, réglez * CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT). (Le verso pour les copies recto-verso est également réglé par cette opération.)
Pour le verso des copies à balayage double (lecture CIS), réglez le * CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) et le * CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

[Verificación del cambio de tamaño]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.
<Valor de referencia>
Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±1,5%
Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de ±1,5%

Ajuste del cambio de tamaño

*** : Máquinas a todo color / Máquinas monocromáticas**

2. Para ajustar la ampliación utilice el modo de mantenimiento U070.
Para la página frontal, ajuste * CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT).
(En el mismo momento se ajusta la página posterior del dúplex inverso).
Para la página posterior del escaneado doble (lectura CIS), ajuste * CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) y * CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS).

[Überprüfen der Vergrößerung]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.
<Bezugswert>
Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±1,5%
Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb ±1,5%

Einstellen der DP-Vergrößerung

*** : Vollfarbenmaschinen / Monochrommaschinen**

2. Zum Einstellen der Vergrößerung den Wartungsmodus U070 verwenden.
Für die Vorderseite die * CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT) einstellen. (Die Rückseite für Spiegelbild-Duplex wird damit ebenfalls eingestellt.)
Für die Rückseite des Dual-Scans (CIS-Abtastung) sind * CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) und * CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS) einzustellen.

[Controllo dell'ingrandimento]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%
Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

Regolazione dell'ingrandimento DP

*** : Macchine a colori / Macchine in bianco e nero**

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U070 per regolare l'ingrandimento.
Per la pagina anteriore, regolare * CONVEY SPEED1 / MOTOR ADJ(FRONT). (Nello stesso momento viene regolata anche la pagina posteriore per il duplex inverso.)
Per la pagina posteriore della doppia scansione (lettura CIS), regolare * CIS MAIN ADJ / Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) e * CIS SUB ADJ / X SCAN ZOOM(CIS) .

[确认等倍值]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)、(3)之间的偏移值。
如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。
〈标准值〉
对于副扫描方向，线(2)的上下偏移值：± 1.5% 以内
对于主扫描方向，线(3)的左右偏移值：± 1.5% 以内

调整 DP 等倍值

*: 彩色机器 / 黑白机器

2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整等倍值。
对于正面，调整 * CONVEY SPEED1/MOTOR ADJ(FRONT)。
（反转双面的背面也同时调整）
对于双扫描(CIS 读取)的背面，调整 * CIS MAIN ADJ/Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) 和 * CIS SUB ADJ/X SCAN ZOOM(CIS)。

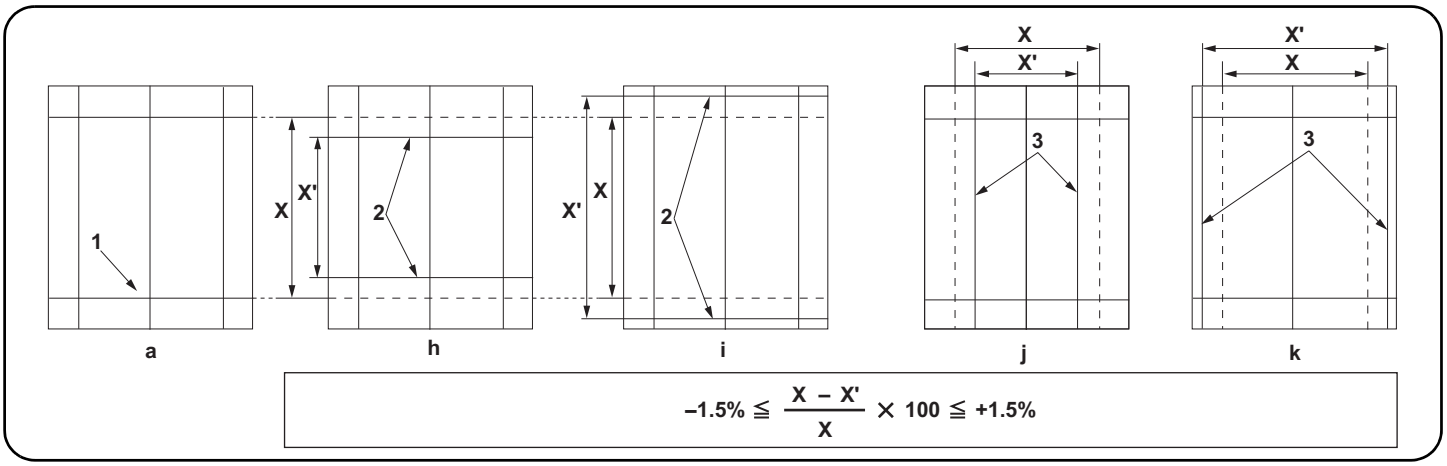
[等倍度確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞
副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ：± 1.5% 以内
主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ：± 1.5% 以内

DP 等倍度調整

*: カラー機／モノクロ機

2. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、調整を行う。
表面の場合は、* CONVEY SPEED1/MOTOR ADJ(FRONT) の調整を行う。
（両面反転裏面も同時に調整される）
両面同時裏面 (CIS 読込) の場合は、* CIS MAIN ADJ/Y SCAN ZOOM(CIS) および * CIS SUB ADJ/X SCAN ZOOM(CIS) の調整を行う。



3. Adjust the values.
For the shorter length copy example (h)(j): Increases the value.
For the longer length copy example (i)(k): Decreases the value.
Amount of change per step: 0.10 %
4. Perform a test copy.
5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) (3) of copy example shows the reference value.
<Reference value>
For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within ±1.5%
For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within ±1.5%

---

3. Régler les valeurs.
Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (h)(j) : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (i)(k) : diminuer la valeur.
Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0.10 %
4. Effectuer une copie de test.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence>
Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de ±1,5%
Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de ±1,5%

---

3. Ajuste los valores.
Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (h)(j): aumenta el valor.
Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (i)(k): disminuye el valor.
Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0.10 %
4. Haga una copia de prueba.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±1,5%
Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de ±1,5%

---

3. Die Werte einstellen.
Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (h)(j): Den Wert erhöhen.
Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (i)(k): Den Wert verringern.
Änderung pro Schritt: 0.10 %
4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±1,5%
Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb ±1,5%

---

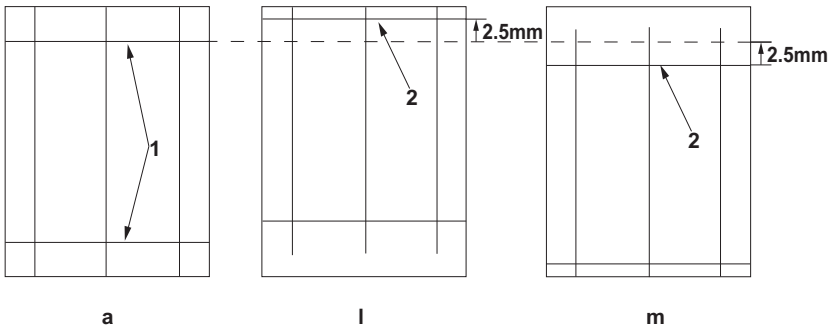
3. Regolare i valori.
Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (h)(j): aumenta il valore.
Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (i)(k): riduce il valore.
Entità modifica per passo: 0,10 %
4. Eseguire una copia di prova
5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%
Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

---

3. 调整设定值。
在长度偏短时　复印样本(h)(j):调高设定值
在长度偏长时　复印样本(i)(k):调低设定值
设定值的一个调整单位变化量:0.10%
4. 进行测试复印。
5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4，直至复印样本上的线(2)、(3)之间的偏移值达到标准值范围内。
〈标准值〉
对于副扫描方向，线(2)的上下偏移值:± 1.5% 以内
对于主扫描方向，线(3)的左右偏移值:± 1.5% 以内

---

3. 設定値を調整する。
長さが短い場合 コピーサンプル (h)(j):設定値を上げる
長さが長い場合 コピーサンプル (i)(k):設定値を下げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量:0.10%
4. テストコピーを行う。
5. コピーサンプルの線 (2)(3) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ～ 4 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞
副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ：± 1.5% 以内
主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ：± 1.5% 以内



[Checking the leading edge timing]

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.
<Reference value>
Vertical gap of line (2): within ±2.5 mm

Adjusting the DP leading edge timing
*** : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines**

2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing.
For the front page, adjust * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.
For the back page of the reverse duplex, adjust * ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.
For the back page of the dual scan (CIS reading), adjust * ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).
NOTE:When adjusting the front page, be sure to check the back page of the reverse duplex and adjust (* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) as necessary.
When adjusting the back page of the reverse duplex, place the original in the DP by turning the leading edge and trailing edge upside down.

[Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.
<Valeur de référence>
Écart vertical de la ligne (2) : ±2.5 mm

Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP
*** : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes**

2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071.
Pour le côté recto, réglez * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.
Pour le verso des copies recto-verso, réglez * ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.
Pour le verso des copies à balayage double (lecture CIS), réglez * ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).
NOTE: au réglage du verso, vérifiez le verso des copies recto-verso et réglez (* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) si nécessaire.
Pour le réglage du verso des copies recto-verso, disposez l'original dans le DP en inversant le bord avant et le bord arrière.

[Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.
<Valor de referencia>
Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±2,5 mm

Ajuste de la sincronización de borde superior del DP
*** : Máquinas a todo color / Máquinas monocromáticas**

2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071.
Para la página frontal ajuste * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.
Para la página posterior del dúplex inverso, ajuste * ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.
Para la página posterior del escaneado doble (lectura CIS), ajuste * ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).
NOTA: cuando ajuste la página frontal, asegúrese de comprobar la página posterior del dúplex inverso y ajustar (* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) si fuera necesario.
Cuando ajuste la página posterior del dúplex inverso, coloque el original en el DP poniendo el borde superior y el borde de arrastre boca abajo.

[Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.
<Bezugswert>
Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±2,5 mm

Einstellen des DP-Vorderkanten-Timings
*** : Vollfarbenmaschinen / Monochrommaschinen**

2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden.
Für die Vorderseite * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD einstellen.
Für die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex * ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD einstellen.
Für die Rückseite des Dual-Scans (CIS-Abtastung) * ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS) einstellen.
HINWEIS: Beim Einstellen der Vorderseite unbedingt die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex überprüfen und nach Bedarf (* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) einstellen.
Beim Einstellen der Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex das Original so im DP einlegen, dass die Vorderkante und die Hinterkante umgekehrt platziert sind.

[Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.
<Valore di riferimento>
Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra ±2,5 mm

Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP
*** : Macchine a colori / Macchine in bianco e nero**

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione.
Per la pagina anteriore, regolare * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT HEAD.
Per la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, regolare * ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD.
Per la pagina posteriore della doppia scansione (lettura CIS), regolare * ADJUST DATA5 / HEAD(CIS).
NOTA: Quando si regola la pagina anteriore, accertarsi di controllare la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso e regolare (* ADJUST DATA3 / BACK HEAD) come necessario.
Quando si regola la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, collocare l'originale nel DP capovolgendo il bordo iniziale e il bordo finale.

[确认前端定时调整]

1. 确认原稿(a)上的线(1)和复印样本上的线(2)之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。
〈标准值〉
线(2)的上下偏移值：± 2.5mm 以内

DP 前端定时调整
*: 彩色机器 / 黑白机器

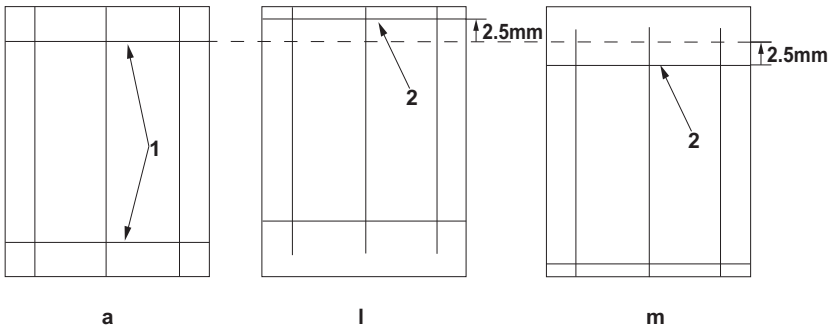
2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整定时。
对于正面，调整 * ADJUST DATA1/FRONT HEAD。
对于反转双面的背面，调整 * ADJUST DATA3/BACK HEAD。
对于双扫描(CIS 读取)的背面，调整 * ADJUST DATA5/HEAD(CIS)。
注 调整正面时，请确保检查反转双面的背面，并根据需要调整(* ADJUST DATA3/BACK HEAD)。
调整反转双面的背面时，通过将前端和后端上下倒转，将原稿放入 DP 中。

[先端タイミング確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞
線 (2) の上下ずれ:± 2.5mm 以内

DP 先端タイミング調整　　*:カラー機／モノクロ機

2. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整を行う。
表面の場合は、* ADJUST DATA1/FRONT HEAD の調整を行う。
両面反転裏面の場合は、* ADJUST DATA3/BACK HEAD の調整を行う。
両面同時裏面 (CIS 読込) の場合は、* ADJUST DATA5/HEAD(CIS) の調整を行う。
表面調整後、両面反転の裏面を確認し、調整が必要な場合は * ADJUST DATA3/BACK HEAD の調整を行うこと。
注意:両面反転裏面時の調整の場合は、原稿の先端 / 後端を逆向きにして、DP 本体にセットすること。



3. Adjust the values.
For the faster leading edge timing, copy examples (l): Decreases the value.
For the slower leading edge timing, copy examples (m): Increases the value.
Amount of change per step: 0.17 mm
4. Perform a test copy.
5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.
<Reference value>
Vertical gap of line (2): within ±2.5 mm

---

3. Régler les valeurs.
Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (l) : diminuer la valeur.
Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (m) : augmenter la valeur.
Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,17 mm
4. Effectuer une copie de test.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence>
Écart vertical de la ligne (2) : ±2.5 mm

---

3. Ajuste los valores.
Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (l): disminuye el valor.
Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (m): aumenta el valor.
Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,17 mm
4. Haga una copia de prueba.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia>
Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±2,5 mm

---

3. Die Werte einstellen.
Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (l): Den Wert verringern.
Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (m): Den Wert erhöhen.
Änderung pro Schritt: 0,17 mm
4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.
<Bezugswert>
Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±2,5 mm

---

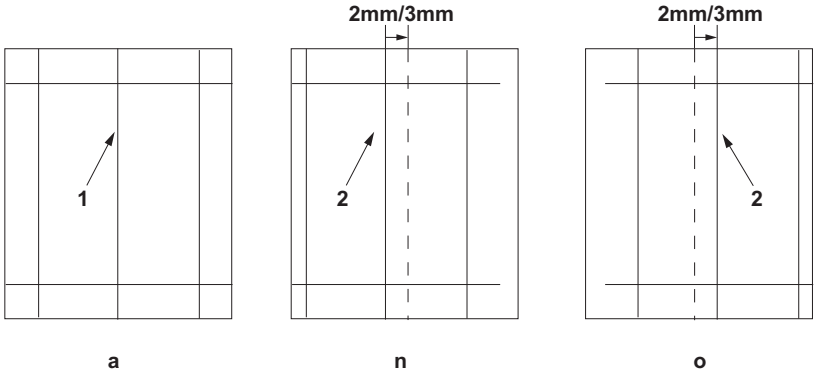
3. Regolare i valori.
Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (l): riduce il valore.
Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (m): aumenta il valore.
Entità modifica per passo: 0,17 mm
4. Eseguire una copia di prova
5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra ±2,5 mm

---

3. 调整设定值。
在前端定时偏快时　复印样本(l)：调低设定值
在前端定时偏慢时　复印样本(m)：调高设定值
设定值的一个调整单位变化量：0.17㎜
4. 进行测试复印。
5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4，直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。
〈标准值〉
线(2)的上下偏移值：± 2.5㎜ 以内

---

3. 設定値を調整する。
先端タイミングが早い場合 コピーサンプル (l):設定値を下げる
先端タイミングが遅い場合 コピーサンプル (m):設定値を上げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量:0.17㎜
4. テストコピーを行う。
5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ～ 4 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞
線 (2) の上下ずれ:± 2.5㎜ 以内



[Checking the center line]

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.
<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying: ±2 mm
Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying: ±3 mm

---

[Vérification de la ligne médiane]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.
<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto : ±2 mm
Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso : ±3 mm

---

[Verificación de la línea central]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.
<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara: ±2 mm
Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex: ±3 mm

---

[Überprüfen der Mittellinie]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.
<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie: ±2 mm
Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie: ±3 mm

---

[Controllo della linea centrale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.
<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola: ±2 mm
Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex: ±3 mm

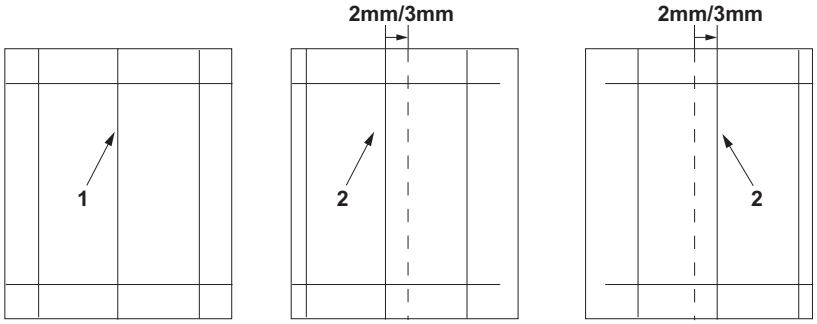
---

[确认中心线]

1. 确认原稿(a)中心线(1)和复印样本中心线(2)之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。
〈标准值〉单面复印时，中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 2㎜ 以内
双面复印时，中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 3㎜ 以内

[センターライン確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 2㎜ 以内
両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 3㎜ 以内



Adjusting the DP center line　* : Full-color machines / Monochrome machines

2. Use the maintenance mode U072 to adjust the center line.
For the front page, adjust * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT.
For the back page of the reverse duplex, adjust * ADJUST DATA2 / BACK.
For the back page of the dual scan (CIS reading), adjust * ADJUST DATA3 / CIS.
NOTE: When adjusting the front page, be sure to check the back page of the reverse duplex and adjust (* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) as necessary.
When adjusting the back page of the reverse duplex, place the original in the DP by turning the leading edge and trailing edge upside down.

Réglage de la ligne médiane du DP　* : Machines entièrement en couleurs / Machines monochromes

2. Pour régler la ligne médiane, utiliser le mode entretien U072.
Pour le côté recto, régler * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT .
Pour le verso des copies recto-verso, régler * ADJUST DATA2 / BACK .
Pour le verso des copies à balayage double (lecture CIS), régler * ADJUST DATA3 / CIS .
NOTE: au réglage du verso, vérifier le verso des copies recto-verso et régler (* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) si nécessaire.
Pour le réglage du verso des copies recto-verso, disposer l'original dans le DP en inversant le bord avant et le bord arrière.

Ajuste de la línea central del DP　* : Máquinas a todo color / Máquinas monocromáticas

2. Para ajustar la línea central utilice el modo de mantenimiento U072.
Para la página frontal ajuste * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT .
Para la página posterior del dúplex inverso, ajuste * ADJUST DATA2 / BACK .
Para la página posterior del escaneado doble (lectura CIS), ajuste * ADJUST DATA3 / CIS .
NOTA: cuando ajuste la página frontal, asegúrese de comprobar la página posterior del dúplex inverso y ajustar (* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) si fuera necesario.
Cuando ajuste la página posterior del dúplex inverso, coloque el original en el DP poniendo el borde superior y el borde de arrastre boca abajo.

Einstellen der DP-Mittellinie　* : Vollfarbenmaschinen / Monochrommaschinen

2. Zum Einstellen der Mittellinie den Wartungsmodus U072 verwenden.
Für die Vorderseite * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT einstellen.
Für die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex * ADJUST DATA2 / BACK einstellen.
Für die Rückseite des Dual-Scans (CIS-Abtastung) * ADJUST DATA3 / CIS einstellen.
HINWEIS: Beim Einstellen der Vorderseite unbedingt die Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex überprüfen und nach Bedarf (* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) einstellen.
Beim Einstellen der Rückseite des Spiegelbild-Duplex das Original so im DP einlegen, dass die Vorderkante und die Hinterkante umgekehrt platziert sind.

Regolazione della linea centrale del DP　* : Macchine a colori / Macchine in bianco e nero

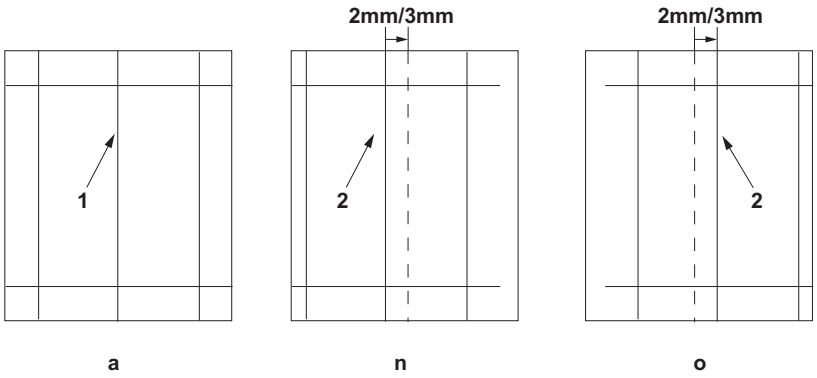
2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U072 per regolare la linea centrale.
Per la pagina anteriore, regolare * ADJUST DATA1 / FRONT .
Per la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, regolare * ADJUST DATA2 / BACK .
Per la pagina posteriore della doppia scansione (lettura CIS), regolare * ADJUST DATA3 / CIS .
NOTA: Quando si regola la pagina anteriore, accertarsi di controllare la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso e regolare (* ADJUST DATA2 / BACK) come necessario.
Quando si regola la pagina posteriore del duplex inverso, collocare l'originale nel DP capovolgendo il bordo iniziale e il bordo finale.

调整 DP 中心线　* : 彩色机器 / 黑白机器

2. 使用维修模式 U072 调整中心线。
对于正面，调整 * ADJUST DATA1/FRONT 。
对于反转双面的背面，调整 * ADJUST DATA2/BACK 。
对于双扫描（CIS 读取）的背面，调整 * ADJUST DATA3/CIS 。
注 调整正面时，请确保检查反转双面的背面，并根据需要调整（* ADJUST DATA2/BACK ）。
调整反转双面的背面时，通过将前端和后端上下倒转，将原稿放入 DP 中。

DP センターライン調整　　* : カラー機 ／ モノクロ機

2. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、調整を行う。
表面の場合は、* ADJUST DATA1/FRONT 調整を行う。
両面反転裏面の場合は、* ADJUST DATA2/BACK 調整を行う。
両面同時裏面（CIS 読込）の場合は、* ADJUST DATA3/CIS 調整を行う。
表面調整後、両面反転の裏面を確認し、調整が必要な場合は * ADJUST DATA2/BACK 調整を行うこと。
注意：両面反転裏面時の調整の場合は、原稿の先端 / 後端を逆向きにして、DP 本体にセットすること。



3. Adjust the values.
If the center moves more front, copy example (n): Increases the value.
If the center moves inner, copy sample (o): Decreases the value.
Amount of change per step: 0.085 mm
4. Perform a test copy.
5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.
<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying: ±2 mm
Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying: ±3 mm

---

3. Régler les valeurs.
Pour l'exemple de copie (n) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : augmenter la valeur.
Pour l'exemple de copie (o) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : diminuer la valeur.
Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm
4. Effectuer une copie de test.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto : ±2 mm
Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso : ±3 mm

---

3. Ajuste los valores.
Si el centro se desplaza más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (n): aumenta el valor.
Si el centro se desplaza hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (0): disminuye el valor.
Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm
4. Haga una copia de prueba.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara: ±2 mm
Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex: ±3 mm

---

3. Die Werte einstellen.
Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (n): Den Wert erhöhen.
Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (o): Den Wert verringern.
Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm
4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.
<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie: ±2 mm
Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie: ±3 mm

---

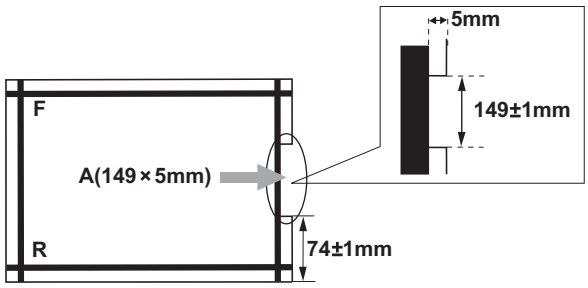
3. Regolare i valori.
Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (n): aumenta il valore.
Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (o): riduce il valore.
Entità modifica per passo: 0,085 mm
4. Eseguire una copia di prova
5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola: ±2 mm
Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex: ±3 mm

---

3. 调整设定值。
当中心向前偏移时　复印样本(n)：调高设定值
当中心向内偏移时　复印样本(o)：调低设定值
设定值的一个调整单位变化量：0.085㎜
4. 进行测试复印。
5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4，直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。
〈标准值〉单面复印时，中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 2㎜ 以内
双面复印时，中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值：± 3㎜ 以内

---

3. 設定値を調整する。
センターが手前にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (n):設定値を上げる
センターが奥にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (o) 設定値を下げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量:0.085㎜
4. テストコピーを行う。
5. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ～ 4 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 2㎜ 以内
両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ：± 3㎜ 以内



[Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment]

1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked.
2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the DP (FACE UP) key, the INPUT key and the START key in order to adjust the surface.
3. If COMPLETE appears on the display, the adjustment is completed.
If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until COMPLETE appears.
For details, see the service manual.

[Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage]

1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R.
2. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U411. Appuyer sur les touches DP (FACE UP) (DP - face vers le haut), INPUT (entrer) et START (démarrer) pour régler la surface.
3. Si le message COMPLETE apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé.Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message COMPLETE apparaisse.
Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

[Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste]

1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R.
2. Active el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse la tecla DP (FACE UP) (cara arriba), la tecla INPUT (entrada) y la tecla START (inicio) para ajustar el anverso.
3. Si aparece COMPLETE en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca COMPLETE en la pantalla.
Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

[Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals]

1. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen.
2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einstellen. Die Tasten DP (FACE UP) (DP SCHRIFTSEITE NACH OBEN), INPUT (EINGABE) und START der Reihe nach drücken, um die Oberfläche einzustellen.
3. Wenn am Display COMPLETE angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis COMPLETE angezeigt wird.
Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

[Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale]

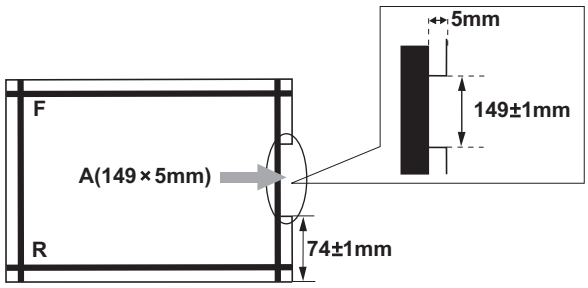
1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
2. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U411. Premere il tasto DP (FACE UP, FACCIATA SU), il tasto INPUT (IMMETTI) e il tasto START (AVVIA) per regolare la superficie.
3. Se COMPLETE appare sul display, la regolazione è completata.Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare COMPLETE.
Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

[通过调整用原稿进行自动调整]

1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上，并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
2. 设定维修模式 U411。按 DP（FACE UP）（正面朝上）键，INPUT（输入）键和 START（开始）键以调整正面。
3. 如果屏幕上出现 COMPLETE（完成），则表示调整完成。
如果出现 ERROR XX（错误 XX），则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 1 和 2，直到 COMPLETE（完成）出现。
详细内容请参照维修手册。

[調整用原稿による自動調整]

1. DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP 本体へセットする。
2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、DP(FACE UP) キー、INPUT キー、START の順に押し、表面の調整を行う。
3. ディスプレイに COMPLETE が表示されれば調整完了となる。
ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、COMPLETE が表示されるまで手順 1 ～ 2 を繰り返す。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



4. After completing the surface adjustment, direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original downward and set the original by inserting the side where the F and R are marked into the DP first.
5. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the DP (FACE DOWN), NORMAL TARGET, INPUT and START keys in that order to adjust the back side.
6. When RESULT OK 00 appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment is failed. Check the original set position and repeat the steps 4 to 5 until RESULT OK 00 appears.
For details, see the service manual.

---

4. Une fois le réglage de la surface effectué, diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le bas et placer l'original en introduisant en premier dans le DP le côté sur lequel F et R sont indiqués.
5. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U411. Pour régler le côté verso, appuyer sur les touches DP (FACE DOWN) (DP - FACE VERS LE BAS) , NORMAL TARGET (CIBLE NORMALE) , INPUT (ENTRER) et START (DÉMARRER) dans cet ordre.
6. Si le message COMPLETE apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérififer la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 4 et 5 jusqu'à ce que le message COMPLETE apparaisse.
Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

---

4. Una vez hecho el ajuste del anverso, dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia abajo y coloque el original insertando en el DP, en primer lugar, el lado en el que están marcados F y R.
5. Active el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas DP (FACE DOWN) (CARA ABAJO), NORMAL TARGET (DESTINO NORMAL), INPUT (ENTRADA) y START (INICIO) para ajustar el lado posterior.
6. Si aparece COMPLETE en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 4 y 5 hasta que aparezca COMPLETE en la pantalla.
Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

---

4. Nach dem Abschluss der Oberflächeneinstellung F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach unten zeigen und das Original einstellen, indem die mit F und R markierte Seite zuerst in den DP eingeführt wird.
5. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einstellen. Die Tasten DP (FACE DOWN) (DP SCHRIFTSEITE NACH UNTEN), NORMAL TARGET (NORMALZIEL), INPUT (EINGABE) und START in dieser Reihenfolge drücken, um die Rückseite einzustellen.
6. Wenn am Display COMPLETE angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen.Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 4 und 5, bis COMPLETE angezeigt wird.
Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

---

4. Una volta conclusa la regolazione della superficie, orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso il basso e disporre l'originale inserendo nel DP prima il lato su cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
5. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U411. Premere i tasti DP (FACE DOWN (FACCIATA SU)),NORMAL TARGET (DESTINAZIONE NORMALE), INPUT (IMMETTI) e START (AVVIA) in quest'ordine per regolare la facciata posteriore.
6. Se COMPLETE appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 4 e 5 fino a quando appare COMPLETE.
Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

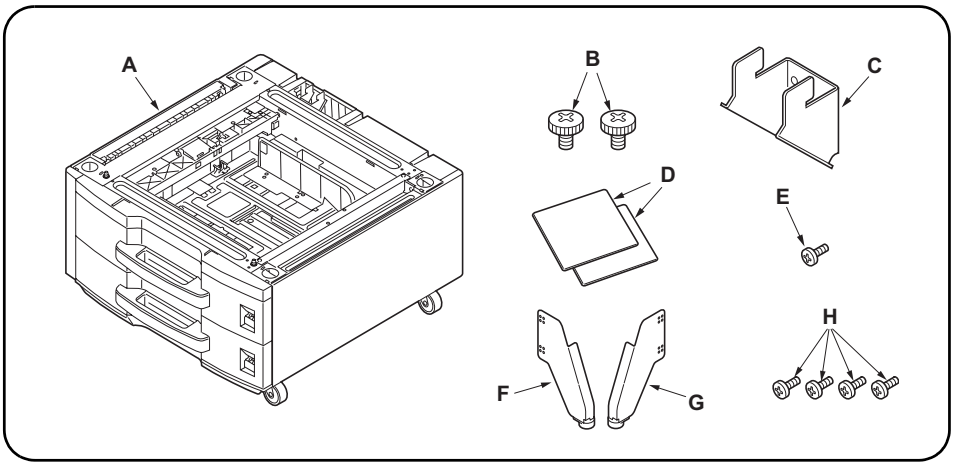
---

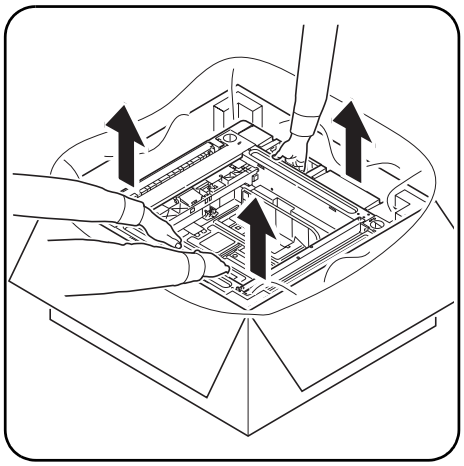
4. 完成正面调整后，将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向下，并首先将标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
5. 设定维修模式 U411。按 DP（FACE DOWN）（正面朝下）键，NORMAL TARGET（正常目标）键，INPUT（输入）键和 START（开始）键，以调整背面。
6. 如果屏幕上出现了 COMPLETE（完成），则表示调整完成。
如果出现 ERROR XX（错误 XX），则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 4 和 5，直到 COMPLETE（完成）出现。
详细内容请参照维修手册。

---

4. 表面の調整完了後、DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を下に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP 本体へセットする。
5. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、DP(FACE DOWN) キー、NORMAL TARGET キー、INPUT キー、START キーの順に押し、裏面の調整を行う。
6. ディスプレイに COMPLETE が表示されれば調整完了となる。
ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、COMPLETE が表示されるまで手順 4 ～ 5 を繰り返す。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER





English

Supplied parts
A Paper feeder....1
B Pin....2
C Retainer....1
D Paper size plate....2
E S Tite screw M4 × 10....1
F Stopper R....1
G Stopper L....1
H S Tite screw M4 × 20....4

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Precaution for unpacking
Hold the positions shown in the figure and remove the paper feeder from the outer case.

Français

Pièces fournies
A Bureau papier....1
B Broche....2
C Élément de retenue....1
D Plaque de format de papier....2
E Vis S Tite M4 × 10....1
F Butée R....1
G Butée L....1
H Vis S Tite M4 x 20....4

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Précaution pour le déballage
Saisir les emplacements indiqués sur l'illustration et retirer le bureau papier du boîtier extérieur.

Español

Partes suministradas
A Alimentador de papel....1
B Clavija....2
C Retén....1
D Placa de tamaño de papel....2
E Tornillo S Tite M4 × 10....1
F Tope R....1
G Tope L....1
H Tornillos S Tite M4 x 20....4

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Precauciones para el desembalaje
Sujete por las posiciones indicadas en la figura y desmonte el alimentador de papel de la caja de embalaje.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile
A Papiereinzug....1
B Stift....2
C Halterung....1
D Papierformatplatte....2
E S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10....1
F Anschlag R....1
G Anschlag L....1
H S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20....4

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Vorsichtsmaßnahme beim Auspacken
Halten Sie den Papiereinzug an den in der Abbildung gezeigten Stellen, und heben Sie ihn aus dem äußeren Karton heraus.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura
A Unità di alimentazione della carta....1
B Perno....2
C Fermo....1
D Piastra formato carta....2
E Vite S Tite M4 × 10....1
F Fermo R....1
G Fermo L....1
H Vite S Tite M4 × 20....4

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Precauzioni per il disinballaggio
Mantenere le posizioni indicate nella figura e rimuovere l'unità di alimentazione della carta dall'involucro esterno.

简体中文

附属品
A 供纸盒....1
B 固定插销....2
C 安装板....1
D 复印纸尺寸托板....2
E 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4×10....1
F 限位器 R....1
G 限位器 L....1
H 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4×20....4

如果**附属品**上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

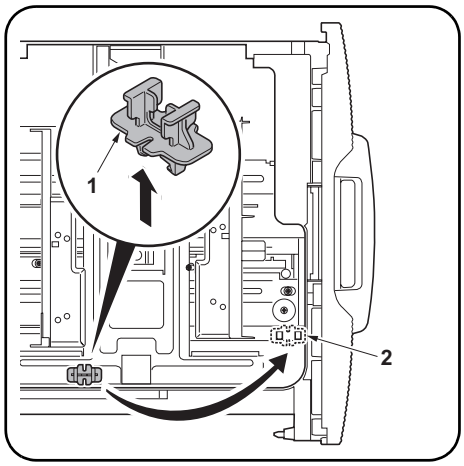
开包时的注意事项
开包时，拿住图示的位置从外箱内取出。

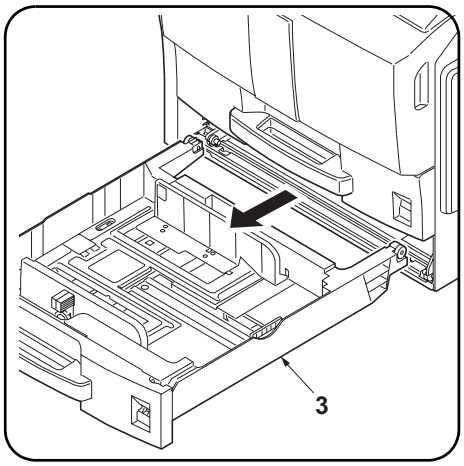
日本語

同梱品
A ペーパーフィーダ....1
B ピン....2
C 取付板....1
D ペーパーサイズプレート....2
E ビス M4×10 S タイト....1
F 転倒防止金具 R....1
G 転倒防止金具 L....1
H ビス M4×20 S タイト....4

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

開梱時の注意
開梱時は、イラストの位置を持って外ケースから取り出す。





Procedure
Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Pull each cassette out and then remove the lift plate stopper (1) from each cassette and attach it to the storage location (2).
2. Gently close each cassette.

3. Remove the lower paper cassette (3) from the MFP.

Procédure
Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Tirer chaque tiroir vers l'extérieur puis retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (1) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (2).
2. Refermer progressivement chaque tiroir.

3. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (3) du MFP.

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Abra la bandeja y quite el tope de la placa de elevación (1) de cada bandeja y colóquela en su lugar de depósito (2).
2. Cierre suavemente cada bandeja.

3. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (3) del MFP.

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Die einzelnen Kassetten herausziehen, dann den Hebeplattenanschlag (1) von jeder Kassette entfernen und an der Speicherposition (2) anbringen.
2. Alle Kassetten sachte schließen.

3. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (3) vom MFP ab.

Procedura
Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Estrarre ciascun cassetto e poi rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (1) da ciascun cassetto e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (2).
2. Chiudere delicatamente ciascun cassetto.

3. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) dall'MFP.

安装步骤
安装供纸盒时，必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

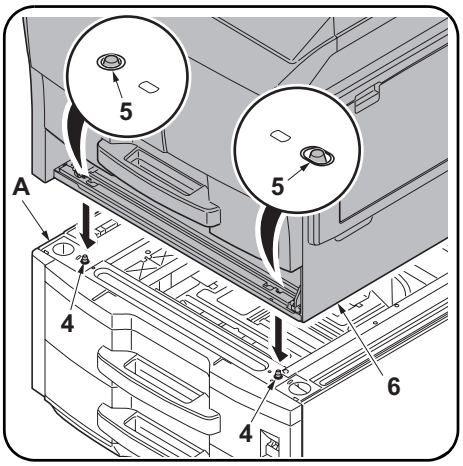
1. 拉出各供纸盒，拆下各 1 个升降板挡块 (1)，并安装在保管场所 (2) 上。
2. 轻轻地推入各供纸盒。

3. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3)。

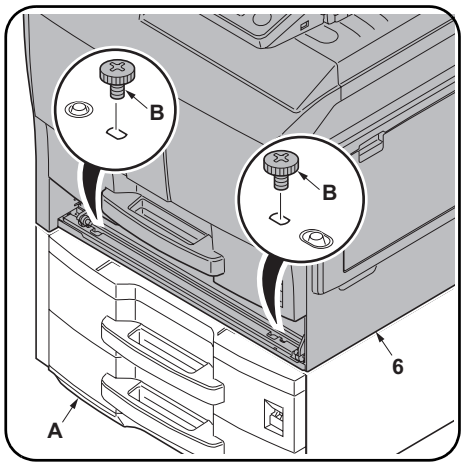
取付手順
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

1. 各カセットを引き出し、リフト板ストッパ (1) 各 1 個を外して保管場所 (2) に取り付ける。
2. 各カセットを静かに押し込む。

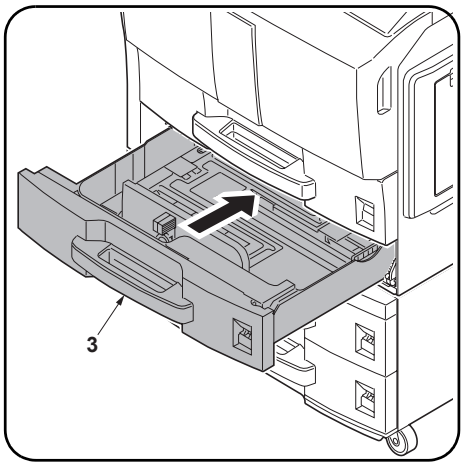
3. MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を取り外す。



4. Place the MFP (6) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (4) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (5) in the base of the MFP.



5. Secure the MFP (6) to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).



6. Refit the lower paper cassette (3) removed in step 3 to the MFP.

---

4. Placer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (4) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (5) à la base du MFP.

5. Fixer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

6. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (3) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 3.

---

4. Coloque el MFP (6) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (4) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (5) de la base del MFP.

5. Asegure el MFP (6) al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

6. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (3) desmontado en el paso 3 en el MFP.

---

4. Setzen Sie den MFP (6) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (4) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (5) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

5. Befestigen Sie den MFP (6) mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

6. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (3), die in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.

---

4. Installare l'MFP (6) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (4) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (5) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

5. Assicurare l'MFP (6) all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

6. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) rimosso al punto 3.

---

4. 供纸盒 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (4) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (5) 后，将 MFP 主机 (6) 放在供纸盒 (A) 上。

5. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机 (6) 固定在供纸盒 (A) 上。

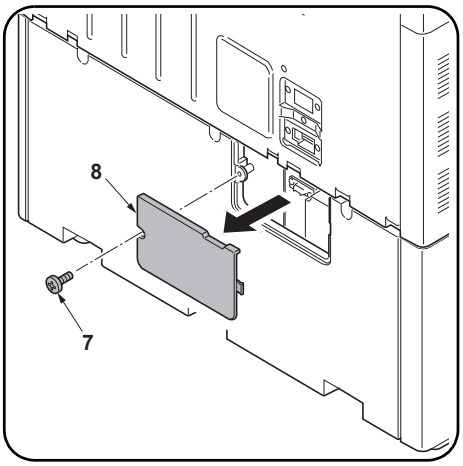
6. 在步骤 3 取下的 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3) 装回原来的位置。

---

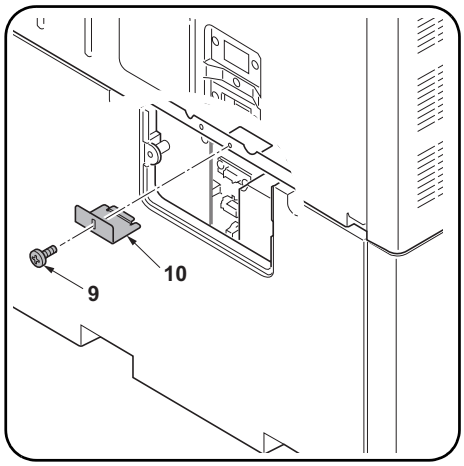
4. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (4) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (5) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (6) を載せる。

5. ピン (B)2 本で MFP 本体 (6) をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

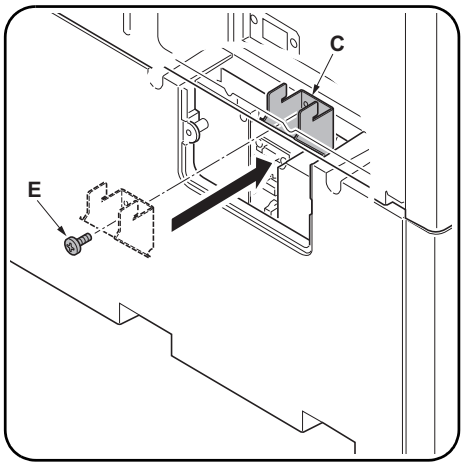
6. 手順 3 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を元に戻す。



7. Remove the screw (7) at the rear side of the paper feeder to remove the cover (8).



8. Remove the screw (9) to remove the metal plate (10).



9. Secure the retainer (C) with the screw (E).

---

7. Retirer la vis (7) située sur le côté arrière du bureau papier pour retirer le couvercle (8).

8. Retirer la vis (9) pour déposer la plaque métallique (10).

9. Fixer le elément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (E).

---

7. Quite el tornillo (7) en el lado trasero del alimentador de papel para desmontar la tapa (8).

8. Quite el tornillo (9) para desmontar la placa de metal (10).

9. Asegure la retén (C) con el tornillo (E).

---

7. Die Schraube (7) auf der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs herausdrehen, um die Abdeckung (8) abzunehmen.

8. Die Schraube (9) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (10) abzunehmen.

9. Die halterung (C) mit der Schraube (E) befestigen.

---

7. Rimuovere la vite (7) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta per togliere il coperchio (8).

8. Rimuovere la vite (9) per togliere la piastra di metallo (10).

9. Fissare la fermo (C) con la vite (E).

---

7. 拆除供纸盒后侧的 1 个螺丝 (7)，拆下盖板 (8)。

8. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (9)，拆下金属件 (10)。

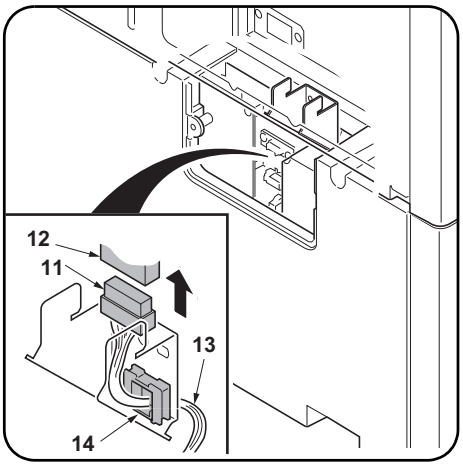
9. 使用螺丝 (E) 安装板 (C)。

---

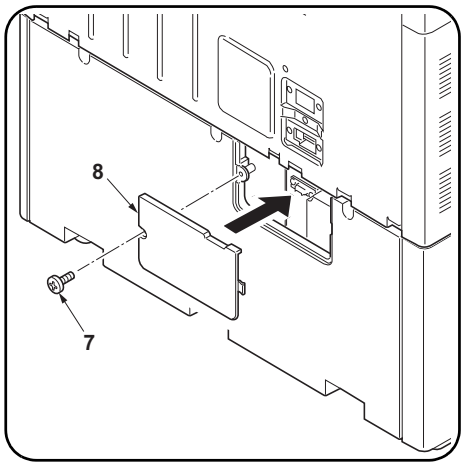
7. ペーパーフィーダ後側のビス (7)1 本を外し、カバー(8) を取り外す。

8. ビス (9)1 本を外し、金具 (10) を取り外す。

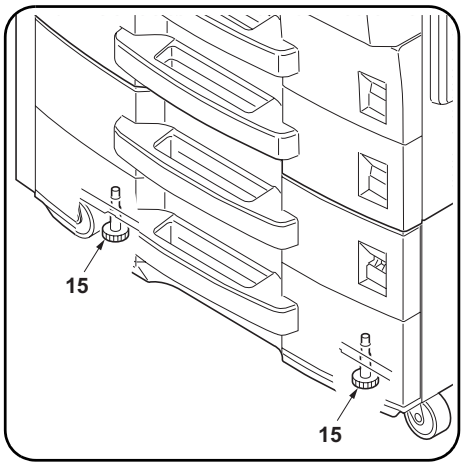
9. ビス (E)1 本で取付板 (C) を固定する。



10. Insert the 12-P connector (11) of the paper feeder into the connector (12) on the MFP.
11. Route the harness (13) through the clamp (14) on the retainer (C).



12. Refit the cover (8) using the screw (7) removed in step 7.



13. Turn the adjusters on each corner (15) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.

---

10. Insérer le connecteur à douze broches (11) du bureau papier dans le connecteur (12) du MFP.
11. Faire passer le faisceau de câbles (13) par le collier (14) de l'élément de retenue (C).

12. Remettre le couvercle (8) en place à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée auparavant à l'étape 7.

13. Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (15) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le bureau papier.

---

10. Inserte el conector de 12 clavijas (11) del alimentador de papel en el conector (12) del MFP.
11. Inserte el soporte (13) a través del sujetador (14) del retén (C).

12. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (8) usando el tornillo (7) quitado en el paso 7.

13. Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (15) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el alimentador de papel.

---

10. Stecken Sie den 12poligen Steckverbinder (11) des Papiereinzugs in die Buchse am MFP.
11. Führen Sie den Kabelbaum (13) durch die Klemme (14) auf der Halterung (C).

12. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (8) wieder mit der in Schritt (7) entfernten Schraube 7 an.

13. Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (15) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.

---

10. Inserire il connettore a 12 piedini (11) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta nel connettore (12) situato sull'MFP.
11. Far passare i cavi (13) attraverso il morsetto (14) sul fermo (C).

12. Inserire il pannello posteriore (8) usando le viti (7) rimosse al punto 7.

13. Ruotare i regolatori (15) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavimento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazione della carta.

---

10. 将供纸盒的 12 脚接头 (11) 接于 MFP 主机上的接口 (12)。
11. 将电线 (13) 插入安装板 (C) 上的夹钳 (14) 中而进行电线处理。

12. 用步骤 7 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 将盖板 (8) 装回原来的位置。

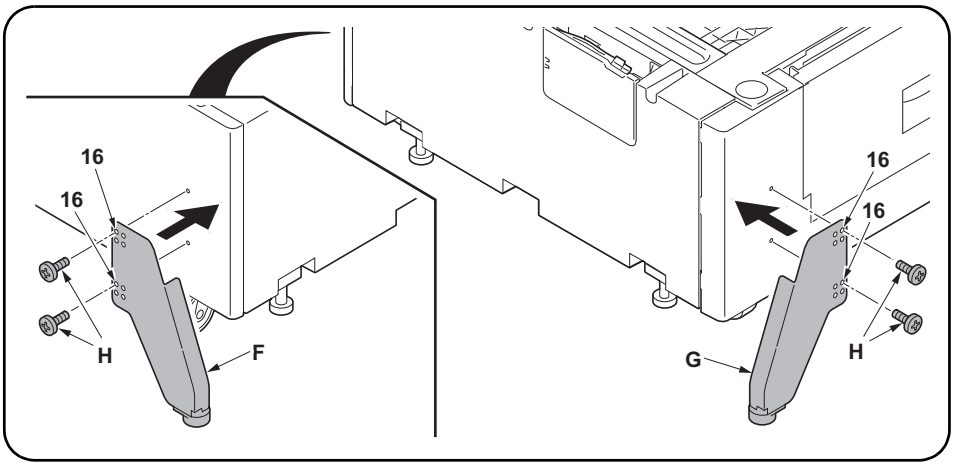
13. 转动四角 (15) 上的调节器直至与地面接触，然后再固定供纸盒。

---

10. ペーパフィーダの 12P コネクタ (11) を MFP 本体のコネクタ (12) に接続する。
11. 電線 (13) を取付板 (C) に付いているクランプ (14) に挿入し、電線処理をおこなう。

12. 手順 7 で取り外したビス (7)1 本でカバー (8) を元通りに取り付ける。

13. 4 隅のアジャスタ (15) を床に接触する位置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダを固定する。



Attaching the stays (For monochrome machines only)
14. Select holes (16) and install each stopper (F,G) with 2 S Tite screws M4 × 20 (H) so that the stoppers will be grounded on the floor.

Fixation des supports (Pour machines monochromes)
14. Sélectionner les trous (16) et installer chaque butée (F, G) avec 2 vis S Tite M4 × 20 (H) de sorte que les butées reposent sur le sol.

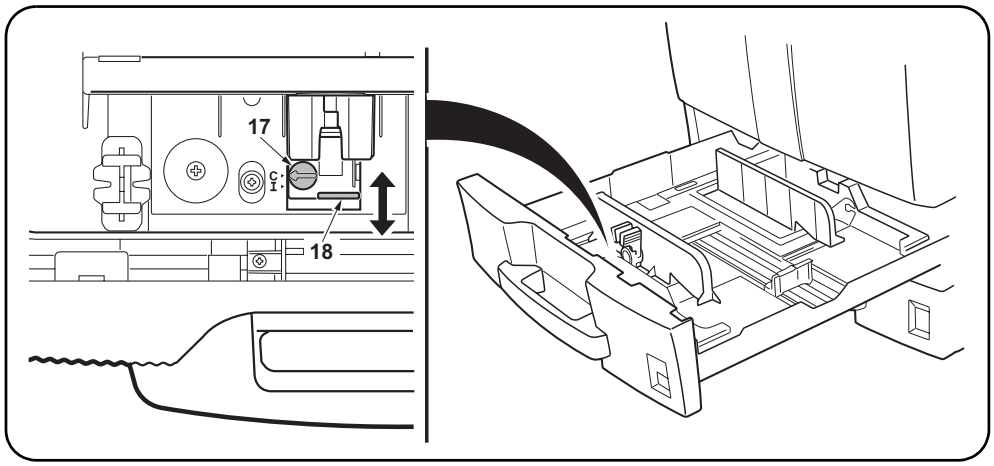
Colocación de las bases (Sólo para máquinas monocromáticas)
14. Seleccione los orificios (16) e instale cada tope (F,G) con los 2 tornillos S Tite M4 × 20 (H) de manera que los topes se conecten a tierra en el suelo.

Anbringen der Stützen (Nur für Monochrommaschinen)
14. Wählen Sie die Öffnungen (16) und befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (F, G) mit den 2 S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20 (H) so an, dass die Anschläge am Boden aufsitzen.

Inserimento delle sospensioni (Solo per le macchine in bianco e nero)
14. Selezionare i fori (16) ed installare ogni fermo (F,G) con le 2 viti S Tite M4 × 20 (H) in modo che i fermi siano posti a terra sul pavimento.

防倒金属件的安装（仅限黑白机）
14. 在孔（16）处各用 2 颗 M4×20 紧固型 S 螺丝（H）安装限位器（F,G），使之和地板接触。

転倒防止金具の取り付け（モノクロ機のみ）
14. 転倒防止金具（F,G）が床面に接地するように、穴(16)を選択してビス M4×20 S タイト（H）各 2 本で取り付ける。



Changing paper size

To change between inch size and metric size,follow the steps below to adjust the size switch.

1. Holding the paper width adjusting tab,move the paper width guide to a position other than that of the paper.
2. Turn the size switch (17) 90°.

3. Move the size lever (18) up (C) or down (I).
C: metric size(centimeters)
I : inch size
4. Turn the size switch 90° to lock it.

Modification du format du papier

Pour sélectionner un format en pouces ou un format métrique, procéder comme suit pour régler le sélecteur de format.

1. En tenant l'onglet de réglage de largeur du papier, déplacer le guide de largeur du papier dans une position différente de celle du papier.
2. Faire tourner le sélecteur de format (17) de 90°.

3. Déplacer le levier (18) vers le haut (C) ou vers le bas (I).
C: format métrique (centimètres)
I: format en pouces
4. Faire tourner le sélecteur de format de 90° pour le verrouiller.

Cómo cambiar el tamaño del papel

Para cambiar entre tamaño en pulgadas y tamaño métrico, realice los siguientes pasos para ajustar el interruptor de tamaño:

1. Sujete la lengüeta de ajuste de la anchura del papel y mueva la guía de ajuste de la anchura hasta una posición distinta a la del papel.
2. Gire 90º el interruptor de tamaño (17).

3. Mueva la palanca de tamaño (18) hacia arriba (C) o abajo (I).
C: tamaño métrico (centímetros)
I: tamaño en pulgadas
4. Gire 90º el interruptor de tamaño para bloquearlo.

Ändern des Papierformats

Um zwischen Zollgrößen und metrischen Größen umzuschalten, gehen Sie wie folgt vor, um den Formatschalter anzupassen.

1. Halten Sie die Breiteneinstellung für das Papier fest und schieben Sie sie an eine Stellung außerhalb der Papierfläche.
2. Drehen Sie den Formatschalter (17) um 90°.

3. Schieben Sie den Formathebel (18) nach oben (C) oder unten (I).
C: Metrisches Format (für Europa) (cm)
I: US Format
4. Drehen Sie den Formatschalter um 90°, um ihn zu verriegeln.

Cambio del formato della carta

Per commutare tra formato in pollici e metrico, attenersi alla seguente procedura per regolare lo switch del formato.

1. Reggendo la linguetta di regolazione della larghezza carta, spostare la guida di larghezza carta su una posizione diversa da quella della carta.
2. Ruotare lo switch di regolazione formato (17) di 90°.

3. Spostare la leva formato (18) verso l'alto (C) o verso il basso (I).
C: formato in unità metriche decimali (centimetri)
I : formato in pollici
4. Ruotare lo switch di regolazione formato di 90° per bloccarlo in posizione.

纸张大小的更改

当需变更英制尺寸纸张和公制尺寸纸张时，请按照下面的步骤变更尺寸转换开关。

1. 按住横向尺寸变更旋钮，使纸张宽度导板对准纸张尺寸以外的位置。
2. 把尺寸转换开关 (17) 旋转 90° 。

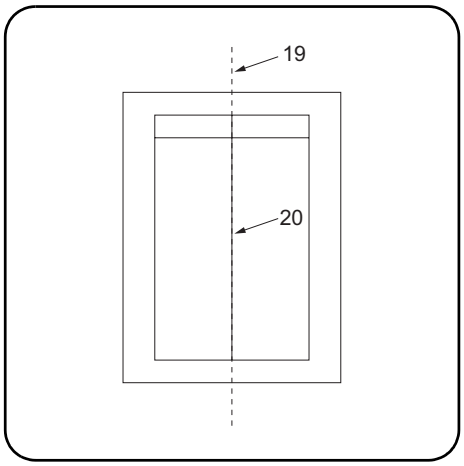
3. 把尺寸转换杆 (18) 向上(C)或向下(I)移动。
C: 公制尺寸
I: 英制尺寸
4. 把尺寸转换开关旋转 90° 后再固定。

用紙サイズ変更

インチサイズとセンチサイズの用紙を変更するときは、次の手順でサイズ切替スイッチを変更してください。

1. 横サイズ変更つまみを持って、用紙幅ガイドを用紙サイズ以外の位置に合わせる。
2. サイズ切替スイッチ (17) を 90° 回す。

3. サイズ切換レバー(18) を上(C)または下(I)に移動させる。
C: センチサイズ
I: インチサイズ
4. サイズ切替スイッチを 90° 回して固定する。



Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on.

2. Load paper into the cassette and make a test copy to check the operation.

3. Select maintenance mode U402 and print the test pattern.

4. If the center of the paper (19) and that of the test pattern output (20) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

---

Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.

2. Mettre du papier dans le tiroir et effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

3. Sélectionner le mode maintenance U402 et imprimer la mire d'essai.

4. Si le centre du papier (19) et celui de la sortie de mire (20) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

---

Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.

2. Introduzca papel en el cajón y haga una copia de prueba para verificar la operación.

3. Seleccione el modo de mantenimiento U402 e imprima el patrón de prueba.

4. Si el centro del papel (19) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (20) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

---

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.

2. Legen Sie Papier in die Papierlade ein und machen Sie eine Testkopie, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

3. Den Wartungsmodus U402 wählen und das Testmuster ausdrucken.

4. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (19) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (20) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

---

Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

2. Caricare la carta nel cassetto ed eseguire una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento.

3. Selezionare la modalità manutenzione U402 e stampare il modello di prova.

4. Se il centro della carta (19) e quello del modello di prova (20) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

---

中心线的确认

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。

2. 在供纸盒内装入复印纸。
进行测试复印，以确定复印动作状态。
3. 选择维修模式 U402，打印测试图案。

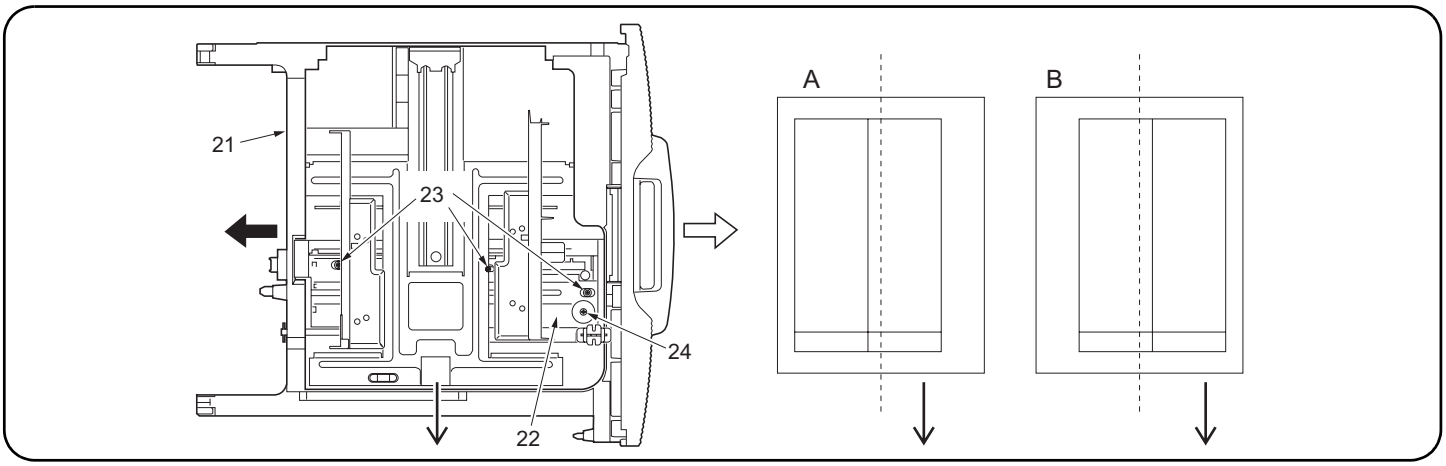
4. 如果复印纸的中心位置（19）与测试图案的中心位置（20）为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。
〈标准值〉左右偏移： 1.5㎜ 以下

センターライン確認

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。

2. カセットに用紙をセットする。
テストコピーをおこない、動作を確認する。
3. メンテナンスモード U402 を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

4. 用紙のセンター(19) とテストパターンのセンター(20) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞左右ずれ:1.5㎜ 以下



Adjusting the center line

1. Open the cassette (21) of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (23) securing the adjuster (22).

A and B: test pattern output examples

2. If the test pattern output example looks like A, turn the adjusting screw (24) clockwise, move the adjuster (22) in the direction of the black arrow (⬅), and retighten the three screws (23).

3. If the test pattern output example looks like B, turn the adjusting screw (24) counterclockwise, move the adjuster (22) in the direction of the white arrow (⇨), and retighten the three screws (23).

4. Output the test pattern again.

5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

Réglage de la ligne médiane

1. Ouvrir le tiroir (21) du bureau papier et desserrer les trois vis (23) qui fixent le dispositif de réglage (22).

A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

2. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, tourner la vis de réglage (24) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (22) dans la direction de la flèche noire (⬅), et resserrer les trois vis (23).

3. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, tourner la vis de réglage (24) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (22) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇨), et resserrer les trois vis (23).

4. Reproduire une nouvelle mire

5. Répéter les étapes 1 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

Ajuste de la línea central

1. Abra el cajón de papel (21) del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (23) que aseguran el regulador (22).

A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

2. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, gire el tornillo de ajuste (24) en sentido horario, mueva el regulador (22) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (⬅) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (23).

3. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a B, gire el tornillo de ajuste (24) en antihorario, mueva el regulador (22) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇨) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (23).

4. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

5. Repita los pasos 1 a 4 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

Einstellen der Mittenlinie

1. Öffnen Sie den Auszug (21) der Papierlade und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (23), die den Anpasser (22) halten.

A und B: Beispiele von Testmusterausgaben

2. Wenn die Testmusterausgabe aussieht wie A, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (24) im Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (22) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (⬅), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (23) wieder fest.

3. Wenn die Testmusterausgabe aussieht wie B, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (24) entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (22) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇨), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (23) wieder fest.

4. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 4, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

Regolazione della linea centrale

1. Aprire il cassetto (21) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e, allentando le tre viti (23), assicurare il regolatore (22).

A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

2. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, girare la vite di regolazione (24) in senso orario, spostare il regolatore (22) nella direzione della freccia nera (⬅) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (23).

3. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, girare la vite di regolazione (24) in senso antiorario, spostare il regolatore (22) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇨) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (23).

4. Stampare nuovamente il modello di prova.

5. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 4 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

中心线的调整

1. 拉出供纸盒 (21) 后，松开调整板 (22) 上的 3 个螺丝 (23)。

A, B 测试图案

2. 测试图案为 A 画面时，将调整螺丝 (24) 向右旋转，按箭头 (⬅) 方向移动调整板 (22)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (23)。
3. 测试图案为 B 画面时，将调整螺丝 (24) 向左旋转，按箭头 (⇨) 方向移动调整板 (22)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (23)。

4. 再次进行测试图案的输出。
5. 反复操作步骤 1 至 4，直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。
〈标准值〉左右偏移： 1.5㎜ 以下

センターライン調整

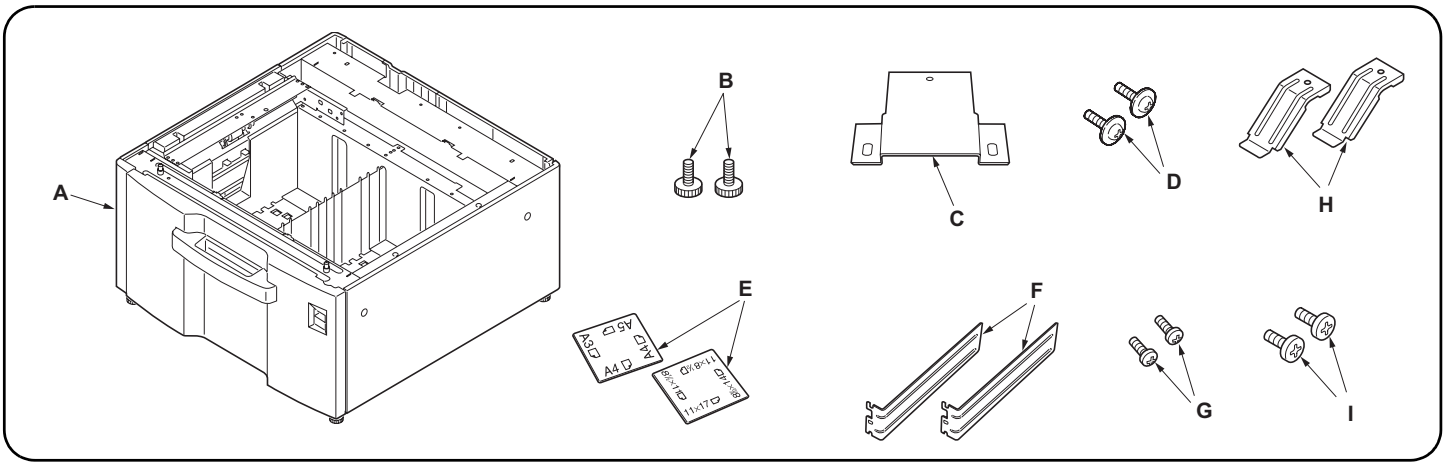
1. ペーパーフィーダのカセット (21) を引き出し、調整板 (22) のビス (23)3 本を緩める。

A、B:テストパターン

2. テストパターンが A 画像の場合、調整ネジ (24) を右に回し、矢印(⬅)の向きに調整板 (22) を動かし、ビス (23)3 本を締め付ける。
3. テストパターンが B 画像の場合、調整ネジ (24) を左に回し、矢印(⇨)の向きに調整板 (22) を動かし、ビス (23)3 本を締め付ける。

4. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。
5. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 4 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞左右ずれ:1.5㎜ 以下

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER



English

Supplied parts

A Paper feeder 1
B Pin 2
C Retainer 1
D TP screw, M4 × 06 2
E Paper size plate 2
F Longitudinal size adjuster (inch specifications only) 2
G Round cross-head tapping screw, M3 × 8 (inch specifications only) 2
H Stopper 2
I S Tite screws M4 × 8 2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Bureau papier 1
B Broche 2
C Élément de retenue 1
D Vis TP, M4 × 06 2
E Plaque de format de papier 2
F Dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal (spécifications en pouces seulement) 2
G Vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde, M3 × 8 (spécifications en pouces seulement) 2
H Butée 2
I Vis S Tite M4 x 8 2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Alimentador de papel 1
B Clavija 2
C Retén 1
D Tornillo TP, M4 × 06 2
E Placa de tamaño de papel 2
F Regulador de tamaño longitudinal (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas) 2
G Tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz redonda, M3 × 8 (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas) 2
H Tope 2
I Tornillos S Tite M4 x 8 2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Papiereinzug 1
B Stift 2
C Halterung 1
D TP-Schraube, M4 × 06 2
E Papierformatplatte 2
F Längsgrößen-Einsteller (nur Zollspezifikationen) 2
G Kreuzschlitz-Rundkopf-Schneidschraube, M3 × 8 (nur Zollspezifikationen) 2
H Anschlag 2
I S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 8 2

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A Unità di alimentazione della carta 1
B Perno 2
C Fermo 1
D Vite TP, M4 × 06 2
E Piastra formato carta 2
F Regolatore della misura longitudinale (solo per le specifiche in pollici) 2
G Vite autofilettante circolare a croce, M3 × 8 (solo per le specifiche in pollici) 2
H Fermo 2
I Vite S Tite M4 × 8 2

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A 供纸工作台 1
B 固定插销 2
C 安装板 1
D TP 螺丝 M4×06 2
E 复印纸尺寸标示板 2
F 纵向尺寸板（仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品） 2
G 十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3×8（仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品） 2
H 限位器 2
I 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 8 2

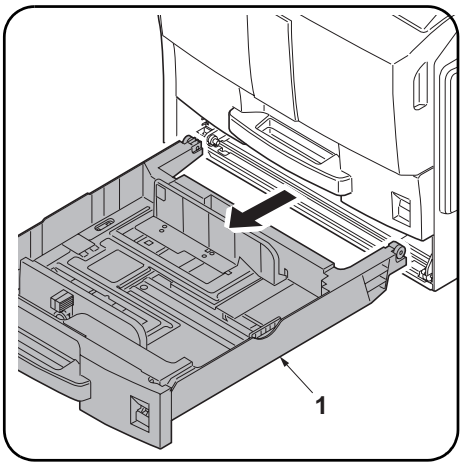
如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

日本語

同梱品

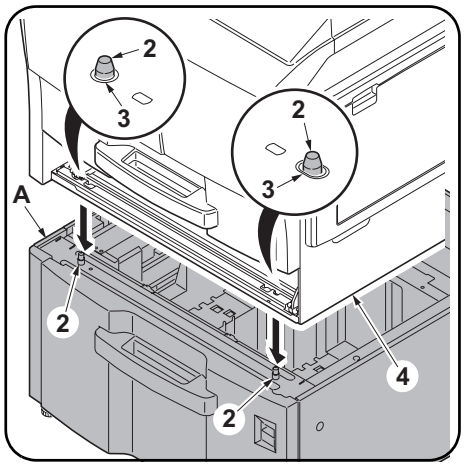
A ペーパーフィーダ 1
B ピン 2
C 取付板 1
D ビス TP M4×06 2
E ペーパーサイズプレート 2
F 縦幅サイズ板(インチ仕様のみ) 2
G ビス +ナベ M3×8 タッピング (インチ仕様のみ) 2
H 転倒防止金具 2
I ビス M4×8 S タイト 2

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

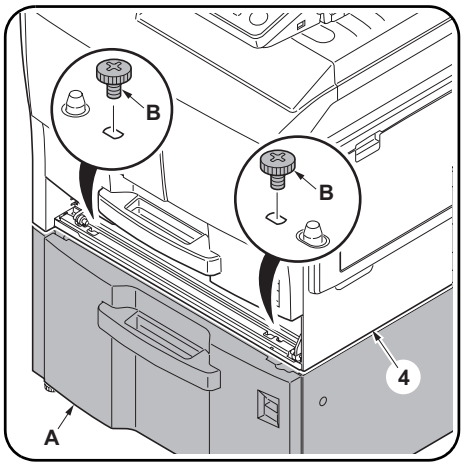


Procedure
Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Remove the lower paper cassette (1) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (4) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (2) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (3) in the base of the MFP (4).



3. Secure the MFP (4) to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

Procédure
Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (1) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (2) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (3) à la base du MFP (4).

3. Fixer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (1) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (4) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (2) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (3) de la base del MFP (4).

3. Asegure el MFP (4) al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (1) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (4) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (2) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (3) in der Basis des MFP (4) ausgerichtet sein müssen.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP (4) mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

Procedura
Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (4) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (2) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (3) situati sulla base dell'MFP (4).

3. Assicurare l'MFP (4) all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

［安装步骤］
安装供纸工作台时，必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1)。

2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (2) 分别对准 MFP 主机 (4) 底面的各相应销孔 (3) 后，将 MFP 主机 (4) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

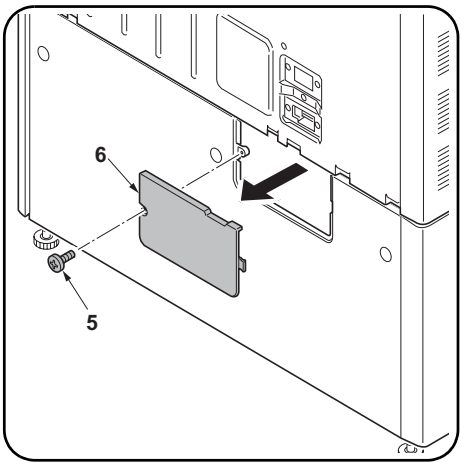
3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机 (4) 固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

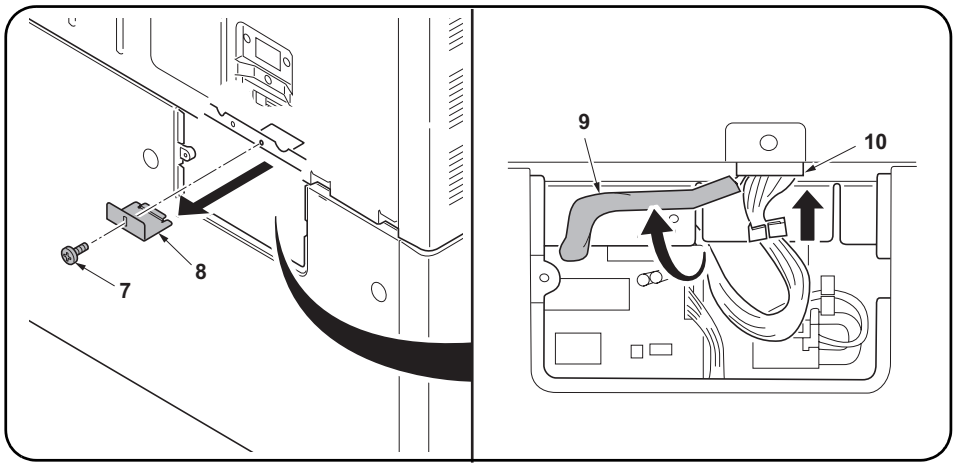
［取付手順］
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を取り外す。

2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (2) と MFP 本体 (4) のベースの穴 (3) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (4) を載せる。

3. ピン (B)2 本で MFP 本体 (4) をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。





4. Refit the lower paper cassette (1) removed in step 1 to the MFP.
5. Remove the screw (5) and then the cover (6) from the rear of the paper feeder.

6. Remove the screw (7) to remove the metal plate (8).
7. Pull out the wire (9) covered with the black tube in front of the frame.
8. Connect the 12-P connector (10) to the connector on the MFP.

---

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (1) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.
5. Retirer la vis (5) puis le couvercle (6) de l'arrière du bureau papier.

6. Retirer la vis (7) pour déposer la plaque métallique (8).
7. Tirer le câble (9) recouvert par le tube noir à l'avant du cadre.
8. Connecter le connecteur à douze broches (10) au connecteur du MFP.

---

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (1) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.
5. Quite el tornillo (5) y luego la tapa (6) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.

6. Quite el tornillo (7) para desmontar la placa de metal (8).
7. Saque el cable (9) cubierto con el tubo negro en el frente del bastidor.
8. Conecte el conector de 12 clavijas (10) en el conector del MFP.

---

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (1), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.
5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (5) und dann die Abdeckung (6) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.

6. Die Schraube (7) herausdrehen, um die Metallplatte (8) abzunehmen.
7. Ziehen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (9) auf der Vorderseite des Rahmens heraus.
8. Schließen Sie den 12-poligen Steckverbinder (10) an den Steckverbinder am MFP an.

---

4. Reinserire nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) rimosso al punto 1.
5. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi il pannello (6) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

6. Rimuovere la vite (7) per togliere la piastra di metallo (8).
7. Tirare fuori, davanti al telaio, il cavo (9) coperto con il tubo nero.
8. Collegare il connettore a 12 piedini (10) al connettore sull'MFP.

---

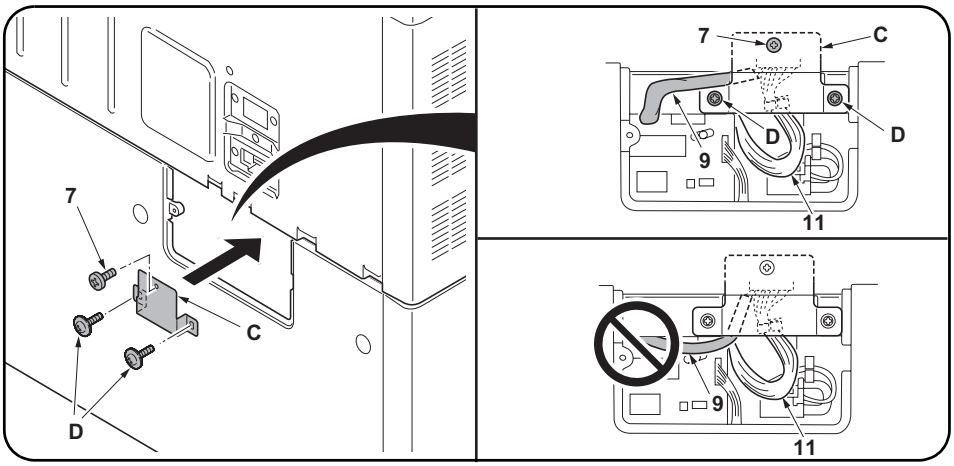
4. 在步骤 1 取下的 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1) 装回原来的位置。
5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (5)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (6)。

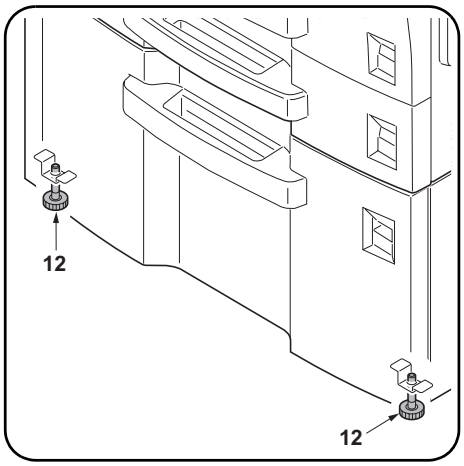
6. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (7)，拆下金属件 (8)。
7. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (9) 拉至机架前。
8. 将 12 脚接头 (10) 与 MFP 主机上的接口连接。

---

4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を元に戻す。
5. ビス (5)1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー(6) を取り外す。

6. ビス (7)1 本を外し、金具 (8) を取り外す。
7. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (9) を、フレームの手前に引き出す。
8. 12P コネクタ (10) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。





9. Separate the wire (9) covered with the black tube and the signal wires as shown on the above drawing, and install the retainer (C) using the screw (7) removed in step 6 and the two M4 × 06 TP screws (D).
10. Refit the cover (6) using the screw (5) removed in step 5.

11. Turn the adjusters on each corner (12) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.

---

9. Séparer le câble (9) recouvert par le tube noir et les câbles de signaux comme montré dans le dessin ci-dessus et installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux vis TP M4 × 06 (D).
10. Remettre le couvercle (6) en place à l'aide de la vis (5) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

11. Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (12) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le bureau papier.

---

9. Separe el cable (9) cubierto con el tubo negro y los cáblesde señal tal como aparece en el dibujo de arriba e instale el retén (C) usando el tornillo (7) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos TP M4 × 06 (D).
10. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (6) usando el tornillo (5) quitado en el paso 5.

11. Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (12) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el alimentador de papel.

---

9. Trennen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (9) und die Signalkabel, wie in der obigen Zeichnung gezeigt, und installieren Sie die Halterung (C), indem Sie die Schraube (7) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 × 06 TP-Schrauben (D).
10. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (6) wieder mit der in Schritt (5) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

11. Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (12) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.

---

9. Separare il cavo (9) coperto con il tubo nero e i cavi del segnale come indicato nel disegno qui sopra, e installare il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (7) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti TP M4 × 06(D).
10. Inserire il pannello posteriore (6) usando le viti (5) rimosse al punto 5.

11. Ruotare i regolatori (12) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavimento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazione della carta.

---

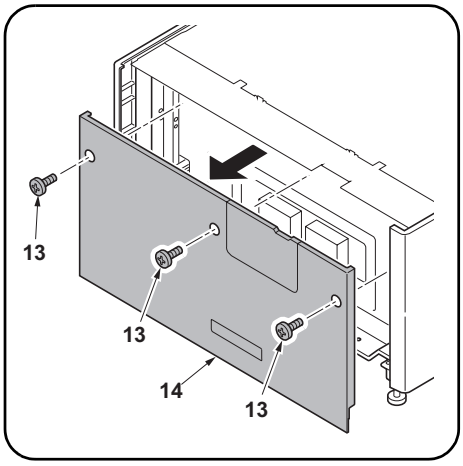
9. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (9) 如图示要求那样使电线分离，用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 和两个 TP 螺丝 M4×06 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。
10. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (5) 将盖板 (6) 装回原来的位置。

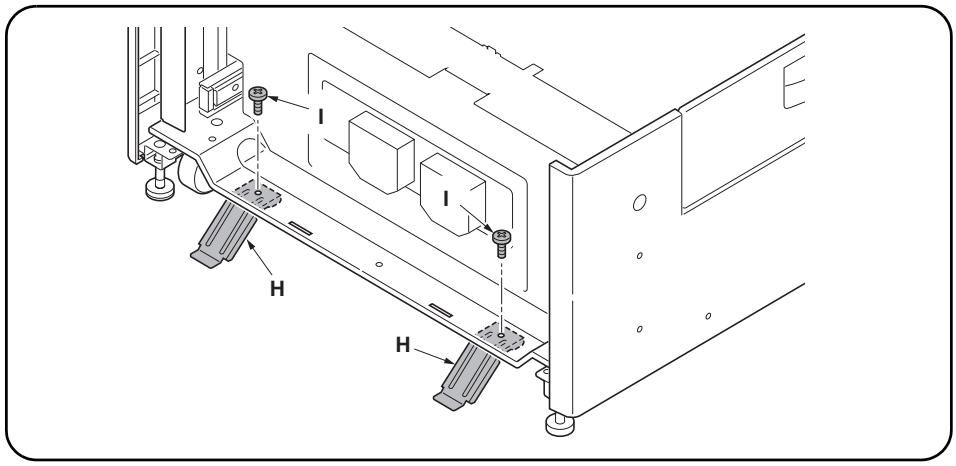
11. 转到四角上的调节器 (12) 直至与地面接触，然后再固定供纸工作台。

---

9. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (9) と電線 (11) を図のように分離させ、手順 6 で外したビス (7)1 本と、ビス TP M4×06(D)2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。
10. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (5)1 本でカバー (6) を元通りに取り付ける。

11. 四隅のアジャスタ (12) を床に接触する位置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダを固定する。





Steps 12 to 14 below are only for monochrome machines.

12. Remove 3 screws (13), and then remove the back cover (14).

13. Install each stopper (H) with 1 S Tite screw M4 × 8 (I).

14. Refit the back cover (14) using the 3 screws (13) removed in step 12.

Les étapes 12 à 14 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.

12. Déposer 3 vis (13) puis enlever le capot arrière (14).

13. Installer chacune des butes (H) l'aide de 1 vis S Tite M4 x 8 (I).

14. Remettre le capot arrière (14) en place à l'aide des 3 vis (13) retirée auparavant à l'étape 12.

Los pasos 12 a 14 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.

12. Quite 3 tornillos (13) y, después, desmonte la cubierta posterior (14).

13. Instale cada uno de los topes (H) con 1 tornillo S Tite M4 x 8 (I).

14. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta posterior (14) por medio de los 3 tornillos (13) desmontados en el paso 12.

Die folgenden Schritte 12 bis 14 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.

12. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (13) und nehmen Sie dann die hintere Abdeckung (14) ab.

13. Befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (H) mit 1 S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 8 (I).

14. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (14) wieder mit den in Schritt 12 entfernten 3 Schrauben (13) an.

I seguenti passi da 12 a 14 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.

12. Rimuovere le 3 viti (13), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (14).

13. Installare ciascun fermo (H) con 1 vite S Tite M4 × 8 (I).

14. Inserire il coperchio posteriore (14) usando le 3 viti (13) rimosse al punto 12.

［步骤 12 ～ 14 仅限于黑白机］

12. 取下 3 颗螺丝（13），然后拆下后盖板（14）。

13. 使用 1 颗紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 8（I）安装各限位器（H）。

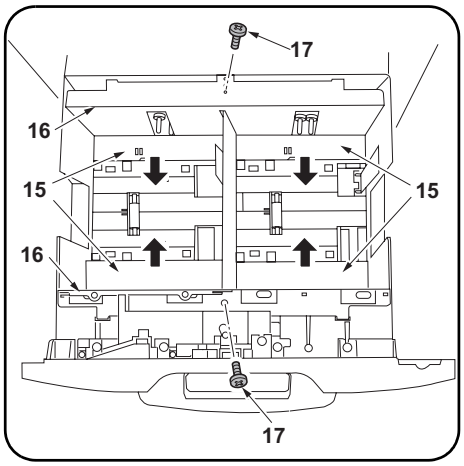
14. 使用在步骤 12 中取下的 3 颗螺丝（13）重新安装后盖板（14）。

［手順 12 ～ 14 はモノクロ機のみ］

12. ビス (13)3 本を外し、後カバー(14) を取り外す。

13. 転倒防止金具 (H) をビス M4×8 S タイト (I) 各 1 本で取り付ける。

14. 手順 12 で取り外したビス (13)3 本で後カバー(14) を元通り取り付ける。



Setting the paper size
At the time of shipping, the paper size is set to Letter for inch specifications and A4 for metric specifications. To change the size, follow the procedure below.

1. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder. Remove the lower paper cassette from the MFP.

2. Move the sliders(15) at the machine front and rear inward (two at each point).
3. Remove the screw (17) from each of the front and rear lateral size adjusters(16) .

Réglage de la taille du papier
Au moment de l'expédition, le format du papier est réglé à Lettre pour les spécifications en pouces, et à A4 pour les spécifications métriques. Pour changer le format, procéder comme suit.

1. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi. Retirer le tiroir inférieur du MFP.

2. Déplacer les curseurs(15) , à l'avant et à l'arrière de la machine, vers l'intérieur (deux à chaque endroit).
3. Retirer la vis (17) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (16).

Configuración del tamaño de papel
Al momento de la salida de fábrica, el tamaño de papel está ajustado a Carta para las especificaciones de pulgadas y A4 para las especificaciones métricas. Para cambiar el tamaño, siga el procedimiento de abajo.

1. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel. Quite el cajón de papel inferior del MFP.

2. Mueva los graduadores(15) del frente y parte trasera de la máquina hacia adentro (dos en cada punto).
3. Quite el tornillo(17) de cada regulador de tamaño lateral frontal y trasero(16).

Einstellen der Papiergröße
Das Papierformat wurde vor dem Versand auf Letter für Zollspezifikationen und A4 für metrische Spezifikationen eingestellt. Um das Format zu ändern, gehen Sie folgendermaßen vor.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiereinzug.
Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade vom MFP ab.

2. Bewegen Sie die Schieber(15) an der Vorder- und Rückseite des Gerätes nach innen (zwei an jedem Punkt).
3. Entfernen Sie die Schraube(17) von jedem der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller(16).

Impostazione della dimensione della carta
Al momento della spedizione, il formato della carta è impostato su Lettera per le specifiche in pollici e A4 per le specifiche metriche. Per cambiare formato, seguire la procedura qui in basso.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta.
Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta dall'MFP.

2. Spostare verso l'interno gli scivoli (15) nella parte anteriore e posteriore della macchina (due in ciascun punto).
3. Rimuovere la vite(17) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (16).

［尺寸设定］
出厂时，英寸尺寸的产品设定为 Letter，厘米尺寸的产品设定为 A4。需要变更尺寸时，按照以下顺序进行操作。

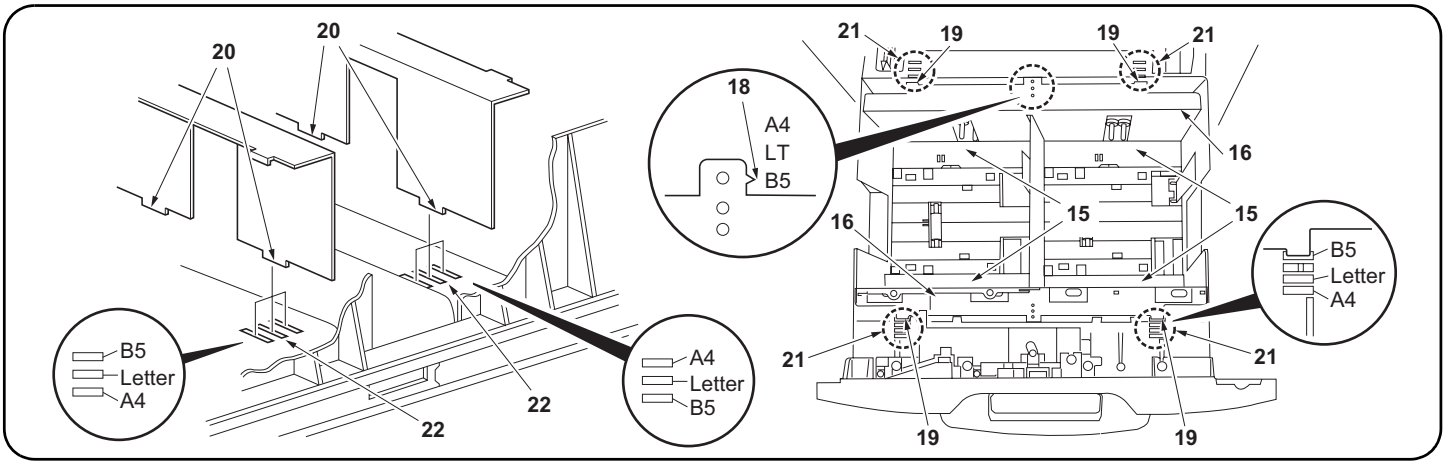
1. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒。
取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒。

2. 把前后各 2 张的滑板 (15) 往内侧移动。
3. 拆除横向尺寸板 (16) 上前后的各 1 个螺丝 (17)。

［サイズ設定］
出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出す。
MFP 本体の下段カセットを取り外す。

2. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (15) を内側にずらす。
3. 前後の横幅サイズ板 (16) より各ビス (17)1 本を外す。



4. Insert the upper tabs (19) and lower tabs (20) of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (16) into the upper slots (21) and lower slots (22) respectively such that the size indicators (18) point to the size of paper to be used. Secure the lateral size adjusters using the screw (17) for each.
Check the paper size at the position with the front and rear upper tabs (19) inserted into the upper slots (21).
Upper slots (21) positions on the front side: Front (A4), middle (Letter), rear (B5)
Upper slots (21) positions on the rear side: Front (B5), middle (Letter), rear (A4)
5. Move the front and rear sliders (15) (two at each point) outward until they make contact with the lateral size adjusters (16).

---

4. Insérer les pattes supérieures (19) et inférieures (20) des dispositifs de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (16), dans les fentes supérieures (21) et inférieures (22) respectivement, de façon à ce que les indicateurs de format (18) pointeent à la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral à l'aide de leur vis (17).
Vérifier le format du papier en position avec les pattes supérieures avant et arrière (19) insérées dans les fentes supérieures (21).
Positions des fentes supérieures (21) sur le côté avant: Avant (A4), milieu (Lettre), arrière (B5)
Positions des fentes supérieures (21) sur le côté arrière: Avant (B5), milieu (Lettre), arrière (A4)
5. Déplacer les curseurs avant et arrière (15), (deux à chaque endroit), vers l'extérieur jusqu'à ce qu'ils entrent en contact avec les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral (16).

---

4. Inserte las lengüetas superiores (19) y las lengüetas inferiores (20) de los reguladores de tamaño laterales frontales y traseros (16) en las ranuras superiores (21) y las ranuras inferiores (22) respectivamente de modo que los indicadores de tamaño (18) apunten al tamaño de papel a ser usado. Asegure los reguladores de tamaño laterales usando el tornillo (17) para cada uno.
Compruebe el tamaño de papel en la posición con las lengüetas frontales y traseras superiores (19) insertadas en las ranuras superiores (21).
Posiciones de las ranuras superiores (21) en el lado delantero: Adelante (A4), medio (carta), atrás (B5)
Posiciones de las ranuras superiores (21) en el lado trasero: Adelante (B5), medio (Carta), atrás (A4)
5. Mueva los graduadores frontales y traseros (15) (dos en cada punto) hacia fuera hasta que hagan contacto con los reguladores de tamaño laterales (16).

---

4. Führen Sie die oberen Laschen (19) und die unteren Laschen (20) der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (16) jeweils in die oberen Schlitze (21) und unteren Schlitze (22), so daß die Größenanzeiger (18) auf die zu benutzende Papiergröße zeigen. Sichern Sie die Quergrößen-Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (17).
Die Papiergröße an der Stelle überprüfen, wo vorderen und hinteren oberen Laschen (19) in den oberen Schlitzen (21) sitzen.
Positionen der oberen Schlitze (21) auf der Vorderseite: vorne (A4), Mitte (Letter), hinten (B5)
Positionen der oberen Schlitze (21) auf der Rückseite: Vorne (B5), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (A4)
5. Bewegen Sie die vorderen und hinteren Schieber (15) (zwei an jedem Punkt) nach außen, bis sie mit den Quergrößen-Einstellern (16) in Kontakt kommen.

---

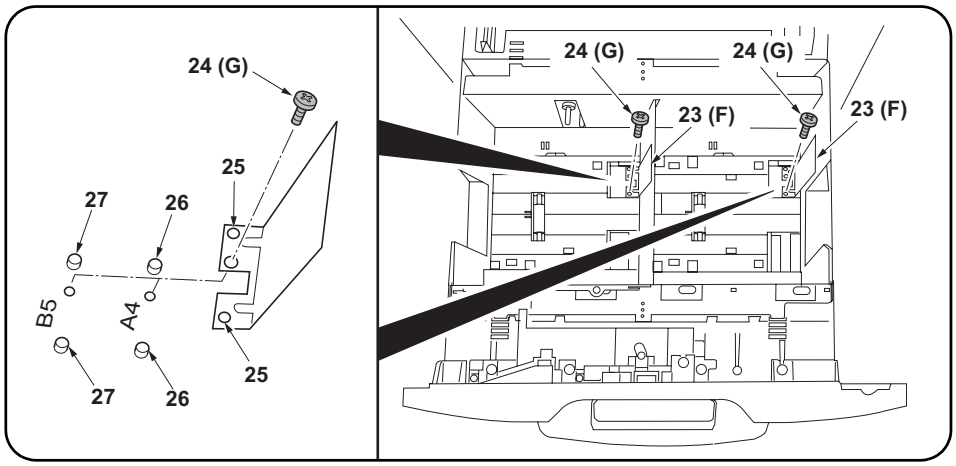
4. Inserire le linguette superiori (19) e le linguette inferiori (20) dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (16) nelle scanalature superiori (21) e nelle scanalature inferiori (22) rispettivamente, in modo tale che gli indicatori della misura (18) puntino alla dimensione della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori della misura laterale utilizzando la vite (17) per ciascuno di essi.
Controllare il formato della carta alla posizione delle linguette superiori anteriori e posteriori (19) inserite nelle scanalature superiori (21).
Posizioni delle scanalature superiori (21) sul lato anteriore: anteriore (A4), centrale (Letter), posteriore (B5)
Posizioni delle scanalature superiori (21) sul lato posteriore: Anteriore (B5), centrale (Lettera), posteriore (A4)
5. Spostare verso l'esterno gli scivoli anteriori e posteriori (15) (due in ciascun punto) fino a quando non vengano a contatto con i regolatori della misura laterale (16).

---

4. 将前后横向尺寸板 (16) 的上卡爪 (19)、下卡爪 (20) 分别插入上槽 (21) 和下槽 (22)，再用 1 个螺丝 (17) 固定，让尺寸指示爪 (18) 表示所使用的复印纸尺寸。
检查前后上卡爪 (19) 插入上槽 (21) 位置时的纸张尺寸。
前面的上槽 (21) 的位置：前面 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (B5)
后面的上槽 (21) 的位置：前面 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (A4)
5. 向外移动前后各 2 张滑板 (15)，直到碰到横向尺寸板 (16) 为止。

---

4. サイズ指示爪 (18) が使用する用紙サイズを示すように、前後の横幅サイズ板 (16) の上爪 (19)、下爪 (20) を上溝 (21)、下溝 (22) に差し込み、ビス (17) 1 本で固定する。
前後の上爪 (19) を上溝 (21) の差し込む位置で用紙サイズを確認する。
前側の上溝 (21) の位置:手前(A4)、中央(Letter)、奥(B5)
後側の上溝 (21) の位置:手前(B5)、中央(Letter)、奥(A4)
5. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (15) を、横幅サイズ板 (16) に当たるまで外側にずらす。



6. Remove the screw (24) and remove the longitudinal size adjusters (23). (metric specifications only)
7. Depending on the paper size, align either the A4 pins (26) or the B5 pins (27) with the pin holes (25) in the longitudinal size adjusters (23), fit the adjusters and secure each of them with a screw (24).
For inch specifications, align either the A4 pins (26) or the B5 pins (27) with the pin holes (25) in the longitudinal size adjusters (F), fit the adjusters and secure each of them with a round pan-head M3 x 8 tapping screw (G).
8. Return the paper feeder cassette and the lower cassette in the MFP to their original positions.
9. Run maintenance item U208 and set the paper size for the paper feeder (B5/A4/Letter).

---

6. Déposer la vis (24) et déposer les dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal (23). (spécifications métriques seulement)
7. Selon le format du papier, aligner les broches A4 (26) ou B5 (27) avec les trous de broche (25) dans les dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal (23), ajuster les dispositifs de réglage et les fixer chacun avec une vis (24).
Pour les spécifications en pouces, aligner les broches A4 (26) ou B5 (27) avec les trous de broche (25) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal (F), ajuster les dispositifs de réglage et les fixer chacun à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse à tête cruciforme ronde M3 × 8 (G).
8. Ramener la cassette du bureau papier et la cassette inférieure dans leur position d'origine dans le MFP.
9. Exécuter l'élément d'entretien U208 et régler la taille du papier pour le bureau papier (B5/A4/Letter).

---

6. Quite el tornillo (24) y desmonte los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal (23). (sólo especificaciones métricas)
7. Dependiendo del tamaño del papel, alinee las clavijas A4 (26) o las clavijas B5 (27) con los orificios para las clavijas (25) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal (23), inserte los reguladores y asegúrelos con un tornillo (24).
En el caso de especificaciones de pulgadas, alinee las clavijas A4 (26) o las clavijas B5 (27) con los orificios para las clavijas (25) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal (F), encaje los reguladores y asegúrelos con un tornillo de roscado de cabeza redonda plana M3 x 8 (G).
8. Vuelva a colocar el cajón del alimentador de papel y el cajón inferior del MFP en sus posiciones originales.
9. Haga el ítem de mantenimiento U208 y configure el tamaño de papel para el alimentador de papel (B5/A4/Letter).

---

6. Die Schraube (24) entfernen und die Längsgrößen-Einsteller (23) abnehmen. (nur metrische Spezifikationen)
7. Je nach Papiergröße entweder die A4-Stifte (26) oder die B5-Stifte (27) auf die Stiftlöcher (25) in den Längsgrößen-Einstellern (23) ausrichten, die Einsteller einsetzen und jeden mit einer Schraube (24) sichern.
Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (25) im linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (F) für Zollspezifikationen auf die A4-Stifte (26) oder B5-Stifte (27) aus, abhängig von der zu verwendenden Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Kreuzschlitz- Rundkopf-Schneidschraube M3 × 8 (G).
8. Die Papierlade des Papiereinzug und die untere Papierlade im MFP wieder wie ursprünglich einsetzen.
9. Führen Sie Wartungspunkt U208 aus und stellen Sie die Papiergröße für den Papiereinzug (B5/A4/Letter) ein.

---

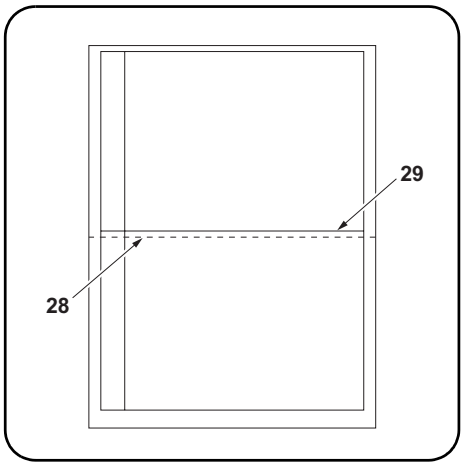
6. Rimuovere la vite (24) e quindi rimuovere i regolatori della misura longitudinale (23). (solo specifiche metriche)
7. Dipendentemente dal formato della carta, allineare i perni A4 (26) o i perni B5 (27) con i fori dei perni (25) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale (23), adattare i regolatori e fissare ciascuno di loro con una vite (24).
Per le specificazioni in pollici, allineare i perni A4 (26) o i perni per B5 (27) con i fori dei perni (25) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale (F), adattare i regolatori e fissare ciascuno di loro con una vite filettante a testa piana M3 x 8 (G).
8. Riportare la cassetta dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e la cassetta inferiore dell'MFP alle loro posizioni originali.
9. Eseguire l'opzione di manutenzione U208 ed impostare la dimensione della carta della relativa unità di alimentazione (B5/A4/Letter).

---

6. 拆下螺丝 (24)，然后拆下纵向尺寸板 (23)。(仅适用于厘米尺寸的产品)
7. 根据纸张尺寸，将 A4 插销 (26) 和 B5 插销 (27) 与纵向尺寸板 (23) 上的插销孔 (25) 对齐，装上纵向尺寸板，并用螺丝 (24) 将每个尺寸板都固定。
对于英制规格的机器，将 A4 插销 (26) 和 B5 插销 (27) 与纵向尺寸板 (F) 上的插销孔 (25) 对齐，装上纵向尺寸板，并用圆盘头 M3×8 自攻螺丝 (G) 将每个尺寸板都固定。
8. 将供纸工作台供纸盒和 MFP 的下部供纸盒装回至原来的位置。
9. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
使用维修模式 U208 设定供纸工作台所使用的复印纸尺寸 (B5/A4/Letter)。

---

6. 各ビス (24)1 本を外し、縦幅サイズ板 (23) を取り外す。(センチ仕様のみ)
7. 用紙サイズに応じて、縦幅サイズ板 (23) のピン穴 (25) を A4 ピン (26) または B5 ピン (27) に合わせて取り付け、ビス (24)1 本で固定する。
インチ仕様では、用紙サイズに応じて、縦幅サイズ板 (F) のピン穴 (25) を A4 ピン (26) または B5 ピン (27) に合わせて取り付け、ビス + ナベ M3×8 タッピング (G)1 本で固定する。
8. ペーパーフィーダのカセットおよび MFP 本体の下段カセットを元に戻す。
9. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
メンテナンスモード U208 でペーパーフィーダにセットする用紙のサイズ (B5 ／ A4 ／ Letter) を設定する。



Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on.

2. Select maintenance mode U402 and print the test pattern.

3. If the center of the paper (28) and that of the test pattern output (29) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

---

Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.

2. Sélectionner le mode maintenance U402 et imprimer la mire d'essai.

3. Si le centre du papier (28) et celui de la sortie de mire (29) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

---

Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.

2. Seleccione el modo de mantenimiento U402 e imprima el patrón de prueba.

3. Si el centro del papel (28) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (29) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

---

Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.

2. Den Wartungsmodus U402 wählen und das Testmuster ausdrucken.

3. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (28) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (29) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

---

Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

2. Selezionare la modalità manutenzione U402 e stampare il modello di prova.

3. Se il centro della carta (28) e quello del modello di prova (29) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

---

[中心线的确认]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。

2. 选择维修模式 U402，打印测试图案。

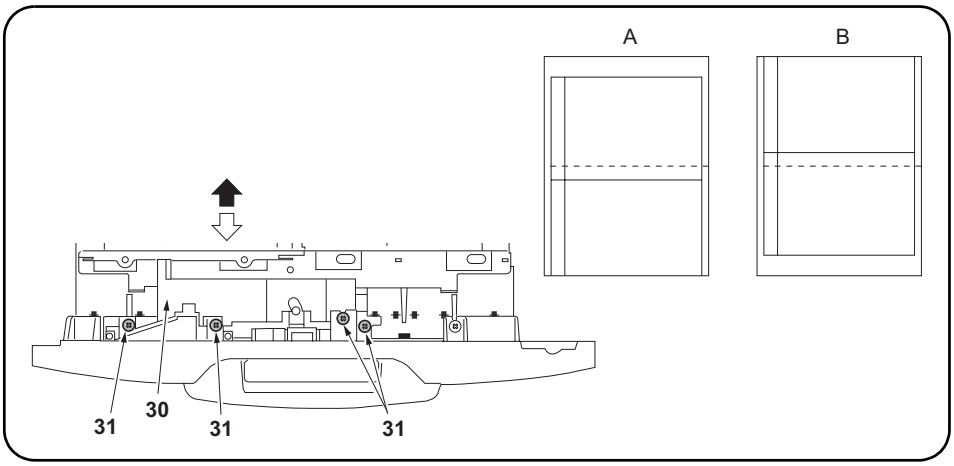
3. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (28) 与测试图案的中心位置 (29) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。
〈标准值〉左右偏移： 1.5㎜ 以下

[センターライン確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。

2. メンテナンスモード U402 を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

3. 用紙のセンター(28) とテストパターンのセンター(29) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞左右ずれ:1.5㎜ 以下



Adjusting the center line

4. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (31) securing the adjuster (30).

A and B: test pattern output examples

5. If the test pattern output looks like A, move the adjuster (30) in the direction of the black arrow (⬅) and retighten the three screws (31).
If the test pattern output looks like B, move the adjuster (30) in the direction of the white arrow (⇨) and retighten the three screws (31).

6. Output a test pattern again.

7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

---

Réglage de la ligne médiane

4. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi et desserrer les trois vis (31) fixant le dispositif de réglage (30).

A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

5. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (30) dans la direction de la flèche noire (⬅) et resserrer les trois vis (31).
Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (30) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (⇨) et resserrer les trois vis (31).

6. Reproduire une nouvelle mire.

7. Répéter les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

---

Ajuste de la línea central

4. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (31) que aseguran el regulador (30).

A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

5. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, mueva el regulador (30) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (⬅) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (31).
Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecido a B, mueva el regulador (30) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (⇨) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (31).

6. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

---

Einstellen der Mittenlinie

4. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade des Papiereinzugs heraus und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (31), die den Anpasser (30) halten.

A und B: Beispiele von Testmusterausgaben

5. Wenn die Testmusterausgabe wie A aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (30) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (⬅) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (31) wieder fest.
Wenn die Testmusterausgabe wie B aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (30) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (⇨) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (31) wieder fest.

6. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

---

Regolazione della linea centrale

4. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentazione della carta ed allentare le tre viti (31) assicurando il regolatore (30).

A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

5. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, spostare il regolatore (30) nella direzione della freccia nera (⬅) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (31).
Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, spostare il regolatore (30) nella direzione della freccia bianca (⇨) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (31).

6. Stampare nuovamente un modello di prova.

7. Ripetere i passi da 4 a 6 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

---

中心线的调整

4. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒，再松开调整板 (30) 上的 3 个螺丝 (31)。

A, B 测试图案

5. 测试图案为 A 时，按箭头 (⬅) 方向移动调整板 (30)， 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (31)。
测试图案为 B 时，按箭头 (⇨) 方向移动调整板 (30)， 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (31)。

6. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

7. 反复操作步骤 4 至 6，直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。
〈标准值〉左右偏移： 1.5㎜ 以下

センターライン調整

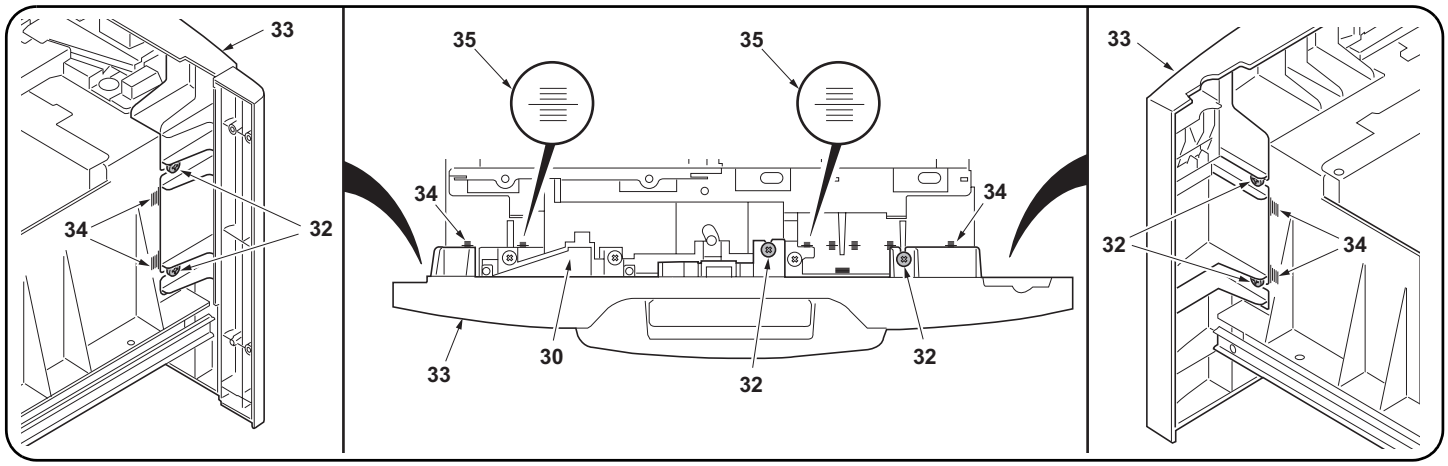
4. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出し、調整板 (30) のビス (31)3 本を緩める。

A、B:テストパターン

5. A 画像の場合、矢印(⬅)の向きに調整板 (30) を動かし、ビス (31)3 本を締め付ける。
B 画像の場合、矢印(⇨)の向きに調整板 (30) を動かし、ビス (31)3 本を締め付ける。

6. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

7. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞左右ずれ:1.5㎜ 以下



Adjusting the front cover position
Note:
If the position of the adjuster is changed, adjust the front cover position.
If the front cover position is not proper, the cassette may not be fixed with the magnet or the gap between the front cover and the paper feeder body may be opened.

8. Loosen the six screws (32).
9. Move the position of the front cover (33) by the amount of divisions of the level that corresponds to the movement of the adjuster (30) (amount of movement of the level (35)) using the level (34).
10. Retighten the six screws (32).

Réglage de la position du couvercle avant
Remarque:
Si la position du dispositif de réglage est changée, régler la position du couvercle avant.
Si la position du couvercle avant est incorrecte, le tiroir risquera de ne pas être fixé par l'aimant, ou un écart risquera de s'ouvrir entre le couvercle avant et le corps du bureau papier.

8. Desserrer les six vis (32).
9. Déplacer la position du couvercle avant (33) de la quantité de divisions du niveau correspondant au mouvement du dispositif de réglage (30) (quantité de mouvement du niveau (35)) en utilisant le niveau (34).
10. Resserrer les six vis (32).

Ajuste de la posición de la tapa frontal
Nota:
Si cambia la posición del regulador, ajuste la posición de la tapa frontal.
Si la posición de la tapa frontal no es la adecuada, el casete puede no fijarse con la imagen o la separación entre la tapa frontal y el cuerpo del alimentador de papel puede abrirse.

8. Afloje los seis tornillos (32).
9. Mueva la posición de la tapa frontal (33) en la cantidad de divisiones del nivel que corresponde al movimiento del regulador (30) (cantidad de movimiento del nivel (35)) utilizando el nivel (34).
10. Vuelva a apretar los seis tornillos (32).

Einstellen der Position der Frontabdeckung
Hinweis:
Falls die Position des Einstellers geändert wird, muss die Position der Frontabdeckung geändert werden.
Falls die Position der Frontabdeckung nicht stimmt, wird die Papierlade eventuell nicht mit dem Magneten gesichert, oder der Spalt zwischen der Frontabdeckung und dem Papiereinzug kann sich öffnen.

8. Die sechs Schrauben (32) lösen.
9. Die Position der Frontabdeckung (33) mithilfe der Ebene (34) um den Teilungsbetrag der Ebene verschieben, welcher der Bewegung des Anpassers (30) entspricht (Bewegungsbetrag der Ebene (35)).
10. Die sechs Schrauben (32) wieder anziehen.

Regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore
Nota
Se la posizione del regolatore viene cambiata, regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore.
Se la posizione del pannello anteriore non è corretta, non sarà possibile fissare il cassetto con il magnete o potrebbe aprirsi uno spazio tra il pannello anteriore e il corpo dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

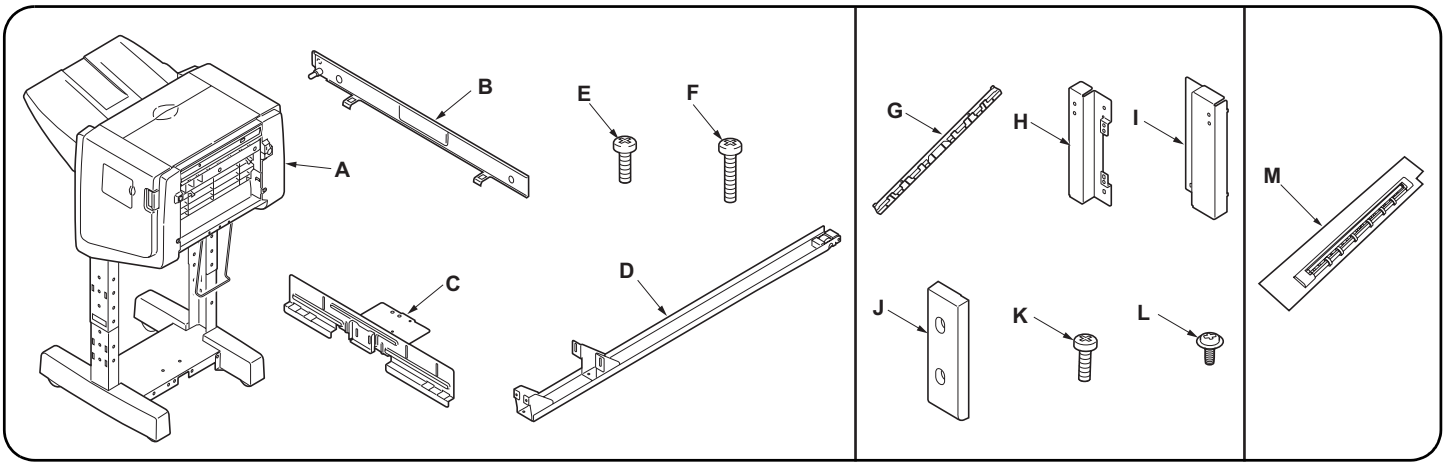
8. Allentare le sei viti (32).
9. Muovere la posizione del pannello anteriore (33) di tante posizioni del livello quanto è necessario per farlo corrispondere al movimento del regolatore (30) (movimento del livello (35)) utilizzando il livello (34).
10. Ristringere le sei viti (32).

前盖板位置的调整
注意
如果调整板的位置变更时，必须进行前盖板位置的调整。
如果前盖板的位置调整不一致时，供纸盒就不能在磁铁处停住，并会在前盖板和供纸工作台主机之间出现间隙。
8. 松开 6 个螺丝 (32)。
9. 用刻度 (34) 移动前面盖板 (33) 的位置。但是，只限调整板 (30) 移动的刻度量 (刻度 (35) 的移动值)。
10. 重新紧固 6 个螺丝 (32)。

前カバーの位置調整
注意
調整板の位置を変更した場合は、前カバーの位置調整をおこなう。
前カバーの位置が正しくないと、カセットがマグネットで止まらなくなったり、前カバーとペーパーフィーダ本体との間に隙間が開いたりする。
8. ビス (32)6 本を緩める。
9. 調整板 (30) を移動させた目盛分(目盛り (35) の移動値)だけ、前カバー(33) の位置を、目盛り (34) を使って移動させる。
10. ビス (32)6 本を締め付ける。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 587 VA max.
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/
P/N: 305JA71610



English

Supplied parts

A Document finisher 1
B Latch catch 1
C Rail retainer 1
D Guide rail 1
E Binding screw M4 × 6 4
F Binding screw M4 × 14 2

G Guide plate 1
H Fixing plate F 1
I Fixing plate R 1
J Cover AT 1
K S Tite screw M4 × 10 9
L Shoulder screw 1
M Curl eliminator 1

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) and (L) supplied with the job separator.

For monochrome machines, part (M) is needed separately.
Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document 1
B Pontet du loquet 1
C Elément de rétention du rail 1
D Glissière 1
E Vis de raccordement M4 × 6 4
F Vis de raccordement M4 × 14 2

G Plaque guide 1
H Plaque de fixation avant 1
I Plaque de fixation arrière 1
J Couvercle AT 1
K Vis S Tite M4 × 10 9
L Vis d'épaule 1
M Elément d'élimination des boucles 1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) et (L) avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises.

Sur les machines monochromes, il faut utiliser la pièce (M) séparément.
Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos 1
B Cerrojo 1
C Retén del carril 1
D Carril guía 1
E Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 6 4
F Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 14 2

G Placa guía 1
H Placa de fijación F 1
I Placa de fijación R 1
J Cubierta AT 1
K Tornillo S Tite M4 × 10 9
L Tornillo de hombro 1
M Eliminador de enrollado 1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (G), (H), (I), (J), (K), y (L) suministradas con el separador de tareas.

Para las máquinas monocromáticas, es necesario por separado la pieza (M).
Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument Finishers 1
B Riegelschloßbausatz 1
C Schienenhalterungseinheit 1
D Führungsschieneneinheit 1
E Verbundschraube M4 × 6 4
F Verbundschraube M4 × 14 2

G Führungsplatte 1
H Fixierplatte F 1
I Fixierplatte R 1
J Abdeckung AT 1
K S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 9
L Bundschraube 1
M Glättungseinrichtung 1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) und (L), die mit dem Jobtrenner gelieferten erforderlich.

Für Monochrommaschinen wird Teil (M) getrennt benötigt.
Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Finitrice di documenti 1
B Dispositivo di arresto 1
C Fermo della guida 1
D Guida della rotaia 1
E Vite di serraggio M4 × 6 4
F Vite di serraggio M4 × 14 2

G Piastra della guida 1
H Piastra di fissaggio F 1
I Piastra di fissaggio R 1
J Coperchio AT 1
K Vite S Tite M4 × 10 9
L Vite a colletto 1
M Eliminatore di pieghe 1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (G), (H), (I), (J), (K) e (L) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori.

Per le macchine in bianco e nero, separatamente è necessaria la parte (M).
Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A 装订器 1
B 挂钩承支架 1
C 轨道座 1
D 导向轨道 1
E M4 × 6 固结螺钉 4
F M4 × 14 固结螺钉 2

G 导向板 1
H 固定板 F 1
I 固定板 R 1
J 盖板 AT 1
K 紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S 9
L 阶梯螺钉 1
M 防卷曲部件 1

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时，请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (G)、(H)、(I)、(J)、(K) 和 (L)。

黑白机时，不需要安装 (M) 部件。
如果同装品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

日本語

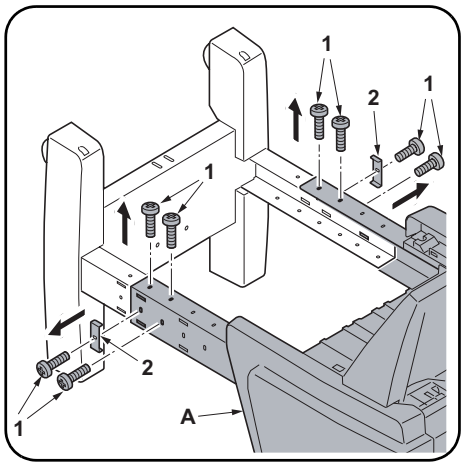
同梱品

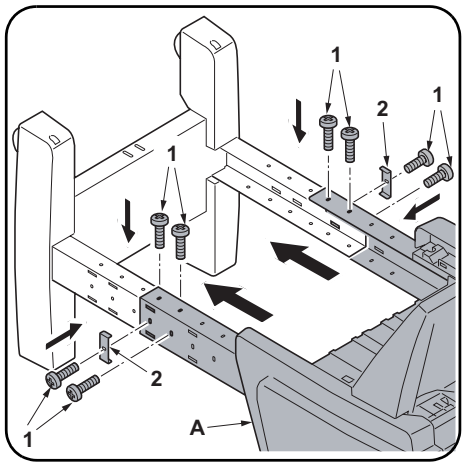
A ドキュメントフィニッシャ 1
B ラッチ受け板 1
C レール取付板 1
D ガイドレール 1
E ビス M4 × 6 バインド 4
F ビス M4 × 14 バインド 2

G ガイド板 1
H 固定板 F 1
I 固定板 R 1
J カバー AT 1
K ビス M4 × 10 S タイト 9
L 段付きビス 1
M デカーラー 1

フルカラーMFP 機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (G)、(H)、(I)、(J)、(K)、(L) が必要となる。

モノクロ機では、(M) が別途必要です。
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。





Procedure
Before installing the document finisher, first attach the job separator.
Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the document finisher.

[Steps 1 to 5 below are only for full-color machines.]
1. Place the document finisher (A) sideways, remove the eight screws (1), and remove the two pieces of fittings (2).

2. To align the document finisher with the paper outlet of the MFP, slide the legs of the document finisher (A) to the uppermost positions indicated in the illustration, attach the two pieces of fittings (2) that have been removed in step 1, and secure them using the eight screws (1).

Procédure
Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, fixer d'abord le séparateur de travaux.
Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du retoucheur de document.

[Les étapes 1 à 5 ci-dessous concernent les machines entièrement en couleurs seulement.]
1. Placer le retoucheur de document (A) sur le côté, retirer les huit vis (1), et retirer les deux pièces de fixation (2).

2. Pour aligner le retoucheur de document sur la sortie de papier du MFP, faire glisser les pieds du retoucheur de document (A) jusqu'aux positions les plus hautes indiquées sur l'illustration, fixer les deux pièces de fixation (2) qui avaient été retirées auparavant à l'étape 1, et les fixer à l'aide des huit vis (1).

Procedimiento
Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, coloque primero el separador de trabajos.
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared, antes de empezar a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

[Los pasos 1 a 5 a continuación son solo para máquinas a todo color.]
1. Apoye el finalizador de documentos (A) sobre un lado, saque los ocho tornillos (1) y saque dos piezas de herrajes (2).

2. Para alinear el finalizador de documentos con la salida de papel del MFP, deslice las patas del finalizador de documentos (A) a las posiciones superiores indicadas en la figura, instale las dos piezas de herrajes (2) desmontadas en el paso 1 y asegúrelos con los ocho tornillos (1).

Verfahren
Vor dem Installieren des Dokument Finishers ist zuerst der Jobtrenner anzubringen.
Schalten Sie den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den MFP-Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Dokument Finishers beginnen.

[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 5 gelten nur für Vollfarbenmaschinen.]
1. Den Dokument Finisher (A) auf die Seite legen, die acht Schrauben (1) entfernen, und die zwei Befestigungsteile (2) abnehmen.

2. Um den Dokument Finisher auf den Papierauslass des MFP auszurichten, die Beine des Dokument Finishers (A) auf die in der Abbildung gezeigte oberste Position schieben, dann die zwei in Schritt 1 entfernten Befestigungsteile (2) anbringen und mit den acht Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Procedura
Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, installare prima il separatore dei lavori.
Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione della finitrice di documenti, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e disinserire la spina dell'MFP dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

[I seguenti passi da 1 a 5 sono solo per le macchine a colori.]
1. Collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) lateralmente, rimuovere le otto viti (1) e rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. Per allineare la finitrice di documenti con l'uscita della carta dell'MFP, fare scivolare i piedini della finitrice di documenti (A) sulle posizioni più in alto indicate nel disegno, montare i due pezzi di raccordo (2) che sono stati rimossi nel passo 1 e fissarli utilizzando le otto viti (1).

安装步骤
安装装订器前，首先安装作业分离器。
当安装装订器时，必须事先将 MFP 主机的总电源关掉并将 MFP 主机的电源插头从插座上拔掉。

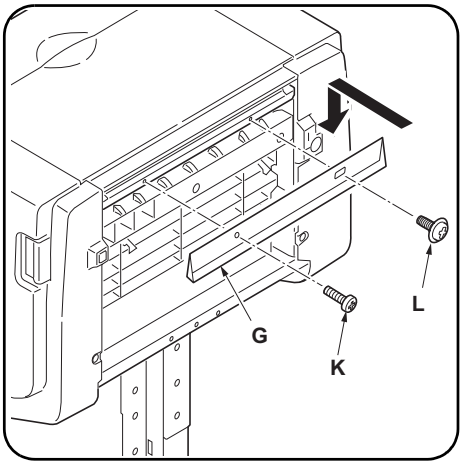
[步骤 1 ~ 5 仅限于全彩色机]
1. 将装订器 (A) 横向放置，卸下 8 个螺钉 (1)，然后，取下 2 个固定件 (2)。

2. 为了对准主机排纸口，先将装订器 (A) 的机脚滑动到最上面的位置 (如图所示的位置)，然后，安装在步骤 1 取下的 2 个固定件 (2)，并用 8 个螺钉 (1) 加以固定。

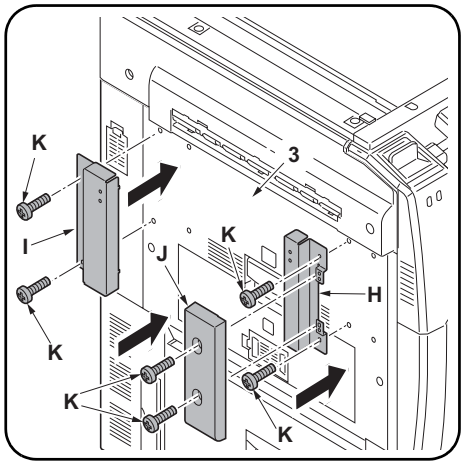
取付手順
ドキュメントフィニッシャを取り付ける際には、先にジョブセパレータを装着すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。

［手順 1 ～ 5 はフルカラー機のみ］
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を横向きにおき、ビス (1)8 本を外し、固定金具 (2)2 個を取り外す。

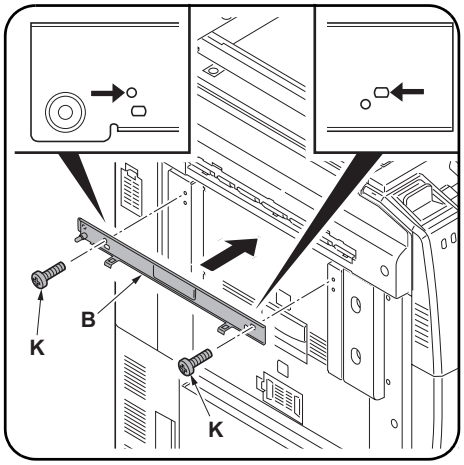
2. 本体用紙排出口に合わせる為、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の脚を最上の位置 (図の位置) までスライドさせ、手順 1 で取り外した固定金具 (2)2 個を取り付け、ビス (1)8 本で固定する。



3. Secure the guide plate (G) using the shoulder screw (L) and an S Tite screw M4 × 10 (K).



4. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the left cover (3) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (K) for each and fit the cover AT (J) to the fixing plate F (H) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (K).



5. Fit the latch catch (B) to the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (K).
Attach with the upper screw holes underneath fixing plates F (H) and R (I).
When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 7 on page 5

---

3. Fixez la plaque guide (G) à l'aide de la vis d'épaule (L) et d'une vis S Tite M4 × 10 (K).

4. Fixer la plaque de fixation avant (H) et la plaque de fixation arrière (I) sur le couvercle de gauche (3) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (K) chaque et fixer le couvercle AT (J) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (K).

5. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) et sur la plaque de fixation arrière (I) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (K).
Fixer à partir des trous de vis supérieurs se trouvant sous les plaques de fixation avant (H) et arrière (I).
Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 7 de la page 5

---

3. Asegure la placa guía (G) utilizando el tornillo de hombro (L) y un tornillo S Tite M4 × 10 (K).

4. Encaje la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) en la cubierta izquierda (3) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (K) para cada una y encaje la cubierta AT (J) en la placa de fijación F (H) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (K).

5. Encaje el cerrojo (B) en la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) utilizando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (K).
Fije con los orificios para tornillos superiores debajo de las placas de fijación F (H) y R (I).
Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 7 de la página 5

---

3. Die Führungsplatte (G) mit der Bundschraube (L) und einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 (K) befestigen.

4. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (K) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen, und die Abdeckung AT (J) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (K) an der Fixierplatte F (H) anbringen.

5. Die Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (K) an der Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) anbringen.
Mit den oberen Schraublöchern unter den Fixierplatten F (H) und R (I) anbringen.
Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbenkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 7 auf Seite 5 weiter

---

3. Fissare la piastra della guida (G) utilizzando la vite a colletto (L) e la vite S Tite M4 × 10 (K).

4. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) sul coperchio sinistro (3) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (K) per ciascuna di esse e montare il coperchio AT (J) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (K).

5. Montare il dispositivo di arresto (B) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) e sulla piastra di fissaggio R (I) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (K).
Collegare con i fori per le viti superiori, sotto le piastre di fissaggio F (H) e R (I).
IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 7 a pagina 5

---

3. 在用阶梯螺钉 (L) 和紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S (K) 各 1 个固定导板 (G)。

4. 将固定板 F (H) 和固定板 R (I) 分别用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 × 10S (K) 固定在左盖板 (3) 上，将盖板 AT (J) 用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 × 10S (K) 固定在固定板 F (H) 上。

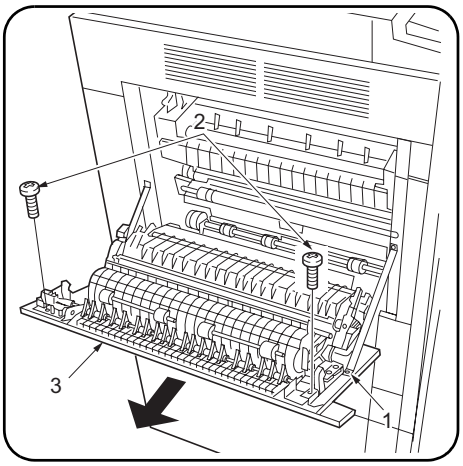
5. 挂钩承支架 (B) 用 2 个紧固螺丝 M4 × 10S (K) 固定在固定板 F (H) 和固定板 R (I) 上。
把固定板 F（H）和 R（I）固定在上侧的螺丝孔处。
使用全彩色机时: 进行第 5 页上的第 7 步

---

3. ガイド板 (G) を段付きビス (L) とビス M4 × 10S タイト (K) 各 1 本で固定する。

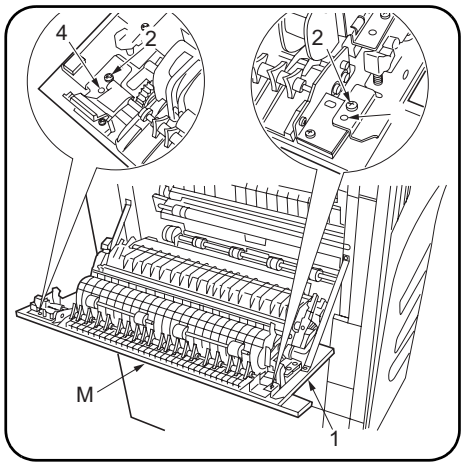
4. 固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) を左カバー(3) にビス M4 × 10S タイト (K) 各 2 本で固定し、カバーAT(J) をビス M4 × 10S タイト (K)2 本で固定板 F(H) に固定する。

5. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 × 10S タイト (K)2 本で固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) に固定する。
固定板 F(H) と固定板 R(I) の上側のビス穴で固定すること。
フルカラー機の場合:5 ページ手順 7 へ進む。

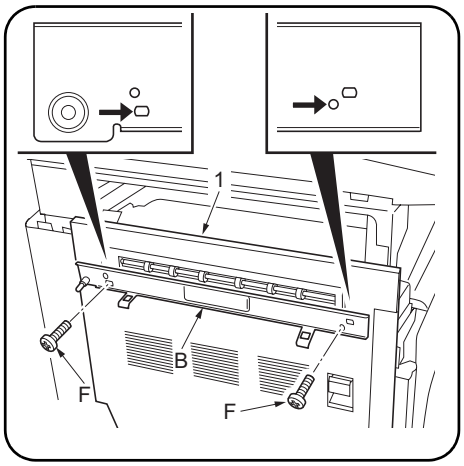


[Steps 1 to 6 below are only for monochrome machines.]

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove the two screws (2) securing the feedshift guide assembly (3) and then the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (M) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (M).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (M) using the two screws (2) removed in step 2.



5. Close the eject cover (1).
6. Fit the latch catch (B) to the eject cover (1) using two M4 × 10 binding screws (F).

[Les étapes 1 à 6 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.]

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP ou imprimante.
2. Retirer les deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) puis retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (M) au couvercle d'éjection (1) de telle façon que les projections (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de cet élément (M).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (M) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

5. Fermer le couvercle d'éjection (1).
6. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) au couvercle d'éjection (1) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 10 (F).

[Los pasos 1 a 6 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.]

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) del MFP o impresora.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el ensamble guía de la unidad de cambio de alimentación de papel (3) y luego el ensamble.

3. Coloque el eliminador de enrollamiento (M) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de modo que las proyecciones (4) de la cubierta encajen en los dos extremos del eliminador de enrollamiento (M).
4. Asegure el eliminador de enrollamiento (M) usando los dos tornillos (2) que quitó en el paso 2.

5. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (1).
6. Coloque el cerrojo (B) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 10 (F).

[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 6 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.]

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder Drucker.
2. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2), die den Zuführungswechsel-Bausatz (3) befestigen und dann den Bausatz.

3. Bringen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (M) so an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an, daß die Vorsprünge (4) auf der Abdeckung in die zwei Enden des Wellenverhinderers (M) passen.
4. Befestigen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (M) mittels der in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2).

5. Schliessen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1).
6. Bringen Sie den Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mittels der zwei M4 × 10 Verbundschrauben (F) an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an.

[I seguenti passi da 1 a 6 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.]

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) dell'MFP o stampatore.
2. Rimuovere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e quindi il gruppo.

3. Inserire l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (M) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le proiezioni (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (M).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (M) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

5. Chiudere la copertura dell'uscita carta (1).
6. Inserire il dispositivo di arresto (B) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) utilizzando due viti di serraggio M4 × 10 (F).

[步骤 **1 ~ 6** 仅限于黑白机 **]**

1. 将 MFP 或打印机的出纸盖板 (1) 打开。
2. 将两个小螺钉 (2) 摘下，并将分支导向组件 (3) 卸下。

3. 将带凸肩压板的凸部 (4) 嵌入防卷曲部件 (M) 两端后，将防卷曲部件 (M) 安装于出纸盖板 (1) 上。
4. 用依步骤 2 摘下的两个小螺钉 (2) 来固定防卷曲部件 (M)。

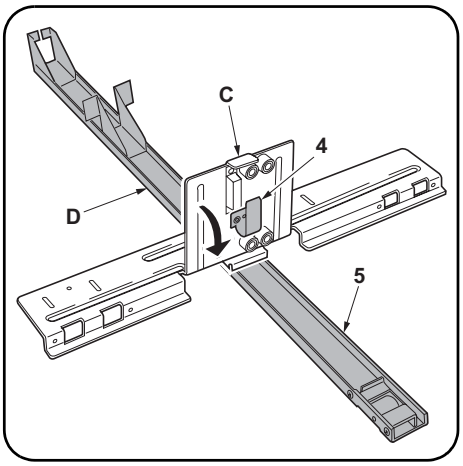
5. 将出纸盖板 (1) 关上。
6. 用两个 M4 × 10 固结螺钉 (F) 将挂钩承支架 (B) 安装于出纸盖板 (1) 上。

［手順 1 ～ 6 はモノクロ機のみ］

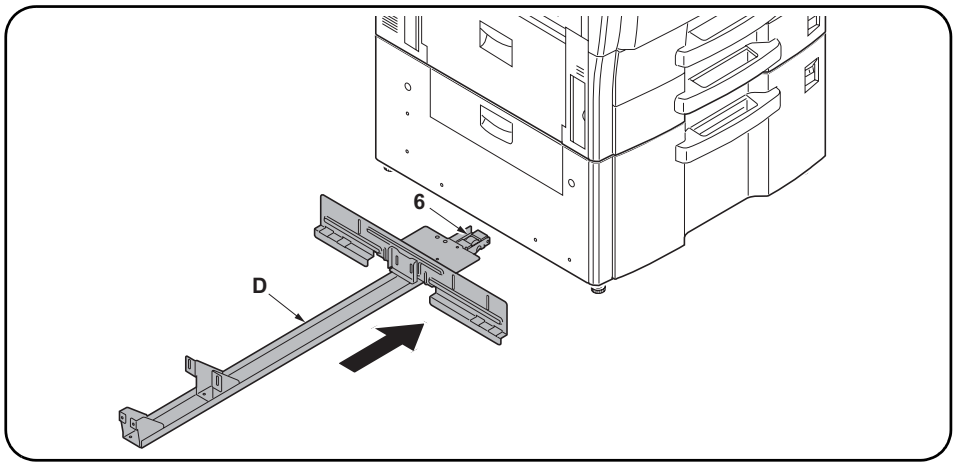
1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2)2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (3) を取り外す。

3. デカーラー(M) の両端に半押し (4) がはまる位置で、デカーラー(M) を排出カバー(1) に取り付ける。
4. 手順 2 で外したビス (2)2 本でデカーラー (M) を固定する。

5. 排出カバー(1) を閉じる。
6. ラッチ受け板 (B) をビス M4 × 10 バインド (F)2 本で排出カバー(1) に取り付ける。



7. Tip the rail retainer (C) over in the direction of the arrow so that the retainer fits into the groove in the guide rail (D).
Ensure that the plate spring (4) fits into the groove and that the edge (5) of the guide rail (D) fits between the rollers behind the rail retainer (C).



8. Orient the guide rail (D) such that its pulley (6) is positioned toward the MFP.

---

7. Retourner l'élément de rétention du rail (C) dans la direction de la flèche de sorte que l'élément de rétention s'insère dans la rainure de la glissière (D).
S'assurer que le ressort de plaque (4) s'insère dans la rainure et que le bord (5) de la glissière (D) s'insère entre les rouleaux se trouvant derrière l'élément de rétention du rail (C).

8. Orienter la glissière (D) de manière que sa poulie (6) soit orientée vers le MFP.

---

7. Incline el retén del carril (C) en la dirección de la flecha de forma tal que el retén encaje en la acanaladura del carril guía (D).
Asegúrese de que el resorte de la placa (4) encaje en la acanaladura y de que el borde (5) del carril guía (D) encaje entre los rodillos detrás del retén del carril (C).

8. Oriente el carril guía (D) de modo que su polea (6) se encuentre ubicada hacia el MFP.

---

7. Die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) so weit in Pfeilrichtung neigen, dass die Halterung in die Rille der Führungsschieneneinheit (D) greift.
Darauf achten, dass die Tellerfeder (4) in die Rille passt, und dass die Kante (5) der Führungsschieneneinheit (D) zwischen den Rollen auf der Rückseite der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) sitzt.

8. Richten Sie die Führungsschiene (D) so aus, daß die Riemenscheibe (6) zum MFP ausgerichtet ist.

---

7. Capovolgere il fermo della guida (C) nella direzione della freccia, in modo che il fermo si inserisca nella scanalatura della guida della rotaia (D).
Assicurarsi che la molla della piastra (4) si inserisca nella scanalatura, e che il bordo (5) della guida della rotaia (D) si inserisca tra i rulli dietro il fermo della guida (C).

8. Orientare la guida della rotaia (D) in modo da posizionare la puleggia (6) in direzione dell'MFP.

---

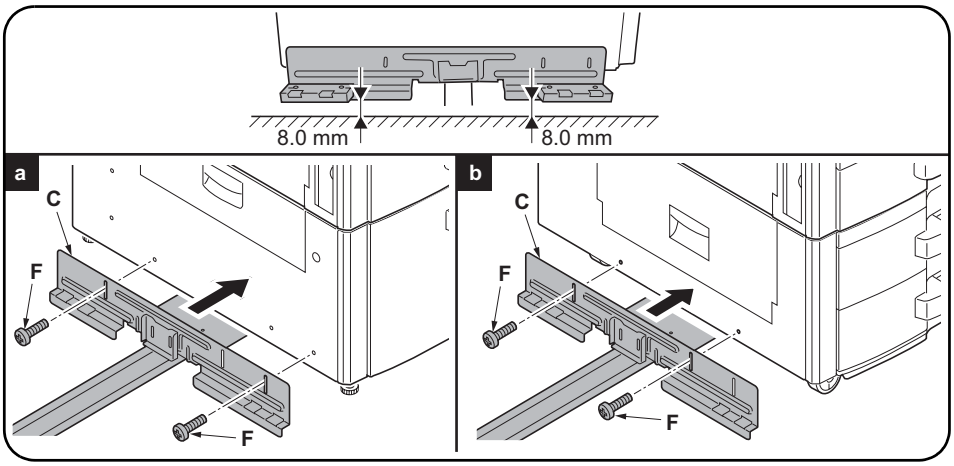
7. 将轨道座 (C) 沿箭头所示方向翻倒，使轨道座嵌入导向轨道 (D) 的凹槽中。
请确保板簧 (4) 嵌入凹槽中，并且导向轨道 (D) 的边缘 (5) 嵌入轨道座 (C) 背面的滚轮和滚轮中间。

8. 使导向轨道 (D) 的滚轮部 (6) 朝向 MFP 主机。

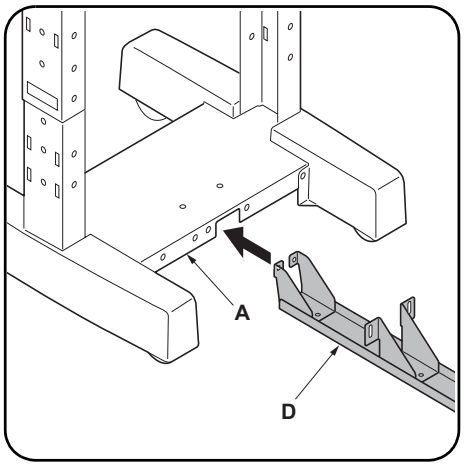
---

7. レール取付板 (C) を矢印方向に倒し、レール取付板 (C) をガイドレール (D) の溝に合わせてはめ込む。
板バネ部 (4) が溝の中に入り、レール取付板 (C) 裏側のコロとコロの間にガイドレール (D) の端 (5) が入るようにする。

8. ガイドレール (D) のコロ部 (6) を MFP 本体側に向ける。



9. Secure the rail retainer (C) to the MFP using two M4 × 10 binding screws (F) such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer (C) are approximately 8.0 mm.
a: When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used
b: When the paper feeder of 500 sheets x 2 is used



10. Insert the guide rail (D) into the bottom of the document finisher (A).

---

9. Fixer l'élément de rétention du rail (C) au MFP à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 10 (F) de manière que les écarts avant et arrière entre le sol et l'élément de rétention du rail (C) soient d'environ 8.0 mm.
a: Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles
b: Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 500 feuilles x 2

10. Insérer la glissière (D) en bas du retoucheur de document (A).

---

9. Asegure el retén del carril (C) a el MFP usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 10 (F) de modo que los espacios frontal y trasero entre el piso y el retén del carril (C) sean de aproximadamente 8.0 mm.
a: Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 3000 hojas
b: Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 500 hojas x 2

10. Inserte el carril de guía (D) en la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos (A).

---

9. Bringen Sie die Schienenhalterung (C) am MFP mit zwei M4 × 10 Verbundschrauben (F) so an, daß die vorderen und hinteren Abstände zwischen Boden und Schienenhalterung (C) etwa 8.0 mm betragen.
a: Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter
b: Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 500 Blätter x 2

10. Die Führungsschiene (D) in das Unterteil des Dokument Finishers (A) einschieben.

---

9. Assicurare il fermo della guida (C) all'MFP utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 × 10 (F), in modo che la distanza anteriore e posteriore tra il pavimento ed il fermo della guida (C) sia di circa 8.0 mm.
a: Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli
b: Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 500 fogli x 2

10. Inserire la guida della rotaia (D) nella parte inferiore della finitrice di documenti (A).

---

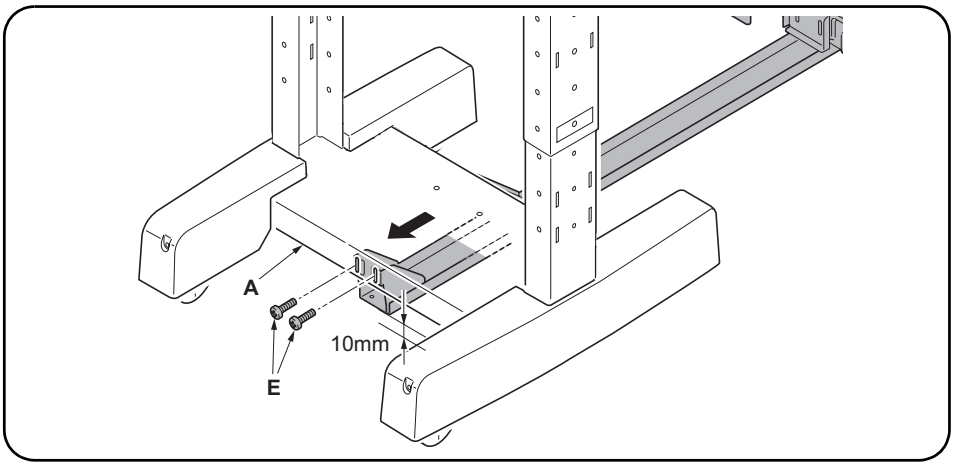
9. 用两个 M4 × 14 固结螺钉 (F) 将轨道座 (C) 固定于 MFP 主机上，此时，轨道座 (C) 与地板之间的距离应约为 8.0 毫米。
a：使用 3000 张供纸盒时
b：使用 500 张 × 2 个供纸盒时

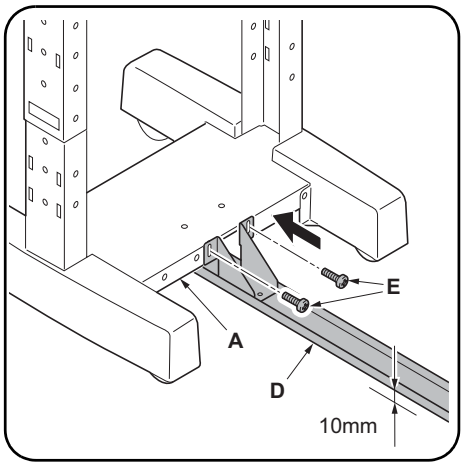
10. 将导向轨道 (D) 插入装订器 (A) 的底部。

---

9. レール取付板 (C) と床面の前後隙間が約 8.0mm になるように、レール取付板 (C) を MFP 本体にビス M4 × 14 バインド (F)2 本で固定する。
a: 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合
b: 500 枚× 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の底部にガイドレール (D) を挿入する。





Fitting and adjusting the guide rail

11. While pressing the guide rail (D) to the document finisher (A) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm, secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E).

Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move when the document finisher is separated.

12. Secure the guide rail (D) with the two M4 x 6 binding screws (E) so that there is a gap of approximately 10 mm between the rail and the floor.

Fixation et réglage de la glissière

11. Tout en pressant la glissière (D) contre le retoucheur de document (A) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm, la fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E).

Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer lorsque le retoucheur de document sera séparé.

12. Fixer la glissière (D) à l'aide des deux vis de fixation M4 x 6 (E) de sorte à ménager un espace d'environ 10 mm entre la glissière et le sol.

Fijación y ajuste del carril de guía

11. Mientras presiona el carril de guía (D) en el finalizador de documentos (A) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm, asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E).

Nota

Si el carril de guía no está bien ajustado, el carril de guía puede no moverse cuando se separa el finalizador de documentos.

12. Asegure el carril guía (D) con dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 6 (E) de forma tal que exista un espacio de aproximadamente 10 mm entre el carril y el piso.

Anbringen und Einstellen der Führungsschieneneinheit

11. Die Führungsschiene (D) gegen den Dokument Finisher (A) gedrückt halten, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt, und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern.

Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich beim Trennen des Dokument Finishers eventuell nicht.

12. Die Führungsschieneneinheit (D) mit den beiden M4 x 6 Verbundschrauben (E) so sichern, dass ein Abstand von etwa 10 mm zwischen Schiene und Boden vorhanden ist.

Montaggio e regolazione della guida della rotaia

11. Mentre si tiene premuta la guida della rotaia (D) alla finitrice di documenti (A) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm, fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E).

Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi quando il separatore la finitrice di documenti verrà staccato.

12. Fissare la guida della rotaia (D) con le due viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (E) in modo che ci sia una distanza di circa 10 mm tra la rotaia e il pavimento.

导向轨道的安装调整

11. 调整导向轨道 (D) 与地板之间的间距为 10 毫米左右，将导向轨道 (D) 插入装订器 (A) 到底，用两个 M4 × 6 固结螺钉 (E) 进行固定。

注意

如果不能正确调整导向轨道的话，在分离装订器时，可能会发生导向轨道不能移动的情况。

12. 用 2 个 M4 ×6 固结螺钉 (E) 将导向轨道 (D) 固定，确保轨道和地面之间有约 10 毫米的距离。

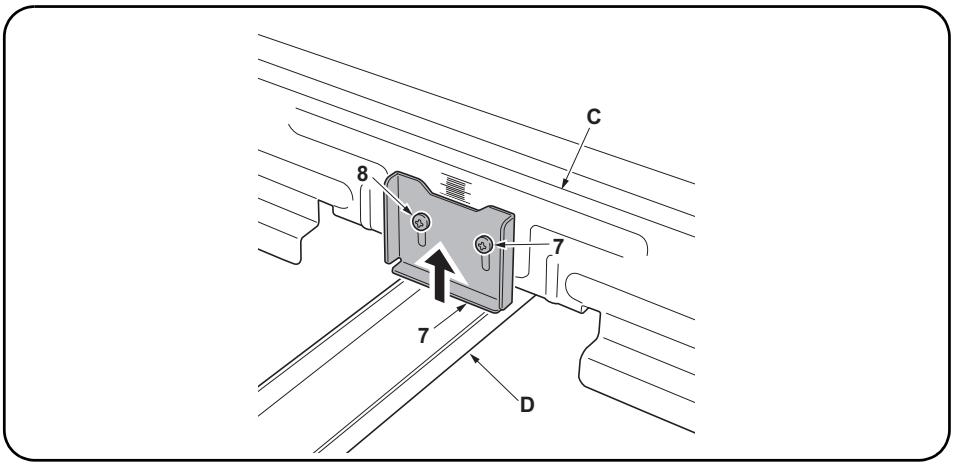
ガイドレールの取付調整

11. ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10㎜ になるように、ガイドレール (D) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) に突き当てながら、ビス M4 × 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。

注意

正しく調整しないと、ドキュメントフィニッシャの切り離し時、ガイドレールが動かない恐れがある。

12. ガイドレール (D) と床面の隙間が約 10㎜ になるように、ビス M4 × 6 バインド (E) 2 本で固定する。



13. Loosen temporarily the two screws (8) that secure the sheet metal (7) of the rail mounting plate (C) on the MFP , raise the sheet metal (7) by two divisions of the scale from the guide rail (D), and tighten the two screws (8).

Note

If the guide rail (D) is not adjusted correctly, it will not move and could cause the document finisher to fall over.

14. Slide the document finisher to engage it with the latch catch of the MFP. If the document finisher and the MFP do not engage securely, perform the following document finisher height adjustment.

---

13. Desserrer provisoirement les deux vis (8) qui fixent la feuille métallique (7) de la plaque de montage du rail (C) sur le MFP , élever la feuille métallique (7) de deux crans sur l'échelle de la glissière (D), puis resserrer les deux vis (8).

Remarque

Si la glissière (D) n'est pas ajustée proprement, elle ne va pas se déplacer et le retoucheur de document risque de tomber.

14. Faire glisser le retoucheur de document pour l'engager dans le pontet du loquet du MFP. Si le retoucheur de document et le MFP ne s'engagent pas correctement, effectuer le réglage de hauteur suivant sur le retoucheur de document.

---

13. Afloje temporalmente los dos tornillos (8) que aseguran la hoja de metal (7) de la placa de montaje de carril (C) en el MFP , levante la hoja de metal (7) con dos divisiones de la escala del carril de guía (D) y apriete los dos tornillos (8).

Nota

Si no se ajusta correctamente el carril guía (D), éste no se moverá y puede provocar que el finalizador de documentos se caiga.

14. Deslice el finalizador de documentos hasta que enganche con el cerrojo del MFP. Si el finalizador de documentos y el MFP no se acoplan de manera segura, realice el siguiente ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos.

---

13. Die zwei Schrauben (8), die das Blech (7) der Schienenmontageplatte (C) am MFP sichern, vorübergehend lösen, das Blech (7) um zwei Teilstriche der Skala von der Führungsschiene (D) aus anheben, und die zwei Schrauben (8) wieder anziehen.

Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneneinheit (D) nicht ordnungsgemäß eingestellt ist, kann sie sich nicht bewegen und könnte dazu führen, dass der Dokument Finisher umfällt.

14. Den Dokument Finisher verschieben, um ihn mit dem Riegelschloßbausatz des MFP in Eingriff zu bringen. Wenn der Dokument Finisher und der MFP nicht richtig ineinander eingreifen, führen Sie die folgende Höheneinstellung für den Dokument Finisher aus.

---

13. Allentare temporaneamente le due viti (8) che fissano il foglio metallico (7) della piastra di montaggio della rotaia (C) dell'MFP , sollevare il foglio di metallo (7) di due posizioni sulla guida della rotaia (D) e serrare le due viti (8).

Nota

Se la guida della rotaia (D) non è regolata correttamente, essa non si muoverà e potrà causare la caduta della finitrice di documenti.

14. Fare scivolare la finitrice di documenti per farla innestare con il dispositivo di arresto dell'MFP. Qualora la finitrice di documenti e l'MFP non si innestino saldamente, osservare la seguente procedura di regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

---

13. 松动固定在 MFP 主机侧轨道座 (C) 的金属板 (7) 上的两支固接螺钉 (8)，在金属板 (7) 碰及导向轨道 (D) 的状态下，抬升到第 2 个刻度的位置，然后用两支螺钉 (8) 固定。

注意

如果没有正确调整导向轨道，它将无法移动，并有可能会导致装订器倾覆。

14. 滑动装订器并连接于 MFP 主机的挂钩承支架上。

如没有完全连接，请按下述步骤调整装订器的高度。

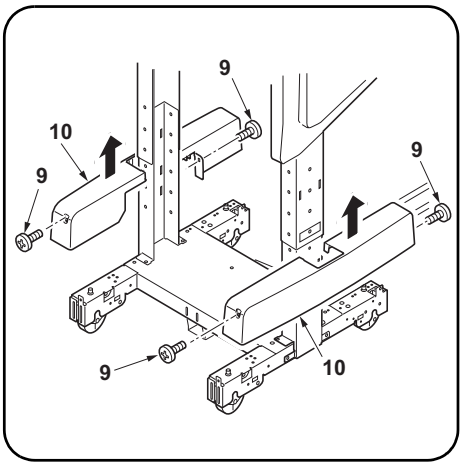
---

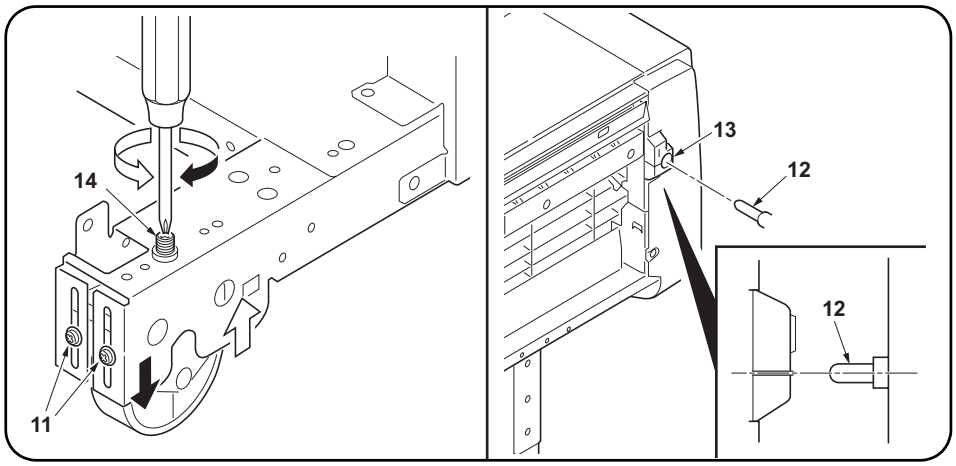
13. MFP 本体側のレール取付板 (C) の板金 (7) を固定しているビス (8)2 本をいったん緩め、板金 (7) をガイドレール (D) に当てた状態から 2 目盛り上の位置にあげて、ビス (8)2 本を固定する。

注意

正しく調整しないと、ガイドレールが動かない。又ドキュメントフィニッシャが倒れる恐れがある。

14. ドキュメントフィニッシャをスライドさせて MFP 本体のラッチ受け板に連結させる。確実に連結しない場合は、次のドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整をおこなう。





Adjusting the height of the document finisher

1. Remove two screws (9) and remove the covers (10) from the document finisher (A).

2. Loosen the two screws (11) on the rear right caster of the document finisher (A). Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt (14) using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin (12) of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot (13) of the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP (viewed from the machine front).
Turning the adjustment bolt (14) clockwise lifts the document finisher (A), while turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher (A).

Réglage de la hauteur du retoucheur de document

1. Déposer les deux vis (9) et les capots (10) du retoucheur de document (A).

2. Desserrer les deux vis (11) de la roulette arrière droite du retoucheur de document (A). Régler la hauteur de la roulette arrière droite en tournant son boulon de réglage (14) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciformede manière que l'axe de la broche (12) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur la marque de la fente (13) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP (vue à partir de l'avant de la machine).
Si l'on tourne le boulon de réglage (14) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'élève; si on le tourne dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'abaisse.

Ajuste de altura del finalizador de documentos

1. Quite los dos tornillos (9) y desmonte las cubiertas (10) del finalizador de documentos (A).

2. Afloje los dos tornillos (11) en la rueda trasera del finalizador de documentos (A). Ajuste la altura de la rueda trasera derecha girando su perno de ajuste (14) utilizando un destornillador de punta en cruz para que el eje del pasador (12) en el pestillo esté alineado con la marca de la ranura (13) del finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) esté unido a el MFP (vista del frente de la máquina).
Al girar el perno de ajuste (14) en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos (A) y al girar contra las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos (A).

Einstellen der Dokument Finisherhöhe

1. Die beiden Schrauben (9) entfernen und die Abdeckungen (10) vom Dokument Finisher (A) abnehmen.

2. Die zwei Schrauben (11) an der hinteren rechten Laufrolle des Dokument Finishers (A) lösen. Die Höhe der hinteren rechten Laufrolle durch Drehen ihrer Einstellschraube (14) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubenzieher so einstellen, dass die Achse des Stifts (12) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Markierung des Schlitzes (13) des Dokument Finishers (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP angesetzt ist (von der Gerätevorderseite gesehen).
Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube (14) im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Dokument Finisher (A) angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti

1. Rimuovere le due viti (9) e quindi rimuovere i coperchi (10) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

2. Allentare le due viti (11) sulla ruota orientabile posteriore destra della finitrice di documenti (A). Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile posteriore destra ruotandone il suo bullone di regolazione (14) a mezzo di un cacciavite a croce, in modo che l'asse del perno (12) del dispositivo di arresto risulti allineato ai contrassegni del foro (13) della finitrice di documenti (A) una volta che la finitrice stessa (A) viene unita all'MFP (vista dal lato frontale della macchina). Ruotando il bullone di regolazione (14) in senso orario si solleva la finitrice di documenti (A), mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finitrice di documenti (A).

[调整装订器的高度 **]**

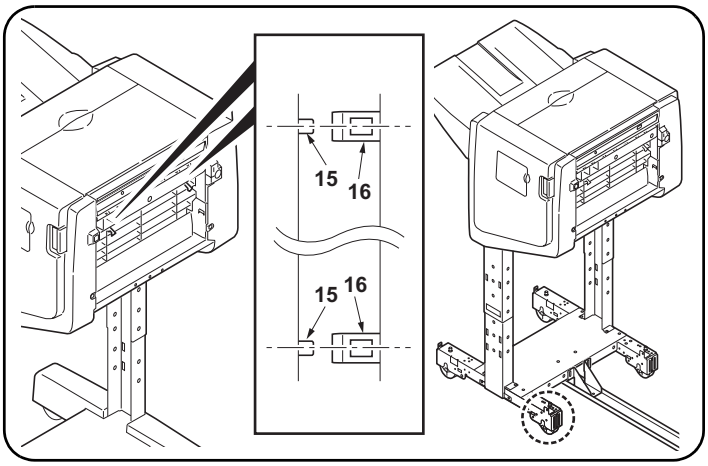
1. 拆下 2 个螺钉 (9)，然后从装订器 (A) 上拆下盖板 (10) 。

2. 将装订器 (A) 后右侧滚轮的两支固结螺钉 (11) 拧松。
将装订器 (A) 与 MFP 主机连接，为了使 (从前面看时) 挂钩承支架销 (12) 的中心与装订器 (A) 的长孔 (13) 的刻度相对准，用十字螺丝刀旋转调节用螺钉 (14)，对后右侧滚轮的高度进行调整。
将调节用螺钉 (14) 往顺时针方向旋转时，可调高装订器 (A)，而往逆时针方向旋转螺钉时，则可调低高度。

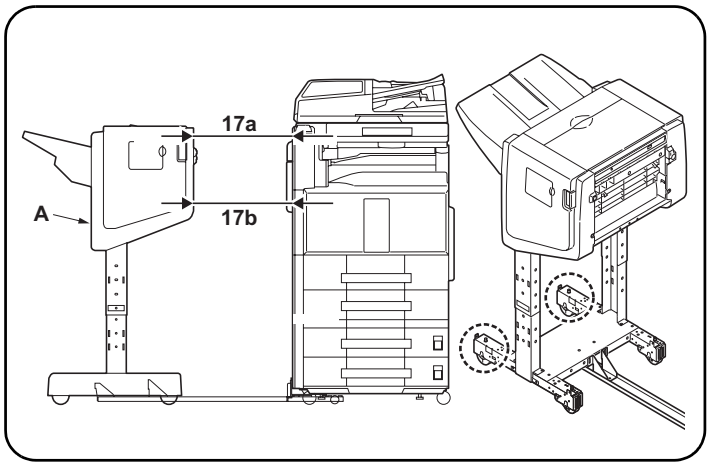
[ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

1. ビス (9) 各 2 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) のカバー (10) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) 右後のキャスターの固定ビス (11)2 本を緩める。
ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体に連結し、前から見た時に、ラッチ受け板のピン (12) の中心が、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の長穴 (13) の刻印に合うように、プラスドライバを用いて調整用ボルト (14) を回し、右後のキャスタの高さ調整をおこなう。
調整用ボルト (14) を時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が上がり、反時計方向に回すと下がる。



3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions (16) of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks (15) on the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP (viewed from above).



4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the gaps (17a) and (17b) between the document finisher (A) and the MFP are the same when the document finisher (A) is detached from the MFP.
5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

---

3. Régler la hauteur de la roulette avant droite en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que chacun des centres des parties d'accrochage (16) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur le centre des deux crochets (15) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP (vue à partir du haut).

4. Régler la hauteur des deux roulettes gauches en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que les écarts (17a) et (17b) entre le retoucheur de documents (A) et la MFP soient identiques lorsque le retoucheur de documents (A) est détaché de MFP.
5. Remettez les pièces enlevées à leur position d'origine.

---

3. Ajuste la altura de la rueda delantera derecha de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que cada centro de las partes de enganche (16) de cada pestillo esté alineado con el centro de los dos ganchos (15) en el finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está nido a el MFP (vista de arriba).

4. Ajuste la altura de las dos ruedas izquierdas de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que las separaciones (17a) y (17b) entre el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP sean las mismas cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está soltado de la MFP.
5. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadas en sus posiciones originales.

---

3. Die Höhe der vorderen rechten Laufrolle auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Mitte der Rasten (16) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Mitte der zwei Haken (15) am Dokument Finisher (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP angesetzt ist (von oben gesehen).

4. Die Höhe der beiden linken Laufrollen auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Abstände (17a) und (17b) zwischen dem Dokument Finisher (A) und dem MFP gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP abgenommen wird.
5. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anbringen.

---

3. Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile anteriore destra allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che ciascun centro delle parti di aggancio (16) del dispositivo di arresto sia allineato al centro dei due ganci (15) della finitrice di documenti (A), una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene unita all'MFP (vista dall'alto).

4. Regolare l'altezza delle due ruote orientabili sinistre allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che le distanze (17a) e (17b) tra la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP siano le stesse una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene separata dall'MFP.
5. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loro posizioni originali.

---

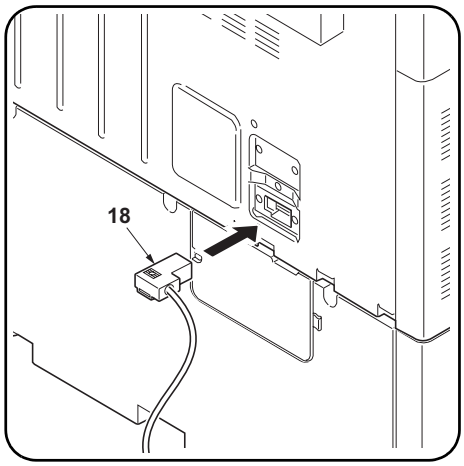
3. 将装订器 (A) 与 MFP 主机连接，使 (从上面看时) 装订器 (A) 的两个挂钩 (15) 与挂钩承支架的孔 (16) 中心相对准，并按与步骤 2 相同的方法来调整前右侧滚轮的高度。

4. 按照步骤 2 中相同的方式调整左侧两个轮脚的高度，使得装订器 (A) 和 MFP 主机之间的间隙 (17a) 和 (17b) 在从 MFP 主机上拆下装订器 (A) 时为相同的。
5. 卸下的部件按原样装上。

---

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) を MFP 本体に連結し、上から見た時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) のフック (15)2ヶ所とラッチ受け板の引っかけ部 (16) の中心が合うように、手順 2 と同様にして右前のキャスタの高さ調整をおこなう。

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) を MFP 本体から切り離した時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) と MFP 本体の間隔 (17a) (17b) が等しくなるように、手順 2 と同様にして左側のキャスタ 2 カ所の高さ調整をおこなう。
5. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付ける。



6. After completing the installation, return to pages 7 to 8 of the installation procedure and loosen the four M4 x 6 binding screws (E) in steps 11 to 12. Then loosen the two screws (8) in step 13 and adjust the guide rail installation.

Connecting the signal cable
1. Connect the signal cable (18) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP.

Operation check
1. Insert the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
2. Check that the paper is fed and that the document finisher (A) operates correctly.

---

6. Une fois l'installation terminée, revenir aux pages 7 et 8 du processus d'installation et desserrer les quatre vis de fixation M4 x 6 binding screws (E) aux étapes 11 et 12. Desserrer ensuite les deux vis (8) à l'étape 13 et régler l'installation de la glissière.

Connexion du câble d'interconnexion
1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (18) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP.

Vérification du fonctionnement
1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP ou imprimante dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Vérifier que le papier est fourni et que le retoucheur de document (A) fonctionne correctement.

---

6. Después de finalizada la instalación, vuelva a las páginas 7 a 8 del procedimiento de instalación y afloje los cuatro tornillos de sujeción M4 x 6 (E) de los pasos 11 y 12. Después, afloje los dos tornillos (8) del paso 13 y ajuste la instalación del carril guía.

Conexión del cable de señal
1. Conecte el cable de señal (18) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP.

Comprobación operacional
1. Inserte el enchufe del MFP o impresora en el receptáculo de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel y verifique que el finalizador de documentos (A) funcione correctamente.

---

6. Nach Abschluss der Installation noch einmal zu den Seiten 7 bis 8 der Installationsprozedur zurückkehren und die vier M4 x 6 Verbundschrauben (E) gemäß Schritt 11 bis 12 lösen. Dann die beiden Schrauben (8) in Schritt 13 lösen und die Befestigungsposition der Führungsschieneneinheit korrigieren.

Anschließen des Signalkabels
1. Das Signalkabel (18) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP anschließen.

Betriebstest
1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP oder Drucker in die Netzsteckdose ein und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert und dass der Dokument Finisher (A) einwandfrei funktioniert.

---

6. Dopo aver completato il montaggio, ritornare alle pagine 7 e 8 della procedura di installazione e allentare le quattro viti di serraggio M4 x 6 (E) nei passi 11 e 12. Quindi allentare le due viti (8) nel passo 13 e regolare l'installazione della guida della rotaia.

Connessione del cavo del segnale
1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (18) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP.

Controllo del funzionamento
1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP o stampatore nella presa di rete e quindi premete il pulsante generale di accensione.
2. Verificare che la carta di prova sia alimentata e controllare che la finitrice di documenti (A) funzioni correttamente.

---

6. 安装完成后，返回安装手册的第 7、8 页，把步骤 11 ～ 12 的 4 个 M4x6 固结螺钉（E）和步骤 13 中的 2 个螺钉（8）拧松后，对导向轨道进行安装调整。

[连接信号电线 **]**
1. 装订器 (A) 的信号电线 (18) 连接在 MFP 主机上。

[确认运作 **]**
1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，开启总电源。
2. 确认已经送纸并且装订器 (A) 运行正常。

---

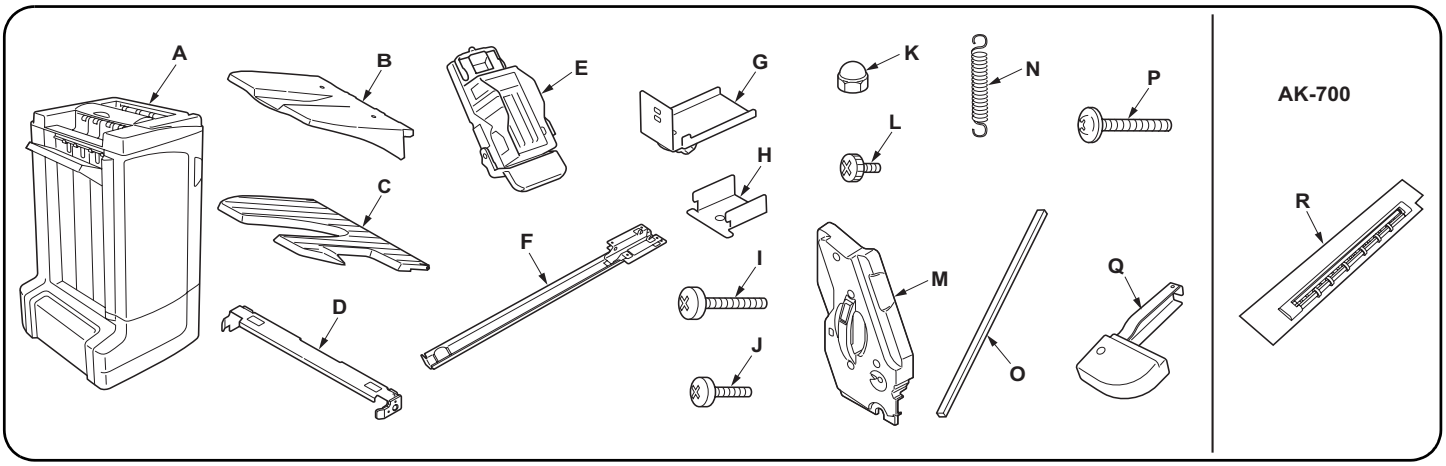
6. 作業終了後、設置手順書の 7 ～ 8 頁に戻り、手順 11 ～ 12 のビス M4 × 6 バインド (E)4 本及び、手順 13 のビス (8)2 本を緩め、ガイドレールの取付調整をおこなう。

［ 信号線の接続 ］
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の信号線 (18) を MFP 本体に接続する。

［ 動作確認 ］
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙確認をおこない、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が正常に動作することを確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.
Output: 587 VA max.
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cable/
P/N: 303LT46210



English

Supplied parts

A Document finisher 1
B Tray A 1
C Tray B 1
D Connecting plate 1
E Staple cartridge 1
F Base slider A 1
G Base slider B 1
H Plate 1
I M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw 7
J M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw 4
K Nut 2
L Pin 2
M Internal tray cover 1
N Spring hook 1
O Sponge 1
P M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw 1
Q Plate foot R 1

When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine
R Curl eliminator 1

Français

Pièces fournies

A Retoucheur de document 1
B Bac A 1
C Bac B 1
D Plaque de connexion 1
E Cartouche d'agrafes 1
F Règle de base A 1
G Règle de base B 1
H Plaque 1
I Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 7
J Vis S taraudée M4 × 8 4
K Ecrou 2
L Broche 2
M Capot de bac interne 1
N Crochet de ressort 1
O Eponge 1
P Vis à filet normal M4 x 14TP 1
Q Pied de plaque R 1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome
R L'élément d'élimination des boucles 1

Español

Partes suministradas

A Finalizador de documentos 1
B Bandeja A 1
C Bandeja B 1
D Placa de conexión 1
E Cartucho de grapas 1
F Deslizador A 1
G Deslizador B 1
H Placa 1
I Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 7
J Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 4
K Tuerca 2
L Pasador 2
M Cubierta de bandeja interna 1
N Gancho de resorte 1
O Esponja 1
P Tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP 1
Q Pedal R 1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro
R Eliminador de curvatura del papel 1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Dokument-Finisher 1
B Fach A 1
C Fach B 1
D Verbindungsplatte 1
E Heftklammerkassette 1
F Basis-Schieber A 1
G Basis-Schieber B 1
H Platte 1
I M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube 7
J M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube 4
K Mutter 2
L Stift 2
M Innenfach 1
N Federhaken 1
O Schwamm 1
P M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube 1
Q Plattenfuß R 1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird
R Glättungseinrichtung 1

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A Finitrice di documenti 1
B Vassoio A 1
C Vassoio B 1
D Piastra di connessione 1
E Cartuccia pinzatrice 1
F Scivolo di base A 1
G Scivolo di base B 1
H Piastra 1
I Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 7
J Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 4
K Dad 2
L Perno 2
M Pannello del vassoio interno 1
N Gancio a molla 1
O Spugna 1
P Vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP 1
Q Piedino di sostegno R 1

In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero
R L'eliminatore di arricciature 1

简体中文

附属品

A 装订器 1
B 托盘 A 1
C 托盘 B 1
D 连接板 1
E 订书针盒 1
F 底座滑板 A 1
G 底座滑板 B 1
H 板 1
I M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 7
J M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 4
K 螺母 2
L 销 2
M 内部托盘盖板 1
N 弹簧挂钩 1
O 海绵 1
P M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 1
Q 将板脚座 R 1

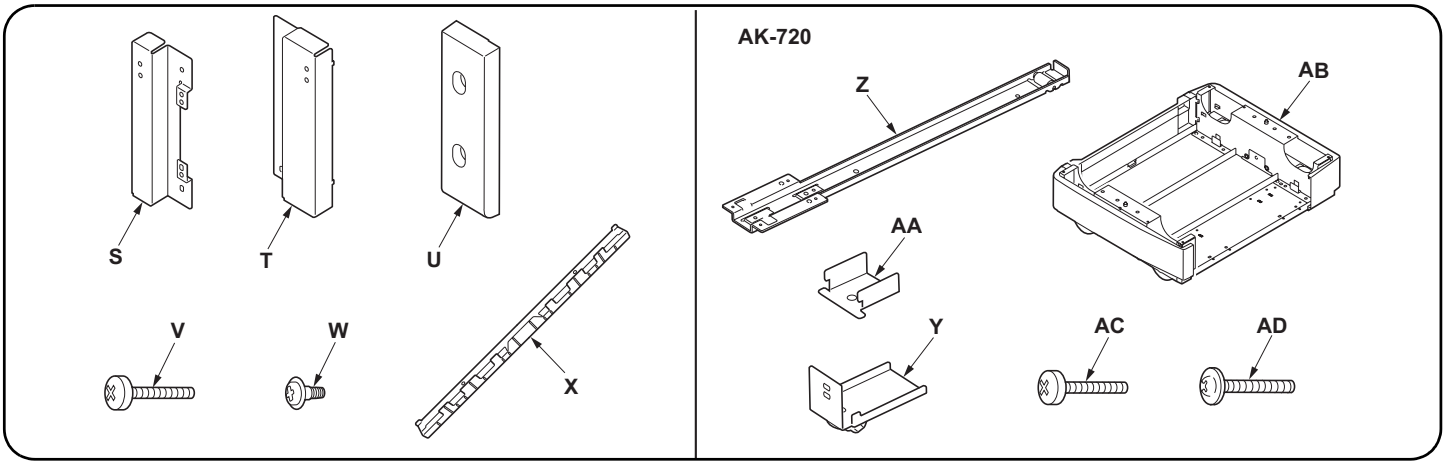
将装订器安装至黑白机器时
R 防纸张卷曲装置 1

日本語

同梱品

A ドキュメントフィニッシャ 1
B トレイ A 1
C トレイ B 1
D 連結板 1
E ステープルカートリッジ 1
F ベーススライダ A 1
G ベーススライダ B 1
H プレート 1
I ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S 7
J ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S 4
K ナット 2
L ピン 2
M 内部トレイカバー 1
N バネフック 1
O スポンジ 1
P ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 1
Q プレートフット R 1

モノクロ機へドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合
R デカーラ 1



When installing the document finisher, (S), (T), (U) and eight (V) supplied with the job separator are needed.
Remaining parts (V), (W), and (X) are required only when installing DF-720.

S Fixing plate F 1
T Fixing plate R 1
U Cover AT 1
V M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw 9
W Shoulder screw 1
X Guide plate 1

When installing the document finisher, (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC) and (AD) are needed.

Y Base slider B 1
Z Base slider V 1
AA Plate 1
AB Assembly base 1
AC M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw 8
AD M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw 1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (S), (T), (U) et 8 des 9 (V) fournies avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises. Les pièces restantes (V), (W) et (X) ne sont requises que pour l'installation de DF-720.

S Plaque de fixation avant 1
T Plaque de fixation arrière 1
U Couvercle AT 1
V Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 9
W Vis d'épaule 1
X Plaque guide 1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, les pièces (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC) et (AD) sont requises en plus.

Y Règle de base B 1
Z Règle de base V 1
AA Plaque 1
AB Base d'ensemble 1
AC Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 8
AD Vis à filet normal M4 x 14TP 1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (S), (T) y (U), y ocho de los nueve tornillos (V) suministrados con el separador de tareas. El resto de las partes (V), (W) y (X) sólo serán necesarias cuando se instale el DF-720.

S Placa de fijación F 1
T Placa de fijación R 1
U Cubierta AT 1
V Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 9
W Tornillo de hombro 1
X Placa guía 1

Cuando el finalizador de documentos se instale en una máquina a todo color serán necesarias también las partes (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB) (AC) y (AD).

Y Deslizador de base B 1
Z Deslizador de base V 1
AA Placa 1
AB Base del conjunto 1
AC Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 8
AD Tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP 1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (S), (T), (U) und acht von neun (V) Schrauben die mit dem Jobtrenner gelieferten erforderlich. Die verbleibenden Teile (V), (W), und (X) sind nur dann erforderlich, wenn der DF-720 aufgestellt wird.

S Fixierplatte F 1
T Fixierplatte R 1
U Abdeckung AT 1
V M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube 9
W Bundschraube 1
X Führungsplatte 1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Vollfarbenkopierer angebracht wird, so sind zusätzlich die Teile (Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC) und (AD) erforderlich.

Y Basis-Schieber B 1
Z Basis-Schieber V 1
AA Platte 1
AB Bauteile-Basis 1
AC M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 8
AD M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube 1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (S), (T), (U) e otto su nove (V) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori. Le rimanenti parti (V), (W) e (X) sono necessarie solo nel caso di installazione del DF-720.

S Piastra di fissaggio F 1
T Piastra di fissaggio R 1
U Coperchio AT 1
V Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 9
W Vite a colletto 1
X Piastra della guida 1

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti in un macchinario a colori, sono necessarie in aggiunta le parti (Y),(Z),(AA),(AB),(AC) e (AD).

Y Scivolo di base B 1
Z Scivolo di base V 1
AA Piastra 1
AB Base di assemblaggio 1
AC Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 8
AD Vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP .. 1

安装装订器时，需使用随作业分离器附带的（S）、（T）、（U）部件和 8 颗（V）螺丝。
只有安装 DF-720 时才需要使用剩余的部件（V）、（W）和（X）。

S 固定板 F 1
T 固定板 R 1
U 盖板 AT 1
V M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 9
W 带肩螺丝 1
X 导向板 1

安装装订器时，需要使用（Y）、（Z）、（AA）、（AB）、（AC）和（AD）。

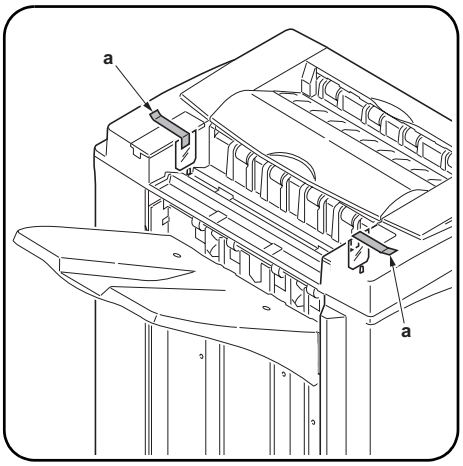
Y 底座滑板 B 1
Z 底座滑板 V 1
AA 板 1
AB 组装底座 1
AC M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 8
AD M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝 1

ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (S), (T), (U), (V) 8 本が必要となる。
DF-720 を設置する場合のみ (V), (W), (X) が必要となる。

S 固定板 F 1
T 固定板 R 1
U カバーAT 1
V ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S 9
W 段付きビス 1
X ガイド板 1

ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、(Y), (Z), (AA), (AB), (AC), (AD) が必要となる。

Y ベーススライダ B 1
Z ベーススライダ V 1
AA プレート 1
AB 組立ベース 1
AC ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S 8
AD ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 1



Precautions
Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
Do not remove the two fixing tapes (a) from the document finisher. (Remove them at step 88 in page 26.)

Procedure
When installing the document finisher, install the job separator in advance.

Be sure to install the document finisher before installing the center-folding unit.
Before installing the document finisher, make sure that the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Précautions
Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
Ne pas enlever les deux pièces de bande adhésive de fixation (a) du retoucheur de document. (Les enlever au moment de l'étape 88 de la page 26.)

Procédure
Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, installer d'abord le séparateur de travaux.

Veiller à installer le retoucheur de document avant d'installer la plieuse.
Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le cordon d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

Precauciones
Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
No quite las dos cintas de fijación (a) del finalizador de documentos. (Quítelas en el paso 88 de la página 26).

Procedimiento
Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos, instale primero el separador de trabajos.

Asegúrese de instalar el finalizador de documentos antes de instalar la unidad de plegado central.
Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que su cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente.

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen
Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
Entfernen Sie nicht die beiden Klebebänder (a) vom Dokument Finisher. (Nehmen Sie sie erst bei Schritt 88 von Seite 26 ab.)

Verfahren
Montieren Sie bei der Installation des Dokument Finishers zuerst den Jobtrenner.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Dokument-Finisher vor der Mittenfalteinheit angebracht wird.
Vor dem Einbau des Dokument-Finishers muss der MFP-Hauptschalter aktiviert, und das Netzkabel von der Steckdose abgezogen sein.

Precauzioni
Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
Non rimuovere i due nastri adesivi (a) dalla finitrice di documenti. (Rimuoverli al passo 88 a pagina 26.)

Procedura
Quando si installa la finitrice di documenti, installare prima il separatore dei lavori.

Assicurarsi di installare la finitrice di documenti prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.
Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.

注意事项
如果附属品上带有固定胶带和 / 或缓冲材料，请务必取下。
请勿拆下装订器上的 2 根固定胶带（a）。
（在第 26 页的步骤 88 中将其拆下。）

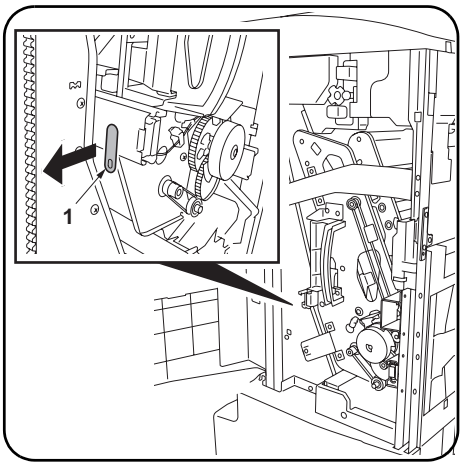
安装步骤
安装装订器时，请先安装作业分离器。

请务必在安装中缝折叠单元前安装装订器。
安装装订器前，请确定 MFP 的主电源开关已经关闭并且电源线已从电源插座上拔下。

注意事項
付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
ドキュメントフィニッシャの固定テープ(a)2 本は剥がさないこと。(P. 26 手順 88 で剥がす。)

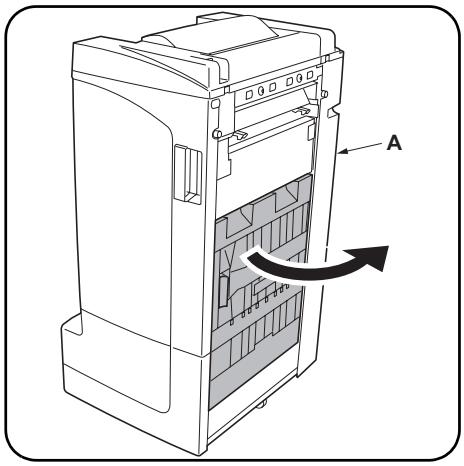
取付手順
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、先にジョブセパレータを設置しておくこと。

ドキュメントフィニッシャの設置は、必ず中折りユニットの設置前に行うこと。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

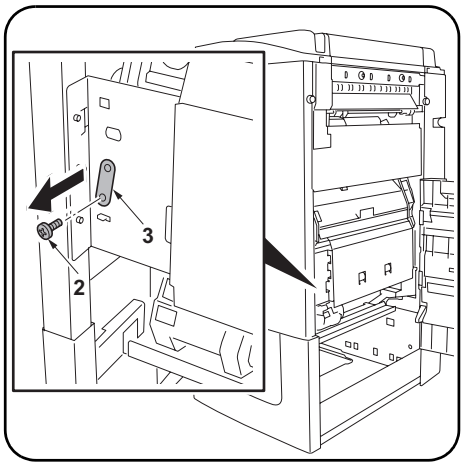


Removing the slider fixing pin

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
Remove the fixing tape from the slider of the inner tray and remove the slider fixing pin A (1).



2. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).



3. Remove the screw (2) to remove the slider fixing pin B (3).

Enlèvement de la broche de fixation de la règle

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de documents (A).
Retirer la bande de fixation de la règle du plateau interne et retirer la broche de fixation A (1).

2. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

3. Retirer la vis (2) pour retirer la broche de fixation de la règle B (3).

Extracción del pasador de fijación del deslizador

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
Quite la cinta de fijación del deslizador de la bandeja interior y quite el pasador de fijación del deslizador A (1).

2. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

3. Quite el tornillo (2) para quitar el pasador de fijación del deslizador B (3).

Entfernen des Schieber-Fixierstifts

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
Entfernen Sie das Klebeband vom Schieber des Innenfachs, und bauen Sie danach den Schieber-Fixierstift A (1) aus.

2. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

3. Lösen Sie die Schraube (2), um den Fixierstift B (3) vom Schieber zu entfernen.

Rimozione del perno di fissaggio dello scivolo

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
Togliere il nastro adesivo dallo scivolo del vassoio interno e rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo A (1).

2. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

3. Togliere la vite (2) per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo B (3).

拆下滑板固定销

1. 打开装订器(A)的前盖板。
从内部托盘的滑板上拆下固定胶带并拆下滑板固定销 A(1)。

2. 打开装订器(A)的右盖板。

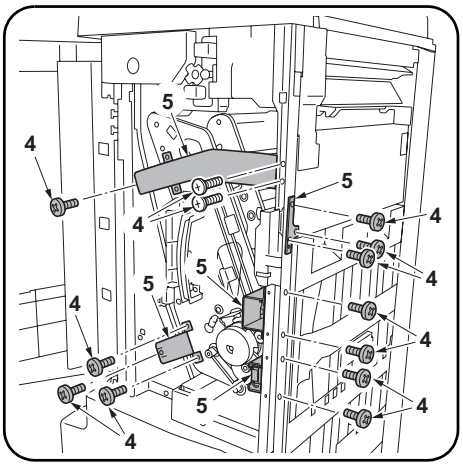
3. 取下螺丝(2)以便拆下滑板固定销 B(3)。

スライダ固定ピンの取り外し

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の前カバーを開く。
内部トレイのスライダの固定テープを剥がし、スライダ固定ピン A(1) を取り外す。

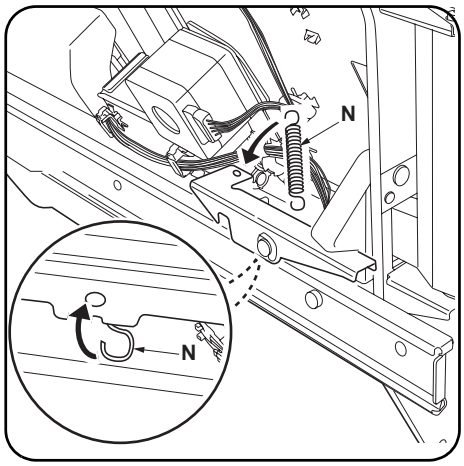
2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の右カバーを開く。

3. ビス (2)1 本を外し、スライダ固定ピン B(3) を取り外す。

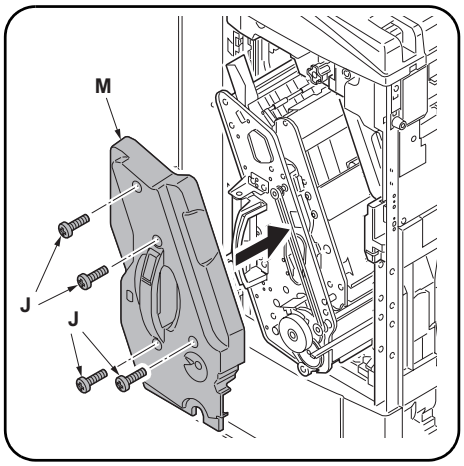


Removing the fittings

4. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
5. Remove 13 screws (4) to remove five fittings (5).
A yellow label is pasted on the fittings.



6. Pull the internal tray out.
7. Remove the fixing tape from the handle of the internal tray and attach the spring hook (N).



Installing the internal tray cover

8. Install the internal tray cover (M) using the four M4 × 8 tap Tight S Screw (J).

Enlèvement des fixations

4. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
5. Retirer 13 vis (4) pour retirer cinq fixations (5).
Une étiquette jaune et collée sur les fixations.

6. Faire ressortir le bac interne.
7. Retirer la bande de fixation de la poignée du bac interne et fixer le crochet de ressort (N).

Installation du capot du bac interne

8. Installer le capot du bac interne (M) à l'aide des quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (J).

Extracción de los accesorios

4. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
5. Quite los 13 tornillos (4) para quitar los cinco accesorios (5).
Hay una etiqueta amarilla pegada en los accesorios.

6. Saque la bandeja interna.
7. Quite la cinta de fijación del mango de la bandeja interior y coloque el gancho de resorte (N).

Instalación de la cubierta de bandeja interna

8. Instale la cubierta de bandeja interna (M) utilizando los cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (J).

Entfernen der Befestigungselemente

4. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
5. Entfernen Sie die 13 Schrauben (4) um die Befestigungselemente (5) zu entfernen.
Ein gelber Aufkleber ist an den Befestigungselementen angebracht.

6. Ziehen Sie das Innenfach heraus.
7. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband vom Griff des Innenfachs, und den Federhaken (N) anbringen.

Entfernen der Innenfachabdeckung

8. Bringen Sie die Innenfachabdeckung (M) mit den vier M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (J) an.

Rimozione dei pezzi di raccordo

4. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
5. Togliere 13 viti (4) per rimuovere i cinque pezzi di raccordo (5).
Un'etichetta gialla è incollata sui pezzi di raccordo (5).

6. Estrarre il vassoio interno.
7. Staccare il nastro adesivo dalla maniglia del vassoio interno e fissare il gancio a molla (N).

Installazione del pannello del vassoio interno

8. Installare il pannello del vassoio interno (M) utilizzando le quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (J).

拆下固定件

4. 打开装订器(A)的前盖板。
5. 取下 13 颗螺丝(4)以便拆下 5 个固定件(5)。
在固定件上贴有黄色标签。

6. 拉出内部托盘。
7. 从内部托盘上拆下把手固定胶带，然后安装弹簧挂钩(N)。

安装内部托盘盖板

8. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝(J)安装内部托盘盖板(M)。

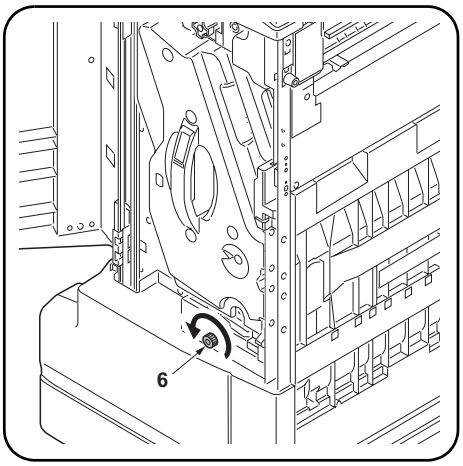
固定金具の取り外し

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の前カバーを開く。
5. ビス(4)13 本を外し、固定金具(5)5 個を取り外す。
固定金具には、黄色のシールを貼っています。

6. 内部トレイを引き出す。
7. 内部トレイの取手の固定テープを剥がし、バネフック(N)を取り付ける。

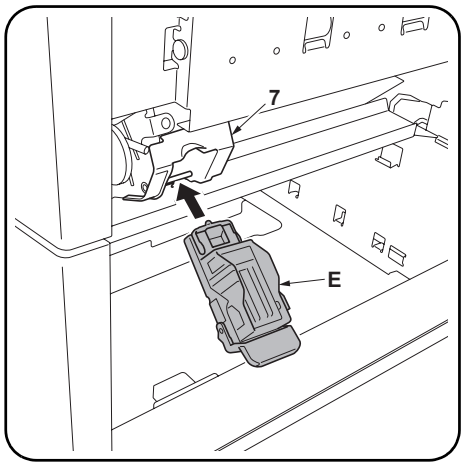
内部トレイカバーの取り付け

8. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S(J)4 本で、内部トレイカバー(M) を取り付ける。



Removing the fixing pin

9. Turn the fixing pin (6) counterclockwise to remove it.
10. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



Installing the staple cartridge

11. Remove the fixing tape from the staple cartridge holder (7).
12. Insert the staple cartridge (E) into the staple cartridge holder (7).
13. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).

14. When using a full-color machine, move to step 48 on page 14.

Enlèvement de la broche de fixation

9. Faire tourner la broche de fixation (6) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre pour la retirer.
10. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

Installation de la cartouche d'agrafes

11. Retirer la bande de fixation du porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
12. Insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (E) dans le porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
13. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

14. Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs, passer à l'étape 48 de la page 14.

Extracción del pasador de fijación

9. Gire el pasador de fijación (6) hacia la izquierda para quitarlo.
10. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

Instalación del cartucho de grapas

11. Quite la cinta de fijación del portacartucho de grapas (7).
12. Inserte el cartucho de grapas (E) en el portacartucho de grapas (7).
13. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

14. Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color, vaya al paso 48 de la página 14.

Entfernen des Fixierstifts

9. Drehen Sie den Fixierstift (6) gegen den Uhrzeigersinn, um ihn zu entfernen.
10. Schließen sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

Anbringen der Heftklammerkassette

11. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband von der Heftklammer-Kassettenhalterung (7) ab.
12. Setzen Sie die Heftklammerkassette (E) in die Kassettenhalterung (7) ein.
13. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

14. Bei Verwendung einer Vollfarbenmaschine gehen Sie zu Schritt 48 auf Seite 14 weiter.

Rimozione del perno di fissaggio

9. Per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio (6) ruotarlo in senso antiorario.
10. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

Installazione della cartuccia pinzatrice

11. Staccare il nastro adesivo dal contenitore della cartuccia pinzatrice (7).
12. Inserire la cartuccia pinzatrice (E) nel contenitore (7).
13. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

14. In caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori, procedere con il punto 48 a pagina 14.

拆下固定销

9. 逆时针旋转固定销(6)，将其拆下。
10. 关闭装订器(A)的前盖板。

安装订书针盒

11. 从订书针盒支架(7)上拆下固定胶带。
12. 将订书针盒(E)插入订书针盒支架(7)。
13. 关闭装订器(A)的右盖板。

14. 全彩色机器时，请进入第 14 页的步骤 48.

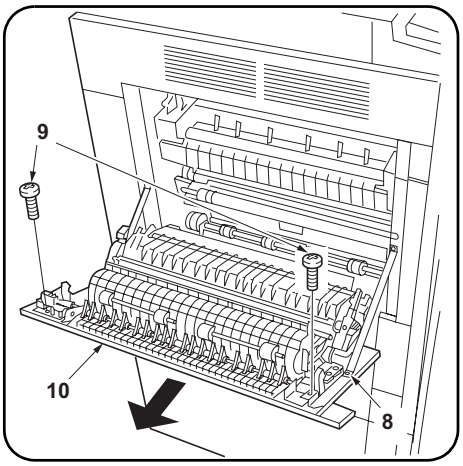
固定ピンの取り外し

9. 固定ピン (6) を左に回して取り外す。
10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の前カバーを閉じる。

ステープルカートリッジの取り付け

11. ステープルカートリッジホルダ (7) の固定テープを剥がす。
12. ステープルカートリッジホルダ (7) にステープルカートリッジ (E) を挿入する。
13. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の右カバーを閉じる。

14. フルカラー機の場合、14 ページ手順 48 へ進む。

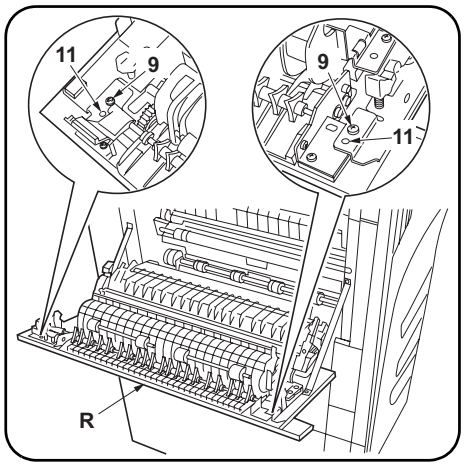


[When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine]

Installing the curl eliminator

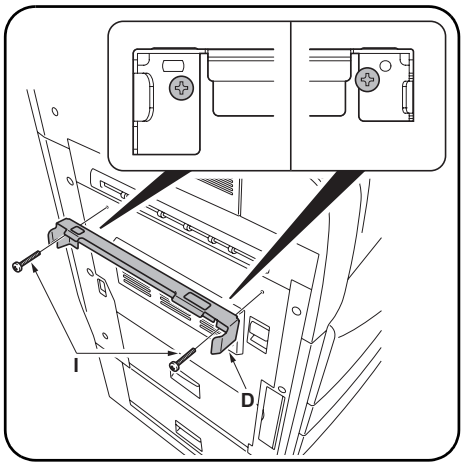
15. Open the eject cover (8) of the MFP or the printer.

16. Remove two screws (9) securing the feedshift guide assembly (10) to remove the assembly.



17. Fit the curl eliminator (R) to the eject cover (8) such that the projections (11) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (R).

18. Secure the curl eliminator (R) using two screws (9) removed in step 16.



Installing the connecting plate

19. Install the connecting plate (D) to the left side of the MFP or the printer using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (I).

[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome]

Installation de l'élément d'élimination des boucles

15. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (8) de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.

16. Retirer deux vis (9) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (10) pour retirer l'assemblage.

17. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (R) sur le couvercle d'éjection (8) de façon à ce que les saillies (11) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de l'élément d'élimination des boucles (R).

18. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (R) utilizando dos tornillos (9) quitados en el paso 16.

Installation de la plaque de connexion

19. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur le côté gauche du MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro]

Instalación del eliminador de curvatura del papel

15. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (8) de la MFP o de la impresora.

16. Quite dos tornillos (9) que aseguran el conjunto de la guía de cambio de alimentación (10) para quitar el conjunto.

17. Coloque el eliminador de curvatura del papel (R) en la cubierta de expulsión (8) de forma que los resaltos (11) de la cubierta se coloquen en los dos extremos del eliminador de curvatura del papel (R).

18. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (R) utilizando dos tornillos (9) quitados en el paso 16.

Instalación de la placa de conexión

19. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en el lado izquierdo de la MFP o impresora utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird]

Anbringen der Glättungseinrichtung

15. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (8) des MFP oder des Druckers.

16. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (9), welche die Papiervorschub-Umschalt-Führungseinheit (10) befestigt, um diese auszubauen.

17. Setzen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (R) so auf die Auswurfabdeckung (8) auf, dass die Vorsprünge (11) der Abdeckung in die beiden Enden der Glättungseinrichtung (R) eingreifen.

18. Befestigen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (R) mit den im Schritt 16 entfernten Schrauben (9).

Anbringen der Verbindungsplatte

19. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D)auf der linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) an.

[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero]

Installazione dell'eliminatore di arricciature

15. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (8) della MFP o dello stampatore.

16. Togliere le due viti (9) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (10) e rimuovere il gruppo.

17. Montare l'eliminatore di arricciature (R) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (8) in modo tale che le parti sporgenti (11) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore di arricciature (R).

18. Fissare l'eliminatore di arricciature (R) utilizzando le due viti (9) rimosse al punto 16.

Installazione della piastra di connessione

19. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) sul lato destro della MFP o stampatore utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

[将装订器安装至黑白机器时]

安装防纸张卷曲装置

15. 打开 MFP 或打印机的出纸盖板（8）。

16. 拆下固定供纸换向导板组件（10）的 2 颗螺丝（9）以便拆下该组件。

17. 将防纸张卷曲装置（R）固定在出纸盖板（8）上，使盖板上的突出部（11）嵌入防纸张卷曲装置（R）的两端。

18. 使用步骤 16 中拆下的 2 颗螺丝（9）固定防纸张卷曲装置（R）。

安装连接板

19. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（I）将连接板（D）安装至 MFP 或打印机的左侧。

[モノクロ機へドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合]

デカーラーの取り付け

15. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー（8）を開く。

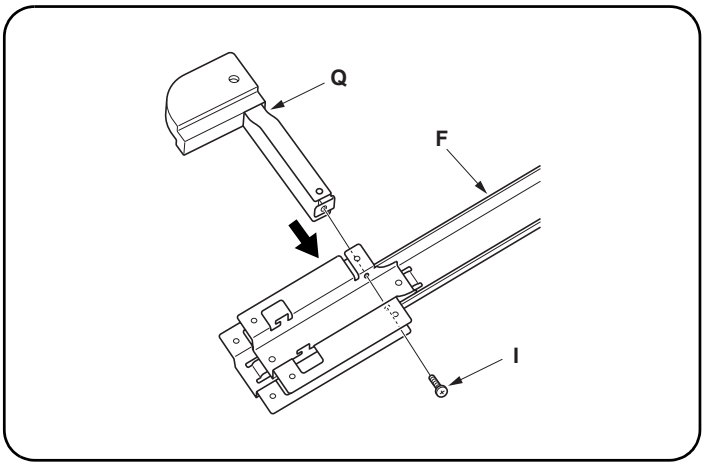
16. ビス（9）2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立（10）を取り外す。

17. デカーラ（R）の両端に半押し（11）がはまる位置で、デカーラ（R）を排出カバー（8）に取り付ける。

18. 手順 16 で外したビス（9）2 本でデカーラ（R）を固定する。

連結板の取り付け

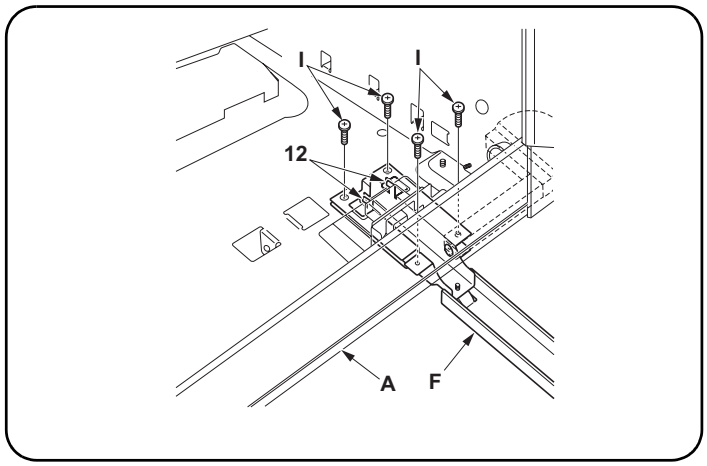
19. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左側にビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S（I）2 本で連結板（D）を取り付ける。



Assembling the base slider

20. Install plate foot R (Q) to base slider A (F) using M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).

21. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.
When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 22
When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 31



Installing the base slider

When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

22. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).

23. Insert base slider A (F) into the lower right of the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (12).

24. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).

Assemblage de la règle de base

20. Installer le pied de plaque R (Q) sur la règle de base A (F) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).

21. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.
Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 22
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 31

Installation de la règle de base

Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

22. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

23. Insérer la règle de base A (F) dans la partie inférieure droite du retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (12).

24. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

Ensamblaje del deslizador de base

20. Instale el pedal R (Q) en el deslizador A (F) utilizando el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

21. Siga el procedimiento indicado abajo que sea más adecuado al tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.
Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 22
Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 31

Instalación del deslizador de base

Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

22. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

23. Inserte el deslizador A (F) en la parte inferior derecha del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (12).

24. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

20. Bringen Sie den Plattenfuß R (Q) am Basis-Schieber A (F) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) an.

21. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.
Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 22 weiter
Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 31 weiter

Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

22. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

23. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) auf der unteren rechten Seite des Dokument-Finishers (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (12) ein.

24. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).

Assemblaggio dello scivolo di base

20. Installare il piedino di sostegno R (Q) allo scivolo di base A (F) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

21. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.
In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 22
In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 31

Installare lo scivolo di base

In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

22. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

23. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) nella parte inferiore destra della finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (12).

24. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

组装底座滑板

20. 使用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（I）将板脚座 R（H）安装至底座滑板 A（F）。

21. 根据 MFP 或打印机上安装的供纸盒类型，执行下列相应的步骤。
使用 2 个 500 张供纸盒时：转至步骤 22
使用 3000 张供纸盒时：转至步骤 31

安装底座滑板

使用 2 个 500 张供纸盒时

22. 打开装订器（A）的右盖板。

23. 将底座滑板 A（F）插入装订器（A）的右下侧并挂上簧片（12）。

24. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（I）固定底座滑板 A（F）。

ベーススライダの組立

20. ベーススライダ A(F) にプレートフット R(Q) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I)1 本で取り付ける。

21. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。
500 枚× 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 22 へ
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 31 へ

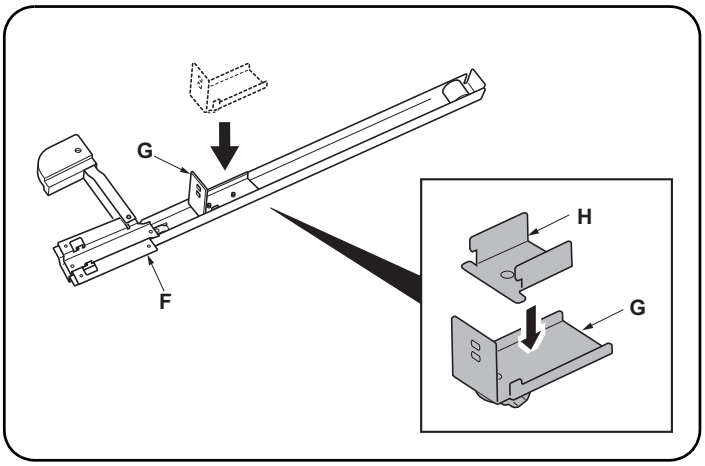
ベーススライダの取り付け

500 枚× 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

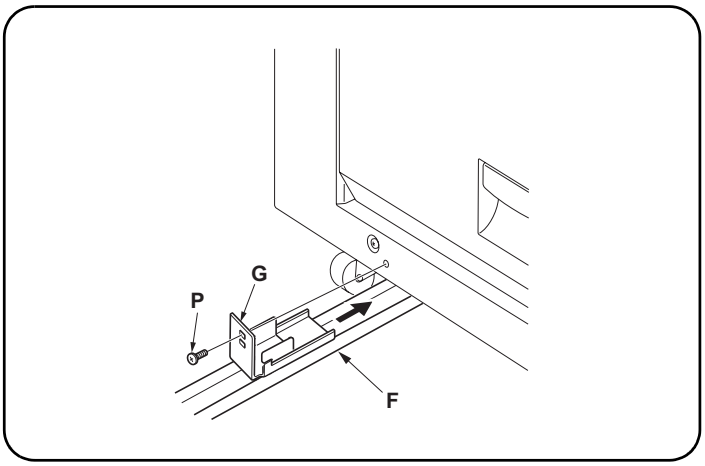
22. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の右カバーを開く。

23. ベーススライダ A(F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の右下へ差し込み、ツメ (12) を引っ掛ける。

24. ベーススライダ A(F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I)4 本で固定する。



25. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).
26. Put plate (H) onto base slider B (G).



27. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
28. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P).
Put M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) through the upper hole of base slider B (G).
29. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
30. Move to step 39 on page 12.

---

25. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).
26. Poser la plaque (H) sur la règle de base B (G).

27. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
28. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P).
Faire passer la vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) par l'orifice supérieur de la règle de base B (G).
29. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
30. Passer à l'étape 39 de la page 12.

---

25. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).
26. Coloque la placa (H) sobre el deslizador de base B (G).

27. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
28. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P).
Ponga un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) a través del agujero superior del deslizador B (G).
29. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
30. Vaya al paso 39 de la página 12.

---

25. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.
26. Setzen Sie die Platte (H) auf den Basis-Schieber B (G).

27. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links am MFP oder Drucker ein.
28. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P).
Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) durch das obere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).
29. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
30. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 39 auf Seite 12 weiter.

---

25. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).
26. Collocare la piastra (H) sullo scivolo di base B (G).

27. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
28. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P).
Far passare la vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P) attraverso il foro superiore dello scivolo di base B (G).
29. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
30. Andare a pagina 12, punto 39.

---

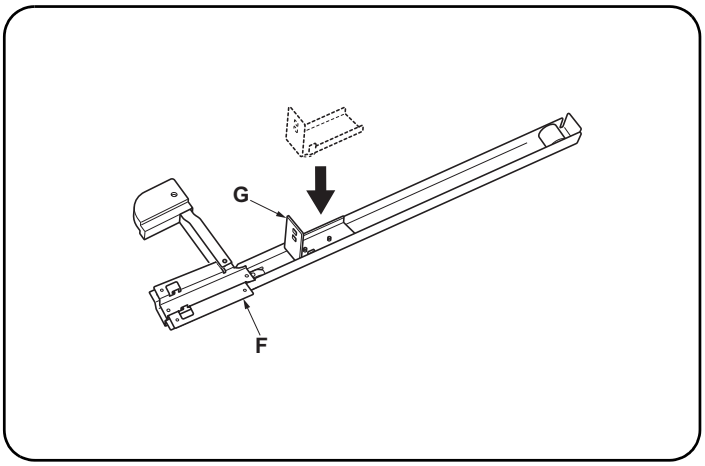
25. 将底座滑板 B（G）置于底座滑板 A（F）上。
26. 将板（H）至于底座滑板 B（G）上。

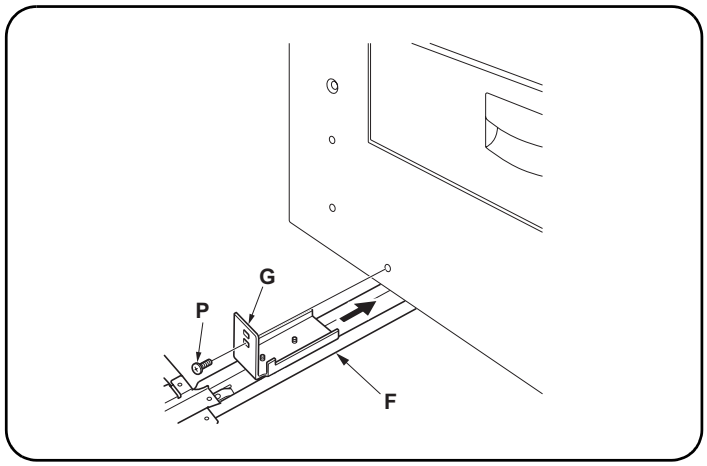
27. 插入底座滑板 A（F），然后将底座滑板 B（G）插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
28. 使用 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P）固定底座滑板 B（G）。
将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P）穿过底座滑板 B（G）的上部孔。
29. 关闭装订器（A）的右盖板。
30. 转至第 12 页的步骤 39。

---

25. ベーススライダ A(F) にベーススライダ B(G) を置く。
26. ベーススライダ B(G) にプレート (H) を置く。

27. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A(F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B(G) を差し込む。
28. ベーススライダ B(G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P)1 本で固定する。
ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) は、ベーススライダ B(G) の上の穴に通すこと。
29. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の右カバーを閉じる。
30. 12 ページ手順 39 へ進む。





When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets

31. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).

32. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.

33. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P).
Put M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) through the lower hole of the base sliders B (G).

Lors de l'utilisation d'un alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

31. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).

32. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.

33. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P).
Faire passer la vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) par l'orifice inférieur de la règle de base B (G).

Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas

31. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).

32. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.

33. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P).
Ponga un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) a través del agujero inferior del deslizador B (G).

Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

31. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.

32. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf der unteren linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker ein.

33. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P).
Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) durch das untere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).

In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

31. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).

32. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.

33. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P).
Far passare la vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P) attraverso il foro inferiore dello scivolo di base B (G).

使用 3000 张供纸盒时

31. 将底座滑板 B（G）置于底座滑板 A（F）上。

32. 插入底座滑板 A（F），然后将底座滑板 B（G）插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。

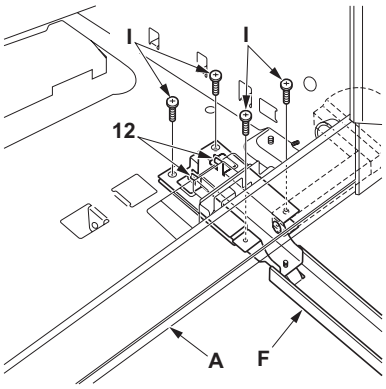
33. 使用 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P）固定底座滑板 B（G）。
将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P）穿过底座滑板 B（G）的下部孔。

3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合

31. ベーススライダ A(F) にベーススライダ B(G) を置く。

32. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A(F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B(G) を差し込む。

33. ベーススライダ B(G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P)1 本で固定する。
ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P) は、ベーススライダ B(G) の下の穴に通すこと。



34. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
35. Insert base slider A (F) under the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (12).
36. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).
37. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
38. Move to step 39 on page 12.

---

34. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
35. Insérer la règle de base A (F) sous le retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (12).
36. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).
37. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
38. Passer à l'étape 39 de la page 12.

---

34. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
35. Inserte el deslizador A (F) debajo del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (12).
36. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
37. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
38. Vaya al paso 39 de la página 12.

---

34. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
35. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter dem Dokument-Finisher (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (12) ein.
36. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).
37. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
38. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 39 auf Seite 12 weiter.

---

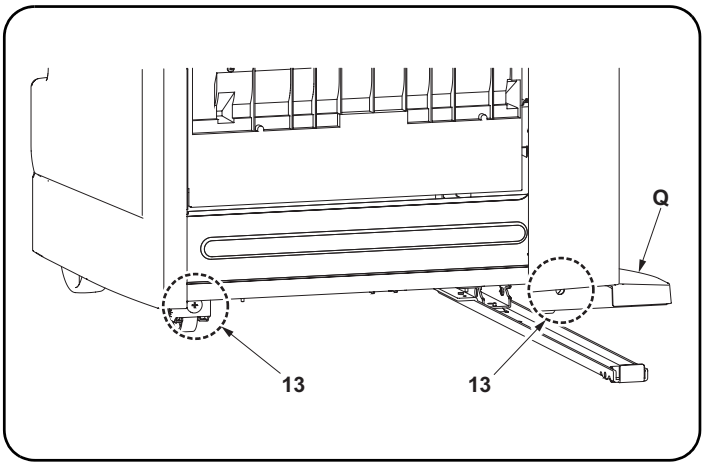
34. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
35. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (12).
36. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
37. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
38. Andare a pagina 12, punto 39.

---

34. 打开装订器(A)的右盖板。
35. 将底座滑板 A(F)插至装订器(A)下方并挂上簧片(12)。
36. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝(I)固定底座滑板 A(F)。
37. 关闭装订器(A)的右盖板。
38. 转至第 12 页的步骤 39。

---

34. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の右カバーを開く。
35. ベーススライダ A(F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の下へ差し込み、ツメ (12) を引っ掛ける。
36. ベーススライダ A(F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I)4 本で固定する。
37. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の右カバーを閉じる。
38. 12 ページ手順 39 へ進む。

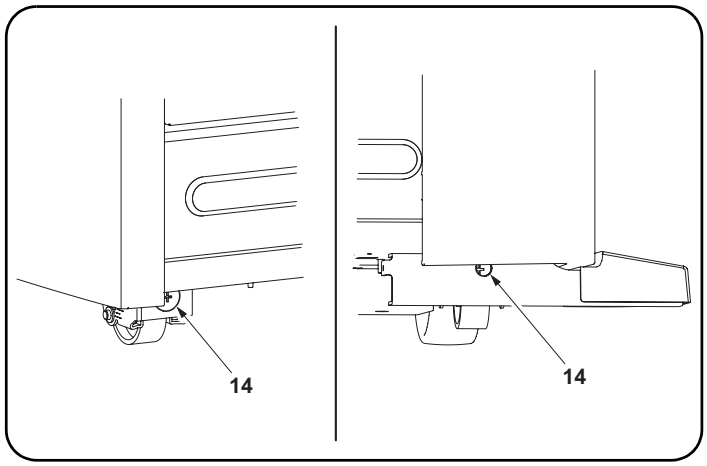


[Document finisher height adjustment method]

39. Adjust the height by turning the pin on the caster sections of the 2 slider hooking portions (13).

40. The front adjustment section is located at the lower right on the front of the document finisher.

41. The rear adjustment section is adjusted by inserting a screwdriver into the hole in plate foot R (Q) fixed to the slider.



42. Locate the adjustment pins (14).
Adjusting the pin on the front and rear sides will change the height of the document finisher.

[Méthode de réglage de hauteur du retoucheur de document]

39. Ajuster la hauteur par rotation de la broche sur les sections des roulettes des 2 côtés de suspension des glissières (13).

40. La section de réglage avant se trouve au bas à droite de l'avant du retoucheur de document.

41. La section de réglage arrière s'ajuste par insertion d'un tournevis dans le trou du pied de plateau R (Q) fixé à la glissière.

42. Localiser les broches de réglage (14).
Le réglage de la broche à l'avant et à l'arrière change la hauteur du retoucheur de document.

[Método de ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

39. Ajuste la altura girando el pasador en las secciones de rueda de las 2 partes con ganchos del deslizador (13).

40. La sección de ajuste frontal está ubicada en la porción inferior derecha del frente del finalizador de documentos.

41. La sección de ajuste trasera se ajusta insertando un destornillador en el orificio de la pata de placa R (Q) que se encuentra fijada al deslizador.

42. Ubique los pasadores de ajuste (14).
El ajuste del pasador en los lados frontal y trasero cambiará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

[Vorgehen zur Höheneinstellung des Dokument-Finishers]

39. Stellen Sie die Höhe ein, indem Sie den Stift an den Laufrollenbereichen der 2 Schiebereinhakteile (13) verdrehen.

40. Der vordere Einstellbereich befindet sich unten rechts an der Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers.

41. Der hintere Einstellbereich wird eingestellt, indem man einen Schraubendreher in die Öffnung des am Schieber angebrachten Plattenfußes R (Q) steckt.

42. Lokalisieren Sie die Einstellstifte (14).
Durch Verstellen des Stifts an der Vorderseite bzw. Rückseite lässt sich die Höhe des Dokument-Finishers korrigieren.

[Metodo di regolazione altezza della finitrice di documenti]

39. Regolare l'altezza ruotando il perno sulle sezioni delle ruote orientabili delle 2 porzioni (13) al lato di agganciamento dello scivolo.

40. La sezione di regolazione anteriore si trova a destra in basso sulla parte anteriore della finitrice di documenti.

41. La sezione di regolazione posteriore viene regolata inserendo un cacciavite nel foro nel piedino della piastra R (Q) fissato allo scivolo.

42. Individuare i perni di regolazione (14).
Regolando il perno sui lati anteriore e posteriore, si cambierà l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

[装订器高度调节方法]

39. 通过旋转 2 个滑板卡扣部（13）轮脚部分的销钉来调节高度。

40. 前侧调节部位于装订器正面的右下部。

41. 将螺丝刀插入固定至滑板的板脚座 R（Q）的孔中，以调节后侧调节部。

42. 确认调节销（14）的位置。
调节位于前、后侧的销钉可改变装订器高度。

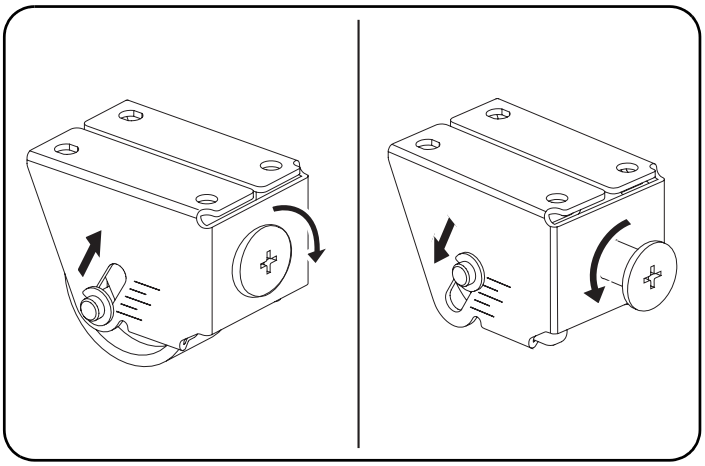
[ドキュメントフィニッシャ高さ調整方法]

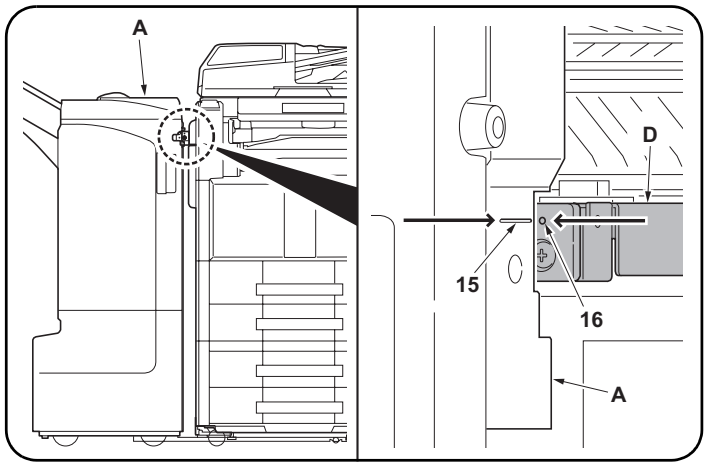
39. スライダ取付側 2ヶ所のキャスタ部のピンを回して調整する。(13)

40. 前側の調整部は、ドキュメントフィニッシャ正面の右下部にある。

41. 後側の調整部は、スライダ部固定のプレートフット R(Q) の穴にドライバを挿入し調整する。

42. 調整ピン(14)の位置を確認する。
前側と後側の 2ヶ所の調整でドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが変わる。





43. In the case of the left illustration, turning the pin to the right allows the caster's axle holder to be movable in the direction of the arrow, enabling the height of the document finisher to be lowered.
44. In the case of the right illustration, turning the pin to the left allows the caster's axle holder to be movable in the direction of the arrow, enabling the height of the document finisher to be raised.

The default position is setting for document finisher to position above.

45. Adjust so that the hole (16) on the side of the connecting plate (D) on the MFP levels with the rib (15) on the document finisher (A) when the connection is seen from the front.
46. Perform the previous steps to adjust the 2 sections at front and rear.

47. Move to step 84 on page 25.

---

43. Dans le cas de l'illustration gauche, une rotation de la broche vers la droite permet de faire tourner le support d'axe de la roulette dans le sens de la flèche et d'abaisser la hauteur du retoucheur de document.
44. Dans le cas de l'illustration droite, une rotation de la broche vers la gauche permet de faire tourner le support d'axe de la roulette dans le sens de la flèche et d'élever la hauteur du retoucheur de document.

La position par défaut du réglage du retoucheur de document est la position haute.

45. Ajuster la hauteur de sorte que le trou (16) sur le côté de la plaque de connexion (D) du MFP soit de niveau avec le repère (15) sur le retoucheur de document (A) quand le montage est vu de l'avant.
46. Effectuer les mêmes étapes pour ajuster les 2 sections à l'avant et à l'arrière.

47. Passer à l'étape 84 de la page 25.

---

43. En el caso de la ilustración de la izquierda, si se gira el pasador hacia la derecha, el soporte del eje de la rueda se moverá en la dirección que muestra la flecha, permitiendo disminuir la altura del finalizador de documentos.
44. En el caso de la ilustración de la derecha, si se gira el pasador hacia la izquierda, el soporte del eje de la rueda se moverá en la dirección que muestra la flecha, permitiendo aumentar la altura del finalizador de documentos.
La posición predeterminada es ajustar el finalizador de documentos a la posición anterior.

45. Ajuste de forma tal que el orificio (16) en el lado de la placa de conexión (D) del MFP quede nivelado con la nervadura (15) del finalizador de documentos (A), mirando la conexión desde el frente.
46. Realice los pasos anteriores para ajustar las 2 secciones en el frente y la parte trasera.

47. Vaya al paso 84 de la página 25.

---

43. Wie aus der Abbildung links zu ersehen, kann man durch Drehen des Stifts nach rechts den Achshalter der Laufrolle in der Pfeilrichtung verstellbar machen, wodurch die Höhe des Dokument-Finishers gesenkt werden kann.
44. Wie aus der Abbildung rechts zu ersehen, kann man durch Drehen des Stifts nach links den Achshalter der Laufrolle in der Pfeilrichtung verstellbar machen, wodurch die Höhe des Dokument-Finishers angehoben werden kann.
In der Grundeinstellung befindet sich der Dokument-Finisher in der obersten Position.

45. Stellen Sie so ein, dass das Loch (16) auf der Seite der Anschlussplatte (D) auf dem MFP mit der Rippe (15) am Dokument-Finisher (A) fluchtet, wenn man vorne auf den Anschluss blickt.
46. Führen Sie die vorigen Schritte aus, um die 2 Bereiche vorne und hinten einzustellen.

47. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 84 auf Seite 25 weiter.

---

43. Nel caso dell'illustrazione sinistra, ruotando il perno a destra si permette al supporto asse della ruota orientabile di spostarsi nella direzione della freccia, consentendo l'abbassamento in altezza della finitrice di documenti.
44. Nel caso dell'illustrazione destra, ruotando il perno a sinistra si permette al supporto asse della ruota orientabile di spostarsi nella direzione della freccia, consentendo l'innalzamento in altezza della finitrice di documenti.

La posizione di default per la finitrice di documenti è impostata alla posizione più alta.

45. Regolare in modo che il foro (16) sul lato della piastra di connessione (D) sull' MFP sia a livello con il segno in rilievo (15) sulla finitrice di documenti (A) quando la connessione viene vista frontalmente.
46. Eseguire i punti precedenti per regolare le 2 sezioni alle parti anteriore e posteriore.

47. Andare a pagina 25, punto 84.

---

43. 如果出现左图所示情况，则向右转动销钉，以便能够沿着箭头方向移动轮脚的轴固定器，从而降低装订器高度。
44. 如果出现右图所示情况，则向左转动销钉，以便能够沿着箭头方向移动轮脚的轴固定器，从而升高装订器高度。

装订器的初始位置设定为最高位置。

45. 调节装订器高度，使 MFP 上的连接板（D）一侧的孔（16）与装订器（A）上的肋片（15）对齐（从正面观察）。
46. 执行上述步骤，调节前侧和后侧的 2 个部分。

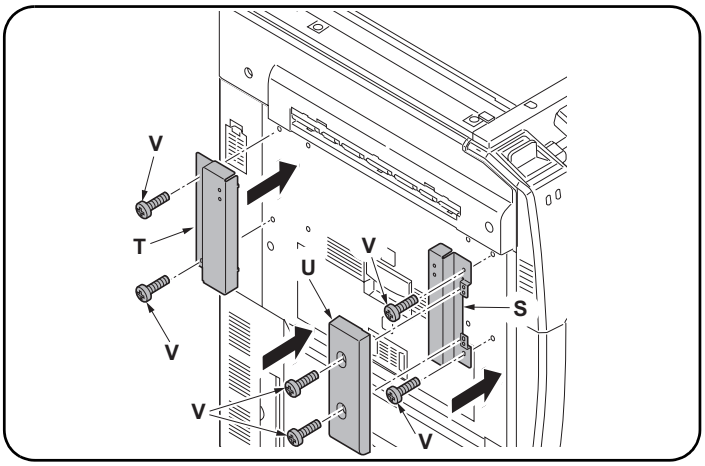
47. 转至第 25 页的步骤 84。

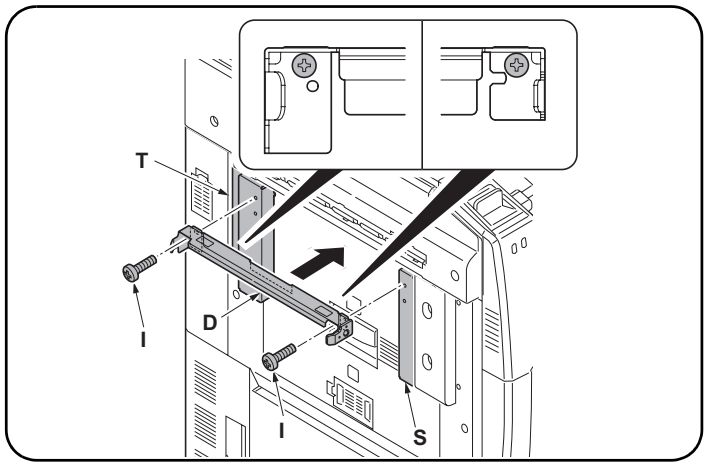
---

43. 左図の場合、ピンを右方向に回転させることで、キャスタの軸保持部が矢印方向に可動し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さを下げることが出来る。
44. 右図の場合、ピンを左方向に回転させることで、キャスタの軸保持部が矢印方向に可動し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さを上げることが出来る。
初期位置はドキュメントフィニッシャが最上位になるように設定されている。

45. 連結部を前から見た時に、MFP 本体の連結板 (D) 側面の穴(16)とドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)のリブ(15)の高さが合うようにする。
46. 前後 2ヶ所の調整を行う。

47. 25 ページ手順 84 へ進む。





[When installing the document finisher to the full-color machine]
Installing the fixing and connecting plates

48. Install fixing plates F (S) and R (T) to the MFP using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (V) for each plate.
49. Install cover AT (U) to fixing plate F (S) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (V).
50. Install the connecting plate (D) to fixing plates F (S) and R (T) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (I).
Attach with the upper screw holes underneath fixing plates F (S) and R (T).

[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine entièrement en couleurs]
Installation des plaques de fixation et de connexion

48. Installer les plaques de fixation avant (S) et arrière (T) sur le MFP à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (V) par plaque.
49. Installer le couvercle AT (U) sur la plaque de fixation avant (S) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (V).
50. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur les plaques de fixation avant (S) et arrière (T) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).
Fixer à partir des trous de vis supérieurs se trouvant sous les plaques de fixation avant (S) et arrière (T).

[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en la máquina a todo color]
Instalación de las placas de fijación y conexión

48. Instale las placas de fijación F (S) y R (T) en la MFP utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (V) para cada placa.
49. Instale la cubierta AT (U) en la placa de fijación F (S) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (V).
50. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en las placas de fijación F (S) y R (T) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
Fije con los orificios para tornillos superiores debajo de las placas de fijación F (S) y R (T).

[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher an der Vollfarbenmaschine angebracht wird]
Anbringen der Fixier- und Verbindungsplatten

48. Bringen Sie die Fixierplatten F (S) und R (T) am MFP mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (V) für jede Platte an.
49. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung AT (U) auf der Fixierplatte F (S) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (V) an.
50. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf den Fixierplatten F (S) und R (T) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) an.
Mit den oberen Schraublöchern unter den Fixierplatten F (S) und R (T) anbringen.

[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un macchinario a colori]
Installazione delle piastre di fissaggio e di connessione

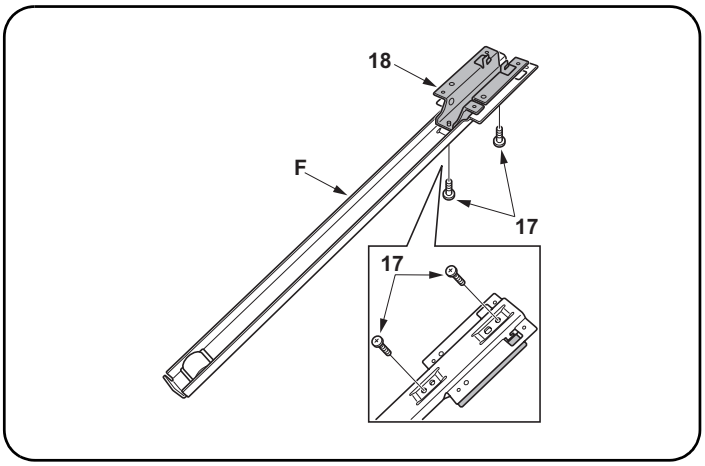
48. Installare le piastre di fissaggio F (S) e R (T) alla MFP utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (V) per ciascuna piastra.
49. Installare il coperchio AT (U) alla piastra di fissaggio F (S) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (V).
50. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) alle piastre di fissaggio F (S) e R (T) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
Collegare con i fori per le viti superiori, sotto le piastre di fissaggio F (S) e R (T).

[将装订器安装至全彩色机器时]
安装固定板和连接板

48. 各用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（V）将固定板 F（S）和 R（T）安装至 MFP。
49. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（V）将盖板 AT（U）安装至固定板 F（S）。
50. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（I）将连接板（D）安装至固定板 F（S）和 R（T）。
把固定板 F（S）和 R（T）固定在上侧的螺丝孔处。

[フルカラー機へドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合]
固定板と連結板の取り付け

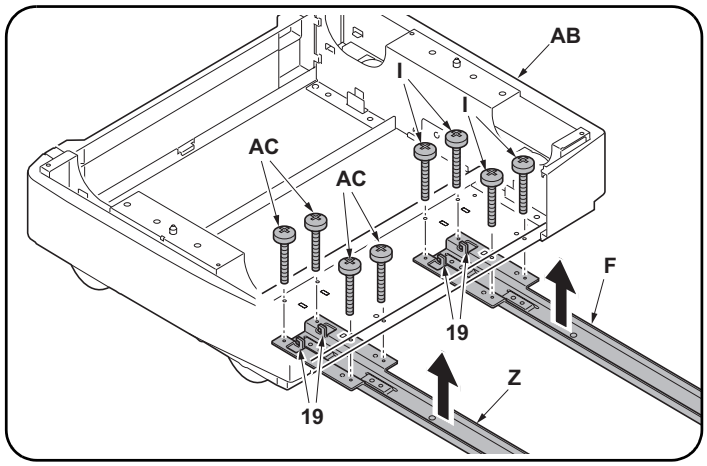
48. MFP 本体に固定板 F(S) と固定板 R(T) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(V) 各 2 本で取り付ける。
49. 固定板 F(S) にカバーAT(U) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(V)2 本で取り付ける。
50. 固定板 F(S) と固定板 R(T) に連結板 (D) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I)2 本で取り付ける。
固定板 F(S) と固定板 R(T) の上側のビス穴で固定すること。



Disassembling the base slider

51. Remove the two screws (17) from the base slider A (F) to remove the stay foot (18).

52. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.
When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 53
When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 60



Installing the base slider

When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

53. Insert base slider V (Z) and base slider A (F) under the assembly base (AB) and hook the tabs (19).

54. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (Z) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (AC) respectively.

Démontage de la règle de base

51. Retirer les deux vis (17) de la règle de base A (F) pour retirer le pied de la retenue (18).

52. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.
Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 53
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 60

Installation de la règle de base

Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

53. Insérer la règle de base V (Z) et la règle de base A (F) sous la base d'ensemble (AB) et accrocher les languettes (19).

54. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (Z) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (AC) respectivement.

Desmontaje del deslizador de base

51. Quite los dos tornillos (17) del deslizador A (F) para quitar la pata de apoyo (18).

52. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo del tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.
Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 53
Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 60

Instalación del deslizador de base

Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

53. Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z) y el deslizador de base A (F) debajo de la base del conjunto (AB) y enganche las lengüetas (19).

54. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base V (Z) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (AC) respectivamente.

Zerlegen des Basis-Schiebers

51. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (17) vom Basis-Schieber A (F), um den Strebenfuß (18) auszubauen.

52. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.
Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 53 weiter.
Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 60 weiter.

Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

53. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) und den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter die Bauteile-Basis (AB), und haken Sie die Klinken (19) ein.

54. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) sowie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (AC).

Smontaggio dello scivolo di base

51. Togliere le due viti (17) dallo scivolo di base A (F) per rimuovere il piedino di bloccaggio (18).

52. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.
In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 53
In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 60

Installazione dello scivolo di base

In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

53. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z) e lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la base di assemblaggio (AB) e agganciare le linguette (19).

54. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (Z) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (AC).

拆卸底座滑板

51. 取下底座滑板 A（F）上的 2 颗螺丝（17）以便拆下支脚（18）。
52. 根据 MFP 或打印机上安装的供纸盒类型，执行下列相应的步骤。
使用 2 个 500 张供纸盒时：转至步骤 53
使用 3000 张供纸盒时：转至步骤 60

安装底座滑板

使用 2 个 500 张供纸盒时

53. 将底座滑板 V（Z）和底座滑板 A（F）插至组装底座（AB）的下方并挂上簧片（19）。
54. 分别使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（I）和（AC）固定底座滑板 A（F）和 V（Z）。

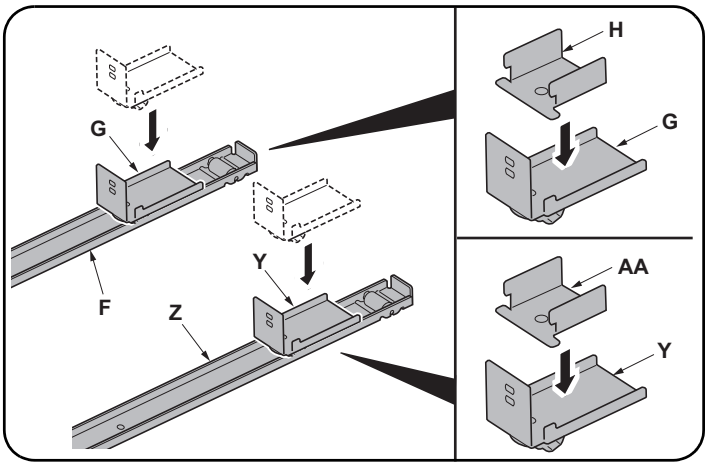
ベーススライダの分解

51. ベーススライダ A(F) のビス 2 本 (17) を外し、ステイフット (18) を取り外す。
52. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。
500 枚× 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 53 へ
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 60 へ

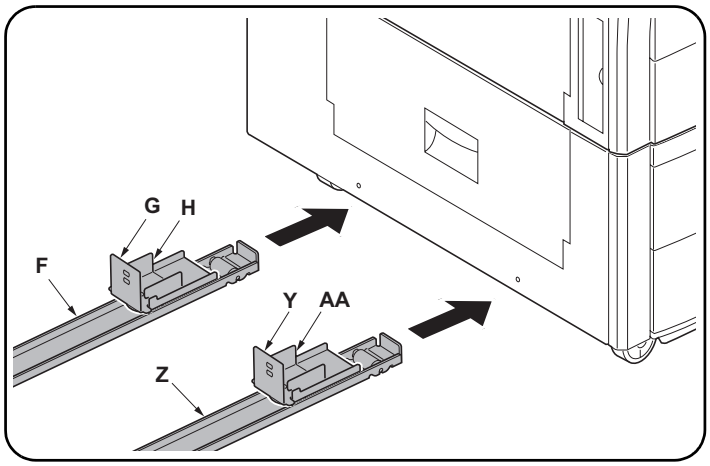
ベーススライダの取り付け

500 枚× 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

53. 組立ベース (AB) の下にベーススライダ V(Z) と、ベーススライダ A(F) を差込み、ツメ (19) を引っ掛ける。
54. ベーススライダ A(F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I)4 本で、ベーススライダ V(Z) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(AC)4 本でそれぞれ固定する。



55. Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (Y) onto base slider V (Z).
56. Put plate (H) onto base slider B (G). In the same way, put plate (AA) onto base slider B (Y).



57. Insert base slider A (F), base slider B (G) and plate (H) into the lower left of the paper feeder.
58. Insert base slider V (Z), base slider B (Y) and plate (AA) into the lower right of the paper feeder.

---

55. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base B (Y) en place sur la règle de base V (Z).
56. Poser la plaque (H) sur la règle de base B (G). En procédant de la même manière, poser la plaque (AA) sur la règle de base B (Y).

57. Insérer la règle de base A (F), la règle de base B (G) et la plaque (H) en bas et à gauche de l'alimenteur de papier.
58. Insérer la règle de base V (Z), la règle de base B (Y) et la plaque (AA) en bas et à droite de l'alimenteur de papier.

---

55. Ponga el deslizador de base B (G) sobre el deslizador de base A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (Y) sobre el deslizador de base V (Z).
56. Coloque la placa (H) sobre el deslizador de base B (G). De la misma forma, ponga la placa (AA) sobre el deslizador de base B (Y).

57. Inserte el deslizador de base A (F), el deslizador de base B (G) y la placa (H) en la parte inferior izquierda del alimentador de papel.
58. nserte el deslizador de base V (Z), el deslizador de base B (Y) y la placa (AA) en la parte inferior derecha del alimentador de papel.

---

55. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Stecken Sie desgleichen den Basis-Schieber B (Y) auf den Basis-Schieber V (Z).
56. Setzen Sie die Platte (H) auf den Basis-Schieber B (G). Stecken Sie desgleichen die Platte (AA) auf den Basis-Schieber B (Y).

57. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F), den Basis-Schieber B (G) und die Platte (H) in den linken unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.
58. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z), den Basis-Schieber B (Y) und die Platte (AA) in den rechten unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.

---

55. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Alla stessa maniera, collocare lo scivolo di base B (Y) sullo scivolo di base V (Z).
56. Collocare la piastra (H) sullo scivolo di base B (G). Alla stessa maniera, collocare la piastra (AA) sullo scivolo di base B (Y).

57. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F), lo scivolo di base B (G) e la piastra (H) nel lato sinistro inferiore dell'alimentatore di carta.
58. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z), lo scivolo di base B (Y) e la piastra (AA) nel lato destro inferiore dell'alimentatore di carta.

---

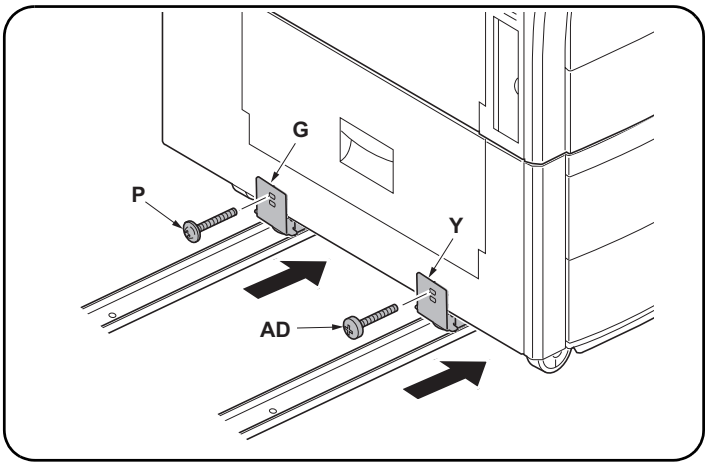
55. 将底座滑板 B（G）置于底座滑板 A（F）上。以同样的方式将底座滑板 B（Y）至于底座滑板 V（Z）上。
56. 将板（H）至于底座滑板 B（G）上。以同样的方式将板（AA）至于底座滑板 B（Y）上。

57. 将底座滑板 A（F）、底座滑板 B（G）和板（H）插入供纸盒的左下侧。
58. 将底座滑板 V（Z）、底座滑板 B（Y）和板（AA）插入供纸盒的右下侧。

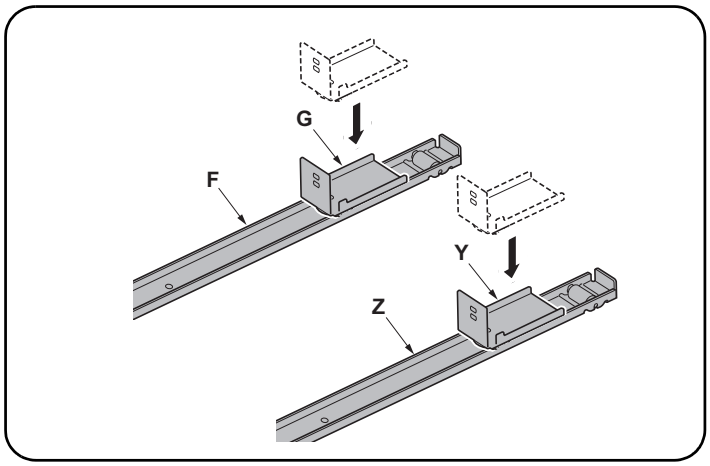
---

55. ベーススライダ A(F) にベーススライダ B(G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V(Z) にベーススライダ B(Y) を置く。
56. ベーススライダ B(G) にプレート (H) を置く。同様にベーススライダ B(Y) にプレート (AA) を置く。

57. ベーススライダ A(F) とベーススライダ B(G)/ プレート (H) をペーパーフィーダの左下へ差し込む。
58. ベーススライダ V(Z) とベーススライダ B(Y)/ プレート (AA) をペーパーフィーダの右下に差し込む。



59. Secure base slider B (G) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) and base slider B (Y) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (AD). Put the M4 x 14TP coarse thread screws (P, AD) through the upper holes of base sliders B (G, Y).



When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used

60. Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (Y) onto base slider V (Z).

---

59. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) et la règle de base B (Y) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (AD).
aire passer les vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P, AD) dans les trous supérieurs des règles de base B (G, Y).

Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

60. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base B (Y) en place sur la règle de base V (Z).

---

59. Asegure el deslizador de base B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) y el deslizador de base B (Y) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (AD).
nserte los tornillos de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P, AD) a través del los orificios superiores de los deslizadores de base B (G, Y).

Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas

60. Ponga el deslizador de base B (G) sobre el deslizador de base A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (Y) sobre el deslizador de base V (Z).

---

59. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) und den Basis-Schieber B (Y) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (AD).
Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschrauben (P, AD) durch die oberen Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G, Y).

Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

60. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Stecken Sie desgleichen den Basis-Schieber B (Y) auf den Basis-Schieber V (Z).

---

59. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P), e lo scivolo di base B (Y) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (AD).
Collocare le viti con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P, AD) attraverso i fori superiori degli scivoli di base B (G, Y).

In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

60. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Alla stessa maniera, collocare lo scivolo di base B (Y) sullo scivolo di base V (Z).

---

59. 分别使用 1 颗 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P）和（AD）固定底座滑板 B（G）和（Y）。
将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P、AD）穿过底座滑板 B（G、Y）的上部孔。

使用 3000 张供纸盒时

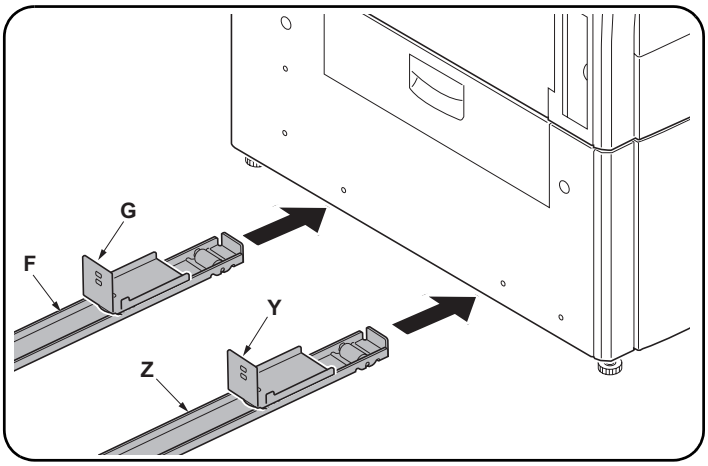
60. 将底座滑板 B（G）置于底座滑板 A（F）上。以同样的方式将底座滑板 B（Y）至于底座滑板 V（Z）上。

---

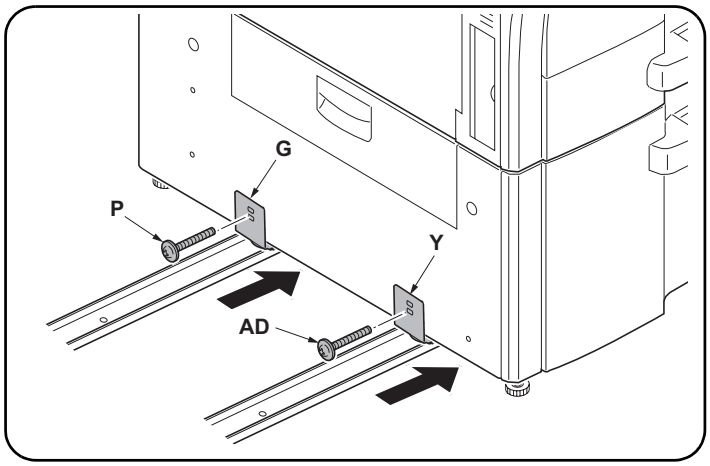
59. ベーススライダ B(G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P)1 本で、ベーススライダ B(Y) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (AD)1 本でそれぞれ固定する。
ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P), (AD) は、ベーススライダ B(G), (Y) の上の穴に通すこと。

3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合

60. ベーススライダ A(F) にベーススライダ B(G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V(Z) にベーススライダ B(Y) を置く。



61. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the paper feeder.
62. Insert base slider V (Z) and base slider B (Y) into the lower right of the paper feeder.



63. Secure base slider B (G) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (P) and base slider B (Y) with a M4 x 14TP coarse thread screw (AD).
Put the M4 x 14TP coarse thread screws (P, AD) through the lower holes of base sliders B (G, Y).

---

61. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) en bas et à gauche de l'alimenteur de papier.
62. Insérer la règle de base V (Z) et la règle de base B (Y) en bas et à droite de l'alimenteur de papier.

63. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P) et la règle de base B (Y) à l'aide d'une vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (AD).
Faire passer les vis M4 x 14TP à filet normal (P, AD) dans les trous inférieurs des règles de base B (G, Y).

---

61. Inserte el deslizador de base A (F) y el deslizador de base B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda del alimentador de papel.
62. Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z) y el deslizador de base B (Y) en la parte inferior derecha del alimentador de papel.

63. Asegure el deslizador de base B (G) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P) y el deslizador de base B (Y) con un tornillo de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (AD).
nserte los tornillos de rosca gruesa M4 x 14TP (P, AD) a través de los orificios inferiores de los deslizadores de base B (G, Y).

---

61. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) in den linken unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.
62. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) und den Basis-Schieber B (Y) in den rechten unteren Bereich des Papiervorschubs.

63. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (P) und den Basis-Schieber B (Y) mit einer M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschraube (AD).
Stecken Sie die M4 x 14 TP Grobgewindeschrauben (P, AD) durch die unteren Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G, Y).

---

61. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nel lato inferiore sinistro dell'alimentatore di carta.
62. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z) e lo scivolo di base B (Y) nel lato inferiore destro dell'alimentatore di carta.

63. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P), e lo scivolo di base B (Y) con una vite con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (AD).
Collocare le viti con filettatura a passo grosso M4 x 14TP (P, AD) attraverso i fori inferiori degli scivoli di base B (G, Y).

---

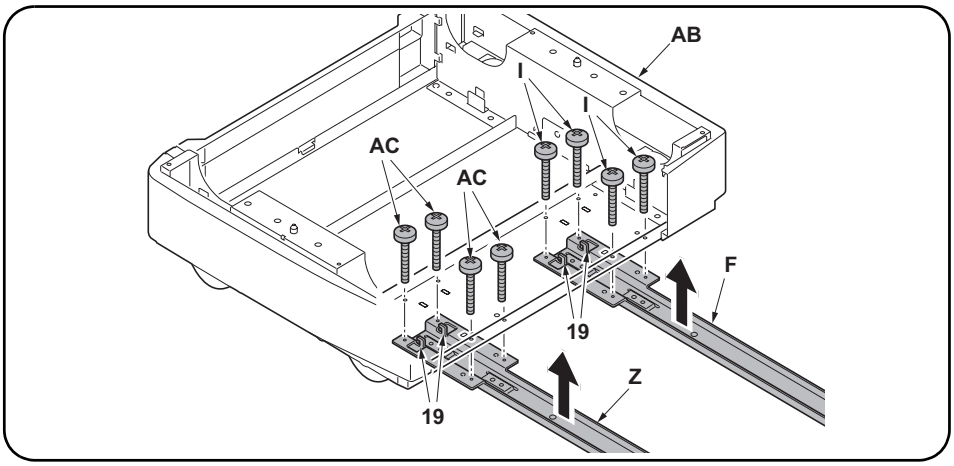
61. 将底座滑板 A（F）和底座滑板 B（G）插入供纸盒的左下侧。
62. 将底座滑板 V（Z）和底座滑板 B（Y）插入供纸盒的左下侧。

63. 分别用 1 颗 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P）和（AD）固定底座滑板 B（G）和 B（Y）。
将 M4 × 14TP 粗牙螺丝（P、AD）穿过底座滑板 B（G、Y）的下部孔。

---

61. ベーススライダ A(F) とベーススライダ B(G) をペーパーフィーダの左下へ差し込む。
62. ベーススライダ V(Z) とベーススライダ B(Y) をペーパーフィーダの右下に差し込む。

63. ベーススライダ B(G) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P)1 本で、ベーススライダ B(Y) をビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (AD)1 本でそれぞれ固定する。
ビス M4 × 14TP 並目 (P), (AD) は、ベーススライダ B(G), (Y) の下の穴に通すこと。



64. Insert base slider V (Z) and base slider A (F) under the assembly base (AB) and hook the tabs (19).
65. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (Z) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (AC) respectively.

---

64. Insérer la règle de base V (Z) et la règle de base A (F) sous la base d'ensemble (AB) et accrocher les languettes (19).
65. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (Z) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (AC) respectivement.

---

64. Inserte el deslizador de base V (Z) y el deslizador de base A (F) debajo de la base de conjunto (AB) y enganche las lengüetas (19).
65. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base V (Z) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (AC) respectivamente.

---

64. Stecken Sie den Basis-Schieber V (Z) und den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter die Bauteile-Basis (AB), und haken Sie die Klinken (19) ein.
65. Befestigen den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I), und befestigen Sie danach den Basis-Schieber V (Z) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (AC).

---

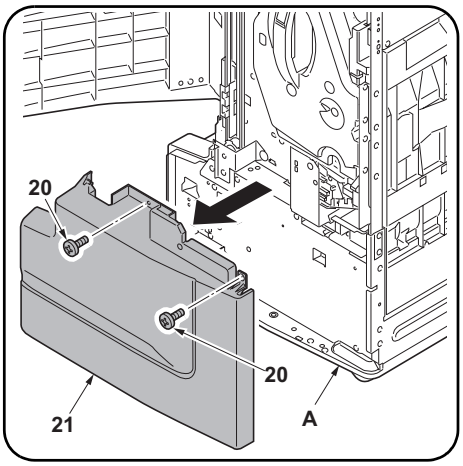
64. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (Z) e lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la base di assemblaggio (AB) e agganciare le linguette (19).
65. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (Z) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (AC).

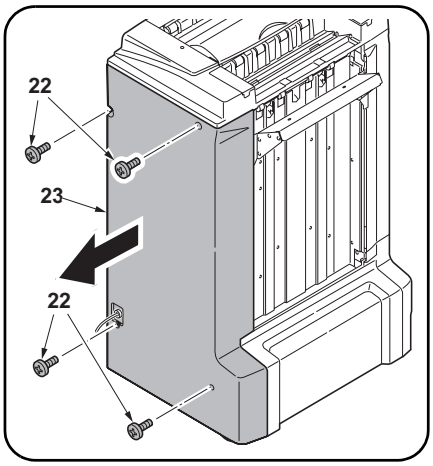
---

64. 将底座滑板 V（Z）和底座滑板 A（F）插至组装底座（AB）的下方并挂上簧片（19）。
65. 分别使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（I）和（AC）固定底座滑板 A（F）和 V（Z）。

---

64. 組立ベース（AB）の下にベーススライダ V(Z) と、ベーススライダ A(F) を差込み、ツメ（19）を引っ掛ける。
65. ベーススライダ A(F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I)4 本で、ベーススライダ V(Z) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(AC)4 本でそれぞれ固定する。





Removing the cover

66. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
67. Remove two screws (20) to remove the lower front cover (21).
68. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
69. Remove four screws (22) to remove the back cover (23) from the document finisher (A).

Enlèvement du capot

66. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
67. Retirer les deux vis (20) pour retirer le capot inférieur avant (21).
68. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
69. Retirer quatre vis (22) pour retirer le capot arrière (23) du retoucheur de document (A).

Extracción de la cubierta

66. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
67. Quite los dos tornillos (20) para quitar la cubierta delantera inferior (21).
68. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
69. Quite los cuatro tornillos (22) para quitar la cubierta trasera (23) del finalizador de documentos (A).

Entfernen der Abdeckung

66. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung am Dokument-Finisher (A).
67. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (20), um die untere vordere Abdeckung (21) zu entfernen.
68. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
69. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (22), um die hintere Abdeckung (23) vom Dokument-Finisher (A) abzunehmen.

Rimozione del pannello

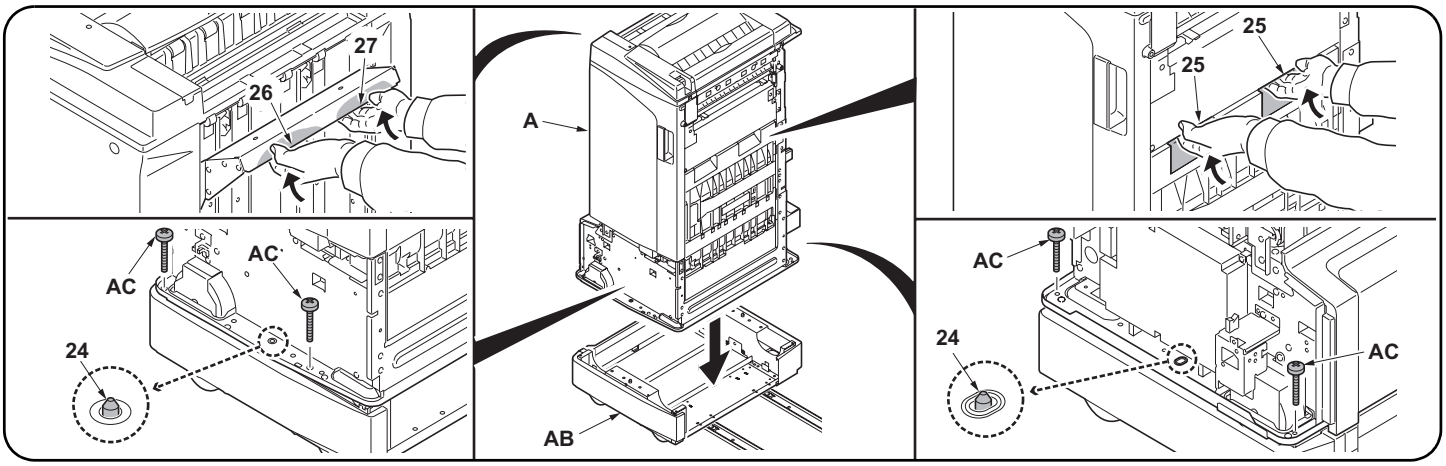
66. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
67. Togliere due viti (20) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (21).
68. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
69. Togliere quattro viti (22) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (23) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

拆下盖板

66. 打开装订器(A)的前盖板。
67. 取下 2 颗螺丝(20)以便拆下前下盖板(21)。
68. 关闭装订器(A)的前盖板。
69. 从装订器(A)上取下 4 颗螺丝(22)以便拆下后盖板(23)。

カバーの取り外し

66. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の前カバーを開く。
67. ビス (20)2 本外し、前下カバー(21) を取り外す。
68. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の前カバーを閉じる。
69. ビス (22)4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の後カバー(23) を取り外す。



Installing the assembly base (Be sure to perform this by two service personnel)

70. Align the projection (24) on the assembly base (AB) with the hole of the document finisher (A) and place the document finisher (A) on the assembly base (AB).
Lift up the document finisher (A) by two service personnel simultaneously by one to hold (25) and the other to hold (26) and (27). Be sure to perform this step by two service personnel, not by one personnel.

71. Fix the document finisher (A) to the assembly base (AB) using four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (AC).

Installation de la base d'ensemble (Bien faire procéder à cette opération simultanément par deux agents d'entretien.)

70. Aligner la saillie (24) de la base d'ensemble (AB) sur l'orifice du retoucheur de document (A) et mettre le retoucheur de document (A) en place sur la base d'ensemble (AB).
Faire soulever le retoucheur de document (A) par deux employés de service ensemble, l'un tenant (25) et l'autre Tenant (26) et (27). Veiller à ce que cette étape soit effectuée par deux employés de service et non par un seul.

71. Fixer le retoucheur de document (A) sur la base d'ensemble (AB) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (AC).

Instalación de la base del conjunto (Asegúrese de que este procedimiento lo realicen dos personas del personal de servicio)

70. Alinee el resalto (24) de la base del conjunto (AB) con el agujero del finalizador de documentos (A) y ponga el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (AB).
El finalizador de documentos (A) deberá ser levantado simultáneamente por dos personas del personal de servicio, una de ellas sujetando la parte (25) y la otra las partes (26) y (27). Asegúrese de que este paso lo lleven a cabo dos personas del personal de servicio, no una sola.

71. Fije el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (AB) utilizando cuatro tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (AC).

Anbringen der Bauteil-Basis (Diese Arbeit sollte unbedingt von zwei Personen ausgeführt werden.)

70. Richten Sie den Vorsprung (24) auf der Bauteile-Basis (AB) mit dem Loch im Dokument-Finisher (A) aus, und setzen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) danach auf die Bauteile-Basis (AB).
Heben Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) zusammen mit einer zweiten Person gleichzeitig an. Eine Person hält die Stelle (25) fest, während die andere Person die Stellen (26) und (27) festhält. Führen Sie diesen Schritt unbedingt mit zwei Personen durch.

71. Befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) an die Bauteile-Basis (AB) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (AC).

Installazione della base di assemblaggio (Assicurarsi di eseguire questa installazione in due persone)

70. Allineare la parte sporgente (24) della base di assemblaggio (AB) al foro della finitrice di documenti (A) e collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) sopra la base di assemblaggio (AB).
Due membri del personale sollevino la finitrice di documenti (A) simultaneamente, uno reggendo (25) e l'altro reggendo (26) e (27). Assicurarsi che ad eseguire questo punto siano due membri del personale e non una persona sola.

71. Fissare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla base di assemblaggio (AB) utilizzando quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (AC).

安装组装底座（务必由两名维修人员执行此操作）

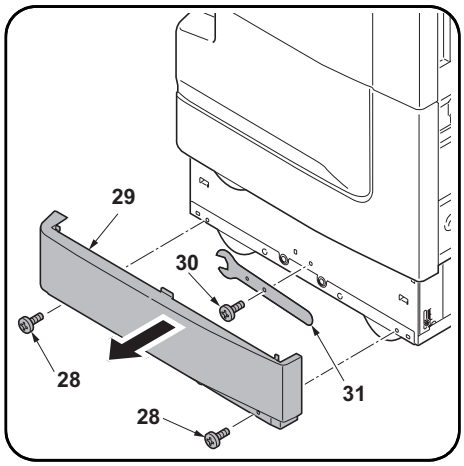
70. 将组装底座（AB）上的突出部（13）对准装订器（A）的孔，并将装订器（A）至于组装底座（AB）上。
由两名维修人员同时抬起装订器（A），一人抓握（14）所示的位置，另一人抓握（15）和（16）所示的位置。务必由两名维修人员执行此步骤，不可单人独自完成。

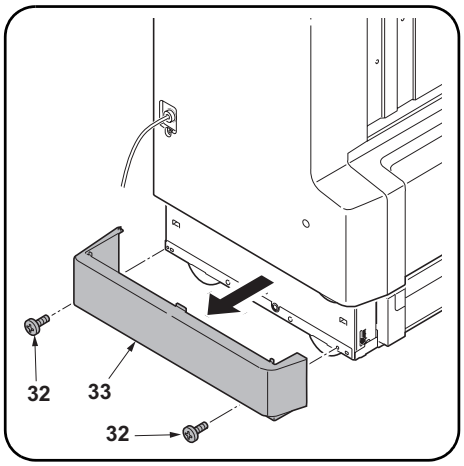
71. 使用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝（AC）将装订器（A）固定至组装底座（AB）。

組立ベースの取り付け（必ず 2 人で行うこと）

70. 組立ベース (AB) の突起 (24) とドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の穴を合わせ、組立ベース (AB) にドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) を乗せる。
1 人が (25) の部分を、もう 1 人が (26), (27) の部分を持ち、2 人で同時にドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) を持ち上げること。
必ず 2 人で作業を行い、1 人では行わないこと。

71. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(AC)4 本で組立ベース (AB) にドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) を固定する。





Installing the cover

72. Use four screws (22) removed from the document finisher in step 69 to reinstall the back cover (23).

73. Use two screws (20) removed from the document finisher in step 67 to reinstall the lower front cover (21).

[Adjusting the document finisher height]

74. Remove the two screws (28) to remove front cover S (29).

75. Remove the screw (30) to remove the spanner (31).

76. Remove the two screws (32) to remove rear cover S (33).

Installation du capot

72. Utiliser cinq vis (22) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 69 pour réinstaller le capot arrière (23).

73. Utiliser deux vis (20) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 67 pour réinstaller le capot inférieur avant (21).

[Ajustement de la hauteur du retoucheur de document]

74. Déposer les deux vis (28) pour enlever le couvercle avant S (29).

75. Déposer la vis (30) pour libérer la clé (31).

76. Déposer les deux vis (32) pour enlever le couvercle arrièret S (33).

Instalación de la cubierta

72. Utilice cuatro tornillos (22) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 69 para volver a instalar la cubierta trasera (23).

73. Utilice dos tornillos (20) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 67 para volver a instalar la cubierta delantera inferior (21).

[Ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

74. Extraiga los dos tornillos (28) para quitar la cubierta frontal S (29).

75. Quite el tornillo (30) para extraer la llave inglesa (31).

76. Extraiga los dos tornillos (32) para quitar la cubierta trasera S (33).

Anbringen der Abdeckung

72. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (22), welche Sie im Schritt 69 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die hintere Abdeckung (23) wieder anzubringen.

73. Verwenden Sie die beiden Schrauben (20), welche Sie im Schritt 67 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die vordere Abdeckung (21) wieder anzubringen.

[Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers]

74. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (28), um die vordere Abdeckung S (29) abzunehmen.

75. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (30), um den Schlüssel (31) abzunehmen.

76. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (32), um die hintere Abdeckung S (33) abzunehmen.

Installazione del pannello

72. Utilizzare le quattro viti (22) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 69 per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (23).

73. Utilizzare le due viti (20) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 67 per reinstallare il pannello inferiore anteriore (21).

[Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti]

74. Rimuovere le due viti (28) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore S (29).

75. Rimuovere la vite (30) per rimuovere la chiave (31).

76. Rimuovere le due viti (32) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore S (33).

安装盖板

72. 用在步骤 69 中从装订器上取下的 4 颗螺丝（22）重新安装后盖板（23）。

73. 用在步骤 67 中从装订器上取下的 2 颗螺丝（20）重新安装前下盖板（21）。

[调节装订器高度]

74. 取下 2 颗螺丝（28）以便拆下前盖板 S（29）。

75. 取下螺丝（30）以便拆下扳手（31）。

76. 取下 2 颗螺丝（32）以便拆下后盖板 S（33）。

カバーの取り付け

72. 手順 69 で外した後カバー(23) をビス (22)4 本で元通り取り付ける。

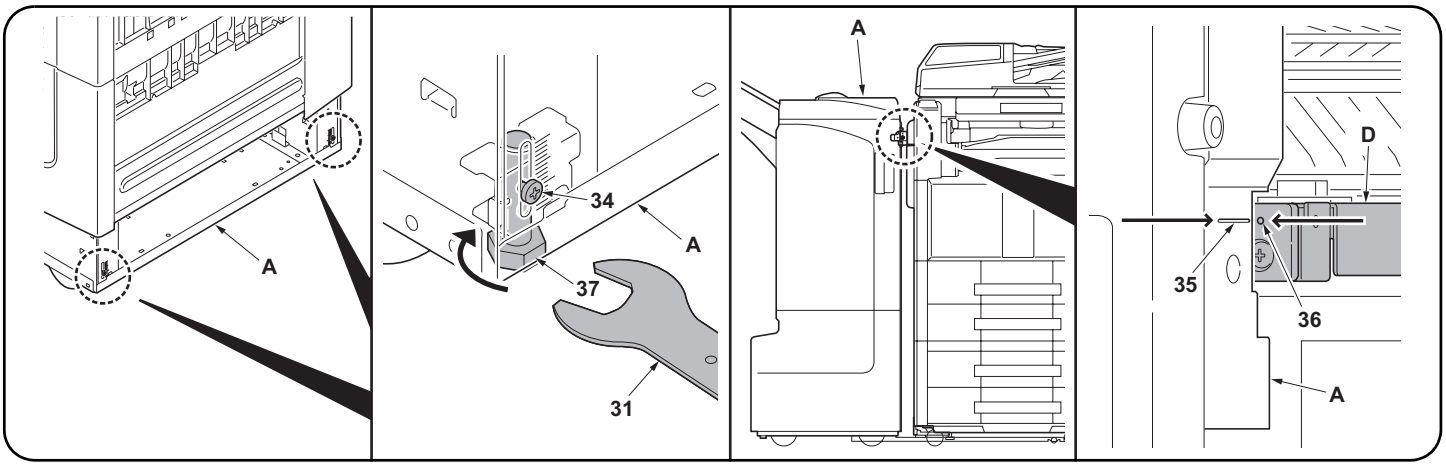
73. 手順 67 で外した前下カバー(21) をビス (20)2 本で元通り取り付ける。

[ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

74. ビス (28)2 本を外し、カバー前 S(29) を取り外す。

75. ビス (30)1 本を外し、スパナ (31) を取り外す。

76. ビス (32)2 本を外し、カバー後 S(33) を取り外す。



77. Loosen the fixing screw (34) on the front right and rear right of the document finisher (A).
78. Adjust the height of the document finisher (A) by turning the bolt (37) using the spanner (31) so that the hole (36) on the side of the connecting plate (D) on the MFP levels with the rib (35) on the document finisher (A) when the connection is seen from the front.
The document finisher lowers when you turn the bolt (37) in the direction of the arrow.
79. When you have finished adjusting the height, tighten the fixing screw (34) on the front right and rear right of the document finisher (A).

---

77. Desserrer la vis de fixation (34) à l'avant droit et à l'arrière droit du retoucheur de document (A).
78. Ajuster la heuteur du retoucheur de document (A) par rotation du boulon (37) avec la clé (31) de sorte que le trou (36) sur le côté de la plaque de connexion (D) du MFP soit de niveau avec le repère (35) sur le retoucheur de document (A) quand le montage est vu depuis l'avant.
Le retoucheur de document descend quand le boulon (37) est tourné dans la direction de la flèche.
79. Une fois la hauteur réglée, resserrer la vis de fixation (34) à l'avant droit et à l'arrière droit du retoucheur de document (A).

---

77. Afloje el tornillo de fijación (34) en la parte frontal derecha y trasera derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
78. Ajuste la altura del finalizador de documentos (A) girando el perno (37) con la llave inglesa (31) de forma tal que el orificio (36) en el lado de la placa de conexión (D) en el MFP quede nivelado con la nervadura (35) del finalizador de documentos (A) mirando la conexión desde el frente.
El finalizador de documentos baja cuando gira el perno (37) en la dirección que muestra la flecha.
79. Cuando haya terminado de ajustar la altura, apriete el tornillo de fijación (34) en la parte frontal derecha y trasera derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

---

77. Lösen Sie die Befestigungsschraube (34) vorne rechts und hinten rechts am Dokument Finisher (A).
78. tellen Sie die Höhe des Dokument Finishers (A) ein, indem Sie mit dem Schlüssel (31) die Schraube (37) so weit verstellen, dass das Loch (36) auf der Seite der Anschlussplatte (D) auf dem MFP mit der Rippe (35) am Dokument Finisher (A) fluchtet, wenn man vorne auf den Anschluss blickt.
Der Dokument Finisher wird fesenkt, wenn man die Schraube (37) in der Pfeilrichtung dreht.
79. Ziehen Sie die Befestigungsschraube (34) vorne rechts und hinten rechts am Dokument Finisher (A) an, nachdem Sie die Höhe korrigiert haben.

---

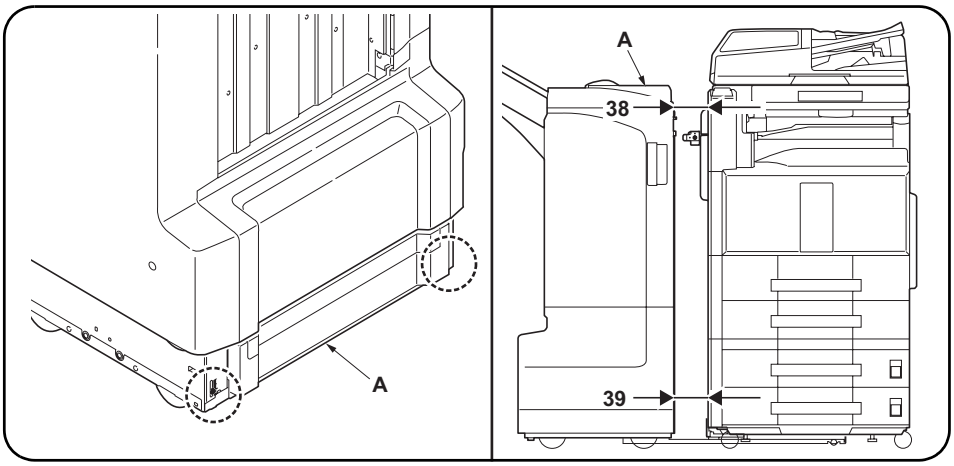
77. Allentare la vite di fissaggio (34) alla parte destra anteriore e posteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
78. Regolare l'altezza della finitrice di documenti (A) ruotando il bullone (37) utilizzando la chiave (31), in modo che il foro (36) sul lato della piastra di connessione (D) sull'MFP sia a livello con il segno in rilievo (35) sulla finitrice di documenti (A) quando la connessione viene vista frontalmente.
La finitrice di documenti si abbassa quando si ruota il bullone (37) nella direzione della freccia.
79. Quando si è completata la regolazione dell'altezza, stringere la vite di fissaggio (34) alla parte destra anteriore e posteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

---

77. 拧松装订器(A)右前侧和右后侧的固定螺丝(34)。
78. 使用扳手(31)转动螺栓(37)以调节装订器(A)的高度，使 MFP 上的连接板(D)一侧的孔(36)与装订器(A)上的肋片(35)对齐(从正面观察)。
沿箭头所示方向转动螺栓(37)可降低装订器高度。
79. 完成高度调节后，拧紧装订器(A)右前侧和右后侧的固定螺丝(34)。

---

77. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の右前および右後の固定ビス(34)を緩める。
78. 連結部を前から見た時に、MFP 本体の連結板(D)側面の穴(36)とドキュメントフィニシャ(A)のリブ(35)の高さが合うように、スパナ(31)でボルト(37)を回し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の高さを調整する。
ボルト(37)は、矢印方向に回すほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが低くなる。
79. 高さ調整が終了したら、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の右前および右後の固定ビス(34)を締める。



80. Adjust the height of the front left and rear left in the same way as steps 77 to 79 so that the gaps (38, 39) are equal to each other when the document finisher (A) and the MFP are connected together.
81. Replace rear cover S (33) removed in step 76 using the two screws (32).
82. Replace the spanner (31) removed in step 75 using the screw (30).
83. Replace front cover S (29) removed in step 74 using the two screws (28).

---

80. Ajuster la hauteur à l'avant et à l'arrière gauche en procédant de la même manière qu'aux étapes 77 à 79 de sorte que l'écartement (38, 39) soit le même de chaque côté quand le retoucheur de document (A) et le MFP sont connectés l'un à l'autre.
81. Reposer le couvercle arrière S (33) déposé à l'étape 76 et le fixer à l'aide de deux vis (32).
82. Remettre en place la clé (31) déposée à l'étape 75 et la fixer à l'aide de sa vis (30).
83. Reposer le couvercle avant S (29) déposé à l'étape 74 et le fixer à l'aide de deux vis (28).

---

80. Ajuste la altura de las partes frontal izquierda y trasera izquierda de la misma forma que indican los pasos 77 a 79, de forma tal que las separaciones (38, 39) sean iguales cuando se conecten el finalizador de documentos (A) y el MFP
81. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera S (33) quitada en el paso 76, utilizando los dos tornillos (32).
82. Coloque en su lugar la llave inglesa (31) extraída en el paso 75, por medio del tornillo (30).
83. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta frontal S (29) quitada en el paso 74, utilizando los dos tornillos (28).

---

80. Stellen Sie die Höhe vorne links und hinten links auf die gleiche Weise wie bei Schritt 77 bis 79 ein, so dass die Abstände (38, 39) gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) und der MFP miteinander verbunden sind.
81. Bringen Sie mit den zwei Schrauben (32) wieder die bei Schritt 76 abgenommene hintere Abdeckung S (33) an.
82. Bringen Sie mit der Schraube (30) wieder den bei Schritt 75 abgenommenen Schlüssel (31) an.
83. Bringen Sie mit den zwei Schrauben (28) wieder die bei Schritt 74 abgenommene vordere Abdeckung S (29) an.

---

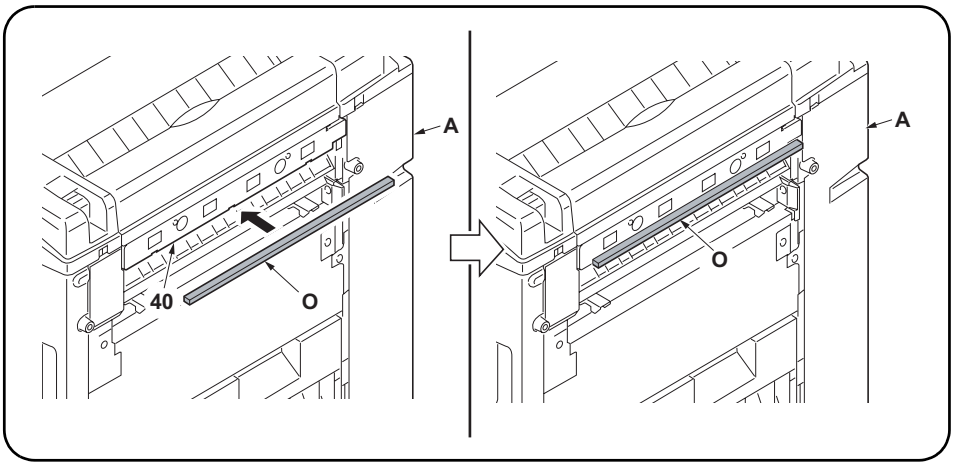
80. Regolare l'altezza del lato sinistro anteriore e posteriore alla stessa maniera come riportato nei passi da 77 a 79, in modo che gli spazi (38, 39) siano uguali tra loro quando la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP sono collegati insieme.
81. Ricollocare il pannello posteriore S (33) rimosso al passo 76 utilizzando le due viti (32).
82. Ricollocare la chiave (31) rimossa al passo 75 utilizzando la vite (30).
83. Ricollocare il pannello anteriore S (29) rimosso al passo 74 utilizzando le due viti (28).

---

80. 以与步骤 77 至 79 相同的方式调节左前方和左后方的高度，使相互连接的装订器（A）和 MFP 之间的间隙（31、32）相等。
81. 使用 2 颗螺丝（32）重新安装在步骤 76 中拆下的后盖板 S（33）。
82. 使用螺丝（30）重新安装在步骤 75 中拆下的扳手（31）。
83. 使用 2 颗螺丝（28）重新安装在步骤 74 中拆下的前盖板 S（29）。

---

80. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) と MFP 本体を連結したときに、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) と MFP 本体の間隔 (38) および (39) が等しくなるように手順 77 ～ 79 と同様にして、左前、左後の高さ調整をおこなう。
81. 手順 76 で取り外したカバー後 S(33) をビス (32)2 本で元通り取り付ける。
82. 手順 75 で取り外したスパナ (31) をビス (30)1 本で元通り取り付ける。
83. 手順 74 で取り外したカバー前 S(29) をビス (28)2 本で元通り取り付ける。



Installing the sponge

84. Clean the sheet metal section under the upper cover (40) of the document finisher (A) with alcohol.

85. Peel the release paper off the sponge (O) and adhere the sponge as shown in the illustration.

Installation de l'éponge

84. Nettoyer la partie en feuille de métal du capot supérieur (40) du retoucheur de document (A) avec de l'alcool.

85. Arracher le papier de protection de l'éponge (O) et coller l'éponge comme illustré ici.

Instalación de la esponja

84. Limpie con alcohol la sección de la hoja metálica situada debajo de la cubierta superior (40) del finalizador de documentos (A).

85. Despegue el papel de la esponja (O) y pegue la esponja como se muestra en la ilustración.

Anbringen des Schwamms

84. Reinigen Sie den Metallbereich unter der oberen Abdeckung (40) des Dokument-Finishers (A) mit Alkohol.

85. Ziehen Sie die Klebeschutzfolie vom Schwamm (O) ab, und kleben Sie den Schwamm wie dargestellt an.

Installazione della spugna

84. Pulire con alcool la sezione in lamiera sotto il pannello superiore (40) della finitrice di documenti (A).

85. Staccare la carta protettiva dalla spugna (O) e far aderire la spugna come mostrato nell'illustrazione.

安装海绵

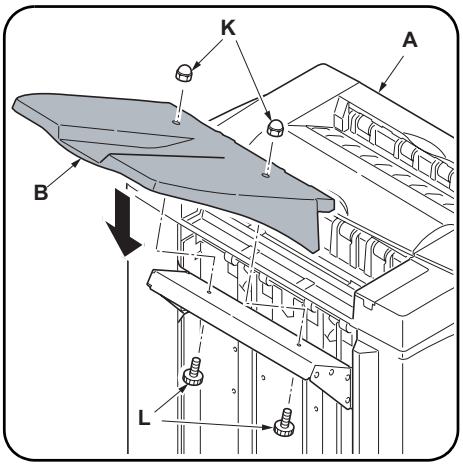
84. 使用酒精清洁装订器（A）上盖板（40）下方的金属板部位。

85. 剥离海绵（0）上的隔离纸，将海绵粘至如图所示位置。

スポンジの貼り付け

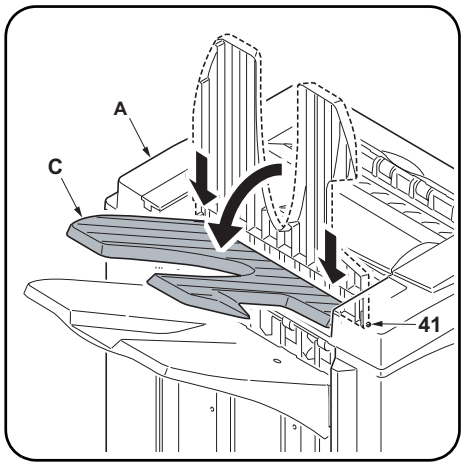
84. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の上カバー(40)の下の板金部をアルコール清掃する。

85. スポンジ(0)の剥離紙を剥ぎ取り、イラストのように貼り付ける。

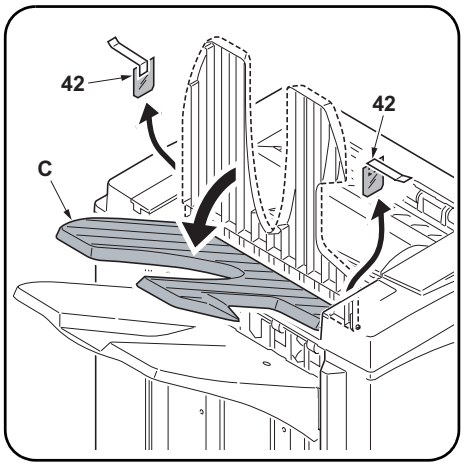


Installing the trays

86. Use two nuts (K) and two pins (L) to install the tray A (B) to the document finisher (A).



87.. the right and left projections (41) of the tray B (C) onto the document finisher (A) from its top.Fit the tray with the Lumiror films (42) remaining attached.



88. Lower tray B (C) and remove the two Lumiror films (42).

Installation des bacs

86. Utiliser deux écrous (K) et deux broches (L) pour installer le bac A (B) sur le retoucheur de document (A).

87. Fixer les saillies droite et gauche (41) du bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A) depuis le haut.
Insérer le bac avec les films Lumiror (42) bien en place.

88. Abaisser le bac B (C) et enlever les deux films Lumiror (42).

Instalación de las bandejas

86. Utilice dos tuercas (K) y dos pasadores (L) para instalar la bandeja A (B) en el finalizador de documentos (A).

87. Coloque los resaltos derecho e izquierdo (41) de la bandeja B (C) sobre el finalizador de documentos (A) desde su parte superior. Inserte la bandeja con las películas Lumiror (42) colocadas.

88. Baje la bandeja B (C) y quite las dos películas Lumiror (42).

Anbringen der Fächer

86. Verwenden Sie die beiden Muttern (K) und die beiden Stifte (L), um das Fach A (B) in den Dokument-Finisher (A) einzubauen.

87. Setzen Sie die rechten und linken Vorsprünge (41) des Fachs B (C) von oben auf den Dokument-Finisher (A).
Setzen Sie das Fach mit noch angebrachten Lumiror-Folien (42) ein.

88. Senken Sie das Fach B (C), und entfernen Sie die beiden Lumiror-Folien (42).

Installazione dei vassoi

86. Utilizzare due dadi (K) e due perni (L) per installare il vassoio A (B) alla finitrice di documenti (A).

87. Inserire dall'alto della finitrice di documenti (A) le parti sporgenti destra e sinistra (41) del vassoio B (C) nella finitrice stessa.
Inserire il vassoio con i film Lumiror (42) annessi.

88. lAbbassare il vassoio B (C) e rimuovere i due film Lumiror (42).

安装托盘

86. 使用 2 颗螺母（K）和 2 个销钉（L）将托盘 A（B）安装至装订器（A）。

87. 将托盘 B（C）左右两侧的突出部（41）固定至装订器（A）的顶部。
使用粘贴在装订器上的导光膜（42）固定托盘。

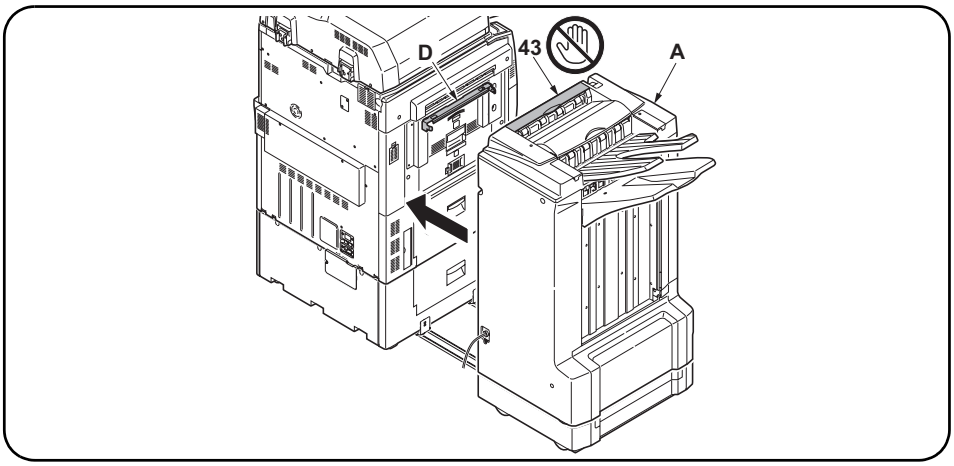
88. 降低托盘 B（C）并拆下 2 条导光膜（42）。

トレイの取り付け

86. ナット (K)2 個とピン (L)2 個でドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) にトレイ A(B) を取り付ける。

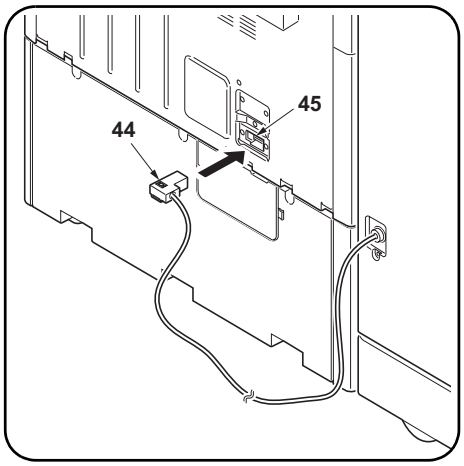
87. トレイ B(C) の左右の突起 (41) をドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) へ上からはめ込む。
ルミラ (42) は剥がさず、付けたままはめ込むこと。

88. トレイ B(C) を倒し、ルミラ (42)2 枚を取り外す。



[Installing the document finisher and the MFP]

89. Slide the document finisher (A) and connect it to the connecting plate (D) on the MFP.
When making the connection, never hold the upper cover (43) of the document finisher (A).



Connecting the signal line

90. Connect the signal line (44) of the document finisher (A) to the connector (45) at the back of the MFP.

[Installation du retoucheur de document et du MFP]

89. Faire glisser le retoucheur de document (A) et le raccorder à la plaque de connexion (D) sur le MFP.
A l'exécution de cette opération, ne jamais tenir le couvercle supérieur (43) du retoucheur de document (A).

Connexion de la ligne d'interconnexion

90. Connecter la ligne d'interconnexion (44) du retoucheur de document (A) au connecteur (45) à l'arrière du MFP

[Instalación del finalizador de documentos y la MFP]

89. Deslice el finalizador de documentos (A) y conéctelo a la placa de conexión (D) en el MFP.
Cuando realice la conexión, nunca sostenga la cubierta superior (43) del finalizador de documentos (A).

Conexión de la línea de señales

90. Conecte la línea de señales (44) del finalizador de documentos (A) al conector (45) de la parte trasera de la MFP.

[Anbringen des Dokument-Finishers und des MFP]

89. Schieben Sie den Dokument Finisher (A) ein, und schließen Sie ihn an die Anschlussplatte (D) am MFP an.
Halten Sie beim Anschließen auf keinen Fall die obere Abdeckung (43) des Dokument Finishers (A) fest.

Anschließen der Signalleitung

90. Schließen Sie die Signalleitung (44) des Dokument-Finishers (A) am Stecker (45) auf der Rückseite des MFP an.

[Installazione della finitrice di documenti e della MFP]

89. Slittare la finitrice di documenti (A) e collegarla alla piastra di connessione (D) sull'MFP.
Quando si esegue il collegamento, non tenere mai il pannello superiore (43) della finitrice di documenti (A).

Connessione del cavo del segnale

90. Collegare il cavo del segnale (44) della finitrice di documenti (A) al connettore (45) sul retro della MFP.

[安装装订器和 MFP]

89. 滑入装订器(A)并将其连接至 MFP 上的连接板(D)。
连接时切勿抓握装订器(A)的上盖板(43)。

连接信号线

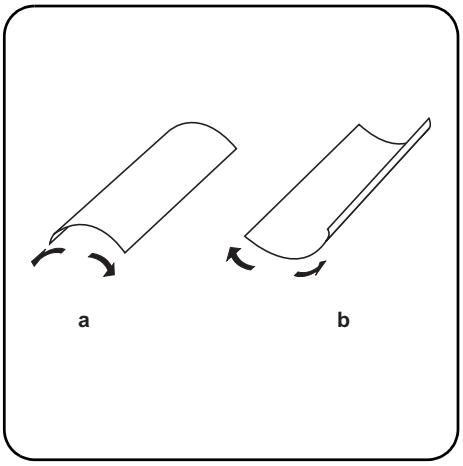
90. 将装订器(A)的信号线(44)连接至 MFP 后面的接口(45)。

[ドキュメントフィニッシャと MFP 本体の取り付け]

89. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) をスライドさせて MFP 本体側の連結板 (D) に連結させる。
連結する際、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の上カバー(43) を絶対に持たないこと。

信号線の接続

90. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の信号線 (44) を MFP 本体後側のコネクタ (45) に接続する。



[Checking the curl]

91. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.

92. Perform a test copy to check the paper is fed.

93. Check the curl of the copy sample, and if the curl is tight, follow the next step to adjust it.

[Vérification de la boucle]

91. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.

92. Effectuer une copie de test pour s'assurer que le papier est alimenté.

93. Vérifier la boucle sur l'échantillon de copie et si la boucle est serrée, suivre l'étape suivante pour l'ajuster.

[Comprobación de la curvatura del papel]

91. Enchufe la MFP a una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.

92. Haga una copia de prueba para asegurarse de que avance el papel.

93. Compruebe la curvatura del papel de la muestra de la copia y si ésta es mucha, siga el paso siguiente para ajustarla.

[Überprüfen der Papierwellung]

91. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an, und aktivieren Sie den Geräteschalter.

92. Machen Sie eine Testkopie, um sich zu vergewissern, dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.

93. Überprüfen Sie die Testkopie auf Wellung. Falls das Papier zu stark aufgerollt ist, folgen Sie dem nächsten Schritt zur Einstellung.

[Controllo dell'arricciatura]

91. Collegare la MFP alla presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.

92. Eseguire una copia di prova per verificare che la carta sia alimentata.

93. Controllare l'arricciatura della copia di prova e, se è notevole, procedere come indicato nel punto successivo per regolarla.

[检查卷曲状态]

91. 插入 MFP 的电源，打开主电源开关。

92. 进行测试复印以检查送纸。

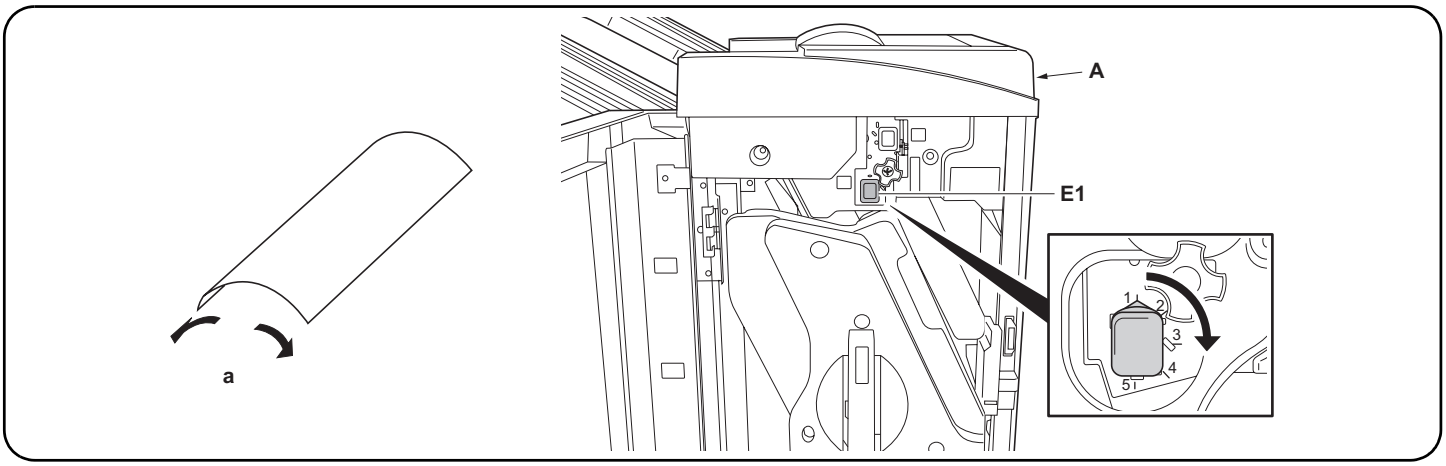
93. 检查复印样本的卷曲状态，如果卷曲严重，按照下一步进行调整。

[カール状態の確認]

91. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。

92. 通紙を確認する。

93. コピーサンプルのカール状態を確認し、カールが大きい場合、次の手順で調整を行う。



Checking the curl

If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-down (a)

94. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
95. Pull the pressure roller bottom adjusting knob E1 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.
96. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
97. Check the paper is fed.
98. Repeat steps 94 to 97 until the paper becomes straight.

Vérification de la boucle

Si on enroule vers le bas les papiers sur la sortie (a)

94. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
95. Tirer la molette de réglage inférieure du rouleau de pression E1 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.
96. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
97. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
98. Répéter les étapes 94 à 97 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

Comprobación de la curvatura

Si el papel de la salida está curvado hacia abajo (a)

94. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
95. Tire del control de ajuste inferior del rodillo de presión E1 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.
96. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
97. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
98. Repita los pasos 94 a 97 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

Überprüfen der Papierwellung

Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass nach unten aufgerollt wird (a)

94. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
95. Ziehen Sie den unteren Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E1 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.
96. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
97. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
98. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 94 bis 97, bis das Papier sich glättet.

Controllo dell'arricciatura

Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso il basso arricciata (a)

94. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
95. Tirare la manopola di regolazione inferiore del rullo di pressione E1 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.
96. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
97. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
98. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 94 al punto 97 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

检查卷曲状态

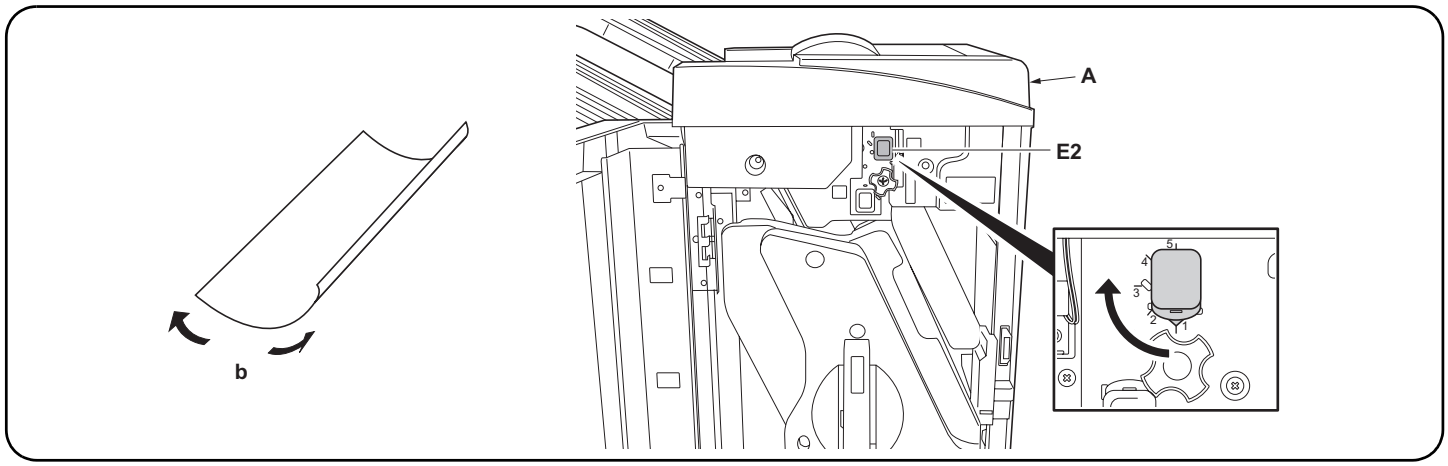
如果输出的纸张正面朝下且卷曲严重（a）

94. 打开装订器（A）的前盖板。
95. 将压辊底部调节旋钮 E1 朝你所在的方向拉，并顺时针旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。
96. 关闭装订器（A）的前盖板。
97. 检查送纸。
98. 重复步骤 94 至 97，直至纸张不再卷曲。

カール状態の調整

排出された用紙のカールが下向きに大きい場合（a）

94. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の前カバーを開く。
95. 加圧ローラ下調整つまみ E1 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。
96. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) の前カバーを閉じる。
97. 通紙を確認する。
98. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 94 ～ 97 を繰り返す。



If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-up (b)

99. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
100. Pull the pressure roller top adjusting knob E2 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.
101. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
102. Check the paper is fed.
103. Repeat steps 99 to 102 until the paper becomes straight.

Si on enroule de façon serrée vers le haut les papiers sur la sortie (b)

99. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
100. Tirer la molette de réglage supérieure du rouleau de pression E2 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.
101. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
102. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
103. Répéter les étapes 99 à 102 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

Si se el papel de la salida está apretado hacia arriba (b)

99. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
100. Tire del control de ajuste superior del rodillo de presión E2 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.
101. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
102. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
103. Repita los pasos 99 a 102 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass straff nach oben aufgerollt wird (b)

99. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
100. Ziehen Sie den oberen Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E2 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.
101. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
102. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
103. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 99 al punto 102 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso l'alto notevolmente arricciata (b)

99. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
100. Tirare la manopola di regolazione superiore del rullo di pressione E2 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.
101. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
102. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
103. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 99 al punto 102 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

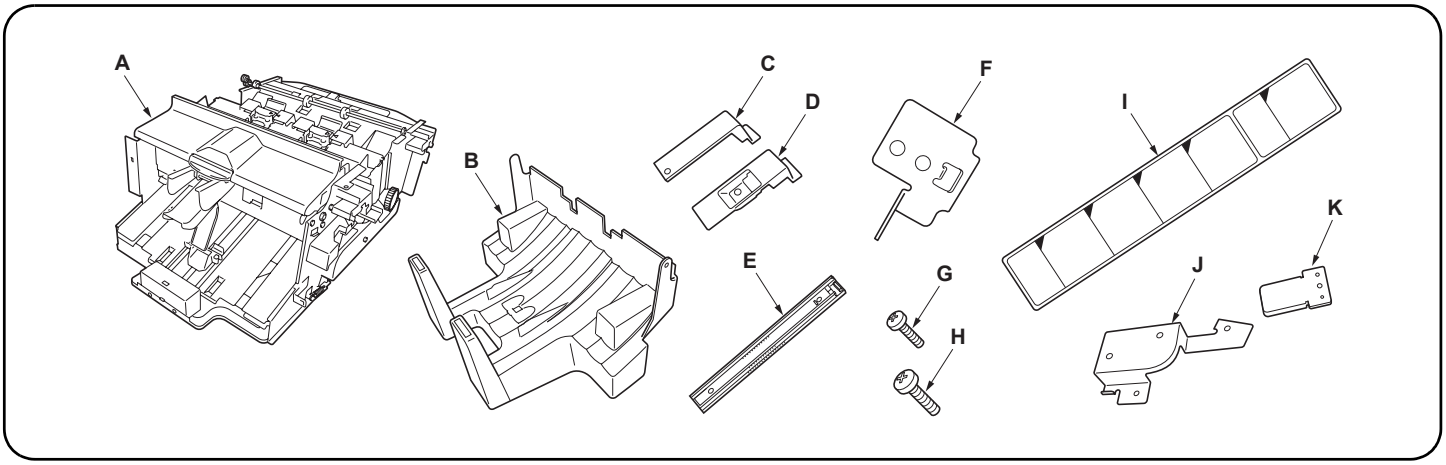
如果输出的纸张正面朝上且卷曲严重（b）

99. 打开装订器（A）的前盖板。
100. 将压辊顶部调节旋钮 E2 朝你所在的方向拉，并顺时针旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。
101. 关闭装订器（A）的前盖板。
102. 检查送纸。
103. 重复步骤 99 至 102，直至纸张不再卷曲。

排出された用紙のカールが上向きに大きい場合（b）

99. ドキュメントフィニッシャ（A）の前カバーを開く。
100. 加圧ローラ上調整つまみ E2 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。
101. ドキュメントフィニッシャ（A）の前カバーを閉じる。
102. 通紙を確認する。
103. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 99 ～ 102 を繰り返す。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT



English

Supplied parts

A Center-Folding unit 1
B Folding tray 1
C Rear cover 1
D Front cover 1
E Slider 2
F Douser 1
G M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw 2
H M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw 11
I Label 1
J Cover handle saddle 1
K Cover V 2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Plieuse 1
B Bac de pliage 1
C Capot arrière 1
D Capot avant 1
E Règle 2
F Ombreur 1
G Vis P taraudées M3 × 8 2
H Vis S taraudées M4 × 8 11
I Etiquette 1
J Poignée de capot à cheval 1
K Capot V 2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Unidad de plegado 1
B Bandeja de plegado 1
C Cubierta posterior 1
D Cubierta frontal 1
E Deslizador 2
F Pantalla paraluz 1
G Tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 2
H Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 11
I Etiqueta 1
J Placa de manilla de cubierta 1
K Cubierta V 2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Mittenfalteinheit 1
B Faltfach 1
C Hintere Abdeckung 1
D Vordere Abdeckung 1
E Schieber 2
F Abschirmung 1
G M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 2
H M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 11
I Aufkleber 1
J Abdeckungsalter 1
K Abdeckung V 2

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di piegatura centrale 1
B Vassoio di piegatura 1
C Pannello posteriore 1
D Pannello anteriore 1
E Scivolo 2
F Dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) 1
G Viti con testa a croce P M3 × 8 2
H Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 11
I Etichetta 1
J Slitta coprimanopola 1
K Pannello V 2

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属部件

A 中缝装订－折页单元 1
B 折叠托盘 1
C 后盖板 1
D 前盖板 1
E 滑板 2
F 探测器 1
G M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 2
H M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 11
I 标签 1
J 盖板手柄鞍座 1
K 盖板 V 2

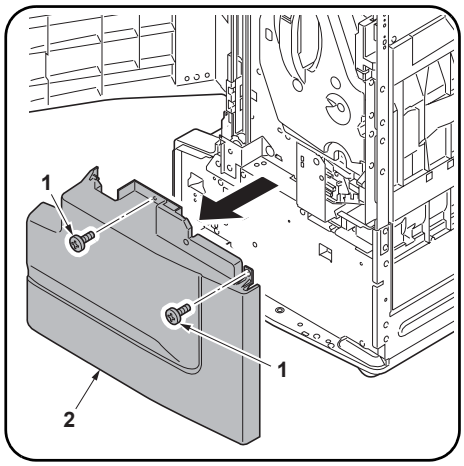
如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

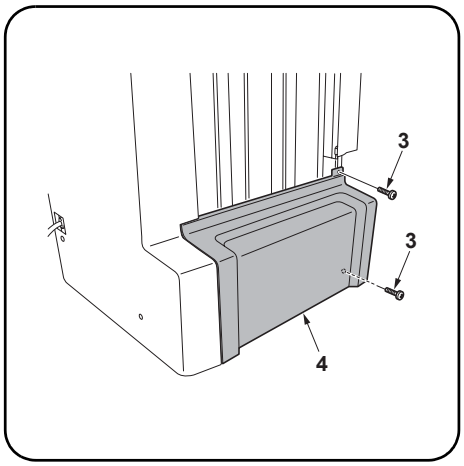
日本語

同梱品

A 中折りユニット 1
B 中折りトレイ 1
C カバー後 1
D カバー前 1
E スライダ 2
F 遮光板 1
G ビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P 2
H ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S 11
I ラベル 1
J カバーハンドルサドル 1
K カバーV 2

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。





Procedure
Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply.
Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

Removing the cover.
1. Open the front cover of the document finisher.
2. Remove two screws (1) and remove lower front cover (2).

3. Remove two screws (3) and remove lower left cover (4).

Procédure
Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant.
Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

Enlèvement du capot.
1. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer deux vis (1) et retirer le capot avant inférieur (2).

3. Retirer deux vis (3) et retirer le capot gauche inférieur (4).

Procedimiento
Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente.
Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

Extracción de la cubierta.
1. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (1) y la cubierta frontal inferior (2).

3. Quite dos tornillos (3) y la cubierta inferior izquierda (4).

Verfahren
Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.
1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (2).

3. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und danach die linke untere Abdeckung (4).

Procedura
Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.
Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

Rimuovere il pannello.
1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice.
2. Togliere due viti (1) e rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (2).

3. Togliere due viti (3) e rimuovere il pannello inferiore sinistro (4).

安装步骤
安装中缝装订一折页单元前，请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。
安装文档整理器，然后安装中缝装订一折页单元。

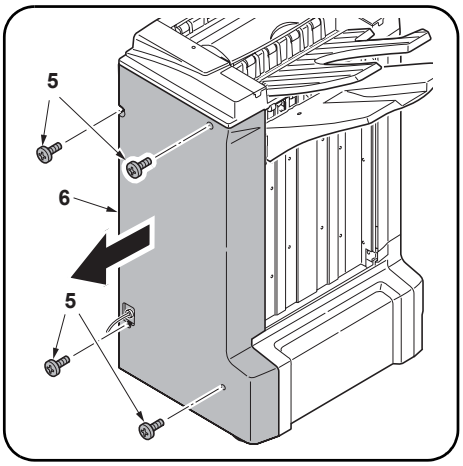
拆下盖板。
1. 打开文档整理器的前盖板。
2. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1)，然后拆下前下盖板 (2)。

3. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (3)，然后拆下左下盖板 (4)。

取付手順
中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

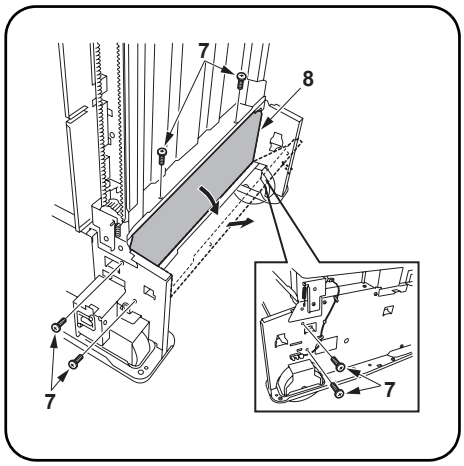
カバーの取り外し
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、前下カバー(2) を取り外す。

3. ビス (3)2 本を外し、左下カバー(4) を取り外す。



Removing the back cover.

4. Remove the four screws (5) to remove the back cover (6) from the document finisher.



Removing the reinforcing plate.

5. Remove six screws (7) to remove the left reinforcing plate (8).
Tilt the left reinforcing plate (8) to pull out upwards.

Installing the back cover.

6. Use the four screws (5) which was removed from the document finisher in step 4 and reinstall the back cover (6).

Enlèvement du capot arrière.

4. Retirer les quatre vis (5) pour retirer le capot arrière (6) du finisseur de document.

Enlèvement de la plaque de renfort.

5. Retirer six vis (7) pour retirer la plaque de renfort de gauche (8).
Incliner la plaque de renfort de gauche (8) pour la faire ressortir vers le haut.

Installation du capot arrière.

6. Utiliser les quatre vis (5) retirées du finisseur de document à l'étape 4 et réinstaller le capot arrière (6).

Extracción de la cubierta posterior.

4. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta posterior (6) del finalizador de documentos.

Extracción de la placa de refuerzo.

5. Quite seis tornillos (7) para quitar la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8).
Incline la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8) para sacarla hacia arriba.

Instalación de la cubierta posterior.

6. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (5) que fueron quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 4 y vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6).

Entfernen der hinteren Abdeckung.

4. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) vom Dokument-Finisher, um die hintere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

Entfernen der Verstärkungsplatte.

5. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (7), um die linke Verstärkungsplatte (8) auszubauen. Neigen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (8), um sie nach außen herauszuziehen.

Anbringen der hinteren Abdeckung.

6. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (5), welche im Schritt 4 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurden, und bringen Sie danach die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

Rimuovere il pannello posteriore.

4. Togliere le quattro viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (6) dalla finitrice.

Rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo.

5. Togliere sei viti (7) per rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8).
Inclinare la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8) ed estrarla verso l'alto.

Installare il pannello posteriore.

6. Utilizzare le quattro viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice nel passo 4 e reinstallare il pannello posteriore (6).

拆下后盖板。

4. 从文档整理器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下后盖板 (6)。

拆下加强板。

5. 拆下 6 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下左加强板 (8)。
将左加强板 (8) 倾斜向上拉出。

安装后盖板。

6. 用在步骤 4 中从文档整理器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装后盖板 (6)。

後カバーの取り外し

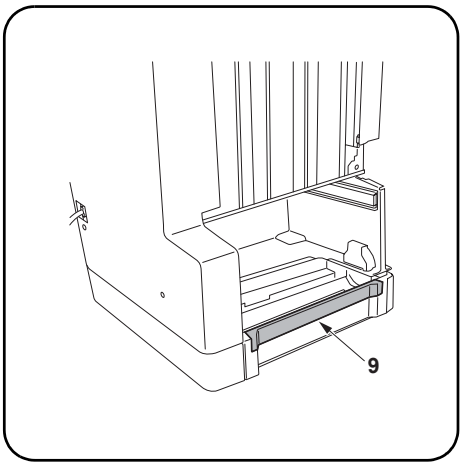
4. ビス (5)4 本を外し、後カバー(6) を取り外す。

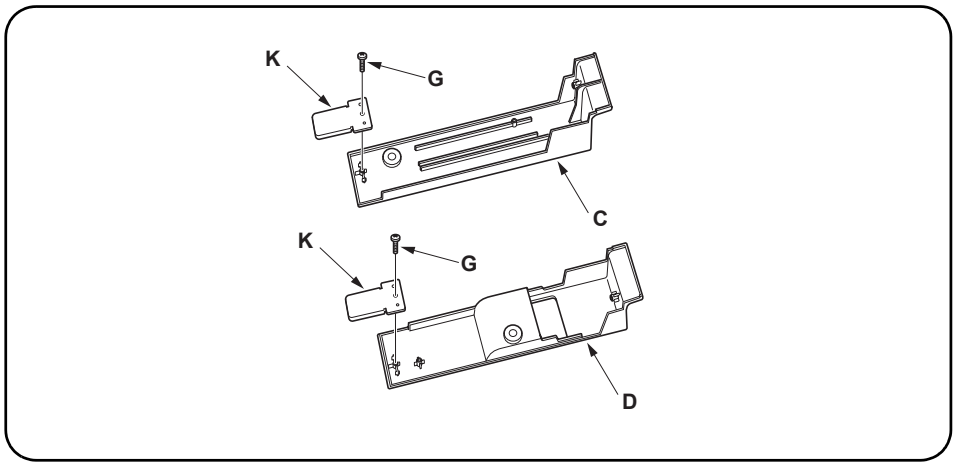
補強板の取り外し

5. ビス (7)6 本を外し、補強板左 (8) を取り外す。
補強板左 (8) は斜めに傾け、上方向へ取り外すこと。

後カバーの取り付け

6. 手順 4 で外した後カバー(6) をビス (5)4 本で元通り取り付ける。





Removing the divided part.
7. Cut out the divided part (9).

Reassembling the covers.
8. Install cover V (K) onto each of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) respectively with a M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (G).

Enlèvement de la pièce divisée.
7. Découper la pièce divisée (9).

Remontage des capots.
8. Installer le capot V (K) sur le capot arrière (C) et sur le capot avant (D) à l'aide d'une vis P taraudée M3 × 8 chaque (G).

Extracción de la parte dividida.
7. Corte la parte dividida (9).

Reinstalación de las cubiertas.
8. Instale la cubierta V (K) en cada cubierta posterior (C) y cubierta frontal (D) respectivamente con un tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 (G).

Entfernen der Abtrennung.
7. Die Abtrennung (9) ausschneiden.

Anbringen der Abdeckungen.
8. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung V (K) auf jede hintere Abdeckung (C) bzw. vordere Abdeckung (D) mit einer M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) an.

Rimuovere la parte divisa.
7. Tagliare via la parte divisa (9).

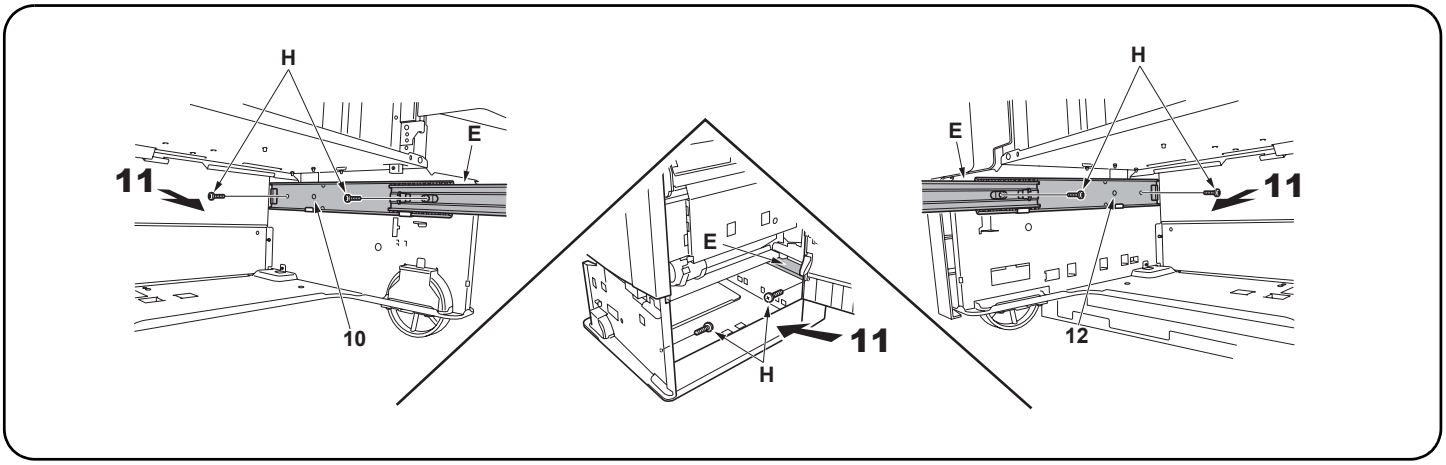
Riassemblare i pannelli.
8. Installare il pannello V (K) su ognuno dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) rispettivamente con viti con testa a croce P M4 × 8 (G).

拆下分离部分。
7. 切割已被分开的部件（9）。

重新组装盖板。
8. 分别用 1 颗 M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 (G) 将盖板 V (K) 安装到每个后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 上。

割部を取り除く
7. 割部 (9) を切り取る。

カバーの組み立て
8. カバー後 (C) とカバー前 (D) に、カバーV(K) をビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P(G) 1 本でそれぞれ取り付ける。



Installing the slider.

9. Align slider (E) with projection (10) on the front-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.

10. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H). To tighten the screw at the rear side of slider (E) easily, open the right cover of the document finisher and secure the screw from the right side (11) of the document finisher.

11. Align slider (E) with projection (12) on the back-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.

12. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installation de la règle.

9. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (10) de la plaque avant du finisseur de document et installer la règle.

10. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).
Pour pouvoir serrer facilement la vis à l'arrière de la règle (E), ouvrir le capot de droite du finisseur de document et fixer a vis depuis le côté droit (11) du finisseur de document.

11. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (12) à l'arrière de la plaque latérale du finisseur de document et installer la règle.

12. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).

Instalación del deslizador.

9. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (10) de la placa del lado frontal del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.

10. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).
Para apretar fácilmente el tornillo del lado posterior del deslizador (E), abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y asegure el tornillo desde el lado derecho (11) del finalizador de documentos.

11. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (12) de la placa del lado posterior del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.

12. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Anbringen des Schiebers.

9. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (10) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.

10. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit den beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H).
Um die Schraube auf der Rückseite des Schiebers (E) ohne Problems festzuziehen, öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und ziehen Sie die Schraube von der rechten Seite (11) des Dokument-Finishers her an.

11. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (12) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.

12. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit zwei M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H).

Installare lo scivolo.

9. Installare lo scivolo (E) allineandolo alla parte sporgente (10) sulla lastra anteriore della finitrice.

10. Fare uscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H). Per fissare con facilita la vite alla parte posteriore dello scivolo (E), aprire il pannello destro della finitrice e serrare la vite dal lato destro (11) della finitrice.

11. Allineare lo scivolo (E) alla parte sporgente (12) sulla lastra posteriore della finitrice e installarlo.

12. Far fuoriuscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

安装滑板。

9. 将滑板 (E) 与文档整理器前侧板上的突出部 (10) 对齐并重新安装滑板。

10. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定。
若要轻松拧紧滑板 (E) 后部的螺钉，打开文档整理器的右盖板并从文档整理器右侧 (11) 固定螺钉。

11. 将滑板 (E) 与文档整理器后侧板上的突出部 (12) 对齐并重新安装滑板。

12. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定。

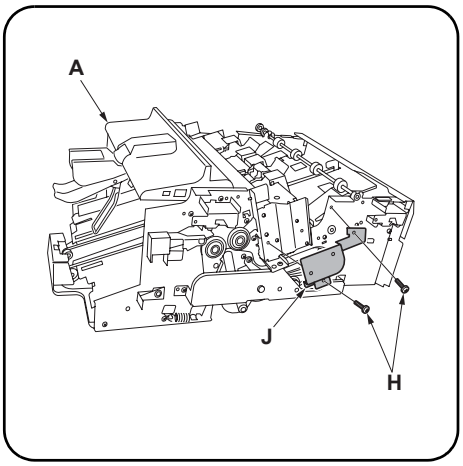
スライダの取り付け

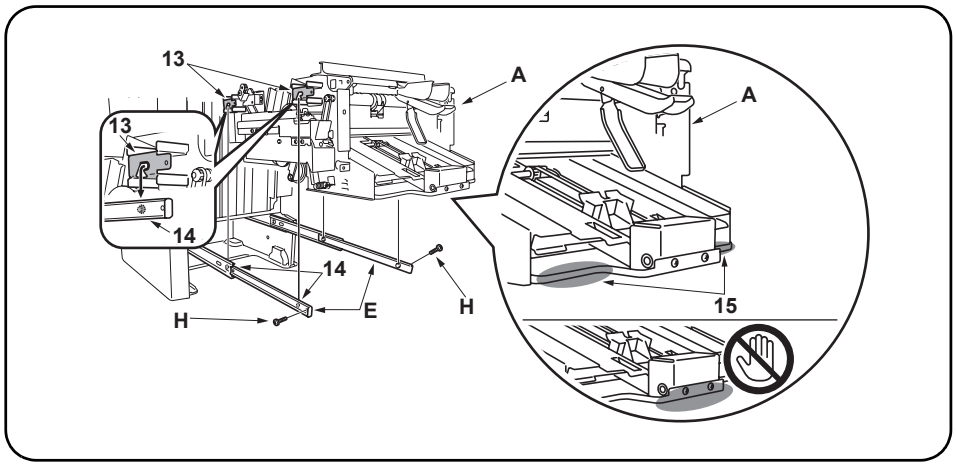
9. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャ前側板の突起 (10) に合わせて取り付ける。

10. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 × 8 タップタイト S(H)2 本で固定する。
スライダ (E) 後側のビスは、ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーを開き、ドキュメントフィニッシャの右方向 (11) から作業すると締めやすい。

11. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャ後側板の突起 (12) に合わせて取り付ける。

12. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 × 8 タップタイト S(H)2 本で固定する。





Installing the cover handle saddle.

13. Install cover handle saddle (J) on the front side of center-folding unit (A) with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installing the center-folding unit.

14. Pull out sliders (E) till they stop.

15. Align pawl (13) of center-folding unit (A) with projection (14) of slider (E) and place the center-folding unit onto the slider.
Be sure to hold both the rear bottom and front side (15) of center-folding unit (A) and place the unit onto slider (E).

16. Secure center-folding unit (A) with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

Installation de la poignée de capot à cheval.

13. Installer la poignée de capot à cheval (J) sur l'avant de la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).

Installation de la plieuse.

14. Faire ressortir les règles (E) jusqu'à ce qu'elles s'arrêtent.

15. Aligner le cliquet (13) de la plieuse (A) sur la saillie (14) de la règle (E) et mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle.
Veiller à tenir le fond arrière et l'avant (15) de la plieuse (A) et à mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle (E).

16. Fixer la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).

Instalación de la placa de manilla de cubierta.

13. Instale la placa de manilla de cubierta (J) en el lado frontal de la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Instalación de la unidad de plegado.

14. Saque los deslizadores (E) hasta que se paren.

15. Alinee el trinquete (13) de la unidad de plegado (A) con el resalto (14) del deslizador (E) y coloque la unidad de plegado en el deslizador.
Asegúrese de sujetar el lado inferior posterior y el central (15) de la unidad de plegado (A) y colocar la unidad en el deslizador (E).

16. Asegure la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Anbringen des Abdeckungshalters.

13. Bringen Sie den Abdeckungshalter (J) auf der Vorderseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) an.

Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit.

14. Ziehen Sie die Schieber (E) soweit heraus, bis Sie anschlagen.

15. Richten Sie die Sperrklinke (13) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit dem Vorsprung (14) des Schiebers (E) aus, und setzen Sie danach die Mittenfalteinheit auf den Schieber.
Halten Sie die untere Hinter- und Vorderseite (15) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) fest und setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit danach auf den Schieber (E).

16. Ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) fest.

Installare la slitta coprimanopola.

13. Installare la slitta coprimanopola (J) sul lato anteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per mezzo di due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) .

Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

14. Tirare in fuori gli scivolo (E) finché si bloccano.

15. Allineare il dentello (13) dell'unità centrale di piegatura (A) alla parte sporgente (14) dello scivolo (E) e posarvi sopra l'unità stessa.
Assicurarsi di reggere bene sia la parte posteriore bassa che quella anteriore (15) dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) e posare l'unità sullo scivolo (E).

16. Fissare l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

安装盖板手柄鞍座。

13. 用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 将盖板手柄鞍座 (J) 安装到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的前部。

安装中缝装订一折页单元。

14. 拉出滑板 (E) 直到其停止下来。

15. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的卡爪 (13) 对准滑板 (E) 的突出部 (14)，并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板上。
请务必握住中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的后部和前部 (15)，并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板 (E) 上。

16. 用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定中缝装订一折页单元 (A)。

カバーハンドルサドルの取り付け

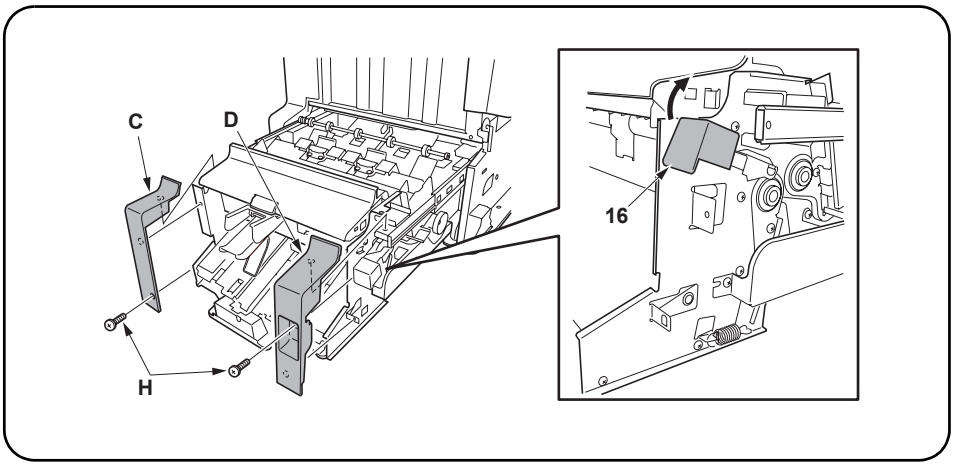
13. カバーハンドルサドル (J) を中折りユニット (A) 前側にビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S(H)2 本で取り付ける。

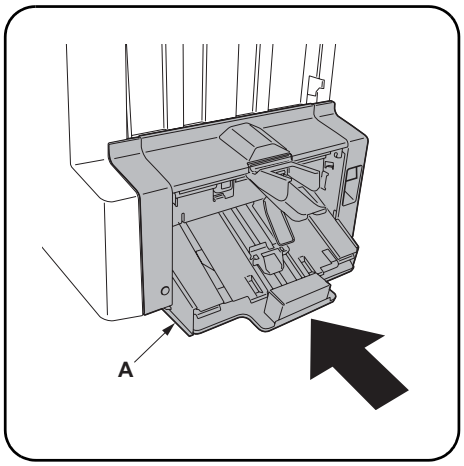
中折りユニットの取り付け

14. スライダ (E) を最後まで引き出す。

15. 中折りユニット (A) のツメ (13) をスライダ (E) の突起 (14) に合わせて乗せる。
中折りユニット (A) は、必ず後側の底部と前側の (15) の部分を持ってスライダ (E) に乗せること。

16. M4 × 8 タップタイト S(H)2 本で中折りユニット (A) を固定する。





Installing covers.

17. Install the covers by fitting the projections on the rear side of the rear cover (C) and front cover (D) assembled in step 8 into the holes in the center-folding unit (A).
It is easy to install front cover (D) by lifting center-folding unit releasing lever (16).

18. Use two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H) to secure rear cover (C) and front cover (D).

19. Store center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher.
If center-folding unit (A) is not stored completely inside the document finisher, the unit cannot be fixed in the document finisher and center-folding unit (A) won't operate properly.

Installation des capots.

17. Installer les capots en insérant les saillies côté arrière du capot arrière (C) et du capot avant (D) montés à l'étape 8 dans les trous de la plieuse (A).
Il est facile d'installer le capot avant (D) en soulevant le levier de relâchement de la plieuse (16).

18. Utiliser deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H) pour fixer le capot arrière (C) et le capot avant (D).

19. Ranger la plieuse (A) dans le finisseur de document.
Si la plieuse (A) n'est pas complètement rangée à l'intérieur du finisseur de document, la plieuse ne peut pas être fixée dans le finisseur de document et la plieuse (A) ne fonctionne pas correctement.

Instalación de cubiertas.

17. Instale las cubiertas insertando las salientes en el lado posterior de la cubierta trasera (C) y la cubierta delantera (D), ensambladas en el paso 8, en los orificios de la bandeja de plegado (A).
Es más fácil instalar la cubierta frontal (D) levantando la palanca de liberación de la unidad de plegado (16).

18. Utilice dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H) para asegurar la cubierta posterior (C) y la cubierta frontal (D).

19. Meta la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos.
Si la unidad de plegado (A) no se mete completamente en el finalizador de documentos, ésta no podrá fijarse en el finalizador de documentos y no funcionará correctamente.

Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

17. Die Abdeckungen montieren, indem man die Vorsprünge an der Rückseite der hinteren Abdeckung (C) und der vorderen Abdeckung (D), die in Schritt 8 angebracht wurden, in die Öffnungen der Mittenfalteinheit (A) einsetzt.
Um den Einbau der vorderen Abdeckung (D) zu erleichtern, ist der Entriegelungshebel (16) der Mittenfalteinheit anzuheben.

18. Verwenden Sie die beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H), um die hintere Abdeckung (C) und die vordere Abdeckung (D) zu befestigen.

19. Setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) in den Dokument-Finisher ein.
Wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) nicht vollständig in den Dokument-Finisher eingesetzt wurde, kann die Mittenfalteinheit nicht im Dokument-Finisher befestigt werden, und die Mittenfalteinheit (A) funktioniert dann nicht richtig.

Installare i pannelli.

17. IInstallare i pannelli inserendo le parti sporgenti poste sul retro del pannello posteriore (C) e del pannello anteriore (D), assemblati nel passo 8, nei fori nell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).
È semplice installare il pannello anteriore (D) sollevando la leva di rilascio unità (16)

18. Utilizzare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) per fissare i pannello posteriore (C) ed anteriore (D).

19. Inserire perfettamente l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice.
Se l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non è del tutto inserita all'interno della finitrice, è impossibile fissarla alla finitrice stessa e l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non funzionerà correttamente.

安装盖板。

17. 通过将后盖板 (C) 后侧以及在步骤 8 中装配的前盖板 (D) 的突出部分卡入中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的孔内来安装盖板。
将中缝装订一折页单元释放杆 (16) 抬起以便更容易安装前盖板 (D)。

18. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D)。

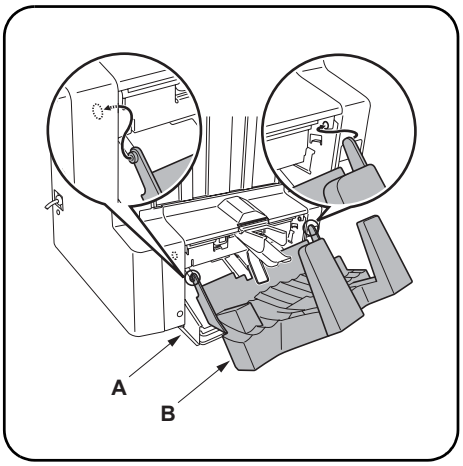
19. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 保存到文档整理器中。
如果中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 未完全保存到文档整理器中，则无法在文档整理器中固定装置并且中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 无法正确工作。

カバーの取り付け

17. 手順 8 で組み立てたカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を、裏側の突起を中折りユニット (A) の穴にはめ込み、取り付ける。
カバー前 (D) は、中折りユニット解除レバー(16) を上げると取り付けやすい。

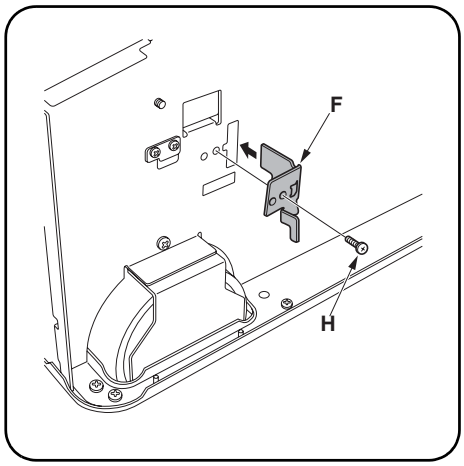
18. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S(H)2 本でカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を固定する。

19. 中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャに収納する。
確実に収納されていない場合、中折りユニット (A) がドキュメントフィニッシャに固定されず、中折りユニット (A) が正常に動作しない。



Installing the folding tray.

20. Fit the projection of folding tray (B) into the inside hole of center-folding unit (A).



Installing the douser.

Before installing the douser (F), make sure that center-folding unit (A) is securely stored.

21. Insert douser (F) into the lower front left of the document finisher and secure the douser with a M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (H).

Reinstalling the cover.

22. Reinstall the lower front cover (2) that was removed in step 2 in place with two screws (1).

23. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

Installation du bac de pliage.

20. Ajuster la saillie du bac de pliage (B) dans l'orifice intérieur de la plieuse (A).

Installation de l'ombreur.

Avant d'installer l'ombreur (F), s'assurer que la plieuse (A) est bien rangée.

21. Insérer l'ombreur (F) dans l'avant gauche inférieur du finisseur de document et fixer l'ombreur à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (H).

Remontage du capot.

22. Remonter le capot avant inférieur (2) retiré à l'étape 2 à l'aide de deux vis (1).

23. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

Instalación de la bandeja plegable.

20. Coloque el resalto de la bandeja plegable (B) dentro del agujero de la unidad de plegado (A).

Instalación de la pantalla paraluz.

Antes de instalar la pantalla paraluz (F), asegúrese de que la unidad de plegado (A) esté firmemente metida.

21. Introduzca la pantalla paraluz (F) en la parte frontal inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos y asegure la pantalla paraluz con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

Reinstalación de la cubierta.

22. Reinstale en su lugar con dos tornillos (1) la cubierta frontal inferior (2) que fue quitada en el paso 2.

23. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

Anbringen des Faltfachs.

20. Führen Sie den Vorsprung des Faltfachs (B) in das innere Loch der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

Anbringen der Abschirmung.

Vor dem Anbringen der Abschirmung (F) ist sicherzustellen, dass die Mittenfalteinheit (A) sicher eingesetzt ist.

21. Stecken Sie die Abschirmung (F) in die untere linke Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers ein, und ziehen Sie die Abschirmung danach mit einer M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (H) fest.

Anbringen der Abdeckung.

22. Bringen Sie die in Schritt 2 entfernte vordere untere Abdeckung (2) wieder an und verwenden Sie hierfür die beiden Schrauben (1).

23. Schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

Installare il vassoio di piegatura.

20. Inserire la parte sporgente del vassoio di piegatura (B) nel foro interno dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser).

Prima di procedere all'installazione del dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F), assicurarsi che l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sia perfettamente inserita.

21. Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F) nella facciata inferiore a sinistra della finitrice e fissarlo con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

Reinstallare il pannello.

22. Reinstallare nella sua posizione originale il pannello anteriore inferiore (2) rimosso nel passo 2 con due viti (1).

23. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

安装折叠托盘。

20. 将折叠托盘 (B) 的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的内部孔。

安装探测器。

安装探测器 (F) 前，请确定中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 已牢固地保存。

21. 将探测器 (F) 插入文档整理器的左前下侧，并用 1 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定探测器。

重新安装盖板。

22. 用 2 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的前下盖板 (2)。

23. 关闭文档整理器的前盖板。

中折りトレイの取り付け

20. 中折りトレイ (B) の突起を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴にはめ、取り付ける。

遮光板の取り付け

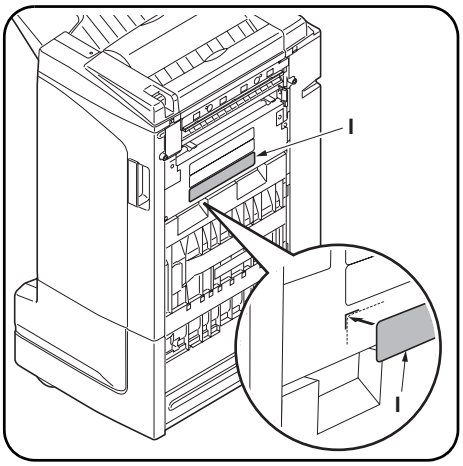
遮光板 (F) を取り付ける前に、中折りユニット (A) が確実に収納されていることを確認すること。

21. 遮光板 (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ正面の左下へ差し込み、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 1 本で固定する。

カバーの取り付け

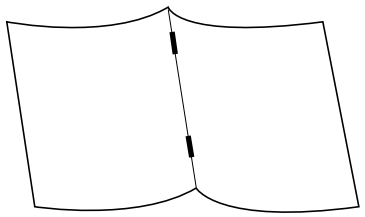
22. 手順 2 で外した前下カバー (2) をビス (1) 2 本で元通り取り付ける。

23. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。



Adhering the label.

24. Clean the area where the label is adhered on the right cover of the document finisher with alcohol and adhere label (I) aligning with making-off line.



[Checking staple position]

1. In the center-stapling mode, perform a test copy with the paper fed from the main tray. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

2. Check the distance from the center of the paper to the staple position. If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

Collage de l'étiquette.

24. Nettoyer la zone où l'étiquette doit être collée sur le capot de droite du finisseur de document avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (I) en l'alignant, sur la ligne indiquée.

[Vérification de la position des agrafes]

1. Dans le mode d'agrafage central, effectuer une copie de test avec la papier alimenté depuis le plateau principal. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

2. Vérifier la distance entre le centre du papier et l'emplacement de l'agrafe. Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

Para pegar la etiqueta.

24. Limpie con alcohol el área donde va a pegar la etiqueta (I) en la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y péguela alineándola con la línea de referencia.

[Comprobación de la posición de grapado]

1. En el modo de grapado central, realice una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja principal. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

2. Compruebe la distancia desde el centro del papel a la posición de grapado. Si la distancia no está dentro del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

Anbringen des Aufklebers.

24. Reinigen Sie den Bereich auf der rechten Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers mit Alkohol, richten Sie den Aufkleber (I) aus und kleben Sie ihn dann fest.

[Überprüfen der Heftklammerposition]

1. Machen Sie im Mitten-Heftklammermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom Hauptfach aus zugeführt wird. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

2. Prüfen Sie den Abstand von der Mitte des Papiers zur Heftklammerposition. Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist gemäß den folgenden Schritten vorzugehen, um die Position zu korrigieren.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

Incollare l'etichetta.

24. Pulire con alcool la zona dove si applica l'etichetta sul pannello destro della finitrice. Attaccare l'etichetta (I) allineandola alla linea di taglio.

[Controllare la posizione della pinzatrice]

1. In modalità "pinzatura centrale", eseguire una copia di prova con carta alimentata dal vassoio principale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei seguenti formati di carta:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

2. Controllare la distanza tra il centro del foglio e la posizione della pinzatrice. Se la distanza non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire i seguenti passaggi per regolarne la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

粘贴标签。

24. 用酒精清洁在文档整理器右盖板上粘贴标签的区域并与脱离线对齐粘贴标签 (I)。

[检查装订位置]

1. 在中央装订模式中，从主托盘进纸进行测试复印。 下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

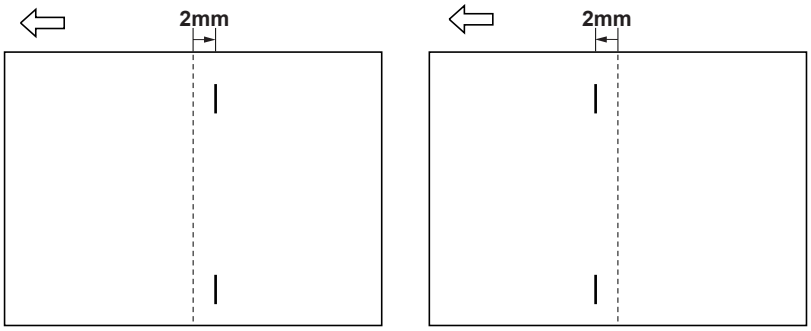
2. 检查纸张中央到装订位置的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。
< 标准值 > 距离中央的距离：±2mm 内

ラベルの貼り付け

24. ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーに貼られているラベルの下をアルコール清掃し、罫書き線に合わせてラベル (I) を貼り付ける。

[中とじステイプル位置確認]

1. 以下の用紙を使用し、中とじステイプルモード、メイントレイ排紙でテストコピーを行う。
A4R、LTR(8.5″ × 11″)、B4、LGL(8.5″ × 14″)、A3、LGR(11″ × 17″)
2. ステイプル位置の中心からのずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ 中心からのずれ:± 2㎜ 以内



Adjusting staple position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Adjust setting value.
When staples are placed too far right copy example (a): Decrease the setting value.
When staples are placed too far left copy example (b): Increase the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the stapling position by approximately 0.55 mm.

3. Perform a test copy.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the staple position indicates the value within the reference range.
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

Ajustement de la position des agrafes

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (a): diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (b): augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position d'agrafage d'environ 0,55 mm.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.

4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position d'agrafage se trouve dans la gamme de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

Ajuste de la posición de grabado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y realice el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (a): Disminuya el valor de configuración.
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de grabado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del centro a la posición de grapado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

Einstellen der Heftklammerposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8.5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8.5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).

2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes.
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheinen (a): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheinen (b): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Heftklammerposition um 0,55 mm.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Heftklammerposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

Regolare la posizione della pinzatrice

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia di prova.
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)

2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a destra (esempio a): Ridurre il valore di impostazione..
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a sinistra (esempio b): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di pinzatura di circa 0,55 mm.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.

4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione delle pinzatrici non rientra nel'intervallo di riferimento. <Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

调整装订位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 BOOKLET FOLDER（小册子折叠）并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。
使用A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11")时，请执行STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR) 。
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时，请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR) 。
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时，请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)。

2. 调整设定值。
订书钉远离右侧复印样本 (a) 时：减小设定值
订书钉远离左侧复印样本 (b) 时：增大设定值
以 1 更改数值将装订位置移动大约 0.55mm

3. 进行测试复印。

4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到装订位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
< 标准值 > 距离中央的距离：±2mm 内

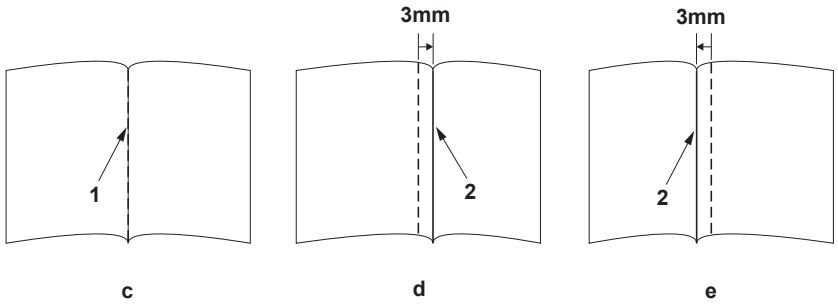
中とじステイプル位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。
A4R、LTR(8.5″ × 11″) の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR) の調整を行う。
B4、LGL(8.5″ × 14″) の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR) の調整を行う。
A3、LGR(11″ × 17″) の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ(A3/LD) の調整を行う。

2. 設定値を調整する。
ステイプル位置が右にずれている場合　コピーサンプル (a):設定値を下げる
ステイプル位置が左にずれている場合　コピーサンプル (b):設定値を上げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量:0.55㎜

3. テストコピーを行う。

4. コピーサンプルのステイプル位置のずれが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ 中心からのずれ:± 2㎜ 以内



[Checking centerfold position]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.

2. Perform a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes. Draw a straight line (1) at the center of each paper (a).
A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. If the distance from center line (1) on paper (c) to centerfold position (2) on the copy sample is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the distance.
<Reference value>
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

[Vérification de la page centrale dépliable]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur principal sous tension.

2. Effectuer une copie de test dans le mode page centrale dépliable. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants. Tirer une ligne droite (1) au centre de chaque feuille de papier (a). Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

3. Si la distance entre la ligne centrale (1) sur la feuille de papier (c) et la position de la page centrale dépliable (2) de l'exemple de copie se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la distance.
<Valeur de référence>
Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliable (2): ±3 mm

---

[Comprobación de la posición de plegado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.

2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes. Trace una línea recta (1) en el centro de cada papel (a). Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Si la distancia de la línea central (1) del papel (c) a la posición de plegado (2) de la muestra de copia está fuera del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la distancia.
<Valor de referencia >
Distancia desde la posición de plegado (2): ±3 mm

[Überprüfen der Mittenfaltposition]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.

2. Führen Sie im Mittenfaltmodus eine Testkopie durch. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden: Ziehen Sie eine gerade Linie (1) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Papiers (a). Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Wenn der Abstand von der Mittellinie (1) am Papier (c) zur Mittenfaltposition (2) auf der Musterkopie außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, folgen Sie den nachfolgenden Schritten, um den Abstand einzustellen.
<Bezugswert>
Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

[Controllare la posizione della piegatura centrale]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.

2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità piegatura centrale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei formati di carta indicati in seguito. Disegnare una linea retta (1) al centro di ogni foglio (a).
Formati di carta su cui eseguire la copia di prova:
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Se la distanza tra la linea centrale (1) del foglio (c) e la posizione della piegatura centrale (2) nella copia campione è al di fuori dell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire la seguente procedura per regolarla.
<Valore di riferimento>
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

---

[检查折叠位置]

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。

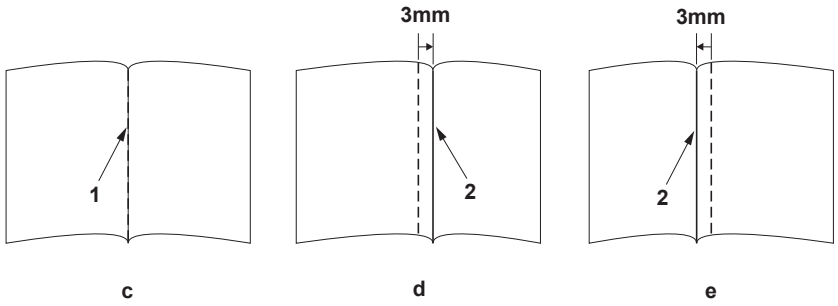
2. 在折叠模式中进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印。在每张纸 (a) 的中央划一条直线 (1)。
下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 如果纸 (c) 上中线 (1) 距离复印样本上的折叠位置 (2) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整距离。
< 标准值 >
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离：±3mm 内

[中折り位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. 以下の用紙を使用し、中折りモードの 2 枚折りでテストコピーを行う。用紙は、中心に線 (1) を引いておくこと。(a)
A4R、LTR(8.5″ × 11″)、B4、LGL(8.5″ × 14″)、A3、LGR(11″ × 17″)

3. 用紙 (c) の中心線 (1) と、コピーサンプルの中折り位置 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ 中折り位置 (2) のずれ：± 3mm 以内



Adjusting centerfold position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Adjust the setting value.
When the centerfold position too far right copy example (d): Increase the setting value.
When the centerfold position too far left copy example (e): Decrease the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the centerfold position by approximately 0.55 mm.
3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the centerfold position indicates the value within the reference range.
<Reference value>
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

Ajustement de la position de la page centrale dépliable

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliable est placée trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (d): augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliable est placée trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (e): diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de la page centrale dépliable d'environ 0,55 mm.
3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position de la page centrale dépliable se trouve dans la gamme de référence.
<Valeur de référence>
Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliable (2): ±3 mm

Ajuste de la posición de plegado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y haga el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (d): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (e): Disminuya el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de plegado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.
3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia de centro a la posición de plegado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde la posición (2): ±3 mm

Einstellen der Mittenfaltposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8.5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR).
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8.5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR).
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD).
2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes
Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheint (d): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.
Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheint (e): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Mittenfaltposition um ca. 0,55 mm.
3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Mitte der Mittenfaltposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
<Bezugswert>Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

Regolare la posizione della piegatura centrale

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia campione.
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a destra (esempio d): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a sinistra (esempio e): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di piegatura di circa 0,55 mm.
3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione della piegatura non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento>
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

调整折叠位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 BOOKLET FOLDER（小册子折叠）并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时，请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR)。
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时，请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR)。
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时，请执行 SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD)。
2. 调整设定值。
折叠位置远离右侧复印样本 (d) 时：增大设定值
折叠位置远离左侧复印样本 (e) 时：减小设定值
以 1 更改数值将折叠位置移动大约 0.55mm
3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到折叠位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
< 标准值 >
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离：±3mm 内

中折り位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。
A4R、LTR(8.5″ × 11″) の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ(A4R/LTR) の調整を行う。
B4、LGL(8.5″ × 14″) の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ(B4R/LGR) の調整を行う。
A3、LGR(11″ × 17″) の場合、SADDLE POS ADJ(A3/LD) の調整を行う。
2. 設定値を調整する。
中折り位置が右にずれている場合　コピーサンプル (d):設定値を上げる
中折り位置が左にずれている場合　コピーサンプル (e):設定値を下げる
1 ステップ当たりの変化量:約 0.55㎜
3. テストコピーを行う。
4. 中折り位置のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ 中折り位置のずれ：± 3㎜ 以内

English

NOTICE

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-760

Français

AVIS

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-760

Español

AVISO

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-760

Deutsch

HINWEIS

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-760

Italiano

NOTIFICA

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-760

简体中文

注意

本产品（附属部件）适用于以下复印机。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

式样： DF-760

日本語

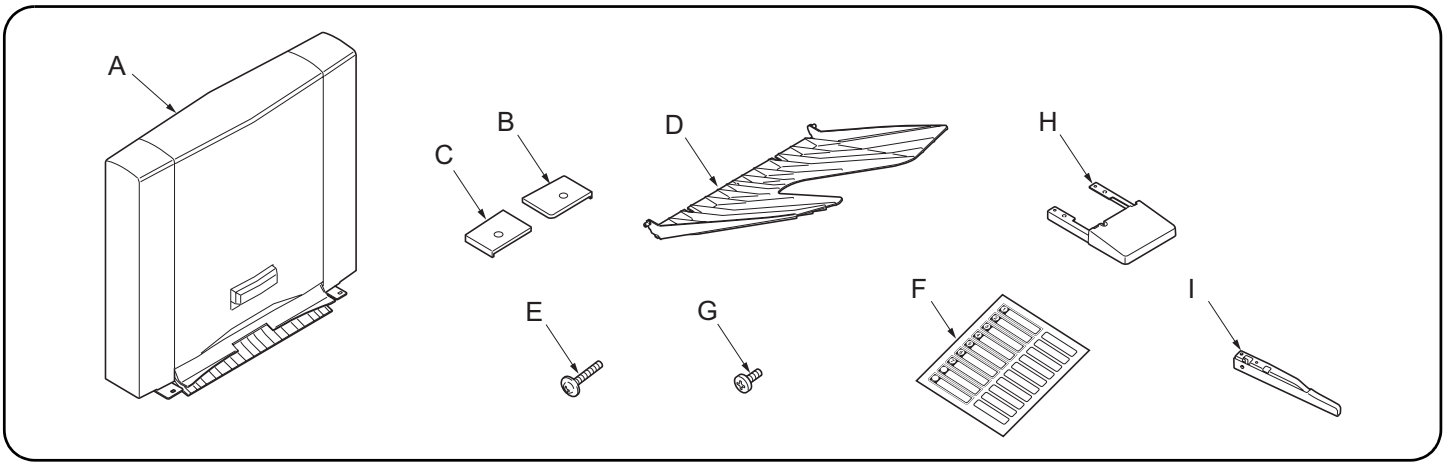
注意

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。

設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-760

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX



English

Supplied parts

A Mailbox 1
B Front mounting plate cover 1
C Rear mounting plate cover 1
D Copy eject bins 7
E TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 2
F Tray name label 1
G Taptite S binding screw M4 × 10 4
H Plate foot V (for full-color machines) 2
I Plate foot F (for monochrome machines) 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

When installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine, 2 pieces of (G) are not used.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Boîte à lettres 1
B Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant 1
C Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière 1
D Case d'éjection de copies 7
E Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 2
F Étiquette de nom de plateau 1
G Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 10 ... 4
H Pied de plateau V (pour les machines entièrement en couleurs) 2
I Pied de plateau F (pour les machines monochromes) 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome, 2 pièces de (G) ne sont pas utilisées.

Español

Partes provistas

A Buzón de correo 1
B Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal 1
C Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera 1
D Bandejas de expulsión de copias 7
E Tornillo TP Taptite S M4 × 14 2
F Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja 1
G Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 10 4
H Pata de placa V (para máquinas a todo color) 2
I Pata de placa F (para máquinas monocromáticas) 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática, no se utilizan las 2 piezas de (G).

Deutsch

Mitgelieferte Teile

A Mailbox 1
B Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1
C Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1
D Kopienausgabefächer 7
E TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 2
F Fachnamenaufkleber 1
G Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 10 4
H Plattenfuß V (für Vollfarbenmaschinen) 2
I Plattenfuß F (für Monochrommaschinen) 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Wenn die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine angebracht wird, werden die 2 Teile von (G) nicht benutzt.

Italiano

Parti comprese

A Casella postale 1
B Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore 1
C Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore 1
D Scomparti di espulsione delle copie 7
E Vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 2
F Etichetta di nome del vassoio 1
G Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 10 4
H Piedino della piastra V (per le macchine a colori) 2
I Piedino della piastra F (per macchine in bianco e nero) 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero, 2 pezzi di (G) non sono utilizzati.

简体中文

附属品

A 邮箱 1
B 支撑板前盖板 1
C 支撑板后盖板 1
D 接纸盘 7
E 自攻紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 14TP 2
F 托盘名称标贴 1
G 连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 10 4
H 底板 V(全彩色机用) 2
I 底板 F(黑白机用) 1

如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。

将邮箱安装至单色机器时，不会使用两个（G）。

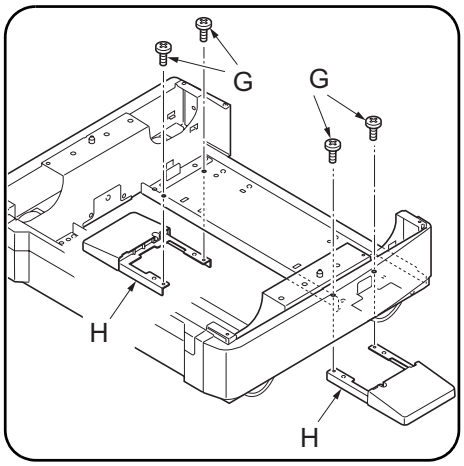
日本語

同梱品

A メールボックス 1
B 取付板カバー前 1
C 取付板カバー後 1
D 排出ビン 7
E ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S 2
F トレイ名称シール 1
G ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S .. 4
H プレートフット V(フルカラー機用) 2
I プレートフット F(モノクロ機用) 1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

モノクロ機に取り付ける場合は、(G) が 2 本余ります。



Procedure
Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the mailbox.

Before installing the finisher, carry out the following procedure.

[Carry out steps 1 when installing the mailbox to a full-color machine.]
1. Fit the two plate feet V (H) and secure them using two M4 x 10TP screws (G) for each.
Install the finisher referring to the installation guide for finisher.
When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 4 on page 4

Procédure
Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position d'arrêt et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant d'entreprendre l'installation de la boîte à lettres.

Avant d'installer le retoucheur, effectuer la procédure suivante.

[Effectuer les étapes 1 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine entièrement en couleurs.]
1. Insérer les deux pieds de plaques V (H) et les fixer à l'aide de deux vis M4 x 10TP (G) pour chaque pièce.
Installer le retoucheur en se reportant au guide d'installation du retoucheur.
Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 4 de la page 4

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de apagar el MFP con el interruptor principal y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared antes de empezar a instalar el buzón de correo.

Antes de instalar el finalizador, realice el siguiente procedimiento.

[Realice los pasos 1 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina a todo color.]
1. Coloque las dos patas de placa V (H) y asegúrelas por medio de dos tornillos M4 x 10TP (G) para cada una.
Instale el finalizador consultando la guía de instalación para el finalizador.
Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 4 de la página 4

Verfahren
Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mailbox unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Netzsteckdose.

Bevor Sie den Finisher installieren, führen Sie das folgende Verfahren aus.

[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Vollfarbenmaschine anbringen.]
1. Bringen Sie die beiden Plattenfüße V (H) an, und befestigen Sie sie jeweils mit zwei M4 x 10TP Schrauben (G).
Installieren Sie den Finisher gemäß der Installationsanleitung des Finishers.
Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbenkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 4 weiter

---

Procedura
Non mancare di spegnere l'MFP utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP dalla presa della rete elettrica, prima di cominciare a installare la casella postale.

Prima di installare il finitore, eseguire le seguenti procedure.

[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina a colori.]
1. Inserire i due piedini della piastra V (H) e fissare ciascuno di essi utilizzando due viti M4 x 10TP (G).
Installare il finitore seguendo le istruzioni della guida all'installazione del finitore.
IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 4

[安装步骤 **]**
安装邮箱时，必须关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔下主装置的电源插头后进行安装。

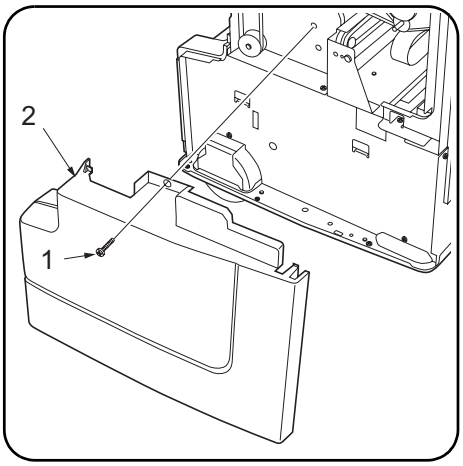
安装装订器之前，先按以下步骤进行操作。

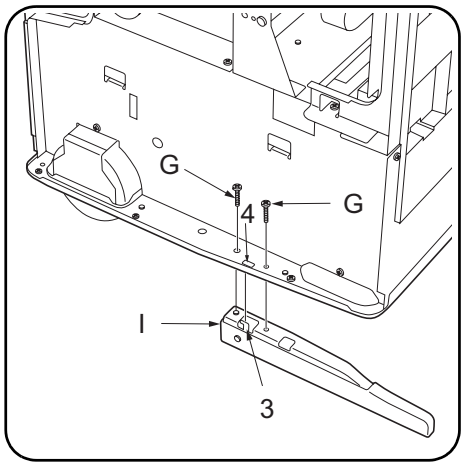
[在全彩色机上安装时的步骤 **1]**
1. 将底板 V (H) 安装在 2 处后，分别用 2 个螺丝 M4 × 10TP (G) 进行固定。
参照装订器安装手册，进行安装装订器。
使用全彩色机时: 进行第 4 页上的第 4 步

[取付手順]
メールボックスを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなう。

フィニッシャの設置を行う前に、次の手順を行う。

[手順 1 はフルカラー機に取り付ける場合]
1. プレートフット V(H) を 2 箇所取り付け、ビス M4 × 10TP(G) 各 2 本で固定する。
フィニッシャの設置手順書を参照して、フィニッシャの設置を行う。
フルカラー機の場合:4 ページ手順 4 へ進む。





[Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine.]

1. Open the front cover of the finisher, remove the screw (1), and remove the lower front cover (2).

2. Hang the hook sections (5) of plate foot F (I) on the finisher frame notches (6), and secure them using 2 Taptite S binding screws M4 x 10 (J).

3. Refit the lower front cover (2) to its original position, secure it using the screw (1), and close the front cover.

[Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome.]

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant du retoucheur, retirer la vis (1), puis retirer le couvercle inférieur avant (2).

2. Accrocher les parties en crochet (5) du pied de plateau F (I) aux encoches du cadre du retoucheur (6) et les fixer à l'aide de 2 bornes de raccordement Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Remettre le couvercle inférieur avant (2) à sa position d'origine, le fixer à l'aide de la vis (1), puis refermer le couvercle avant.

[Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática.]

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador, quite el tornillo (1) y remueva la cubierta delantera inferior (2).

2. Cuelgue las secciones con gancho (5) de la pata de placa F (I) en las muescas de la carcasa del finalizador (6) y fíjelas por medio de 2 tornillos de sujeción Taptite S M4 X 10 (J).

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta delantera inferior (2) a su posición original, asegúrela utilizando el tornillo (1) y cierre la cubierta delantera.

[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine anbringen.]

1. Öffnen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Finishers, entfernen Sie die Schraube (1), und nehmen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (2) ab.

2. Hängen Sie die Hakenteile (5) des Plattenfußes F (I) in die Finisher-Rahmenöffnungen (6) und befestigen Sie sie mit den 2 Taptite S-Befestigungsschrauben M4 × 10 (J).

3. Bringen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (2) wieder an ihrer ursprünglichen Position an, sichern Sie sie mit der Schraube (1), und schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung.

[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero.]

1. Aprire il coperchio anteriore del finitore, rimuovere la vite (1) e poi il coperchio anteriore inferiore (2).

2. Agganciare le sezioni dei ganci (5) del piedino della piastra F (I) sugli incavi (6) del telaio del finitore, e fissarle utilizzando 2 viti di seraggio Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Reinserire il coperchio anteriore inferiore (2) nella sua posizione iniziale, fissarlo utilizzando la vite (1) e chiuderlo.

[在黑白机上安装时的步骤 1 ~ 3]

1. 打开装订器的前盖板，拆下 1 个螺丝 (1)，然后取下前下盖板 (2)。

2. 将底板 F (G) 的挂钩部 (3) 钩在装订器框架部的凹口 (4) 处，并用 2 个连接用自攻紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 10 (G) 进行固定。

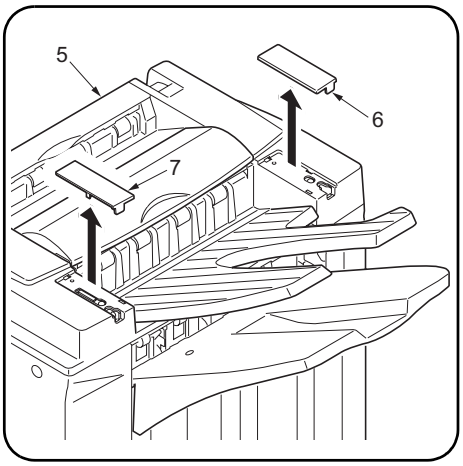
3. 按原样装好前下盖板 (2)，并用 1 个螺丝 (1) 进行固定，关闭前盖板。

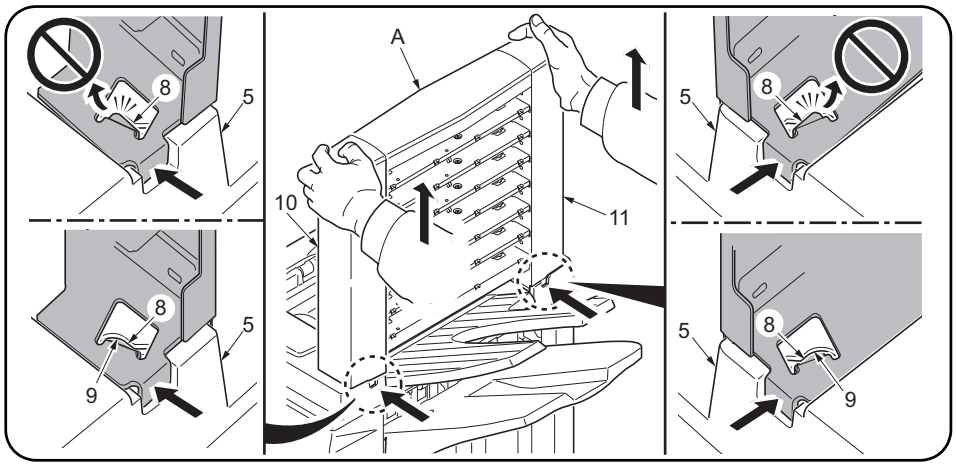
[手順 1 ～ 3 はモノクロ機に取り付ける場合]

1. フィニッシャの前カバーを開け、ビス (1)1 本を外し、前下カバー(2) を取り外す。

2. プレートフット F(G) のフック部 (3) をフィニッシャフレーム部の切り欠き (4) に引っ掛け、ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S(G)2 本で固定する。

3. 前下カバー(2) を元通り取り付けビス (1)1 本で固定し、前カバーを閉じる。





4. Remove the front top cover (6) and rear top cover (7) at the top of the finisher (5) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.

5. Fit the hooks (8) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (9) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (5) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (5).

Note: Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that the mailbox (A) does not float. If it floats, fit it again so that the hooks (8) do not protrude from the notches (9) as shown in the illustration. (You can see the notches (9) if you remove the rear cover (10) and front cover (11).)

---

4. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (6) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (7) situés en haut du retoucheur (5) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

5. Insérer les crochets (8) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière au fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (9) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière en haut du retoucheur (5) comme illustré ici, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (5).

Note: Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte que celle-ci ne bouge plus.Si la boîte à lettres (A) bouge, la réinsérer de sorte que les crochets (8) ne dépassent pas des encoches (9) comme illustré. (Les encoches (9) sont visibles quand le couvercle arrière (10) et le couvercle avant (11) sont enlevés.)

---

4. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (6) y la cubierta superior trasera (7) en la parte superior del finalizador (5) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

5. Coloque los ganchos (8) ubicados en la parte inferior frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) en las muescas (9) ubicadas en la parte superior frontal y trasera del finalizador (5), como se muestra en la ilustración, y coloque el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (5).

Nota: Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) hacia arriba para asegurarse de que el buzón de correo (A) no queda suspendido.Si quedara suspendido, colóquelo de nuevo de forma tal que los ganchos (8) no sobresalgan de las muescas (9), como se muestra en la ilustración. (Puede ver las muescas (9) si quita la cubierta trasera (10) y la cubierta frontal (11).)

---

4. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (6) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (7) an der Oberseite des Finishers (5) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

5. Setzen Sie die Haken (8) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) in die Öffnungen (9) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (5) ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Finisher (5) an.

Hinweis: Heben Sie die Mailbox (A) vorne und hinten etwas an, um sicher zu stellen, dass die Mailbox (A) nicht pendelt.Falls Sie pendelt, ist sie noch einmal so einzupassen, dass die Haken (8) nicht aus den Öffnungen (9) hervorstehen, wie abgebildet. (Die Öffnungen (9) sind sichtbar, wenn man die hintere Abdeckung (10) und die vordere Abdeckung (11) abnimmt.

---

4. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (6) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (7) dalla parte superiore del finitore (5) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

5. Inserire i ganci (8) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A), negli incavi (9) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (5) come mostrato nell'illustrazione, e fissare la casella postale (A) al finitore (5).

Nota: Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore (A) della casella postale verso l'alto per accertarsi che non si sposti.Nel caso in cui si sposta, inserirla di nuovo in modo che i ganci (8) non sporgano fuori dagli incavi (9), come mostrato nell'illustrazione. (È possibile vedere gli incavi (9) se si rimuove il pannello posteriore (10) e il pannello anteriore (11).)

---

4. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器 (5) 上部的顶罩前盖板 (6) 和顶罩后盖板 (7)。

5. 如图所示，将位于邮箱 (A) 底部前后侧的卡扣 (8) 嵌入位于装订器 (5) 顶部前后侧的凹口 (9)，并将邮箱 (A) 安装至装订器 (5)。

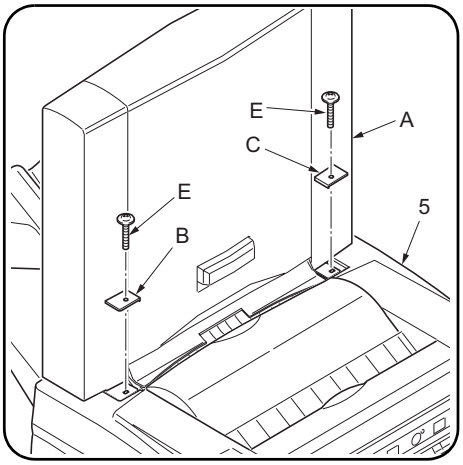
注：
轻轻向上提升邮箱(A)的前后侧，确保邮箱(A)未处于悬浮状态。
如果处于悬浮状态，请重新安装，勿使卡扣(8)从凹口 (9) 中凸出，如图所示。(拆下后盖板 (10) 和前盖板 (11) 之后可以看到凹口 (9)。)

---

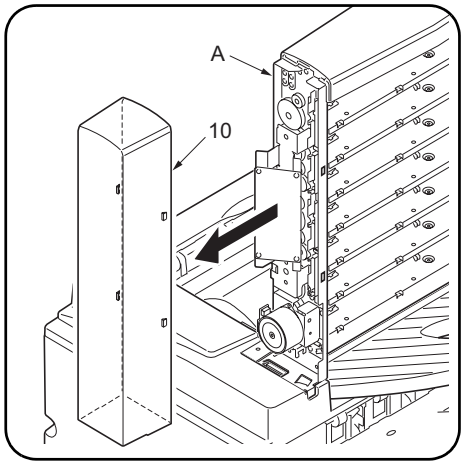
4. フィニッシャ（5）上部の天カバー前フタ（6）、天カバー後フタ（7）をマイナスドライバなどで取り外す。

5. メールボックス（A）下部の前後にあるフック（8）をフィニッシャ(5)上部の前後にある切り欠き部（9）にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス（A）をフィニッシャ(5)に取り付ける。

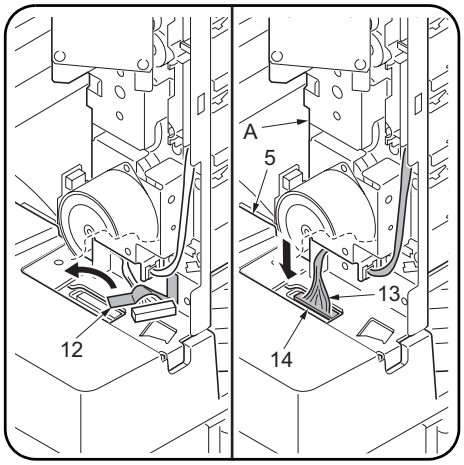
注意
メールボックス（A）の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス（A）が浮かないことを確認する。
浮く場合は、イラストのようにフック（8）が切り欠き部（9）に乗り上げないように、再度取り付けること。(後カバー(10)、前カバー(11) を外すと、切り欠き部（9）が見えます)



6. Secure the front connection portion of the mailbox (A) and the finisher (1) with the front mounting plate cover (B) using a M4 x 14TP tap-tight S screw (E) and secure the rear connection portion with the rear mounting plate cover (C) using a M4 x 14TP tap-tight S screw (E).



7. Remove the rear cover (10) at the rear of the mailbox (A) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



8. Remove the fixing tape (12).
9. Connect the connector (13) of the mailbox (A) to the connector (14) of the finisher (5).
10. Reinstall the rear cover (10).

---

6. Fixer la partie raccordement avant de la boîte aux lettres (A) et le retoucheur (1) avec le couvercle de la plaque de montage avant (B) en procédant à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse S M4 x 14TP (E) et fixer la partie raccordement arrière avec le couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière (C) en procédant à l'aide d'une vis autotaraudeuse S M4 x 14TP (E).

7. Déposer le couvercle arrière (10) à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame ou autre.

8. Enlever la bande adhésive de fixation (12).
9. Raccorder le connecteur (13) de la boîte à lettres (A) au connecteur (14) du retoucheur (5).
10. Reposer le couvercle arrière (10).

---

6. Asegure la parte de conexión frontal del buzón de correo (A) y el finalizador (1) con la cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal (B) por medio de un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 14TP (E) y asegure la parte de conexión trasera a la cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera (C) por medio de un tornillo de ajuste M4 x14TP (E).

7. Quite la cubierta trasera (10) en la parte posterior del buzón de correo (A) utilizando un destornillador de pala plana o elemento similar.

8. Despegue la cinta de fijación (12).
9. Conecte el conector (13) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (14) del finalizador (5).
10. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta trasera (10).

---

6. Sichern Sie den vorderen Anschlussbereich der Mailbox (A) und des Finishers (1) mit der vorderen Abdeckung (B) der Montageplatte unter Verwendung einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E), und sichern Sie den hinteren Anschlussbereich mit der hinteren Abdeckung (C) der Montageplatte unter Verwendung einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E).

7. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (10) an der Rückseite der Mailbox (A) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

8. Entfernen Sie das Klebeband (12).
9. Stecken Sie den Stecker (13) der Mailbox (A) in den Anschluss (14) des Finishers (5).
10. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (10) wieder an.

---

6. Fissare la porzione di collegamento anteriore della casella postale (A) e del finitore (1) con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore (B) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 14TP (E) e fissare la porzione di collegamento posteriore con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore (C) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 14TP (E).

7. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (10) dietro la casella postale (A) utilizzando un giravite a punta piana o strumento simile.

8. Rimuovere il nastro adesivo (12).
9. Collegare il connettore (13) della casella postale (A) al connettore (14) del finitore (5).
10. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (10).

---

6. 使用 M4 × 14TP 自攻紧固型 S 螺钉 (E) 将邮箱 (A) 的前连接部分和装订器 (1) 紧固在支撑板前盖板 (B) 上，并使用 M4 × 14TP 自攻紧固型 S 螺钉 (E) 将后连接部分紧固在支撑板后盖板 (C) 上。

7. 使用一字型螺钉刀或类似工具拆下邮箱 (A) 后侧的后盖板 (10)。

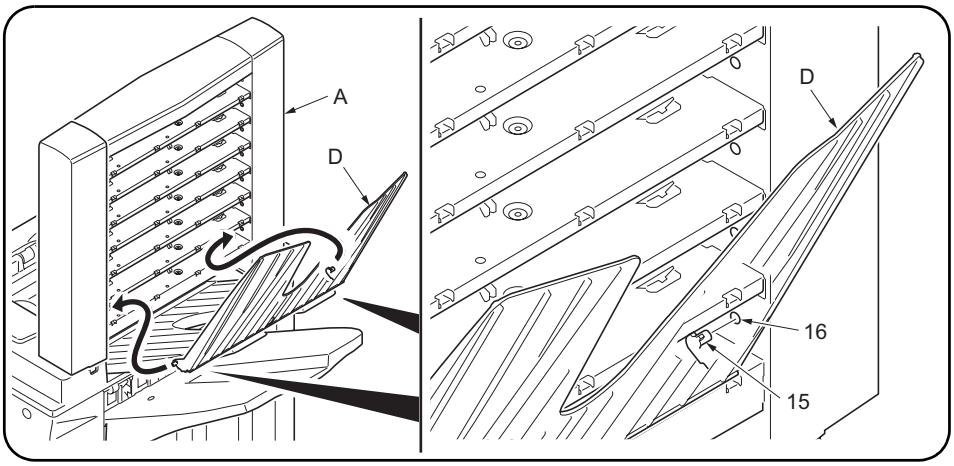
8. 拆下固定胶带 (12)。
9. 将邮箱 (A) 的接插件 (13) 连接至装订器 (5) 的接插件 (14)。
10. 重新安装后盖板 (10)。

---

6. メールボックス (A) とフィニッシャ (1) の前側の接続部を取付板カバー前 (B) と共にビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S(E)1 本で、後側の接続部を取付板カバー後 (C) と共にビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S(E)1 本で固定する。

7. メールボックス (A) 後部の後カバー (10) をマイナスドライバなどで取り外す。

8. 固定テープ (12) を剥がす。
9. メールボックス (A) のコネクタ (13) をフィニッシャ (5) のコネクタ (14) に接続する。
10. 後カバー (10) を元通り取り付ける。



11. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.
While pressing both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, fit the bin at a nearly upright angle as shown in the illustration by inserting the front and rear pins (15) into the round holes (16) at the front and rear of the mailbox (A).

12. Insert the MFP power plug to the outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on to check the operation.

---

11. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.
Tout en appuyant sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection de copies (D) de manière à la plier légèrement, fixer la case à un angle presque droit, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, en insérant les broches avant et arrière (15) dans les trous ronds (16) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A).

12. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position de marche pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

---

11. Fije las siete bandejas de expulsión de copias (D) en la sección de expulsión del buzón de correo (A) de la bandeja más baja a la más alta.
Mientras presiona ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlo un poco, fije la bandeja en un ángulo casi vertical tal como en la figura, insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (15) en los orificios redondos (16) en los lados delantero y trasero del buzón de correo (A).

12. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP para verificar el funcionamiento.

---

11. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in den Ausgabeabschnitt der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.
Drücken Sie bei jedem Kopienausgabefach (D) beide Enden zusammen, um es ein wenig zu biegen, und setzen Sie dabei das Fach in einem fast aufrechten Winkel ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, indem Sie den vorderen und hinteren Stift (15) in die Rundlöcher (16) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) einsetzen.

12. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

---

11. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella parte di espulsione della casella postale (A), cominciando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.
Premendo alle due estremità di uno scomparto di emissione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarle un poco, installare lo scomparto come mostrato in illustrazione mantenendolo quasi ad angolo retto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (15) nei fori rotondi (16) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A).

12. Inserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa della rete elettrica e accenderla utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione in modo da controllare il funzionamento.

---

11. 从邮箱 (A) 的排出部下面起按顺序安装 7 个接纸盘 (D)。
轻轻按下接纸盘 (D) 的左右使之前倾 (如图所示呈竖起状态的角度)，将前后销 (15) 插入邮箱 (A) 的前后圆孔 (16) 内。

12. 将 MFP 主机的电源插头插入插座，然后按下主开关并确认是否接通。

---

11. 排出ビン (D)7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。
排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませながら、イラストのように立てた状態の角度で、前後のピン (15) をメールボックス (A) の前後の丸穴 (16) に挿入する。

12. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。

English

NOTICE

This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine. Refer to the supplied guide to install the accessory in the field.

Model: DF-760/760(B)

Français

AVIS

Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant. Se reporter au guide fourni pour installer l'accessoire dans le champ.

Modèle: DF-760/760(B)

Español

AVISO

Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes. Consulte las instrucciones para la instalación de accesorios en el lugar del cliente.

Modelo: DF-760/760(B)

Deutsch

HINWEIS

Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen. Installieren Sie das Zubehör gemäß der mitgelieferten Anleitung im Feld.

Modell: DF-760/760(B)

Italiano

NOTIFICA

Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante. Consultare la guida fornita in dotazione per il montaggio in campo dell'accessorio.

Modello: DF-760/760(B)

简体中文

注意

本产品适用于以下选购件。安装时，请参照附带的说明书。

式样： DF-760/760(B)

日本語

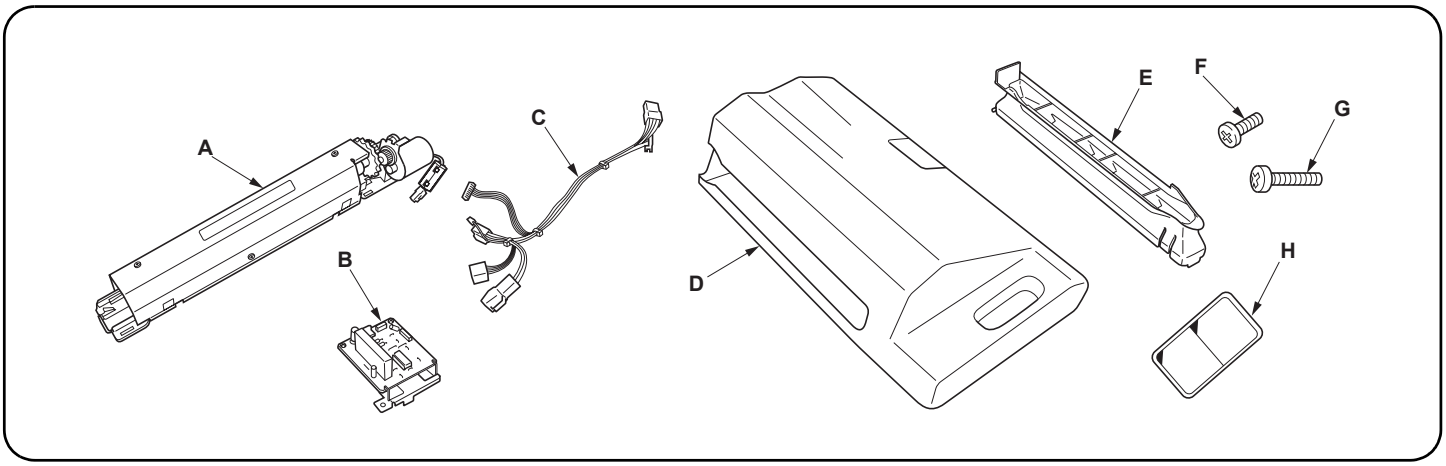
注意

本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。

設置する際は、同梱の手順書を参照してください。

Model: DF-760/760(B)

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR HOLE PUNCH UNIT



English

Supplied parts

A Hole punch unit 1
B Punch PCB 1
C Power cord 1
D Waste hole punch box 1
E Guide 1
F M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw 1
G M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw 2
H Label 1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Perforatrice 1
B Carte de perforation 1
C Cordon d'alimentation 1
D Bac de récupération de la perforatrice 1
E Guide 1
F Vis S taraudée M4 × 8 1
G Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 2
H Etiquette 1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A Perforadora 1
B PCB de perforación 1
C Cable de alimentación 1
D Caja para desechos de la perforación 1
E Guía 1
F Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 1
G Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 2
H Etiqueta 1

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Lochereinheit 1
B Locherplatine 1
C Netzkabel 1
D Lochungsabfallbehälter 1
E Führung 1
F M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 1
G M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 2
H Aufkleber 1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Unità di perforazione 1
B Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione .. 1
C Cavo di alimentazione 1
D Scarto perforazione 1
E Guida 1
F Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 2
H Etichetta 1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属部件

A 打孔单元 1
B 打孔单元电路板 1
C 电源线 1
D 打孔纸屑盒 1
E 导向板 1
F M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 1
G M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 2
H 标签 1

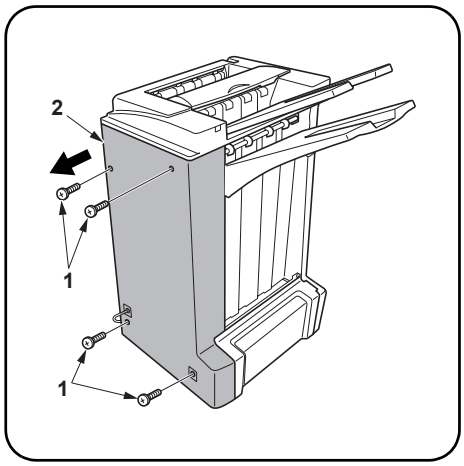
请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

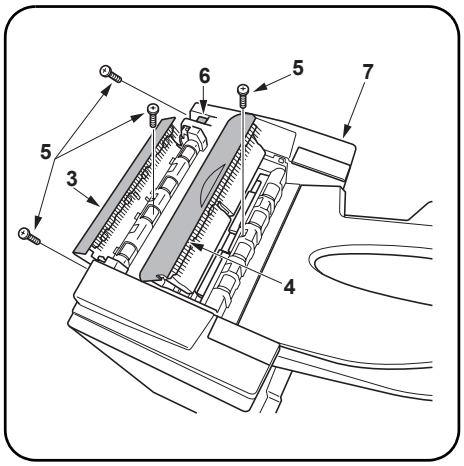
日本語

付属品

A パンチユニット 1
B パンチ基板 1
C 電線 1
D パンチくずボックス 1
E ガイド 1
F ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S 1
G ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S 2
H ラベル 1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。





Installation Procedure
Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.
Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

Removing the cover
1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the back cover (2) from the document finisher.
2. Open the upper cover (3) and tray C (4) on the document finisher.
3. Remove four screws (5) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) to remove the top cover (7).

Procédure d'installation
Avant d'installer la perforeuse s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.
Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

Enlèvement du capot.
1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) pour retirer le capot arrière (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) du finisseur de document.
3. Retirer quatre vis (5) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur.(7).

Procedimiento de instalación
Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.
Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

Extracción de la cubierta
1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) para quitar la cubierta posterior (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para quitar la cubierta superior (7).

Einbauverfahren
Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.
Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung
1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1) und entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (2) vom Dokument-Finisher.
2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) am Dokument-Finisher.
3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), und die obere Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

Procedura di installazione
Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.
Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

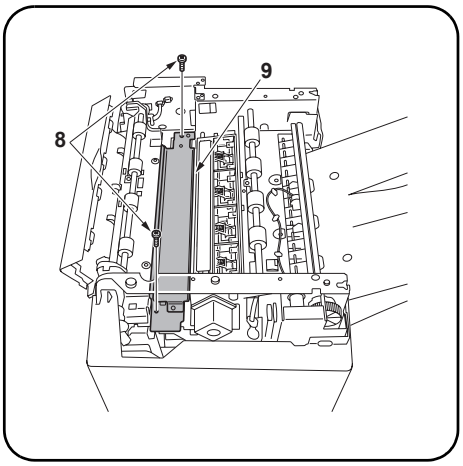
Rimuovere il coperchio
1. Togliere le quattro viti (1) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2) dalla finitrice.
2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) della finitrice.
3. Togliere quattro viti (5) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

安装步骤
安装打孔单元前，请确定 MFP 的主电源开关已经关闭并且电源线已从电源插座上拔下。
首先安装装订器，然后安装打孔单元。

拆下盖板
1. 从装订器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。
2. 打开装订器的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。
3. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 并按住整理器释放杆 (6) 以便拆下上盖板 (7)。

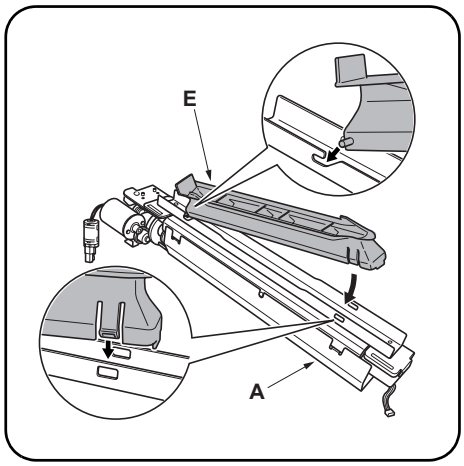
設置手順
パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し
1. ビス (1)4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー(2) を取り外す。
2. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー(3) とトレイ C(4) を開く。
3. ビス (5)4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー(6) を押しながら天カバー(7) を取り外す。



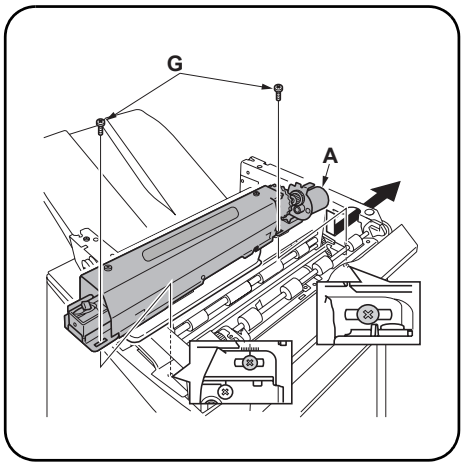
Removing the guide plate

4. Remove two screws (8) to remove the guide plate (9).



Installing the guide

5. Engage the projection and the pawl of the guide (E) with the hole punch unit (A) to install the guide.



Installing the hole punch unit

6. Tilt the hole punch unit (A) to place it through the hole in the upper side of the document finisher.

7. Fix the hole punch unit (A) with two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G).
Install the hole punch unit so that M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (G) is placed at the center of each screw hole.

Enlèvement de la plaque de guidage.

4. Retirer deux vis (8) pour retirer la plaque de guidage (9).

Installation du guide

5. Engager la projection et le cliquet du guide (E) dans la perforatrice (A) pour installer le guide.

Installation de la perforatrice

6. Incliner la perforatrice (A) pour la faire passer par l'orifice de la partie supérieure du finisseur de document.

7. Fixer la perforatrice (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G).
Installer la perforatrice pour que les vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) soit placées au centre de chaque orifice de vis.

Extracción de la placa guía

4. Quite los dos tornillos (8) para quitar la placa guía (9).

Instalación de la guía

5. Acople el resalto y el trinquete de la guía (E) con la perforadora (A) para instalar la guía.

Instalación de la perforadora

6. Incline la perforadora (A) para colocarla a través del agujero del lado superior del finalizador de documentos.

7. Fije la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G).
Instale la perforadora de forma que los tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) queden en el centro de cada agujero de tornillo.

Entfernen der Führungsplatte

4. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (8), um die Führungsplatte abzunehmen (9).

Anbringen der Führung

5. Bringen Sie den Vorsprung und die Sperrklinke der Führung (E) mit der Lochereinheit (A) in Eingriff, um die Führung einzubauen.

Anbringen der Lochereinheit

6. Kippen Sie die Lochereinheit (A), um sie durch das Loch an der oberen Seite des Dokument-Finishers einzuführen.

7. Nun die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) befestigen.
Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Lochereinheit so angebracht wird, dass sich die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Schraublochs befindet.

Rimuovere la piastra guida

4. Togliere due viti (8) per rimuovere la piastra guida (9).

Installare la guida

5. Agganciare la parte sporgente e il dentello della guida (E) all'unità di perforazione (A) per installare la guida.

Installare l'unità di perforazione

6. Inclinare l'unità di perforazione (A) in modo da inserirla dentro la cavità nella parte superiore della finitrice.

7. Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G). Installare l'unità di perforazione in modo che la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) sia piazzata al centro di ogni apposito foro.

拆下导向板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下导向板 (9)。

安装导向板

5. 将导向板 (E) 的突出部和卡爪与打孔单元 (A) 啮合，安装导向板。

安装打孔单元

6. 将打孔单元 (A) 倾斜，从装订器上部的孔中穿过。

7. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 固定打孔单元 (A)。
安装打孔单元，让 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 放在每个螺钉孔的中央。

ガイド板の取り外し

4. ビス (8)2 本を外し、ガイド板 (9) を取り外す。

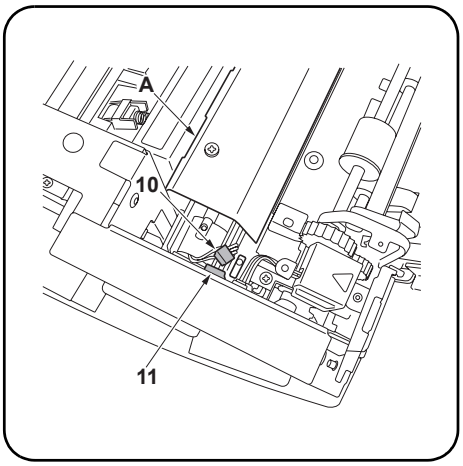
ガイドの取り付け

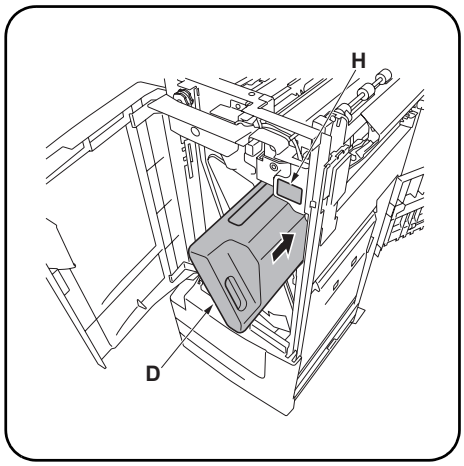
5. ガイド (E) の突起とツメをパンチユニット (A) に引っ掛け、取り付ける。

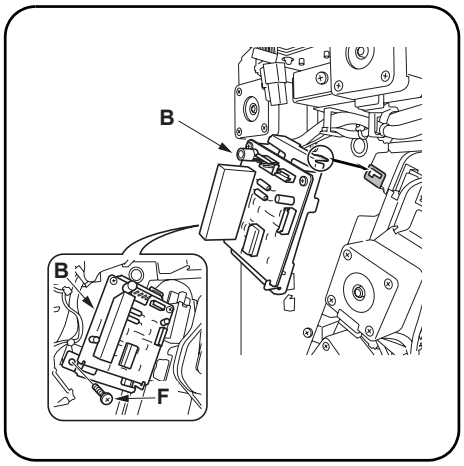
パンチユニットの取り付け

6. パンチユニット (A) を傾け、ドキュメントフィニッシャ上部の穴に通す。

7. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(G)2 本でパンチユニット (A) を固定する。
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(G) がビス穴の中心の位置になるように取り付けること。







Connecting the connector (120V/220V/230V/240V models only. Except for Swedish specification)

8. Connect the 3P-connector (10) on the hole punch unit (A) to the 3P-connector (11) inside the document finisher.

Installing the waste hole punch box

9. Open the front cover of the document finisher and insert the waste hole punch box (D) along the guide (E) which was installed in step 5.
10. Clean the upper right cover of the waste hole punch box (D) with alcohol and adhere the label (H) on the concave section of the box.
11. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

Installing the punch PCB

12. Engage the pawl on the upper side of the punch PCB (B) with the groove at the back of the document finisher.
13. Secure the punch PCB (B) with M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw (F).

Connexion du connecteur (Modèles 120V/220V/230V/240V seulement. Sauf pour les spécifications suédoises)

8. Connecter le connecteur 3P (10) de la perforatrice (A) au connecteur 3P (11) à l'intérieur du finisseur de document.

Installation du bac de récupération de la perforatrice

9. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) le long du guide (E) installé à l'étape 5.
10. Nettoyer le capot supérieur droit du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (H) sur la partie concave du bac.
11. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

Installation de la carte de perforation

12. Engager le cliquet de la partie supérieure de la carte de perforation (B) dans la rainure à l'arrière du finisseur de document.
13. Fixer la carte de perforation (B) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (F).

Conexión del conector (Modelos de 120 V/220 V/230 V/240 V solamente. Excepto para las especificaciones suecas)

8. Conecte el conector de 3 contactos (10) de la perforadora (A) en el conector de 3 contactos (11) del interior del finalizador de documentos.

Instalación la caja para desechos de la perforación

9. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos e introduzca la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) a lo largo de la guía (E) que fue instalada en el paso 5.
10. Limpie la cubierta superior derecha de la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta (H) en la sección cóncava de la caja.
11. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

Instalación del PCB de perforación

12. Acople el trinquete del lado superior del PCB de perforación (B) con las ranuras de la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos.
13. Asegure el PCB de perforación (B) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (F).

Anschließen des Steckers (nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen)

8. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (10) der Lochereinheit (A) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) innerhalb des Dokument-Finishers ein.

Anbringen des Lochungsabfallbehälters

9. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und bauen Sie dann den Lochabfallbehälter (D) entlang der in Schritt 5 installierten Führung (E) ein.
10. Reinigen Sie die rechte obere Abdeckung des Lochabfallbehälters (D) mit Alkohol und bringen Sie danach den Aufkleber (H) am konkaven Teil des Behälters an.
11. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

Anbringen der Locherplatine

12. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke auf der oberen Seite der Locherplatine (B) in die Nut auf der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers eingreifen.
13. Befestigen Sie die Locherplatine (B) mit der M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (F).

Collegare il connettore (solo per i modelli 120V/220V/230V/240V. Eccetto per la specificazione svedese)

8. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'unità di perforazione (A) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) all'interno della finitrice.

Installare lo scarto perforazione (Contenitore degli scarti per la perforazione).

9. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice e inserire lo scarto perforazione (D) lungo la guida (E) installata nel passo 5.
10. Pulire il pannello superiore destro dello scarto perforazione (D) con alcool e incollare l'etichetta (H) nella sezione concava del contenitore.
11. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

Installare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione

12. Agganciare il dentello che si trova nella parte superiore della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice.
13. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) con una viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (F).

连接插头
(仅适用于 120V/220V/230V/240V 型号。除瑞典规格)

8. 将打孔单元 (A) 上的 3P 插头 (10) 连接到装订器内的 3P 插头 (11)。

安装打孔纸屑盒

9. 打开装订器的前盖板并沿着在步骤 5 中安装的导向板 (E) 插入打孔纸屑盒 (D)。
10. 用酒精清洁打孔纸屑盒 (D) 的右上盖板，并将标签 (H) 粘到盒的凹面。
11. 关闭装订器的前盖板。

安装打孔单元电路板

12. 将打孔单元电路板 (B) 的上部卡爪与装订器后部的沟槽啮合。
13. 用 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

コネクタの接続 (120V/220V/230V/240V 仕様のみ。ただしスウェーデン仕様は除く)

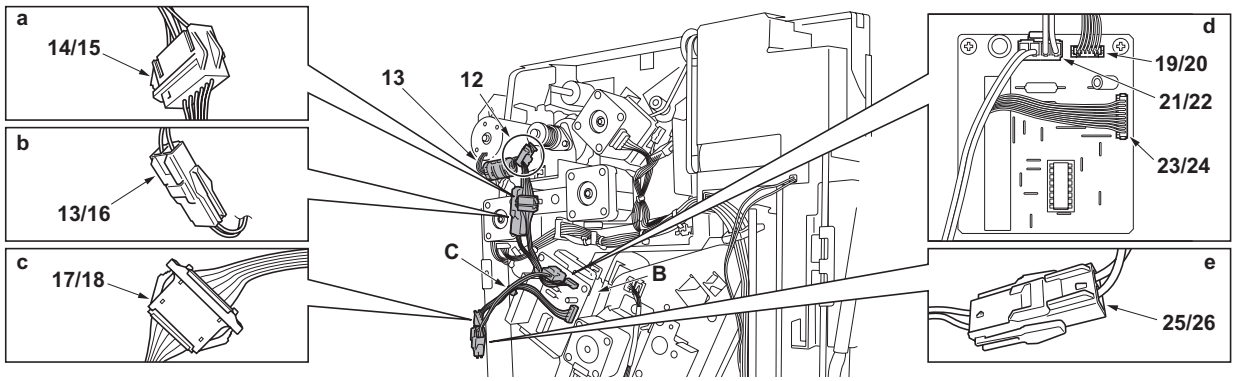
8. パンチユニット (A) の 3P コネクタ (10) をドキュメントフィニッシャの 3P コネクタ (11) に接続する。

パンチくずボックスの取り付け

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開き、手順 5 で取り付けたガイド (E) に沿ってパンチくずボックス (D) を挿入する。
10. パンチくずボックス (D) 右上のカバーをアルコール清掃し、凹部に合わせてラベル (H) を貼り付ける。
11. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。

パンチ基板の取り付け

12. パンチ基板 (B) の上部のツメをドキュメントフィニッシャ後側の溝に引っ掛ける。
13. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S(F) 1 本でパンチ基板 (B) を固定する。



14. Open the wire saddle (12) and put the 2P-connector (13) on the motor through the wire saddle to fix the punch PCB (B).
15. Connect the power cord (C) to the punch PCB (B).
Figure (a): 6P-connector (14) of power coed (C) and 6P-connector (15) of sensor
Figure (b): 2P-connector (13) of power cord (C) and 2P-connector (16) of motor
Figure (c): 9P-connector (17) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (18) of document finisher power cord
Figure (d): 6P-connector (19) of power cord (C) and YC3 connector (20) of punch PCB (B)
Figure (d): 4P-connector (21) of power cord (C) and YC1 connector (22) of punch PCB (B)
Figure (d): 9P-connector (23) of power cord (C) and YC2 connector (24) of punch PCB (B)
Figure (e): 9P-connector (25) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (26) of document finisher power cord

---

14. Ouvrir la selle de câble (12) et faire passer le connecteur 2P (13) dans le moteur par la selle de câble pour fixer la carte de perforation (B).
15. Connecter le cordon d'alimentation (C) et la carte de perforation (B).
Figure (a): connecteur 6P (14) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 6P (15) du capteur
Figure (b): connecteur 2P (13) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 2P (16) du moteur
Figure (c): connecteur 9P (17) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (18) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document
Figure (d): connecteur 6P (19) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC3 (20) de la carte de perforation (B)
Figure (d): connecteur 4P (21) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC1 (22) de la carte de perforation (B)
Figure (d): connecteur 9P (23) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC2 (24) de la carte de perforation (B)
Figure (e): connecteur 9P (25) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (26) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

---

14. Abra la placa de cable (12) y ponga el conector de 2 contactos (13) en el motor a través de la placa de cable para fijar el PCB de perforación (B).
15. Conecte el cable de alimentación (C) en el PCB de perforación (B).
Figura (a): Conector de 6 contactos (14) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 6 contactos (15) del sensor
Figura (b): Conector de 2 contactos (13) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 2 contactos (16) del motor
Figura (c): Conector de 9 contactos (17) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (18) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos
Figura (d): Conector de 6 contactos (19) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC3 (20) del PCB de perforación (B)
Figura (d): Conector de 4 contactos (21) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC1 (22) del PCB de perforación (B)
Figura (d): Conector de 9 contactos (23) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC2 (24) del PCB de perforación (B)
Figura (e): Conector de 9 contactos (25) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (26) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

---

14. Öffnen Sie den Kabelhalter (12) und führen Sie den 2-poligen Stecker (13) durch den Kabelhalter am Motor, um die Locherplatine (B) zu befestigen.
15. Schließen Sie das Netzkabel (C) an der Locherplatine (B) an.
Abbildung (a): 6-poliger Stecker (14) des Netzkabels (C) und 6-poliger Stecker (15) des Sensors
Abbildung (b): 2-poliger Stecker (13) des Netzkabels (C) und 2-poliger Stecker (16) des Motors
Abbildung (c): 9-poliger Stecker (17) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (18) des Dokument-Finishers-Netzkabels
Abbildung (d): 6-poliger Stecker (19) des Netzkabels (C) und YC3-Stecker (20) der Locherplatine (B)
Abbildung (d): 4-poliger Stecker (21) des Netzkabels (C) und YC1-Stecker (22) der Locherplatine (B)
Abbildung (d): 9-poliger Stecker (23) des Netzkabels (C) und YC2-Stecker (24) der Locherplatine (B)
Abbildung (e): 9-poliger Stecker (25) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (26) des Dokument-Finisher-Netzkabels

---

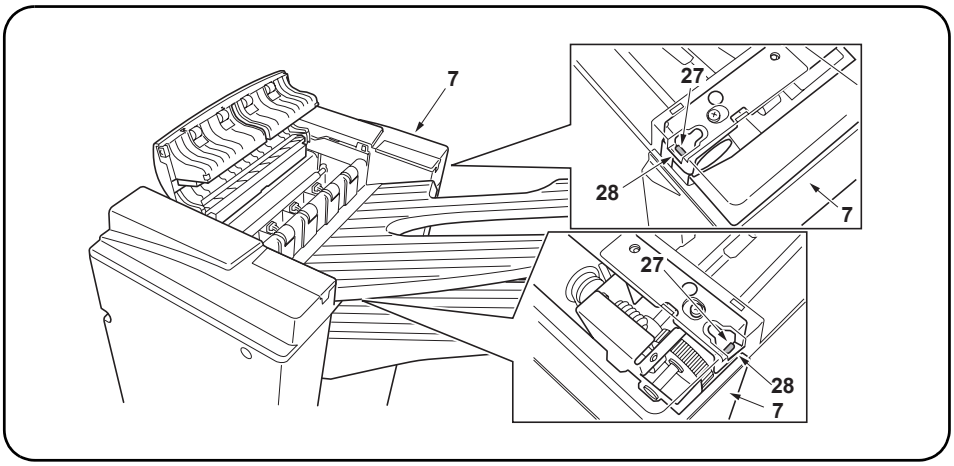
14. Aprire la slitta del filo (12) e inserire il connettore a 2 piedini (13) sul motore attraverso la slitta in modo da fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
15. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (C) alla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
Figura (a): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (14) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (15)
Figura (b): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 2 piedini (13) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (16)
Figura (c): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (17) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (18)
Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (19) e connettore YC3 (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 4 piedini (21) e connettore YC1 (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (23) e connettore YC2 (24) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
Figura (e): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (25) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (26)

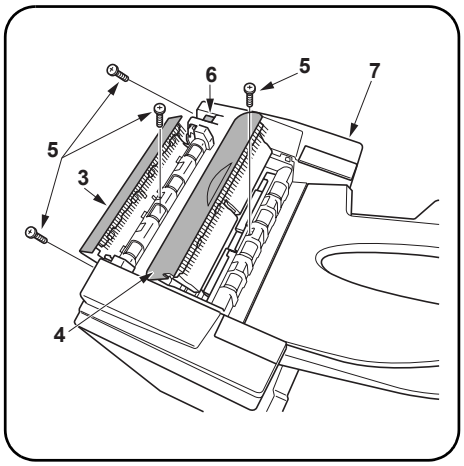
---

14. 打开电线束线夹 (12) 并将电机上的 2P 插头 (13) 穿过电线束线夹，固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。
15. 将电源线 (C) 连接到打孔单元电路板 (B)。
图 (a)： 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (14) 和传感器的 6P 插头 (15)
图 (b)： 电源线 (C) 的 2P 插头 (13) 和电机的 2P 插头 (16)
图 (c)： 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (17) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (18)
图 (d)： 电源线(C)的6P插头(19)和打孔单元电路板(B)的YC3插头(20)
图 (d)： 电源线(C)的4P插头(21)和打孔单元电路板(B)的YC1插头(22)
图 (d)： 电源线(C)的9P插头(23)和打孔单元电路板(B)的YC2插头(24)
图 (e)： 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (25) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (26)

---

14. ワイヤーサドル (12) を開き、モータの 2P コネクタ (13) をワイヤーサドル (12) へ通して固定する。
15. 電線 (C) をパンチ基板 (B) と接続する。
図 (a)：電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (14) とセンサの 6P コネクタ (15)
図 (b)：電線 (C) の 2P コネクタ (13) とモータの 2P コネクタ (16)
図 (c)：電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (17) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (18)
図 (d)：電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (19) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC3 コネクタ (20)
図 (d)：電線 (C) の 4P コネクタ (21) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC1 コネクタ (22)
図 (d)：電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (23) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC2 コネクタ (24)
図 (e)：電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (25) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (26)





Installing the cover

16. Engage the pawl (27) of the document finisher with the concave section (28) at the back of the top cover (7) which was removed in step 3. After that, reinstall the top cover (7) by pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) with four screws (5).
If the pawl (27) is not securely engaged with the concave section, the top cover (7) is loose, which may cause incorrect operation of the document finisher.

17. Close the upper cover (3) and the tray C (4) which were opened in step 2.

Installation du capot

16. Engager le cliquet (27) du finisseur de document dans la partie concave (28) de l'arrière du capot supérieur (7) retiré à l'étape 3. Ensuite, réinstaller le capot supérieur (7) en serrant le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) à l'aide de quatre vis (5).
Si le cliquet (27) n'est pas bien engagé dans la partie concave, le capot supérieur (7) est lâche, ce qui peut entraîner un fonctionnement incorrect du finisseur de document.

17. Refermer le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) ouverts à l'étape 2.

Instalación de la cubierta

16. Acople el trinquete (27) del finalizador de documentos con la sección cóncava (28) de la parte posterior de la cubierta superior (7) que fue quitada en el paso 3. Después, presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (7) con cuatro tornillos (5).
Si el trinquete (27) no está firmemente acoplado con la sección cóncava, la cubierta superior (7) quedará floja, lo que podrá causar un funcionamiento incorrecto del finalizador de documentos.

17. Cierre la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) que fueron abiertas en el paso 2.

Anbringen der Abdeckung

16. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke (27) des Dokument-Finishers in den konkaven Teil (28) auf der Rückseite der oberen Abdeckung (7) eingreifen, die zuvor in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Drücken Sie danach den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), um die obere Abdeckung (7) mit den vier Schrauben (5) zu befestigen.
Wenn die Sperrklinke (27) nicht gut in den konkaven Teil eingreift, ist die obere Abdeckung (7) locker. Dabei kann es zu einer Funktionsstörung im Dokument-Finisher kommen.

17. Schließen Sie die in Schritt 2 geöffnete obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) wieder.

Installare il pannello

16. Agganciare il dentello (27) della finitrice alla sezione concava (28) sul retro del coperchio (7) rimosso al passo 3. In seguito, premi la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per reinstallare il coperchio (7) con quattro viti (5).
Se il dentello (27) non è fermamente agganciato alla sezione concava, il coperchio (7) risulta allentato e ciò può causare il malfunzionamento della finitrice.

17. Chiudere il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) aperti nel passo 2.

安装盖板

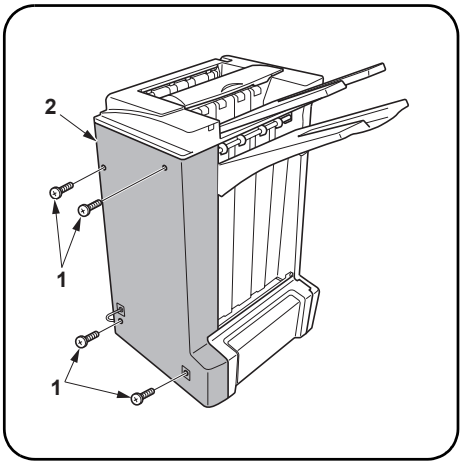
16. 将装订器的卡爪 (27) 与在步骤 3 中拆下的上盖板 (7) 后凹面 (28) 啮合。之后，按下装订器释放杆 (6)，用 4 颗螺钉重新安装上部盖板 (7)。
如果卡爪 (27) 未与凹面牢固地啮合，上盖板 (7) 会松动，可能会造成装订器的异常操作。

17. 关闭在步骤 2 中打开的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。

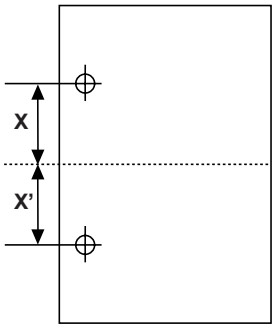
カバーの取り付け

16. ドキュメントフィニッシャのツメ (27) を、手順 3 で外した天カバー(7) 裏側の凹部 (28) に引っ掛け、フィニッシャ解除レバー(6) を押しながら天カバー(7) をはめ込み、ビス (5)4 本で元通り取り付ける。
ツメ (27) が確実に引っ掛けられていない場合、天カバー(7)が浮いた状態になり、ドキュメントフィニッシャが正常に動作しない恐れがある。

17. 手順 2 で開いた上カバー(3) とトレイ C(4) を閉じる。



18. Use four screws (1) to reinstall the back cover (2) which was removed from the document finisher in step 1.



–2mm ≦ X − X' ≦ +2mm

[Checking the center of the punch hole]
1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
3. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

---

18. Utiliser quatre vis (1) pour réinstaller le capot arrière (2) retiré du finisseur de document à l'étape 1.

[Vérification du centre des perforations]
1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
3. Vérifier tout décentrage des perforations. Si des décentrages se produisent, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

---

18. Utilice cuatro tornillos (1) para volver a instalar la cubierta posterior (2) que fue quitada del finalizador de documentos en el paso 1.

[Comprobación del centro del agujero perforado]
1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
3. Compruebe que no haya ningún agujero perforado descentrado. Si lo hay, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

---

18. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) zu befestigen, welche in Schritt 1 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurde.

[Überprüfen der Stanzlöcherzentrierung]
1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Lochungsmodus einen Test aus, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
3. Prüfen Sie auf nicht zentrierte Löcher. Sollte dies der Fall sein, folgen Sie dem nachfolgendem Verfahren, um die Lochposition zu korrigieren.
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

---

18. Utilizzare quattro viti (1) per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso dalla finitrice nel passo 1.

[Verificare la centratura dei fori di perforazione]
1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
3. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

---

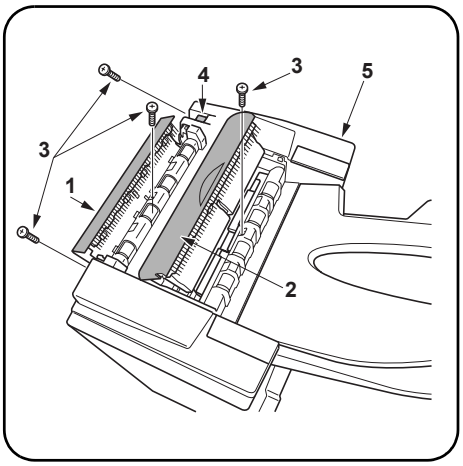
18. 用 4 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 1 中从装订器上拆下的后盖板 (2)。

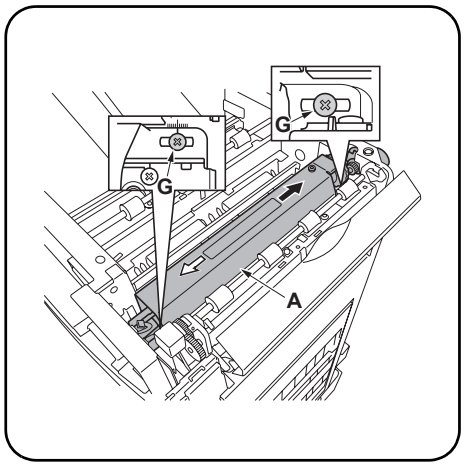
[检查打孔的中央]
1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。
3. 检查打孔是否偏离中央。如果观察到有偏离中央的情况，按照下列步骤调整打孔位置。
＜标准值＞ 打孔的垂直间隙：±2mm

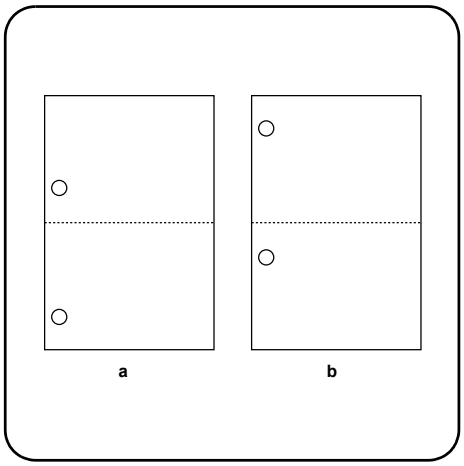
---

18. 手順 1 で外したドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー(2) をビス (1)4 本で元通り取り付ける。

[パンチ穴のセンター位置確認]
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。パンチ穴が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ パンチ穴のずれ：± 2㎜







Centering punch-holes

1. Open the upper cover (1) and the tray C (2) of the document finisher.
2. Remove four screws (3) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (4) to remove the top cover (5).
3. Loosen two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) of the hole punch unit (A).
4. Adjust the position of the hole punch unit (A).
When holes are punched too far lower copy example (a): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the black arrow.
When holes are punched too far upper copy example (b): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the white arrow.
5. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
6. Perform a test copy.

Centrage des perforations

1. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (1) et le bac C (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer quatre vis (3) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur (4) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (5).
3. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) de la perforatrice (A).
4. Ajuster la position de la perforatrice (A).
Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop bas dans l'exemple de copie (a): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche noire.
Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop haut dans l'exemple de copie (b): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche blanche.
5. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.

Centrado de los agujeros de perforación

1. Abra la cubierta superior (1) y la bandeja C (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (3) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (4) para quitar la cubierta superior (5).
3. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) de la perforadora (A).
4. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora (A).
Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia abajo en el ejemplo de copia (a): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha negra.
Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia arriba en el ejemplo de copia (b): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha blanca.
5. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.

Zentrieren der Stanzlöcher

1. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (1) sowie das Fach C (2) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (3) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (4), um die obere Abdeckung (5) zu entfernen.
3. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).
4. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit (A) ein.
Wenn die Löcher zu weit unten durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (a): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils.
Wenn die Löcher zu weit oben durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (b): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des weißen Pfeils.
5. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
6. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

Centratura dei fori di perforazione

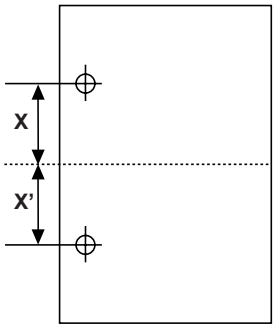
1. Aprire il pannello superiore (1) e il vassoio C (2) della finitrice.
2. Togliere quattro viti (3) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (4) per rimuovere il coperchio (5)
3. Allentare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).
4. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione (A).
Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in basso (esempio a): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia nera.
Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in alto (esempio b): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia bianca.
5. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.

将打孔调整居中

1. 打开装订器的上盖板 (1) 和托盘 C (2)。
2. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (3) 并按住整理器释放杆 (4) 以便拆下上盖板 (5)。
3. 松开打孔单元 (A) 的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
4. 调整打孔单元 (A) 的位置。
打孔远离下部复印样本 (a) 时：将打孔单元 (A) 滑向黑色箭头指示的方向。
打孔远离上部复印样本 (b) 时：将打孔单元 (A) 滑向白色箭头指示的方向。
5. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
6. 进行测试复印。

パンチ穴のセンター位置調整

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー(1)とトレイ C(2)を開く。
2. ビス (3)4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー(4) 押しながら天カバー(5) を取り外す。
3. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(G)2 本を緩める。
4. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。
パンチ穴が下にずれている場合　コピーサンプル (a) :パンチユニット (A) を黒矢印の方向へずらす。
パンチ穴が上にずれている場合　コピーサンプル (b) :パンチユニット (A) を白矢印の方向へずらす。
5. 手順 2 で外した天カバー(5) をビス (3)4 本で元通り取り付ける。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。
6. テストコピーを行う。



–2mm ≦ X – X' ≦ +2mm

7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
8. After adjustment, tighten two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) loosened in step 3.
9. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

---

7. Répéter les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que l'espace vertical des perforations de l'échantillon de copie se trouve à l'intérieur de la valeur de référence.
8. Après l'ajustement, resserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) desserrées à l'étape 3.
9. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

---

7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la separación vertical de los agujeros perforados en la muestra de la copia cumplan con el valor de referencia.
8. Después de hacer el ajuste, apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) aflojados en el paso 3.
9. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

---

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 6, bis der Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher auf der Testkopie innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
8. Nach der Einstellung sind die beiden in Schritt 3 gelösten M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) wieder festzuziehen.
9. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

---

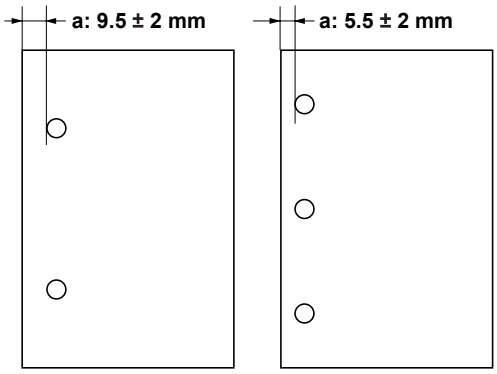
7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 finché la distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione nella copia campione non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
8. Dopo la regolazione, serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) allentate nel passo 3.
9. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

---

7. 重复步骤 1 至 6 直到复印样本上打孔垂直间隙在标准值范围之内。
8. 调整后，拧紧在步骤 3 中松开的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
9. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
＜标准值＞ 打孔的垂直间隙：±2mm

---

7. コピーサンプルのパンチ穴のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
8. 調整終了後、手順 3 で緩めたビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(G)2 本を締め付ける。
9. 手順 2 で外した天カバー(5) をビス (3)4 本で元通り取り付ける。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。
＜基準値＞ パンチ穴のずれ：± 2㎜



[Checking distance from leading edge to the punch holes]

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.

2. Check the distance from the paper leading edge to the punch holes (a). If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ±2 mm
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ±2 mm

Adjusting distance from leading edge to the punch holes

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select FINISHER 3000 and PUNCH POS ADJ mode.

2. Adjust the setting value.
If (a) is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.
If (a) is larger than the reference value, decrease the setting value.
Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.49 mm

[Vérification de la distance du bord d'entrée aux perforations]

1. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.

2. Vérifier la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations (a). Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ±2 mm
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ±2 mm

Ajustement de la distance entre le bord d'entrée et les perforations

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner FINISHER 3000 et le mode PUNCH POS ADJ.

2. Ajuster la valeur de réglage.
Si (a) est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Si (a) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, diminuer la valeur de réglage.
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de perforation d'environ 0,49 mm.

[Comprobación de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados]

1. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.

2. Compruebe la distancia del borde delantero del papel a los agujeros perforados (a). Si la distancia no se encuentra dentro del valor de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ±2 mm
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ±2 mm

Ajuste de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione FINISHER 3000 y el modo PUNCH POS ADJ.

2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.
Si (a) es inferior al valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.
Si (a) es superior al valor de referencia, disminuya el valor de configuración.
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de perforación 0,49 mm aproximadamente.

[Überprüfen des Abstands von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern]

1. Führen Sie im Lochermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.

2. Überprüfen Sie den Abstand von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern (a). Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist die Einstellung gemäß den nachfolgenden Schritte durchzuführen.
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ±2 mm
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ±2 mm

Einstellen des Abstands von der Vorderkante zu den Stanzlöchern

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein und wählen Sie dann FINISHER 3000 und PUNCH POS ADJ.

2. Regeln Sie den Einstellungswert.
Wenn (a) kleiner als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu erhöhen.
Wenn (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu reduzieren.
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1 verschiebt die Lochstanzposition um 0,49 mm.

[Verificare la distanza distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione]

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.

2. Controllare la distanza tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio (a). Se la distanza non è compresa tra gli intervalli di riferimento, eseguire i passaggi successivi per regolarne la posizione.
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ±2 mm
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ±2 mm

Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare le modalità FINISHER 3000 e PUNCH POS ADJ (regola posizione di cucitura).

2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.
Nel caso in cui (a) sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.
Se (a) è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.
La modifica del valore 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,49 mm

[检查前边到打孔的距离]

1. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。

2. 检查纸张前边到打孔 (a) 的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。
＜标准值＞ 公制规格的距离 (a)：9.5 ±2mm
英制规格的距离 (a)：5.5 ±2mm

调整前边到打孔的距离

1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 FINISHER 3000（整理器 3000）和 PUNCH POS ADJ（打孔位置调整）模式。

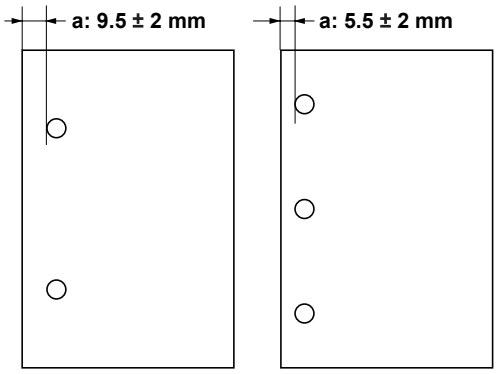
2. 调整设定值。
如果 (a) 短于标准值，请增大设定值。
如果 (a) 长于标准值，请减小设定值。
以 1 更改数值将打孔位置移动大约 0.49mm

[パンチ穴の先端位置確認]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 (a) を確認する。位置のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ センチ仕様 (a) のずれ：9.5 ± 2㎜
インチ仕様 (a) のずれ：5.5 ± 2㎜

パンチ穴の先端位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 にセットし、FINISHER 3000、PUNCH POS ADJ を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
(a) が基準値より短い場合:設定値を上げる。
(a) が基準値より長い場合:設定値を下げる。
1 ステップ当たりの変化量:約 0.49㎜



3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the leading edge to the punch hole indicates the value within the reference range.
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ±2 mm
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ±2 mm

---

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la distance entre le bord d'entrée et la perforation indique une valeur se trouvant à l'intérieur de la gamme de référence.
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ±2 mm
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ±2 mm

---

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del borde de entrada al agujero perforado indique una distancia comprendida dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ±2 mm
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ±2 mm

---

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Vorderkante zur Lochung innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ±2 mm
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ±2 mm

---

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione non rientra negli intervalli di riferimento.
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unitá metrica: 9,5 ±2 mm
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ±2 mm

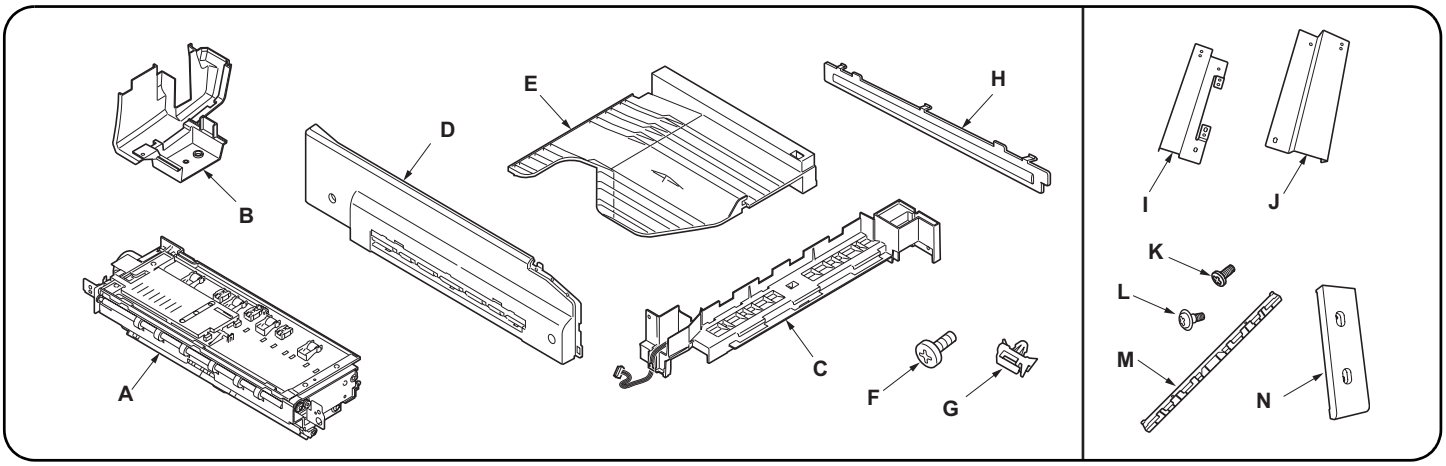
---

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到前边到打孔的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。
＜标准值＞ 公制规格的距离 (a)：9.5 ±2mm
英制规格的距离 (a)：5.5 ±2mm

---

3. テストコピーを行う
4. パンチ穴の用紙先端までの位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ～ 3 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ センチ仕様　(a) のずれ：9.5 ± 2㎜
インチ仕様　(a) のずれ：5.5 ± 2㎜

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR JOB SEPARATOR



English

Supplied Parts

A Job separator 1
B Left front cover JS 1
C Retainer 1
D Upper left cover JS 1
E Copy tray 1
F M4 × 10-tap-tight S screws 6
G Wire saddle 1
H Cover left OP 1
I Stationary plate F 1
J Stationary plate R 1
K M4 × 10 tap-tight screws 9
L Shoulder screw 1
M Guide plate 1
N Cover AT 1

Supplied Parts not to be Used

The following parts are not used for installing the job separator. They are the parts for installing the document finisher.

Français

Pièces fournies

A Séparateur de travaux 1
B Couvercle avant gauche JS 1
C Arrêtoir 1
D Couvercle supérieur gauche JS 1
E Plateau à copies 1
F Vis S taraudées M4 × 10 6
G Serre-câble 1
H Couvercle de gauche OP 1
I Plaque fixe F 1
J Plaque fixe R 1
K Vis taraudées M4 × 10 9
L Vis d'épaule 1
M Plaque de guidage 1
N Couvercle de AT 1

Pièces fournies à ne pas utiliser

Les pièces suivantes ne sont pas utilisées pour installer le séparateur de travaux. Elles permettent d'installer le finisseur de document.

Español

Piezas suministradas

A Separador de trabajos 1
B Cubierta delantera izquierda JS 1
C Retenedor 1
D Cubierta superior izquierda JS 1
E Bandeja de copias 1
F Tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S 6
G Pinza de cable 1
H Cubierta izquierda OP 1
I Placa estacionaria F 1
J Placa estacionaria R 1
K Tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 9
L Tornillo de hombro 1
M Placa guía 1
N Cubierta AT 1

Piezas suministradas que no debe utilizar

Las piezas siguientes no se usan para instalar el separador de trabajos. Son piezas para la instalación del finalizador de documentos.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A Jobtrenner 1
B Linke Frontabdeckung JS 1
C Halter 1
D Obere linke Abdeckung JS 1
E Kopienablage 1
F M4 × 10 Blechschrauben S 6
G Kabelschelle 1
H Linke Abdeckung OP 1
I Halterung F 1
J Halterung R 1
K M4 × 10 Blechschrauben 9
L Bundschraube 1
M Führungsplatte 1
N Abdeckung AT 1

Nicht benötigte, gelieferte Teile

Folgende Teile werden nicht für die Installation des Jobtrenners benötigt. Diese Teile dienen zur Installation des Dokument-Finishers.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A Separatore 1
B Coperchio frontale sinistro JS 1
C Fermo 1
D Coperchio superiore sinistro JS 1
E Vassoio copie 1
F Bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 10 6
G Fermacavo 1
H Coperchio sinistro OP 1
I Piastra fissa F 1
J Piastra fissa R 1
K Bulloni di fissaggio senza dado M4 × 10 9
L Vite a colletto 1
M Piastra di guida 1
N Coperchio AT 1

Parti fornite da non utilizzare

Le parti indicate di seguito non devono essere utilizzate per l'installazione del separatore. Si tratta delle parti da utilizzare per l'installazione del rifinitore di documenti.

简体中文

附属部件

A 作业分离器 1
B 左前盖板 JS 1
C 挡圈 1
D 左上盖板 JS 1
E 排纸托盘 1
F M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 6
G 电线束线夹 1
H 左盖板 OP 1
I 固定板 F 1
J 固定板 R 1
K M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型螺钉 9
L 阶梯螺钉 1
M 导向板 1
N 盖板 AT 1

不需要使用的附属部件

不需要使用下列零件安装作业分离器。这些部件供安装文档整理器。

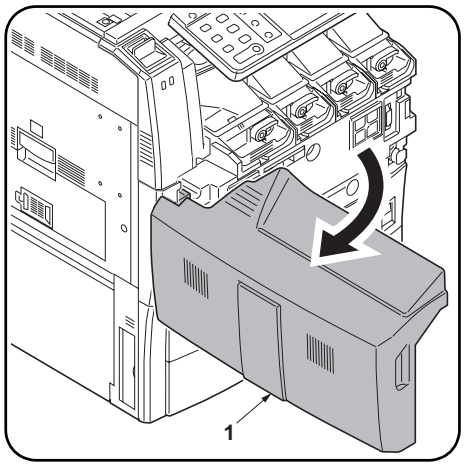
日本語

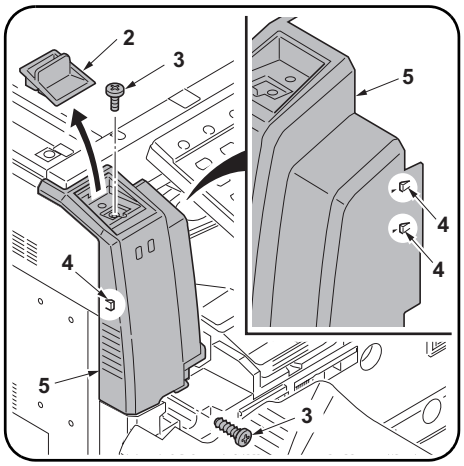
同梱品

A ジョブセパレータ 1
B 左前カバーJS 1
C リテイナ 1
D 左上カバーJS 1
E 排出トレイ 1
F ビス M4 × 10 タップタイトS 6
G ワイヤサドル 1
H 左カバーOP 1
I 固定板F 1
J 固定板R 1
K ビス M4 × 10 タップタイトS 9
L 段付きビス 1
M ガイド板 1
N カバーAT 1

使用しない同梱品

以下はジョブセパレータの設置では使用しない。ドキュメントフィニッシャ用の部品である。





Procedure
Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.
When installing a job separator, be sure to turn the MFP power off and disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

Remove the left front cover.
1. Open the front cover (1).

2. Remove clip support (2).
3. Remove the two screws (3), release the three latches (4) and remove the left front cover (5).

Procédure
Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
Lors de l'installation du séparateur de travaux, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Retirer le couvercle avant gauche.
1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant (1).

2. Retirer le support d'attache (2).
3. Déposer les deux vis (3), libérer les trois attaches (4) et enlever le capot avant gauche (5).

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
Cuando instale un separador de trabajos, asegúrese de apagar el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchúfelo del tomacorriente en la pared.

Desmonte la cubierta delantera izquierda.
1. Abra la cubierta delantera (1).

2. Desmonte el soporte del clip (2).
3. Quite los dos tornillos (3), libere los tres pestillos (4) y desmonte la cubierta frontal izquierda (5).

Verfahren
Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.
Schalten Sie vor Installation des Jobtrenners unbedingt den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

Entfernen der linken Frontabdeckung.
1. Linke Frontabdeckung (1) öffnen.

2. Clip-Halterung abnehmen (2).
3. Die beiden Schrauben (3) entfernen, die drei Verriegelungen (4) lösen und die linke vordere Abdeckung (5) abnehmen.

Procedura
Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.
Spegnete l'interruttore principale e sfilate la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il separatore.

Rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro.
1. Aprite il coperchio frontale (1).

2. Rimuovete il supporto della clip (2).
3. Rimuovere le due viti (3), rilasciare i tre fermi (4) e rimuovere il coperchio frontale sinistro (5).

安装步骤。
如果同装品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时务必揭下。
安装作业分离器时，请务必将 MFP 电源关闭，并拔下电源插头再进行安装作业。

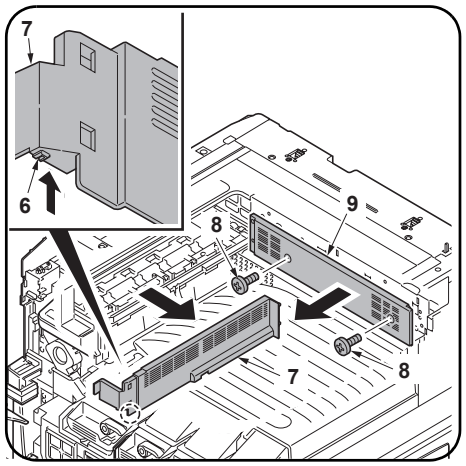
拆下左前盖板。
1. 打开前盖板 (1)。

2. 拆下环形针支架 (2)。
3. 拆下 2 个螺钉 (3)，释放 3 个卡扣 (4)，然后拆下左前盖板 (5)。

取付手順
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。
ジョブセパレータを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

左前カバーの取り外し
1. 前カバー (1) を開く。

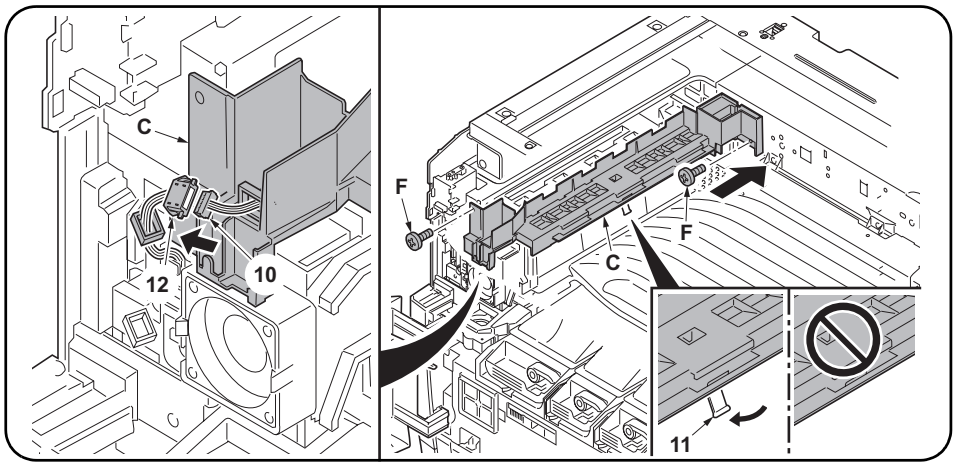
2. クリップ受け (2) を取り外す。
3. ビス (3)2 本を外し、ツメ (4)3 箇所を解除して左前カバー (5) を取り外す。



Remove the copy cover.

4. Unlock copy cover pawl (6) and then remove ejection cover (7).

5. Remove two screws (8) and then remove inner ejection cover (9).



Attach the retainer.

6. Install the retainer (C) in the direction of the arrow and secure it with two M4 x 10 tap-tight S screws (F).
Check that the eject lever (11) is not caught up inside the retainer (C).

7. Connect the connector (10) of the retainer (C) to the connector (12) of the MFP.

Retirer le couvercle à copies.

4. Déverrouiller le cliquet du couvercle à copies (6), puis retirer le couvercle d'éjection (7).

5. Retirer les deux vis (8), puis le couvercle d'éjection interne (9).

Fixer l'arrêtoir.

6. Monter l'élément de retenue (C) dans la direction de la flèche et le fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (F).

7. Brancher le connecteur (10) de l'arrêtoir (C) au connecteur (12) du MFP.

Desmonte la cubierta de copias.

4. Desbloquee el trinquete de la cubierta de copias (6) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión (7).

5. Extraiga dos tornillos (8) y desmonte la cubierta de expulsión interior (9).

Instale el retenedor.

6. Instale el retén (C) en la dirección de la flecha y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (F).Compruebe que la palanca de expulsión (11) no quede atrapada dentro del retén (C).

7. Conecte el conector (10) del retenedor (C) al conector (12) del MFP.

Entfernen der Kopienabdeckung.

4. Klinke der Kopienabdeckung (6) entriegeln und Auswurfabdeckung (7) abnehmen.

5. Zwei Schrauben (8) herausdrehen und innere Auswurfabdeckung abnehmen (9).

Anbringen des Halters.

6. Die Halterung (C) in der Pfeilrichtung anbringen und mit zwei M4 x 10 Blechschrauben S (F) befestigen.Vergewissern, dass der Auswurfhebel (11) nicht in der Halterung (C) fest hängt.

7. Steckverbinder (10) des Halters (C) mit dem Steckverbinder (12) des MFP verbinden.

Rimuovete il coperchio copie.

4. Sbloccate il nottolino del coperchio copie (6), quindi rimuovete il coperchio di espulsione carta (7).

5. Rimuovete le due viti (8), quindi rimuovete il coperchio interno di espulsione carta (9).

Montate il fermo.

6. Installare il fissaggio del fermo (C) nella direzione della freccia e bloccarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (F).

7. Collegate il connettore (10) del fermo (C) al connettore (12) dell' MFP.

拆下复印盖板。

4. 解除复印盖板卡爪部 (6) 的锁定，然后拆下排纸盖板 (7)。

5. 拆下 2 个螺钉 (8)，然后拆下内部排纸盖板 (9)。

安装挡圈。

6. 按照箭头所示方向安装挡圈 (C)，并用 2 个 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 将其固定。
检查确定弹出控制杆 (11) 没有卡在挡圈 (C) 内。

7. 将挡圈 (C) 的插头 (10) 连接至 MFP 的插头 (12)。

排出カバーの取り外し

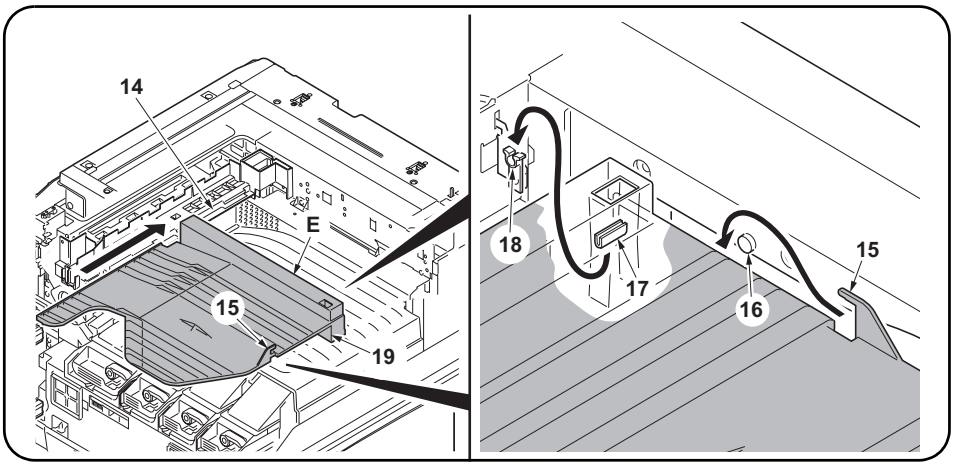
4. 排出カバーのツメ (6) を外し、排出カバー (7) を取り外す。

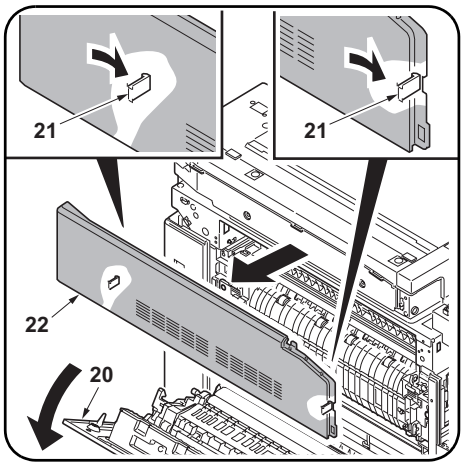
5. ビス (8)2 本を外し、排出内カバー(9) を取り外す。

リテイナーの取り付け

6. リテイナ (C) を矢印方向に取り付け、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(F)2 本で固定する。
排出レバー(11) がリテイナ (C) 内に入り込んでいないことを確認する。

7. リテイナ (C) のコネクタ (10) と MFP 本体のコネクタ (12) を接続する。





Attach the copy tray.

8. Insert the copy tray (E) into the slot (14) in the MFP.
Push copy tray (E) until its hook (15) is engaged with the MFP projection (16).

9. Slot the fitting support (17) on the copy tray (E) into the clasp (18) on the MFP. Pushing on part (19) while lowering the copy tray into the clasp (18) will make it easier to slot the support into the clasp.
If the copy tray is not engaged with the hook, the upper right area of the copy tray is floating. Be sure to engage the tray with the hook.

Attach the job separator.

10. Open left cover (20).

11. Release the two catches (21) and remove the upper left cover (22).

Fixer le plateau à copies.

8. Insérer le bac à copies (E) dans la fente (14) du MFP.
Pousser le plateau à copies (E) jusqu'à ce que le crochet (15) soit en prise avec la saillie du MFP (16).

9. Enficher le support de fixation (17) du bac à copies (E) dans le fermoir (18) du MFP. Pousser sur la partie (19) tout en abaissant le bac à copies dans le fermoir (18) pour faciliter l'enfichage du support dans ce fermoir.
Si le plateau à copies n'est pas en prise avec le crochet, la partie supérieure droite du plateau à copies n'est pas stable. Veiller à ce que le plateau et le crochet soient bien en prise.

Fixer le séparateur de travaux.

10. Ouvrir le couvercle gauche (20).

11. Libérer les deux attaches (21) et déposer le capot supérieur gauche (22).

Instale la bandeja de copias.

8. Inserte la bandeja de copias (E) en la ranura (14) en el MFP.
Empuje la bandeja de copias (E) hasta que su gancho (15) se acople a la proyección del MFP (16).

9. Encaje el soporte del herraje (17) de la bandeja de copias (E) en el cierre (18) del MFP.Si hace presión sobre la pieza (19) mientras baja la bandeja de copias hacia el cierre (18) facilitará el encaje del soporte en el cierre.
Si la bandeja de copias no se acopla al gancho, el área superior derecha de la misma queda flotante. Asegúrese de acoplar la bandeja al gancho.

Instale el separador de trabajos.

10. Abra la cubierta izquierda (20).

11. Libere los dos cerrojos (21) y desmonte la cubierta superior izquierda (22).

Anbringen der Kopienablage.

8. Die Kopienablage (E) in den Schlitz (14) im MFP einschieben.
So gegen die Kopienablage (E) drücken, dass deren Haken (15) in den Vorsprung (16) am MFP eingreift.

9. Den Einsatzhalter (17) an der Kopienablage (E) in die Klammer (18) am MFP einstecken. Wenn man auf das Teil (19) drückt, während man die Kopienablage in die Klammer (18) senkt, läßt sich der Einsatzhalter leichter in die Klammer einstecken.
Wenn die Kopienablage nicht in den Haken eingreift, ist der obere rechte Bereich der Kopienablage nicht fixiert. Auf einwandfreien Eingriff des Hakens achten.

Anbringen des Jobtrenners.

10. Linke Abdeckung (20) öffnen.

11. Die beiden Haken (21) lösen und die linke obere Abdeckung (22) entfernen.

Montate il vassoio copie.

8. Inserire il vassoio copie (E) nella fessura (14) dell'MFP.
Spingete il vassoio copie (E) fino ad inserire il gancio (15) nella sporgenza dell'MFP (16).

9. Inserire il supporto a incastro (17) sul vassoio copie (E), nel fermaglio (18) sull'MFP. Spingendo sulla parte (19) mentre si abbassa il vassoio copie nel fermaglio (18), si renderà più facile l'inserimento del supporto.
Se il vassoio copie non è inserito nel gancio, l'area superiore destra del vassoio copie si muove. Abbiate cura di inserire il vassoio nel gancio.

Montate il separatore.

10. Aprite il coperchio sinistro (20).

11. Rilasciare i due ganci (21) e rimuovere il coperchio superiore sinistro (22).

安装排纸托盘。

8. 将排纸托盘 (E) 插至MFP中的插槽 (14) 中。将排纸托盘 (E) 向里按，直到其挂钩部 (15) 与 MFP 突出部 (16) 啮合。

9. 将排纸托盘 (E) 上的装置支撑件 (17) 卡入 MFP 上的卡扣 (18) 中。 将排纸托盘降入至卡扣 (18) 中时推动部件 (19)，会使支撑件更易于卡入卡扣中。
如果排纸托盘与挂钩部未啮合，则表明排纸托盘的右上部浮起。请务必将排纸托盘与挂钩部啮合。

安装作业分离器。

10. 打开左盖板 (20)。

11. 释放 2 个卡钩 (21)，然后拆下左上盖板 (22)。

排出トレイの取り付け

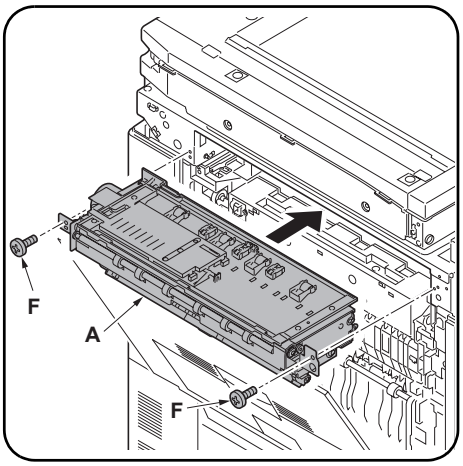
8. 排出トレイ (E) を MFP 本体の溝 (14) に沿って挿入する。排出トレイ (E) の引っ掛け部 (15) が MFP 本体の突起 (16) に引っ掛かるまで押し込むこと。

9. 排出トレイ (E) の取り付け部 (17) を MFP 本体のフック (18) に引っ掛ける。フック (18) には (19) の部分を押しながら下げると引っ掛けやすい。
排出トレイがフックに引っ掛かっていない場合、排出トレイが右上に浮いた状態になる。確実にフックに引っ掛けること

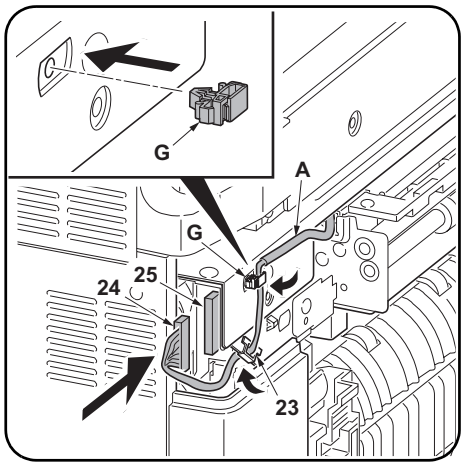
ジョブセパレータの取り付け

10. 左カバー(20) を開く。

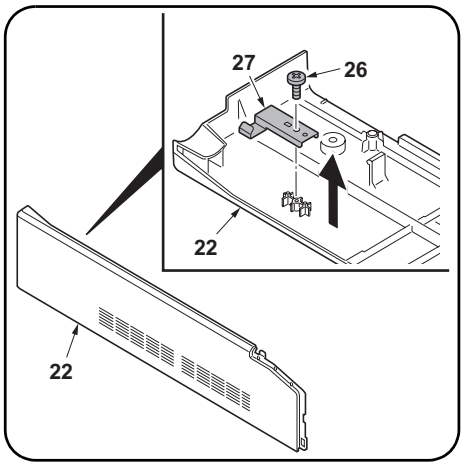
11. ツメ (21)2 箇所を解除して左上カバー(22) を取り外す。



12. Insert job separator (A) in the direction of the arrow and secure it with two M4 × 10-tap-tight S (F) screws.



13. Attach wire saddle (G) to the left side of the MFP.
14. Run the job separator cable through the wire saddle (G), fasten the saddle and then fix the wire saddle in place (23).
15. Plug the connector (24) into the connector (25) on the MFP.



Attaching the upper left cover JS.
16. Remove the screw (26) from the rear side of upper left cover (22) that has been removed in Procedure 11 to remove engaging fitting (27).

---

12. Insérer le séparateur de travaux (A) dans la direction de la flèche et le fixer à l'aide des deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (F).

13. Fixer le serre-cable (G) sur le cote gauche du MFP.
14. Faire passer le câble du séparateur de travaux dans le serre-câble (G), fixer la sellette de retenue puis fixer le serre-câble en place (23).
15. Raccorder le connecteur (24) au connecteur (25) dans le MFP.

Fixer le couvercle supérieur gauche JS.
16. Oter la vis (26) a l'arriere du couvercle superieur gauche (22), qui a ete retiree lors de la procedure 11, pour enlever le support de fixation (27).

---

12. Inserte el separador de trabajos (A) en la dirección de la flecha y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (F).

13. Monte la pinza del cable (G) en el lado izquierdo del MFP.
14. Tienda el cable del separador de trabajos a través de la pinza de cables (G), ajuste la pinza y, a continuación, fíjela en posición (23).
15. Enchufe el conector (24) en el conector (25) del MFP.

Instalación de la cubierta superior izquierda JS.
16. Extraiga el tornillo (26) del lado trasero de la cubierta superior izquierda (22) que se ha desmontado en el Procedimiento 11 para retirar el herraje de acoplamiento (27).

---

12. Jobtrenner (A) in Pfeilrichtung einsetzen und mit zwei M4 × 10 Blechschrauben S (F) befestigen.

13. Kabelschelle (G) an der linken Seite des MFP befestigen.
14. Das Jobtrennerkabel durch die Kabelschelle (G) führen und befestigen, dann die Schelle (23) befestigen.
15. Den Stecker (24) in die Anschlussbuchse (25) am MFP stecken.

Anbringen der oberen linken Abdeckung JS.
16. Schraube (26) von der Ruckseite der in Schritt 11 ausgebauten oberen linken Abdeckung (22) herausdrehen, um den Einsatz (27) herauszunehmen.

---

12. Inserite il separatore (A) nella direzione della freccia e fissatelo con due bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 10 (F).

13. Montate un fermacavo (G) sul lato sinistro dell'MFP.
14. Passare il cavo del separatore lavori attraverso il fermacavo (G) e fissarlo, e quindi fissare il fermacavo (23) in posizione.
15. Collegare il connettore (24) nel connettore (25) sull'MFP.

Montaggio del coperchio superiore sinistro JS.
16. Rimuovete la vite (26) dal lato posteriore del coperchio superiore sinistro (22) che e stato rimosso nella Procedura 11 per rimuovere l'accessorio di innesto (27).

---

12. 将作业分离器 (A) 按箭头的方向插入并用两颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定。

13. 将电线束线夹 (G) 安装到 MFP 的左侧。
14. 请将作业分离器电缆穿过电线束线夹 (G)，紧固线夹，然后将电线束线夹固定在合适位置 (23) 。
15. 将插头 (24) 插入 MFP 上的插头 (25) 。

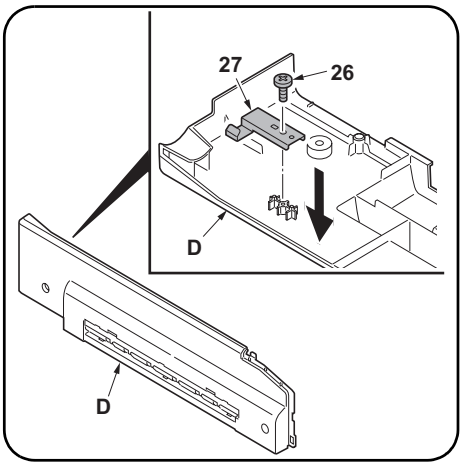
安装左上盖板 JS。
16. 从第 11 步中拆下的左上盖板 (22) 的后部拆下螺钉 (26)，将啮合附件 (27) 拆下。

---

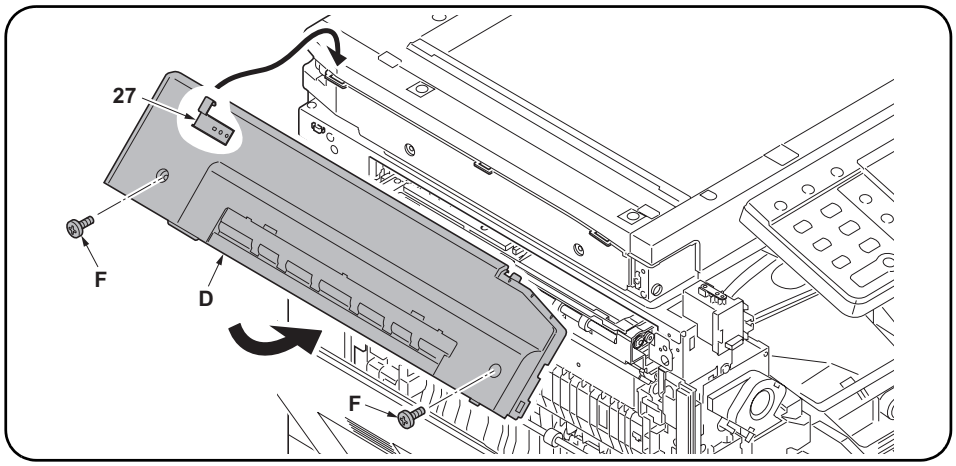
12. ジョブセパレータ (A) を矢印の方向へ挿入し、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(F)2 本で固定する。

13. ワイヤーサドル (G) を MFP 本体左側へ取り付ける。
14. ジョブセパレータの電線をワイヤサドル (G) へ通して固定し、ワイヤサドル (23) で固定する。
15. コネクタ (24) を MFP 本体のコネクタ (25) と接続する。

左上カバーJS の取り付け
16. 手順 11 で外した左上カバー (22) 裏側のビス (26) 1 本を外し、引っ掛け金具 (27) を取り外す。



17. Use the screw (26) that has been removed by Procedure 16 to attach engaging fitting (27) to the rear side of the supplied upper left cover JS (D).



18. Fit the engaging fitting (27) on the upper left cover JS (D) into the MFP and secure the cover using the two M4 x 10 tap-tight S screws (F).

---

17. Utiliser la vis (26), qui a ete retiree lors de la procedure 16, pour attacher le support de fixation (27) a l'arriere du couvercle superieur gauche JS fourni (D).

18. Insérer le dispositif d'engagement (27) du JS du capot supérieur gauche (D) dans le MFP et fixer le capot à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (F).

---

17. Use el tornillo (26) que ha extraido durante el Procedimiento 16 para instalar el herraje de acoplamiento (27) en el lado trasero de la cubierta superior izquierda JS (D) suministrada.

18. Inserte el herraje de acoplamiento (27) de la cubierta superior izquierda JS (D) en el MFP y asegure la cubierta por medio de dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (F).

---

17. Die in Schritt 16 ausgebaute Schraube (26) benutzen, um den Einsatz (27) an der Ruckseite der mitgelieferten oberen linken Abdeckung JS (D) zu befestigen.

18. Den Einsatz (27) an der oberen linken Abdeckung JS (D) in den MFP einsetzen und die Abdeckung mit den beiden M4 x 10 Blechschrauben S (F) sichern.

---

17. Utilizzate la vite (26) che e stata rimossa nella Procedura 16 per montare l'accessorio di innesto (27) sul lato posteriore del coperchio superiore sinistro JS (D) fornito.

18. nserire l'accessorio di innesto (27) sul coperchio superiore sinistro JS (D) nell'MFP, e fissare il coperchio usando le due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (F).

---

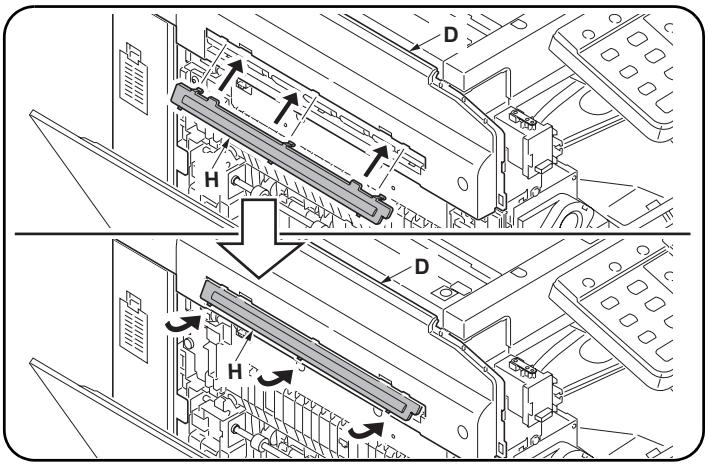
17. 使用在第 16 步中拆下的螺钉 (26) 将啮合附件 (27) 安装在附带的左上盖板 JS (D) 的后部。

18. 将左上盖板 JS (D) 上的啮合附件 (27) 安装在 MFP 上，并使用 2 个 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 紧固盖板。

---

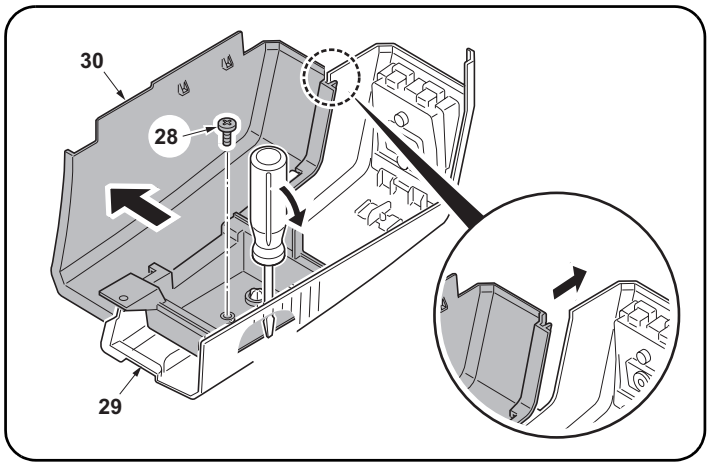
17. 手順 16 で外したビス (26)1 本で、引っ掛け金具 (27) を左上カバーJS(D) 裏側へ取り付ける。

18. 左上カバーJS(D) の引っ掛け金具 (27) を MFP 本体へ引っ掛け、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(F) 2 本で固定する。



When installing the document finisher to the MFP, no need to perform step 19.

19. Attach cover left OP (H) to upper left cover JS (D) by engaging the pawl on the back side of cover left OP (H).
Engage the upper pawls first.



Assemble the left front cover JS.

20. Remove the screw (28) from the left cover that has been removed in Procedure 3.

21. Insert the flat screwdriver between left front cover 1 (29) and left front cover 2 (30) to remove left front cover 2 (30) from left front cover 1 (29).

Lors de l'installation du finisseur de document sur le MFP, il n'est pas nécessaire d'exécuter l'étape 19.

19. Rattacher le couvercle de gauche OP (H) au couvercle supérieur gauche JS (D) en enclenchant le cliquet dans l'arrière du couvercle de gauche OP (H).
Enclencher le cliquet supérieur d'abord.

Assembler le couvercle avant gauche JS.

20. Retirer la vis (28) du couvercle gauche, enlevé lors de la procédure 3.

21. Insérer le tournevis plat entre le couvercle avant gauche 1 (29) et le couvercle avant gauche 2 (30) afin de retirer le couvercle avant gauche 2 (30) du couvercle avant gauche 1 (29).

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en el MFP no necesitará realizar el paso 19.

19. Fije la cubierta izquierda OP (H) a la cubierta izquierda JS (D) encajando el trinquete en la parte trasera de la cubierta izquierda OP (H).
Acople primero los trinquetes superiores.

Ensamble la cubierta delantera izquierda JS.

20. Extraiga el tornillo (28) de la cubierta izquierda que se ha desmontado en el Procedimiento 3.

21. Inserte el destornillador plano entre la cubierta delantera izquierda 1 (29) y la cubierta delantera izquierda 2 (30) para desmontar esta de aquella.

Bei der Installation des Dokument-Finisher am MFP ist die Ausführung von Schritt 19 nicht erforderlich.

19. Die linke Abdeckung OP (H) an der oberen linken Abdeckung JS (D) durch Einsetzen der Klinke auf der Rückseite der linken Abdeckung OP (H) befestigen.
Die oberen Klinken zuerst eingreifen lassen.

Montage der linken Frontabdeckung JS.

20. Die Schrauben (28) aus der in Schritt 3 ausgebauten linken Abdeckung herausdrehen.

21. Schlitzschraubendreher zwischen der linken Frontabdeckung 1 (29) und der linken Frontabdeckung 2 (30) einsetzen, um die linke Frontabdeckung 2 (30) aus der linken Frontabdeckung 1 (29) herauszuheben.

Prima di installare il rifinitore di documenti a MFP, non è necessario eseguire il passo 19.

19. Montate il coperchio sinistro OP (H) sul coperchio superiore sinistro JS (D) inserendo il nottolino sul retro del coperchio sinistro OP (H).
Agganciare prima i dentelli superiori.

Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS.

20. Rimuovete il bullone (28) che è stato rimosso nella Procedura 3 dal coperchio sinistro.

21. Inserite il cacciavite a taglio tra il coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (29) e il coperchio frontale sinistro 2 (30) per rimuovere il coperchio frontale sinistro 2 (30) dal coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (29).

当将文档整理器安装到 MFP 时，无需执行步骤19 。

19. 将卡爪啮合到左盖板 OP(H) 的背面，把左盖板 OP(H) 安装到左上盖板 JS(D)。
首先啮合上卡爪。

组装左前盖板 JS。

20. 从在第 3 步中拆下的左盖板中拆下螺钉 (28)。

21. 在左前盖板 1 (29) 和左前盖板 2 (30) 之间插入一字螺丝刀，从左前盖板 1 (29) 上拆下左前盖板 2 (30)。

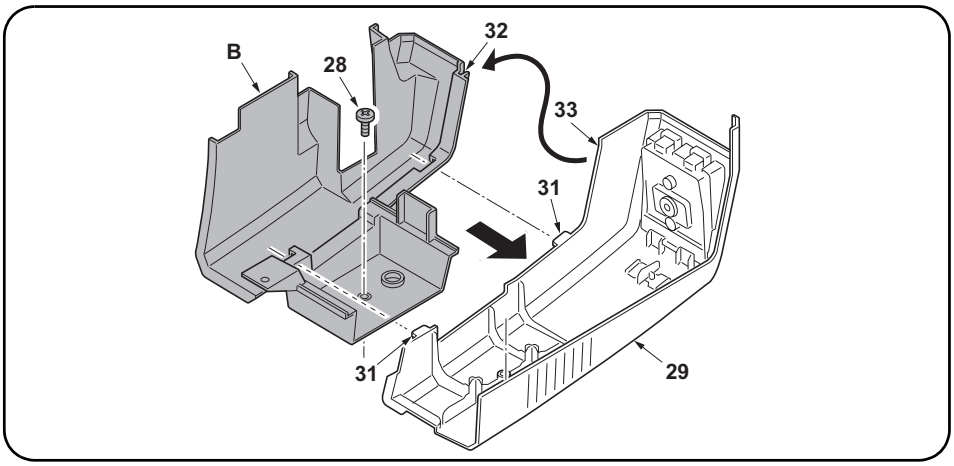
MFP 本体にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、次の手順 19 は不要です。

19. 左上カバーJS(D) に、左カバーOP(H) 裏側のツメを引っ掛け取り付ける。
上側のツメから取り付けること。

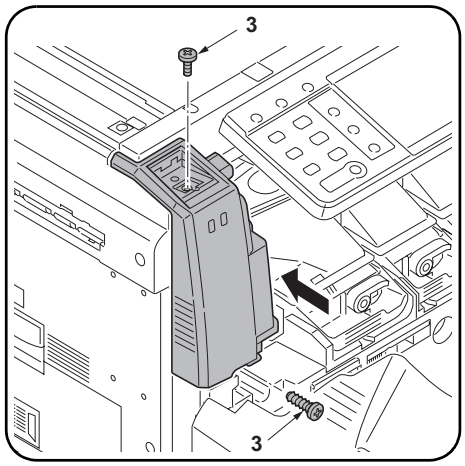
左前カバーJS の組立

20. 手順 3 で外した左前カバーのビス (28) 1 本を外す。

21. 左前カバー1(29) と左前カバー2(30) の間にマイナスドライバーを差し込み、左前カバー1(29) から左前カバー2(30) を取り外す。



22. Assemble by fitting the two pawls (31) on left front cover 1 (29) into the holes in the left front cover JS (B).
23. Fit the part (33) into the groove (32) of left front cover JS (B).
24. Use the screw (28) that has been removed by Procedure 20 to secure left front cover 1 (29) and left front cover JS (B).



Attach the left front cover JS.
25. Attach left front cover JS that has been assembled in Procedure 24 to the MFP and use the two screws (3) that have been removed in Procedure 3.

---

22. Assembler en insérant les deux cliquets (31) sur le capot supérieur gauche 1 (29) dans les trous du JS du capot supérieur gauche (B).
23. Placer la pièce (33) dans la rainure (32) du couvercle avant gauche JS (B).
24. Utiliser la vis (28) qui a été retirée lors de la procédure 20 pour fixer le couvercle avant gauche 1 (29) et le couvercle avant gauche JS (B).

Fixer le couvercle avant gauche JS.
25. Fixer le couvercle avant gauche JS, qui a été assemblé lors de la procédure 24, au MFP et utilisez les deux vis (3) qui ont été retirees enlevées du procédé 3.

---

22. Ensamble insertando los dos trinquetes (31) de la cubierta frontal izquierda 1 (29) en los orificios de la cubierta frontal izquierda JS (B).
23. Encaje la pieza (33) en la ranura (32) de la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (B).
24. Use el tornillo (28) que ha extraído durante el procedimiento 20 para asegurar la cubierta delantera izquierda 1 (29) y la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (B).

Instale la cubierta delantera izquierda JS.
25. Instale en el MFP la cubierta delantera izquierda JS que se ha ensamblado en el procedimiento 24 y use los dos tornillos (3) que se han extraido durante el procedimiento 3.

---

22. Montieren, indem man die beiden Klinken (31) an der linken vorderen Abdeckung 1 (29) in die Öffnungen in der linken vorderen Abdeckung JS (B) einsetzt.
23. Teil (33) in die Nut (32) der linken Frontabdeckung JS (B) einsetzen.
24. Die in Schritt 20 ausgebaute Schraube (28) benutzen, um die linke Frontabdeckung 1 (29) und die linke Frontabdeckung JS (B) zu befestigen.

Anbringen der linken Frontabdeckung JS.
25. Die in Schritt 24 zusammengesetzte linke Frontabdeckung am MFP anbringen und die in Schritt 3 die zwei ausgebauten Schrauben (3) benutzen.

---

22. Assemblare inserendo i due dentelli (31) presenti sul coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (29) nei fori del coperchio frontale sinistro JS (B).
23. Inserite la parte (33) nell'incavo (32) del coperchio frontale sinistro JS (B).
24. Utilizzate il bullone (28) che è stato rimosso con la Procedura 20 per fissare il coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (29) e il coperchio frontale sinistro JS (B).

Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS.
25. Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS che è stato montato nella Procedura 24 sulla MFP e utilizzate le due viti (3) che sono state rimosse nella Procedura 3.

---

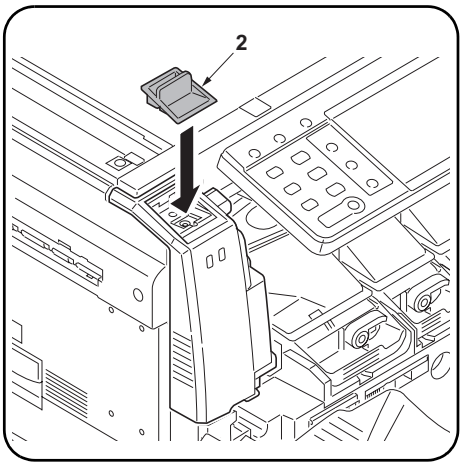
22. 通过将左前盖板 1 (29) 上的 2 个卡爪嵌入左前盖板 JS (B) 上的孔中进行组装。
23. 将部件 (33) 嵌入左前盖板 JS (B) 的沟槽 (32) 中。
24. 使用在第 20 步中拆下的螺钉 (28) 固定左前盖板 1 (29) 和左前盖板 JS (B)。

安装左前盖板 JS。
25. 将第 24 步中组装的左前盖板 JS 安装到 MFP 中并使用第 3 步中拆下的两颗螺钉 (3)。

---

22. 左前カバー1(29) のツメ (31)2 箇所を左前カバーJS(B) の穴にはめ、組み立てる。
23. 左前カバーJS(B) の溝 (32) に (33) の部分をはめる。
24. 手順 20 で外したビス (28)1 本で左前カバー1(29) と左前カバーJS(B) を固定する。

左前カバーJS の取り付け
25. 手順 24 で組み立てた左前カバーJS を MFP 本体に取り付け、手順 3 で外したビス (3)2 本で固定する。



26. Attach clip support (2) that has been removed in Procedure 2.
27. Close the front cover (1).

[Operation check]
1. Insert the power plug of the MFP into an outlet and then turn the main power switch on.
2. Set the copy ejection location to the job separator.
3. Perform a test copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator.

---

26. Fixer le support d'attache (2) qui a été retiré lors de la procédure 2.
27. Refermer le couvercle avant (1).

[Vérification du fonctionnement]
1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans une prise de courant, puis mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Régler "Emplacement d'éjection des copies" sur le séparateur des travaux.
3. Effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier que la copie est éjectée dans le plateau du séparateur de travaux.

---

26. Instale el soporte del clip (2) que ha desmontado en el procedimiento 2.
27. Cierre la cubierta delantera (1).

[Verifique el funcionamiento]
1. Inserte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en un tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Coloque el lugar de expulsión de copias en el separador de trabajos.
3. Haga una copia de prueba para verificar que la copia sale al separador de trabajos.

---

26. Die in Schritt 2 ausgebaute Clip-Halterung (2) einsetzen.
27. Frontabdeckung (1) schließen.

[Betriebsprüfung]
1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Kopienausgabe auf Jobtrenner einstellen.
3. Testkopie durchführen, um zu prüfen, ob eine Kopie in den Jobtrenner ausgegeben wird.

---

26. Montate il supporto della clip (2) che è stato rimosso nella Procedura 2.
27. Chiudete il coperchio frontale (1).

[Verifica del funzionamento]
1. Inserite la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa, quindi posizionate l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Impostate la posizione di espulsione copie sul separatore.
3. Effettuate una copia di prova per verificare che venga espulsa sul separatore.

---

26. 安装在第 2 步中拆下的环形针支架 (2)。
27. 关闭前盖板(1)。

[操作确认]
1. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入插座中，然后打开主电源开关。
2. 在指定排纸处设定作业分离器。
3. 进行试输出，确认纸张是否输出到作业分离器。

---

26. 手順 2 で外したクリップ受け (2) を取り付ける。
27. 前カバー(1) を閉じる。

[動作確認]
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. 用紙の排出先をジョブセパレータに設定する。
3. テストコピーを行い、用紙がジョブセパレータの排出トレイに排出されることを確認する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR
FAX System

English Notes for installing on the full-color machine (25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40ppm)

1. Check the firmware version of the machine.
If the firmware is older than the versions listed below, update to the latest firmware version.
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX

2. When installing the Dual FAX, note that you cannot use FAX System (Q) and FAX System (S) together.

Français Remarques pour l'installation sur une machine entièrement en couleurs (25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40ppm)

1. Vérifiez la version du micrologiciel de la machine.
Si la version du micrologiciel est plus ancienne que les versions suivantes, procédez à une mise à niveau de cette version.
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX

2. À l'installation de FAX double, notez qu'il n'est pas possible d'utiliser simultanément Fax System (Q) et FAX System (S).

Español Notas sobre la instalación de la máquina a todo color (25/25,30/30,40/40, 50/40ppm)

1. Compruebe la versión del firmware de la máquina.
Si el firmware es anterior a las versiones que se enumeran a continuación, actualícelo a la versión más reciente.
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX

2. Cuando instale FAX dual, tenga en cuenta que FAX System (Q) y FAX System (S) no se pueden usar conjuntamente.

Deutsch Hinweise zur Installation an der Vollfarbenmaschine (25/25,30/30,40/40, 50/40ppm)

1. Überprüfen Sie die Firmware-Version des Geräts.
Falls die Firmware älter als die nachstehenden Versionen ist, ist die neueste Firmware-Version zu installieren.
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX

2. Beachten Sie bei der Installation des Dual FAX, dass Sie FAX System (Q) und FAX System (S) nicht gleichzeitig verwenden können.

Italiano Note per l'installazione sulla macchina a colori (25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40ppm)

1. Controllare la versione del firmware del sistema.
Se la versione del firmware è precedente alle versioni elencate sotto, eseguire l'aggiornamento alla versione più recente.
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX

2. Quando si installa il Dual FAX, notare che non è possibile utilizzare FAX System (Q) e FAX System (S) assieme.

简体中文 安装彩色机（25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40 张机型）时的注意事项

1. 请确认主机的固件版本。
固件版本早于以下版本时，请升级至最新版本。
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX
2. 多端口设置时，FAX System（Q）与 FAX System（S）不可组合使用。

日本語 フルカラー機（25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40 枚機）に設置時の注意

1. 機械本体のファームウェアを確認してください。
下記バージョンより古い場合は、最新ファームウェアにバージョンアップしてください。
MAIN: 2H7_2F00.007.XXX
2. マルチポート設置時は、FAX System(Q) と FAX System(S) の組み合わせは不可です。
3. FAX System(Q) から FAX System(S) に入れ替える場合は、すでに貼っている JATE ラベルを FAX System(S) の JATE ラベルに貼りかえてください。貼り方は、FAX System(S) 設置手順書を参照願います。

2009.11
305JP56840

English

To install the FAX circuit board, see page 1.
To install the FAX circuit board as Dual FAX, see page 11.

Français

Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX, se reporter à la page 1.
Pour installer la carte à circuits FAX comme FAX double, se reporter à la page 11.

Español

Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX, vea la página 1.
Para instalar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en el FAX dual, vea la página 11.

Deutsch

Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte finden Sie auf Seite 1.
Angaben zur Installation der FAX-Leiterplatte als Dual FAX finden Sie auf Seite 11.

Italiano

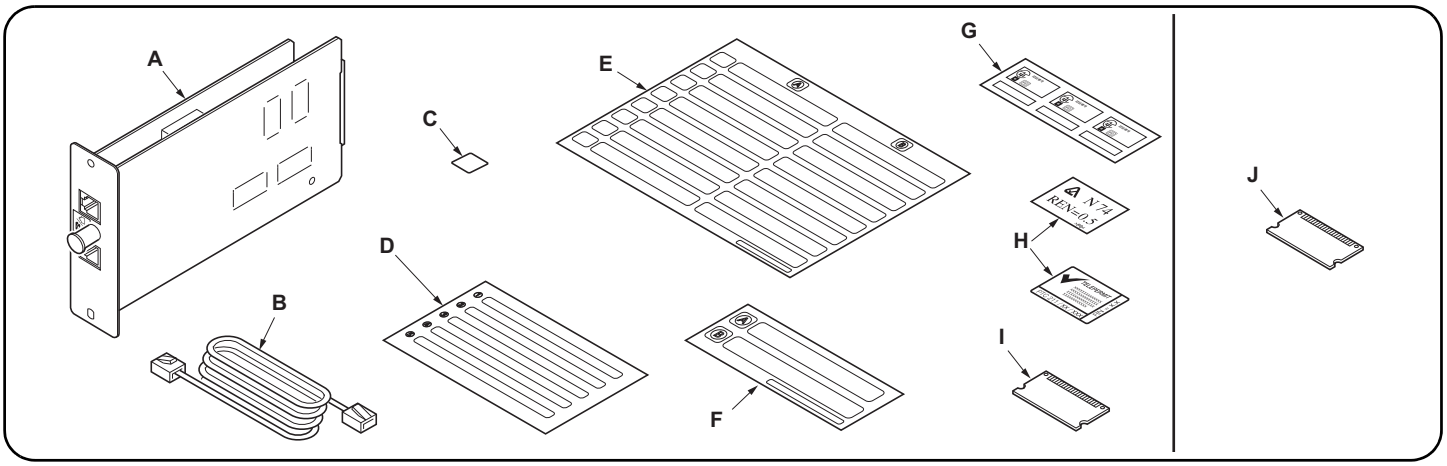
Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX, vedere pagina 1.
Per installare la scheda a circuiti FAX come Dual FAX, vedere pagina 11.

简体中文

安装传真组件时…从第 1 页开始
安装多插口组件时…从第 11 页开始

日本語

ファクスシステムを設置する場合…1 ページから始める
マルチポートを設置する場合…11 ページから始める



Supplied parts

A FAX circuit board 1
B Modular connector cable (120 V/Australian model only) PJJWC0016Z (UL Listed.HUAN HSIN Type TL:120 V only) 1
C Terminal seal 1
D Alphabet label 1
E FAX operation section label 1
H Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only) 2
I Memory DIMM 1

Option

J Memory DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F) and (G) are not bundled.
When installing the Dual FAX, (A), (B), (C) are required.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Pièces fournies

A Carte à circuits FAX 1
B Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/120 V seulement) 1
C Joint de borne 1
D Etiquette de l'alphabet 1
E Etiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX 1
I Mémoire DIMM 1

Option

J Mémoire DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F), (G) et (H) ne sont pas fournis.
L'installation du Dual FAX requiert l'installation des pièces (A), (B), (C).

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Piezas suministradas

A Tarjeta de circuitos de fax 1
B Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 120 V/Australianos) 1
C Sello del terminal 1
D Etiqueta de alfabeto 1
E Etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX 1
I Memoria DIMM 1

Opción

J Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F), (G) y (H) no se suministran.
Cuando instale el fax Dual se necesitan (A), (B), (C).

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Gelieferte Teile

A FAX-Leiterplatte 1
C Verschlusskappe 1
D Alphabetaufkleber 1
E Aufkleber für FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt 1
I Speicher-DIMM 1

Option

J Speicher-DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G) und (H) liegen nicht bei.
Für die Installation von Dual FAX sind (A), (C) erforderlich.

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Parti di fornitura

A Scheda a circuiti FAX 1
C Guarnizione terminale 1
D Etichetta alfabetica 1
E Etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX 1
I Memoria DIMM 1

Opzioni

J Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B),(F),(G) e (H) non sono in dotazione.
Quando si installa il Dual FAX, sono necessari (A), (C).

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

附属品

A 传真电路板 1
B 电话线 1
C 端子密封 1
D 英文字母标签 1
E 传真操作部标签 1
I 内存模组 DIMM 1

选购件

J 内存模组 DIMM (128MB) 1

(F)、(G) 和 (H) 并非附属品。
安装多插口组件时，需要 (A)、(B)、(C)。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

同梱品

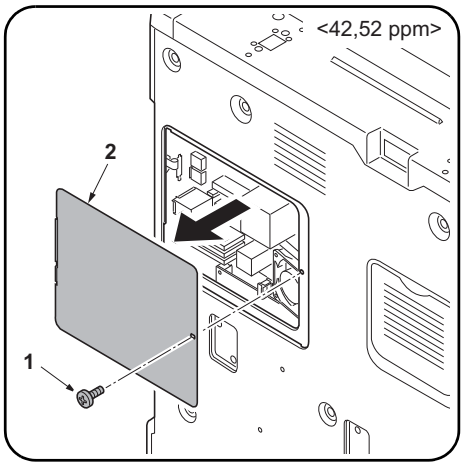
A FAX 基板 1
B モジュラコード 1
C 端子シール 1
F FAX 操作部ラベル 1
G JATE ラベル 1
I メモリ DIMM 1

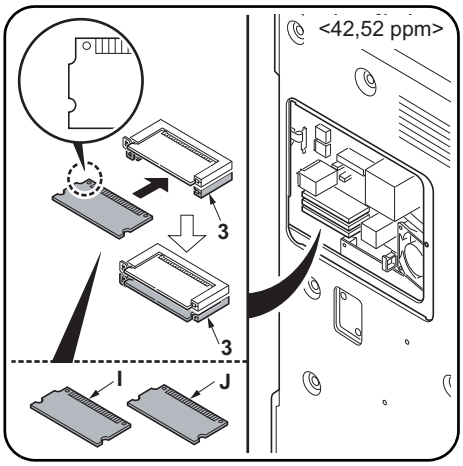
オプション

J メモリ DIMM(128MB) 1

(D), (E), (H) は、同梱されておりません。
マルチポート設置時は (A), (B), (C) のみが必要となる。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。





Precautions
Be sure to turn the MFP switch OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the fax system.
The illustration of the MFP body in the Installation Guide is the 42,52 ppm model.

Procedure
Installing the memory DIMM
<42,52 ppm (Monochrome machines)>
1. Remove 1 screw (1), and then remove the cover (2).
2. Install the memory DIMM (I) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on the lower level (FLS) .
Install it with the IC side facing down.
Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.
3. Replace the cover (2) using 1 screw (1).

Proceed to step 4 on page 5.

Précautions
Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système fax.
L'illustration du corps du MFP dans le guide d'installation correspond au modèle 42,52 ppm.

Procédure
Installation de la mémoire DIMM
<42,52 ppm (Machines monochromes)>
1. Déposer 1 vis (1) puis enlever le couvercle (2).
2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (I) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant au niveau inférieur (FLS).
L'installer avec le côté IC en bas.
L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.
3. Reposer le couvercle (2) à l'aide de 1 vis (1).

Passer à l'étape 4 de la page 5.

Precauciones
Asegúrese de apagar el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red eléctrica antes de instalar el sistema de fax.
La ilustración del cuerpo del MFP en la Guía de instalación corresponde al modelo de 42,52 ppm.

Procedimiento
Instalación de la memoria DIMM
<42,52 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>
1. Quite 1 tornillo (1) y, después, desmonte la cubierta (2).
2. Instale la memoria DIMM (I), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para la memoria (3) en el nivel inferior (FLS).
Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo.
Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.
3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (2) utilizando 1 tornillo (1).

Vaya al paso 4 de la página 5.

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen
Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie das Faxsystem installieren.
Die Abbildung des MFP-Geräts in der Installationsanleitung stellt das 42,52 ppm Modell dar.

Verfahren
Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule
<42,52 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>
1. Entfernen Sie 1 Schraube (1) und nehmen Sie dann die Abdeckung (2) ab.
2. Setzen Sie die DIMM-Speichermodule (I) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodul (J) in die untere Position (FLS) der Speicherbank (3) ein.
Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren.
Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.
3. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (2) wieder mit 1 Schraube (1) an.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 5 weiter.

Precauzioni
Assicurarsi di aver spento l'interruttore dell'MFP e di aver sfilato la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema fax.
L'illustrazione del corpo MFP nella Guida all'installazione è del modello da 42,52 ppm.

Procedura
Installazione della memoria DIMM
<42,52 ppm (solo per le macchine)>
1. Rimuovere 1 vite (1), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio (2).
2. Installare la memoria DIMM (I) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al livello inferiore (FLS).Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso.Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.
3. Sostituire il coperchio (2) utilizzando 1 vite (1).

Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 5.

注意事项
请务必关闭 MFP 的开关并拔下电源插头再安装传真组件。
安装手册中插图所示多功能数码复合机主机为 42,52 张机型。

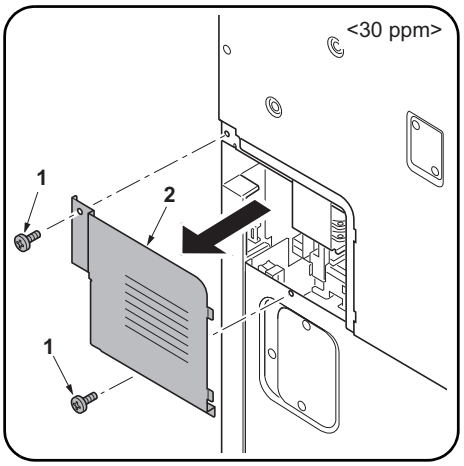
安装步骤
安装内存模组 DIMM
〈42，52 张机型（黑白机器）〉
1. 拆下 1 颗螺丝 (1)，然后拆下盖板 (2)。
2. 将内存模组 DIMM (I) 或者选购件 DIMM (J) 安装至下层 (FLS) 的内存插槽 (3)。安装时，将 IC 侧正面朝下。沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀嗒声。
3. 使用 1 颗螺钉 (1) 更换盖板 (2)。

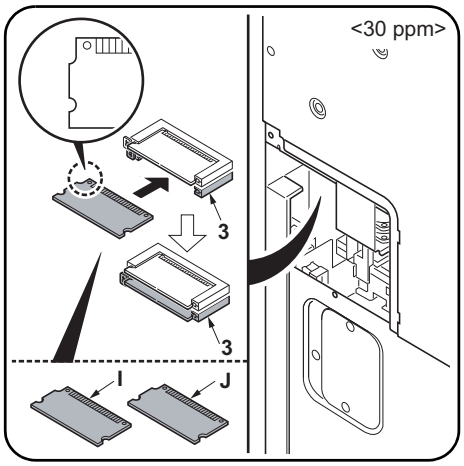
进行第 5 页上的第 4 步

注意事項
ファクスシステムを設置する場合は、MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなう。
設置手順書に記載している MFP 本体のイラストは、42, 52 枚機です。

取付手順
メモリ DIMM の取り付け
〈42, 52 枚機（モノクロ機）〉
1. ビス (1)1 本を外し、カバー(2) を取り外す。
2. メモリ DIMM(I) または、オプションのメモリ DIMM(J) を下段 (FLS) のメモリスロット (3) に取り付ける。
IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。
3. ビス (1)1 本で、カバー(2) を元通り取り付ける。

5 ページ手順 4 へ進む。





Installing the memory DIMM
<30 ppm (Monochrome machine)>

1. Remove 2 screws (1), and then remove the cover (2).

2. Install the memory DIMM (I) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on the lower level (FLS).
Install it with the IC side facing down.Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.

3. Replace the cover (2) using the 2 screws (1).

Proceed to step 4 on page 5.

Installation de la mémoire DIMM
<30 ppm (Machines monochromes)>

1. Déposez les 2 vis (1) puis enlevez le couvercle (2).

2. nstaller la mémoire DIMM (I) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant au niveau inférieur (FLS).
L'installer avec le côté IC en bas.L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.

3. Reposez le couvercle (2) à l'aide des 2 vis (1).

Passer à l’étape 4 de la page 5.

Instalación de la memoria DIMM
<30 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>

1. Quite 2 tornillos (1) y, después, desmonte la cubierta (2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (I), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para la memoria (3) en el nivel inferior (FLS).
Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo.Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (2) utilizando los 2 tornillos (1).

Vaya al paso 4 de la página 5.

Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule
<30 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>

1. Entfernen Sie 2 Schrauben (1) und nehmen Sie dann die Abdeckung (2) ab.

2. Setzen Sie die DIMM-Speichermodule (I) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodul (J) in die untere Position (FLS) der Speicherbank (3) ein.Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren.Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.

3. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (2) wieder mit den 2 Schrauben (1) an.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 5 weiter.

Installazione della memoria DIMM
<30 ppm (solo per le macchine)>

1. Rimuovere 2 viti (1), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio (2).

2. IInstallare la memoria DIMM (I) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al livello inferiore (FLS).Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso.Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.

3. Ricollocare il coperchio (2) utilizzando le 2 viti (1).

Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 5.

安装内存模组 DIMM
〈30 张机型（黑白机器）〉
1. 取下 2 个螺丝（1），然后取下盖板（2）。

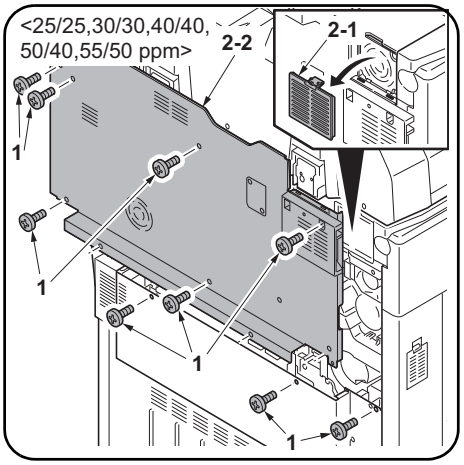
2. 将内存模组 DIMM (I) 或者选购件 DIMM (J) 安装至下层 (FLS) 的内存插槽 (3)。安装时，将 IC 侧正面朝下。沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀嗒声。
3. 使用 2 个螺丝（1）重新安装盖板（2）。

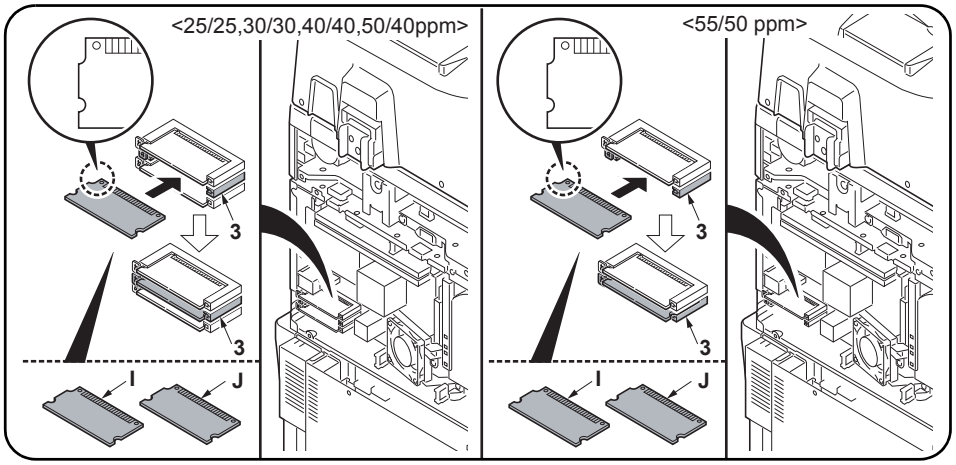
进行第 5 页上的第 4 步

メモリ DIMM の取り付け
〈30 枚機（モノクロ機）〉
1. ビス (1)2 本を外し、カバー(2) を取り外す。

2. メモリ DIMM(I) または、オプションのメモリ DIMM(J) を下段 (FLS) のメモリスロット (3) に取り付ける。
IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。
3. ビス (1)2 本で、カバー(2) を元通り取り付ける。

5 ページ手順 4 へ進む。





Installing the memory DIMM
<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm (Full-color machines)>

1. Remove the filter cover (2-1). Then remove 9 screws (1) and remove the upper rear cover (2-2).

2. Install the memory DIMM (I) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on
the middle level (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.
the lower level (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.
Install it with the IC side facing down.Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.

3. Replace the upper rear cover (2-2) using 9 screws (1) and then replace the filter cover (2-1).

Proceed to step 4 on page 5.

Installation de la mémoire DIMM
<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm (Machines entierement en couleurs)>

1. Déposer le couvercle du filtre (2-1). Puis déposer les 9 vis (1) et le couvercle arrière supérieur (2-2).

2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (I) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant
au milieu (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.
au niveau inférieur (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.
L'installer avec le côté IC en bas.L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.

3. Reposer le couvercle arrière supérieur (2-2) à l'aide des 9 vis (1), puis le couvercle du filtre (2-1).

Passer à l'étape 4 de la page 5.

Instalación de la memoria DIMM
<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm (Maquinas a todo color)>

1. Quite la cubierta del filtro (2-1). Luego quite los 9 tornillos (1) y retire la cubierta trasera superior (2-2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (I), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para la memoria (3) en
el nivel medio (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.
el nivel inferior (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.
Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo.Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (2-2) utilizando los 9 tornillos (1) y luego reinstale la cubierta del filtro (2-1).

Vaya al paso 4 de la página 5.

Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule
<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm (Vollfarbenkopierers)>

1. Entfernen Sie die Filterabdeckung (2-1). Entfernen Sie danach die 9 Schrauben (1) und nehmen Sie dann die obere hintere Abdeckung (2-2) ab.

2. Setzen Sie die DIMM-Speichermodule (I) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodul (J) in
die mittlere Position (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>
die untere Position (FLS) <55/50 ppm>
der Speicherbank (3) ein.
Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren.Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.

3. Bringen Sie die obere hintere Abdeckung (2-2) wieder mit den 9 Schrauben (1) an und bringen Sie die Filterabdeckung (2-1) an.

Gehen Sie zum Schritt 4 auf Seite 5 weiter.

Installazione della memoria DIMM
<25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 ppm (un macchinario a colori)>

1. Rimuovere il copercio del filtro (2-1). Quindi rimuovere le 9 viti (1) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (2-2).

2. Installare la memoria DIMM (I) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al
livello centrale (FLS) <25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40 ppm>.
livello inferiore (FLS) <55/50 ppm>.
Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso.Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.

3. Ricollocare il coperchio superiore posteriore (2-2) utilizzando le 9 viti (1), e quindi ricollocare il coperchio del filtro (2-1).

Procedere con il punto 4 a pagina 5.

安装内存模组 DIMM
〈25/25，30/30，40/40，50/40，55/50 张机型（彩色机器）〉

1. 取下过滤板盖板（2-1）后，拆下 9 颗螺丝（1），然后拆下后上盖板（2-2）。

2. 将内存模组 DIMM(I) 或者选购件 DIMM(J) 安装至
中层 (FLS) ＜ 25/25，30/30，40/40，50/40 张机型＞
下层 (FLS) ＜ 55/50 张机型＞
的内存插槽 (3)。安装时，将 IC 侧正面朝下。沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀嗒声。
3. 使用 9 颗螺丝（1）把后上盖板（2-2）按原样装回，然后重新安装过滤器盖板（2-1）。

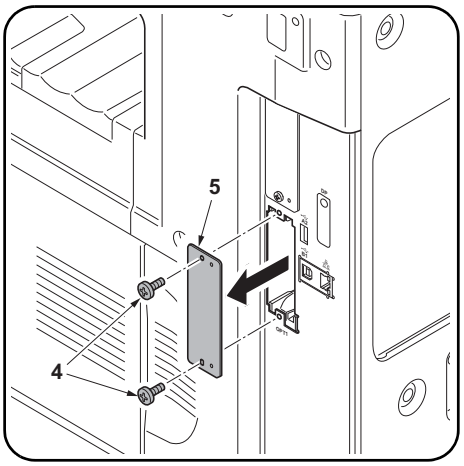
进行第 5 页上的第 4 步

メモリ DIMM の取り付け
〈25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 枚機（フルカラー機）〉

1. フィルタカバー(2-1) を取り外した後、ビス (1)9 本を外し、後上カバー(2-2) を取り外す。

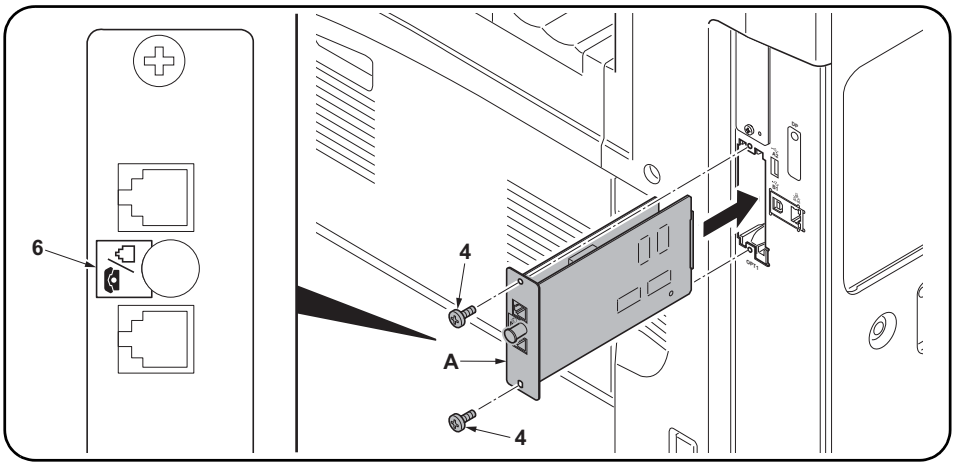
2. メモリ DIMM(I) または、オプションのメモリ DIMM(J) を
中段 (FLS) 〈 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40 枚機 〉
下段 (FLS) 〈 55/50 枚機 〉
のメモリスロット (3) に取り付ける。
IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。
3. ビス (1)9 本で、後上カバー(2-2) を元通り取り付けた後、フィルタカバー(2-1) を元通り取り付ける。

5 ページ手順 4 へ進む。



Remove the cover.

4. Remove two screws (4) and then remove OPT1 cover (5).



Install the FAX circuit board.

5. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT1 and secure the board with two screws (4) that have been removed in step 4.
Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
Direct the label (6) on to the FAX circuit board (A) as indicated in the illustration and insert the board along the groove.

Retirer le couvercle.

4. Retirer les deux vis (4), puis le couvercle OPT1 (5).

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

5. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT1 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (4) retirées à l'étape 4.
Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).
Orienter l'étiquette (6) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

Desmonte la cubierta.

4. Quite dos tornillos (4) y desmonte la cubierta OPT1 (5).

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

5. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT1 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (4) que ha quitado en el paso 4.
No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).
Oriente la etiqueta (6) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

4. Die beiden Schrauben (4) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT1 (5) abnehmen.

Einbauen der FAX-Leiterplatte.

5. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT1 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 4 ausgebauten Schrauben (4) befestigen.
Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) bein Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (6) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

Rimuovere il coperchio.

4. Rimuovere le due viti (4), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT1 (5).

Montaggio della scheda a circuiti FAX.

5. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT1 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (4) rimosse nell'operazione 4.
Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.
Orientare l'etichetta (6) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

拆下盖板

4. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (4)，然后拆下 OPT1 盖板 (5)。

安装传真电路板

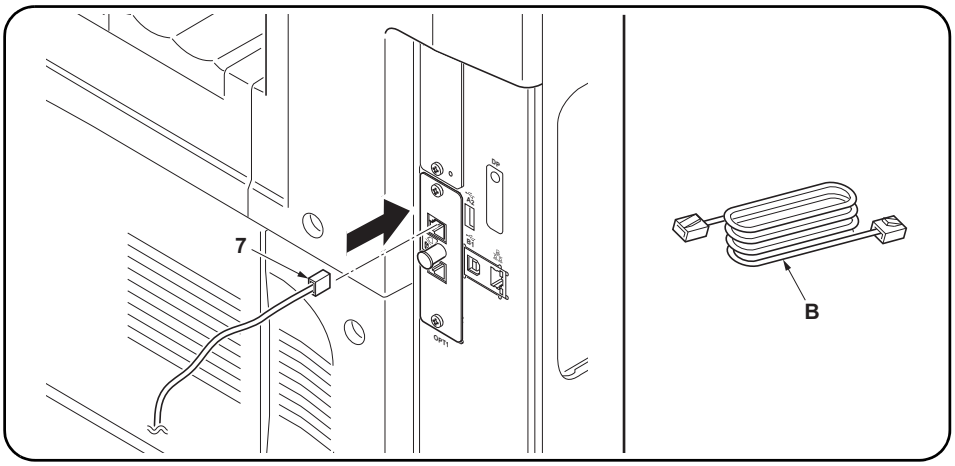
5. 沿着 OPT1 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用在步骤 4 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (4) 固定电路板。
请勿直接触摸传真电路板 (A) 端子。按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。
将传真电路板 (A) 上的标签 (6) 保持图示中的方向，将电路板沿着沟槽方向插入。

カバーの取り外し

4. ビス (4)2 本を外し、OPT1 のカバー(5) を取り外す。

FAX 基板の取り付け

5. OPT1 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 4 で外したビス (4)2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (6) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

6. Plug the modular connector cable (7) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

6. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (7) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

6. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (7) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

6. Telefonmodulkabel (7) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckerkabel (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

6. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (7) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

将 MFP 连接到电话线

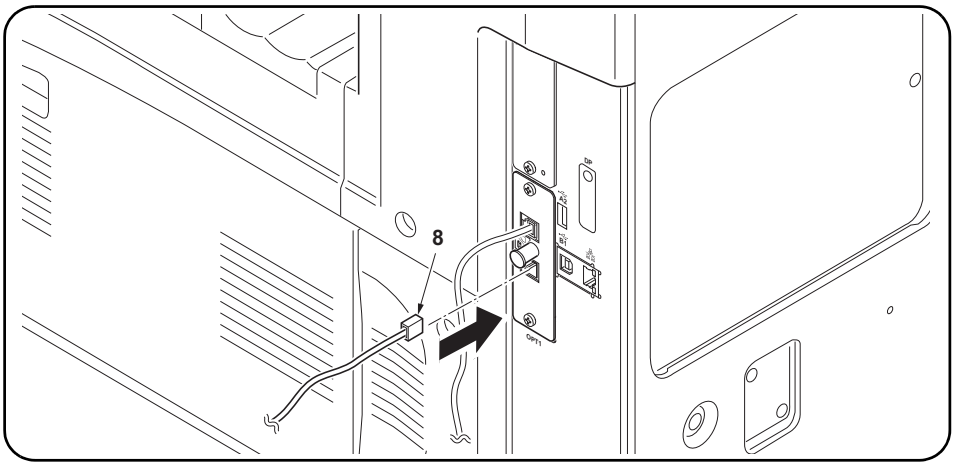
6. 将模块接插件电缆 (7) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。

对于 100 V/120 V / 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

電話回線との接続

6. モジュラコード (7) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。

100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様 / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラコード (B) を使用すること。



Connect the MFP to the separate phone (except for New Zealand model).

7. Plug the modular connector cable (8) into the telephone terminal, and then connect the other end to the separate phone.

If you don't connect the MFP to the separate phone, wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C) upon the customer's request.

Connecter le MFP au téléphone séparé .

7. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (8) à la borne du téléphone, puis connecter l'autre extrémité au téléphone séparé.

Si le MFP n'est pas connecté au téléphone séparé à la demande du client, nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool et apposer le joint de borne (C).

Conecte el MFP al teléfono separado .

7. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (8) en el terminal del teléfono y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo al teléfono separado.

Si no conecta el MFP a un teléfono separado, limpie la superficie del terminal del teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello del terminal (C), a solicitud del cliente.

Anschließen des MFP an das separate Telefon .

7. Das Telefonmodulkabel (8) in die Telefonbuchse einstecken und das andere Ende an das separate Telefon anschließen.

Wenn der MFP nicht an das separate Telefon angeschlossen wird, die Oberfläche der Telefonbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und Verschlusskappe (C) einsetzen, falls vom Kunden gewünscht.

Collegamento dell'MFP al telefono separato .

7. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (8) nel terminale del telefono, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale al telefono separato.

Nel caso in cui non si colleghi l'MFP al telefono separato, pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con dell'alcol e applicare la guarnizione terminale (C) a richiesta del cliente.

将 MFP 连接到其它电话

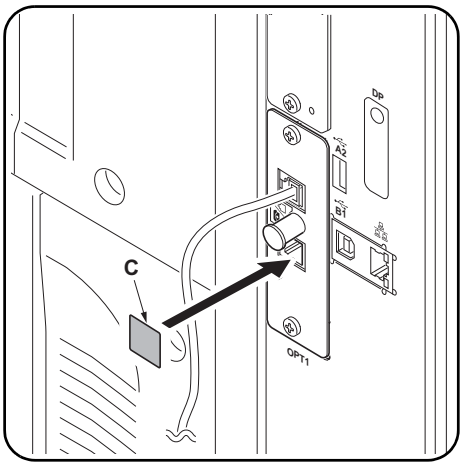
7. 将模块接插件电缆 (8) 插入电话端子，然后将另一端与其他电话连接。

如果您没有将 MFP 连接至其他电话，请用酒精擦拭电话端子表面，并按照客户要求粘上端子密封 (C)。

外付け電話との接続

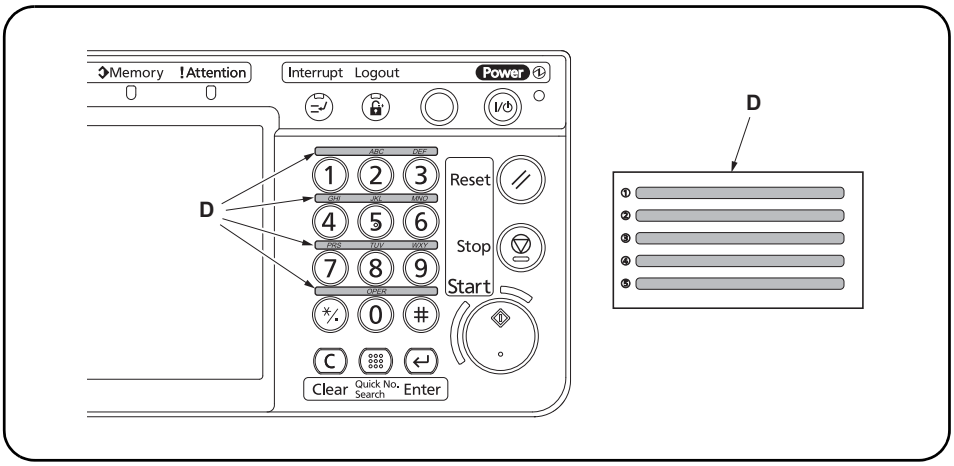
7. モジュラコード (8) を TEL 端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、外付け電話と接続する。

（外付け電話と接続しない場合、お客様の要望により、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。）



Seal the terminal (for New Zealand model).

8. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
Perform this procedure for New Zealand model only.



Attach the alphabet labels.

9. Wipe the area above the numeric keys at the right side of the operation panel with alcohol and adhere the alphabet labels (D) here.
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

Fermer hermétiquement la borne (modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).

8. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Fixer les étiquettes de l'alphabet.

9. Nettoyer la surface au-dessus des touches numériques à droite du panneau de commande et y coller les étiquettes de l'alphabet (D).
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les étiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

Selle el terminal (para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).

8. Realice este procedimiento sólo para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés.

Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto.

9. Limpie la zona situada encima de las teclas numéricas, en el lado derecho del panel de trabajo, y pegue aquí las etiquetas de alfabeto (D).
En Asia y Oceanía, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse (für Neuseeland-Modell).

8. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber.

9. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten auf der rechten Seite des Bedienfeldes abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (D) hier anbringen.
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

Sigillare il terminale (per il modello Nuova Zelanda).

8. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Nuova Zelanda.

Applicazione delle etichette alfabetiche.

9. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul lato destro del pannello operativo e attaccare qui le etichette alfabetiche (D).
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

安装端子密封（仅适用于新西兰型号）

8. 该操作步骤仅适用于新西兰型号。

安装英文字母标签

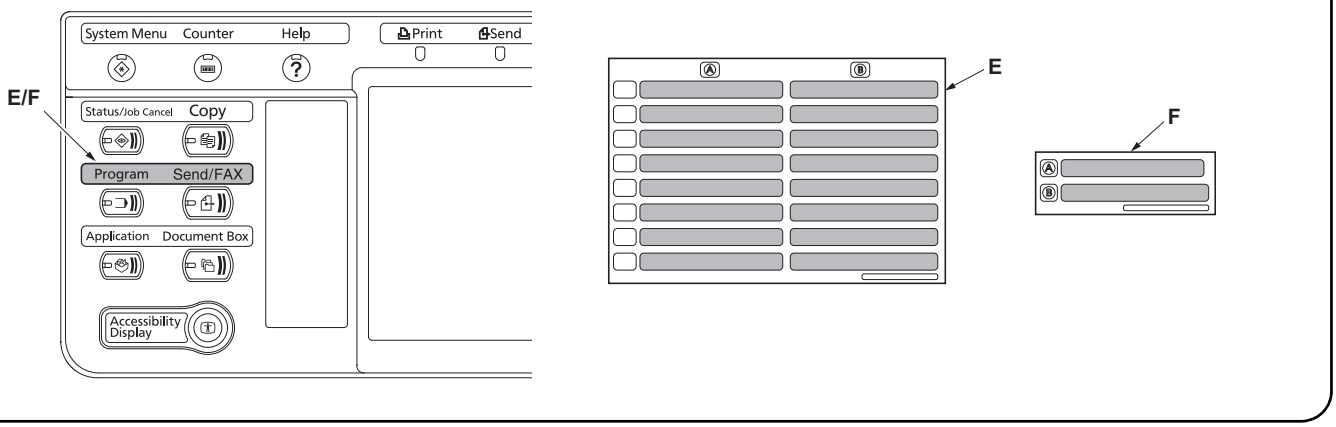
9. 擦拭操作面板右侧数字键上的区域，然后将英文字母标签 (D) 粘在此处。
在亚洲和大洋州，请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

端子シールの貼り付け（ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

8. この手順はニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。

アルファベットラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

9. この作業は、不要です。



Attach the FAX operation section label.

10. Wipe the label surface shown in the figure with alcohol and adhere the FAX operation section label (E) of the corresponding language.
<When installing in 42,52 ppm (Monochrome machines)>
Adhere the FAX operation section label (E) that A is shown.
<When installing in 30 ppm (Monochrome machines)>
Adhere the FAX operation section label (E) that B is shown.
<When installing in 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Full-color machines)>
Adhere the FAX operation section label (E) that A is shown.

Fixer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX.

10. Essuyer avec de l'alcool la surface de l'étiquette montrée sur l'illustration, et apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de la langue correspondante.
<Installation sur les modèles 42,52 ppm (Machines monochromes)>
Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de manière que A soit montré.
<Installation sur les modèles 30 ppm (Machines monochromes)>
Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de manière que B soit montré.
<Installation sur les modèles 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Machines entierement en couleurs)>
Apposer l'étiquette de la section de fonctionnement FAX (E) de manière que A soit montré.

Coloque la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX.

10. Limpie la superficie de la etiqueta que aparece en la figura con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) del correspondiente idioma.
<Cuando instale en 42,52 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>
Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) indicada en A.
<Cuando instale en 30 ppm (Maquinas monocromaticas)>
Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) indicada en B.
<Cuando instale en 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Maquinas a todo color)>
Pegue la etiqueta de la sección de funcionamiento de FAX (E) indicada en A.

Anbringen des Aufklebers für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt.

10. Die in der Abbildung gezeigte Klebefläche des Aufklebers mit Alkohol reinigen, und den Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) der entsprechenden Sprache anbringen.
<Bei Einbau in 42,52 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>
Den bei A gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) anbringen.
<Bei Einbau in 30 ppm (Monochrommaschinen)>
Den bei B gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) anbringen.
<Bei Einbau in 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (Vollfarbenkopierers)>
Den bei A gezeigten Aufkleber für den FAX-Bedienungsabschnitt (E) anbringen.

Fissare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX.

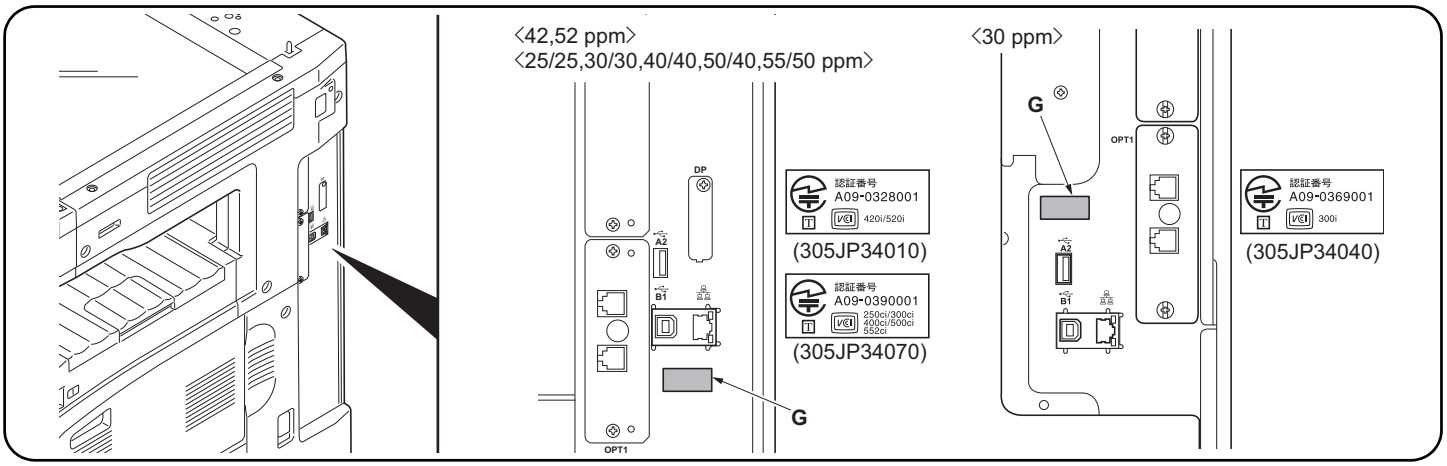
10. Pulire con alcol la superficie dell'etichetta indicata nella figura e applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) della lingua corrispondente.
<Quando si installa nel 42,52 ppm (solo per le macchine)>
Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) indicata da A.
<Quando si installa nel 30 ppm (solo per le macchine)>
Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) indicata da B.
<Quando si installa nel 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 ppm (un macchinario a colori)>
Applicare l'etichetta della sezione funzionamento FAX (E) indicata da A.

粘贴传真操作部标签

10. 用酒精擦拭图示位置的标签贴面后，粘贴相应语言的传真操作部标签 (E)。
＜安装在 42,52 张机型号（黑白机器）上时＞
将印刷的 A 的传真操作部标签 (E) 粘在此处。
＜安装在 30 张机型号（黑白机器）上时＞
将印刷的 B 的传真操作部标签 (E) 粘在此处。
＜安装在 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 张机型号（彩色机器）上时＞
将印刷的 A 的传真操作部标签 (E) 粘在此处。

FAX 操作部ラベルの貼り付け

10. イラストの位置のラベル上面をアルコール清掃後、該当する言語の FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。
＜ 42,52 枚機（モノクロ機）に設置する場合＞
A と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。
＜ 30 枚機（モノクロ機）に設置する場合＞
B と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。
＜ 25/25,30/30,40/40,50/40,55/50 枚機（フルカラー機）に設置する場合＞
A と印刷されている FAX 操作部ラベル (F) を貼り付ける。



Attach the JATE label (for 100 V model only).
11. Perform this procedure for 100 V model only.

Fixer l'étiquette JATE (modèle 100 V seulement).
11. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle 100 V seulement.

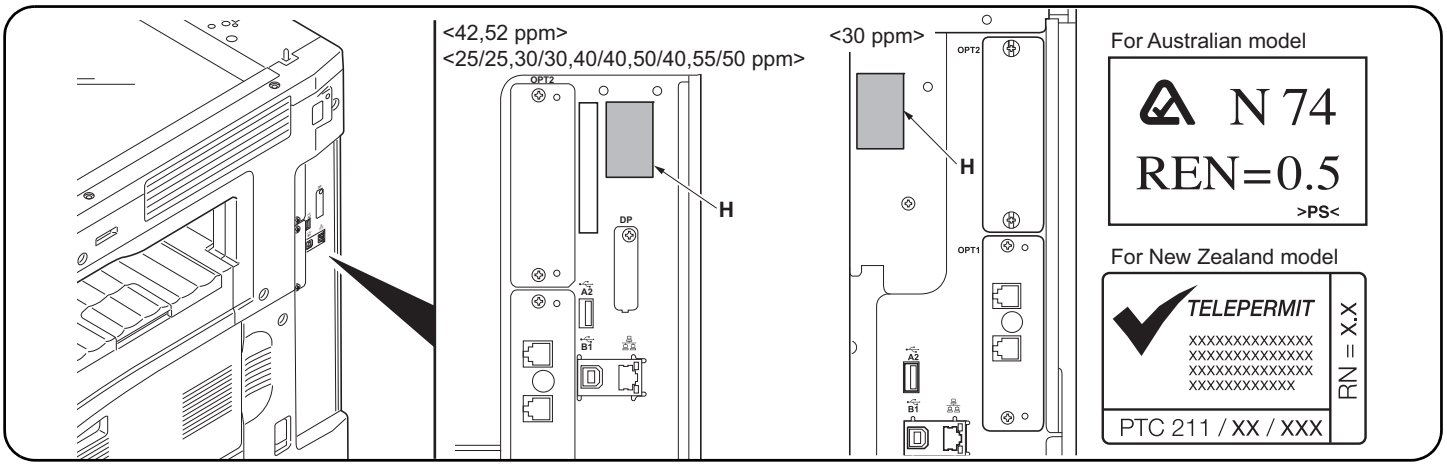
Coloque la etiqueta JATE (sólo para el modelo de 100 V).
11. Realice el procedimiento sólo para el modelo de 100 V.

Den JATE-Aufkleber anbringen (nur für 100-V-Modell).
11. Dieses Verfahren nur für das 100-V-Modell anwenden.

Applicare l'etichetta JATE (solo per il modello da 100 V).
11. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello da 100 V.

粘贴 JATE 标签（仅适用于 100V 型号）
11. 该步骤仅适用于 100V 型号时操作。

JATE ラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様のみ）
11. アルコール清掃後、JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。
＜ 42, 52 枚機（モノクロ機）に設置する場合＞
305JP34010 と印刷されている JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。
＜ 30 枚機（モノクロ機）に設置する場合＞
305JP34040 と印刷されている JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。
＜ 25/25, 30/30, 40/40, 50/40, 55/50 枚機（フルカラー機）に設置する場合＞
305JP34070 と印刷されている JATE ラベル (G) を貼り付ける。



Attach the approval label (for Australian/New Zealand model only).

12. Attach the approval label (H) after wiping with alcohol.
Perform this procedure for Australian/New Zealand model only.

When installing the optional Dual FAX (when adding the FAX circuit board to OPT2), proceed to the following procedures.
When not installing, proceed to page 14.

Install the Dual FAX

Refer to page 1 for the supplied parts.
When installing the optional Dual FAX, the approval label (H) is not required. Bring back and discard it.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement).

12. Effectuer cette procédure pour le modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement.

Lorsqu'on installe le FAX double en option (lorsqu'on ajoute la carte à circuits FAX à l'OPT2), effectuer les procédures suivantes.
Si on ne l'installe pas, passer à la page 14.

Installer le FAX double.

Pour plus de détails concernant les pièces fournies, se reporter à la page 1.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)

12. Realice este procedimiento sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés.

Cuando instale el FAX dual opcional (cuando agrega la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX a OPT2), vaya a los siguientes procedimientos.
Cuando no lo instala, vaya a la página 14.

Instale el FAX dual

Consulte la página 1 de las piezas suministradas.

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (nur für Australien/Neuseeland-Modell).

12. Dieses Verfahren nur für das Australien/Neuseeland-Modell anwenden.

Wenn das optionale Dual FAX installiert wird (Hinzufügen der FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2), mit den folgenden Verfahren fortfahren.
Erfolgt diese Installation nicht, mit Seite 14 fortfahren.

Installieren des Dual FAX

Die mitgelieferten Teile sind auf Seite 1 aufgelistet.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda).

12. Eseguire questa procedura solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda.

Quando si installa il Dual FAX opzionale (quando si aggiunge la scheda a circuiti FAX all'OPT2), continuare con la seguente procedura.
Se non si esegue l'installazione passare alla pagina 14.

Installare il Dual FAX

Fare riferimento alla pagina 1 per le parti in dotazione.

粘贴规格标签（仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号）

12. 该步骤仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号时操作。

安装选购件的多插口组件时（将传真电路板安装在 OPT2 上时），请按以下步骤进行。
不安装时，按第 14 页的要求进行操作。

安装多插口组件

附属品时，参照第 1 页。

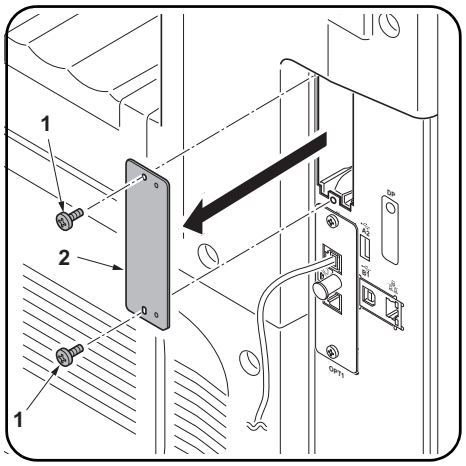
規格ラベルの貼り付け（オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

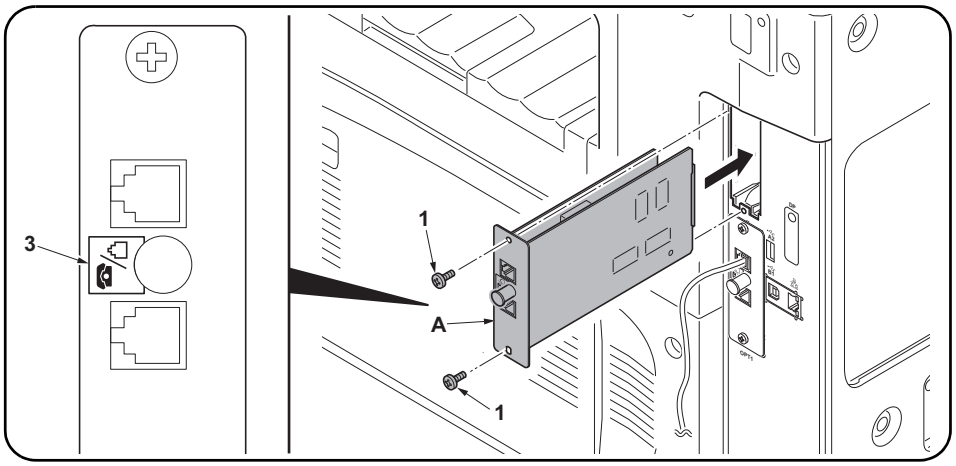
12. この手順はオーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみおこなう。

オプションのマルチポートを設置する場合 (FAX 基板を OPT2 に増設する場合)は、次の手順に進む。
設置しない場合は、14 ページへ進む。

マルチポートの設置

同梱品は 1 ページを参照する。
マルチポート設置の場合、JATE ラベル (G) は不要のため、持ち帰り廃棄すること。





Remove the cover.

1. Remove two screws (1) and then remove OPT2 cover (2).

Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two screws (1) that have been removed in step 1.

Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
Direct the label (3) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Retirer le couvercle.

1. Retirer les deux vis (1), puis le couvercle OPT2 (2).

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT2 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (1) retirées à l'étape 1.

Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).
Orienter l'étiquette (3) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

Desmonte la cubierta.

1. Quite dos tornillos (1) y desmonte la cubierta OPT2 (2).

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT2 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (1) que ha quitado en el paso 1.

No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).
Oriente la etiqueta (3) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Die beiden Schrauben (1) herausdrehen und Abdeckung OPT2 (2) abnehmen.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT2 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 1 ausgebauten Schrauben (1) befestigen.

Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) bein Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (3) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

Rimuovere il coperchio.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (1), quindi rimuovere il coperchio OPT2 (2).

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT2 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (1) rimosse nell'operazione 1.

Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.
Orientare l'etichetta (3) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

拆下盖板

1. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1)，然后拆下 OPT2 盖板 (2)。

安装传真电路板

2. 沿着 OPT2 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用在步骤 1 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (1) 固定电路板。

不要触碰传真电路板 (A) 端子。按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。
将标签 (3) 放在传真电路板 (A) 上，朝向左侧，然后沿着沟槽插入电路板。

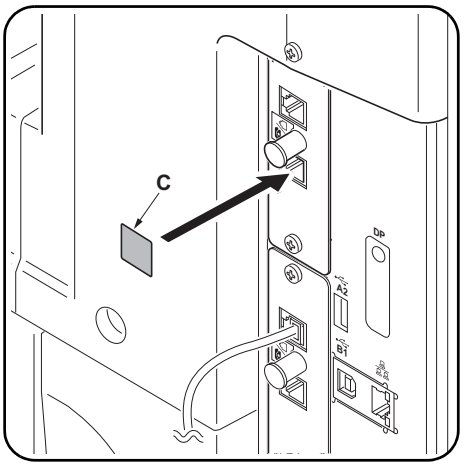
カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1)2 本を外し、OPT2 のカバー(2) を取り外す。

FAX 基板の取り付け

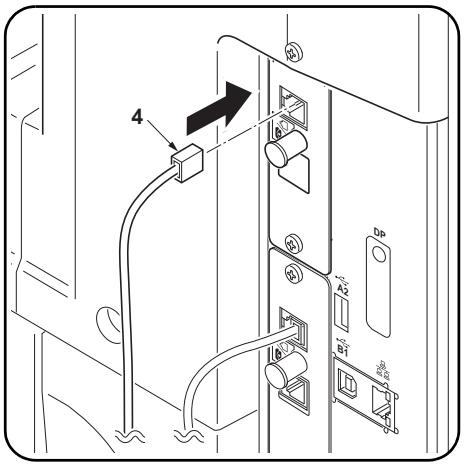
2. OPT2 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (1)2 本で固定する。

FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (3) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。



Seal the terminal.

3. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
The telephone terminal on the FAX circuit board installed to OPT2 is unavailable (invalid). Seal the terminal securely to prevent a user from connecting a separate phone.



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

4. Plug the modular connector cable (4) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.
For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Fermer hermétiquement la borne.

3. Nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool, et apposer le joint de borne (C).
La borne de téléphone de la carte à circuits FAX installée sur l'OPT2 n'est pas utilisable (invalide). Fermer hermétiquement la borne pour empêcher tout utilisateur de connecter un téléphone séparé.

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

4. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (4) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.
Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Selle el terminal.

3. Limpie la superficie del terminal de teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello de terminal (C).
El terminal de teléfono de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX instalado en el OPT2 no está disponible (inválido). Selle firmemente el terminal para evitar que un usuario conecte un teléfono por separado.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

4. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (4) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.
Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/ Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse.

3. Die Oberfläche der Telefonanschlussbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und die Verschlusskappe (C) anbringen.
Die Telefonanschlussbuchse der in OPT2 installierten FAX-Leiterplatte ist nicht verfügbar (ungültig). Die Anschlussbuchse vollkommen versiegeln, um den Anschluss eines separaten Telefons zu verhindern.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

4. Telefonmodulkabel (4) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.
Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckerkabel (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

Sigillare il terminale.

3. Pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con alcol e fare aderire la guarnizione terminale (C).
Il terminale del telefono sulla scheda a circuiti FAX installata su OPT2 non è disponibile (invalido). Sigillare il terminale saldamente per prevenire a un utente di collegare un telefono separato.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

4. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (4) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.
Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

安装端子密封

3. 用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。
安装在 OPT2 上的传真电路板的电话端子不可使用 (无效)。为了避免用户错误与其它电话连接，必须确实粘贴好端子密封。

将 MFP 连接到电话线

4. 将模块接插件电缆 (4) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。
对于 100 V/120 V / 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

端子シールの貼り付け

3. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
OPT2 に取り付けた FAX 基板の TEL 端子は使用不可(無効)となる。ユーザが誤って外付け電話を接続しないよう確実に貼り付けること。

電話回線との接続

4. モジュラコード (4) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。
100V/120V/ オーストラリア仕様 / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラコード (B) を使用すること。

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. If the FAX circuit board has been installed only in OPT1 or installed both in OPT1 and OPT2 (to initialize all FAX circuit boards)
Perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the fax control assembly.
3. If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)
Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the Start key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600.

If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.
For details, see the service manual.
Refer to the operation guide to create a FAX Box.

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. Si la carte à circuits FAX a été installée dans l'OPT1 seulement, ou a été installée dans l'OPT1 et dans l'OPT2 (pour initialiser toutes les cartes à circuits FAX)
Exécuter le mode de maintenance U600 pour initialiser l'ensemble de commande de fax.
3. Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)
Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche Départ dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600.

Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 sont tous deux initialisés.
Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.
Se reporter au manuel d'utilisation pour créer une Boîte de FAX.

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se instaló solo en OPT1 o se instaló tanto en OPT1 como OPT2 (para inicializar todas las tarjetas de circuito de FAX)
Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar el conjunto de control de fax.
3. Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)
Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de Inicio en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600.

Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2.
Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.
Consulte la guía de uso para crear un Buzón de FAX.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte nur in OPT1 oder sowohl in OPT1 als auch in OPT2 installiert worden ist (um alle FAX-Leiterplatten zu initialisieren)
Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen, um die Faxsteuerbaugruppe zu initialisieren.
3. Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren)
OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die Start-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen.

Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert.
Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.
Schlagen Sie zur Erzeugung einer FAX-Box in der Einfuhrung nach.

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Se la scheda a circuiti FAX è stata installata solo nell'OPT1 o in entrambi l'OPT1 e l'OPT2 (per inizializzare tutte le schede di circuito FAX)
Eseguire il modo di manutenzione U600 per inizializzare il gruppo di controllo fax.
3. Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inzializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)
Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto Avvio in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600.

Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati.
Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.
Leggere la guida alle funzioni per creare una Casella FAX.

传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 仅限于在 OPT1 或 OPT1 和 OPT2 上同时安装传真电路板时（全部的传真电路板初始化）
执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真控制组件。
3. 在 OPT2 上增设时
(OPT2 的传真电路板初始化）
只进行 OPT2 初始化时，在维修保养模式 U698 状态下，按顺序按下“PORT2”、开始键，执行维修保养模式 U600。

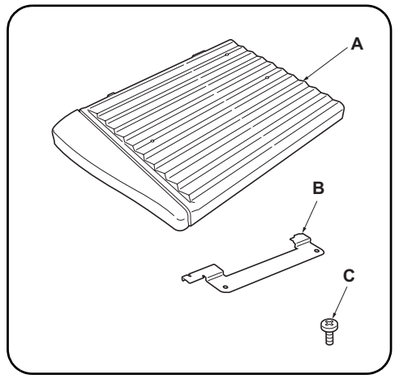
在 U698 状态下设定“ALL”时，会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。
有关详细信息，请参见维修手册。
参照操作手册，作成传真盒。

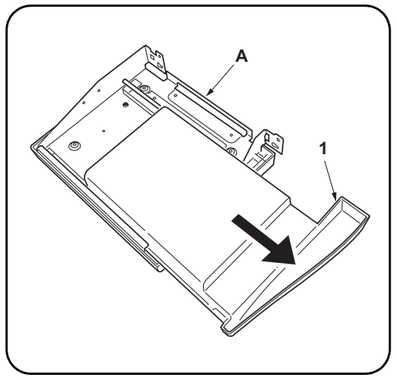
FAX 基板の初期化

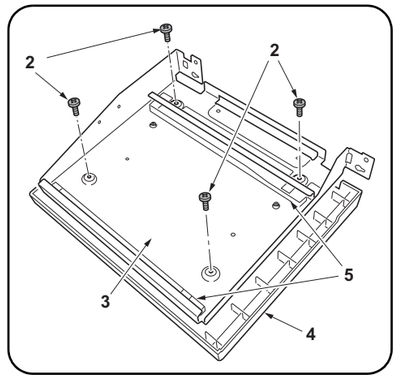
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. OPT1 のみまたは OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合（すべての FAX 基板を初期化）
メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
3. OPT2 に増設した場合（OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化）
メンテナンスモード U698 で「PORT2」、スタートキーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。

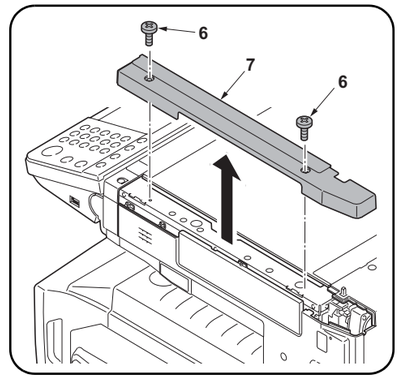
U698 で「ALL」を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。
詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。
使用説明書を参照し、ファクスボックスを作成する。

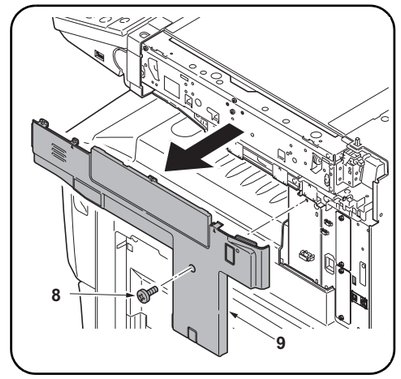
INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DT-710











English

Installation Guide for DT-700

Supplied parts
A Document tray 1
B Reinforcing plate 1
C S Tite screw M3 × 6 6

1. Reverse the document tray (A) and remove the drawer (1).

2. Remove the four screws (2) and remove the cover (4) from the retainer (3). If the two rails (5) are removed, reattach them to their original positions.

3. Remove the two screws (6) and remove the right scanner cover (7).

4. Remove the screw (8) and remove the upper right cover (9).

Français

Guide d'installation du DT-700

Pièces fournies
A Plateau à documents 1
B Plaque de renfort 1
C Vis S Tite M3 × 6 6

1. Inverser le plateau à documents (A) et retirer le tiroir (1).

2. Retirer les quatre vis (2) et retirer le capot (4) de la retenue (3). Si les deux rails (5) sont retirés, les refixer dans leur position originale.

3. Retirer les deux vis (6) et retirer le capot de scanner de droite (7).

4. Retirer la vis (8) et retirer le capot supérieur droit (9).

Español

Guía de instalación del DT-700

Partes suministradas
A Bandeja de documentos 1
B Placa reforzadora 1
C Tornillo S Tite M3 × 6 6

1. Dé vuelta la bandeja de documentos (A) y desmonte el cajón (1).

2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (2) y desmonte la cubierta (4) del retenedor (3). Si se desmontan los dos carriles (5), vuelva a instalarlos en sus posiciones originales.

3. Quite los dos tornillos (6) y desmonte la cubierta de escáner derecha (7).

4. Quite el tornillo (8) y desmonte la cubierta derecha superior (9).

Deutsch

Installationsanleitung für DT-700

Gelieferte Teile
A Dokumentenablage 1
B Verstärkungsplatte 1
C S-Tite-Schraube M3 × 6 6

1. Die Dokumentenablage (A) umdrehen, und die Schublade (1) entfernen.

2. Die vier Schrauben (2) herausdrehen, und die Abdeckung (4) vom Halter (3) abnehmen. Wenn die zwei Schienen (5) entfernt werden, sind sie wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anzubringen.

3. Die zwei Schrauben (6) herausdrehen, und die rechte Scannerabdeckung (7) abnehmen.

4. Die Schraube (8) herausdrehen, und die obere rechte Abdeckung (9) abnehmen.

Italiano

Guida all'installazione del DT-700

Parti fornite
A Vassoio di uscita documenti 1
B Piastra di rinforzo 1
C Vite S Tite M3 × 6 6

1. Capovolgere il vassoio di uscita documenti (A) e rimuovere il cassetto (1).

2. Rimuovere le quattro viti (2) e il coperchio (4) dal fermo (3). Se le due rotaie (5) vengono rimosse, rimetterle nella posizione originaria.

3. Rimuovere le due viti (6) e il coperchio destro dello scanner (7).

4. Rimuovere la vite (8) e il coperchio superiore destro (9).

简体中文

DT-700 安装手册

附属品
A 文件接纸盘 1
B 加强板 1
C 紧固螺钉 M3 × 6S 6

1. 将文件接纸盘(A)翻过来，取下抽屉(1)。

2. 卸下 4 个螺钉(2)，从安装板(3)上取下盖板(4)。如果 2 个轨道(5)被卸下，按原样安装。

3. 卸下 2 个螺钉(6)，取下扫描右盖板(7)。

4. 卸下 1 个螺钉(8)，取下右上盖板(9)。

日本語

DT-710 設置手順書

同梱品
A 原稿置き台 1
B 補強板 1
C ビス M3 × 6S タイト 6

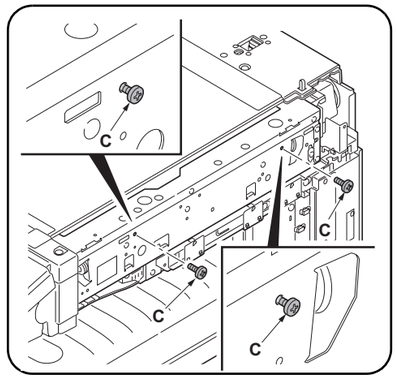
1. 原稿置き台(A)を裏返し、引き出し(1)を取り外す。

2. ビス(2)4 本を取り外し、取付板(3)からカバー(4)を取り外す。レール(5)2 本が外れた場合は、元通り取り付ける。

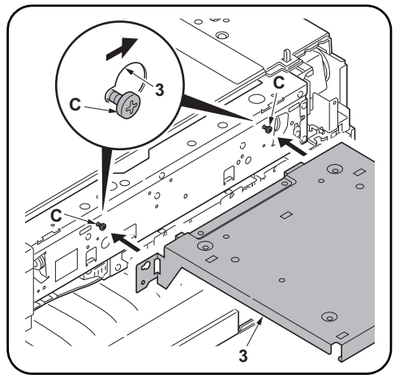
3. ビス(6)2 本を外し、スキャナ右カバー(7)を取り外す。

4. ビス(8)1 本を外し、右上カバー(9) を取り外す。

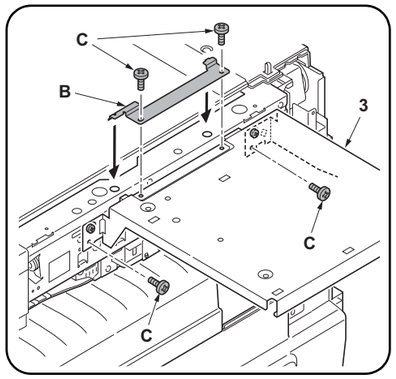
2008.10
302H756840



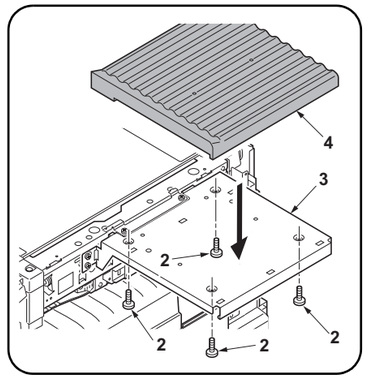
5. Temporarily tighten two S tite screws M3 × 6 (C) lightly to the frame of the machine main body.



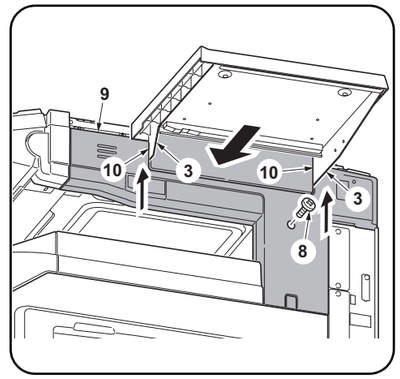
6. Fit the screw holes of the retainer (3) to the two S tite screws M3 × 6 (C) that have been temporarily tightened and slide the retainer.



7. Use the two S tite screws M3 × 6 (C) that have been temporarily tightened and two S tite screws M3 × 6 (C) to secure the retainer (3).
8. Put the reinforcing plate (B) into the hole on the frame and secure it with two S tite screws M3 × 6 (C).



9. Use the four screws (2) that have been removed in step 2 to secure the cover (4) to the retainer (3) as it was.



10. Attach the upper right cover (9) so that the retainer (3) is inserted into the slit section (10) and secure the cover with the screw (8) that have been removed in step 4.
Take care not to get the cable caught.

11. Refit the right scanner cover to its original position with the two screws that have been removed in step 3.
12. Insert the drawer that has been removed in step 1 into the document tray.

---

5. Serrer légèrement temporairement deux vis S tite M3 × 6 (C) sur le châssis du corps principal de la machine.

6. Emboîter les trous de vis de la retenue (3) sur les deux vis S tite M3 × 6 (C) qui ont été temporairement serrées et faire glisser la retenue.

7. Utiliser les deux vis S tite M3 × 6 (C) qui ont été temporairement serrées et deux vis S tite M3 × 6 (C) pour fixer la retenue (3).
8. Placer la plaque de renfort (B) dans l'orifice du châssis et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S tite M3 × 6 (C).

9. Utiliser les quatre vis (2) qui ont été retirées à l'étape 2 pour fixer le capot (4) à la retenue (3) comme il l'était.

10. Fixer le capot supérieur droit (9) de façon à ce que la retenue (3) soit insérée dans la partie fendue (10) et fixer le capot à l'aide la vis (8) qui ont été retirées à l'étape 4.
Veiller à ce que les câbles ne soient pas pris.

11. Remonter le capot de scanner de droite dans sa position originale à l'aide des deux vis qui ont été retirées à l'étape 3.
12. Insérer le tiroir qui a été retiré à l'étape 1 dans le plateau à documents.

---

5. Apriete temporalmente dos tornillos S tite M3 × 6 (C) ligeramente al marco del cuerpo principal de la máquina.

6. Fije los dos orificios de tornillos del retenedor (3) a los dos tornillos S tite M3 × 6 (C) que se apretaron temporalmente y deslice el retenedor.

7. Utilice los dos tornillos S tite M3 × 6 (C) que se apretaron temporalmente y los dos tornillos S tite M3 × 6 (C) para asegurar el retenedor (3).
8. Ponga la placa reforzadora (B) en el orificio en el marco y asegúrela con los dos tornillos S tite M3 × 6 (C).

9. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (2) quitados en el paso 2 para asegurar la cubierta (4) en el retenedor (3) como estaba originalmente.

10. Instale la cubierta derecha superior (9) para que el retenedor (3) esté insertado en la sección de ranura (10) y asegure la cubierta con el tornillo (8) quitados en el paso 4.
Tenga cuidado de no atrapar el cable.

11. Vuelva a fijar la cubierta de escáner derecha a su posición original con los dos tornillos que se quitaron en el paso 3.
12. Inserte el cajón desmontado en el paso 1 dentro de la bandeja de documentos.

---

5. Die zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 6 (C) provisorisch in den Rahmen des Maschinenhauptteils eindrehen.

6. Die Gewindebohrungen des Halters (3) auf die zwei provisorisch eingedrehten S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 6 (C) setzen, und den Halter verschieben.

7. Den Halter (3) mit den zwei provisorisch eingedrehten S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 6 (C) und zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 6 (C) befestigen.
8. Die Verstärkungsplatte (B) in die Löcher des Rahmens einsetzen und mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 6 (C) befestigen.

9. Die Abdeckung (4) mit den in Schritt 2 herausgedrehten vier Schrauben (2) wie vorher am Halter (3) befestigen.

10. Die obere rechte Abdeckung (9) so anbringen, dass der Halter (3) in den Schlitzen (10) sitzt, und die Abdeckung mit den in Schritt 4 herausgedrehten Schraube (8) befestigen.
Darauf achten, dass das Kabel nicht eingeklemmt wird.

11. Die rechte Scannerabdeckung mit den in Schritt 3 herausgedrehten zwei Schrauben wieder an ihrer ursprünglichen Position anbringen.
12. Die in Schritt 1 entfernte Schublade wieder in die Dokumentenablage einschieben.

---

5. Temporaneamente serrare un po' due viti S tite M3 × 6 (C) al telaio del corpo principale della macchina.

6. Adattare i fori per le viti del fermo (3) alle due viti S tite M3 × 6 (C) che sono state serrate temporaneamente e fare scivolare in posizione il fermo.

7. Usare le due viti S tite M3 × 6 (C) che sono state serrate temporaneamente e le due viti S tite M3 × 6 (C) per fissare il fermo (3).
8. Mettere la piastra di rinforzo (B) sul foro del telaio e fissarla con due viti S tite M3 × 6 (C).

9. Usare le quattro viti (2) che sono state rimosse nel passo 2 per fissare il coperchio (4) al fermo (3) così com'era prima.

10. Montare il coperchio superiore destro (9) in modo che il fermo (3) sia inserito nella fessura (10) e fissare il coperchio con la vite (8) che sono state rimosse nel passo 4.
Fare attenzione a non stringere il cavo.

11. Rimontare il coperchio destro dello scanner nella sua posizione originaria con le due viti che sono state rimosse nel passo 3.
12. Inserire il cassetto che è stato rimosso nel passo 1 nel vassoio di uscita documenti.

---

5. 将 2 个紧固螺钉 M3 × 6S(C)临时轻松固定于主机的框架上。

6. 将安装板(3)的螺钉孔挂在临时固定的 2 个紧固螺钉 M3 × 6S(C)上，并滑动安装板。

7. 用临时固定的 2 个紧固螺钉 M3 × 6S(C)和另外 2 个紧固螺钉 M3 × 6S(C)固定好加强板。
8. 将加强板(B)插入框架的孔中，用 2 个紧固螺钉 M3 × 6S(C)来固定。

9. 用步骤 2 中卸下的 4 个螺钉(2)，按原样将盖板(4)固定于安装板(3)上。

10. 安装右上盖板(9)，用步骤 4 中卸下的 1 个螺钉(8)进行固定，要使安装板(3)能够进入槽部(10)。
注意不要卡住电线。

11. 用步骤 3 中卸下的 2 个螺钉，按原样安装扫描右盖板。
12. 将步骤 1 中取下的抽屉重新插入文件接纸盘。

---

5. 機械本体のフレームにビス M3 × 6 S タイト(C)2 本を浅く仮締めする。

6. 仮締めしたビス M3 × 6 S タイト(C)2 本に取付板(3)のビス穴を引っ掛けてスライドさせる。

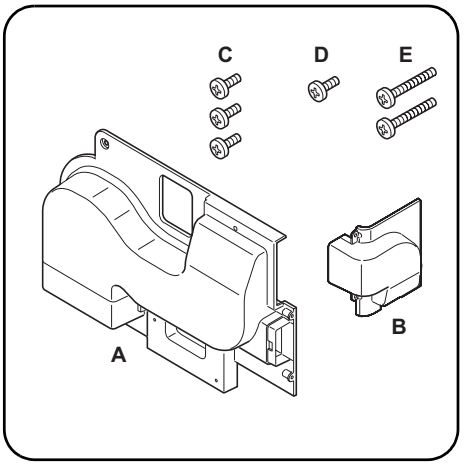
7. 仮締めしたビス M3 × 6 S タイト(C)2 本とビス M3 × 6 S タイト(C)2 本で取付板(3)を固定する。
8. 補強板(B)をフレームの穴に引っ掛け、ビス M3 × 6 S タイト(C)2 本で固定する。

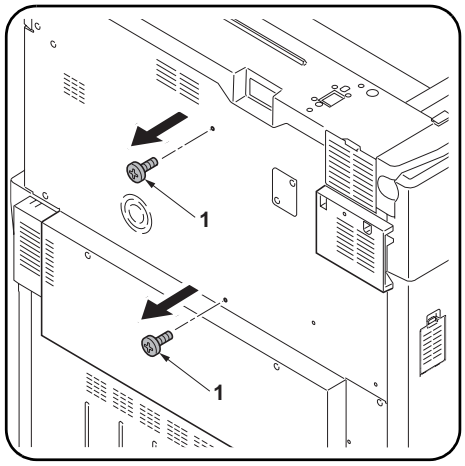
9. **手順** 2 で外したビス(2)4 本でカバー(4)を元通り取付板(3)に固定する。

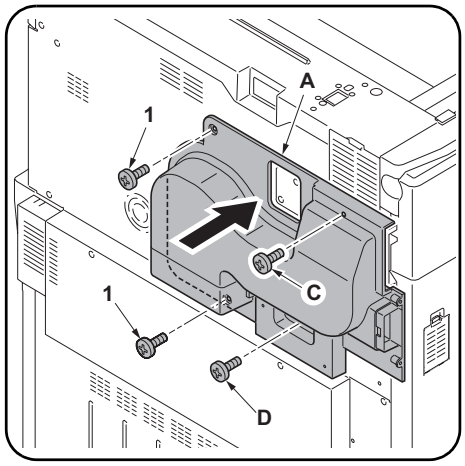
10. 取付板(3)がスリット部(10)に入るように右上カバー(9)を取り付け、**手順** 4 で外したビス(8)1 本で固定する。
電線を挟み込まない様注意すること。

11. **手順** 3 で外したビス 2 本で、スキャナ右カバーを元通り取り付ける。
12. **手順** 1 で外した引き出しを原稿置き台に挿入する。

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DUCT UNIT







English

DUCT OPTION UNIT Installation Instructions

Supplied parts

A DUCT A 1
B DUCT B 1
C M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw 3
D M3 x 8 tap-tight S screw 1

E M3 x 20 tap-tight P screw (100-volt models only) 2

1. Remove the two screws (1).

2. Attach DUCT A (A) using the following screws:
Screws (1) removed in step 1: 2
M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw (C): 1
M3 x 8 tap-tight S screw (D): 1

Français

IInstructions d'installation du Module encrier fourni en option

Pièces fournies

A Encrier A 1
B Encrier B 1
C Vis P taraudées M3 x 8 3
D Vis S taraudées M3 x 8 1

E Vis P taraudées M3 x 20 (modèles 100-volts uniquement) 2

1. Déposer les deux vis (1).

2. Fixer l'encrier A (A) à l'aide des vis suivantes:
Vis déposées à l'étape 1: 2
Vis P taraudées M3 x 8 (C): 1
Vis S taraudées M3 x 8 (D): 1

Español

Instrucciones de instalación de la unidad opcional Conducto

Partes suministradas

A Conducto A 1
B Conducto B 1
C Tornillo de ajuste P M3 x 8 3
D Tornillo de ajuste S M3 x 8 1

E Tornillo de ajuste P M3 x 20 (sólo para los modelos de 100 voltios) 2

1. Quite los dos tornillos (1).

2. Fije el conducto A (A) por medio de los siguientes tornillos:
Tornillos (1) quitados en el paso 1: 2
Tornillo de ajuste P M3 x 8 (C): 1
Tornillo de ajuste S M3 x 8 (D): 1

Deutsch

Optionale Schachteinheit Montageanleitung

Gelieferte Teile

A Schacht A 1
B Schacht B 1
C M3 x 8 P Passstift-Verbundschraube 3
D M3 x 8 S Passstift-Verbundschraube 1

E M3 x 20 P Passstift-Verbundschraube (nur für 100-Volt-Modell) 2

1. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1).

2. Bringen Sie den Schacht A (A) mit den folgenden Schrauben an:
Schrauben (1), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurden: 2
M3 x 8 P Passstift-Verbundschraube (C): 1
M3 x 8 S Passstift-Verbundschraube (D): 1

Italiano

Istruzioni d'installazione dell'unità condotto opzionale

Parti fornite

A Condotto A 1
B Condotto B 1
C Vite con testa a croce P M3 x 8 3
D Vite con testa a croce S M3 x 8 1

E Vite con testa a croce P M3 x 20 (solo modelli a 100 volt) 2

1. Togliere le due viti (1).

2. Fissare il condotto A (A) utilizzando le viti seguenti:
Viti (1) rimosse al punto 1: 2
Vite con testa a croce P M3 x 8 (C): 1
Vite con testa a croce S M3 x 8 (D): 1

简体中文

导风管选购单元安装说明书

同装品

A 导风管 A 1
B 导风管 B 1
C M3 × 8 P 型自攻螺丝 3
D M3 × 8 S 型自攻螺丝 1

E M3 × 20 P 型自攻螺丝（仅限 100V 机型） 2

1. 取下 2 颗螺丝（1）。

2. 使用以下螺丝安装导风管 A（A）：
在步骤 1 中取下的螺丝（1）：2 颗
M3 × 8 P 型自攻螺丝（C）：1 颗
M3 × 8 S 型自攻螺丝（D）：1 颗

日本語

DUCT OPTION UNIT 設置手順書

同梱品

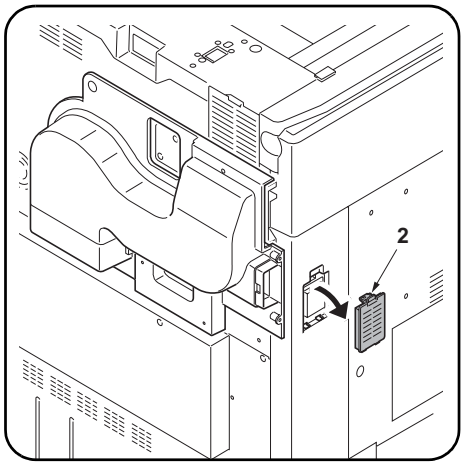
A DUCT A 1
B DUCT B 1
C ビス M3 × 8P タイト 3
D ビス M3 × 8S タイト 1

E ビス M3 × 20P タイト (KMAS 取付時使用) 2

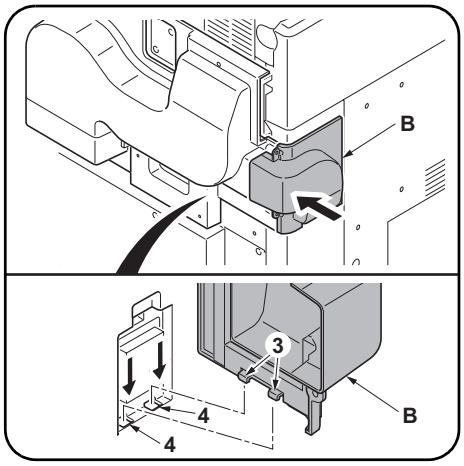
1. ビス (1)2 本を外す。

2. 下記のビスで、DUCT A (A) を取り付ける。
・手順 1 で取り外したビス (1)：2 本
・ビス M3 × 8P タイト (C)：1 本
・ビス M3 × 8S タイト (D)：1 本

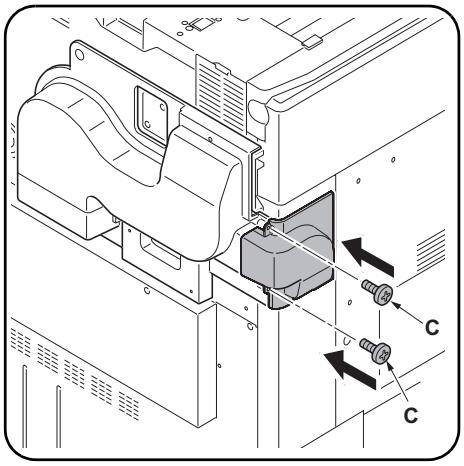
2008. 11
302H756860



3. Remove the filter cover (2).



4. Fit the two hooks (3) on DUCT B (B) into the two holes (4).



5. Attach DUCT B (B) using the two M3 x 8 tap-tight P screws (C).

---

3. Déposer le couvercle du filtre (2).

4. Insérer les deux crochets (3) de l'encrier B (B) dans les deux trous (4).

5. Fixer l'encrier B (B) à l'aide des deux vis P taraudées M3 x 8 (C).

---

3. Quite la cubierta del filtro (2).

4. Ajuste los dos ganchos (3) del conducto B (B) en los dos orificios (4).

5. Fije el conducto B (B) por medio de los dos tornillos de ajuste P M3 x 8 (C).

---

3. Entfernen Sie die Filterabdeckung (2).

4. Setzen Sie die beiden Haken (3) an Schacht B (B) in die zwei Öffnungen (4) ein.

5. Bringen Sie den Schacht B (B) mit den zwei M3 x 8P Passstift-Verbundschrauben (C) an.

---

3. Rimuovere il coperchio del filtro (2).

4. Inserire i due ganci (3) del condotto B (B) nei due fori (4).

5. Fissare il condotto (B) utilizzando le due viti con testa a croce P M3 x 8 (C).

---

3. 取下过滤器盖板(2)。

4. 将导风管 B(B)上的 2 个卡扣(3)装入 2 个安装孔(4)中。

5. 使用 2 个 M3 × 8 P 型自攻螺丝(C)安装导风管 B(B)。

---

3. フィルタカバー(2) を取り外す。

4. DUCT B (B) のフック (3)2 箇所を穴 (4)2 箇所に引っ掛ける。

5. ビス M3 × 8P タイト (C)2 本で、DUCT B (B) を取り付ける。

KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.

Bloemlaan 4, 2132 NP Hoofddorp,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.654.0000
Home page: http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com
Email: info@kyoceramita-europe.com

KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.
Beechavenue 25, 1119 RA Schiphol-Rijk
The Netherlands
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD
8 Beacontree Plaza
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 0BS,
U.K.
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N
Milano, Italy
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.
Sint-Martinusweg 199-201, 1930 Zaventem,
Belgium
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,
France
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),
Spain
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY
Atomitie 5C, 00370 Helsinki,
Finland
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich
Switzerland
Phone: +41.44.908.4949

KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,
Germany
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,
1230 Wien,
Austria
Phone: +43.1.86338

KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,
Sweden
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

KYOCERA MITA NORGE
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo
Olaf Helsetsvei 6, NO 0694 Oslo,
Norway
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,
Denmark
Phone: +45.7022.3880

KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisboa,
Portugal
Phone: +351.21.843.6780

KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.
49 Kyalami Boulevard,
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,
South Africa
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,
U.S.A.
Phone: (973) 808-8444

KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,
N.S.W. 2113 Australia
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,
New Zealand
Phone: (09) 415-4517

KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand
Phone: (02) 586-0333

KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,
Singapore 349572
Phone: 67418733

KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED
16/F., Mita Centre,
552-566, Castle Peak Road,
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,
Hong Kong
Phone: 24297422

KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.
6F., No.37, Sec. 3, Minquan E. Rd.,
Zhongshan Dist., Taipei 104, Taiwan R.O.C.
Phone: (02) 25076709

KYOCERA MITA Corporation

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku
Osaka 540-8585, Japan
Phone: (06) 6764-3555
http://www.kyoceramita.com

©2010 KYOCERA MITA Corporation
KYOCERA is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in Holland

KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

Headquarters:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-6000

New York Branch:
1410 Broadway 23rd floor
New York, NY 10018
TEL : (917) 286-5400
FAX : (917) 286-5402

Northeastern Region:
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008
TEL : (973) 808-8444
FAX : (973) 882-4401

Midwestern Region:
201 Hansen Court Suite 119
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191
TEL : (630) 238-9982
FAX : (630) 238-9487

Western Region:
14101 Alton Parkway,
Irvine, California 92618-7006
TEL : (949) 457-9000
FAX : (949) 457-9119

Southeastern Region:
1500 Oakbrook Drive,
Norcross, Georgia 30093
TEL : (770) 729-9786
FAX : (770) 729-9873

Southwestern Region:
2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 550-8987
FAX : (972) 252-9786

National Operation Center
& National Training Center:
2825 West Story Road,
Irving, Texas 75038-5299
TEL : (972) 659-0055
FAX : (972) 570-5816

Latin America Division:
8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166
TEL : (305) 421-6640
FAX : (305) 421-6666

KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada
TEL : (905) 670-4425
FAX : (905) 670-8116

KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407
Col. Santa Inés,
Azcapotzalco México,
D.F. 02130, México
TEL : (55) 5383-2741
FAX : (55) 5383-7804

©2010 KYOCERA MITA Corporation
http://www.kyoceramita.com
KYOCERA is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in U.S.A.